

MATHEMATICAL METHODS

UNITS 3 & 4

SECOND EDITION

CAMBRIDGE SENIOR MATHEMATICS
FOR QUEENSLAND

MICHAEL EVANS | KAY LIPSON | DAVID GREENWOOD

INCLUDES INTERACTIVE
TEXTBOOK POWERED BY
CAMBRIDGE HOTMATHS





Shaftesbury Road, Cambridge CB2 8EA, United Kingdom
One Liberty Plaza, 20th Floor, New York, NY 10006, USA
477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia
314–321, 3rd Floor, Plot 3, Splendor Forum, Jasola District Centre, New Delhi – 110025, India
103 Penang Road, #05–06/07, Visioncrest Commercial, Singapore 238467

Cambridge University Press & Assessment is a department of the University of Cambridge.

We share the University's mission to contribute to society through the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.org

© Michael Evans, Kay Lipson, Peter Jones and David Greenwood 2019

© Michael Evans, Kay Lipson and David Greenwood 2025

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press & Assessment.

First published 2019

Second Edition 2025

20 19 18 17 16 15 14 13 12 11 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Cover designed by Sardine Design

Text designed by diacriTech

Typeset by diacriTech

Printed in China by C & C Offset Printing Co. Ltd.

A catalogue record for this book is available from the National Library of Australia at www.nla.gov.au

ISBN 978-1-009-53728-5

Additional resources for this publication at www.cambridge.edu.au/GO

Reproduction and Communication for educational purposes

The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this publication, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act.

For details of the CAL licence for educational institutions contact:

Copyright Agency Limited
Level 12, 66 Goulburn Street
Sydney NSW 2000
Telephone: (02) 9394 7600
Facsimile: (02) 9394 7601
Email: memberservices@copyright.com.au

Reproduction and Communication for other purposes

Except as permitted under the Act (for example a fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review) no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All inquiries should be made to the publisher at the address above.

Cambridge University Press & Assessment has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party internet websites referred to in this publication and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press & Assessment does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Please be aware that this publication may contain images of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander people who are now deceased. Several variations of Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander terms and spellings may also appear; no disrespect is intended. Please note that the terms 'Indigenous Australians' and 'Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples' may be used interchangeably in this publication.

Cambridge University Press & Assessment acknowledges the Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples of this nation. We acknowledge the traditional custodians of the lands on which our company is located and where we conduct our business. We pay our respects to ancestors and Elders, past and present. Cambridge University Press & Assessment is committed to honouring Aboriginal and Torres Strait Islander peoples' unique cultural and spiritual relationships to the land, waters and seas and their rich contribution to society.

Contents

About the lead author and consultants	x
Introduction and overview	xi
Acknowledgements	xiv

Preliminary topics

1	Refresher on functions and relations	1
1A	Set notation and sets of numbers	2
1B	Identifying and describing relations and functions . .	6
1C	Implied domains and types of functions	17
1D	Combining functions	22
1E	Power functions	27
1F	Applications of functions	32
	Review of Chapter 1	36
2	Refresher on polynomial functions	44
2A	Quadratic functions	45
2B	Determining the rule for a parabola	54
2C	The language of polynomials	59
2D	The general cubic function	64
2E	Polynomials of higher degree	68
2F	Determining the rule for the graph of a polynomial . .	71

2G	Solution of literal equations and systems of equations	76
2H	Division and factorisation of polynomials (Optional)	81
	Review of Chapter 2	89

3 Refresher on differentiation **100**

3A	The derivative	101
3B	Rules for differentiation	106
3C	Differentiating x^n where n is a negative integer	117
3D	The graph of the derivative function	120
3E	The chain rule	125
3F	Differentiating rational powers	128
	Review of Chapter 3	132

4 Revision of preliminary topics **139**

4A	Short-response questions	139
4B	Multiple-choice questions	149

UNIT 3

5 Differentiation of exponential and logarithmic functions **157**

5A	Revision of exponential functions	158
5B	The exponential function $f(x) = e^x$	164
5C	Revision of exponential equations	168
5D	Logarithms and the logarithm laws	170
5E	Graphing logarithmic functions	177
5F	Solving equations involving exponential and logarithmic functions	181
5G	Differentiation of e^x	187
5H	Differentiation of the natural logarithm function	194

5I	Determining rules for the graphs of exponential and logarithmic functions	197
5J	Modelling data using a graphics calculator	200
	Review of Chapter 5	212

6 Differentiation of trigonometric functions and differentiation rules **222**

6A	Differentiation of trigonometric functions	223
6B	The product rule	228
6C	The quotient rule	232
6D	Tangents and normals	235
6E	Rates of change	240
6F	Motion in a straight line	246
	Review of Chapter 6	253

7 Further applications of differentiation **262**

7A	The second derivative and acceleration	263
7B	Stationary points	268
7C	Types of stationary points	273
7D	Using the second derivative in graph sketching	282
7E	Absolute maximum and minimum values	292
7F	Optimisation problems	295
	Review of Chapter 7	306

8 Introduction to integration **320**

8A	Anti-differentiation of polynomial functions	321
8B	Anti-differentiation of power functions	326
8C	The anti-derivative of $(ax + b)^r$	328
8D	The anti-derivative of e^{kx}	331
8E	Anti-differentiation of trigonometric functions	332

8F	Further anti-differentiation techniques	334
8G	Applications of integration	338
8H	Applications of integration to motion in a straight line	340
	Review of Chapter 8	345
9	Discrete random variables	352
9A	Review of probability	353
9B	Review of conditional probability and independence	363
9C	Discrete random variables	371
9D	Expected value, variance and standard deviation	382
9E	Bernoulli sequences and the binomial distribution	394
	Review of Chapter 9	407
10	Revision of Unit 3	420
10A	Short-response questions	420
10B	Multiple-choice questions	438
UNIT 4		
11	Further integration	451
11A	Approximating the area under a graph	452
11B	Determining the exact area: the definite integral	459
11C	Signed area	464
11D	Integration of more families of functions	471
11E	Further integration techniques	475
11F	The area of a region between two curves	478
11G	Applications of integration	483
11H	Additional problems on velocity-time graphs	490
11I	The area under a graph as the limit of a sum (Optional)	497
	Review of Chapter 11	499

12	Trigonometry using the sine and cosine rules	513
12A	Reviewing trigonometry	514
12B	The sine rule	520
12C	The cosine rule	524
12D	The area of a triangle	528
12E	Angles of elevation, angles of depression and bearings	531
12F	Problems in three dimensions	535
12G	Angles between planes and more complex 3D problems	539
	Review of Chapter 12	543
13	Continuous random variables and the normal distribution	551
13A	Introduction to continuous random variables	552
13B	Percentiles of a continuous distribution	564
13C	Expected value and variance	569
13D	Properties of mean and variance	577
13E	Cumulative distribution functions	580
13F	The probability density function of the normal distribution . .	585
13G	Standardisation	592
13H	Determining normal probabilities	598
13I	Solving problems using the normal distribution	604
	Review of Chapter 13	609
14	Sampling and proportions	623
14A	Populations and samples	624
14B	Investigating the variability of random samples	632
14C	The distribution of the sample proportion	643
14D	The normal approximation to the distribution of the sample proportions	653
	Review of Chapter 14	661

15	Interval estimates for proportions	667
15A	Confidence intervals for the population proportion	668
15B	Varying the level of confidence	675
15C	Margin of error	679
	Review of Chapter 15	686
16	Revision of Unit 4	695
16A	Short-response questions	695
16B	Multiple-choice questions	713
17	Revision of Units 3 and 4	724
17A	Short-response questions	724
17B	Multiple-choice questions	747
A	The problem-solving and modelling task	753
A1	About the problem solving and modelling task	753
A2	A content guide for the PSMT report	754
	Glossary	767
	Answers	778

Online appendices accessed through the Interactive Textbook or PDF Textbook

B Coordinate geometry and transformations

- B1** Linear coordinate geometry
- B2** Translations
- B3** Dilations and reflections
- B4** Combinations of transformations
- B5** Using transformations to sketch graphs
- B6** Transformations of power functions
- B7** Determining the rule for a function from its graph
- Review of Appendix B

C Trigonometric functions

- C1** Measuring angles in degrees and radians
 - C2** Defining sine, cosine and tangent
 - C3** Further symmetry properties and the Pythagorean identity
 - C4** Graphs of sine and cosine
 - C5** Solutions of trigonometric equations
 - C6** Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h)$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h)$
 - C7** Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm k$
 - C8** Determining rules for graphs of trigonometric functions
 - C9** The tangent function
 - C10** Applications of trigonometric functions
- Review of Appendix C

D Counting methods and the binomial theorem

- D1** Counting methods
- D2** Summation notation
- D3** The binomial theorem

Appendix E: Guide to the TI-Nspire

Appendix F: Guide to the Casio

Appendix G: Guide to the TI84

About the lead author and consultants

About the lead author

Michael Evans was a consultant to ACARA on the writing of the Australian Curriculum from which the Queensland syllabus has evolved. He is a consultant with the Australian Mathematical Sciences Institute, and is coordinating author of the ICE-EM 7–10 series also published by Cambridge.

He has also been active in the Australian Mathematics Trust, being involved with the writing of enrichment material and competition questions. He has many years' experience as a Chief Examiner and Chairperson of examination panels.

About the consultants

As at the time this edition was published:

Joel Speranza is currently working with the Toowoomba Catholic Schools Office, delivering Specialist Mathematics hybridly to students from eight different regional schools. He also creates supporting material for the senior mathematics curriculum through the website Maths Video Australia.

Noel Covill is Head of Mathematics at St Joseph's College, Gregory Terrace

Trevor Redmond is Head of Mathematics at Somerville House, South Brisbane

Fiona Steele is Head of Mathematics & Digital Technology at St Michael's College, Merrimac

Melanie Chin is a senior mathematics teacher at Brisbane Grammar School, and Secretary of the Queensland Association of Mathematics Teachers

Introduction and overview

Cambridge Senior Mathematics for Queensland Mathematical Methods Units 3 & 4 provides complete and aligned coverage of the QCAA syllabus to be implemented in Year 12 from 2026. Its four components – the print book, downloadable PDF textbook, online Interactive Textbook (ITB) and Online Teaching Resource (OTS) – contain a huge range of resources, including worked solutions, available to schools in a single package at one convenient price (the OTS is included with class adoptions, conditions apply). There are no extra subscriptions or per-student charges to pay.

New features in the second edition include:

- **Learning intentions** complemented by a Skills Checklist at the end of each chapter that allows you to check your understanding and tick off your achievements
- **Technology-free and technology-active** short-response and multiple-choice questions are clearly labelled in Chapter review sections and Unit Revision chapters
- **The problem-solving and modelling task (Appendix A):** Appendix A is written by consultant Joel Speranza, providing advice on how to complete problem-solving and modelling tasks (PSMTs). This is supported by video resources accessed through QR codes and in the Interactive Textbook.

The Second Edition also features significantly revised and updated material from the first edition, including:

Review of Year 11: The first four chapters can be considered as a review of material covered in Year 11. The topics covered in these chapters are essential knowledge before proceeding with the rest of the book. You may choose to complete these chapters prior to the beginning of Year 12.

Degree of difficulty classification of questions: in the exercises, questions are classified as simple familiar **SF**, complex familiar **CF**, or complex unfamiliar **CU** questions and are indicated by a strip along the margin. The revision chapters described below also contain model questions for each of these categories.

Three revision chapters of material covered in the course: The first two of these chapters each cover an entire unit, and the last revision chapter contains questions revising the whole book. Each is divided into technology-free and technology-active short-response and multiple-choice questions. The revised set of chapter tests provided within the Online Teaching Suite are now also categorised into technology-free and technology-active short-response and multiple-choice questions.

Calculator guidance: Throughout the book there is guidance for the use of the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS and the Casio fx-CG20AU and fx-CG50AU graphics calculators for the solution of problems. Guidance on the TI-84Plus CE is included in the Interactive Textbook, accessed via icons next to the TI-Nspire boxes. There are also online guides for the general use of each of these calculators.

Assessment: Examination practice questions and various assessment tasks are provided in the revision chapters and the Online Teaching Suite.

Interactive Textbook (ITB)

The Interactive Textbook (ITB) is an online HTML version of the print textbook powered by the HOTmaths platform, included with the print book or available as a separate purchase.

Updated and revised for the new syllabus, the Interactive Textbook includes:

- **Video demonstrations** of all worked examples
- **Quick quizzes** containing auto-marked multiple-choice questions have been thoroughly updated and revised, enabling students to check their understanding.
- A **success criteria** checklist at the end of each chapter with linked questions and examples available for download
- Comprehensive **worked solutions** for all questions are provided in the Interactive Textbook as an option that teacher can choose to enable for their students.
- **Downloadable skillsheets** can be used for homework or in class to focus on a single skill or small set of related skills.
- **Definitions** pop up for key terms in the text, and are also provided in a dictionary.

The Online Teaching Suite (OTS)

The Online Teaching Suite is automatically enabled with a teacher account and is integrated with the teacher's copy of the Interactive Textbook. All the teacher resources are in one place for easy access. The features include:

- A teacher's view of a student's working and self-assessment which enables them to modify the student's self-assessed marks, and respond where students flag that they had difficulty.
- The **task manager** allowing to direct students on a custom activity sequence based on their scores in measurable activities

- Quickly create customised tests from a bank of multiple-choice questions using the **test generator**. Tests are auto-marked in the Interactive Textbook or can be printed and used for homework or assessment practice.
- An expanded and revised suite of **chapter tests** and **assignments**
- Editable **curriculum grids** and **teaching programs**.
- A brand-new **Exam Generator**, allowing the creation of customised printable and online trial exams (see below for more).

More about the Exam Generator

A new Exam Generator, available at no extra charge within the Online Teaching Suite, will include a comprehensive bank of QCAA exam questions, augmented by exam-style questions written by experts, to allow teachers to create custom trial exams.

Custom exams can model end-of-year exams, or target specific topics or types of questions that students may be having difficulty with.

Features include:

- Filtering by question-type, topic, chapter and degree of difficulty
- Searchable by key words
- Answers provided to teachers
- Worked solutions for all questions
- QCAA marking scheme
- Multiple-choice exams can be auto-marked if completed online, with filterable reports
- All custom exams can be printed and completed under exam-like conditions or used as revision.

Acknowledgements

The author and publisher wish to thank the following sources for permission to reproduce material:

Cover: © Getty Images / Andrei Akushevich.

Images: © Getty Images / Chapter 1 Opener, Richard Drury / Chapter 2 Opener, zhengshun tang / Chapter 3 Opener, Eugene Mymrin / Chapter 4 Opener, bgblue / Chapter 5 Opener, Jyoti Sangya / Chapter 6 Opener, dianaarturovna / Chapter 7 Opener, Flavio Coelho / Chapter 8 Opener, Hector Roqueta Rivero / Chapter 9 Opener, alanphillips / Chapter 10 Opener, oxygen / Chapter 11 Opener, Jason marz / Chapter 12 Opener, IncrediVFX / Chapter 13 Opener, oxygen / Chapter 14 Opener, Xuanyu Han / Chapter 15 Opener, Pattarapol Yimaim / EyeEm / Chapter 16 Opener, Abstract Aerial Art / Chapter 17 Opener, oxygen.

Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright. The publisher apologises for any accidental infringement and welcomes information that would redress this situation.

Mathematical Methods Syllabus 2025, © State of Queensland (QCAA) 2019, licensed under CC BY 4.0.

1

Refresher on functions and relations

Chapter contents

- ▶ **1A** Set notation and sets of numbers
- ▶ **1B** Identifying and describing relations and functions
- ▶ **1C** Implied domains and types of functions
- ▶ **1D** Combining functions
- ▶ **1E** Power functions
- ▶ **1F** Applications of functions

The first four chapters of this book together with Appendix B and Appendix C revise and extend some important concepts and techniques from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2 that will be built on in Units 3 & 4.

In this chapter we introduce the notation that will be used throughout the rest of the book. You will have met much of it before and this will serve as revision. The language introduced in this chapter helps to express important mathematical ideas precisely. Initially they may seem unnecessarily abstract, but later in the book you will determine them used more and more in practical situations.

In Chapter 2 and Appendices B and C we study different families of functions and their graphs. We revise transformations of the plane in Appendix B, and then study polynomial functions in Chapter 2.

1A Set notation and sets of numbers

Learning intentions

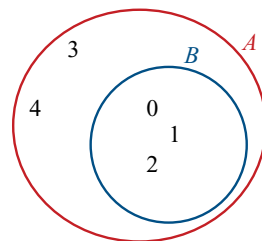
- ▶ To be able to read and use the notation of sets.
- ▶ To be able to identify and describe subsets of the real numbers.
- ▶ To be able to represent subsets of the real numbers on a number line.

Set notation

Set notation is used widely in mathematics and in this book where appropriate. This section summarises all of the set notation you will need.

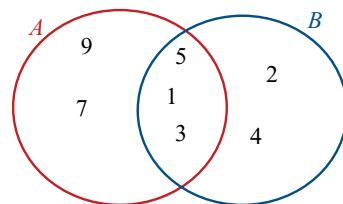
- A **set** is a collection of objects.
- The objects that are in the set are known as **elements** or members of the set.
- If x is an element of a set A , we write $x \in A$. This can also be read as ‘ x is a member of the set A ’ or ‘ x belongs to A ’ or ‘ x is in A ’.
- If x is **not an element** of A , we write $x \notin A$.
- A set B is called a **subset** of a set A if every element of B is also an element of A . We write $B \subseteq A$. This expression can also be read as ‘ B is contained in A ’ or ‘ A contains B ’.

For example, let $B = \{0, 1, 2\}$ and $A = \{0, 1, 2, 3, 4\}$. Then $3 \in A$, $3 \notin B$ and $B \subseteq A$ as illustrated in the Venn diagram opposite.



- The set of elements common to two sets A and B is called the **intersection** of A and B , and is denoted by $A \cap B$. Thus $x \in A \cap B$ if and only if $x \in A$ and $x \in B$.
- If the sets A and B have no elements in common, we say A and B are **disjoint**, and write $A \cap B = \emptyset$. The set $\emptyset$ is called the **empty set**.
- The set of elements that are in A or in B (or in both) is called the **union** of sets A and B , and is denoted by $A \cup B$.

For example, let $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$ and $B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5\}$. The intersection and union are illustrated by the Venn diagram shown opposite:



$$A \cap B = \{1, 3, 5\} \quad A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 7, 9\}$$



Example 1

For $A = \{1, 2, 3, 7\}$ and $B = \{3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$, determine:

- a** $A \cap B$ **b** $A \cup B$

Solution

a $A \cap B = \{3, 7\}$

b $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7\}$

Explanation

The elements 3 and 7 are common to sets A and B .

The set $A \cup B$ contains all elements that belong to A or B (or both).

Sets of numbers

We begin by recalling that the elements of $\{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$ are called **natural numbers**, and the elements of $\{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$ are called **integers**.

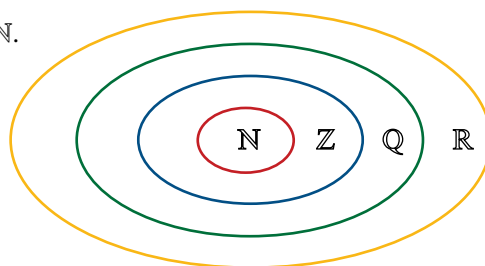
The numbers of the form $\frac{p}{q}$, with p and q integers, $q \neq 0$, are called **rational numbers**.

The real numbers which are not rational are called **irrational** (e.g. π and $\sqrt{2}$).

The rationals may be characterised as being those real numbers that can be written as a terminating or recurring decimal.

- The set of real numbers will be denoted by $\mathbb{R}$.
- The set of rational numbers will be denoted by $\mathbb{Q}$.
- The set of integers will be denoted by $\mathbb{Z}$.
- The set of natural numbers will be denoted by $\mathbb{N}$.

It is clear that $\mathbb{N} \subseteq \mathbb{Z} \subseteq \mathbb{Q} \subseteq \mathbb{R}$, and this may be represented by the diagram on the right.



Describing a set

It is not always possible to list the elements of a set. There is an alternative way of describing sets that is especially useful for infinite sets.

The set of all x such that ____ is denoted by $\{x : \text{____}\}$.

For example:

- $\{x : 0 < x < 1\}$ is the set of all real numbers strictly between 0 and 1
- $\{x : x \geq 3\}$ is the set of all real numbers greater than or equal to 3
- $\{x : x \neq 0\}$ is the set of all real numbers other than 0.

The following are subsets of the real numbers for which we have special notation:

Positive real numbers $\mathbb{R}^+ = \{x : x > 0\}$

Negative real numbers $\mathbb{R}^- = \{x : x < 0\}$

Set difference

Sometimes we want to describe a set of real numbers by specifying which numbers are left out. We can do this using **set difference**.

The set $A \setminus B$ contains the elements of A that are not elements of B .

For example:

- $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ is the set of all real numbers excluding 0
- $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$ is the set of all real numbers excluding 1
- $\mathbb{N} \setminus \{5, 7\}$ is the set of all natural numbers excluding 5 and 7.

Interval notation

Among the most important subsets of $\mathbb{R}$ are the **intervals**. The following is an exhaustive list of the various types of intervals and the standard notation for them. You can stipulate an interval by simply using inequality signs.

We suppose that a and b are real numbers with $a < b$.

$(a, b) = \{x : a < x < b\}$ or without set notation $a < x < b$

$[a, b] = \{x : a \leq x \leq b\}$ or without set notation $a \leq x \leq b$

$(a, b] = \{x : a < x \leq b\}$ or without set notation $a < x \leq b$

$[a, b) = \{x : a \leq x < b\}$ or without set notation $a \leq x < b$

$(a, \infty) = \{x : a < x\}$ or without set notation $x > a$

$[a, \infty) = \{x : a \leq x\}$ or without set notation $x \geq a$

$(-\infty, b) = \{x : x < b\}$ or without set notation $x < b$

$(-\infty, b] = \{x : x \leq b\}$ or without set notation $x \leq b$

Intervals may be represented by diagrams as shown in Example 2.



Example 2

Illustrate each of the following intervals of real numbers:

a $-2 \leq x \leq 3$, interval notation $[-2, 3]$

b $-3 < x \leq 4$, interval notation $(-3, 4]$

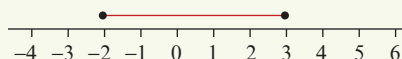
c $x \leq 5$, interval notation $(-\infty, 5]$

d $-2 < x < 4$, interval notation $(-2, 4)$

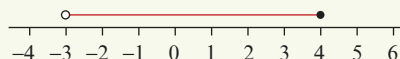
e $x > -3$, interval notation $(-3, \infty)$

Solution

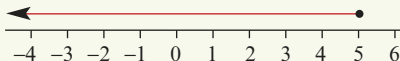
a $-2 \leq x \leq 3$, interval notation $[-2, 3]$



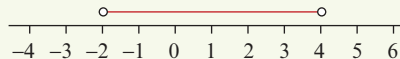
b $-3 < x \leq 4$, interval notation $(-3, 4]$



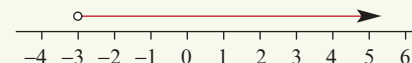
c $x \leq 5$, interval notation $(-\infty, 5]$



d $-2 < x < 4$, interval notation $(-2, 4)$



e $x > -3$, interval notation $(-3, \infty)$



Explanation

The square brackets indicate that the endpoints are included; this is shown with closed circles.

The round bracket indicates that the left endpoint is not included; this is shown with an open circle. The right endpoint is included.

The symbol $-\infty$ indicates that the interval continues indefinitely (i.e. forever) to the left; it is read as 'negative infinity'. The right endpoint is included.

Both brackets are round; the endpoints are not included.

The symbol ∞ indicates that the interval continues indefinitely (i.e. forever) to the right; it is read as 'infinity'. The left endpoint is not included.

Note: The 'closed' circle ($\bullet$) indicates that the number is included.

The 'open' circle ($\circ$) indicates that the number is not included.

Summary 1A

- If x is an element of a set A , we write $x \in A$.
- If x is not an element of a set A , we write $x \notin A$.
- If every element of B is an element of A , we say B is a **subset** of A and write $B \subseteq A$.
- **Intersection** The set $A \cap B$ contains the elements common to A and B .
- **Union** The set $A \cup B$ contains the elements that are in A or in B (or in both).
- **Set difference** The set $A \setminus B$ contains the elements of A that are not in B .
- If the sets A and B have no elements in common, we say A and B are **disjoint** and write $A \cap B = \emptyset$. The set $\emptyset$ is called the **empty set**.
- Sets of numbers:
 - Real numbers: $\mathbb{R}$
 - Rational numbers: $\mathbb{Q}$
 - Integers: $\mathbb{Z}$
 - Natural numbers: $\mathbb{N}$
- For real numbers a and b with $a < b$, we can consider the following **intervals**:

$(a, b) = \{x : a < x < b\}$	$[a, b] = \{x : a \leq x \leq b\}$
$(a, b] = \{x : a < x \leq b\}$	$[a, b) = \{x : a \leq x < b\}$
$(a, \infty) = \{x : a < x\}$	$[a, \infty) = \{x : a \leq x\}$
$(-\infty, b) = \{x : x < b\}$	$(-\infty, b] = \{x : x \leq b\}$

Exercise 1A

Example 1

- 1 For $A = \{3, 8, 11, 18, 22, 23, 24\}$, $B = \{8, 11, 25, 30, 32\}$ and $C = \{1, 8, 11, 25, 30\}$, determine:

a $A \cap B$

b $A \cap B \cap C$

c $A \cup C$

d $A \cup B$

e $A \cup B \cup C$

f $(A \cap B) \cup C$

Example 2

- 2 Illustrate each of the following intervals on a number line.

a $-2 \leq x < 3$ (written with interval notation $[-2, 3)$)

b $x \leq 4$ (written with interval notation $(-\infty, 4]$)

c $-3 \leq x \leq -1$ (written with interval notation $[-3, -1]$)

d $x > -3$ (written with interval notation $(-3, \infty)$)

e $-4 < x < 3$ (written with interval notation $(-4, 3)$)

f $-1 < x \leq 4$ (written with interval notation $(-1, 4]$)

- 3 For $X = \{2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11\}$, $Y = \{7, 9, 15, 19, 23\}$ and $Z = \{2, 7, 9, 15, 19\}$, determine:

a $X \cap Y$

b $X \cap Y \cap Z$

c $X \cup Y$

d $X \setminus Y$

e $Z \setminus Y$

f $X \cap Z$

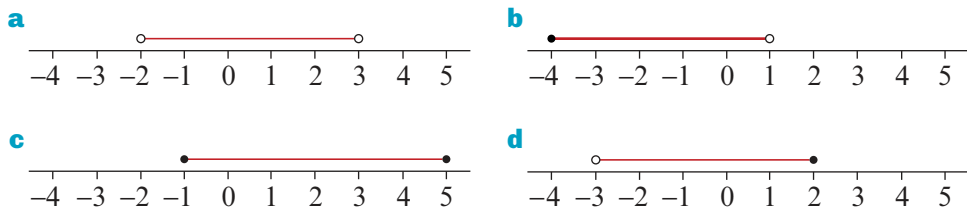
g $[-2, 8] \cap X$

h $(-3, 8] \cap Y$

i $(2, \infty) \cap Y$

j $(3, \infty) \cup Y$

- 4 For $X = \{a, b, c, d, e\}$ and $Y = \{a, e, i, o, u\}$, determine:
- a** $X \cap Y$ **b** $X \cup Y$ **c** $X \setminus Y$ **d** $Y \setminus X$
- 5 Use the appropriate interval notation (i.e. $[a, b]$, (a, b) , etc.) to describe each of the following sets.
- a** $\{x : -3 \leq x < 1\}$ **b** $\{x : -4 < x \leq 5\}$ **c** $\{y : -\sqrt{2} < y < 0\}$
- d** $\left\{x : -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} < x < \sqrt{3}\right\}$ **e** $\{x : x < -3\}$ **f** $\mathbb{R}^+$
- g** $\mathbb{R}^-$ **h** $\{x : x \geq -2\}$
- 6 Describe each of the following subsets of the real number line using the interval notation $[a, b]$, (a, b) , etc.



- 7 Illustrate each of the following intervals on a number line.
- a** $-3 < x \leq 2$ (written with interval notation $(-3, 2]$)
- b** $-4 < x < 3$ (written with interval notation $(-4, 3)$)
- c** $x < 3$ (written with interval notation $(-\infty, 3)$)
- d** $-4 \leq x \leq -1$ (written with interval notation $[-4, -1]$)
- e** $x \geq -4$ (written with interval notation $[-4, \infty)$)
- f** $-2 \leq x < 5$ (written with interval notation $[-2, 5)$)
- 8 For each of the following, use one number line on which to represent the sets.
- a** $[-3, 6]$, $[2, 4]$, $[-3, 6] \cap [2, 4]$ **b** $[-3, 6]$, $\mathbb{R} \setminus [-3, 6]$
- c** $[-2, \infty)$, $(-\infty, 6]$, $[-2, \infty) \cap (-\infty, 6]$ **d** $(-8, -2)$, $\mathbb{R}^- \setminus (-8, -2)$

1B Identifying and describing relations and functions

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to identify and describe relations.
- ▶ To be able to identify and describe functions,

Relations, domain and range

An **ordered pair**, denoted (x, y) , is a pair of elements x and y in which x is considered to be the first coordinate and y the second coordinate.

A **relation** is a set of ordered pairs. The following are examples of relations:

- a** $S = \{(1, 1), (1, 2), (3, 4), (5, 6)\}$
- b** $T = \{(-3, 5), (4, 12), (5, 12), (7, -6)\}$

Every relation determines two sets:

- The set of all the first coordinates of the ordered pairs is called the **domain**.
- The set of all the second coordinates of the ordered pairs is called the **range**.

For the above examples:

- a** domain of $S = \{1, 3, 5\}$, range of $S = \{1, 2, 4, 6\}$
- b** domain of $T = \{-3, 4, 5, 7\}$, range of $T = \{5, 12, -6\}$

Some relations may be defined by a **rule** relating the elements in the domain to their corresponding elements in the range. In order to define the relation fully, we need to specify both the rule and the domain. For example, the set

$$\{(x, y) : y = x + 1, x \in \{1, 2, 3, 4\}\}$$

is the relation

$$\{(1, 2), (2, 3), (3, 4), (4, 5)\}$$

The domain is the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ and the range is the set $\{2, 3, 4, 5\}$.

Describing relations

Often set notation is not used when describing a relation. For example:

- $\{(x, y) : y = x^2\}$ is written as $y = x^2$
- $\{(x, y) : y = \sqrt{x}, x \geq 0\}$ is written as $y = \sqrt{x}, x \geq 0$.

When the domain of a relation is not explicitly stated, it is understood to consist of all real numbers for which the defining rule has meaning. For example:

- $y = x^2$ is assumed to have domain $\mathbb{R}$
- $y = \sqrt{x}$ is assumed to have domain $x \geq 0$.



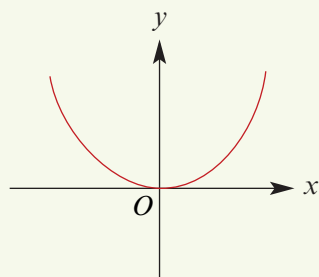
Example 3

Sketch the graph of each of the following relations and state the domain and range of each.

- a** $y = x^2$
- b** $\{(x, y) : y \leq x + 1\}$
- c** $\{(-2, -1), (-1, -1), (-1, 1), (0, 1), (1, -1)\}$
- d** $x^2 + y^2 = 1$
- e** $2x + 3y = 6, x \geq 0$
- f** $y = 2x - 1, -1 \leq x \leq 2$

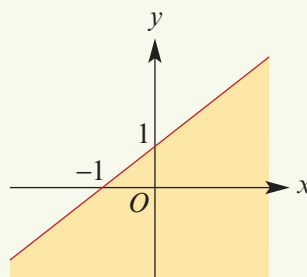
Solution

a

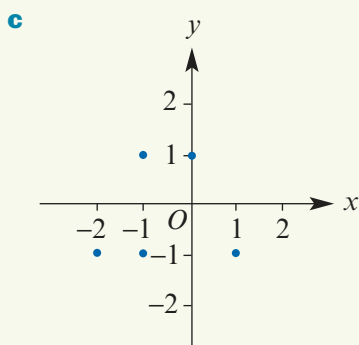


Domain = $\mathbb{R}$; Range = $[0, \infty)$

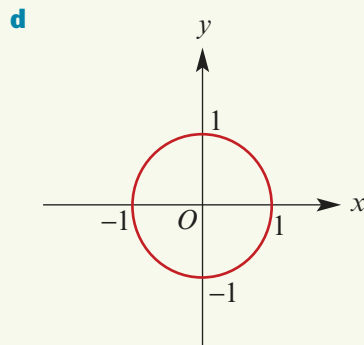
b



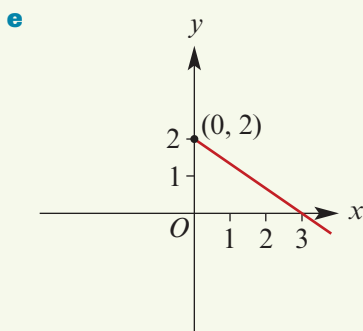
Domain = $\mathbb{R}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}$



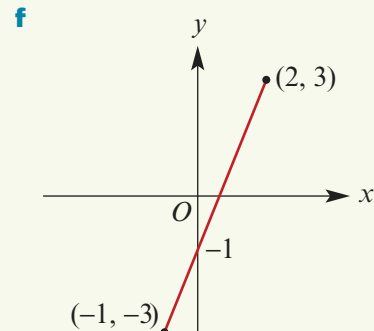
Domain = $\{-2, -1, 0, 1\}$;
Range = $\{-1, 1\}$



Domain = $[-1, 1]$ or $-1 \leq x \leq 1$;
Range = $[-1, 1]$ or $-1 \leq y \leq 1$



Domain = $[0, \infty)$ or $x \geq 0$;
Range = $(-\infty, 2]$ or $y \leq 2$



Domain = $[-1, 2]$ or $-1 \leq x \leq 2$; Range = $[-3, 3]$ or $-3 \leq y \leq 3$

Functions

A **function** is a relation such that for each x -value there is only one corresponding y -value. This means that, if (a, b) and (a, c) are ordered pairs of a function, then $b = c$. In other words, a function cannot contain two different ordered pairs with the same first coordinate.



Example 4

Which of the following sets of ordered pairs defines a function?

a $S = \{(-3, -4), (-1, -1), (-6, 7), (1, 5)\}$ **b** $T = \{(-4, 1), (-4, -1), (-6, 7), (-6, 8)\}$

Solution

a S is a function, because for each x -value there is only one y -value.

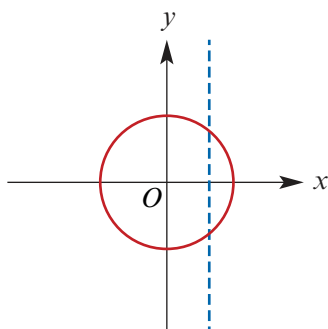
b T is not a function, because there is an x -value with two different y -values: the two ordered pairs $(-4, 1)$ and $(-4, -1)$ in T have the same first coordinate.

One way to identify whether a relation is a function is to draw a graph of the relation and then apply the following test.

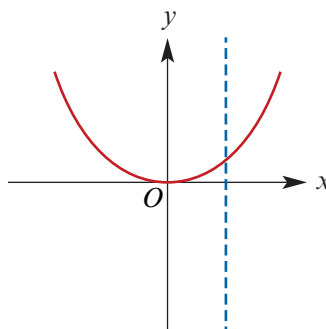
Vertical-line test

If a vertical line can be drawn anywhere on the graph and it only ever intersects the graph a maximum of once, then the relation is a **function**.

For example:



$$x^2 + y^2 = 1 \text{ is not a function}$$



$$y = x^2 \text{ is a function}$$

Functions are usually denoted by lowercase letters such as f , g , h .

If f is a function, then for each x in the domain of f there is a unique element y in the range such that $(x, y) \in f$. The element y is called ‘the **image** of x under f ’ or ‘the **value** of f at x ’, and the element x is called ‘a **pre-image** of y ’.

For $(x, y) \in f$, the element y is determined by x , and so we also use the notation $f(x)$, read as ‘ f of x ’, in place of y .

For example, instead of $y = 2x + 1$ we can write $f(x) = 2x + 1$. Then $f(5)$ means the y -value obtained when $x = 5$. Therefore $f(5) = 2 \times 5 + 1 = 11$.

By incorporating this notation, we have an alternative way of writing functions:

- For the function with rule $y = x^2$ and domain $\mathbb{R}$, we write $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$.
- For the function with rule $y = 2x - 1$ and domain $[0, 4]$, we write $f(x) = 2x - 1$, $x \in [0, 4]$.

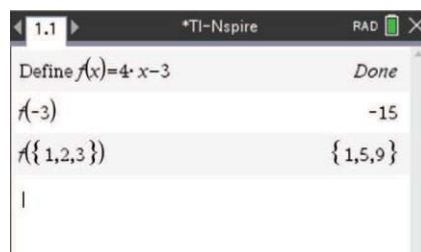
If the domain is $\mathbb{R}$, we often just write the rule. For example: $f(x) = x^2$.

With this notation for functions, the domain of f is written as **dom** f and range of f as **ran** f .



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

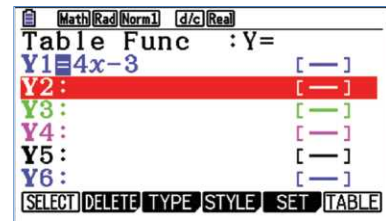
- Use **menu** > **Actions** > **Define** to define the function $f(x) = 4x - 3$.
- To determine the value of $f(-3)$, type $f(-3)$ followed by **enter**.
- To evaluate $f(1)$, $f(2)$ and $f(3)$, type $f(\{1, 2, 3\})$ followed by **enter**.



Using the Casio

To display a table of values for the function $f(x) = 4x - 3$:

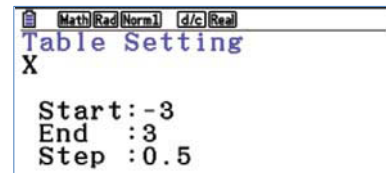
- Press **MENU** **7** to select **Table** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = 4x - 3$ in Y1:
 $\boxed{4} \boxed{X}, \boxed{0}, \boxed{-} \boxed{3} \boxed{EXE}$
- Select **Table** **F6**.



X	Y1
1	1
2	5
3	9
4	13

To change the x -values used in the table:

- Press **EXIT** to return to the function list.
- Select **Set** **F5** to adjust the Table Settings.
 For example, set the x -values to start at -3 and end at 3 with a step size of 0.5 :
 $\boxed{(-)} \boxed{3} \boxed{EXE} \boxed{3} \boxed{EXE} \boxed{0} \boxed{.} \boxed{5} \boxed{EXE} \boxed{EXIT}$
- Select **Table** **F6**. Use the cursor keys to move around the table.



X	Y1
-3	-15
-2.5	-13
-2	-11
-1.5	-9



Example 5

For $f(x) = 2x^2 + x$, determine:

- a** $f(3)$ **b** $f(-2)$ **c** $f(x - 1)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad f(3) &= 2(3)^2 + 3 \\ &= 21 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad f(-2) &= 2(-2)^2 - 2 \\ &= 6 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{c} \quad f(x - 1) &= 2(x - 1)^2 + (x - 1) \\ &= 2(x^2 - 2x + 1) + x - 1 \\ &= 2x^2 - 3x + 1 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 6**

For $g(x) = 3x^2 + 1$:

- a** Determine $g(-2)$ and $g(4)$.
b Express each of the following in terms of x .
i $g(-2x)$ **ii** $g(x-2)$ **iii** $g(x+2)$ **iv** $g(x^2)$

Solution

- a** $g(-2) = 3(-2)^2 + 1 = 13$ and $g(4) = 3(4)^2 + 1 = 49$
b i $g(-2x) = 3(-2x)^2 + 1$
 $\quad = 3 \times 4x^2 + 1$
 $\quad = 12x^2 + 1$
ii $g(x-2) = 3(x-2)^2 + 1$
 $\quad = 3(x^2 - 4x + 4) + 1$
 $\quad = 3x^2 - 12x + 13$
iii $g(x+2) = 3(x+2)^2 + 1$
 $\quad = 3(x^2 + 4x + 4) + 1$
 $\quad = 3x^2 + 12x + 13$
iv $g(x^2) = 3(x^2)^2 + 1$
 $\quad = 3x^4 + 1$

**Example 7**

Consider the function defined by $f(x) = 2x - 4$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

- a** Determine the value of $f(2)$, $f(-1)$ and $f(t)$.
b For what values of t is $f(t) = t$?
c For what values of x is $f(x) \geq x$?
d Determine the pre-image of 6.

Solution

- a** $f(2) = 2(2) - 4 = 0$
 $f(-1) = 2(-1) - 4 = -6$
 $f(t) = 2t - 4$
b $f(t) = t$
 $2t - 4 = t$
 $t - 4 = 0$
 $\therefore t = 4$
c $f(x) \geq x$
 $2x - 4 \geq x$
 $x - 4 \geq 0$
 $\therefore x \geq 4$
d $f(x) = 6$
 $2x - 4 = 6$
 $x = 5$
 Thus 5 is the pre-image of 6.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Use **menu** > **Actions** > **Define** to define the function $f(x) = 2x - 4$.
- Determine $f(2)$ and $f(-1)$ as shown.
- Use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Numerical Solve** to solve the equations $f(t) = t$ and $f(x) = 6$.

1.1	*TI-Nspire	RAD	X
Define $f(x)=2 \cdot x-4$		Done	
$f(\{2,-1\})$			$\{0,-6\}$
nSolve($f(t)=t,t$)			4.
nSolve($f(x)=6,x$)			5.

Using the Casio

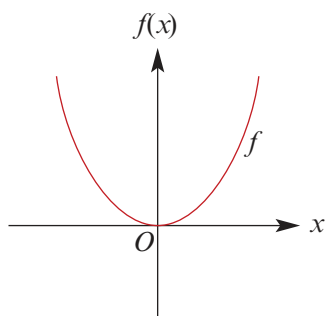
To solve equations involving the function $f(x) = 2x - 4$:

- Press **MENU** **(1)** to select **Run-Matrix** mode.
- Select the numerical solver by going to **Calculation** **(OPTN)** **(F4)**, then **SolveN** **(F5)**.
- To solve $f(x) = 6$, enter the equation $2x - 4 = 6$.
- The equations $f(x) = 0$ and $f(x) = x$ can be solved similarly as shown.

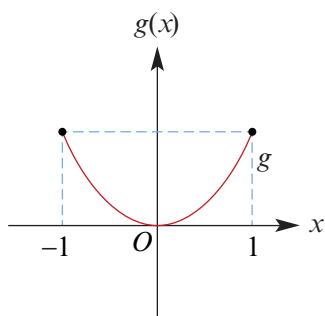
Math	Rad	Norm1	d/c	Real
SolveN(2x-4=6)				{5}
SolveN(2x-4=0)				{2}
SolveN(2x-4=x)				{4}
☐				
Solve d/dx d²/dx² ∫ dx SolveN				▶

Restriction of a function

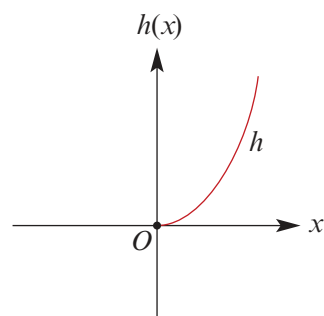
Consider the following functions:



$$f(x) = x^2, x \in \mathbb{R}$$



$$g(x) = x^2, -1 \leq x \leq 1$$



$$h(x) = x^2, x \geq 0$$

The different letters, f , g and h , used to name the functions emphasise the fact that there are three different functions, even though they each have the same rule. They are different because they are defined for different domains.

We call g and h **restrictions** of f , since their domains are subsets of the domain of f .

**Example 8**

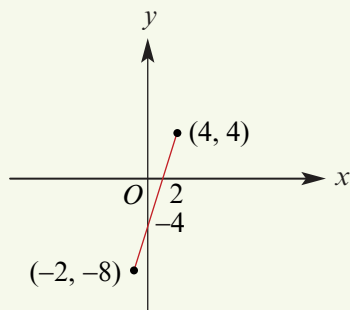
For each of the following, sketch the graph and state the range.

a $f(x) = 2x - 4, -2 \leq x \leq 4$

b $g(x) = x^2, -1 < x \leq 2$

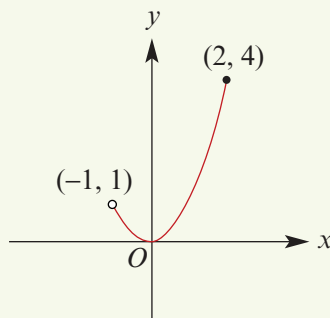
Solution

a



Range : $-8 \leq y \leq 4$

b



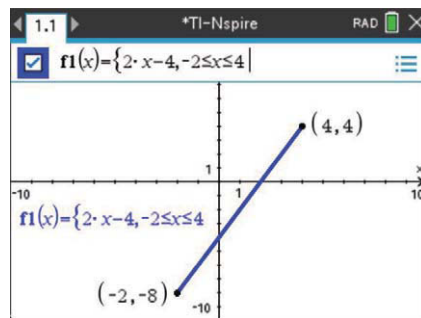
Range : $0 \leq y \leq 4$

**Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS**

Domain restrictions can be entered with the function if required.

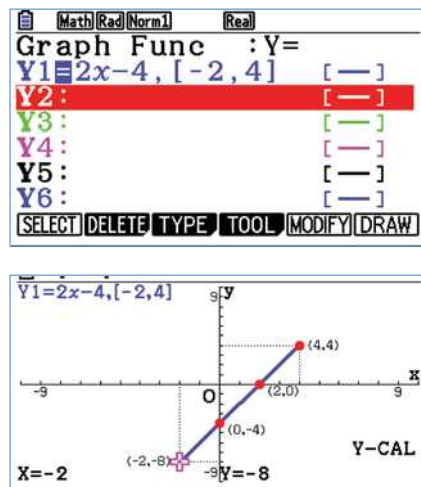
For example: $f1(x) = 2x - 4 \mid -2 \leq x \leq 4$

Note: The 'with' symbol $\mid$ and the inequality signs can be accessed using $\text{ctrl} =$.

**Using the Casio**

- Press MENU 5 to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = 2x - 4$ and the domain $[-2, 4]$ in Y1:
 $\text{2} \text{ X,θ,T } \text{−} \text{4} \text{ ,}$
 $\text{SHIFT} \text{ + } \text{(−)} \text{ 2 } \text{ , } \text{4} \text{ SHIFT } \text{−} \text{ EXE}$
- Select **Draw** F6 to view the graph. Adjust the View Window $\text{SHIFT} \text{ F3}$ if required.
- To label key points on the graph, use the **G-Solve** menu $\text{SHIFT} \text{ F5}$.

Note: When defining a restricted function, always use square brackets to specify the domain (not round brackets).



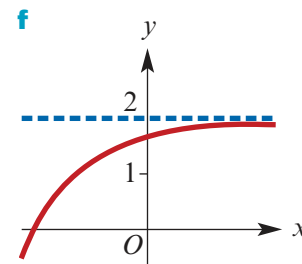
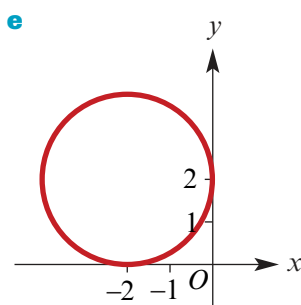
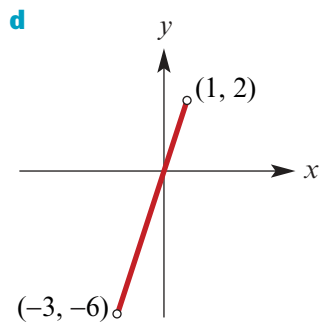
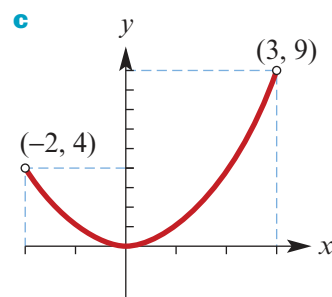
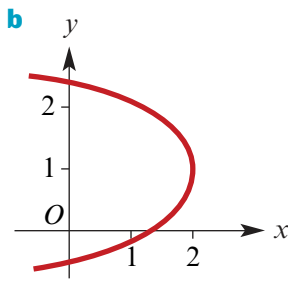
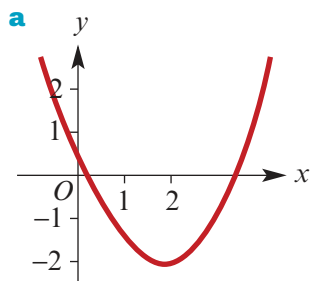
Summary 1B

- A **relation** is a set of ordered pairs.
 - The set of all the first coordinates of the ordered pairs is called the **domain**.
 - The set of all the second coordinates of the ordered pairs is called the **range**.
- Some relations may be defined by a rule relating the elements in the domain to their corresponding elements in the range: for example, $\{(x, y) : y = x + 1, x \geq 0\}$.
- A **function** is a relation such that for each x -value there is only one corresponding y -value.
- **Vertical-line test** If a vertical line can be drawn anywhere on the graph and it only ever intersects the graph a maximum of once, then the relation is a function.
- For an ordered pair (x, y) of a function f , we say that y is the **image** of x under f or that y is the value of f at x , and we say that x is a **pre-image** of y . Since the y -value is determined by the x -value, we use the notation $f(x)$, read as ‘ f of x ’, in place of y .
- Notation for defining functions: For example, we write $f(x) = 2x - 1, x \in [0, 4]$, to define a function f with domain $[0, 4]$ and rule $f(x) = 2x - 1$.
- A **restriction** of a function has the same rule but a ‘smaller’ domain.



Exercise 1B

- 1 State the domain and range for the relations represented by each of the following graphs.



Example 3

- 2 Sketch a graph of each of the following relations and state its domain and range.

a $y = x^2 + 1$

b $x^2 + y^2 = 9$

c $3x + 12y = 24, x \geq 0$

d $y = \sqrt{2x}$

e $y = 5 - x, 0 \leq x \leq 5$

f $y = x^2 + 2, x \in [0, 4]$

g $y = 3x - 2, -1 \leq x \leq 2$

h $y = 4 - x^2$

i $\{(x, y) : y \leq 1 - x\}$

Example 4

- 3 Which of the following relations are functions? State the domain and range for each.

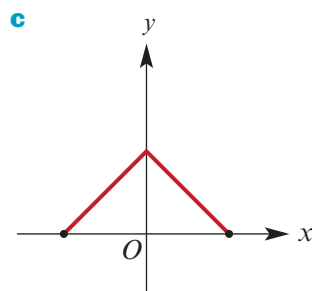
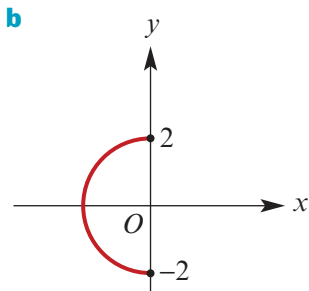
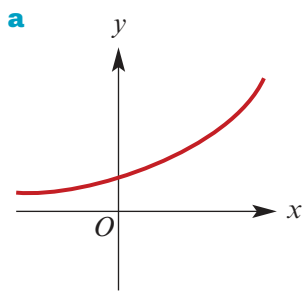
a $\{(-1, 1), (-1, 2), (1, 2), (3, 4), (2, 3)\}$

b $\{(-2, 0), (-1, -1), (0, 3), (1, 5), (2, -4)\}$

c $\{(-1, 1), (-1, 2), (-2, -2), (2, 4), (4, 6)\}$

d $\{(-1, 4), (0, 4), (1, 4), (2, 4), (3, 4)\}$

- 4 Each of the following is the graph of a relation. Which are the graph of a function?



- 5 Which of the following relations are functions? State the domain and range for each.

a $\{(x, 4) : x \in \mathbb{R}\}$

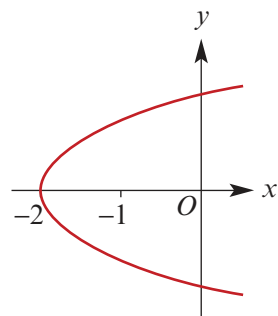
b $\{(2, y) : y \in \mathbb{Z}\}$

c $y = -2x + 4$

d $y \geq 3x + 2$

e $x^2 + y^2 = 16$

- 6 The graph of the relation $y^2 = x + 2$ is shown on the right. From this relation, form two functions and specify the range of each.



Example 5

- 7 Let $f(x) = 2x^2 + 4x$ and $g(x) = 2x^3 + 2x - 6$.

a Evaluate $f(-1)$, $f(2)$, $f(-3)$ and $f(2a)$.

b Evaluate $g(-1)$, $g(2)$, $g(3)$ and $g(a - 1)$.

Example 6

- 8 Consider the function $g(x) = 3x^2 - 2$.

a Determine $g(-2)$ and $g(4)$.

b Express the following in terms of x :

i $g(-2x)$

ii $g(x - 2)$

iii $g(x + 2)$

iv $g(x^2)$

Example 7

- 9 Consider the function $f(x) = 2x - 3$. Determine:

a the image of 3

b the pre-image of 11

c the value of x such that $f(x) = 4x$

d the values of x such that $f(x) > x$

- 10** Consider the functions $g(x) = 6x + 7$ and $h(x) = 3x - 2$. Determine the values of x such that:

a $g(x) = h(x)$ **b** $g(x) > h(x)$ **c** $h(x) = 0$

Example 8

- 11** Sketch the graph of each of the following and state the range of each.

a $y = x + 1, x \geq 2$ **b** $y = -x + 1, x \geq 2$
c $y = 2x + 1, x \geq -4$ **d** $y = 3x + 2, x < 3$
e $y = x + 1, x \in (-\infty, 3]$ **f** $y = 3x - 1, x \in [-2, 6]$
g $y = -3x - 1, x \in [-5, -1]$ **h** $y = 5x - 1, x \in (-2, 4)$

- 12** For $f(x) = 2x^2 - 6x + 1$ and $g(x) = 3 - 2x$:

a evaluate $f(2)$, $f(-3)$ and $f(-2)$ **b** evaluate $g(-2)$, $g(1)$ and $g(-3)$.
c express the following in terms of a .
i $f(a)$ **ii** $f(a + 2)$ **iii** $g(-a)$ **iv** $g(2a)$
v $f(5 - a)$ **vi** $f(2a)$ **vii** $g(a) + f(a)$ **viii** $g(a) - f(a)$

- 13** For $f(x) = 3x^2 + x - 2$, determine the values of x such that:

a $f(x) = 0$ **b** $f(x) = x$ **c** $f(x) = -2$
d $f(x) > 0$ **e** $f(x) > x$ **f** $f(x) \leq -2$

- 14** For $f(x) = x^2 + x$, determine:

a $f(-2)$ **b** $f(2)$
c $f(-a)$ in terms of a **d** $f(a) + f(-a)$ in terms of a
e $f(a) - f(-a)$ in terms of a **f** $f(a^2)$ in terms of a

- 15** For $g(x) = 3x - 2$, determine the values of x such that:

a $g(x) = 4$ **b** $g(x) > 4$ **c** $g(x) = a$
d $g(-x) = 6$ **e** $g(2x) = 4$ **f** $\frac{1}{g(x)} = 6$

- 16** Determine the value of k for each of the following if $f(3) = 3$, where:

a $f(x) = kx - 1$ **b** $f(x) = x^2 - k$ **c** $f(x) = x^2 + kx + 1$
d $f(x) = \frac{k}{x}$ **e** $f(x) = kx^2$ **f** $f(x) = 1 - kx^2$

- 17** Determine the values of x for which the given functions have the given value:

a $f(x) = 5x - 4, f(x) = 2$ **b** $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}, f(x) = 5$
c $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}, f(x) = 9$ **d** $f(x) = x + \frac{1}{x}, f(x) = 2$
e $f(x) = (x + 1)(x - 2), f(x) = 0$

1C Implied domains and types of functions

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to identify and describe implied domains.
- ▶ To be able to identify and describe piecewise defined functions.
- ▶ To be able to identify odd and even functions.

Implied domains

If the domain of a function is not specified, then the domain is the largest subset of $\mathbb{R}$ for which the rule is defined; this is called the **implied domain** or the **maximal domain**. Thus, for the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, the implied domain is $[0, \infty)$. We write:

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x}, \quad x \in [0, \infty)$$



Example 9

Determine the implied domain and the corresponding range for the functions with rules:

a $f(x) = 2x - 3$ **b** $f(x) = \frac{1}{(x-2)^2}$ **c** $f(x) = \sqrt{x+6}$ **d** $f(x) = \sqrt{4-x^2}$

Solution

a $f(x) = 2x - 3$ is defined for all x . The implied domain is $\mathbb{R}$. The range is $\mathbb{R}$.

b $f(x) = \frac{1}{(x-2)^2}$ is defined for $x \neq 2$. The implied domain is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$. The range is $\mathbb{R}^+$.

c $f(x) = \sqrt{x+6}$ is defined for $x+6 \geq 0$, i.e. for $x \geq -6$.
Thus the implied domain is $[-6, \infty)$. The range is $[0, \infty)$.

d $f(x) = \sqrt{4-x^2}$ is defined for $4-x^2 \geq 0$, i.e. for $x^2 \leq 4$.
Thus the implied domain is $[-2, 2]$. The range is $[0, 2]$.



Example 10

Determine the implied domain of the functions with the following rules.

a $f(x) = \frac{2}{2x-3}$

b $g(x) = \sqrt{5-x}$

c $h(x) = \sqrt{x-5} + \sqrt{8-x}$

d $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 7x + 12}$

Solution

a $f(x)$ is defined when $2x-3 \neq 0$, i.e. when $x \neq \frac{3}{2}$. Thus the implied domain is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{\frac{3}{2}\}$.

b $g(x)$ is defined when $5-x \geq 0$, i.e. when $x \leq 5$. Thus the implied domain is $(-\infty, 5]$.

c $h(x)$ is defined when $x-5 \geq 0$ and $8-x \geq 0$, i.e. when $x \geq 5$ and $x \leq 8$. Thus the implied domain is $[5, 8]$.

d $f(x)$ is defined when $x^2 - 7x + 12 \geq 0$ which is equivalent to $(x-3)(x-4) \geq 0$. Thus $f(x)$ is defined when $x \geq 4$ or $x \leq 3$.

The implied domain is $(-\infty, 3] \cup [4, \infty)$.

Piecewise-defined functions

Functions which have different rules for different subsets of their domain are called **piecewise-defined functions**. They are also known as **hybrid functions**.



Example 11

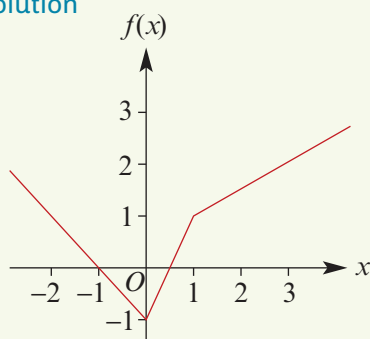
a Sketch the graph of the function f given by:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -x - 1 & \text{for } x < 0 \\ 2x - 1 & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2} & \text{for } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

b State the range of f .

Solution

a



b The range is $[-1, \infty)$.

Explanation

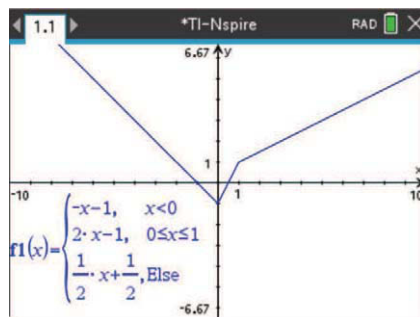
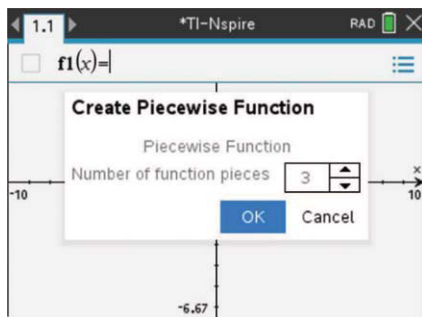
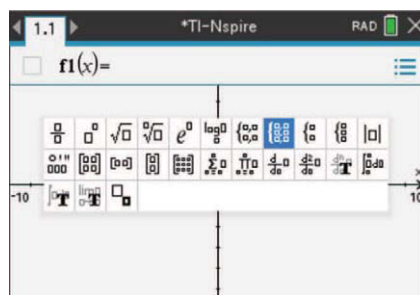
- The graph of $y = -x - 1$ is sketched for $x < 0$. Note that when $x = 0$, $y = -1$ for this rule.
- The graph of $y = 2x - 1$ is sketched for $0 \leq x \leq 1$. Note that when $x = 0$, $y = -1$ and when $x = 1$, $y = 1$ for this rule.
- The graph of $y = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}$ is sketched for $x > 1$. Note that when $x = 1$, $y = 1$ for this rule.

Note: For this function, the sections of the graph ‘join up’. This is not always the case.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- In a **Graphs** application with the cursor in the entry line, select the piecewise function template as shown. (Access the template from the 2D-template palette .)
- If the domain of the last function piece is the remaining subset of $\mathbb{R}$, then leave the final condition blank and it will autofill as ‘Else’ when you press **enter**.



Using the Casio

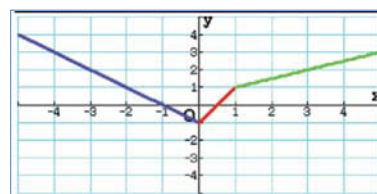
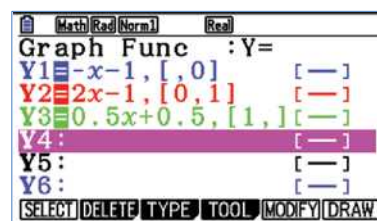
- Press **MENU** **5** to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the first rule, $y = -x - 1$ for $x < 0$, in $Y1$:

(-) **X,0,T** **-** **1** **,**

SHIFT **+** **,** **0** **SHIFT** **-** **EXE**

- Enter the second and third rules in $Y2$ and $Y3$ as shown.
- Select **Draw** **F6** to view the graph. Adjust the View Window **SHIFT** **F3** if required.

Note: The syntax for entering a function with a restricted domain is:
function rule, [start x-value, end x-value]



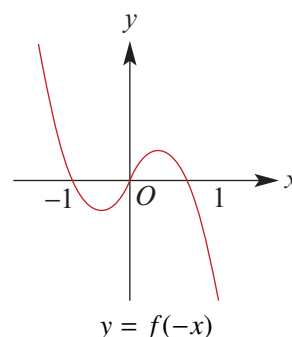
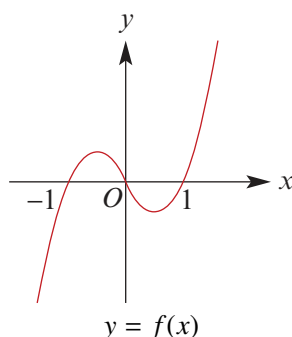
Odd and even functions

Odd functions

An **odd** function has the property that $f(-x) = -f(x)$. The graph of an odd function has rotational symmetry with respect to the origin: the graph remains unchanged after rotation of 180° about the origin.

For example, $f(x) = x^3 - x$ is an odd function, since

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= (-x)^3 - (-x) \\ &= -x^3 + x \\ &= -f(x) \end{aligned}$$

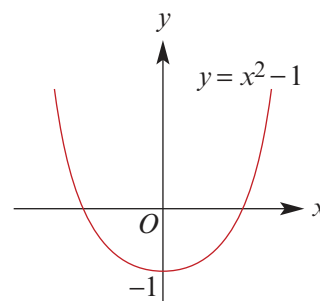


Even functions

An **even** function has the property that $f(-x) = f(x)$. The graph of an even function is symmetrical about the y -axis.

For example, $f(x) = x^2 - 1$ is an even function, since

$$\begin{aligned} f(-x) &= (-x)^2 - 1 \\ &= x^2 - 1 \\ &= f(x) \end{aligned}$$



The properties of odd and even functions often facilitate the sketching of graphs.

**Example 12**

State whether each function is odd or even or neither.

a $f(x) = x^2 + 7$

b $f(x) = x^4 + x^2$

c $f(x) = -2x^3 + 7$

d $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

e $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-3}$

f $f(x) = x^5 + x^3 + x$

Solution

a $f(-a) = (-a)^2 + 7$
 $= a^2 + 7$
 $= f(a)$

The function is even.

b $f(-a) = (-a)^4 + (-a)^2$
 $= a^4 + a^2$
 $= f(a)$

The function is even.

c $f(-1) = -2(-1)^3 + 7 = 9$
 but $f(1) = -2 + 7 = 5$
 and $-f(1) = -5$

The function is neither even nor odd.

d $f(-a) = \frac{1}{-a}$
 $= -\frac{1}{a}$
 $= -f(a)$

The function is odd.

e $f(-1) = -\frac{1}{4}$
 but $f(1) = -\frac{1}{2}$
 and $-f(1) = \frac{1}{2}$

The function is neither even nor odd.

f $f(-a)$
 $= (-a)^5 + (-a)^3 + (-a)$
 $= -a^5 - a^3 - a$
 $= -f(a)$

The function is odd.

Summary 1C

- When the domain of a function is not explicitly stated, it is assumed to consist of all real numbers for which the rule has meaning; this is called the **implied domain** or the **maximal domain** of the function.
- Functions which have different rules for different subsets of their domain are called **piecewise-defined functions**.
- A function f is **odd** if $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f .
- A function f is **even** if $f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f .

**Exercise 1C****Example 9**

- 1** State the largest possible domain and range for the functions defined by each of the following rules.

a $y = 4 - x$

b $y = \sqrt{x}$

c $y = x^2 - 2$

d $y = \sqrt{16 - x^2}$

e $y = \frac{1}{x}$

f $y = 4 - 3x^2$

g $y = \sqrt{x-3}$

- 2** Each of the following is the rule of a function. In each case, write down the implied domain and the range.

a $y = 3x + 2$

b $y = x^2 - 2$

c $f(x) = \sqrt{9 - x^2}$

d $g(x) = \frac{1}{x-1}$

Example 10

3 Determine the implied domain for each of the following rules.

a $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-3}$

b $f(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - 3}$

c $g(x) = \sqrt{x^2 + 3}$

d $h(x) = \sqrt{x-4} + \sqrt{11-x}$

e $f(x) = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x + 1}$

f $h(x) = \sqrt{x^2 - x - 2}$

g $f(x) = \frac{1}{(x+1)(x-2)}$

h $h(x) = \sqrt{\frac{x-1}{x+2}}$

i $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 3x^2}$

j $h(x) = \sqrt{25 - x^2}$

k $f(x) = \sqrt{x-3} + \sqrt{12-x}$

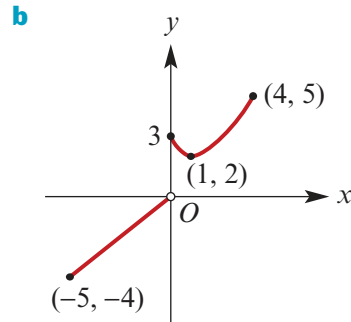
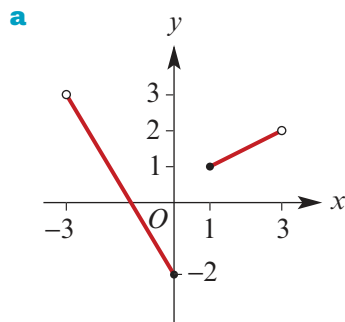
Example 11

4 **a** Sketch the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x - 2, & x < 0 \\ x - 2, & 0 \leq x < 2 \\ 3x - 6, & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

b What is the range of f ?

5 For each of the following graphs, state the domain and range of the function.



6 **a** Sketch the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x + 6, & 0 < x \leq 2 \\ -x + 5, & -4 \leq x \leq 0 \\ -4, & x < -4 \end{cases}$$

b State the domain and range of f .

7 **a** Sketch the graph of the function

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 5, & x > 0 \\ 5 - x, & -3 \leq x \leq 0 \\ 8, & x < -3 \end{cases}$$

b State the range of g .

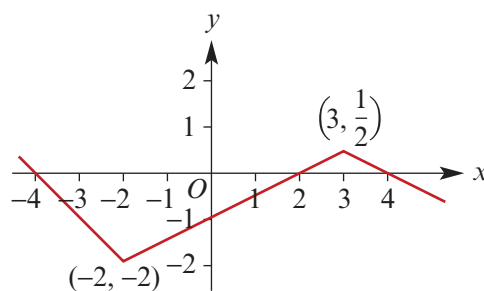
- 8 Given that

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{x}, & x > 3 \\ 2x, & x \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $f(-4)$ **b** $f(0)$ **c** $f(4)$
d $f(a+3)$ in terms of a **e** $f(2a)$ in terms of a **f** $f(a-3)$ in terms of a

- 9 Specify the function illustrated by the graph.

**Example 12**

- 10 State whether each of the following functions is odd, even or neither.

- a** $f(x) = x^4$ **b** $f(x) = x^5$ **c** $f(x) = x^4 - 3x$
d $f(x) = x^4 - 3x^2$ **e** $f(x) = x^5 - 2x^3$ **f** $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^5$

- 11 State whether each of the following functions is odd, even or neither.

- a** $f(x) = x^2 - 4$ **b** $f(x) = 2x^4 - x^2$ **c** $f(x) = -4x^3 + 7x$
d $f(x) = \frac{1}{2x}$ **e** $f(x) = \frac{1}{x+5}$ **f** $f(x) = 3 + 2x^2$
g $f(x) = x^2 - 5x$ **h** $f(x) = 3^x$ **i** $f(x) = x^4 + x^2 + 2$

CF

SE

1D Combining functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to work with sums, products, quotients and compositions of functions.

In this section we look at ways to combine two functions to form a new function, by taking a sum, product, quotient or composition. This enables us to consider quite complicated functions by ‘breaking them apart’ and viewing them as a combination of simpler functions. We will apply this idea to determine the derivatives of functions in Chapters 3, 5 and 6.

Sums and products of functions

The domain of f is denoted by $\text{dom } f$ and the domain of g by $\text{dom } g$. Let f and g be functions such that $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g \neq \emptyset$. The **sum**, $f + g$, and the **product**, fg , as functions on $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$ are defined by

$$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x) \quad \text{and} \quad (fg)(x) = f(x)g(x)$$

The domain of both $f + g$ and fg is the intersection of the domains of f and g , i.e. the values of x for which both f and g are defined.

**Example 13**

If $f(x) = \sqrt{x-2}$ for all $x \geq 2$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{4-x}$ for all $x \leq 4$, determine:

- a** $f + g$ **b** $(f + g)(3)$ **c** fg **d** $(fg)(3)$

Solution

Note that $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g = [2, 4]$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a} \quad (f + g)(x) &= f(x) + g(x) & \text{b} \quad (f + g)(3) &= \sqrt{3-2} + \sqrt{4-3} \\ &= \sqrt{x-2} + \sqrt{4-x} & &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{dom}(f + g) = [2, 4]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c} \quad (fg)(x) &= f(x)g(x) & \text{d} \quad (fg)(3) &= \sqrt{(3-2)(4-3)} \\ &= \sqrt{(x-2)(4-x)} & &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{dom}(fg) = [2, 4]$$

Quotients of functions

Let f and g be functions such that $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g \cap \{x : g(x) \neq 0\} \neq \emptyset$.

The **quotient** $\frac{f}{g}$ is defined by

$$\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$$

The domain of the quotient is the intersection of the domains of f and g with the set of all real numbers x for which $g(x) \neq 0$.

**Example 14**

If $f(x) = x$ for all x and $g(x) = \sqrt{16-x}$ for all $x \leq 16$, determine:

- a** $\frac{f}{g}$ **b** $\frac{f}{g}(7)$ **c** $\frac{g}{f}$ **d** $\frac{g}{f}(7)$

Solution

Note that $\text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g \cap \{x : g(x) \neq 0\} = (-\infty, 16)$.

$$\text{a} \quad \frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{16-x}} \qquad \text{b} \quad \frac{f}{g}(7) = \frac{f(7)}{g(7)} = \frac{7}{3}$$

$$\text{dom}\left(\frac{f}{g}\right) = (-\infty, 16)$$

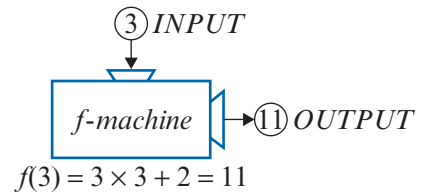
Note that $\text{dom } g \cap \text{dom } f \cap \{x : f(x) \neq 0\} = (-\infty, 16] \setminus \{0\}$.

$$\text{c} \quad \frac{g}{f}(x) = \frac{g(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{\sqrt{16-x}}{x} \qquad \text{d} \quad \frac{g}{f}(7) = \frac{g(7)}{f(7)} = \frac{3}{7}$$

$$\text{dom}\left(\frac{g}{f}\right) = (-\infty, 16] \setminus \{0\}$$

Composition of functions

A function may be considered to be similar to a machine for which the input (domain) is processed to produce an output (range). For example, the diagram on the right represents an ' f -machine' where $f(x) = 3x + 2$.



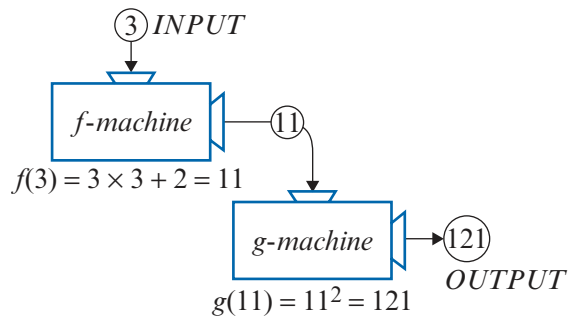
With many processes, more than one machine operation is required to produce an output.

Suppose an output is the result of one function being applied after another.

For example: $f(x) = 3x + 2$

followed by $g(x) = x^2$

This is illustrated on the right.



A new function h is formed. The rule for h is $h(x) = (3x + 2)^2$.

The diagram shows $f(3) = 11$ and then $g(11) = 121$. This may be written:

$$h(3) = g(f(3)) = g(11) = 121$$

The new function h is said to be the **composition** of g with f . This is written $h = g \circ f$ (read 'composition of f followed by g ') and the rule for h is given by $h(x) = g(f(x))$.

In the example we have considered:

$$\begin{aligned} h(x) &= g(f(x)) \\ &= g(3x + 2) \\ &= (3x + 2)^2 \end{aligned}$$

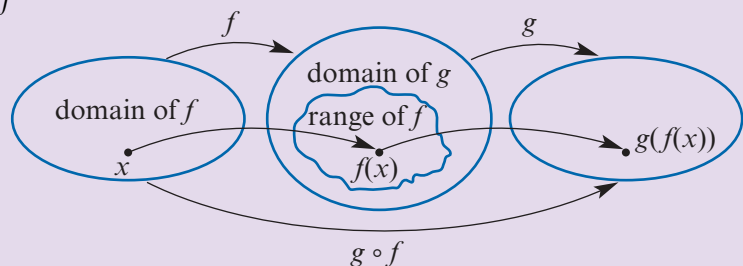
In general, for functions f and g such that

$$\text{ran } f \subseteq \text{dom } g$$

we define the **composite function** of g with f by

$$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$$

$$\text{dom}(g \circ f) = \text{dom } f$$



**Example 15**

For the functions $f(x) = 2x - 1$ and $g(x) = 3x^2$, determine:

a $f(g(x))$

b $g(f(x))$

c $f(f(x))$

d $g(g(x))$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \quad f(g(x)) &= f(3x^2) \\ &= 2(3x^2) - 1 \\ &= 6x^2 - 1\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad g(f(x)) &= g(2x - 1) \\ &= 3(2x - 1)^2 \\ &= 12x^2 - 12x + 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{c} \quad f(f(x)) &= f(2x - 1) \\ &= 2(2x - 1) - 1 \\ &= 4x - 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{d} \quad g(g(x)) &= g(3x^2) \\ &= 3(3x^2)^2 \\ &= 27x^4\end{aligned}$$

Note: It can be seen from this example that in general $f(g(x)) \neq g(f(x))$.

**Example 16**

Express each of the following as the composition of two functions.

a $h(x) = (2x + 1)^2$

b $h(x) = \sqrt{x^2}$

c $h(x) = (x^2 - 2)^n, \quad n \in \mathbb{N}$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \quad h(x) &= (2x + 1)^2 \\ \text{Choose } f(x) &= 2x + 1 \\ \text{and } g(x) &= x^2. \\ \text{Then } h(x) &= g(f(x)).\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad h(x) &= \sqrt{x^2} \\ \text{Choose } f(x) &= x^2 \\ \text{and } g(x) &= \sqrt{x}. \\ \text{Then } h(x) &= g(f(x)).\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{c} \quad h(x) &= (x^2 - 2)^n, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} \\ \text{Choose } f(x) &= x^2 - 2 \\ \text{and } g(x) &= x^n. \\ \text{Then } h(x) &= g(f(x)).\end{aligned}$$

Note: These are not the only possible answers, but the ‘natural’ choices have been made.

Summary 1D**Combining functions**

	Rule	Domain
Sum	$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$	$\text{dom}(f + g) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$
Product	$(f \cdot g)(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x)$	$\text{dom}(f \cdot g) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$
Quotient	$\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$	$\text{dom}\left(\frac{f}{g}\right) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g \cap \{x : g(x) \neq 0\}$
Composition	$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$	$\text{dom}(g \circ f) = \text{dom } f \text{ if } \text{ran } f \subseteq \text{dom } g$



Exercise 1D

Example 13

- 1 For each of the following, determine $(f + g)(x)$ and $(fg)(x)$ and state the domain for both $f + g$ and fg .

a $f(x) = 3x$ and $g(x) = x + 2$

b $f(x) = 1 - x^2$ for all $x \in [-2, 2]$ and $g(x) = x^2$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$

c $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$ and $g(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x}}$ for $x \in [1, \infty)$

d $f(x) = x^2$, $x \geq 0$, and $g(x) = \sqrt{4 - x}$, $0 \leq x \leq 4$

Example 14

- 2 For each pair of functions f and g from Question 1.

i Determine $\frac{f}{g}(x)$ and state the domain of $\frac{f}{g}$.

ii Determine $\frac{g}{f}(x)$ and state the domain of $\frac{g}{f}$.

- 3 Functions f , g , h and k are defined by:

i $f(x) = x^2 + 1$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$

ii $g(x) = x$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$

iii $h(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, $x \neq 0$

iv $k(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, $x \neq 0$

- a** State which of the above functions are odd and which are even.

- b** Give the rules for the functions $f + h$, gk , fh , $f + g$, $g + k$ and fg , stating which are odd and which are even.

Example 15

- 4 For each of the following, determine $f(g(x))$ and $g(f(x))$.

a $f(x) = 2x - 1$, $g(x) = 2x$

b $f(x) = 4x + 1$, $g(x) = 2x + 1$

c $f(x) = 2x - 1$, $g(x) = 2x - 3$

d $f(x) = 2x - 1$, $g(x) = x^2$

e $f(x) = 2x^2 + 1$, $g(x) = x - 5$

f $f(x) = 2x + 1$, $g(x) = x^2$

- 5 For the functions $f(x) = 2x - 1$ and $h(x) = 3x + 2$, determine:

a $f(h(x))$

b $h(f(x))$

c $f(h(2))$

d $h(f(2))$

e $f(h(3))$

f $h(f(-1))$

g $f(h(0))$

- 6 For the functions $f(x) = x^2 + 2x$ and $h(x) = 3x + 1$, determine:

a $f(h(x))$

b $h(f(x))$

c $f(h(3))$

d $h(f(3))$

e $f(h(0))$

f $h(f(0))$

Example 16

- 7 Express each of the following as the composition of two functions.

a $h(x) = (x^2 - 1)^4$

b $h(x) = \sqrt{x^4 + 3}$

c $h(x) = (x^2 - 2x)^n$ where $n \in \mathbb{N}$

d $h(x) = \frac{1}{2x + 3}$

e $h(x) = (x^2 - 2x)^3 - 2(x^2 - 2x)$

f $h(x) = 2(2x^2 + 1)^2 + 1$

1E Power functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to identify, describe and work with power functions.

We now consider functions with rules of the form $f(x) = x^r$, where r is a rational number. These functions are called **power functions**.

In this section, we look at power functions with rules such as

$$f(x) = x^4, \quad f(x) = x^{-4}, \quad f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{4}}, \quad f(x) = x^5, \quad f(x) = x^{-5}, \quad f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

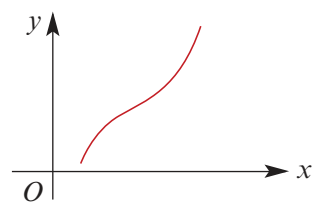
You may like to investigate further by using your calculator to plot the graphs of more complicated power functions with rules such as $f(x) = x^{\frac{2}{3}}$ and $f(x) = x^{\frac{3}{2}}$.

Increasing and decreasing functions

We say a function f is **strictly increasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.

For example:

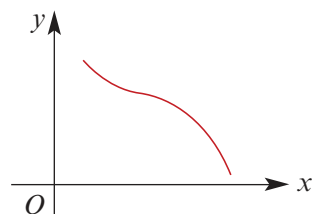
- The graph opposite shows a strictly increasing function.
- A straight line with positive gradient is strictly increasing.
- The function $f(x) = x^2$, $x > 0$, is strictly increasing.



We say a function f is **strictly decreasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.

For example:

- The graph opposite shows a strictly decreasing function.
- A straight line with negative gradient is strictly decreasing.
- The function $f(x) = x^2$, $x < 0$, is strictly decreasing.



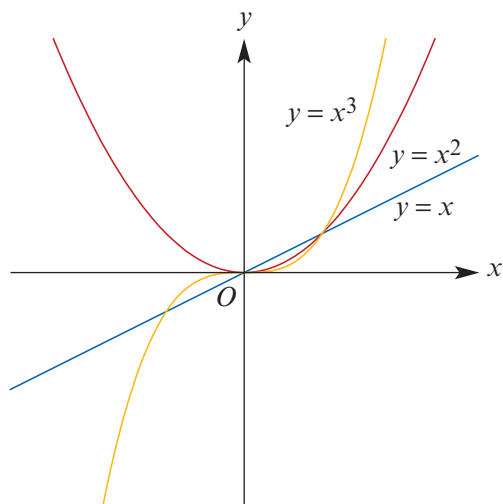
Power functions with positive integer index

We start by considering power functions $f(x) = x^n$ where n is a positive integer.

Taking $n = 1, 2, 3$, we obtain the linear function $f(x) = x$, the quadratic function $f(x) = x^2$ and the cubic function $f(x) = x^3$.

We have studied these functions in Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2 and have referred to them in the earlier sections of this chapter.

The general shape of the graph of $f(x) = x^n$ depends on whether the index n is odd or even.

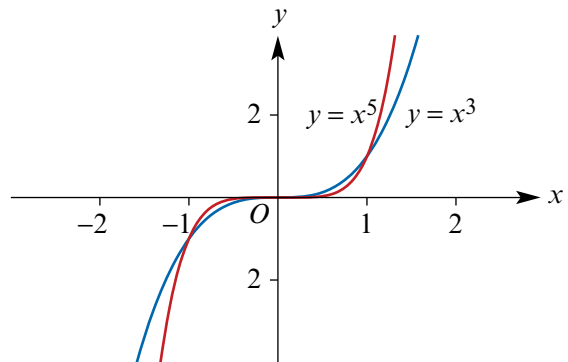


The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an odd positive integer

The graph has a similar shape to those shown below. The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$ and the range is $\mathbb{R}$.

Some properties of $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an odd positive integer:

- f is an odd function
- f is strictly increasing
- $f(0) = 0$, $f(1) = 1$ and $f(-1) = -1$
- as $x \rightarrow \infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow \infty$ and as $x \rightarrow -\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow -\infty$.

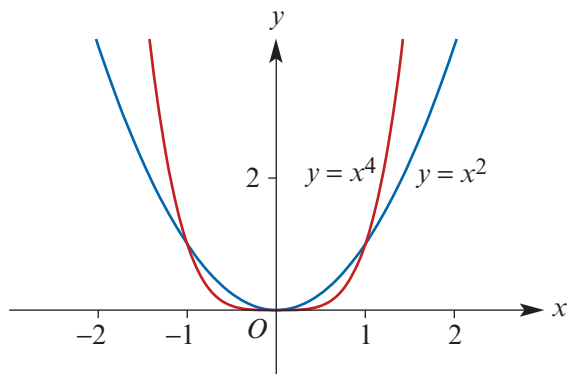


The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an even positive integer

The graph has a similar shape to those shown below. The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$ and the range is $[0, \infty)$.

Some properties of $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an even positive integer:

- f is an even function
- f is strictly increasing for $x > 0$
- f is strictly decreasing for $x < 0$
- $f(0) = 0$, $f(1) = 1$ and $f(-1) = 1$
- as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow \infty$.



Power functions with negative integer index

Again, the general shape of the graph depends on whether the index n is odd or even.

The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an odd negative integer

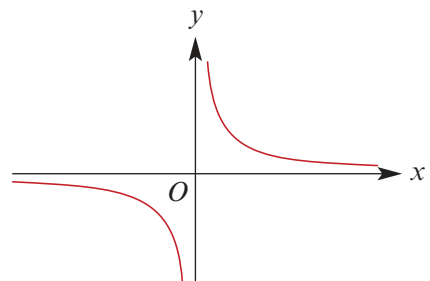
Taking $n = -1$, we obtain

$$f(x) = x^{-1} = \frac{1}{x}$$

The graph of this function is shown on the right. The graphs of functions of this type are all similar to this one.

In general, we consider the function $f(x) = x^{-k}$, where $k = 1, 3, 5, \dots$

- the maximal domain is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ and the range is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$
- f is an odd function
- there is a horizontal asymptote with equation $y = 0$
- there is a vertical asymptote with equation $x = 0$.



**Example 17**

For the function f with rule $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^5}$:

- a** state the maximal domain and the corresponding range
- b** evaluate each of the following:
 - i** $f(2)$ **ii** $f(-2)$ **iii** $f(\frac{1}{2})$ **iv** $f(-\frac{1}{2})$
- c** sketch the graph without using your calculator.

Solution

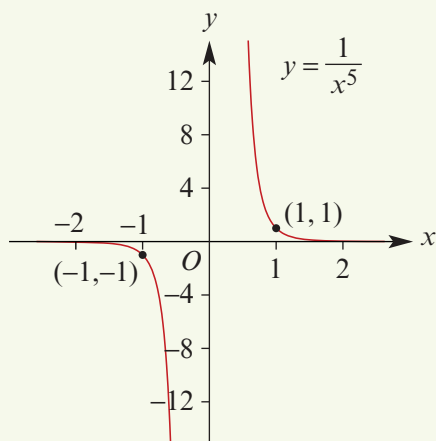
a The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ and the range is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$.

b i $f(2) = \frac{1}{2^5} = \frac{1}{32}$

ii $f(-2) = \frac{1}{(-2)^5} = -\frac{1}{32}$

iii $f(\frac{1}{2}) = \frac{1}{(\frac{1}{2})^5} = 32$

iv $f(-\frac{1}{2}) = \frac{1}{(-\frac{1}{2})^5} = -32$

c**Example 18**

Let $f(x) = x^{-1}$ for $x \neq 0$ and $g(x) = x^{-3}$ for $x \neq 0$.

- a** Determine the values of x for which $f(x) = g(x)$.
- b** Sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ on the one set of axes.

Solution

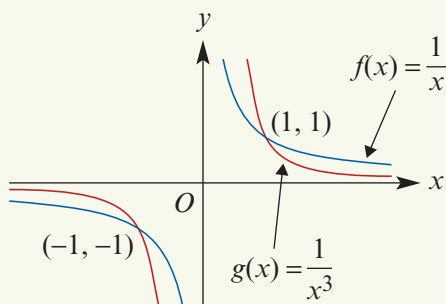
a $f(x) = g(x)$

$$x^{-1} = x^{-3}$$

$$\frac{1}{x} = \frac{1}{x^3}$$

$$x^2 = 1$$

$$\therefore x = 1 \text{ or } x = -1$$

b**Note:**

If $x > 1$, then $x^3 > x$ and so $\frac{1}{x} > \frac{1}{x^3}$.

If $0 < x < 1$, then $x^3 < x$ and so $\frac{1}{x} < \frac{1}{x^3}$.

If $x < -1$, then $x^3 < x$ and so $\frac{1}{x} < \frac{1}{x^3}$.

If $-1 < x < 0$, then $x^3 > x$ and so $\frac{1}{x} > \frac{1}{x^3}$.

The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an even negative integer

Taking $n = -2$, we obtain

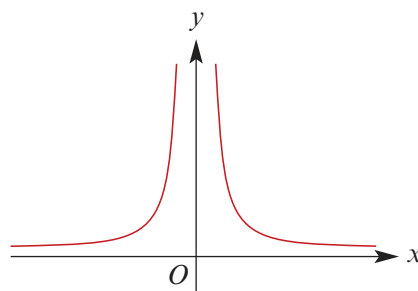
$$f(x) = x^{-2} = \frac{1}{x^2}$$

The graph of this function is shown on the right.

The graphs of functions of this type are all similar to this one.

In general, we consider the function $f(x) = x^{-k}$, where $k = 2, 4, 6, \dots$

- the maximal domain is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ and the range is $\mathbb{R}^+$
- f is an even function
- there is a horizontal asymptote with equation $y = 0$
- there is a vertical asymptote with equation $x = 0$.



The function $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$ where n is a positive integer

Let a be a positive real number and let $n \in \mathbb{N}$. Then $a^{\frac{1}{n}}$ is defined to be the n th root of a .

That is, $a^{\frac{1}{n}}$ is the positive number whose n th power is a . We can also write this as $a^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a}$.

For example: $9^{\frac{1}{2}} = 3$, since $3^2 = 9$.

We define $0^{\frac{1}{n}} = 0$, for each natural number n , since $0^n = 0$.

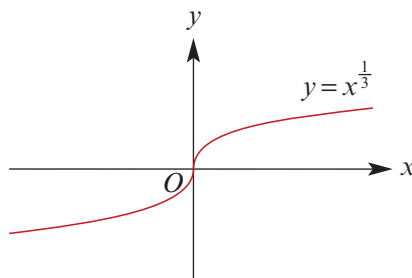
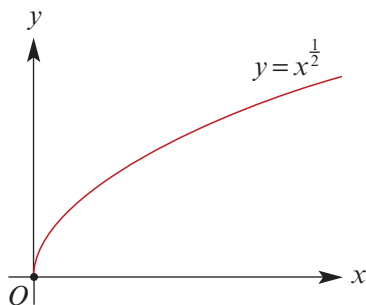
If n is odd, then we can also define $a^{\frac{1}{n}}$ when a is negative. If a is negative and n is odd, define $a^{\frac{1}{n}}$ to be the number whose n th power is a . For example: $(-8)^{\frac{1}{3}} = -2$, as $(-2)^3 = -8$.

In all three cases we can write:

$$a^{\frac{1}{n}} = \sqrt[n]{a} \quad \text{with} \quad \left(a^{\frac{1}{n}}\right)^n = a$$

In particular, $x^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sqrt{x}$.

Let $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$. When n is even the maximal domain is $[0, \infty)$ and when n is odd the maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$. The graphs of $f(x) = \sqrt{x} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x} = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ are as shown.



**Example 19**

Consider the functions $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ and $g(x) = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$, $x \geq 0$.

- a** Determine the values of x for which $f(x) = g(x)$.
b Sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ on the one set of axes.

Solution

a

$$f(x) = g(x)$$

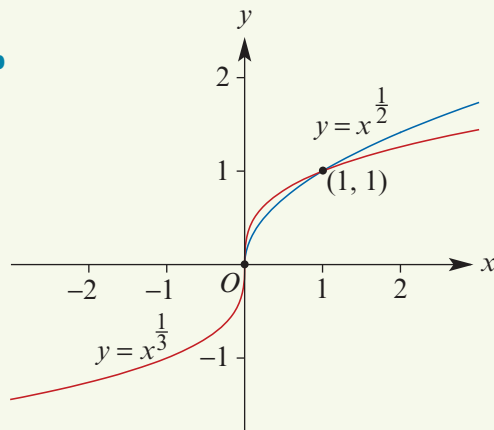
$$x^{\frac{1}{3}} = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$x^{\frac{1}{3}} - x^{\frac{1}{2}} = 0$$

$$x^{\frac{1}{3}}(1 - x^{\frac{1}{6}}) = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 0 \text{ or } 1 - x^{\frac{1}{6}} = 0$$

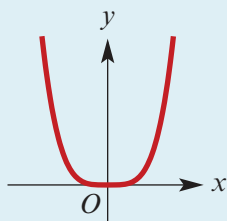
$$\therefore x = 0 \text{ or } x = 1$$

b**Summary 1E**

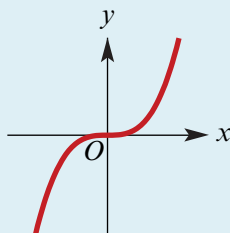
- A function f is **strictly increasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.
- A function f is **strictly decreasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.
- A **power function** is a function f with rule $f(x) = x^r$, where r is a rational number.
- For a power function $f(x) = x^n$, where n is a non-zero integer, the general shape of the graph depends on whether n is positive or negative and whether n is even or odd:

Even positive

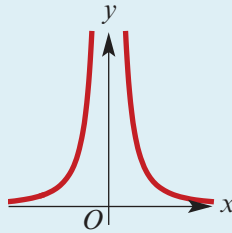
$$f(x) = x^4$$

**Odd positive**

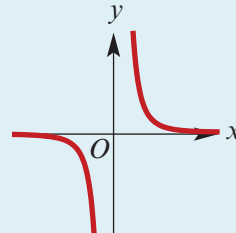
$$f(x) = x^3$$

**Even negative**

$$f(x) = x^{-2}$$

**Odd negative**

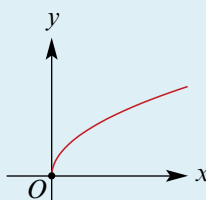
$$f(x) = x^{-3}$$



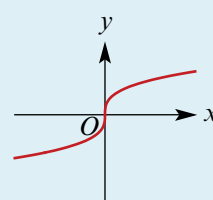
- For a power function $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$, where n is a positive integer, the general shape of the graph depends on whether n is even or odd:

Even

$$f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

**Odd**

$$f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$$



Exercise 1E

Example 17

- 1 For the function f with rule $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^4}$:
- a state the maximal domain and the corresponding range
 - b evaluate each of the following:
 - i $f(2)$
 - ii $f(-2)$
 - iii $f(\frac{1}{2})$
 - iv $f(-\frac{1}{2})$
 - c sketch the graph without using your calculator.
- 2 For each of the following, state whether the function is odd, even or neither.
- a $f(x) = 2x^5$
 - b $f(x) = x^2 + 3$
 - c $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{5}}$
 - d $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$
 - e $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$
 - f $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x}$

Example 18

- 3 Let $f(x) = x^{-2}$, $x \neq 0$, and $g(x) = x^{-4}$, $x \neq 0$.
- a Determine the values of x for which $f(x) = g(x)$.
 - b Sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ on the one set of axes.

Example 19

- 4 Let $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ and $g(x) = x^{\frac{1}{4}}$, $x \geq 0$.
- a Determine the values of x for which $f(x) = g(x)$.
 - b Sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ on the one set of axes.

1F Applications of functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to apply function notation to solve problems.



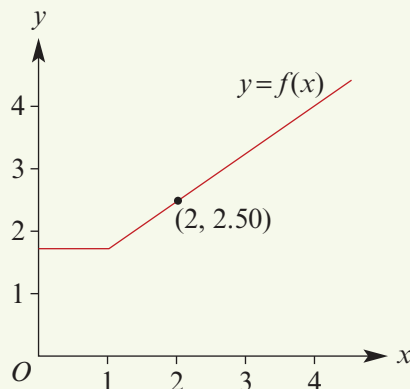
Example 20

The cost of a taxi trip in a particular city is \$1.75 up to and including 1 km. After 1 km the passenger pays an additional 75 cents per kilometre. Determine the function f which describes this method of payment and sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

Solution

Let x denote the length of the trip in kilometres.
Then the cost in dollars is given by

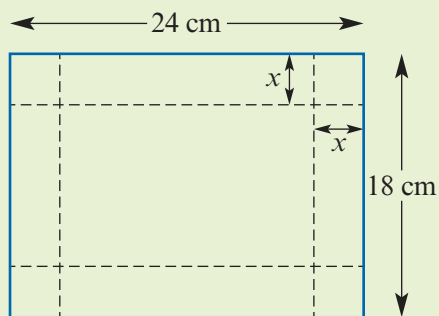
$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1.75 & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1.75 + 0.75(x - 1) & \text{for } x > 1 \end{cases}$$



**Example 21**

A rectangular piece of cardboard has dimensions 18 cm by 24 cm. Four squares each x cm by x cm are cut from the corners. An open box is formed by folding up the flaps.

Determine a function V which gives the volume of the box in terms of x , and state the domain of the function.

**Solution**

The dimensions of the box will be $24 - 2x$, $18 - 2x$ and x .

Thus the volume of the box is determined by the function

$$V(x) = (24 - 2x)(18 - 2x)x$$

For the box to be formed:

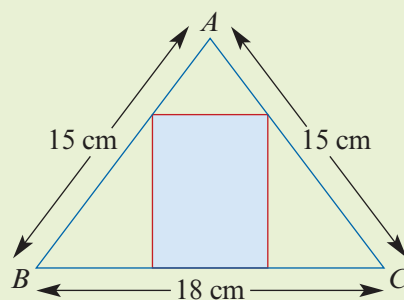
$$24 - 2x \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 18 - 2x \geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x \geq 0$$

Therefore $x \leq 12$ and $x \leq 9$ and $x \geq 0$. The domain of V is $[0, 9]$.

**Example 22**

A rectangle is inscribed in an isosceles triangle with the dimensions as shown.

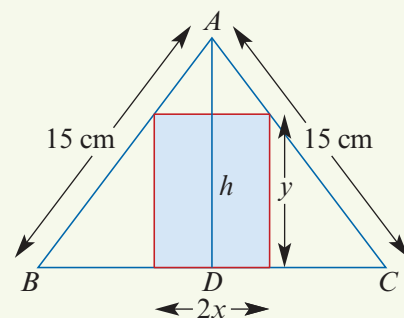
Determine an area-of-the-rectangle function and state the domain.

**Solution**

Let the height of the rectangle be y cm and the width $2x$ cm.

The height (h cm) of the triangle can be determined by Pythagoras' theorem:

$$h = \sqrt{15^2 - 9^2} = 12$$



In the diagram opposite, the triangle AYX is similar to the triangle ABD . Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{x}{9} &= \frac{12-y}{12} \\ \frac{12x}{9} &= 12-y \\ \therefore y &= 12 - \frac{12x}{9}\end{aligned}$$

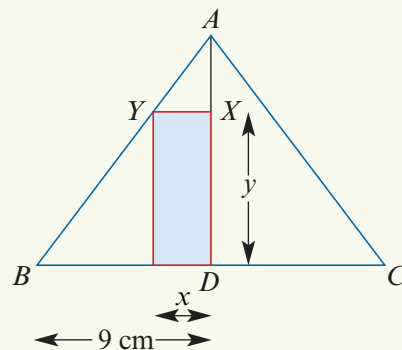
The area of the rectangle is $A = 2xy$, and so

$$\begin{aligned}A(x) &= 2x\left(12 - \frac{12x}{9}\right) \\ &= \frac{24x}{9}(9-x)\end{aligned}$$

For the rectangle to be formed, we need

$$\begin{aligned}x &\geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad 12 - \frac{12x}{9} \geq 0 \\ \therefore x &\geq 0 \quad \text{and} \quad x \leq 9\end{aligned}$$

The domain is $[0, 9]$, and so the function is given by $A(x) = \frac{24x}{9}(9-x)$, $x \in [0, 9]$.



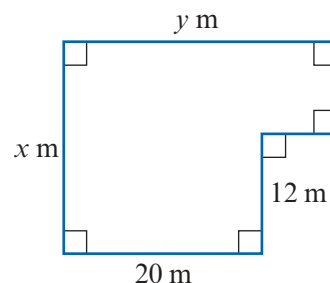
Exercise 1F

Example 20

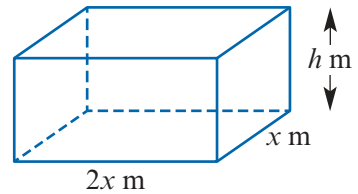
- The cost of a taxi trip in a particular city is \$4.00 up to and including 2 km. After 2 km the passenger pays an additional \$2.00 per kilometre. Determine the function f which describes this method of payment and sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$, where x is the number of kilometres travelled. (Use a continuous model.)

Example 21

- A rectangular piece of cardboard has dimensions 20 cm by 36 cm. Four squares each x cm by x cm are cut from the corners. An open box is formed by folding up the flaps. Determine a function V which gives the volume of the box in terms of x , and state the domain for the function.
- The dimensions of an enclosure are shown. The perimeter of the enclosure is 160 m.
 - Determine a rule for the area, $A \text{ m}^2$, of the enclosure in terms of x .
 - State a suitable domain of the function $A(x)$.
 - Sketch the graph of A against x .
 - Determine the maximum possible area of the enclosure and state the corresponding values of x and y .



- 4 A cuboid tank is open at the top and the internal dimensions of its base are x m and $2x$ m. The height is h m. The volume of the tank is V m³ and the volume is fixed. Let S m² denote the internal surface area of the tank.



a Determine S in terms of:

i x and h

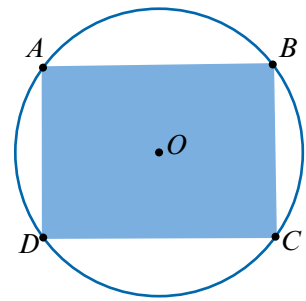
ii V and x

b State the maximal domain for the function defined by the rule in part a ii.

c If $2 \leq x \leq 15$, determine the maximum value of S if $V = 1000$ m³.

Example 22

- 5 A rectangle $ABCD$ is inscribed in a circle of radius a . Determine an area-of-the-rectangle function and state the domain.



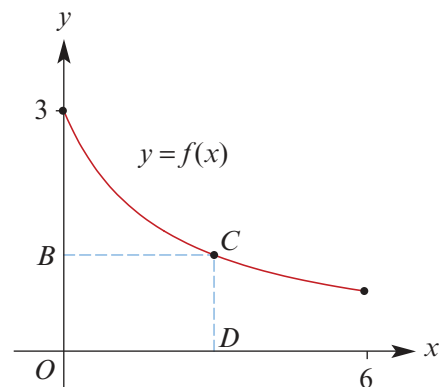
- 6 Let $f(x) = \frac{6}{x+2}$ for $x \in [0, 6]$. Rectangle $OBCD$ is formed so that the coordinates of C are $(a, f(a))$.

a Determine an expression for the area-of-rectangle function A .

b State the implied domain and range of A .

c State the maximum value of $A(x)$ for $x \in [0, 6]$.

d Sketch the graph of $y = A(x)$ for $x \in [0, 6]$.



- 7 A man walks at a speed of 2 km/h for 45 minutes and then runs at 4 km/h for 30 minutes. Let S km be the distance the man has travelled after t minutes. The distance travelled can be described by

$$S(t) = \begin{cases} at & \text{if } 0 \leq t \leq c \\ bt + d & \text{if } c < t \leq e \end{cases}$$

a Determine the values a, b, c, d, e .

b Sketch the graph of $S(t)$ against t .

c State the range of the function.

Chapter summary

Relations

- A **relation** is a set of ordered pairs.
- The **domain** is the set of all the first coordinates of the ordered pairs in the relation.
- The **range** is the set of all the second coordinates of the ordered pairs in the relation.

Functions

- A **function** is a relation such that no two ordered pairs in the relation have the same first coordinate.
- For each x in the domain of a function f , there is a unique element y in the range such that $(x, y) \in f$. The element y is called the **value** of f at x and is denoted by $f(x)$.
- When the domain of a function is not explicitly stated, it is assumed to consist of all real numbers for which the rule has meaning; this is called the **implied domain** or the **maximal domain** of the function.
- For a function f , the domain is denoted by **dom** f and the range by **ran** f .

Combining functions

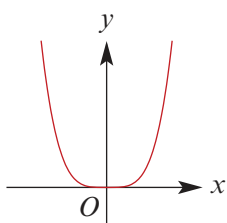
	Rule	Domain
Sum	$(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$	$\text{dom}(f + g) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$
Product	$(f \cdot g)(x) = f(x) \cdot g(x)$	$\text{dom}(f \cdot g) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$
Quotient	$\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$	$\text{dom}\left(\frac{f}{g}\right) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g \cap \{x : g(x) \neq 0\}$
Composition	$(g \circ f)(x) = g(f(x))$	$\text{dom}(g \circ f) = \text{dom } f \text{ if } \text{ran } f \subseteq \text{dom } g$

Types of functions

- A function f is **odd** if $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f .
- A function f is **even** if $f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f .
- A function f is **strictly increasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.
- A function f is **strictly decreasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.
- A **power function** is a function f with rule $f(x) = x^r$, where r is a rational number.
- For a power function $f(x) = x^n$, where n is a non-zero integer, the general shape of the graph depends on whether n is positive or negative and whether n is even or odd:

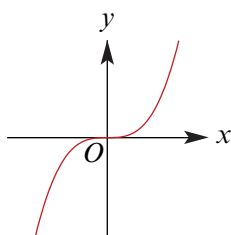
Even positive

$$f(x) = x^4$$



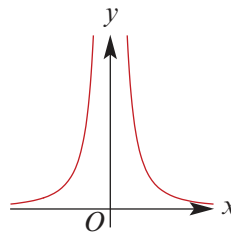
Odd positive

$$f(x) = x^3$$



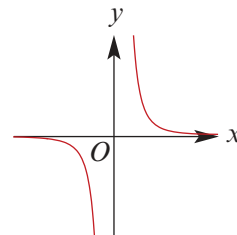
Even negative

$$f(x) = x^{-2}$$

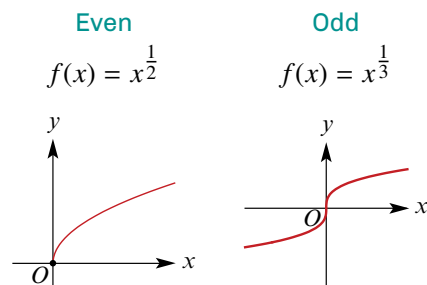


Odd negative

$$f(x) = x^{-3}$$



- For a power function $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$, where n is a positive integer, the general shape of the graph depends on whether n is even or odd:



Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



1A

1 I can use set and interval notation.



See Example 1, Example 2 and Questions 1 and 2

1B

2 I can sketch the graphs of relations and determine their domain and range.



See Example 3 and Question 1

1B

3 I can identify when a relation is a function.



See Example 4 and Question 3

1B

4 I can use function notation.



See Example 5, Example 6, Example 7 and Questions 7, 8 and 9

1B

5 I can sketch the graphs of functions and determine the range.



See Example 8 and Question 11

1C

6 I can determine the maximal domain of a function.



See Example 9, Example 10 and Questions 1 and 3

1C

7 I can sketch the graphs of piecewise-defined functions.



See Example 11 and Question 4

1C

8 I can determine whether a function is even or odd or neither.



See Example 12 and Question 10

1D

9 I can determine the sum, difference and product of two functions.



See Example 13, Example 14 and Questions 1 and 2

1D

10 I can determine the composition of two functions.



See Example 15, Example 16 and Questions 4 and 7

1E **11** I can work with power functions. □

See Example 17, Example 18, Example 18 and Questions 1, 3 and 4

1F **12** I can apply function notation to solving problems. □

See Example 20, Example 21, Example 22 and Questions 1, 2 and 5

Short-response questions**Technology-free short-response questions**

- 1**
- Sketch the graph of each of the following relations and state the implied domain and range.

a $f(x) = x^2 + 1$

b $f(x) = 2x - 6$

c $\{(x, y) : x^2 + y^2 = 25\}$

d $\{(x, y) : y \geq 2x + 1\}$

e $\{(x, y) : y < x - 3\}$

- 2**
- Consider the function defined by
- $g(x) = \frac{x+3}{2}$
- for
- $0 \leq x \leq 5$
- .

a Sketch the graph of $y = g(x)$.**b** State the range of g .**c** Determine the value of x such that $g(x) = 4$.

- 3**
- For
- $g(x) = 5x + 1$
- , determine the values of
- x
- such that:

a $g(x) = 2$

b $g(x) \leq 2$

c $\frac{1}{g(x)} = 2$

- 4**
- Sketch the graph of the function
- f
- given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x + 1 & \text{for } x > 2 \\ x^2 - 1 & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ -x^2 & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- 5**
- Determine the implied domain for each of the following.

a $f(x) = \frac{1}{2x-6}$

b $g(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^2-5}}$

c $h(x) = \frac{1}{(x-1)(x+2)}$

d $h(x) = \sqrt{25-x^2}$

e $f(x) = \sqrt{x-5} + \sqrt{15-x}$

f $h(x) = \frac{1}{3x-6}$

- 6**
- For
- $f(x) = (x+2)^2$
- and
- $g(x) = x-3$
- , determine
- $(f+g)(x)$
- and
- $(fg)(x)$
- .

- 7**
- Let
- $f(x) = (x-1)^2$
- for
- $1 \leq x \leq 5$
- and
- $g(x) = 2x$
- for
- $x \in \mathbb{R}$
- . Determine
- $f+g$
- and
- fg
- .

- 8**
- For
- $f(x) = 2x+3$
- and
- $g(x) = -x^2$
- , determine:

a $(f+g)(x)$

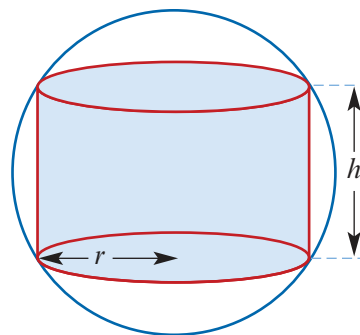
b $(fg)(x)$

c the values of x such that $(f+g)(x) = 0$

- 9 For $f(x) = 2x + 3$ and $g(x) = -x^3$, determine:
- a** $f(g(x))$ **b** $g(f(x))$ **c** $g(g(x))$ **d** $f(f(x))$
- 10 Express each of the following as the composition of two functions.
- a** $h(x) = (x^3 - 1)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ **b** $h(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 + 1}$ **c** $h(x) = \frac{1}{x^2 - 1}$

Technology-active short-response questions

- 11 Self-Travel, a car rental firm, has two methods of charging for car rental:
- Method 1** \$64 per day + 25 cents per kilometre
- Method 2** \$89 per day with unlimited travel.
- a** Write a rule for each method if x kilometres per day are travelled and the cost in dollars is C_1 using method 1 and C_2 using method 2.
- b** Draw the graph of each, using the same axes.
- c** Determine, from the graph, the distance that must be travelled per day if method 2 is cheaper than method 1.
- 12 Express the total surface area, S of a cube as a function of:
- a** the length x of an edge
- b** the volume V of the cube.
- 13 Express the area, A , of an equilateral triangle as a function of:
- a** the length s of each side
- b** the altitude h .
- 14 The base of a 3 m ladder leaning against a wall is x metres from the wall.
- a** Express the distance, d metres, from the top of the ladder to the ground as a function of x and sketch the graph of the function.
- b** State the domain and range of the function.
- 15 A car travels half the distance of a journey at an average speed of 80 km/h and half at an average speed of x km/h. Define a function, S which gives the average speed for the total journey as a function of x .
- 16 A cylinder is inscribed in a sphere with a radius of length 6 cm.
- a** Define a function, V_1 , which gives the volume of the cylinder as a function of its height, h . (State the rule and domain.)
- b** Define a function, V_2 , which gives the volume of the cylinder as a function of the radius of the cylinder, r . (State the rule and domain.)



- 17** A function f is defined as follows:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 4 & \text{for } x \in (-\infty, 2) \\ x & \text{for } x \in [2, \infty) \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of f .
b Determine the values of $f(-1)$ and $f(3)$.
c If $h(x) = 2x$, determine $f(h(x))$ and $h(f(x))$.

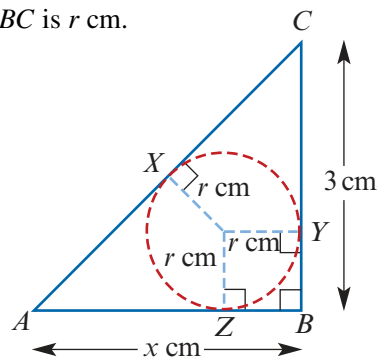
- 18** Determine the rule for the area, $A(t)$, enclosed by the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x, & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 3, & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

and by the x -axis and the vertical line $x = t$ (for $t > 0$). State the domain and range of the function A .

- 19** The radius of the incircle of the right-angled triangle ABC is r cm.

- a** Determine:
i YB in terms of r
ii ZB in terms of r
iii AZ in terms of r and x
iv CY
b Using the geometric results $CY = CX$ and $AX = AZ$, determine an expression for r in terms of x .
c **i** Determine r when $x = 4$.
ii Determine x when $r = 0.5$.
d Use a calculator to investigate the possible values that r can take.



- 20** Let $f(x) = \frac{px+q}{x+r}$ where $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{-r, r\}$.

- a** If $f(x) = f(-x)$ for all x , show that $f(x) = p$ for $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{-r, r\}$.
b If $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for $x \neq 0$, determine the rule for $f(x)$ in terms of q .
c If $p = 3$, $q = 8$ and $r = -3$, determine the values of x for which $f(x) = x$.

- 21 a** Let $f(x) = \frac{x+1}{x-1}$.

- i** Determine $f(2)$, $f(f(2))$ and $f(f(f(2)))$.
ii Determine $f(f(x))$.

- b** Let $f(x) = \frac{x-3}{x+1}$. Determine $f(f(x))$ and $f(f(f(x)))$.

Multiple-choice questions

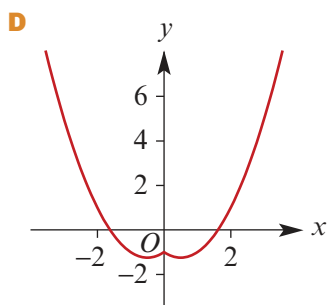
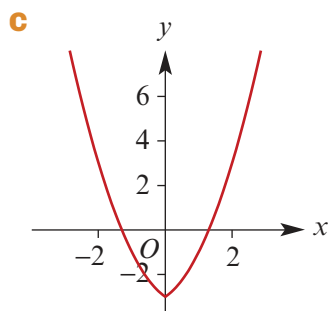
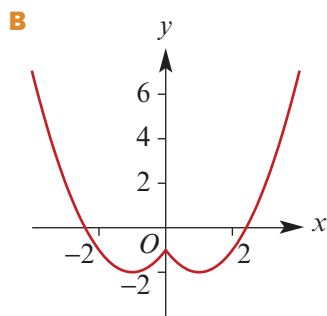
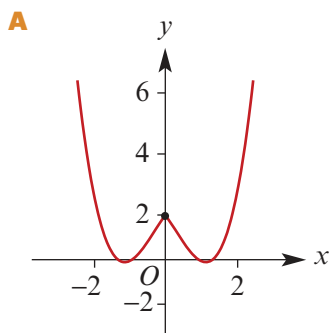
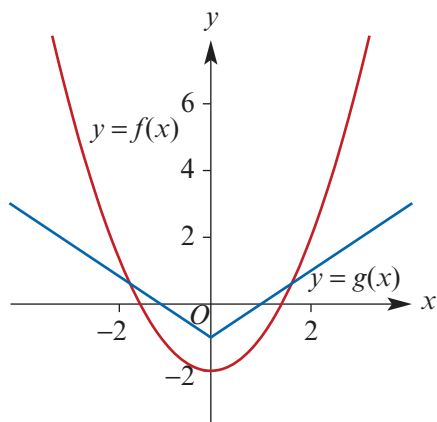
Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 The maximal domain of the function with rule $f(x) = \sqrt{6 - 2x}$ is
A $x \leq 3$ **B** $x \leq 6$ **C** $x \geq 3$ **D** $x < 6$
- 2 Let $f(x) = -x^2$ for $x \in [-1, 3)$. The range of f is
A $\mathbb{R}$ **B** $-9 < f(x) \leq 0$ **C** $f(x) \leq 0$ **D** $-9 < f(x) \leq -1$
- 3 If $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2x$, then $f(2a) =$
A $6a^2 + 2a$ **B** $6a^2 + 4a$ **C** $36a^2 + 4a$ **D** $12a^2 + 4a$
- 4 Let $f(x) = 10 - x$ for $x \in (a, b]$. The range of f is
A $(10 - a, 10 - b)$ **B** $[10 - b, 10 - a)$
C $(10 - a, 10 - b]$ **D** $(10 - b, 10 - a)$
- 5 For the function with rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + 5 & x \geq 3 \\ -x + 6 & x < 3 \end{cases}$$
 the value of $f(a + 3)$, where a is a negative real number, is
A $a^2 + 6a + 14$ **B** $-a + 9$ **C** $-a + 3$ **D** $a^2 + 14$
- 6 The range of the function with rule $f(x) = x^2 + 2x - 6$ for $x \in [-2, 4)$ is
A $\mathbb{R}$ **B** $(-3, 18]$ **C** $(-6, 18)$ **D** $[-7, 18)$
- 7 The maximal domain and range of $f(x) = \frac{2x+1}{x-1}$ are
A $x \neq 0, f(x) \neq 2$ **B** $x \neq 1, f(x) \neq -2$
C $x \neq 1, f(x) \neq 2$ **D** $x \neq 2, f(x) \neq 1$
- 8 If $f(x) = 3x^2$ and $g(x) = 2x + 1$, then $f(g(a))$ is equal to
A $12a^2 + 3$ **B** $12a^2 + 12a + 3$
C $6a^2 + 1$ **D** $6a^2 + 4$
- 9 Let $f(x) = \sqrt{x+1}$, $x > -1$, and $g(x) = \sqrt{4-x}$, $x \leq 4$. The domain of $f + g$ is
A $\mathbb{R}$ **B** $(-\infty, -1)$ **C** $(-1, 4]$ **D** $(-1, \infty)$
- 10 Let $f(x) = 5 - x$ for $x \in D$. If the range of f is $[-2, 3)$, then the domain D is
A $[-7, 2)$ **B** $(2, 7]$ **C** $\mathbb{R}$ **D** $[-2, 7)$

- 11** The graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ are as shown on the right.

Which one of the following best represents the graph of $y = f(g(x))$?



- 12** Which of the following functions is strictly increasing on the interval $(-\infty, -1]$?

A $f(x) = x^2$

B $f(x) = x^4$

C $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{5}}$

D $f(x) = \sqrt{4-x}$

- 13** For a function with rule $y = \frac{-2}{(x+3)^3} - 5$, the maximal domain and range are

A $x \neq 3, y \neq -5$

B $x \neq -5, y \neq -3$

C $x \neq -3, y \neq -5$

D $x \neq -2, y \neq -5$

- 14** A function with rule $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^4}$ can be defined on different domains. Which one of the following does not give the correct range for the given domain?
- A** $\text{dom } f = [-1, -0.5]$, $\text{ran } f = [1, 16]$
B $\text{dom } f = [-0.5, 0.5] \setminus \{0\}$, $\text{ran } f = [16, \infty)$
C $\text{dom } f = (-0.5, 0.5) \setminus \{0\}$, $\text{ran } f = (16, \infty)$
D $\text{dom } f = [-0.5, 1] \setminus \{0\}$, $\text{ran } f = [1, 16]$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 15** The range of the function $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1-x & \text{for } x > 2 \\ x^2 + 3 & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ -\sqrt{-x} & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$ is
- A** $\mathbb{R}$ **B** $[3, 7] \cup (-\infty, 0)$ **C** $(-\infty, 7)$ **D** $(-\infty, -1) \cup [3, 7]$
- 16** Let $f(x) = x + x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ where $x \geq 0$. The solution of the equation $f(x) = 4$, correct to three decimal places, is
- A** 2.000 **B** 1.986 **C** 2.562 **D** 2.438
- 17** Let $f(x) = \begin{cases} 1-x^2 & \text{for } x < 0 \\ x^3 - 4 & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ \frac{1}{x-2} & \text{for } x > 2 \end{cases}$. The solutions of the equation $f(x) = 4$ are:
- A** $x = 1$ **B** $x = 2$ or $x = 2.25$
C $x = 1$ or $x = 1.25$ **D** $x = 5$
- 18** If $f(x) = 3x^2 + 6$ and $g(x) = 1 - 2x$, then $f(g(1.2))$ is equal to
- A** 11.88 **B** -19.64 **C** -14.448 **D** 12.68
- 19** A holiday rental home rents for \$150 a night for the first three nights, \$120 a night for the next three nights, and \$100 a night for each remaining night. The total cost T is a function of the number of nights x that a guest stays. The piecewise-defined function T has rule

$$\begin{array}{ll} \textbf{A } T(x) = \begin{cases} 150x & \text{for } x \leq 3 \\ 120x + 90 & \text{for } 4 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 100x + 210 & \text{for } x > 6 \end{cases} & \textbf{B } T(x) = \begin{cases} 150x & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 120x & \text{for } 4 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 100x & \text{for } x > 6 \end{cases} \\ \textbf{C } T(x) = \begin{cases} 150x & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 120x + 360 & \text{for } 4 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 100x + 810 & \text{for } x > 6 \end{cases} & \textbf{D } T(x) = \begin{cases} 150x & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 270x & \text{for } 4 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 370x & \text{for } x > 6 \end{cases} \end{array}$$

2

Refresher on polynomial functions

Chapter contents

- ▶ **2A** Quadratic functions
- ▶ **2B** Determining the rule for a parabola
- ▶ **2C** The language of polynomials
- ▶ **2D** The general cubic function
- ▶ **2E** Polynomials of higher degree
- ▶ **2F** Determining the rule for the graph of a polynomial
- ▶ **2G** Solution of literal equations and systems of equations
- ▶ **2H** Division and factorisation of polynomials (Optional)

A polynomial function of degree 2 is called a **quadratic function**. The general rule for such a function is

$$f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c, \quad a \neq 0$$

A polynomial function of degree 3 is called a **cubic function**. The general rule for such a function is

$$f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d, \quad a \neq 0$$

A polynomial function of degree 4 is called a **quartic function**. The general rule for such a function is

$$f(x) = ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e, \quad a \neq 0$$

In this chapter we revise quadratic functions, and build on our previous study of cubic and quartic functions.

2A Quadratic functions

Learning intentions

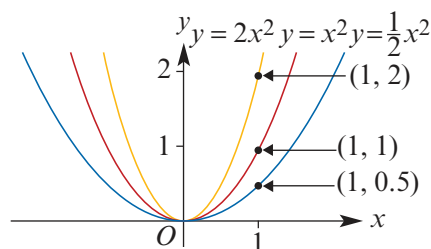
- To revise quadratic functions.

Transformations of parabolas

Dilation from the x -axis

For $a > 0$, the graph of the function $y = ax^2$ is obtained from the graph of $y = x^2$ by a dilation of factor a from the x -axis.

The graphs on the right are those of $y = x^2$, $y = 2x^2$ and $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$, i.e. $a = 1, 2$ and $\frac{1}{2}$.

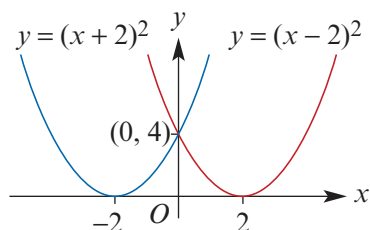


Translation parallel to the x -axis

The graphs of $y = (x + 2)^2$ and $y = (x - 2)^2$ are shown.

For $h > 0$, the graph of $y = (x + h)^2$ is obtained from the graph of $y = x^2$ by a translation of h units in the negative direction of the x -axis.

For $h < 0$, the graph of $y = (x + h)^2$ is obtained from the graph of $y = x^2$ by a translation of $-h$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis.

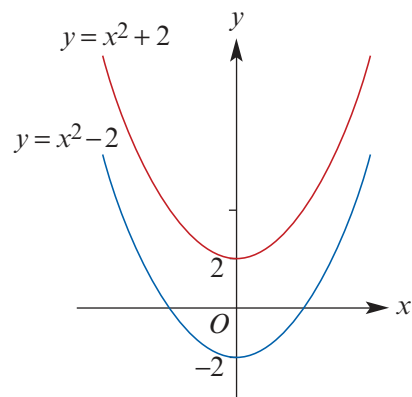


Translation parallel to the y -axis

The graphs of $y = x^2 + 2$ and $y = x^2 - 2$ are shown.

For $k > 0$, the graph of $y = x^2 + k$ is obtained from the graph of $y = x^2$ by a translation of k units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

For $k < 0$, the translation is in the negative direction of the y -axis.



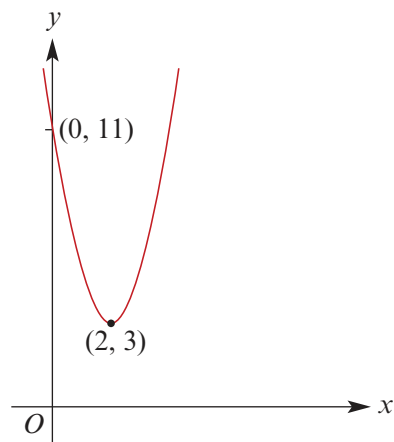
Combinations of transformations

The graph of the function

$$f(x) = 2(x - 2)^2 + 3$$

is obtained by transforming the graph of the function $f(x) = x^2$ by:

- dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
- translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis
- translation of 3 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.



Graphing quadratics in turning point form

By applying dilations, reflections and translations to the basic parabola $y = x^2$, we can sketch the graph of any quadratic expressed in **turning point form** $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$:

- If $a > 0$, the graph has a minimum point.
- If $a < 0$, the graph has a maximum point.
- The vertex is the point (h, k) .
- The axis of symmetry is $x = h$.
- If h and k are positive, then the graph of $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ is obtained from the graph of $y = ax^2$ by translating h units in the positive direction of the x -axis and k units in the positive direction of the y -axis.
- Similar results hold for different combinations of h and k positive and negative.



Example 1

Sketch the graph of $y = 2(x - 1)^2 + 3$.

Solution

The graph of $y = 2x^2$ is translated 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

The vertex has coordinates $(1, 3)$.

The axis of symmetry is the line $x = 1$.

The graph will be narrower than $y = x^2$.

The range is $[3, \infty)$.

To add further detail to our graph, we can determine the axis intercepts:

y -axis intercept

When $x = 0$, $y = 2(0 - 1)^2 + 3 = 5$.

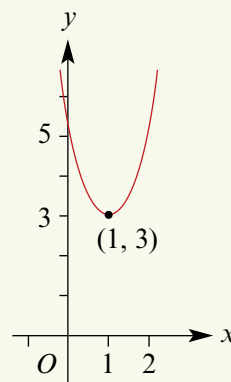
x -axis intercepts

In this example, the minimum value of y is 3, and so y cannot be 0. Therefore this graph has no x -axis intercepts.

Note: Another way to see this is to let $y = 0$ and try to solve for x :

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= 2(x - 1)^2 + 3 \\ -3 &= 2(x - 1)^2 \\ -\frac{3}{2} &= (x - 1)^2 \end{aligned}$$

As the square root of a negative number is not a real number, this equation has no real solutions.



**Example 2**

Sketch the graph of $y = -(x + 1)^2 + 4$.

Solution

The vertex has coordinates $(-1, 4)$ and so the axis of symmetry is the line $x = -1$.

When $x = 0$, $y = -(0 + 1)^2 + 4 = 3$.

$\therefore$ the y -axis intercept is 3.

When $y = 0$,

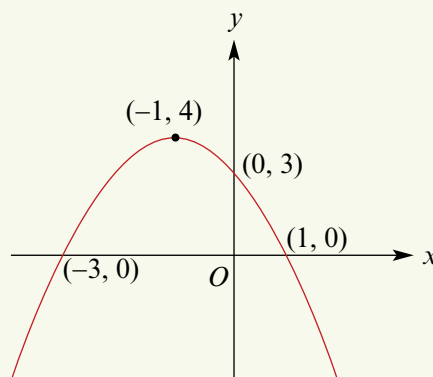
$$-(x + 1)^2 + 4 = 0$$

$$(x + 1)^2 = 4$$

$$x + 1 = \pm 2$$

$$x = \pm 2 - 1$$

$\therefore$ the x -axis intercepts are 1 and -3 .

**The axis of symmetry**

For a quadratic function written in polynomial form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$, the axis of symmetry of its graph has the equation $x = -\frac{b}{2a}$.

Therefore the x -coordinate of the turning point is $-\frac{b}{2a}$. Substitute this value into the quadratic polynomial to determine the y -coordinate of the turning point.

**Example 3**

For each of the following quadratic functions, use the axis of symmetry to determine the turning point of the graph, express the function in the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, and hence determine the maximum or minimum value and the range.

a $y = x^2 - 4x + 3$

b $y = -2x^2 + 12x - 7$

Solution

a The x -coordinate of the turning point is 2.

When $x = 2$, $y = 4 - 8 + 3 = -1$.

The coordinates of the turning point are $(2, -1)$. Hence the equation is $y = (x - 2)^2 - 1$.

The minimum value is -1 and the range is $[-1, \infty)$.

Explanation

Here $a = 1$ and $b = -4$, so the axis of symmetry is $x = -\left(\frac{-4}{2}\right) = 2$.

For the turning point form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, we have found that $a = 1$, $h = 2$ and $k = -1$.

Since $a > 0$, the parabola has a minimum.

b The x -coordinate of the turning point is 3.

$$\text{When } x = 3, y = -2 \times (3)^2 + 12 \times 3 - 7 = 11.$$

The coordinates of the turning point are (3, 11). Hence the equation is $y = -2(x - 3)^2 + 11$.

The maximum value is 11 and the range is $(-\infty, 11]$.

Here $a = -2$ and $b = 12$, so the axis of symmetry is $x = -\left(\frac{12}{-4}\right) = 3$.

For the turning point form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, we have found that $a = -2$, $h = 3$ and $k = 11$.

Since $a < 0$, the parabola has a maximum.

Graphing quadratics in polynomial form

It is not essential to convert a quadratic to turning point form in order to sketch its graph.

For a quadratic in polynomial form, we can determine the x - and y -axis intercepts and the axis of symmetry by other methods and use these details to sketch the graph.

Step 1 Determine the y -axis intercept.

Step 2 Determine the x -axis intercepts.

Step 3 Determine the equation of the axis of symmetry.

Step 4 Determine the coordinates of the turning point.



Example 4

Determine the x - and y -axis intercepts and the turning point, and hence sketch the graph of $y = x^2 + x - 12$.

Solution

Step 1 $c = -12$. Therefore the y -axis intercept is -12 .

Step 2 Let $y = 0$. Then

$$0 = x^2 + x - 12$$

$$0 = (x + 4)(x - 3)$$

$$\therefore x = -4 \text{ or } x = 3$$

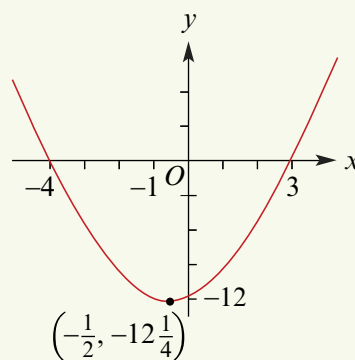
The x -axis intercepts are -4 and 3 .

Step 3 The axis of symmetry is the line with equation

$$x = \frac{-4 + 3}{2} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

Step 4 When $x = -\frac{1}{2}$, $y = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) - 12$
 $= -12\frac{1}{4}$

The turning point has coordinates $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, -12\frac{1}{4}\right)$.



Completing the square

By completing the square, all quadratics in polynomial form, $y = ax^2 + bx + c$, may be transposed into turning point form, $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$. We have seen that this can be used to sketch the graphs of quadratic polynomials.

To complete the square of $x^2 + bx + c$:

- Take half the coefficient of x (that is, $\frac{b}{2}$) and add and subtract its square $\frac{b^2}{4}$.

To complete the square of $ax^2 + bx + c$:

- First take out a as a factor and then complete the square inside the bracket.



Example 5

By completing the square, write the quadratic $f(x) = 2x^2 - 4x - 5$ in turning point form, and hence sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

Solution

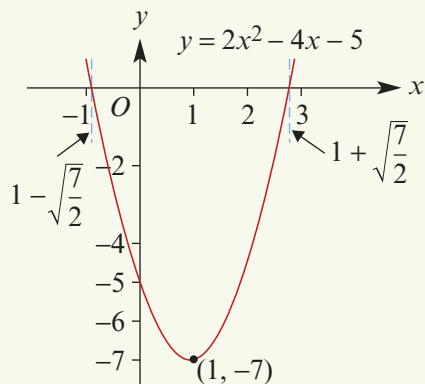
$$\begin{aligned}
 f(x) &= 2x^2 - 4x - 5 \\
 &= 2\left(x^2 - 2x - \frac{5}{2}\right) \\
 &= 2\left(x^2 - 2x + 1 - 1 - \frac{5}{2}\right) \quad \text{add and subtract } \left(\frac{b}{2}\right)^2 \text{ to 'complete the square'} \\
 &= 2\left[(x^2 - 2x + 1) - \frac{7}{2}\right] \\
 &= 2\left[(x - 1)^2 - \frac{7}{2}\right] \\
 &= 2(x - 1)^2 - 7
 \end{aligned}$$

The x -axis intercepts can be determined after completing the square:

$$\begin{aligned}
 2x^2 - 4x - 5 &= 0 \\
 2(x - 1)^2 - 7 &= 0 \\
 (x - 1)^2 &= \frac{7}{2} \\
 x - 1 &= \pm\sqrt{\frac{7}{2}} \\
 \therefore x &= 1 + \sqrt{\frac{7}{2}} \text{ or } x = 1 - \sqrt{\frac{7}{2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

This information can now be used to sketch the graph:

- The y -axis intercept is $c = -5$.
- The turning point is $(1, -7)$.
- The x -axis intercepts are $1 + \sqrt{\frac{7}{2}}$ and $1 - \sqrt{\frac{7}{2}}$.



The quadratic formula

The solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, are given by the **quadratic formula**

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

It should be noted that the equation of the axis of symmetry can be derived from this general formula: the axis of symmetry is the line with equation

$$x = -\frac{b}{2a}$$



Example 6

Sketch the graph of $f(x) = -3x^2 - 12x - 7$ by:

- determining the equation of the axis of symmetry
- determining the coordinates of the turning point
- using the general quadratic formula to determine the x -axis intercepts.

Solution

Since $c = -7$, the y -axis intercept is -7 .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Axis of symmetry } x &= -\frac{b}{2a} \\ &= -\left(\frac{-12}{2 \times (-3)}\right) \\ &= -2 \end{aligned}$$

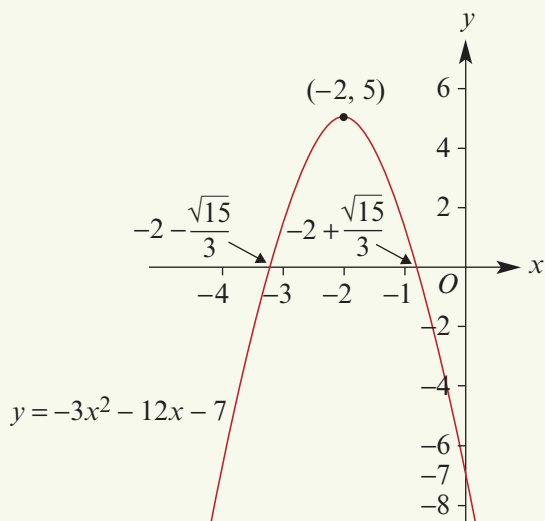
Turning point

When $x = -2$, $y = -3(-2)^2 - 12(-2) - 7 = 5$.

The turning point coordinates are $(-2, 5)$.

x -axis intercepts

$$\begin{aligned} -3x^2 - 12x - 7 &= 0 \\ x &= \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a} \\ &= \frac{-(-12) \pm \sqrt{(-12)^2 - 4(-3)(-7)}}{2(-3)} \\ &= \frac{12 \pm \sqrt{60}}{-6} \\ &= \frac{12 \pm 2\sqrt{15}}{-6} \\ &= -2 \pm \frac{1}{3}\sqrt{15} \end{aligned}$$



The discriminant

The **discriminant** Δ of a quadratic polynomial $ax^2 + bx + c$ is

$$\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$$

For the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$:

- If $\Delta > 0$, there are two solutions.
- If $\Delta = 0$, there is one solution.
- If $\Delta < 0$, there are no real solutions.

For the equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ where a , b and c are rational numbers:

- If Δ is a perfect square and $\Delta \neq 0$, then the equation has two rational solutions.
- If $\Delta = 0$, then the equation has one rational solution.
- If Δ is not a perfect square and $\Delta > 0$, then the equation has two irrational solutions.



Example 7

Without sketching graphs, determine whether the graph of each of the following functions crosses, touches or does not intersect the x -axis.

a $f(x) = 2x^2 - 4x - 6$

b $f(x) = -4x^2 + 12x - 9$

c $f(x) = 3x^2 - 2x + 8$

Solution

a $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$
 $= (-4)^2 - 4 \times 2 \times (-6)$
 $= 16 + 48$
 $= 64 > 0$

The graph crosses the x -axis twice.

b $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$
 $= (12)^2 - 4 \times (-4) \times (-9)$
 $= 144 - 144$
 $= 0$

The graph touches the x -axis once.

c $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$
 $= (-2)^2 - 4 \times 3 \times 8$
 $= 4 - 96$
 $= -92 < 0$

The graph does not intersect the x -axis.

Explanation

Here $a = 2$, $b = -4$, $c = -6$.

As $\Delta > 0$, there are two x -axis intercepts.

Here $a = -4$, $b = 12$, $c = -9$.

As $\Delta = 0$, there is only one x -axis intercept.

Here $a = 3$, $b = -2$, $c = 8$.

As $\Delta < 0$, there are no x -axis intercepts.

**Example 8**

Determine the values of m for which the equation $3x^2 - 2mx + 3 = 0$ has:

- a** one solution **b** no solution **c** two distinct solutions.

Solution

For the quadratic $3x^2 - 2mx + 3$, the discriminant is $\Delta = 4m^2 - 36$.

a For one solution:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &= 0 \\ \text{i.e. } 4m^2 - 36 &= 0 \\ m^2 &= 9 \\ \therefore m &= \pm 3\end{aligned}$$

b For no solution:

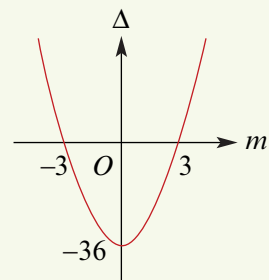
$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &< 0 \\ \text{i.e. } 4m^2 - 36 &< 0 \\ \text{From the graph, this is equivalent to} \\ -3 &< m < 3\end{aligned}$$

c For two distinct solutions:

$$\begin{aligned}\Delta &> 0 \\ \text{i.e. } 4m^2 - 36 &> 0\end{aligned}$$

From the graph it can be seen that

$$m > 3 \text{ or } m < -3$$

**Summary 2A**

- The graph of $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ is a parabola congruent to the graph of $y = ax^2$. The vertex (or turning point) is the point (h, k) . The axis of symmetry is $x = h$.
- The axis of symmetry of the graph of $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ has equation $x = -\frac{b}{2a}$.
- By completing the square, all quadratic functions in polynomial form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ may be transposed into the turning point form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$.
- To complete the square of $x^2 + bx + c$:
 - Take half the coefficient of x (that is, $\frac{b}{2}$) and add and subtract its square $\frac{b^2}{4}$.
- To complete the square of $ax^2 + bx + c$:
 - First take out a as a factor and then complete the square inside the bracket.
- The solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, are given by the **quadratic formula**

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

From the formula it can be seen that:

- If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, there are two solutions.
- If $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, there is one solution.
- If $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real solutions.

Exercise 2A

Example 1, 2

1 Sketch the graphs of the following functions.

a $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^2$

b $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^2 - 2$

c $f(x) = -2(x - 1)^2$

d $f(x) = 4 - 2(x + 1)^2$

e $f(x) = 4 + 2(x + \frac{1}{2})^2$

f $f(x) = 2(x + 1)^2 - 1$

g $f(x) = 3(x - 2)^2 - 4$

h $f(x) = (x + 1)^2 - 1$

i $f(x) = 5x^2 - 1$

Example 3

2 For each of the following quadratic functions, use the axis of symmetry to determine the turning point of the graph, express the function in the form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, and hence determine the maximum or minimum value and the range.

a $f(x) = x^2 + 3x - 2$

b $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 8$

c $f(x) = 2x^2 + 8x - 6$

d $f(x) = 2x^2 - 5x$

e $f(x) = 7 - 2x - 3x^2$

f $f(x) = -2x^2 + 9x + 11$

Example 4

3 Determine the x - and y -axis intercepts and the turning point, and hence sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = -x^2 + 2x$

b $y = x^2 - 6x + 8$

c $y = -x^2 - 5x - 6$

d $y = -2x^2 + 8x - 6$

e $y = 4x^2 - 12x + 9$

f $y = 6x^2 + 3x - 18$

Example 5

4 Sketch the graph of each of the following by first completing the square.

a $y = x^2 + 2x - 6$

b $y = x^2 - 4x - 10$

c $y = -x^2 - 5x - 3$

d $y = -2x^2 + 8x - 10$

e $y = x^2 - 7x + 3$

Example 6

5 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 3x^2 - 2x - 1$ by first determining the equation of the axis of symmetry, then determining the coordinates of the vertex, and finally using the quadratic formula to calculate the x -axis intercepts.

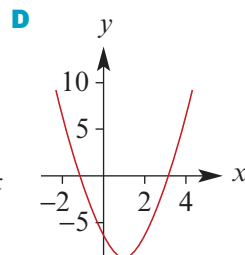
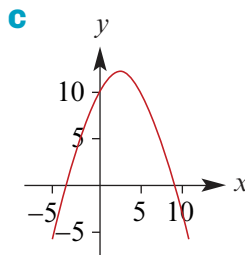
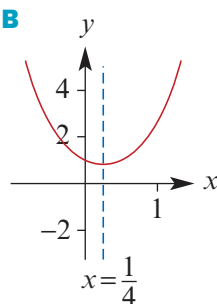
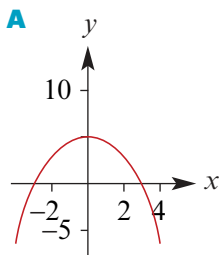
6 Match each of the following functions with the appropriate graph below.

a $y = \frac{1}{3}(x + 4)(8 - x)$

b $y = x^2 - \frac{x}{2} + 1$

c $y = -10 + 2(x - 1)^2$

d $y = \frac{1}{2}(9 - x^2)$



Example 7

7 Without sketching the graphs of the following functions, determine whether they cross, touch or do not intersect the x -axis.

a $f(x) = x^2 - 5x + 2$

b $f(x) = -4x^2 + 2x - 1$

c $f(x) = x^2 - 6x + 9$

d $f(x) = 8 - 3x - 2x^2$

e $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2x + 5$

f $f(x) = -x^2 - x - 1$

Example 8

- 8** For which values of m does the equation $mx^2 - 2mx + 3 = 0$ have:
- a** two solutions for x **b** one solution for x ?
- 9** Determine the values of m for which $(4m + 1)x^2 - 6mx + 4$ is a perfect square.
- 10** Determine the values of a for which the equation $(a - 3)x^2 + 2ax + (a + 2) = 0$ has no solutions for x .
- 11** Prove that the equation $x^2 + (a + 1)x + (a - 2) = 0$ always has two distinct solutions.
- 12** Show that the equation $(k + 1)x^2 - 2x - k = 0$ has a solution for all values of k .
- 13** For which values of k does the equation $kx^2 - 2kx = 5$ have:
- a** two solutions for x **b** one solution for x ?
- 14** For which values of k does the equation $(k - 3)x^2 + 2kx + (k + 2) = 0$ have:
- a** two solutions for x **b** one solution for x ?
- 15** Show that the equation $ax^2 - (a + b)x + b = 0$ has a solution for all values of a and b .

2B Determining the rule for a parabola**Learning intentions**

- To be able to determine the rule for a quadratic function given sufficient information.

The following three forms are useful. You will see others in the worked examples.

- 1** $y = a(x - e)(x - f)$ This can be used if two x -axis intercepts and the coordinates of one other point are known.
- 2** $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ This can be used if the coordinates of the turning point and one other point are known.
- 3** $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ This can be used if the coordinates of three points on the parabola are known.

**Example 9**

A parabola has x -axis intercepts -3 and 4 and it passes through the point $(1, 24)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

Solution

$$y = a(x + 3)(x - 4)$$

When $x = 1$, $y = 24$. Thus

$$24 = a(1 + 3)(1 - 4)$$

$$24 = -12a$$

$$\therefore a = -2$$

The rule is $y = -2(x + 3)(x - 4)$.

Explanation

Two x -axis intercepts are given. Therefore use the form $y = a(x - e)(x - f)$.

**Example 10**

The coordinates of the turning point of a parabola are (2, 6) and the parabola passes through the point (3, 3). Determine the rule for this parabola.

Solution

$$y = a(x - 2)^2 + 6$$

When $x = 3$, $y = 3$. Thus

$$3 = a(3 - 2)^2 + 6$$

$$3 = a + 6$$

$$\therefore a = -3$$

The rule is $y = -3(x - 2)^2 + 6$.

Explanation

The coordinates of the turning point and one other point on the parabola are given. Therefore use $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$.

**Example 11**

A parabola passes through the points (1, 4), (0, 5) and (−1, 10). Determine the rule for this parabola.

Solution

$$y = ax^2 + bx + c$$

When $x = 1$, $y = 4$.

When $x = 0$, $y = 5$.

When $x = -1$, $y = 10$.

Therefore

$$4 = a + b + c \quad (1)$$

$$5 = c \quad (2)$$

$$10 = a - b + c \quad (3)$$

Substitute from equation (2) into equations (1) and (3):

$$-1 = a + b \quad (1')$$

$$5 = a - b \quad (3')$$

Add (1') and (3'):

$$4 = 2a$$

$$\therefore a = 2$$

Substitute into equation (1'):

$$-1 = 2 + b$$

$$\therefore b = -3$$

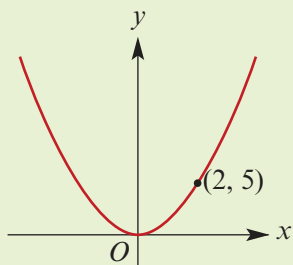
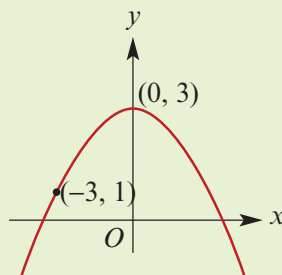
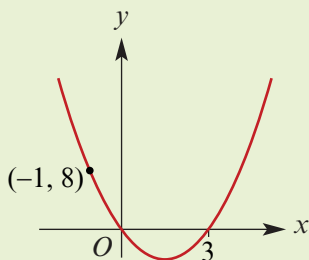
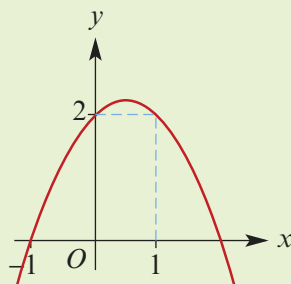
The rule is $y = 2x^2 - 3x + 5$.

Explanation

The coordinates of three points on the parabola are given. Therefore we substitute values into the general polynomial form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ to obtain three equations in three unknowns.

**Example 12**

Determine the equation of each of the following parabolas.

a**b****c****d****Solution**

a This is of the form $y = ax^2$ (since the graph has its vertex at the origin).

As the point $(2, 5)$ is on the parabola,

$$5 = a(2)^2$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{5}{4}$$

The rule is $y = \frac{5}{4}x^2$.

b This is of the form $y = ax^2 + c$ (since the graph is symmetric about the y-axis).

$$\begin{aligned} \text{For } (0, 3): \quad 3 &= a(0)^2 + c \\ \therefore c &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{For } (-3, 1): \quad 1 &= a(-3)^2 + 3 \\ 1 &= 9a + 3 \\ \therefore a &= -\frac{2}{9} \end{aligned}$$

The rule is $y = -\frac{2}{9}x^2 + 3$.

c This is of the form $y = ax(x - 3)$.

As the point $(-1, 8)$ is on the parabola,

$$8 = -a(-1 - 3)$$

$$8 = 4a$$

$$\therefore a = 2$$

The rule is $y = 2x(x - 3)$.

d This is of the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$.

The y-axis intercept is 2 and so $c = 2$.

As $(-1, 0)$ and $(1, 2)$ are on the parabola,

$$0 = a - b + 2 \quad (1)$$

$$2 = a + b + 2 \quad (2)$$

Add equations (1) and (2):

$$2 = 2a + 4$$

$$2a = -2$$

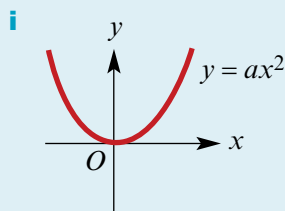
$$\therefore a = -1$$

Substitute $a = -1$ in (1) to obtain $b = 1$.

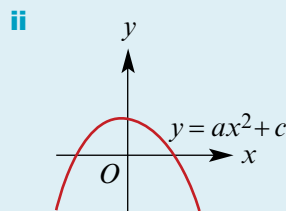
The rule is $y = -x^2 + x + 2$.

Summary 2B

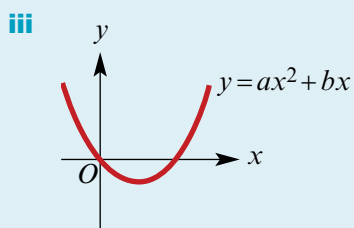
To determine a quadratic rule to fit given points, first choose the best form of quadratic expression to work with. Then substitute in the coordinates of the known points to determine the unknown parameters. Some possible forms are given here:



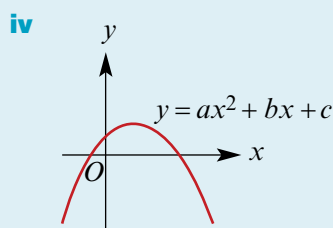
One point is needed to determine a .



Two points are needed to determine a and c .



Two points are needed to determine a and b .



Three points are needed to determine a , b and c .



Exercise 2B

Example 9

- 1** A parabola has x -axis intercepts -3 and -2 and it passes through the point $(1, -24)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

- 2** A parabola has x -axis intercepts -3 and $-\frac{3}{2}$ and it passes through the point $(1, 20)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

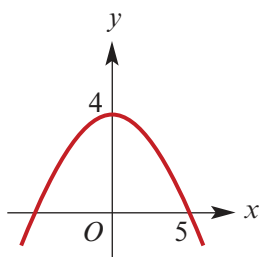
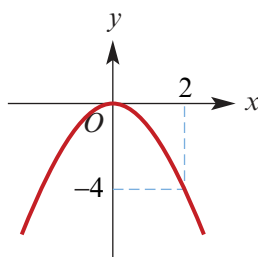
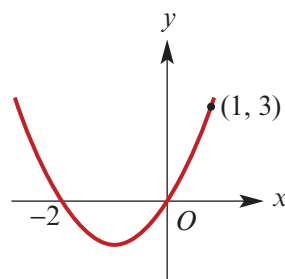
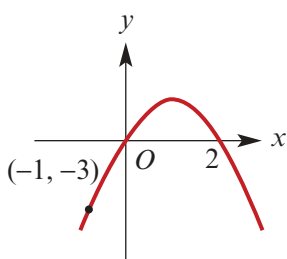
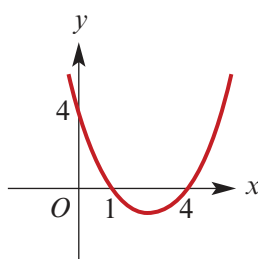
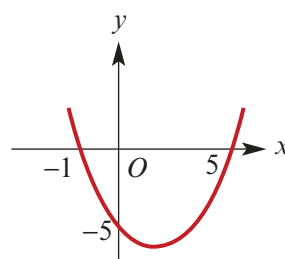
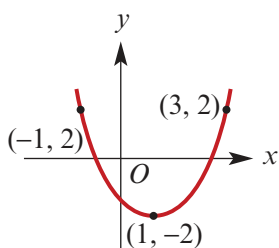
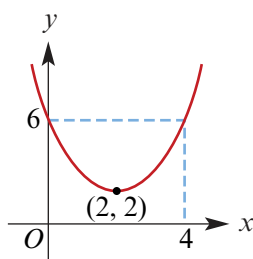
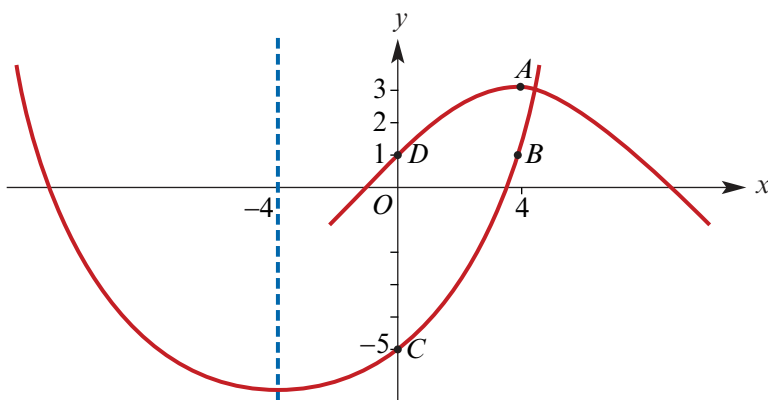
Example 10

- 3** The coordinates of the turning point of a parabola are $(-2, 4)$ and the parabola passes through the point $(4, 58)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

- 4** The coordinates of the turning point of a parabola are $(-2, -3)$ and the parabola passes through the point $(-3, -5)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

Example 11

- 5** A parabola passes through the points $(1, 19)$, $(0, 18)$ and $(-1, 7)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.
- 6** A parabola passes through the points $(2, -14)$, $(0, 10)$ and $(-4, 10)$. Determine the rule for this parabola.

Example 12**7** Determine the equation of each of the following parabolas.**a****b****c****d****e****f****g****h****8** Determine quadratic expressions for the two curves in the diagram, given that the coefficient of x in each case is 1. The marked points are $A(4, 3)$, $B(4, 1)$, $C(0, -5)$ and $D(0, 1)$.**9** The graph of the quadratic function $f(x) = A(x + b)^2 + B$ has a vertex at $(-2, 4)$ and passes through the point $(0, 8)$. Determine the values of A , b and B .

2C The language of polynomials

Learning intentions

- To be familiar with and use the language of polynomials.

- A **polynomial function** is a function that can be written in the form

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ and the coefficients $a_0, \dots, a_n$ are real numbers with $a_n \neq 0$.

- The number 0 is called the **zero polynomial**.
- The **leading term**, $a_n x^n$, of a polynomial is the term of highest index among those terms with a non-zero coefficient.
- The **degree of a polynomial** is the index n of the leading term.
- A **monic polynomial** is a polynomial whose leading term has coefficient 1.
- The **constant term** is the term of index 0. (This is the term not involving x .)



Example 13

Let $P(x) = x^4 - 3x^3 - 2$. Determine:

a $P(1)$

b $P(-1)$

c $P(2)$

d $P(-2)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad P(1) &= 1^4 - 3 \times 1^3 - 2 \\ &= 1 - 3 - 2 \\ &= -4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad P(-1) &= (-1)^4 - 3 \times (-1)^3 - 2 \\ &= 1 + 3 - 2 \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{c} \quad P(2) &= 2^4 - 3 \times 2^3 - 2 \\ &= 16 - 24 - 2 \\ &= -10 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{d} \quad P(-2) &= (-2)^4 - 3 \times (-2)^3 - 2 \\ &= 16 + 24 - 2 \\ &= 38 \end{aligned}$$



Example 14

a Let $P(x) = 2x^4 - x^3 + 2cx + 6$. If $P(1) = 21$, Determine the value of c .

b Let $Q(x) = 2x^6 - x^3 + ax^2 + bx + 20$. If $Q(-1) = Q(2) = 0$, find the values of a and b .

Solution

a $P(x) = 2x^4 - x^3 + 2cx + 6$ and $P(1) = 21$.

$$\begin{aligned} P(1) &= 2(1)^4 - (1)^3 + 2c + 6 \\ &= 2 - 1 + 2c + 6 \\ &= 7 + 2c \end{aligned}$$

Since $P(1) = 21$,

$$\begin{aligned} 7 + 2c &= 21 \\ \therefore c &= 7 \end{aligned}$$

Explanation

We will substitute $x = 1$ into $P(x)$ to form an equation and solve.

b $Q(x) = 2x^6 - x^3 + ax^2 + bx + 20$ and
 $Q(-1) = Q(2) = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} Q(-1) &= 2(-1)^6 - (-1)^3 + a(-1)^2 - b + 20 \\ &= 2 + 1 + a - b + 20 \\ &= 23 + a - b \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Q(2) &= 2(2)^6 - (2)^3 + a(2)^2 + 2b + 20 \\ &= 128 - 8 + 4a + 2b + 20 \\ &= 140 + 4a + 2b \end{aligned}$$

Since $Q(-1) = Q(2) = 0$, this gives

$$23 + a - b = 0 \quad (1)$$

$$140 + 4a + 2b = 0 \quad (2)$$

Divide (2) by 2:

$$70 + 2a + b = 0 \quad (3)$$

Add (1) and (3):

$$93 + 3a = 0$$

$$\therefore a = -31$$

Substitute in (1) to obtain $b = -8$.

First determine $Q(-1)$ and $Q(2)$ in terms of a and b .

Form simultaneous equations in a and b by putting $Q(-1) = 0$ and $Q(2) = 0$.

The arithmetic of polynomials

The operations of addition, subtraction and multiplication for polynomials are naturally defined, as shown in the following examples.

Let $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 + 2$ and $Q(x) = 2x^2 + 4$. Then

$$\begin{aligned} P(x) + Q(x) &= (x^3 + 3x^2 + 2) + (2x^2 + 4) \\ &= x^3 + 5x^2 + 6 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(x) - Q(x) &= (x^3 + 3x^2 + 2) - (2x^2 + 4) \\ &= x^3 + x^2 - 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(x)Q(x) &= (x^3 + 3x^2 + 2)(2x^2 + 4) \\ &= (x^3 + 3x^2 + 2) \times 2x^2 + (x^3 + 3x^2 + 2) \times 4 \\ &= 2x^5 + 6x^4 + 4x^2 + 4x^3 + 12x^2 + 8 \\ &= 2x^5 + 6x^4 + 4x^3 + 16x^2 + 8 \end{aligned}$$

The sum, difference and product of two polynomials is a polynomial.

**Example 15**

Let $P(x) = x^3 - 6x + 3$ and $Q(x) = x^2 - 3x + 1$. Determine:

a $P(x) + Q(x)$

b $P(x) - Q(x)$

c $P(x)Q(x)$

Solution

a $P(x) + Q(x)$

$$= x^3 - 6x + 3 + x^2 - 3x + 1$$

$$= x^3 + x^2 - 6x - 3x + 3 + 1$$

$$= x^3 + x^2 - 9x + 4$$

b $P(x) - Q(x)$

$$= x^3 - 6x + 3 - (x^2 - 3x + 1)$$

$$= x^3 - 6x + 3 - x^2 + 3x - 1$$

$$= x^3 - x^2 - 6x + 3x + 3 - 1$$

$$= x^3 - x^2 - 3x + 2$$

c $P(x)Q(x) = (x^3 - 6x + 3)(x^2 - 3x + 1)$

$$= x^3(x^2 - 3x + 1) - 6x(x^2 - 3x + 1) + 3(x^2 - 3x + 1)$$

$$= x^5 - 3x^4 + x^3 - 6x^3 + 18x^2 - 6x + 3x^2 - 9x + 3$$

$$= x^5 - 3x^4 + (x^3 - 6x^3) + (18x^2 + 3x^2) - (6x + 9x) + 3$$

$$= x^5 - 3x^4 - 5x^3 + 21x^2 - 15x + 3$$

We use the notation $\deg(f)$ to denote the degree of a polynomial f . For $f, g \neq 0$, we have

$$\deg(f + g) \leq \max\{\deg(f), \deg(g)\}$$

$$\deg(f \times g) = \deg(f) + \deg(g)$$

Equating coefficients

Two polynomials P and Q are equal only if their corresponding coefficients are equal. For two cubic polynomials, $P(x) = a_3x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0$ and $Q(x) = b_3x^3 + b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0$, they are equal if and only if $a_3 = b_3$, $a_2 = b_2$, $a_1 = b_1$ and $a_0 = b_0$.

For example, if

$$P(x) = 4x^3 + 5x^2 - x + 3 \quad \text{and} \quad Q(x) = b_3x^3 + b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0$$

then $P(x) = Q(x)$ if and only if $b_3 = 4$, $b_2 = 5$, $b_1 = -1$ and $b_0 = 3$.

**Example 16**

The polynomial $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x + 1$ can be written in the form $(x - 2)(x^2 + bx + c) + r$ where b , c and r are real numbers. Determine the values of b , c and r .

Solution

Expand the required form:

$$(x - 2)(x^2 + bx + c) + r = x(x^2 + bx + c) - 2(x^2 + bx + c) + r$$

$$= x^3 + bx^2 + cx - 2x^2 - 2bx - 2c + r$$

$$= x^3 + (b - 2)x^2 + (c - 2b)x - 2c + r$$

If $x^3 + 3x^2 + 2x + 1 = x^3 + (b - 2)x^2 + (c - 2b)x - 2c + r$ for all real numbers x , then by equating coefficients:

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{coefficient of } x^2 & 3 = b - 2 & \therefore b = 5 \\ \text{coefficient of } x & 2 = c - 2b & \therefore c = 2b + 2 = 12 \\ \text{constant term} & 1 = -2c + r & \therefore r = 2c + 1 = 25 \end{array}$$

Hence $b = 5$, $c = 12$ and $r = 25$. This means that

$$\begin{aligned} P(x) &= (x - 2)(x^2 + bx + c) + r \\ &= (x - 2)(x^2 + 5x + 12) + 25 \end{aligned}$$



Example 17

- a** If $x^3 + 3x^2 + 3x + 8 = a(x + 1)^3 + b$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, determine the values of a and b .
b Show that $x^3 + 6x^2 + 6x + 8$ cannot be written in the form $a(x + c)^3 + b$ for real numbers a , b and c .

Solution

- a** Expand the right-hand side of the equation:

$$\begin{aligned} a(x + 1)^3 + b &= a(x^3 + 3x^2 + 3x + 1) + b \\ &= ax^3 + 3ax^2 + 3ax + a + b \end{aligned}$$

If $x^3 + 3x^2 + 3x + 8 = ax^3 + 3ax^2 + 3ax + a + b$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, then by equating coefficients:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{coefficient of } x^3 & 1 = a \\ \text{coefficient of } x^2 & 3 = 3a \\ \text{coefficient of } x & 3 = 3a \\ \text{constant term} & 8 = a + b \end{array}$$

Hence $a = 1$ and $b = 7$.

- b** Expand the proposed form:

$$\begin{aligned} a(x + c)^3 + b &= a(x^3 + 3cx^2 + 3c^2x + c^3) + b \\ &= ax^3 + 3cax^2 + 3c^2ax + c^3a + b \end{aligned}$$

Suppose $x^3 + 6x^2 + 6x + 8 = ax^3 + 3cax^2 + 3c^2ax + c^3a + b$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Then

$$\begin{array}{lll} \text{coefficient of } x^3 & 1 = a & (1) \\ \text{coefficient of } x^2 & 6 = 3ca & (2) \\ \text{coefficient of } x & 6 = 3c^2a & (3) \\ \text{constant term} & 8 = c^3a + b & (4) \end{array}$$

From (1), we have $a = 1$. So from (2), we have $c = 2$.

But substituting $a = 1$ and $c = 2$ into (3) gives $6 = 12$, which is a contradiction.

Summary 2C

- A **polynomial function** is a function that can be written in the form

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ and the coefficients $a_0, \dots, a_n$ are real numbers with $a_n \neq 0$.

The **leading term** is $a_n x^n$ (the term of highest index) and the **constant term** is a_0 (the term not involving x).

- The **degree of a polynomial** is the index n of the leading term.
- The sum, difference and product of two polynomials is a polynomial.
- Two polynomials P and Q are equal only if their corresponding coefficients are equal. Two cubic polynomials, $P(x) = a_3 x^3 + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0$ and $Q(x) = b_3 x^3 + b_2 x^2 + b_1 x + b_0$, are equal if and only if $a_3 = b_3$, $a_2 = b_2$, $a_1 = b_1$ and $a_0 = b_0$.

Exercise 2C

Example 13

- 1 Let $P(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x + 1$. Determine:
a $P(1)$ **b** $P(-1)$ **c** $P(2)$ **d** $P(-2)$ **e** $P(\frac{1}{2})$ **f** $P(-\frac{1}{2})$
- 2 Let $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 4x + 6$. Determine:
a $P(0)$ **b** $P(1)$ **c** $P(2)$ **d** $P(-1)$ **e** $P(a)$ **f** $P(2a)$

Example 14

- 3 **a** Let $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - ax - 30$. If $P(2) = 0$, determine the value of a .
b Let $P(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + 5x - 14$. If $P(3) = 68$, determine the value of a .
c Let $P(x) = x^4 - x^3 - 2x + c$. If $P(1) = 6$, determine the value of c .
d Let $P(x) = 2x^6 - 5x^3 + ax^2 + bx + 12$. If $P(-1) = P(2) = 0$, determine a and b .
e Let $P(x) = x^5 - 2x^4 + ax^3 + bx^2 + 12x - 36$. If $P(3) = P(1) = 0$, determine a and b .

Example 15

- 4 Let $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 + 3x$, $g(x) = 2 - x$ and $h(x) = x^2 + 2x$. Simplify each of the following.
a $f(x) + g(x)$ **b** $f(x) + h(x)$ **c** $f(x) - g(x)$
d $3f(x)$ **e** $f(x)g(x)$ **f** $g(x)h(x)$
g $f(x) + g(x) + h(x)$ **h** $f(x)h(x)$
- 5 Expand each of the following products and collect like terms.
a $(x - 2)(x^2 - 3x + 4)$ **b** $(x - 5)(x^2 - 2x + 3)$ **c** $(x + 1)(2x^2 - 3x - 4)$
d $(x + 2)(x^2 + bx + c)$ **e** $(2x - 1)(x^2 - 4x - 3)$

Example 16

- 6 It is known that $x^3 - x^2 - 6x - 4 = (x + 1)(x^2 + bx + c)$ for all values of x , for suitable values of b and c .
a Expand $(x + 1)(x^2 + bx + c)$ and collect like terms.
b Determine b and c by equating coefficients.
c Hence write $x^3 - x^2 - 6x - 4$ as a product of three linear factors.

Example 17

- 7 a** If $2x^3 - 18x^2 + 54x - 49 = a(x - 3)^3 + b$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, determine the values of a and b .
- b** If $-2x^3 + 18x^2 - 54x + 52 = a(x + c)^3 + b$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, determine the values of a , b and c .
- c** Show that $x^3 - 5x^2 - 2x + 24$ cannot be written in the form $a(x + c)^3 + b$ for real numbers a , b and c .
- 8** Determine the values of A and B such that $A(x + 3) + B(x + 2) = 4x + 9$ for all real numbers x .
- 9** Determine the values of A , B and C in each of the following.
- a** $x^2 - 4x + 10 = A(x + B)^2 + C$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$
- b** $4x^2 - 12x + 14 = A(x + B)^2 + C$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$
- c** $x^3 - 9x^2 + 27x - 22 = A(x + B)^3 + C$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

2D The general cubic function

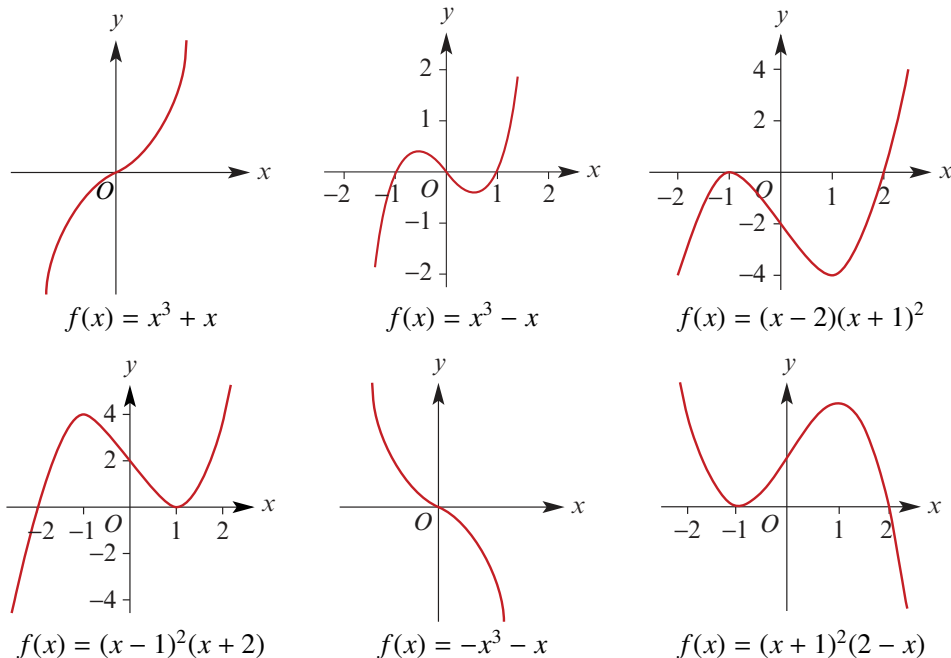
Learning intentions

- To be able to sketch a variety of cubic functions.

Not all cubic functions can be written in the form $f(x) = a(x - h)^3 + k$. In this section we consider the general cubic function. The form of a general cubic function is

$$f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d, \quad \text{where } a \neq 0$$

It is impossible to fully investigate cubic functions without the use of calculus. Cubic functions will be revisited in Chapter 7. The ‘shapes’ of cubic graphs vary. Below is a gallery of cubic graphs, demonstrating the variety of ‘shapes’ that are possible.

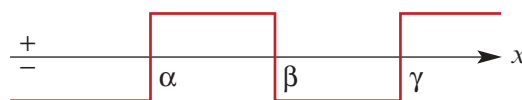


Notes:

- A cubic graph can have one, two or three x -axis intercepts.
- Not all cubic graphs have a stationary point. For example, the graph of $f(x) = x^3 + x$ shown above has no points of zero gradient.
- The turning points do not occur symmetrically between consecutive x -axis intercepts as they do for quadratics. Differential calculus must be used to determine them.
- If a cubic graph has a turning point on the x -axis, this corresponds to a **repeated factor**. For example, the graph of $f(x) = x^3 - 3x - 2$ shown above has a turning point at $(-1, 0)$. The factorisation is $f(x) = (x + 1)^2(x - 2)$.

Sign diagrams

A **sign diagram** is a number-line diagram that shows when an expression is positive or negative. For a cubic function with rule $f(x) = (x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma)$, where $\alpha < \beta < \gamma$, the sign diagram is as shown.

**Example 18**

Draw a sign diagram for the cubic function $f(x) = (x + 3)(x - 2)(x - 5)$.

Solution

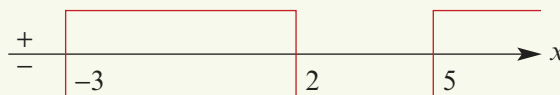
$f(-3) = f(2) = f(5) = 0$. We note that

$$f(x) > 0 \quad \text{for } x > 5$$

$$f(x) < 0 \quad \text{for } 2 < x < 5$$

$$f(x) > 0 \quad \text{for } -3 < x < 2$$

$$f(x) < 0 \quad \text{for } x < -3$$

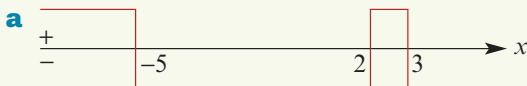


Hence the sign diagram may be drawn as shown.

**Example 19**

For the cubic function with rule $f(x) = -(x + 5)(x - 2)(x - 3)$:

- sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$ using a calculator to determine the coordinates of the turning points, correct to two decimal places
- sketch the graph of $y = \frac{1}{2}f(x - 1)$.

Solution

The x -axis intercepts are at $x = -5$, $x = 2$ and $x = 3$ and the y -axis intercept is at $y = -30$.

The turning points can be found using a graphics calculator. The method is described following this example.

- b** The rule for the transformation is

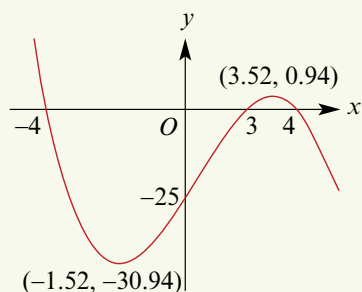
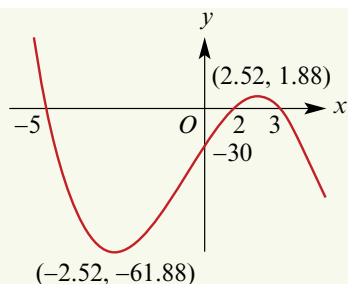
$$(x, y) \rightarrow \left(x + 1, \frac{1}{2}y\right)$$

This is a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis followed by a translation 1 unit to the right.

Transformations of the turning points:

$$(2.52, 1.88) \rightarrow (3.52, 0.94)$$

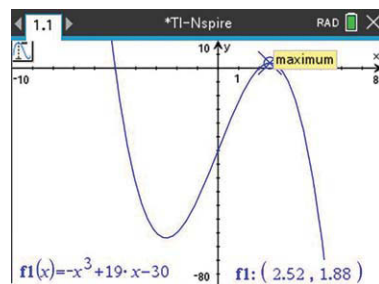
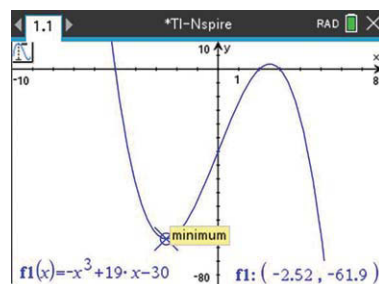
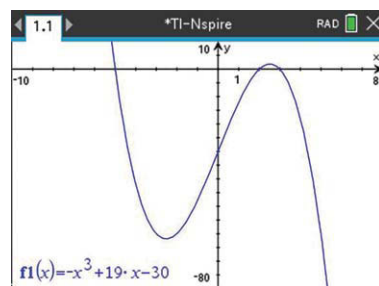
$$(-2.52, -61.88) \rightarrow (-1.52, -30.94)$$



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To add detail to the graph, the coordinates of the turning points can be found with a calculator.

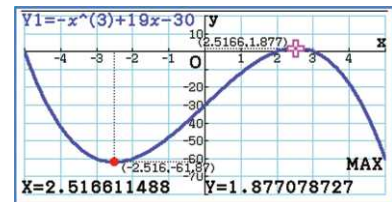
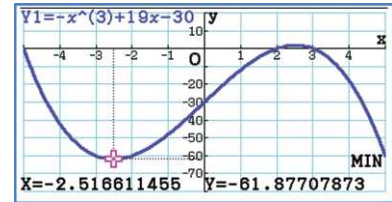
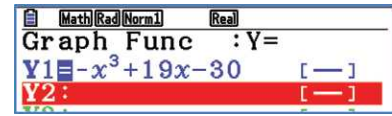
- Enter the function in a **Graphs** page.
- Use **menu** > **Window/Zoom** > **Window Settings** to set an appropriate window.
- Use either **menu** > **Trace** > **Graph Trace** or **menu** > **Analyze Graph** > **Maximum or Minimum** to display the approximate (decimal) coordinates of key points on the graph.
- In **Graph Trace**, the tracing point ($\times$) can be moved either by using the arrow keys ($\leftarrow \rightarrow$) or by typing a specific x -value then **enter**. When the tracing point reaches a local minimum, it displays 'minimum'.
- Pressing **enter** will paste the coordinates to the point on the graph.
- Press **esc** to exit the command.
- Here **Graph Trace** has been used to determine the turning points of the cubic function.
- If you use **Analyze Graph** instead, select the lower bound by moving to the left of the key point and clicking (⏏) and then select the upper bound by moving to the right ($\rightarrow$) of the key point and clicking.



Using the Casio

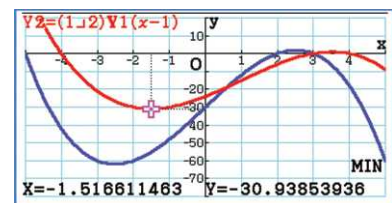
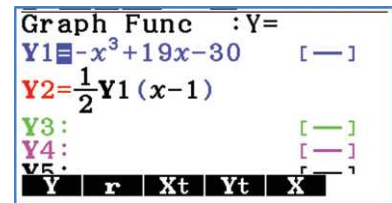
- a** To add detail to the graph, the coordinates of the turning points can be found with a calculator.

- Press **MENU** **5** to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = -x^3 + 19x - 30$ in **Y1**:
 $(-)$ **X**, **0**, **T** **^** **3** **▶** **+** **1** **9** **X**, **0**, **T** **-** **3** **0** **EXE**
- Adjust the View Window **(SHIFT)** **F3** for $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and $-80 \leq y \leq 20$ with y -scale 10.
- Select **Draw** **(F6)** to view the graph.
- To determine the local minimum, go to the **G-Solve** menu **(SHIFT)** **F5** and select **Minimum** **(F3)**.
- For the local maximum, go to **G-Solve** and select **Maximum** **(F2)**.



- b** To graph the transformed function:

- Press **(EXIT)** to return to the function list.
- Enter the rule for the transformed function in **Y2** as shown.
- Select **Draw** **(F6)** to view the graphs.
- The coordinates of the turning points can be found as above.



Summary 2D

- The graph of a cubic function can have one, two or three x -axis intercepts.
- The graph of a cubic function can have zero, one or two stationary points.
- To sketch a cubic in factorised form $y = a(x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma)$:
 - Determine the y -axis intercept.
 - Determine the x -axis intercepts.
 - Prepare a sign diagram.
 - Consider the y -values as x increases to the right of all x -axis intercepts.
 - Consider the y -values as x decreases to the left of all x -axis intercepts.
- If there is a repeated factor to the power 2, then the y -values have the same sign immediately to the left and right of the corresponding x -axis intercept.

Exercise 2D

Example 18

1 Draw a sign diagram for each of the following expressions.

a $(3 - x)(x - 1)(x - 6)$

b $(3 + x)(x - 1)(x + 6)$

c $(x - 5)(x + 1)(2x - 6)$

d $(4 - x)(5 - x)(1 - 2x)$

e $(x - 5)^2(x - 4)$

f $(x - 5)^2(4 - x)$

2 Use your calculator to factorise and then draw a sign diagram for each of the following expressions.

a $x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6$

b $4x^3 + 3x^2 - 16x - 12$

c $x^3 - 7x^2 + 4x + 12$

d $2x^3 + 3x^2 - 11x - 6$

Example 19

3 **a** Use a calculator to plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + 1$.

b On the same screen, plot the graphs of:

i $y = f(x - 2)$

ii $y = f(x + 2)$

iii $y = 3f(x)$

4 **a** Use a calculator to plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 2$.

b On the same screen, plot the graphs of:

i $y = f(2x)$

ii $y = f\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

iii $y = 2f(x)$

2E Polynomials of higher degree

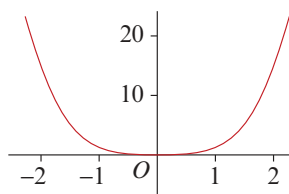
Learning intentions

- To be able to recognise and sketch a variety of quartic functions.

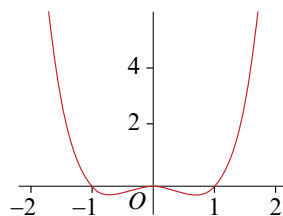
The general form for a quartic function is

$$f(x) = ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e, \quad \text{where } a \neq 0$$

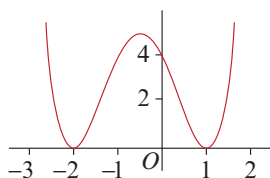
A gallery of quartic functions is shown below.



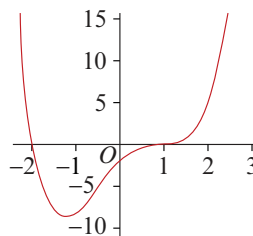
$$f(x) = x^4$$



$$f(x) = x^4 - x^2$$



$$f(x) = (x - 1)^2(x + 2)^2$$



$$f(x) = (x - 1)^3(x + 2)$$

The techniques that have been developed for cubic functions may now be applied to quartic functions and to polynomial functions of higher degree in general.

For a polynomial $P(x)$ of degree n , there are at most n solutions to the equation $P(x) = 0$. Therefore the graph of $y = P(x)$ has at most n x -axis intercepts.

The graph of a polynomial of even degree may have no x -axis intercepts: for example, $P(x) = x^2 + 1$. But the graph of a polynomial of odd degree must have at least one x -axis intercept.



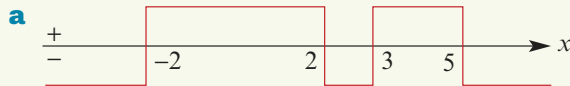
Example 20

Draw a sign diagram for each quartic expression.

a $(2 - x)(x + 2)(x - 3)(x - 5)$

b $(x - 1)(x + 1)(x^2 + 1)$

Solution



b Let $P(x) = (x - 1)(x + 1)(x^2 + 1)$.



Example 21

For $p(x) = x^4 - 2x^2 + 1$, determine the coordinates of the points where the graph of $y = p(x)$ intersects the x - and y -axes, and hence sketch the graph.

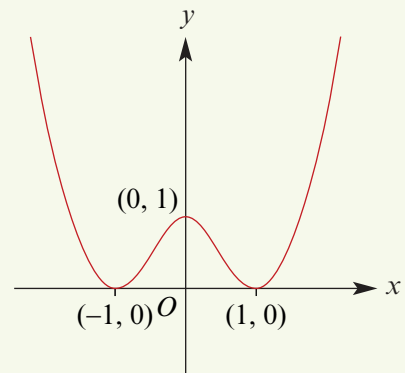
Solution

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} p(x) &= (x^2)^2 - 2(x^2) + 1 \\ &= (x^2 - 1)^2 \\ &= [(x - 1)(x + 1)]^2 \\ &= (x - 1)^2(x + 1)^2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore the x -axis intercepts are 1 and -1 .

When $x = 0$, $y = 1$. So the y -axis intercept is 1.



Summary 2E

- The graph of a quartic function can have zero, one, two, three or four x -axis intercepts.
- The graph of a quartic function can have one, two or three stationary points.
- To sketch a quartic in factorised form $y = a(x - \alpha)(x - \beta)(x - \gamma)(x - \delta)$:
 - Determine the y -axis intercept.
 - Determine the x -axis intercepts.
 - Prepare a sign diagram.
 - Consider the y -values as x increases to the right of all x -axis intercepts.
 - Consider the y -values as x decreases to the left of all x -axis intercepts.
- If there is a repeated factor to an even power, then the y -values have the same sign immediately to the left and right of the corresponding x -axis intercept.

Exercise 2E

Example 20

- 1 Draw a sign diagram for each quartic expression.

a $(3 - x)(x + 4)(x - 5)(x - 1)$

b $(x - 2)^2(x + 1)^2$

Example 21

- 2 For $h(x) = 81x^4 - 72x^2 + 16$, determine the coordinates of the points where the graph of $y = h(x)$ intersects the x - and y -axes, and hence sketch the graph.

Hint: First express $h(x)$ as the square of a quadratic expression.

- 3 **a** Use a calculator to plot the graph of $y = f(x)$, where $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^3 + x + 1$.

- b** On the same screen, plot the graphs of:

i $y = f(x - 2)$ **ii** $y = f(2x)$ **iii** $y = f\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

- 4 The graph of $y = 9x^2 - x^4$ is as shown. Sketch the graph of each of the following by applying suitable transformations.

a $y = 9(x - 1)^2 - (x - 1)^4$

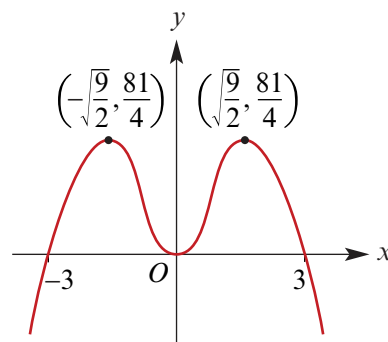
b $y = 18x^2 - 2x^4$

c $y = 18(x + 1)^2 - 2(x + 1)^4$

d $y = 9x^2 - x^4 - \frac{81}{4}$

e $y = 9x^2 - x^4 + 1$

(Do not determine the x -axis intercepts for part **e**.)



- 5 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = x^6 - x^2$. (Use a calculator to determine the stationary points.)

- 6 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = x^5 - x^3$. (Use a calculator to determine the stationary points.)

2F Determining the rule for the graph of a polynomial

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the rule for a polynomial function given sufficient information.

A straight line is determined by any two points on the line. More generally, the graph of a polynomial function of degree n is completely determined by any $n + 1$ points on the curve.

For example, for a cubic function with rule $y = f(x)$, if it is known that $f(a_1) = b_1$, $f(a_2) = b_2$, $f(a_3) = b_3$ and $f(a_4) = b_4$, then the rule can be determined.

Determining the rule for a parabola has been discussed in Section 2B.

The method for determining the rule from a graph of a cubic function will depend on what information is given in the graph.

If the cubic function has a rule of the form $f(x) = a(x - h)^3 + k$ and the point of inflection (h, k) is given, then one other point needs to be known in order to determine the value of a .

For those that are not of this form, the information given may be some or all of the x -axis intercepts as well as the coordinates of other points including possibly the y -axis intercept.



Example 22

- a** A cubic function has a rule of the form $y = a(x - 2)^3 + 2$. The point $(3, 10)$ is on the graph of the function. Determine the value of a .
- b** A cubic function has a rule of the form $y = a(x - 1)(x + 2)(x - 4)$. The point $(5, 16)$ is on the graph of the function. Determine the value of a .
- c** A cubic function has a rule of the form $f(x) = ax^3 + bx$. The points $(1, 16)$ and $(2, 30)$ are on the graph of the function. Determine the values of a and b .

Solution

a $y = a(x - 2)^3 + 2$

When $x = 3$, $y = 10$. Solve for a :

$$10 = a(3 - 2)^3 + 2$$

$$8 = a \times 1^3$$

$$\therefore a = 8$$

b $y = a(x - 1)(x + 2)(x - 4)$

When $x = 5$, $y = 16$ and so

$$16 = a(5 - 1)(5 + 2)(5 - 4)$$

$$16 = 28a$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{4}{7}$$

Explanation

In each of these problems, we substitute the given values to determine the unknowns.

The coordinates of the point of inflection of a graph which is a translation of $y = ax^3$ are known and the coordinates of one further point are known.

Three x -axis intercepts are known and the coordinates of a fourth point are known.

c $f(x) = ax^3 + bx$

We know $f(1) = 16$ and $f(2) = 30$:

$$16 = a + b \quad (1)$$

$$30 = a(2)^3 + 2b \quad (2)$$

Multiply (1) by 2 and subtract from (2):

$$-2 = 6a$$

$$\therefore a = -\frac{1}{3}$$

Substitute in (1):

$$16 = -\frac{1}{3} + b$$

$$\therefore b = \frac{49}{3}$$

Form simultaneous equations in a and b .



Example 23

For the cubic function with rule $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, it is known that the points with coordinates $(-1, -18)$, $(0, -5)$, $(1, -4)$ and $(2, -9)$ lie on the graph. Determine the values of a , b , c and d .

Solution

The following equations can be formed:

$$-a + b - c + d = -18 \quad (1)$$

$$d = -5 \quad (2)$$

$$a + b + c + d = -4 \quad (3)$$

$$8a + 4b + 2c + d = -9 \quad (4)$$

Adding (1) and (3) gives

$$2b + 2d = -22$$

Since $d = -5$, we obtain $b = -6$.

There are now only two unknowns.

Equations (3) and (4) become:

$$a + c = 7 \quad (3')$$

$$8a + 2c = 20 \quad (4')$$

Multiply (3') by 2 and subtract from (4') to obtain

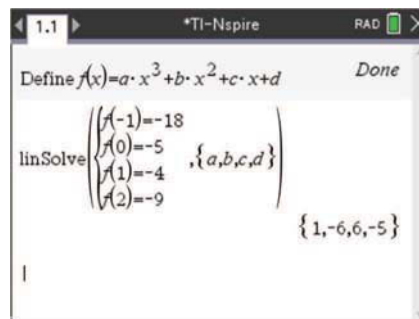
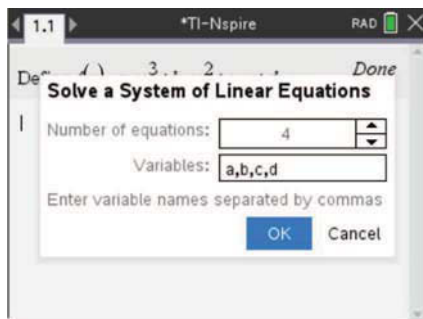
$$6a = 6$$

Thus $a = 1$ and $c = 6$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Define $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$.
- Use the simultaneous equations template (**menu**) > **Algebra** > **Solve System of Linear Equations** to solve for a, b, c, d given that $f(-1) = -18$, $f(0) = -5$, $f(1) = -4$ and $f(2) = -9$.



- Hence $a = 1$, $b = -6$, $c = 6$ and $d = -5$.

Using the Casio

- Select **Equation** mode (**MENU**) (**ALPHA**) (**X,0,T**).
- Select **Simultaneous** (**F1**), then select four unknowns (**F3**).
- Enter the coefficients of the four equations in the table as shown:

$$-a + b - c + d = -18$$

$$d = -5$$

$$a + b + c + d = -4$$

$$8a + 4b + 2c + d = -9$$

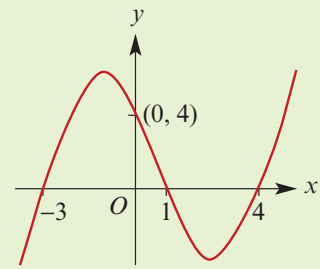
- Select **Solve** (**F1**).
- Hence $a = 1$, $b = -6$, $c = 6$ and $d = -5$.

	b	c	d	e
1	1	-1	1	-18
2	0	0	1	-5
3	1	1	1	-4
4	4	2	1	-9

	X	Y	Z	T
X	1			
Y		-6		
Z			6	
T				-5

**Example 24**

The graph shown is that of a cubic function. Determine the rule for this cubic function.

**Solution**

From the graph, the function has a rule of the form

$$y = a(x - 4)(x - 1)(x + 3)$$

The point $(0, 4)$ is on the graph. Hence,

$$4 = a(-4)(-1)3$$

$$4 = 12a$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{1}{3}$$

The rule for the function is

$$y = \frac{1}{3}(x - 4)(x - 1)(x + 3)$$

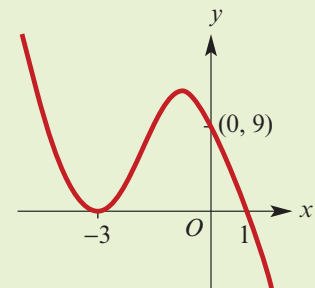
Explanation

The x -axis intercepts are -3 , 1 and 4 .

So $x + 3$, $x - 1$ and $x - 4$ are linear factors.

**Example 25**

The graph shown is that of a cubic function. Determine the rule for this cubic function.

**Solution**

From the graph, the function is of the form

$$y = k(x - 1)(x + 3)^2$$

The point $(0, 9)$ is on the graph. Hence,

$$9 = k(-1)(9)$$

$$\therefore k = -1$$

The rule is $y = -(x - 1)(x + 3)^2$.

Explanation

The graph touches the x -axis at $x = -3$.

Therefore $x + 3$ is a repeated factor.



Exercise 2F

Example 22

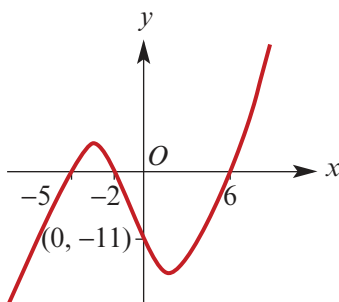
- 1 **a** A cubic function has rule of the form $y = a(x - 5)^3 - 2$. The point $(4, 0)$ is on the graph of the function. Determine the value of a .
- b** A cubic function has rule of the form $y = a(x - 1)(x + 1)(x + 2)$. The point $(3, 120)$ is on the graph of the function. Determine the value of a .
- c** A cubic function has rule of the form $f(x) = ax^3 + bx$. The points $(2, -20)$ and $(-1, 20)$ are on the graph of the function. Determine the values of a and b .

Example 23

- 2 For the cubic function with rule $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, it is known that the points with coordinates $(-1, 14)$, $(0, 5)$, $(1, 0)$ and $(2, -19)$ lie on the graph of the cubic. Determine the values of a , b , c and d .

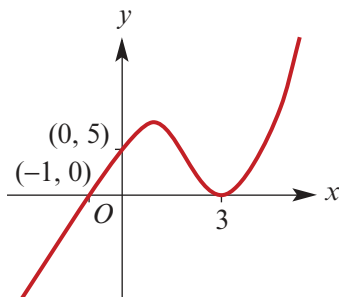
Example 24

- 3 Determine the rule for the cubic function with the graph shown.



Example 25

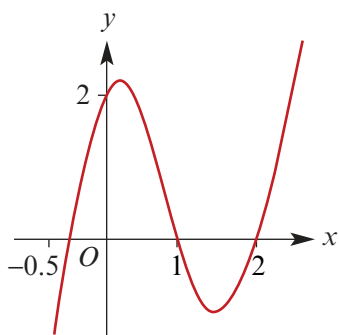
- 4 Determine the rule for the cubic function with the graph shown.



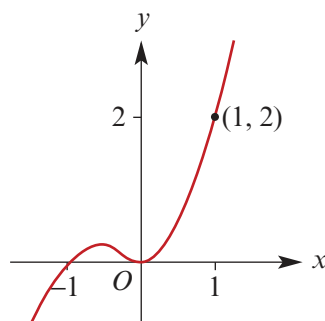
- 5 Determine the rule for the cubic function that passes through the following points.
 - a** $(0, 1)$, $(1, 3)$, $(-1, -1)$ and $(2, 11)$
 - b** $(0, 1)$, $(1, 1)$, $(-1, 1)$ and $(2, 7)$
 - c** $(0, -2)$, $(1, 0)$, $(-1, -6)$ and $(2, 12)$

6 Determine expressions which define the following cubic curves.

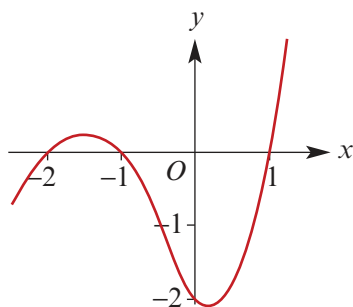
a



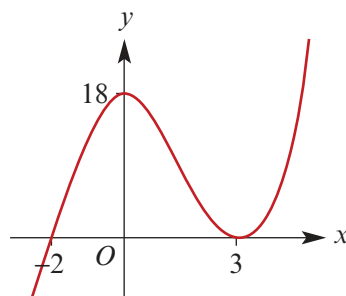
b



c



d



7 Determine the rule of the cubic function for which the graph passes through the points with coordinates.

a (0, 135), (1, 156), (2, 115), (3, 0)

b (-2, -203), (0, 13), (1, 25), (2, -11)

8 Determine the rule of the quartic function for which the graph passes through the points with coordinates.

a (-1, 43), (0, 40), (2, 70), (6, 1618), (10, 670)

b (-3, 119), (-2, 32), (-1, 9), (0, 8), (1, 11)

c (-3, 6), (-1, 2), (1, 2), (3, 66), (6, 1227)

2G

Solution of literal equations and systems of equations

Learning intentions

- To be able to solve literal equations and systems of equations.

Literal equations

A literal equation in x is an equation whose solution will be expressed in terms of pronumerals rather than numbers.

For the equation $2x + 5 = 7$, the solution is $x = 1$.

For the literal equation $ax + b = c$, the solution is $x = \frac{c - b}{a}$.

**Example 26**Solve each of the following literal equations for x .

a $ax + b = cx + d$

b $x^2 + kx + k = 0$

c $x^3 - 3ax^2 + 2a^2x = 0$

Solution

a $ax + b = cx + d$

$ax - cx = d - b$

$x(a - c) = d - b$

$$\therefore x = \frac{d - b}{a - c}$$

b The quadratic formula gives

$$x = \frac{-k \pm \sqrt{k^2 - 4k}}{2}$$

A real solution exists only for $k^2 - 4k \geq 0$, that is, for $k \geq 4$ or $k \leq 0$.

c $x^3 - 3ax^2 + 2a^2x = 0$

$x(x^2 - 3ax + 2a^2) = 0$

$x(x - a)(x - 2a) = 0$

Hence $x = 0$ or $x = a$ or $x = 2a$.

In the next example, we use the following two facts about power functions:

- If n is an odd natural number, then $b^n = a$ is equivalent to $b = a^{\frac{1}{n}}$.
- If n is an even natural number, then $b^n = a$ is equivalent to $b = \pm a^{\frac{1}{n}}$, where $a \geq 0$.

Note that care must be taken with even powers: for example, $x^2 = 2$ is equivalent to $x = \pm\sqrt{2}$.**Example 27**Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $ax^3 - b = c$

b $a(x + b)^3 = c$

c $x^4 = c$, where $c > 0$

d $ax^{\frac{1}{5}} = b$

e $x^5 - c = d$

Solution

a $ax^3 - b = c$

$ax^3 = b + c$

$x^3 = \frac{b + c}{a}$

$$\therefore x = \left(\frac{b + c}{a}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

b $a(x + b)^3 = c$

$(x + b)^3 = \frac{c}{a}$

$x + b = \left(\frac{c}{a}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

$$\therefore x = \left(\frac{c}{a}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}} - b$$

c $x^4 = c$

$$\therefore x = \sqrt[4]{c} \text{ or } x = -\sqrt[4]{c}$$

d $ax^{\frac{1}{5}} = b$

$x^{\frac{1}{5}} = \frac{b}{a}$

$$\therefore x = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^5$$

e $x^5 - c = d$

$x^5 = c + d$

$$\therefore x = (c + d)^{\frac{1}{5}}$$

Simultaneous equations

In Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2, you have solved simultaneous linear equations to determine the coordinates of the point of intersection of two straight lines. In this section, we look at methods for determining the coordinates of the points of intersection of different graphs.



Example 28

Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the parabola with equation $y = x^2 - 2x - 2$ and the straight line with equation $y = x + 4$.

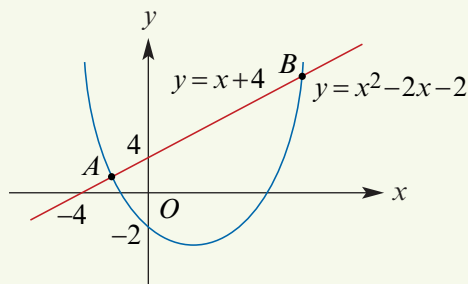
Solution

Equate the two expressions for y :

$$x^2 - 2x - 2 = x + 4$$

$$x^2 - 3x - 6 = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x &= \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{9 - 4 \times (-6)}}{2} \\ &= \frac{3 \pm \sqrt{33}}{2}\end{aligned}$$



The points of intersection are $A\left(\frac{3 - \sqrt{33}}{2}, \frac{11 - \sqrt{33}}{2}\right)$ and $B\left(\frac{3 + \sqrt{33}}{2}, \frac{11 + \sqrt{33}}{2}\right)$.



Example 29

Determine the points of intersection of the circle with equation $(x - 4)^2 + y^2 = 16$ and the line with equation $x - y = 0$.

Solution

Rearrange $x - y = 0$ to make y the subject.

Substitute $y = x$ into the equation of the circle:

$$(x - 4)^2 + x^2 = 16$$

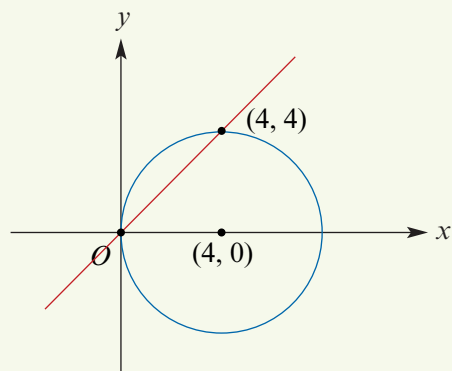
$$x^2 - 8x + 16 + x^2 = 16$$

$$2x^2 - 8x = 0$$

$$2x(x - 4) = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 0 \text{ or } x = 4$$

The points of intersection are $(0, 0)$ and $(4, 4)$.



**Example 30**

Determine the point of contact of the line with equation $\frac{1}{9}x + y = \frac{2}{3}$ and the curve with equation $xy = 1$.

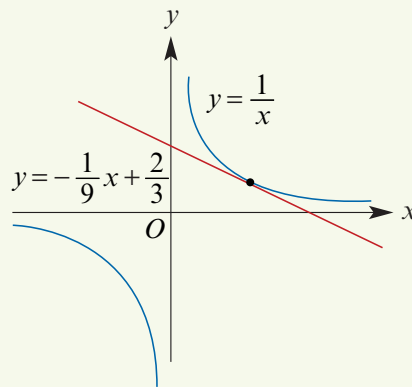
Solution

Rewrite the equations as $y = -\frac{1}{9}x + \frac{2}{3}$ and $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

Equate the expressions for y :

$$\begin{aligned} -\frac{1}{9}x + \frac{2}{3} &= \frac{1}{x} \\ -x^2 + 6x &= 9 \\ x^2 - 6x + 9 &= 0 \\ (x-3)^2 &= 0 \\ \therefore x &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

The point of intersection is $(3, \frac{1}{3})$.

**Exercise 2G****Example 26**

1 Solve each of the following literal equations for x .

a $px = qx - 6$

b $mx - n = nx + m$

c $\frac{1}{x-a} = \frac{a}{x}$

d $kx^2 + x + k = 0$

e $x^3 - 7ax^2 + 12a^2x = 0$

f $x(x^3 - a) = 0$

g $x^2 - kx + k = 0$

h $x^3 - ax = 0$

i $x^4 - a^4 = 0$

j $(x-a)^5(x-b) = 0$

k $(a-x)^4(a-x^3)(x^2-a) = 0$

Example 27

2 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $ax^3 + b = 2c$

b $ax^2 - b = c$, where $a, b, c > 0$

c $a - bx^2 = c$, where $a > c$ and $b > 0$

d $x^{\frac{1}{3}} = a$

e $x^{\frac{1}{n}} + c = a$, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$ and $a > c$

f $a(x-2b)^3 = c$

g $ax^{\frac{1}{3}} = b$

h $x^3 - c = d$

Example 28

3 Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection for each of the following.

a $y = x^2$

b $y - 2x^2 = 0$

c $y = x^2 - x$

$y = x$

$y - x = 0$

$y = 2x + 1$

Example 29

4 Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection for each of the following.

a $x^2 + y^2 = 178$

b $x^2 + y^2 = 125$

c $x^2 + y^2 = 185$

$x + y = 16$

$x + y = 15$

$x - y = 3$

d $x^2 + y^2 = 97$

e $x^2 + y^2 = 106$

$x + y = 13$

$x - y = 4$

Example 30

- 5** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection for each of the following.
- a** $x + y = 28$
 $xy = 187$
- b** $x + y = 51$
 $xy = 518$
- c** $x - y = 5$
 $xy = 126$
- 6** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the straight line with equation $y = 2x$ and the circle with equation $(x - 5)^2 + y^2 = 25$.
- 7** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the curves with equations $y = \frac{1}{x-2} + 3$ and $y = x$.
- 8** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the line with equation $\frac{y}{4} - \frac{x}{5} = 1$ and the circle with equation $x^2 + 4x + y^2 = 12$.
- 9** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the curve $y = \frac{1}{x+2} - 3$ and the line $y = -x$.
- 10** Determine the coordinates of the point where the line with equation $4y = 9x + 4$ touches the parabola with equation $y^2 = 9x$.
- 11** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the curve with equation $y = \frac{2}{x-2}$ and the line $y = x - 1$.
- 12** Solve the simultaneous equations.
- a** $5x - 4y = 7$ and $xy = 6$
- b** $2x + 3y = 37$ and $xy = 45$
- c** $5x - 3y = 18$ and $xy = 24$
- 13** What is the condition for $x^2 + ax + b$ to be divisible by $x + c$?
- 14** Determine the equations of the lines that pass through the point $(1, 7)$ and touch the parabola $y = -3x^2 + 5x + 2$.
Hint: Form a quadratic equation and consider when the discriminant Δ is zero.
- 15** Determine the values of m for which the line $y = mx - 8$ intersects the parabola $y = x^2 - 5x + m$ twice.
- 16** The line $y = x + c$ meets the hyperbola $y = \frac{9}{2-x}$ once. Determine the possible values of c .
- 17** **a** Solve the simultaneous equations $y = mx$ and $y = \frac{1}{x} + 5$ for x in terms of m .
b Determine the value of m for which the graphs of $y = mx$ and $y = \frac{1}{x} + 5$ touch, and give the coordinates of this point.
c For which values of m do the graphs not meet?
- 18** Show that, if the line with equation $y = kx + b$ touches the curve $y = x^2 + x + 4$, then $k^2 - 2k + 4b - 15 = 0$. Hence determine the equations of such lines that also pass through the point $(0, 3)$.

2H Division and factorisation of polynomials (Optional)

When we divide the polynomial $P(x)$ by the polynomial $D(x)$ we obtain two polynomials, $Q(x)$ the **quotient** and $R(x)$ the **remainder**, such that

$$P(x) = D(x)Q(x) + R(x)$$

and either $R(x) = 0$ or $R(x)$ has degree less than $D(x)$.

Here $P(x)$ is the **dividend** and $D(x)$ is the **divisor**.

The following example illustrates the process of dividing.



Example 31

Divide $x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24$ by $x + 2$.

Solution

$$\begin{array}{r}
 x^2 - x - 12 \\
 x + 2 \overline{) x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24} \\
 \underline{x^3 + 2x^2} \\
 -x^2 - 14x - 24 \\
 \underline{-x^2 - 2x} \\
 -12x - 24 \\
 \underline{-12x - 24} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

Explanation

- Divide x , from $x + 2$, into the leading term x^3 to get x^2 .
- Multiply x^2 by $x + 2$ to give $x^3 + 2x^2$.
- Subtract from $x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24$, leaving $-x^2 - 14x - 24$.
- Now divide x , from $x + 2$, into $-x^2$ to get $-x$.
- Multiply $-x$ by $x + 2$ to give $-x^2 - 2x$.
- Subtract from $-x^2 - 14x - 24$, leaving $-12x - 24$.
- Divide x into $-12x$ to get -12 .
- Multiply -12 by $x + 2$ to give $-12x - 24$.
- Subtract from $-12x - 24$, leaving remainder of 0.

In this example we see that $x + 2$ is a factor of $x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24$, as the remainder is zero. Thus $(x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24) \div (x + 2) = x^2 - x - 12$ with zero remainder.

$$\therefore \frac{x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24}{x + 2} = x^2 - x - 12$$

We can approach this through equating coefficients. We assume that we know $x + 2$ is a factor. That is, $P(-2) = 0$

Write,

$$x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24 = (x + 2)(ax^2 + bx + c), \quad \text{for all } x$$

$$x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24 = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + 2ax^2 + 2bx + 2c$$

$$x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24 = ax^3 + (2a + b)x^2 + (2b + c)x + 2c$$

With ease we have $a = 1, c = -12$

$$2a + b = 1 \text{ and } a = 1 \Rightarrow b = -1$$

$$\text{Therefore } x^3 + x^2 - 14x - 24 = (x + 2)(x^2 - x - 12)$$

**Example 32**

Divide $3x^4 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8$ by $x - 2$.

Solution

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3x^3 + 6x^2 + 3x + 33 \\
 x - 2 \overline{) 3x^4 + 0x^3 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8} \\
 \underline{3x^4 - 6x^3} \\
 6x^3 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8 \\
 \underline{6x^3 - 12x^2} \\
 3x^2 + 27x - 8 \\
 \underline{3x^2 - 6x} \\
 33x - 8 \\
 \underline{33x - 66} \\
 58
 \end{array}$$

Therefore

$$3x^4 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8 = (x - 2)(3x^3 + 6x^2 + 3x + 33) + 58$$

or, equivalently,

$$\frac{3x^4 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8}{x - 2} = 3x^3 + 6x^2 + 3x + 33 + \frac{58}{x - 2}$$

In this example, the dividend is $3x^4 - 9x^2 + 27x - 8$, the divisor is $x - 2$, and the remainder is 58.

Equating coefficients can be seen in the explanation column of the next example.

**Example 33**

Divide $3x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2$ by $2x + 1$.

Solution

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \frac{3}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{4}x - \frac{5}{8} \\
 2x + 1 \overline{) 3x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2} \\
 \underline{3x^3 + \frac{3}{2}x^2} \\
 \frac{1}{2}x^2 - x - 2 \\
 \underline{\frac{1}{2}x^2 + \frac{1}{4}x} \\
 -\frac{5}{4}x - 2 \\
 \underline{-\frac{5}{4}x - \frac{5}{8}} \\
 -1\frac{3}{8}
 \end{array}$$

Explanation

We show the alternative method here.

First write the identity

$$3x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2 = (2x + 1)(ax^2 + bx + c) + r$$

Equate coefficients of x^3 :

$$3 = 2a. \text{ Therefore } a = \frac{3}{2}.$$

Equate coefficients of x^2 :

$$2 = a + 2b. \text{ Therefore } b = \frac{1}{2}(2 - \frac{3}{2}) = \frac{1}{4}.$$

Equate coefficients of x :

$$-1 = 2c + b. \text{ Therefore } c = \frac{1}{2}(-1 - \frac{1}{4}) = -\frac{5}{8}.$$

Equate constant terms:

$$-2 = c + r. \text{ Therefore } r = -2 + \frac{5}{8} = -\frac{11}{8}.$$

Dividing by a non-linear polynomial

We give one example of dividing by a non-linear polynomial. The technique is exactly the same as when dividing by a linear polynomial.



Example 34

Divide $3x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x - 4$ by $x^2 - 1$.

Solution

$$\begin{array}{r}
 3x - 2 \\
 x^2 + 0x - 1 \overline{) 3x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x - 4} \\
 \underline{3x^3 + 0x^2 - 3x} \\
 -2x^2 + 6x - 4 \\
 \underline{-2x^2 + 0x + 2} \\
 6x - 6
 \end{array}$$

Therefore

$$3x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x - 4 = (x^2 - 1)(3x - 2) + 6x - 6$$

or, equivalently,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{3x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x - 4}{x^2 - 1} &= 3x - 2 + \frac{6x - 6}{x^2 - 1} \\
 &= 3x - 2 + \frac{6}{x + 1}
 \end{aligned}$$

Explanation

We write $x^2 - 1$ as $x^2 + 0x - 1$.

The remainder theorem and the factor theorem

The following two results are recalled from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

The remainder theorem

Suppose that, when the polynomial $P(x)$ is divided by $x - \alpha$, the quotient is $Q(x)$ and the remainder is R . Then

$$P(x) = (x - \alpha)Q(x) + R$$

Now, as the two expressions are equal for all values of x , they are equal for $x = \alpha$.

$$P(\alpha) = (\alpha - \alpha)Q(\alpha) + R$$

$$\therefore P(\alpha) = R$$

i.e. when $P(x)$ is divided by $x - \alpha$, the remainder R is equal to $P(\alpha)$. We therefore have

$$P(x) = (x - \alpha)Q(x) + P(\alpha)$$

More generally:

Remainder theorem

When $P(x)$ is divided by $\beta x + \alpha$, the remainder is $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right)$.

**Example 35**

Determine the remainder when $P(x) = 3x^3 + 2x^2 + x + 1$ is divided by $2x + 1$.

Solution

By the remainder theorem, the remainder is

$$\begin{aligned} P\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) &= 3\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^3 + 2\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) + 1 \\ &= -\frac{3}{8} + \frac{2}{4} - \frac{1}{2} + 1 = \frac{5}{8} \end{aligned}$$

The factor theorem

Now, in order for $x - \alpha$ to be a factor of the polynomial $P(x)$, the remainder must be zero. We state this result as the **factor theorem**.

Factor theorem

For a polynomial $P(x)$:

- If $P(\alpha) = 0$, then $x - \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$.
- Conversely, if $x - \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$, then $P(\alpha) = 0$.

More generally:

- If $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$, then $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$.
- Conversely, if $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$, then $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$.

**Example 36**

Given that $x + 1$ and $x - 2$ are factors of $6x^4 - x^3 + ax^2 - 6x + b$, determine the values of a and b .

Solution

Let $P(x) = 6x^4 - x^3 + ax^2 - 6x + b$.

By the factor theorem, we have $P(-1) = 0$ and $P(2) = 0$. Hence

$$6 + 1 + a + 6 + b = 0 \quad (1)$$

$$96 - 8 + 4a - 12 + b = 0 \quad (2)$$

Rearranging gives:

$$a + b = -13 \quad (1')$$

$$4a + b = -76 \quad (2')$$

Subtract (1') from (2'):

$$3a = -63$$

Therefore $a = -21$ and, from (1'), $b = 8$.

**Example 37**

Show that $x + 1$ is a factor of $x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6$ and hence determine the other linear factors.

Solution

Let $P(x) = x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6$

Then $P(-1) = (-1)^3 - 4(-1)^2 + (-1) + 6$
 $= 0$

Thus $x + 1$ is a factor (by the factor theorem).

Divide by $x + 1$ to determine the other factor:

$$\begin{array}{r}
 x^2 - 5x + 6 \\
 x + 1 \overline{) x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6} \\
 \underline{x^3 + x^2} \\
 -5x^2 + x + 6 \\
 \underline{-5x^2 - 5x} \\
 6x + 6 \\
 \underline{6x + 6} \\
 0
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6 &= (x + 1)(x^2 - 5x + 6) \\
 &= (x + 1)(x - 3)(x - 2)
 \end{aligned}$$

The linear factors of $x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6$ are $(x + 1)$, $(x - 3)$ and $(x - 2)$.

Explanation

We can use the factor theorem to determine one factor, and then divide to determine the other two linear factors.

Here is an alternative method:

Once we have found that $x + 1$ is a factor, we know that we can write

$$x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6 = (x + 1)(x^2 + bx + c)$$

By equating constant terms, we have $6 = 1 \times c$. Hence $c = 6$.

By equating coefficients of x^2 , we have $-4 = 1 + b$. Hence $b = -5$.

$$\therefore x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6 = (x + 1)(x^2 - 5x + 6)$$

Sums and differences of cubes

If $P(x) = x^3 - a^3$, then $x - a$ is a factor and so by division:

$$x^3 - a^3 = (x - a)(x^2 + ax + a^2)$$

Replacing a with $-a$ in this equation gives:

$$x^3 + a^3 = (x + a)(x^2 - ax + a^2)$$

**Example 38**

Factorise:

a $8x^3 + 64$

b $125a^3 - b^3$

Solution

a $8x^3 + 64 = (2x)^3 + (4)^3$
 $= (2x + 4)(4x^2 - 8x + 16)$

b $125a^3 - b^3 = (5a)^3 - b^3$
 $= (5a - b)(25a^2 + 5ab + b^2)$

Solving polynomial equations

The factor theorem may be used in the solution of equations.



Example 39

Factorise $P(x) = x^3 - 4x^2 - 11x + 30$ and hence solve the equation $x^3 - 4x^2 - 11x + 30 = 0$.

Solution

$$P(1) = 1 - 4 - 11 + 30 \neq 0$$

$$P(-1) = -1 - 4 + 11 + 30 \neq 0$$

$$P(2) = 8 - 16 - 22 + 30 = 0$$

Therefore $x - 2$ is a factor.

Dividing $x^3 - 4x^2 - 11x + 30$ by $x - 2$ gives

$$\begin{aligned} P(x) &= (x - 2)(x^2 - 2x - 15) \\ &= (x - 2)(x - 5)(x + 3) \end{aligned}$$

Now we see that $P(x) = 0$ if and only if

$$x - 2 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad x - 5 = 0 \quad \text{or} \quad x + 3 = 0$$

$$\therefore \quad x = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 5 \quad \text{or} \quad x = -3$$

Summary 2H

■ Division of polynomials

When we divide the polynomial $P(x)$ by the polynomial $D(x)$ we obtain two polynomials, $Q(x)$ the **quotient** and $R(x)$ the **remainder**, such that

$$P(x) = D(x)Q(x) + R(x)$$

and either $R(x) = 0$ or $R(x)$ has degree less than $D(x)$.

- Two methods for dividing polynomials are long division and equating coefficients.

■ Remainder theorem

When $P(x)$ is divided by $\beta x + \alpha$, the remainder is $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right)$.

■ Factor theorem

- If $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$, then $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$.

- Conversely, if $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$, then $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$.

- A cubic polynomial can be factorised by using the factor theorem to determine the first linear factor and then using polynomial division or the method of equating coefficients to complete the factorisation.

- Difference of two cubes: $x^3 - a^3 = (x - a)(x^2 + ax + a^2)$

- Sum of two cubes: $x^3 + a^3 = (x + a)(x^2 - ax + a^2)$



Exercise 2H

Example 31

- 1 For each of the following, divide the first polynomial by the second.

a $x^3 - x^2 - 14x + 24$, $x + 4$

b $2x^3 + x^2 - 25x + 12$, $x - 3$

Example 32

- 2 For each of the following, divide the first polynomial by the second.

a $x^3 - x^2 - 15x + 25$, $x + 3$

b $2x^3 - 4x + 12$, $x - 3$

Example 33

- 3 For each of the following, divide the first polynomial by the second.

a $2x^3 - 2x^2 - 15x + 25$, $2x + 3$

b $4x^3 + 6x^2 - 4x + 12$, $2x - 3$

- 4 For each of the following, divide the first expression by the second.

a $2x^3 - 7x^2 + 15x - 3$, $x - 3$

b $5x^5 + 13x^4 - 2x^2 - 6$, $x + 1$

Example 34

- 5 For each of the following, divide the first expression by the second.

a $x^4 - 9x^3 + 25x^2 - 8x - 2$, $x^2 - 2$

b $x^4 + x^3 + x^2 - x - 2$, $x^2 - 1$

Example 35

- 6 **a** Determine the remainder when $x^3 + 3x - 2$ is divided by $x + 2$.
b Determine the value of a for which $(1 - 2a)x^2 + 5ax + (a - 1)(a - 8)$ is divisible by $x - 2$ but not by $x - 1$.

- 7 Given that $f(x) = 6x^3 + 5x^2 - 17x - 6$:

- a** determine the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $x - 2$
b determine the remainder when $f(x)$ is divided by $x + 2$
c factorise $f(x)$ completely.

- 8 **a** Prove that the expression $x^3 + (k - 1)x^2 + (k - 9)x - 7$ is divisible by $x + 1$ for all values of k .
b Determine the value of k for which the expression has a remainder of 12 when divided by $x - 2$.

Example 36

- 9 The polynomial $f(x) = 2x^3 + ax^2 - bx + 3$ has a factor $x + 3$. When $f(x)$ is divided by $x - 2$, the remainder is 15.
a Calculate the values of a and b .
b Determine the other two linear factors of $f(x)$.
- 10 The expression $4x^3 + ax^2 - 5x + b$ leaves remainders of -8 and 10 when divided by $2x - 3$ and $x - 3$ respectively. Calculate the values of a and b .
- 11 Determine the remainder when $(x + 1)^4$ is divided by $x - 2$.
- 12 Let $P(x) = x^5 - 3x^4 + 2x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x + 1$.
a Show that neither $x - 1$ nor $x + 1$ is a factor of $P(x)$.
b Given that $P(x)$ can be written in the form $(x^2 - 1)Q(x) + ax + b$, where $Q(x)$ is a polynomial and a and b are constants, hence or otherwise, determine the remainder when $P(x)$ is divided by $x^2 - 1$.

Example 37 **13** Show that $x + 1$ is a factor of $2x^3 - 5x^2 - 4x + 3$ and determine the other linear factors.

- 14** **a** Show that both $x - \sqrt{3}$ and $x + \sqrt{3}$ are factors of $x^4 + x^3 - x^2 - 3x - 6$.
b Hence write down one quadratic factor of $x^4 + x^3 - x^2 - 3x - 6$, and determine a second quadratic factor.

Example 38 **15** Factorise each of the following.

- a** $8a^3 + 27b^3$ **b** $64 - a^3$
c $125x^3 + 64y^3$ **d** $(a - b)^3 + (a + b)^3$

Example 39 **16** Solve each of the following equations for x .

- a** $(2 - x)(x + 4)(x - 2)(x - 3) = 0$ **b** $x^3(2 - x) = 0$
c $(2x - 1)^3(2 - x) = 0$ **d** $(x + 2)^3(x - 2)^2 = 0$
e $x^4 - 4x^2 = 0$ **f** $x^4 - 9x^2 = 0$
g $12x^4 + 11x^3 - 26x^2 + x + 2 = 0$ **h** $x^4 + 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 4x + 4 = 0$
i $6x^4 - 5x^3 - 20x^2 + 25x - 6 = 0$

- 17** Determine the x -axis intercepts and y -axis intercept of the graph of each of the following.

- a** $y = x^3 - x^2 - 2x$ **b** $y = x^3 - 2x^2 - 5x + 6$
c $y = x^3 - 4x^2 + x + 6$ **d** $y = 2x^3 - 5x^2 + x + 2$
e $y = x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2$ **f** $y = 3x^3 - 4x^2 - 13x - 6$
g $y = 5x^3 + 12x^2 - 36x - 16$ **h** $y = 6x^3 - 5x^2 - 2x + 1$
i $y = 2x^3 - 3x^2 - 29x - 30$

- 18** The expressions $px^4 - 5x + q$ and $x^4 - 2x^3 - px^2 - qx - 8$ have a common factor $x - 2$. Determine the values of p and q .

- 19** Determine the remainder when $f(x) = x^4 - x^3 + 5x^2 + 4x - 36$ is divided by $x + 1$.

- 20** Factorise each of the following polynomials, using a calculator to help determine at least one linear factor:

- a** $x^3 - 11x^2 - 125x + 1287$ **b** $x^3 - 9x^2 - 121x + 1089$
c $2x^3 - 9x^2 - 242x + 1089$ **d** $4x^3 - 367x + 1287$

- 21** Factorise each of the following.

- a** $x^4 - x^3 - 43x^2 + x + 42$ **b** $x^4 + 4x^3 - 27x - 108$

- 22** Factorise each of the following polynomials, using a calculator to help determine at least one linear factor.

- a** $2x^4 - 25x^3 + 57x^2 + 9x + 405$ **b** $x^4 + 13x^3 + 40x^2 + 81x + 405$
c $x^4 + 3x^3 - 4x^2 + 3x - 135$ **d** $x^4 + 4x^3 - 35x^2 - 78x + 360$

Chapter summary

Quadratic polynomials

■ Turning point form

- By completing the square, all quadratic functions in polynomial form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ may be transposed into turning point form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$.
- The graph of $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$ is a parabola congruent to the graph of $y = ax^2$. The vertex (or turning point) is the point (h, k) . The axis of symmetry is $x = h$.

■ Axis of symmetry

The axis of symmetry of the graph of the quadratic function $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ is the line with equation $x = -\frac{b}{2a}$.

■ Quadratic formula

The solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, are given by the **quadratic formula**

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

From the formula it can be seen that:

- If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, there are two solutions.
- If $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, there is one solution.
- If $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real solutions.

The quantity $\Delta = b^2 - 4ac$ is called the **discriminant** of the quadratic $ax^2 + bx + c$.

Polynomials in general

- A **polynomial function** is a function that can be written in the form

$$P(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0$$

where $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$ and the coefficients $a_0, \dots, a_n$ are real numbers with $a_n \neq 0$.

The **leading term** is $a_n x^n$ (the term of highest index) and the **constant term** is a_0 (the term not involving x).

- The **degree of a polynomial** is the index n of the leading term.
 - Polynomials of degree 1 are called **linear** functions.
 - Polynomials of degree 2 are called **quadratic** functions.
 - Polynomials of degree 3 are called **cubic** functions.
 - Polynomials of degree 4 are called **quartic** functions.
- The sum, difference and product of two polynomials are polynomials. Division does not always lead to another polynomial.
- Two polynomials P and Q are equal only if their corresponding coefficients are equal. Two cubic polynomials, $P(x) = a_3 x^3 + a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0$ and $Q(x) = b_3 x^3 + b_2 x^2 + b_1 x + b_0$, are equal if and only if $a_3 = b_3$, $a_2 = b_2$, $a_1 = b_1$ and $a_0 = b_0$.

■ Division of polynomials

When we divide the polynomial $P(x)$ by the polynomial $D(x)$ we obtain two polynomials, $Q(x)$ the **quotient** and $R(x)$ the **remainder**, such that

$$P(x) = D(x)Q(x) + R(x)$$

and either $R(x) = 0$ or $R(x)$ has degree less than $D(x)$.

Two methods for dividing polynomials are **long division** and **equating coefficients**.

Remainder theorem

When $P(x)$ is divided by $\beta x + \alpha$, the remainder is $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right)$.

Factor theorem

- If $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$, then $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$.
 - Conversely, if $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$, then $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$.
- A cubic polynomial can be factorised by using the factor theorem to determine the first linear factor and then using polynomial division or the method of equating coefficients to complete the factorisation.
- **Difference and sum of two cubes**
- $x^3 - a^3 = (x - a)(x^2 + ax + a^2)$
 - $x^3 + a^3 = (x + a)(x^2 - ax + a^2)$

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills. ☒

2A

- 1 I can sketch the graph of a quadratic function expressed in turning point form. ☐

See Example 1, Example 2, Example 3 and Questions 1 and 2

2A

- 2 I can determine the axial intercepts of a quadratic function written in polynomial form and hence sketch the graph. ☐

See Example 3 and Question 2

2A

- 3 I can sketch the graph of a quadratic function written in polynomial form. ☐

See Example 4 and Question 3

2A

- 4 I can sketch the graph of a quadratic function by first completing the square. ☐

See Example 5 and Question 4

2A

- 5 I can use the quadratic formula to determine the x-axis intercepts of a quadratic graph. ☐

See Example 6 and Question 5

2A

- 6 I can use the discriminant to determine whether a quadratic graphs crosses, touches or does not intersect the x-axis. ☐

See Example 7 and Question 7

- 2A** **7** I can use the discriminant to determine what happens when a parameter in a quadratic equation varies. ☐
See Example 8 and Question 8
- 2B** **8** I can determine the equation of a parabola given sufficient information. ☐
See Example 9, Example 10, Example 11, Example 12 and Questions 1, 3, 5 and 7
- 2C** **9** I can evaluate polynomials for a given value. ☐
See Example 13 and Question 1
- 2C** **10** I can determine the value of unknown coefficients in a polynomial given sufficient information. ☐
See Example 14 and Question 3
- 2C** **11** I can add, subtract and multiply polynomials. ☐
See Example 15 and Question 4
- 2C** **12** I can use the method of equating coefficients with polynomials. ☐
See Example 16 and Question 6
- 2C** **13** I can use the method of equating coefficients with polynomials to express polynomials in different forms. ☐
See Example 17 and Question 7
- 2D** **14** I can draw sign diagrams for factorised cubic polynomials. ☐
See Example 18 and Question 1
- 2D** **15** I can use a calculator to plot graphs of cubic polynomials, identify the coordinates of the turning points and plot transformations of these graphs. ☐
See Example 19 and Question 3
- 2E** **16** I can draw sign diagrams for factorised quartic polynomials. ☐
See Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 1 and 2
- 2F** **17** I can determine the rule for a polynomial given sufficient information. ☐
See Example 22, Example 23, Example 24, Example 25 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 4
- 2G** **18** I can solve literal equations. ☐
See Example 26, Example 27 and Questions 1 and 2
- 2G** **19** I can solve systems of equations. ☐
See Example 28, Example 29, Example 30 and Questions 3, 4 and 5

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1 Sketch the graph of each of the following quadratic functions. Clearly indicate coordinates of the vertex and the axis intercepts.

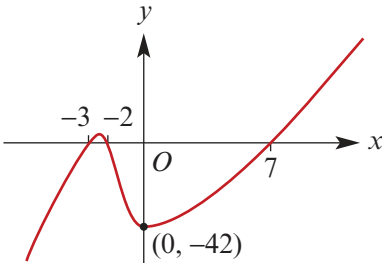
a $h(x) = 3(x - 1)^2 + 2$	b $h(x) = (x - 1)^2 - 9$	c $f(x) = x^2 - x + 6$
d $f(x) = x^2 - x - 6$	e $f(x) = 2x^2 - x + 5$	f $h(x) = 2x^2 - x - 1$
- 2 The points with coordinates (1, 1) and (2, 5) lie on a parabola with equation of the form $y = ax^2 + b$. Determine the values of a and b .
- 3 Solve the equation $3x^2 - 2x - 10 = 0$ by using the quadratic formula.
- 4 Sketch the graph of each of the following. State the coordinates of the point of zero gradient and the axis intercepts.

a $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^3 - 16$	b $g(x) = -(x + 1)^3 + 8$	c $h(x) = -(x + 2)^3 - 1$
d $f(x) = (x + 3)^3 - 1$	e $f(x) = 1 - (2x - 1)^3$	
- 5 Express each of the following in turning point form.

a $x^2 + 4x$	b $3x^2 + 6x$	c $x^2 - 4x + 6$
d $2x^2 - 6x - 4$	e $2x^2 - 7x - 4$	f $-x^2 + 3x - 4$
- 6 Draw a sign diagram for each of the following.

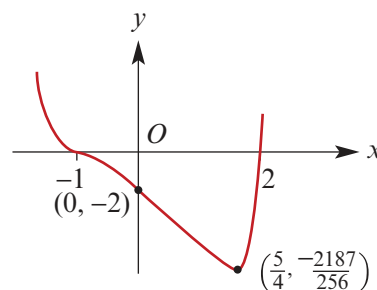
a $y = (x + 2)(2 - x)(x + 1)$	b $y = (x - 3)(x + 1)(x - 1)$
- 7 Evaluate $P(a)$ for each of the following.

a $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 4x + 2$, $a = -1$
b $P(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - x + 6$, $a = 2$
c $P(x) = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 3x - 2$, $a = -2$
- 8 Determine the rule for the cubic function shown in the graph.


- 9 Determine the value of a for which $P(2) = 0$ where $P(x) = 3x^3 + ax^2 + x - 2$.

- 10** The graph of $f(x) = (x+1)^3(x-2)$ is shown.
Sketch the graph of:

- a** $y = f(x-1)$
b $y = f(x+1)$
c $y = f(2x)$
d $y = f(x) + 2$



- 11** For what value of k is $2x^2 - kx + 8$ a perfect square?
- 12** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the graph of $y = 2x + 3$ with the graph of $y = x^2 + 3x - 9$.
- 13** Determine constants a , b and c such that $3x^2 - 5x + 1 = a(x+b)^2 + c$ holds for all values of x .
- 14** Expand $(3 + 4x)^3$.
- 15** Given that $x^3 - 2x^2 + 5 = ax(x-1)^2 + b(x-1) + c$ for all real numbers x , determine the values of a , b and c .
- 16** Determine the values of p for which the equation $4x^2 - 2px + p + 3 = 0$ has no real solutions.
- 17** Determine the rule for the cubic function, the graph of which passes through the points $(1, 1)$, $(2, 4)$, $(3, 9)$ and $(0, 6)$.

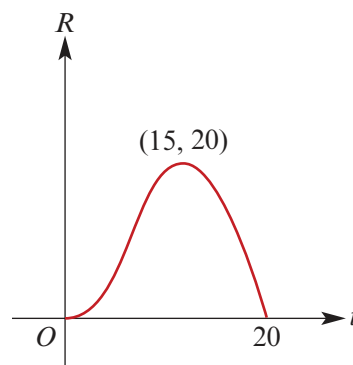
Technology-active short-response questions

- 18** Use your calculator to factorise each of the following.
- a** $x^3 + 2x^2 - 5x - 6$ **b** $x^3 - 3x^2 - x + 3$
c $x^4 - x^3 - 7x^2 + x + 6$ **d** $x^3 + 2x^2 - 4x + 1$
- 19** Draw a sign diagram for each of the following.
- a** $y = x^3 + 7x^2 + 14x + 8$ **b** $y = 3x^3 + 10x^2 + x - 6$
- 20** A large gas container is being deflated. The volume V (in m^3) at time t hours is given by
- $$V = 4(9-t)^3, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 9$$
- a** Determine the volume when:
- i** $t = 0$ **ii** $t = 9$
- b** Sketch the graph of V against t for $0 \leq t \leq 9$.
- c** At what time is the volume 512 m^3 ?

- 21** The rate of flow of water, R mL/min, into a vessel is described by the quartic expression

$$R = kt^3(20 - t), \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 20$$

where t minutes is the time elapsed from the beginning of the flow. The graph is shown.



- Determine the value of k .
- Determine the rate of flow when $t = 10$.
- The flow is adjusted so that the new expression for the flow is

$$R_{\text{new}} = 2kt^3(20 - t), \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 20$$

- Sketch the graph of R_{new} against t for $0 \leq t \leq 20$.
 - Determine the rate of flow when $t = 10$.
- d** Water is allowed to run from the vessel and it is found that the rate of flow from the vessel is given by

$$R_{\text{out}} = -k(t - 20)^3(40 - t), \quad \text{for } 20 \leq t \leq 40$$

- Sketch the graph of R_{out} against t for $20 \leq t \leq 40$.
- Determine the rate of flow when $t = 30$.

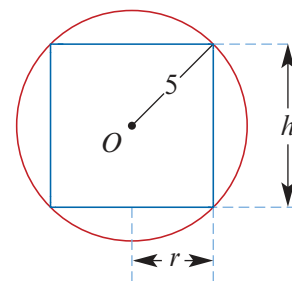
Hints: The graph of R_{new} against t is given by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis. The graph of R_{out} against t is given by the translation with rule $(t, R) \rightarrow (t + 20, R)$ followed by a reflection in the t -axis.

- 22** A hemispherical bowl of radius 6 cm contains water. The volume of water in the hemispherical bowl, where the depth of the water is x cm, is given by

$$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi x^2(18 - x) \text{ cm}^3$$

- Determine the volume of water when:
 - $x = 2$
 - $x = 3$
 - $x = 4$
- Determine the volume when the hemispherical bowl is full.
- Sketch the graph of V against x .
- Determine the depth of water when the volume is equal to $\frac{325\pi}{3} \text{ cm}^3$.

- 23** A metal worker is required to cut a circular cylinder from a solid sphere of radius 5 cm. A cross-section of the sphere and the cylinder is shown in the diagram.



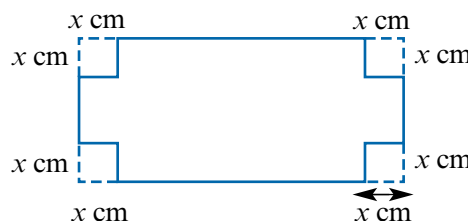
- Express r in terms of h , where r cm is the radius of the cylinder and h cm is the height of the cylinder. Hence show that the volume, $V \text{ cm}^3$, of the cylinder is given by $V = \frac{1}{4}\pi h(100 - h^2)$.

- Sketch the graph of V against h for $0 < h < 10$.

Hint: The coordinates of the maximum point are approximately (5.77, 302.3).

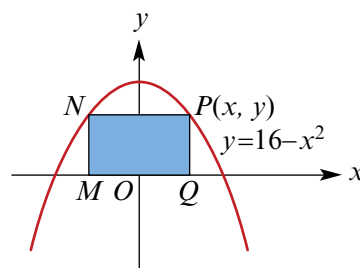
- c Determine the volume of the cylinder if $h = 6$.
- d Determine the height and radius of the cylinder if the volume of the cylinder is $48\pi \text{ cm}^3$.

- 24** An open tank is to be made from a sheet of metal 84 cm by 40 cm by cutting congruent squares of side length x cm from each of the corners.



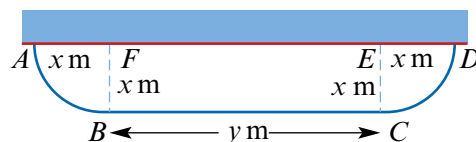
- a Determine the volume, $V \text{ cm}^3$, of the box in terms of x .
- b State the maximal domain for V when it is considered as a function of x .
- c Plot the graph of V against x using a calculator.
- d Determine the volume of the tank when:
 - i $x = 2$ ii $x = 6$ iii $x = 8$ iv $x = 10$
- e Determine the value(s) of x , correct to two decimal places, for which the capacity of the tank is 10 litres.
- f Determine, correct to two decimal places, the maximum capacity of the tank in cubic centimetres.

- 25** A rectangle is defined by vertices N and $P(x, y)$ on the curve with equation $y = 16 - x^2$ and vertices M and Q on the x -axis.



- a
 - i Determine the area, A , of the rectangle in terms of x .
 - ii State the implied domain for the function defined by the rule given in part i.
- b
 - i Determine the value of A when $x = 3$.
 - ii Determine the value of x , correct to two decimal places, when $A = 25$.
- c A cuboid has volume V given by the rule $V = xA$.
 - i Determine V in terms of x .
 - ii Determine the value of x , correct to two decimal places, such that $V = 100$.

- 26** The plan of a garden adjoining a wall is shown. The rectangle $BCEF$ is of length y m and width x m. The borders of the two end sections are quarter circles of radius x m and centres at E and F .

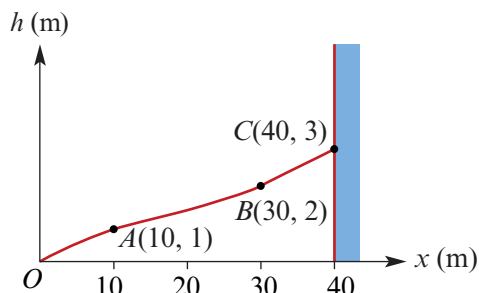


A fence is erected along the curves AB and CD and the straight line BC .

- a Determine the area, $A \text{ m}^2$, of the garden in terms of x and y .
- b If the length of the fence is 100 m, determine:
 - i y in terms of x
 - ii A in terms of x
 - iii the maximal domain of the function with the rule obtained in part ii.

- c** Determine, correct to two decimal places, the value(s) of x if the area of the garden is to be 1000 m^2 .
- d** It is decided to build the garden up to a height of $\frac{x}{50}$ metres. If the length of the fence is 100 m , determine correct to two decimal places:
 - i** the volume, $V \text{ m}^3$, of soil needed in terms of x
 - ii** the volume of soil needed for a garden of area 1000 m^2
 - iii** the value(s) of x for which 500 m^3 of soil is required.

- 27** A mound of earth is piled up against a wall. The cross-section is as shown. The coordinates of several points on the surface are given.



- a** Determine the rule of the cubic function for which the graph passes through the points O , A , B and C .
- b** For what value of x is the height of the mound 1.5 metres?
- c** The coefficient of x^3 for the function is 'small'. Consider the quadratic formed when the x^3 term is deleted. Compare the graph of the resulting quadratic function with the graph of the cubic function.
- d** The mound moves and the curve describing the cross-section now passes through the points $O(0, 0)$, $A(10, 0.3)$, $B(30, 2.7)$ and $D(40, 2.8)$. Determine the rule of the cubic function for which the graph passes through these points.
- e** Let $y = f(x)$ be the function obtained in part **a**.
 - i** Sketch the graph of the piecewise-defined function

$$g(x) = \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 40 \\ f(80 - x) & \text{for } 40 < x \leq 80 \end{cases}$$
 - ii** Comment on the appearance of the graph of $y = g(x)$.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 By completing the square, the expression $5x^2 - 10x - 2$ can be written in turning point form $a(x - h)^2 + k$ as

A $(5x + 1)^2 + 5$ **B** $(5x - 1)^2 - 5$
C $5(x - 1)^2 - 7$ **D** $5(x + 1)^2 - 2$

- 2 For which value(s) of m does the equation $mx^2 + 6x - 3 = 0$ have two real solutions?

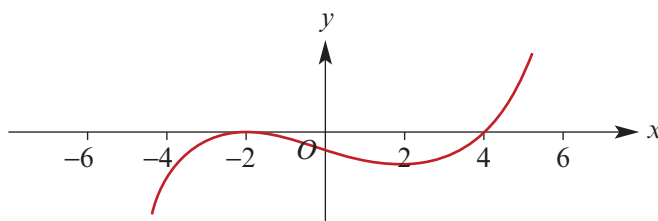
A $m = -3$ **B** $m = 3$
C $m = 0$ **D** $m > -3$

- 3 $x^3 + 27$ is equal to

A $(x - 3)^3$ **B** $(x + 3)(x^2 - 6x + 9)$
C $(x - 3)(x^2 + 3x + 9)$ **D** $(x + 3)(x^2 - 3x + 9)$

- 4 The equation of the graph shown on the right is

A $y = x(x - 2)(x + 4)$
B $y = x(x + 2)(x - 4)$
C $y = (x + 2)^2(x - 4)$
D $y = (x + 2)(x - 4)^2$



- 5 Let $P(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 2ax + 1$. If $P(1) = 0$ then the value of a is

A 5 **B** $\frac{2}{5}$ **C** $-\frac{2}{5}$ **D** $\frac{5}{2}$

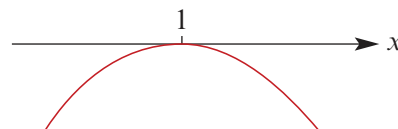
- 6 $6x^2 - 8xy - 8y^2$ is equal to

A $(3x + 2y)(2x - 4y)$ **B** $(3x - 2y)(6x + 4y)$
C $(6x - 4y)(x + 2y)$ **D** $(3x - 2y)(2x + 4y)$

- 7 The diagram shows a part of the graph of a cubic polynomial function f , near the point $(1, 0)$.

Which of the following could be the rule for f ?

A $f(x) = x^2(x - 1)$ **B** $f(x) = (x - 1)^3$
C $f(x) = -x(x - 1)^2$ **D** $f(x) = x(x - 1)^2$

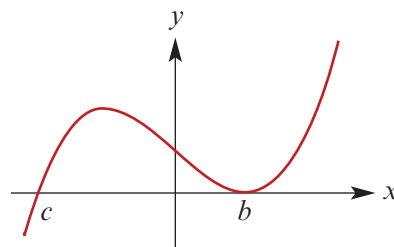


- 8 The coordinates of the turning point of the graph of the function $p(x) = 3(x - 2)^2 + 4$ are

A $(-2, 12)$ **B** $(-2, 4)$ **C** $(2, -12)$ **D** $(2, 4)$

- 9 The diagram shows part of the graph of a polynomial function. A possible equation for the graph is

A $y = (x + c)(x - b)^2$
B $y = (x - b)(x - c)^2$
C $y = (x - c)(b - x)^2$
D $y = -(x - c)(b - x)^2$



- 10 The number of solutions of the equation $(x^2 + a)(x - b)(x + c) = 0$, where $a, b, c \in \mathbb{R}^+$, is

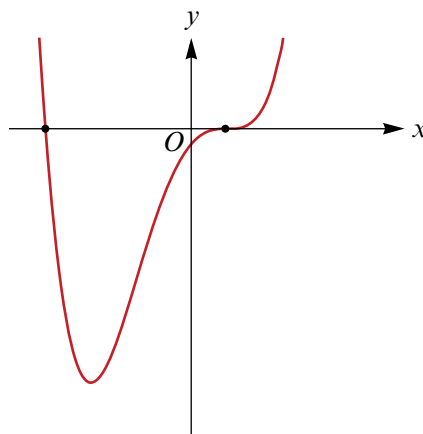
A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

- 11 The graph of $y = kx - 3$ meets the graph of $y = -x^2 + 2x - 12$ at two distinct points for

A $k \in [-4, 8]$ **B** $k \in \{-4, -8\}$
C $k \in (-\infty, -4) \cup (8, \infty)$ **D** $k \in (-4, 8)$

- 12 The function f is a quartic polynomial. Its graph is shown on the right. It has x -axis intercepts at $(a, 0)$ and $(b, 0)$, where $a > 0$ and $b < 0$. A possible rule for this function is

A $f(x) = (x - a)^2(x + b)^2$
B $f(x) = (x - a)^3(x - b)$
C $f(x) = (x - a)(x - b)^2$
D $f(x) = (x + a)^2(x - b)^2$



- 13 The values of k for which the quadratic equation $x^2 + kx + 16 = 0$ has two solutions are

A $k < -8$ or $k > 8$ **B** $k \geq 8$
C $k = 8$ or $k = -8$ **D** $-8 < k < 8$

- 14 Let $f(x) = (x + 3)(x^2 + 2x + 6)$. Then the number of solutions of the equation $f(x) = 0$ is

A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

15 A cubic function has rule $f(x) = (x - 2)^2(mx + n)$ and $f(1) = 6$ and $f(3) = 8$. The values of m and n are

- 16** If $x^2 + px - 444p = 0$ has integer solutions, where p is a prime number, then p is equal to

- 17** If $x^2 + 2ax + (10 - 3a) > 0$ for all x then

- 18** A cubic equation $f(x) = 0$ has solutions $x = 3, x = -2$ and $x = 5$. The solutions to the equation $f(2(x + 5)) = 0$ are

- 19** A cubic function has rule $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ and $f(1) = 3$, $f(2) = 26$, $f(-2) = -6$ and $f\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \frac{7}{8}$. The values of a, b, c and d are

- 20** If $f(x) = 2x^3 - 9x^2 - 2x + 24$, then, $f(x) > 0$ for

- Mathematical Methods Units 3 & 4 ISBN 978-1-009-53728-5 © Evans et al. 2025 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3

Refresher on differentiation

Chapter contents

- ▶ **3A** The derivative
- ▶ **3B** Rules for differentiation
- ▶ **3C** Differentiating x^n where n is a negative integer
- ▶ **3D** The graph of the derivative function
- ▶ **3E** The chain rule
- ▶ **3F** Differentiating rational powers

Throughout this course, we have been using different types of functions as mathematical models of the relationship between two variables. We have used the idea that one variable, say y , is a function of another variable, say x .

When establishing and applying such a mathematical model, it is important to understand how the relationship between the two variables is changing. For example, if x increases, does y also increase, or does it decrease, or remain unaltered? And, if it does change, does it do so consistently, quickly, slowly, indefinitely, etc.?

We can study rates of change using differential calculus. It is believed that calculus was discovered independently in the late seventeenth century by two great mathematicians: Isaac Newton and Gottfried Leibniz. Like most scientific breakthroughs, the discovery of calculus did not arise out of a vacuum. In fact, many mathematicians and philosophers going back to ancient times made discoveries relating to calculus.

In this chapter, we revise some of the important ideas and results from your study of differential calculus in Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

3A The derivative

Learning intentions

- ▶ To define average rate of change.
- ▶ To define instantaneous rate of change.
- ▶ To define the derivative function of a given function.

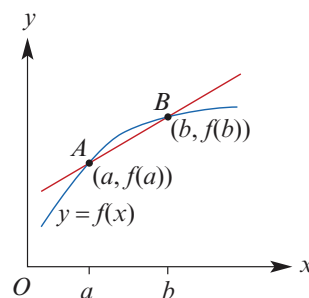
We begin this chapter by recalling the definition of average rate of change from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

Average rate of change

For any function $y = f(x)$, the **average rate of change** of y with respect to x over the interval $[a, b]$ is the gradient of the line through the two points $A(a, f(a))$ and $B(b, f(b))$.

That is:

$$\text{average rate of change} = \frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$$



Example 1

Determine the average rate of change of the function with rule $f(x) = x^2 - 2x + 5$ as x changes from 1 to 5.

Solution

$$\text{Average rate of change} = \frac{\text{change in } y}{\text{change in } x}$$

$$f(1) = (1)^2 - 2(1) + 5 = 4$$

$$f(5) = (5)^2 - 2(5) + 5 = 20$$

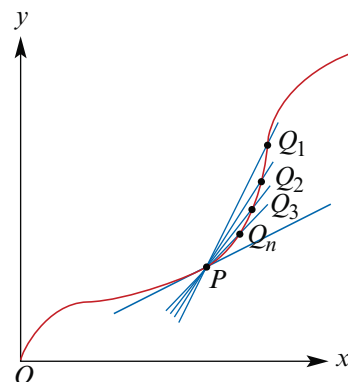
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Average rate of change} &= \frac{20 - 4}{5 - 1} \\ &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

The tangent to a curve at a point

We first recall that a **chord** of a curve is a line segment joining points P and Q on the curve. A **secant** is a line through points P and Q on the curve.

The **instantaneous rate of change** at P can be defined by considering what happens when we look at a sequence of secants $PQ_1, PQ_2, PQ_3, \dots, PQ_n, \dots$, where the points Q_i get closer and closer to P .

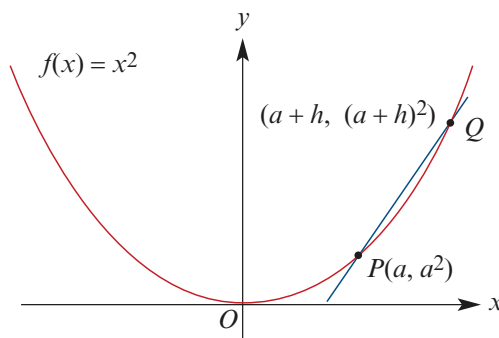
Here we first focus our attention on the gradient of the tangent at P .



Consider the function $f(x) = x^2$.

The gradient of the secant PQ shown on the graph is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{gradient of } PQ &= \frac{(a+h)^2 - a^2}{a+h-a} \\ &= \frac{a^2 + 2ah + h^2 - a^2}{h} \\ &= 2a + h\end{aligned}$$



The limit of $2a + h$ as h approaches 0 is $2a$, and so the gradient of the tangent at P is said to be $2a$.

Note: This also can be interpreted as the instantaneous rate of change of f at $(a, f(a))$.

The straight line that passes through the point P and has gradient $2a$ is called the **tangent** to the curve at P .

It can be seen that there is nothing special about a here. The same calculation works for any real number x . The gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = x^2$ at any point x is $2x$.

We say that the **derivative of x^2 with respect to x is $2x$** , or more briefly, we can say that the **derivative of x^2 is $2x$** .

Limit notation

The notation for the limit of $2x + h$ as h approaches 0 is

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (2x + h)$$

The derivative of a function with rule $f(x)$ may be found by:

- 1 determining an expression for the gradient of the line through $P(x, f(x))$ and $Q(x+h, f(x+h))$
- 2 determining the limit of this expression as h approaches 0.



Example 2

Consider the function $f(x) = x^3$. By first determining the gradient of the secant through $P(2, 8)$ and $Q(2+h, (2+h)^3)$, determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point $(2, 8)$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Gradient of } PQ &= \frac{(2+h)^3 - 8}{2+h-2} \\ &= \frac{8 + 12h + 6h^2 + h^3 - 8}{h} \\ &= \frac{12h + 6h^2 + h^3}{h} \\ &= 12 + 6h + h^2\end{aligned}$$

The gradient of the tangent line at $(2, 8)$ is $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (12 + 6h + h^2) = 12$.

The following example provides practice in determining limits.



Example 3

Determine:

a $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (22x^2 + 20xh + h)$

b $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{3x^2h + 2h^2}{h}$

c $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 12x$

d $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 4$

Solution

a $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (22x^2 + 20xh + h) = 22x^2$

b $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{3x^2h + 2h^2}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (3x^2 + 2h)$
 $= 3x^2$

c $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 12x = 12x$

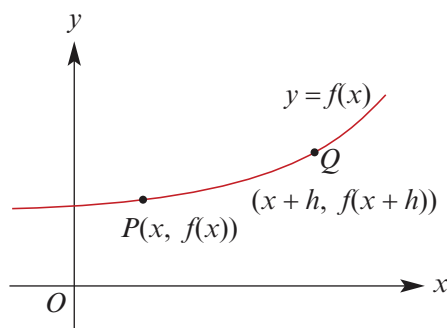
d $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 4 = 4$

Definition of the derivative

In general, consider the graph of $y = f(x)$, where f is a function.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Gradient of secant } PQ &= \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{x+h-x} \\ &= \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \end{aligned}$$

The gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x)$ at the point $P(x, f(x))$ is the limit of this expression as h approaches 0.



Derivative of a function

- The **derivative** of the function f is denoted f' and is defined by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

- The **tangent line** to the graph of the function f at the point $(a, f(a))$ is defined to be the line through $(a, f(a))$ with gradient $f'(a)$.

Warning: This definition of the derivative assumes that the limit exists. For polynomial functions, such limits always exist. But it is not true that for every function you can determine the derivative at every point of its domain. This is discussed further in Section 3D.

Differentiation by first principles

Determining the derivative of a function by evaluating the limit is called **differentiation by first principles**.



Example 4

Determine $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ for each of the following:

a $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2x + 2$

b $f(x) = 2 - x^3$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} &= \frac{3(x+h)^2 + 2(x+h) + 2 - (3x^2 + 2x + 2)}{h} \\ &= \frac{3x^2 + 6xh + 3h^2 + 2x + 2h + 2 - 3x^2 - 2x - 2}{h} \\ &= \frac{6xh + 3h^2 + 2h}{h} \\ &= 6x + 3h + 2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (6x + 3h + 2) = 6x + 2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} &= \frac{2 - (x+h)^3 - (2 - x^3)}{h} \\ &= \frac{2 - (x^3 + 3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3) - 2 + x^3}{h} \\ &= \frac{-3x^2h - 3xh^2 - h^3}{h} \\ &= -3x^2 - 3xh - h^2 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (-3x^2 - 3xh - h^2) = -3x^2$$

Summary 3A

- The **derivative** of the function f is denoted f' and is defined by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

- The **tangent line** to the graph of the function f at the point $(a, f(a))$ is defined to be the line through $(a, f(a))$ with gradient $f'(a)$.

Exercise 3A

Example 1

- 1 Determine the average rate of change of the function with rule $f(x) = -x^2 + 2x + 1$ as x changes from -1 to 4 .
- 2 Determine the average rate of change of the function with rule $f(x) = 6 - x^3$ as x changes from -1 to 1 .

Example 2

- 3 For the curve with equation $y = x^2 + 5x$:
 - a Determine the gradient of the secant through points P and Q , where P is the point $(2, 14)$ and Q is the point $(2 + h, (2 + h)^2 + 5(2 + h))$.
 - b From the result of part a, determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point $(2, 14)$.

Example 3

- 4 Determine:

a $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{4x^2h^2 + xh + h}{h}$

b $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{2x^3h - 2xh^2 + h}{h}$

c $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (40 - 50h)$

d $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 5h$

e $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 5$

f $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{30h^2x^2 + 20h^2x + h}{h}$

g $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{3h^2x^3 + 2hx + h}{h}$

h $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} 3x$

i $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{3x^3h - 5x^2h^2 + xh}{h}$

j $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (6x - 7h)$

- 5 For the curve with equation $y = x^3 - x$:
 - a Determine the gradient of the chord PQ , where P is the point $(1, 0)$ and Q is the point $(1 + h, (1 + h)^3 - (1 + h))$.
 - b From the result of part a, determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point $(1, 0)$.
- 6 If $f(x) = x^2 - 2$, simplify $\frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h}$. Hence determine the derivative of $x^2 - 2$.
- 7 Let P and Q be points on the curve $y = x^2 + 2x + 5$ at which $x = 2$ and $x = 2 + h$ respectively. Express the gradient of the line PQ in terms of h , and hence determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = x^2 + 2x + 5$ at $x = 2$.

Example 4

- 8 For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$ by determining $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x + h) - f(x)}{h}$:
 - a $f(x) = 5x^2$
 - b $f(x) = 3x + 2$
 - c $f(x) = 5$
 - d $f(x) = 3x^2 + 4x + 3$
 - e $f(x) = 5x^3 - 5$
 - f $f(x) = 5x^2 - 6x$

3B Rules for differentiation

Learning intentions

- To be able to use rules and notation for differentiation.

The derivative of x^n where n is a positive integer

Differentiating from first principles gives the following:

- For $f(x) = x$, $f'(x) = 1$. ■ For $f(x) = x^2$, $f'(x) = 2x$. ■ For $f(x) = x^3$, $f'(x) = 3x^2$.

This suggests the following general result:

For $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$, where $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$

Proof We can prove this result using the binomial theorem (discussed in Mathematical Methods units 1&2).

Let $f(x) = x^n$, where $n \in \mathbb{N}$ with $n \geq 2$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } f(x+h) - f(x) &= (x+h)^n - x^n \\ &= x^n + {}^nC_1 x^{n-1}h + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-1} + h^n - x^n \\ &= {}^nC_1 x^{n-1}h + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-1} + h^n \\ &= nx^{n-1}h + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-1} + h^n \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and so } \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} &= \frac{1}{h} (nx^{n-1}h + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h^2 + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-1} + h^n) \\ &= nx^{n-1} + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-2} + h^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} (nx^{n-1} + {}^nC_2 x^{n-2}h + \dots + {}^nC_{n-1} xh^{n-2} + h^{n-1}) \\ &= nx^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

The derivative of a polynomial function

The following results are very useful when determining the derivative of a polynomial function.

- **Constant function:** If $f(x) = c$, then $f'(x) = 0$.
- **Multiple:** If $f(x) = k g(x)$, where k is a constant, then $f'(x) = k g'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of a number multiple is the multiple of the derivative.
For example: if $f(x) = 5x^2$, then $f'(x) = 5(2x) = 10x$.
- **Sum:** If $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) + h'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of the sum is the sum of the derivatives.
For example: if $f(x) = x^2 + 2x$, then $f'(x) = 2x + 2$.
- **Difference:** If $f(x) = g(x) - h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) - h'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of the difference is the difference of the derivatives.
For example: if $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$, then $f'(x) = 2x - 2$.

We will revise the rules for the derivatives of products and quotients in Chapter 6.

The process of determining the derivative function is called **differentiation**.



Example 5

Determine the derivative of $x^5 - 2x^3 + 2$, i.e. differentiate $x^5 - 2x^3 + 2$ with respect to x .

Solution

Let $f(x) = x^5 - 2x^3 + 2$

Then $f'(x) = 5x^4 - 2(3x^2) + 0$
 $= 5x^4 - 6x^2$

Explanation

We use the following results:

- the derivative of x^n is nx^{n-1}
- the derivative of a number is 0
- the multiple, sum and difference rules.



Example 6

Determine the derivative of $f(x) = 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$ and thus determine $f'(1)$.

Solution

Let $f(x) = 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$

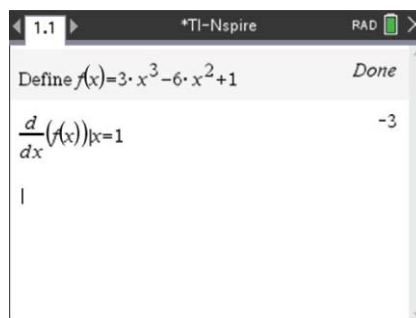
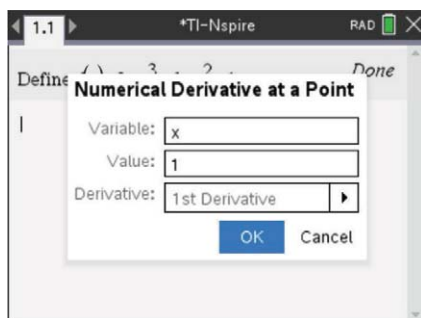
Then $f'(x) = 3(3x^2) - 6(2x) + 0$
 $= 9x^2 - 12x$

$\therefore f'(1) = 9 - 12 = -3$



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- In a **Calculator** application, define $f(x) = 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$.
- To determine the value of the derivative at $x = 1$, use **menu** > **Calculus** > **Numerical Derivative at a Point** and complete as shown.



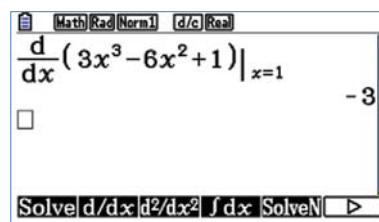
Note: The derivative template can also be accessed from the 2D-template palette or by using **shift** .

Using the Casio

To determine the derivative of $3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$ at $x = 1$:

- Press **MENU** **1** to select **Run-Matrix** mode.
- Go to **Calculation** **OPTN** **F4**, then **d/dx** **F2**.
- Enter the expression $3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$ and the x -value 1:

3 **X,0,T** **^** **3** **▶** **-** **6** **X,0,T** **x^2** **+** **1**
▶ **1** **EXE**



Determining the gradient of a tangent line

We discussed the tangent line at a point on a graph in Section 3A. We recall the following:

The **tangent line** to the graph of the function f at the point $(a, f(a))$ is defined to be the line through $(a, f(a))$ with gradient $f'(a)$.



Example 7

For the curve determined by the rule $f(x) = 3x^3 - 6x^2 + 1$, determine the gradient of the tangent line to the curve at the point $(1, -2)$.

Solution

Now $f'(x) = 9x^2 - 12x$ and so $f'(1) = 9 - 12 = -3$.

The gradient of the tangent line at the point $(1, -2)$ is -3 .

Alternative notations

It was mentioned in the introduction to this chapter that the German mathematician Gottfried Leibniz was one of the two people to whom the discovery of calculus is attributed. A form of the notation he introduced is still in use today.

Leibniz notation

An alternative notation for the derivative is the following:

If $y = x^3$, then the derivative can be denoted by $\frac{dy}{dx}$, and so we write $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2$.

In general, if y is a function of x , then the derivative of y with respect to x is denoted by $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

Similarly, if z is a function of t , then the derivative of z with respect to t is denoted $\frac{dz}{dt}$.

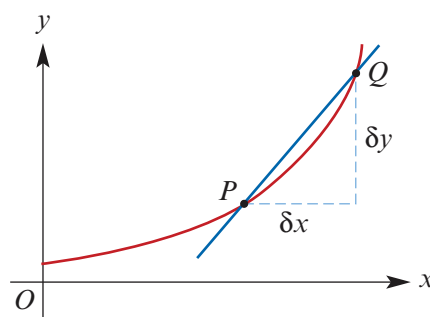
Warning: In Leibniz notation, the symbol d is not a factor and cannot be cancelled.

This notation came about because, in the eighteenth century, the standard diagram for determining the limiting gradient was labelled as shown:

■ δx means a small difference in x

■ δy means a small difference in y

where δ (delta) is the lowercase Greek letter d .



Example 8

a If $y = t^2$, determine $\frac{dy}{dt}$.

b If $x = t^3 + t$, determine $\frac{dx}{dt}$.

c If $z = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2$, determine $\frac{dz}{dx}$.

Solution

a $y = t^2$

$$\frac{dy}{dt} = 2t$$

b $x = t^3 + t$

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = 3t^2 + 1$$

c $z = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + x^2$

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = x^2 + 2x$$



Example 9

a For $y = (x + 3)^2$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

b For $z = (2t - 1)^2(t + 2)$, determine $\frac{dz}{dt}$.

c For $y = \frac{x^2 + 3x}{x}$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

d Differentiate $y = 2x^3 - 1$ with respect to x .

Solution

a First write $y = (x + 3)^2$ in expanded form:

$$y = x^2 + 6x + 9$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 2x + 6$$

b Expanding:

$$\begin{aligned} z &= (4t^2 - 4t + 1)(t + 2) \\ &= 4t^3 - 4t^2 + t + 8t^2 - 8t + 2 \\ &= 4t^3 + 4t^2 - 7t + 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dz}{dt} = 12t^2 + 8t - 7$$

c First simplify:

$$y = x + 3 \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0)$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 1 \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0)$$

d $y = 2x^3 - 1$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 6x^2$$

Operator notation

'Determine the derivative of $2x^2 - 4x$ with respect to x .' can also be written as

'Determine $\frac{d}{dx}(2x^2 - 4x)$ '. In general: $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) = f'(x)$.



Example 10

Determine:

a $\frac{d}{dx}(5x - 4x^3)$

b $\frac{d}{dz}(5z^2 - 4z)$

c $\frac{d}{dz}(6z^3 - 4z^2)$

Solution

a $\frac{d}{dx}(5x - 4x^3)$
 $= 5 - 12x^2$

b $\frac{d}{dz}(5z^2 - 4z)$
 $= 10z - 4$

c $\frac{d}{dz}(6z^3 - 4z^2)$
 $= 18z^2 - 8z$



Example 11

For each of the following curves, determine the coordinates of the points on the curve at which the gradient of the tangent line at that point has the given value:

a $y = x^3$, gradient = 8

b $y = x^2 - 4x + 2$, gradient = 0

c $y = 4 - x^3$, gradient = -6

Solution

a $y = x^3$ implies $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2$

$\therefore 3x^2 = 8$

$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{8}{3}} = \frac{\pm 2\sqrt{6}}{3}$

The points are $\left(\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{3}, \frac{16\sqrt{6}}{9}\right)$ and $\left(-\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{3}, -\frac{16\sqrt{6}}{9}\right)$.

b $y = x^2 - 4x + 2$ implies $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 4$

$\therefore 2x - 4 = 0$

$\therefore x = 2$

The only point is (2, -2).

c $y = 4 - x^3$ implies $\frac{dy}{dx} = -3x^2$

$\therefore -3x^2 = -6$

$\therefore x^2 = 2$

$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{2}$

The points are $\left(2^{\frac{1}{2}}, 4 - 2^{\frac{3}{2}}\right)$ and $\left(-2^{\frac{1}{2}}, 4 + 2^{\frac{3}{2}}\right)$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

The calculator can be used to obtain an approximate solution for Example 11c.

- Define $f(x) = 4 - x^3$.
- Solve the equation $\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) = -6$.
- Substitute in $f(x)$ to determine the y-coordinates.
- The points are (1.41, 1.17) and (-1.41, 6.83), correct to two decimal places.

*TI-Nspire	
Define $f(x) = 4 - x^3$	Done
$\text{nSolve}\left(\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) = -6, x=0\right)$	1.41421
$\text{nSolve}\left(\frac{d}{dx}(f(x)) = -6, x=-10\right)$	-1.41421
$f(1.4142135623731)$	1.17157
$f(-1.4142135623731)$	6.82843

Note: Check the number of solutions by finding the intersection points of the graphs of $f_1(x) = \frac{d}{dx}(f(x))$ and $f_2(x) = -6$.

Using the Casio

Method 1: Using the numerical solver

For Example 11c:

- Press **MENU** **1** to select **Run-Matrix** mode.
- Select the numerical solver by going to **Calculation** **OPTN** **F4**, then **SolveN** **F5**.
- Enter the equation $\frac{d}{dx}(4 - x^3) = -6$ as follows:
 F2 **4** **-** **X,θ,T** **^** **3** **▶▶** **X,θ,T** **▶**
 SHIFT **•** **(-)** **6** **)** **EXE**
- Substitute each x -value into the rule $y = 4 - x^3$ to determine the corresponding y -value.
- The points are $(\sqrt{2}, 4 - 2\sqrt{2})$ and $(-\sqrt{2}, 4 + 2\sqrt{2})$.

Math Rad Norm1 d/c Real

SolveN $\left(\frac{d}{dx}(4-x^3)\right)_{x=x} = -6$

$\{-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}\}$

Solve d/dx d²/dx² ∫ dx SolveN ▶

$4 - \sqrt{2}^3$ $4 - 2\sqrt{2}$

$4 - (-\sqrt{2})^3$ $4 + 2\sqrt{2}$

Solve d/dx d²/dx² ∫ dx SolveN ▶

Method 2: Using Graph mode

For Example 11c:

- Press **MENU** **5** to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = 4 - x^3$ in Y1.
- Enter the derivative of Y1 in Y2 as follows:
 OPTN **F2** **F1** **F1** **1** **▶** **X,θ,T** **EXE**
- Enter the rule $y = -6$ in Y3.
- Select **Draw** **F6** to view the graphs.
- Adjust the View Window if required.
- Go to **G-Solve** **SHIFT** **F5**, then **Intersection** **F5**.
 Select the graph of Y2 and the graph of Y3.

Math Rad Norm1 Real

Graph Func : Y=

Y1 $4 - x^3$ [—]

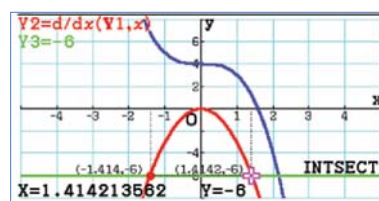
Y2 $\frac{d}{dx}(Y1)_{x=x}$ [—]

Y3 -6 [—]

Y4 [—]

Y5 [—]

SELECT DELETE TYPE TOOL MODIFY DRAW



An angle associated with the gradient of a curve at a point

The gradient of a curve at a point is the gradient of the tangent at that point. A straight line, the tangent, is associated with each point on the curve.

If α is the angle a straight line makes with the positive direction of the x -axis, then the gradient, m , of the straight line is equal to $\tan \alpha$. That is, $m = \tan \alpha$.

For example, if $\alpha = 135^\circ$, then $\tan \alpha = -1$ and so the gradient is -1 .



Example 12

Determine the coordinates of the points on the curve with equation $y = x^2 - 7x + 8$ at which the tangent line:

- a** makes an angle of 45° with the positive direction of the x -axis
- b** is parallel to the line $y = -2x + 6$.

Solution

a $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 7$

$$2x - 7 = 1 \quad (\text{as } \tan 45^\circ = 1)$$

$$2x = 8$$

$$\therefore x = 4$$

$$y = 4^2 - 7 \times 4 + 8 = -4$$

The coordinates are $(4, -4)$.

b The line $y = -2x + 6$ has gradient -2 .

$$2x - 7 = -2$$

$$2x = 5$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{5}{2}$$

The coordinates are $\left(\frac{5}{2}, -\frac{13}{4}\right)$.

Increasing and decreasing functions

We have discussed strictly increasing and strictly decreasing functions in Chapter 1.

- A function f is **strictly increasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.
- A function f is **strictly decreasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.

We have the following very important results.

If $f'(x) > 0$, for all x in the interval, then the function is strictly increasing.
(Think of the tangents at each point – they each have positive gradient.)

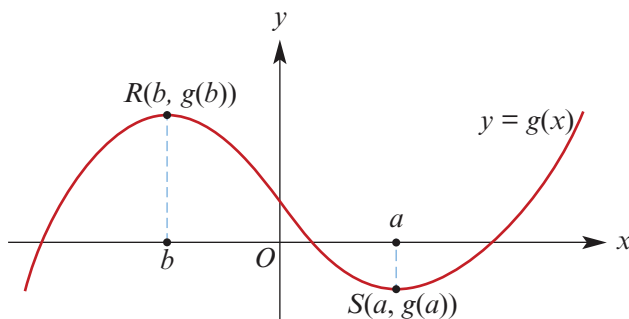
If $f'(x) < 0$, for all x in the interval, then the function is strictly decreasing.
(Think of the tangents at each point – they each have negative gradient.)

Warning: The function $f(x) = x^3$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, is strictly increasing, but $f'(0) = 0$. This means that *strictly increasing does not imply* $f'(x) > 0$.

Sign of the derivative

Gradients of tangents can, of course, be negative or zero. They are not always positive.

At a point $(a, g(a))$ on the graph of $y = g(x)$, the gradient of the tangent is $g'(a)$.



Some features of the graph shown are:

- For $x < b$, the gradient of any tangent is positive, i.e. $g'(x) > 0$.
- For $x = b$, the gradient of the tangent is zero, i.e. $g'(b) = 0$.
- For $b < x < a$, the gradient of any tangent is negative, i.e. $g'(x) < 0$.
- For $x = a$, the gradient of the tangent is zero, i.e. $g'(a) = 0$.
- For $x > a$, the gradient of any tangent is positive, i.e. $g'(x) > 0$.

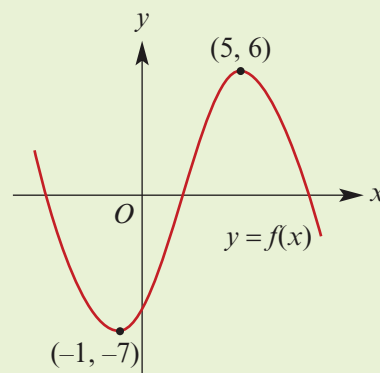
Note: This function g is strictly decreasing on the open interval (b, a) , but it is also strictly decreasing on the closed interval $[b, a]$. Similarly, the function g is strictly increasing on the intervals $[a, \infty)$ and $(-\infty, b]$.



Example 13

For the graph of $y = f(x)$ shown, determine the values of x for which:

- a** $f'(x) > 0$
- b** $f'(x) < 0$
- c** $f'(x) = 0$



Solution

- a** $f'(x) > 0$ for $-1 < x < 5$
- b** $f'(x) < 0$ for $x < -1$ or $x > 5$
- c** $f'(x) = 0$ for $x = -1$ or $x = 5$

Summary 3B

- For $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$, where $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$
- **Constant function:** If $f(x) = c$, then $f'(x) = 0$.
- **Multiple:** If $f(x) = k g(x)$, where k is a constant, then $f'(x) = k g'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of a number multiple is the multiple of the derivative.
- **Sum:** If $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) + h'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of the sum is the sum of the derivatives.
- **Difference:** If $f(x) = g(x) - h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) - h'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of the difference is the difference of the derivatives.
- **Angle of inclination of tangent**
 - A straight line, the tangent, is associated with each point on a smooth curve.
 - If α is the angle that a straight line makes with the positive direction of the x -axis, then the gradient of the line is given by $m = \tan \alpha$.
- **Increasing and decreasing functions**
 - A function f is **strictly increasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.
 - A function f is **strictly decreasing** on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.
 - If $f'(x) > 0$ for all x in the interval, then the function is strictly increasing.
 - If $f'(x) < 0$ for all x in the interval, then the function is strictly decreasing.



Exercise 3B

Example 5

- 1 For each of the following, determine the derivative with respect to x .

a x^5	b $4x^7$	c $6x$
d $5x^2 - 4x + 3$	e $4x^3 + 6x^2 + 2x - 4$	f $5x^4 + 3x^3$
g $-2x^2 + 4x + 6$	h $6x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x - 6$	

Example 6

- 2 For each of the following, determine the derivative of $f(x)$ and thus determine $f'(1)$.

a $f(x) = 2x^3 - 5x^2 + 1$	b $f(x) = -2x^3 - x^2 - 1$
c $f(x) = x^4 - 2x^3 + 1$	d $f(x) = x^5 - 3x^3 + 2$

Example 7

- 3 **a** For the curve determined by the rule $f(x) = 2x^3 - 5x^2 + 2$, determine the gradient of the tangent line to the curve at the point $(1, -1)$.
b For the curve determined by the rule $f(x) = -2x^3 - 3x^2 + 2$, determine the gradient of the tangent line to the curve at the point $(2, -26)$.

Example 8

- 4 **a** If $y = t^3$, determine $\frac{dy}{dt}$.
b If $x = t^3 - t^2$, determine $\frac{dx}{dt}$.
c If $z = \frac{1}{4}x^4 + 3x^3$, determine $\frac{dz}{dx}$.

Example 9

5 For each of the following, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

a $y = -2x$

b $y = 7$

c $y = 5x^3 - 3x^2 + 2x + 1$

d $y = \frac{2}{5}(x^3 - 4x + 6)$

e $y = (2x + 1)(x - 3)$

f $y = 3x(2x - 4)$

g $y = \frac{10x^7 + 2x^2}{x^2}, x \neq 0$

h $y = \frac{9x^4 + 3x^2}{x}, x \neq 0$

Example 10

6 Determine:

a $\frac{d}{dx}(2x^2 - 5x^3)$

b $\frac{d}{dz}(-2z^2 - 6z)$

c $\frac{d}{dz}(6z^3 - 4z^2 + 3)$

d $\frac{d}{dx}(-2x - 5x^3)$

e $\frac{d}{dz}(-2z^2 - 6z + 7)$

f $\frac{d}{dz}(-z^3 - 4z^2 + 3)$

Example 11

7 Determine the coordinates of the points on the curves given by the following equations at which the gradient has the given value.

a $y = 2x^2 - 4x + 1$, gradient = -6

b $y = 4x^3$, gradient = 48

c $y = x(5 - x)$, gradient = 1

d $y = x^3 - 3x^2$, gradient = 0

Example 12

8 Determine the coordinates of the points on the curve with equation $y = 2x^2 - 3x + 8$ at which the tangent line:

a makes an angle of 45° with the positive direction of the x -axis

b is parallel to the line $y = 2x + 8$.

9 Determine the value of x such that the tangent line to the curve $f(x) = x^2 - x$ at $(x, f(x))$:

a makes an angle of 45° with the positive direction of the x -axis

b makes an angle of 135° with the positive direction of the x -axis

c makes an angle of 60° with the positive direction of the x -axis

d makes an angle of 30° with the positive direction of the x -axis

e makes an angle of 120° with the positive direction of the x -axis.

10 For each of the following, determine the angle that the tangent line to the curve $y = f(x)$ makes with the positive direction of the x -axis at the given point.

a $y = x^2 + 3x$, (1, 4)

b $y = -x^2 + 2x$, (1, 1)

c $y = x^3 + x$, (0, 0)

d $y = -x^3 - x$, (0, 0)

e $y = x^4 - x^2$, (1, 0)

f $y = x^4 - x^2$, (-1, 0)

11 **a** Differentiate $y = (2x - 1)^2$ with respect to x .

b For $y = \frac{x^3 + 2x^2}{x}, x \neq 0$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

c Given that $y = 2x^3 - 6x^2 + 18x$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Hence show that $\frac{dy}{dx} > 0$ for all x .

d Given that $y = \frac{x^3}{3} - x^2 + x$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Hence show that $\frac{dy}{dx} \geq 0$ for all x .

- 12** At the points on the following curves corresponding to the given values of x , determine the y -coordinate and the gradient.

a $y = x^2 + 2x + 1$, $x = 3$

b $y = x^2 - x - 1$, $x = 0$

c $y = 2x^2 - 4x$, $x = -1$

d $y = (2x + 1)(3x - 1)(x + 2)$, $x = 4$

e $y = (2x + 5)(3 - 5x)(x + 1)$, $x = 1$

f $y = (2x - 5)^2$, $x = 2\frac{1}{2}$

- 13** For the function $f(x) = 3(x - 1)^2$, determine the value(s) of x for which:

a $f(x) = 0$

b $f'(x) = 0$

c $f'(x) > 0$

d $f'(x) < 0$

e $f'(x) = 10$

f $f(x) = 27$

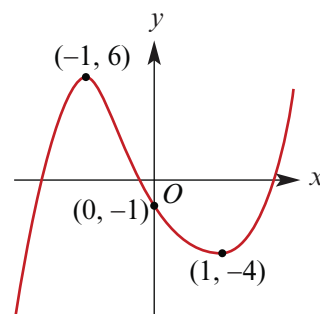
Example 13

- 14** For the graph of $y = h(x)$ shown, determine the values of x such that:

a $h'(x) > 0$

b $h'(x) < 0$

c $h'(x) = 0$

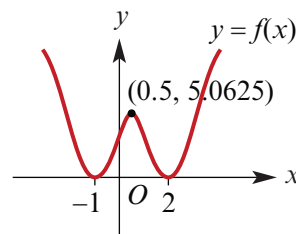


- 15** For the graph of $y = f(x)$ shown, determine the values of x such that:

a $f'(x) > 0$

b $f'(x) < 0$

c $f'(x) = 0$

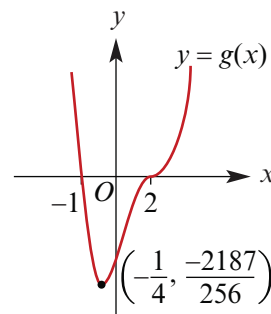


- 16** For the graph of $y = g(x)$ shown, determine the values of x such that:

a $g'(x) > 0$

b $g'(x) < 0$

c $g'(x) = 0$



- 17** Determine the coordinates of the points on the parabola $y = x^2 - 4x - 8$ at which:
- a** the gradient is zero **b** the tangent is parallel to $y = 2x + 6$
- c** the tangent is parallel to $3x + 2y = 8$.

- 18** **a** Show that $f(x) = x^3$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, is a strictly increasing function by showing that $f'(x) > 0$, for all non-zero x , and showing that, if $b > 0$, then $f(b) > f(0)$ and, if $0 > b$, then $f(0) > f(b)$.
- b** Show that $f(x) = -x^3$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, is a strictly decreasing function.

- 19 a** Show that $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in [0, \infty)$, is a strictly increasing function.
b Show that $f(x) = x^2$, $x \in (-\infty, 0]$, is a strictly decreasing function.
- 20** For the function $f(x) = x^2 - x - 12$, show that the largest interval for which f is strictly increasing is $[\frac{1}{2}, \infty)$.
- 21** For each of the following, determine the largest interval for which the function is strictly decreasing.
a $y = x^2 + 2x$ **b** $y = -x^2 + 4x$ **c** $y = 2x^2 + 3$ **d** $y = -2x^2 + 6x$

3C Differentiating x^n where n is a negative integer

Learning intentions

- To be able to differentiate x^n where n is a negative integer.

In the previous sections we have seen how to differentiate polynomial functions. In this section we add to the family of functions that we can differentiate. In particular, we will consider functions which involve linear combinations of powers of x , where the indices may be negative integers.

e.g. $f(x) = x^{-1}$ for $x \neq 0$
 $f(x) = 2x + 3 + x^{-2}$ for $x \neq 0$



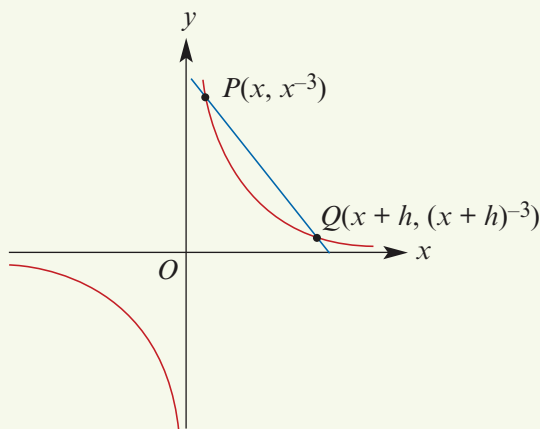
Example 14

Define the function $f(x) = x^{-3}$ for $x \neq 0$. Determine $f'(x)$ by first principles.

Solution

The gradient of secant PQ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{(x+h)^{-3} - x^{-3}}{h} \\ &= \frac{x^3 - (x+h)^3}{(x+h)^3 x^3} \times \frac{1}{h} \\ &= \frac{x^3 - (x^3 + 3x^2h + 3xh^2 + h^3)}{(x+h)^3 x^3} \times \frac{1}{h} \\ &= \frac{-3x^2h - 3xh^2 - h^3}{(x+h)^3 x^3} \times \frac{1}{h} \\ &= \frac{-3x^2 - 3xh - h^2}{(x+h)^3 x^3} \end{aligned}$$



So the gradient of the curve at P is given by

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{-3x^2 - 3xh - h^2}{(x+h)^3 x^3} = \frac{-3x^2}{x^6} = -3x^{-4}$$

Hence $f'(x) = -3x^{-4}$.

We are now in a position to state a generalisation of the result we found in Section 3B. This result can be proved by again using the binomial theorem.

For $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$, where n is a non-zero integer.

For $f(x) = c$, $f'(x) = 0$, where c is a constant.

When n is positive, we take the domain of f to be $\mathbb{R}$, and when n is negative, we take the domain of f to be $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$.



Example 15

Determine the derivative of $x^4 - 2x^{-3} + x^{-1} + 2$, $x \neq 0$.

Solution

$$\text{If } f(x) = x^4 - 2x^{-3} + x^{-1} + 2 \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{then } f'(x) &= 4x^3 - 2(-3x^{-4}) + (-x^{-2}) + 0 \\ &= 4x^3 + 6x^{-4} - x^{-2} \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0) \end{aligned}$$



Example 16

Determine the derivative of $f(x) = 3x^2 - 6x^{-2} + 1$, $x \neq 0$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= 3(2x) - 6(-2x^{-3}) + 0 \\ &= 6x + 12x^{-3} \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0) \end{aligned}$$



Example 17

Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = x^2 + \frac{1}{x}$ at the point $(1, 2)$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= 2x + (-x^{-2}) \\ &= 2x - x^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

When $x = 1$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2 - 1 = 1$. The gradient of the curve is 1 at the point $(1, 2)$.



Example 18

Show that the derivative of the function $f(x) = x^{-3}$, $x \neq 0$, is always negative.

Solution

$$f'(x) = -3x^{-4} = -\frac{3}{x^4} \quad (\text{for } x \neq 0)$$

Since x^4 is positive for all $x \neq 0$, we have $f'(x) < 0$ for all $x \neq 0$.

Summary 3C

For $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$, where n is a non-zero integer.

For $f(x) = c$, $f'(x) = 0$, where c is a constant.

Exercise 3C

- 1 a** Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{2}{x^2}$, $x \neq 0$. SF
b Let P be the point $(1, 2)$ and Q the point $(1 + h, f(1 + h))$. Determine the gradient of the secant PQ .
c Hence determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = \frac{2}{x^2}$ at $(1, 2)$.

Example 14

- 2 a** Let $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-3}$, $x \neq 3$. Determine $f'(x)$ by first principles.
b Let $f(x) = \frac{1}{x+2}$, $x \neq -2$. Determine $f'(x)$ by first principles.

- 3** Let $f(x) = x^{-4}$. Determine $f'(x)$ by first principles. CF
Hint: Remember that $(x + h)^4 = x^4 + 4x^3h + 6x^2h^2 + 4xh^3 + h^4$.

Example 15, 16

- 4** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x . SF
a $3x^{-2} + 5x^{-1} + 6$ **b** $\frac{5}{x^3} + 6x^2$ **c** $\frac{-5}{x^3} + \frac{4}{x^2} + 1$
d $6x^{-3} + 3x^{-2}$ **e** $\frac{4x^2 + 2x}{x^2}$
- 5** Determine the derivative of each of the following.
a $\frac{2z^2 - 4z}{z^2}$, $z \neq 0$ **b** $\frac{6+z}{z^3}$, $z \neq 0$ **c** $16 - z^{-3}$, $z \neq 0$
d $\frac{4z + z^3 - z^4}{z^2}$, $z \neq 0$ **e** $\frac{6z^2 - 2z}{z^4}$, $z \neq 0$ **f** $\frac{6}{x} - 3x^2$, $x \neq 0$

Example 17

- 6** Determine the gradient of the tangent to each of the following curves at the stated point.
a $y = x^{-2} + x^3$, $x \neq 0$, at $(2, 8\frac{1}{4})$ **b** $y = x^{-2} - \frac{1}{x}$, $x \neq 0$, at $(4, \frac{1}{2})$
c $y = x^{-2} - \frac{1}{x}$, $x \neq 0$, at $(1, 0)$ **d** $y = x(x^{-1} + x^2 - x^{-3})$, $x \neq 0$, at $(1, 1)$

Example 18

- 7** Show that the derivative of the function $f(x) = -2x^{-5}$, $x \neq 0$, is always positive.
8 Determine the x -coordinates of the points on the curve $y = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x}$ at which the gradient of the curve is 5.
9 Given that the curve $y = ax^2 + \frac{b}{x}$ has a gradient of -5 at the point $(2, -2)$, determine the values of a and b . CF

- 10** Determine the gradient of the curve $y = \frac{2x-4}{x^2}$ at the point where the curve crosses the x -axis.
- 11** The gradient of the curve $y = \frac{a}{x} + bx^2$ at the point $(3, 6)$ is 7. Determine the values of a and b .
- 12** For the curve with equation $y = \frac{5}{3}x + kx^2 - \frac{8}{9}x^3$, calculate the possible values of k such that the tangents at the points with x -coordinates 1 and $-\frac{1}{2}$ are perpendicular.

SF

CF

CU

3D The graph of the derivative function

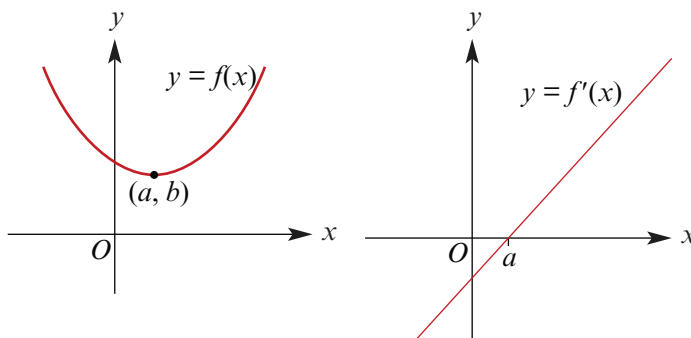
Learning intentions

- To be able to sketch the graph of the derivative function.

First consider the quadratic function with rule $y = f(x)$ shown in the graph on the left. The vertex is at the point with coordinates (a, b) .

- For $x < a$, $f'(x) < 0$.
- For $x = a$, $f'(x) = 0$.
- For $x > a$, $f'(x) > 0$.

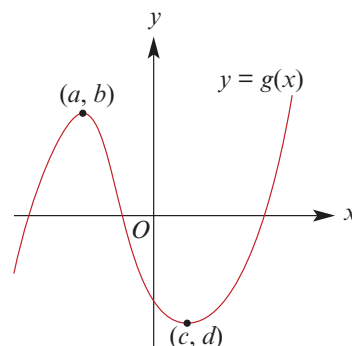
The graph of the derivative function with rule $y = f'(x)$ is therefore as shown on the right.



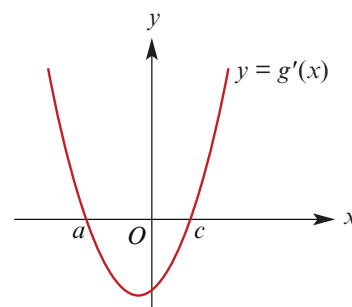
The derivative f' is known to be linear as f is quadratic.

Now consider the cubic function with rule $y = g(x)$ shown in the graph.

- For $x < a$, $g'(x) > 0$.
- For $x = a$, $g'(x) = 0$.
- For $a < x < c$, $g'(x) < 0$.
- For $x = c$, $g'(x) = 0$.
- For $x > c$, $g'(x) > 0$.

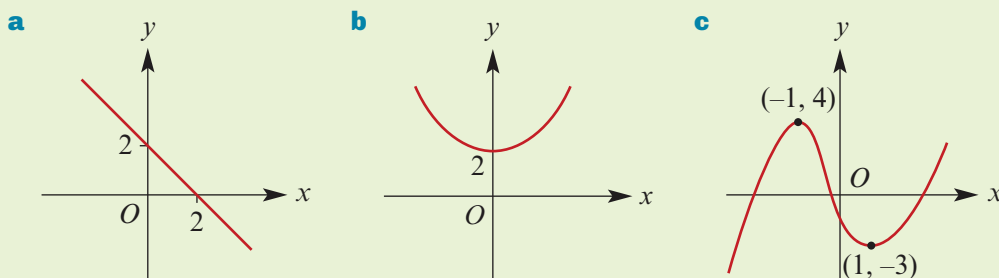


The graph of the derivative function with rule $y = g'(x)$ is therefore as shown to the right. The derivative g' is known to be quadratic as g is cubic.

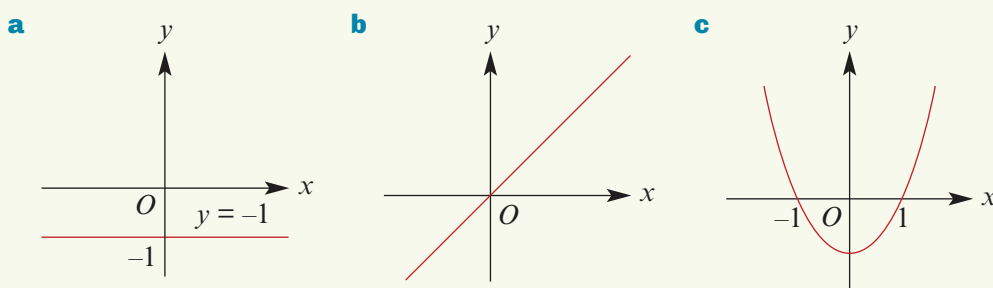


**Example 19**

Sketch the graph of the derivative function for each of the functions of the graphs shown:

**Solution**

Note: Not all features of the graphs are known.

**Continuous functions**

In this course, we only require an intuitive understanding of continuity. Informally, we say that a function f is continuous at $x = a$ if the graph of $y = f(x)$ can be drawn through the point with coordinates $(a, f(a))$ without a break.

We can give a more formal definition of continuity using limits as follows.

A function f is **continuous** at $x = a$ if $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$.

Most of the functions that we study in this course are continuous at each point of their domains. However, we have considered piecewise-defined functions that are not continuous.

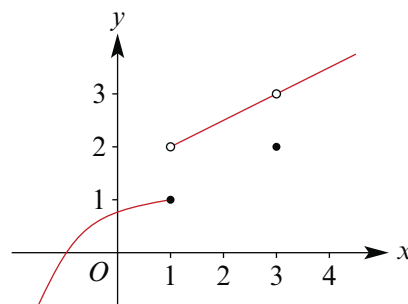
For example, the graph of a piecewise-defined function f is shown on the right. We see that:

- $f(x) \rightarrow 1$ as $x \rightarrow 1$ from the left
- $f(x) \rightarrow 2$ as $x \rightarrow 1$ from the right.

Since $f(x)$ does not approach a unique value as $x \rightarrow 1$, we say that $\lim_{x \rightarrow 1} f(x)$ does not exist.

The function f has a discontinuity at $x = 1$.

There is also a discontinuity at $x = 3$. In this case, we have $\lim_{x \rightarrow 3} f(x) = 3$, but $f(3) = 2$.



When is a function differentiable?

A function f is said to be **differentiable** at $x = a$ if $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h}$ exists.

Many of the functions that we study in this course are differentiable at each point of their domains. However, this is not true for all functions.

For example, consider the function

$$f(x) = \sqrt{x^2} = \begin{cases} x & \text{for } x \geq 0 \\ -x & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

The gradient of the secant through the points $(0, 0)$ and $(0+h, f(0+h))$ is given by

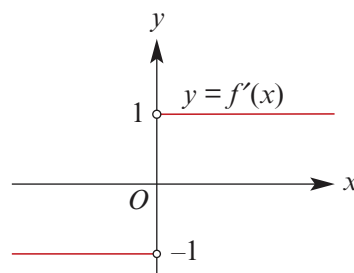
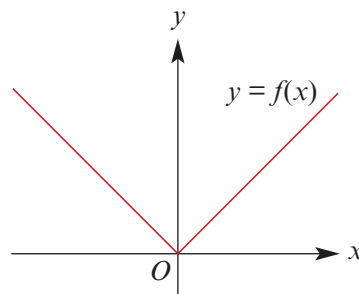
$$\frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h} = \frac{f(h)}{h} = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } h > 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } h < 0 \end{cases}$$

The gradient does not approach a unique value as $h \rightarrow 0$, and so we say $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(0+h) - f(0)}{h}$ does not exist. The function f is not differentiable at $x = 0$.

The graph of f has gradient 1 to the right of 0, and gradient -1 to the left of 0. Therefore the derivative function is given by

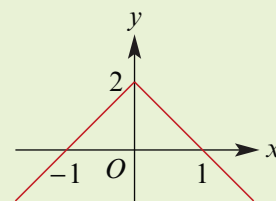
$$f'(x) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } x > 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

The domain of f' is $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$. The graph of f' is shown on the right.



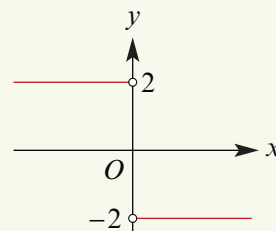
Example 20

Draw a sketch graph of f' where the graph of f is as illustrated. Indicate where f' is not defined.



Solution

The derivative does not exist at $x = 0$,
i.e. the function is not differentiable at $x = 0$.

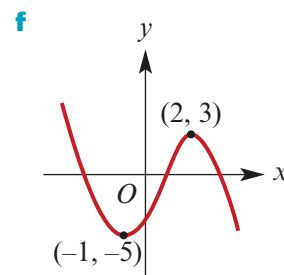
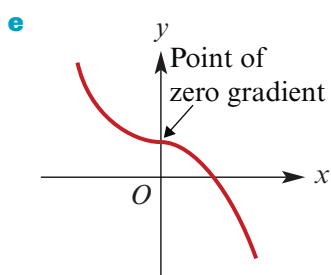
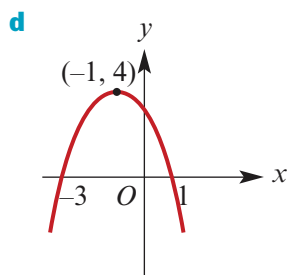
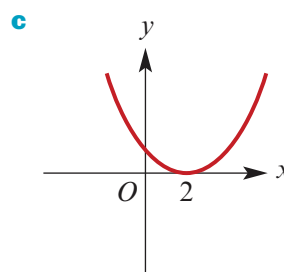
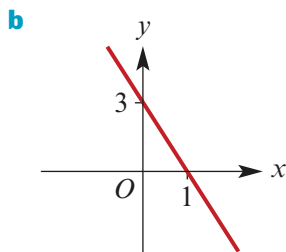
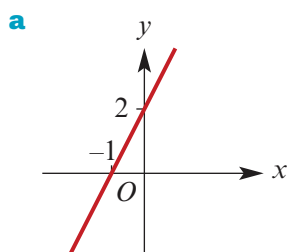


Note: If a function is differentiable at $x = a$, then it is also continuous at $x = a$. However, the converse is not true. For example, the function f from Example 20 is continuous at $x = 0$, but not differentiable at $x = 0$.

Exercise 3D

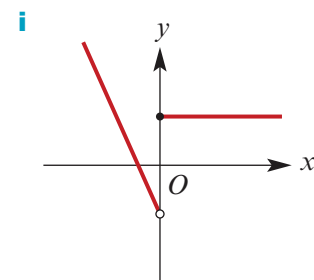
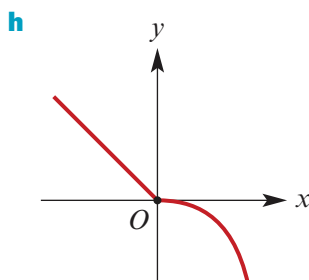
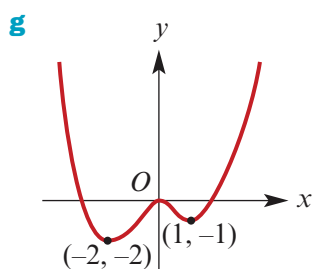
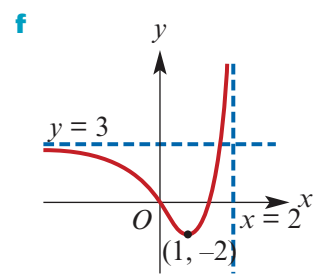
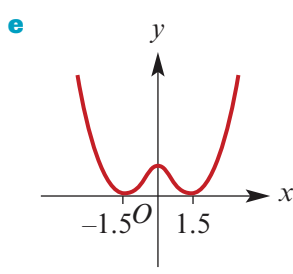
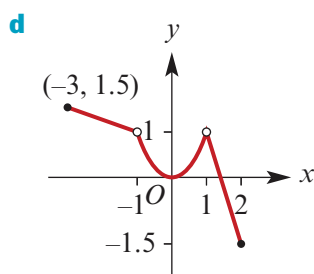
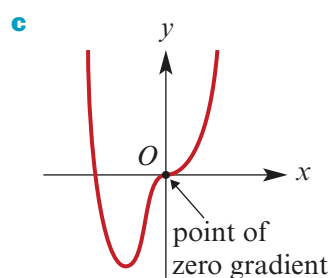
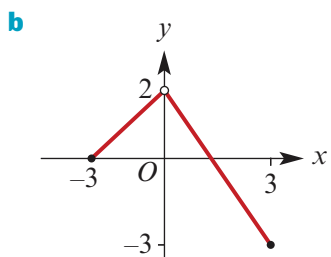
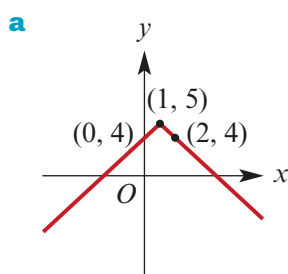
Example 19

- 1 Sketch the graph of the derivative function for each of the following functions.

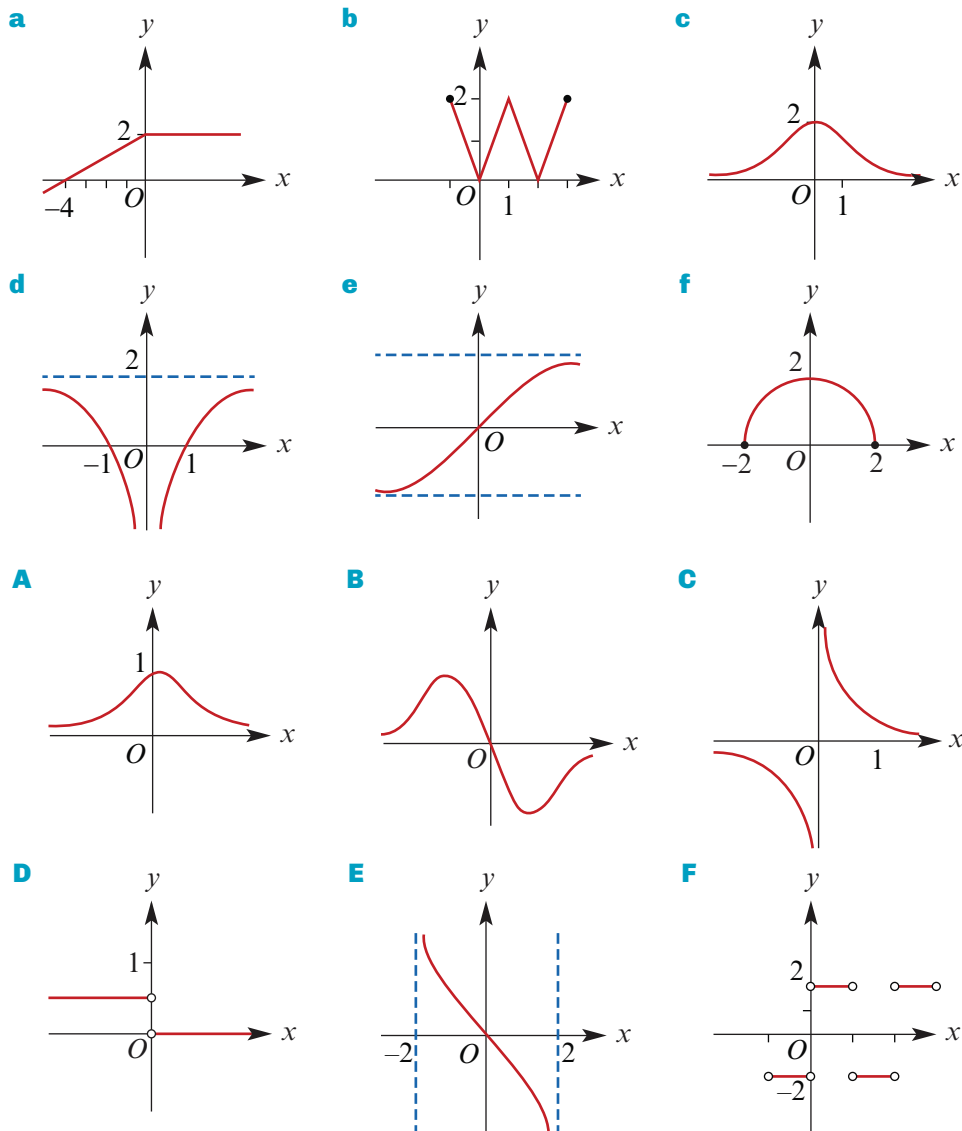


Example 20

- 2 Sketch the graph of the derivative function for each of the following functions. (In this question we assume that the derivative is not defined at the endpoints in parts **b** and **d**.)



- 3** Match the graphs of the functions **a–f** with the graphs of their derivatives **A–F**.
(In part **b** assume that the derivative is not defined at the endpoints.)



- 4** **a** Use a calculator to plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = (x^2 - 2x)^2$.
b Using the same screen, plot the graph of $y = f'(x)$. (Do not attempt to determine the rule for $f'(x)$ first.)
c Use a calculator to determine $f'(x)$ for:
i $x = 0$ **ii** $x = 2$ **iii** $x = 1$ **iv** $x = 4$
d For $0 \leq x \leq 1$, determine the value of x for which:
i $f(x)$ is a maximum **ii** $f'(x)$ is a maximum.
- 5** For each of the following functions, plot the graphs of the function and its derivative on the same screen.

a $f(x) = \frac{x^3}{3} - x^2 + x + 1$

b $g(x) = x^3 + 2x + 1$

3E The chain rule

Learning intentions

- To be able to use the chain rule for differentiation.

An expression such as $q(x) = (x^3 + 1)^2$ may be differentiated by expanding and then differentiating each term separately. This method is a great deal more tiresome for an expression such as $q(x) = (x^3 + 1)^{30}$. We can express $q(x) = (x^3 + 1)^2$ as the composition of two simpler functions defined by

$$u = g(x) = x^3 + 1 \quad \text{and} \quad y = f(u) = u^2$$

which are ‘chained’ together:

$$x \xrightarrow{g} u \xrightarrow{f} y$$

That is, $q(x) = (x^3 + 1)^2 = f(g(x))$.

The chain rule gives a method of differentiating such functions.

The chain rule

If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then the composite function $q(x) = f(g(x))$ is differentiable at x and

$$q'(x) = f'(g(x)) g'(x)$$

Or using Leibniz notation, where $u = g(x)$ and $y = f(u)$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

Proof To determine the derivative of the composite function $q(x) = f(g(x))$ at $x = a$, consider the secant through the points $(a, f(g(a)))$ and $(a + h, f(g(a + h)))$. The gradient of this secant is

$$\frac{f(g(a + h)) - f(g(a))}{h}$$

We carry out the trick of multiplying the numerator and the denominator by $g(a + h) - g(a)$. This gives

$$\frac{f(g(a + h)) - f(g(a))}{h} \times \frac{g(a + h) - g(a)}{g(a + h) - g(a)}$$

provided $g(a + h) - g(a) \neq 0$. Now write $b = g(a)$ and $b + k = g(a + h)$ so that $k = g(a + h) - g(a)$. The expression for the gradient becomes

$$\frac{f(b + k) - f(b)}{k} \times \frac{g(a + h) - g(a)}{h}$$

The function g is continuous, since its derivative exists, and therefore

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} k = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} [g(a + h) - g(a)] = 0$$

Thus, as h approaches 0, so does k . Hence $q'(a) = f'(g(a)) g'(a)$.

Note that this proof does not hold for a function g such that $g(a+h) - g(a) = 0$ for arbitrarily chosen small h . However, a fully rigorous proof is beyond the scope of this course.

**Example 21**

Differentiate $y = (4x^3 - 5x)^{-2}$.

Solution

The differentiation is undertaken using both notations:

$$\text{Let } u = 4x^3 - 5x$$

$$\text{Then } y = u^{-2}$$

We have

$$\frac{dy}{du} = -2u^{-3}$$

$$\frac{du}{dx} = 12x^2 - 5$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= -2u^{-3} \cdot (12x^2 - 5) \\ &= \frac{-2(12x^2 - 5)}{(4x^3 - 5x)^3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Let } h(x) = 4x^3 - 5x$$

$$\text{and } g(x) = x^{-2}$$

$$\text{Then } f(x) = g(h(x))$$

We have

$$h'(x) = 12x^2 - 5$$

$$g'(x) = -2x^{-3}$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= g'(h(x)) h'(x) \\ &= -2(h(x))^{-3} h'(x) \\ &= -2(4x^3 - 5x)^{-3} \times (12x^2 - 5) \\ &= \frac{-2(12x^2 - 5)}{(4x^3 - 5x)^3} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 22**

Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = \frac{16}{3x^2 + 1}$ at the point $(1, 4)$.

Solution

$$\text{Let } u = 3x^2 + 1 \quad \text{then} \quad y = 16u^{-1}$$

$$\text{So } \frac{du}{dx} = 6x \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{dy}{du} = -16u^{-2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= -16u^{-2} \cdot 6x \\ &= \frac{-96x}{(3x^2 + 1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{At } x = 1, \text{ the gradient is } \frac{-96}{16} = -6.$$

Summary 3E**The chain rule**

If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then the composite function $q(x) = f(g(x))$ is differentiable at x and

$$q'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)$$

Or using Leibniz notation, where $u = g(x)$ and $y = f(u)$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

Exercise 3E**Example 21**

1 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $(x^2 + 1)^4$

b $(2x^2 - 3)^5$

c $(6x + 1)^4$

d $(ax + b)^n$

e $(ax^2 + b)^n$

f $(1 - x^2)^{-3}$

g $\left(x^2 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right)^{-3}$

h $(1 - x)^{-1}$

2 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $(x^2 + 2x + 1)^3$

b $(x^3 + 2x^2 + x)^4$

c $\left(6x^3 + \frac{2}{x}\right)^4$

d $(x^2 + 2x + 1)^{-2}$

Example 22

3 Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = \frac{16}{3x^3 + x}$ at the point $(1, 4)$.

4 Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = \frac{1}{x^2 + 1}$ at the points $(1, \frac{1}{2})$ and $(-1, \frac{1}{2})$.

5 Given that $f'(x) = \sqrt{3x + 4}$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 1$, determine $F'(x)$ where $F(x) = f(g(x))$.

6 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x , giving the answer in terms of $f(x)$ and $f'(x)$.

a $[f(x)]^n$, where n is a positive integer

b $\frac{1}{f(x)}$, where $f(x) \neq 0$

3F Differentiating rational powers

Learning intentions

- To be able to differentiate rational powers.

Before using the chain rule to differentiate rational powers, we will show how to differentiate $x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ by first principles.



Example 23

Differentiate each of the following by first principles.

a $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{2}}, x > 0$

b $g(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}, x \neq 0$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} &= \frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{x+h} - \sqrt{x}}{h} \times \frac{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} \\ &= \frac{x+h-x}{h(\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x})} \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\sqrt{x+h} + \sqrt{x}} = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$$

b We use the identity

$$a^3 - b^3 = (a-b)(a^2 + ab + b^2)$$

By observing that $(a^{\frac{1}{3}})^3 = a$ and $(b^{\frac{1}{3}})^3 = b$, we obtain

$$a-b = \left(a^{\frac{1}{3}} - b^{\frac{1}{3}}\right)\left(a^{\frac{2}{3}} + a^{\frac{1}{3}}b^{\frac{1}{3}} + b^{\frac{2}{3}}\right)$$

$$\text{and therefore } a^{\frac{1}{3}} - b^{\frac{1}{3}} = \frac{a-b}{a^{\frac{2}{3}} + a^{\frac{1}{3}}b^{\frac{1}{3}} + b^{\frac{2}{3}}}$$

We now have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} &= \frac{(x+h)^{\frac{1}{3}} - x^{\frac{1}{3}}}{h} \\ &= \frac{x+h-x}{h\left((x+h)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (x+h)^{\frac{1}{3}}x^{\frac{1}{3}} + x^{\frac{2}{3}}\right)} \\ &= \frac{1}{(x+h)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (x+h)^{\frac{1}{3}}x^{\frac{1}{3}} + x^{\frac{2}{3}}} \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$g'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{g(x+h) - g(x)}{h} = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{(x+h)^{\frac{2}{3}} + (x+h)^{\frac{1}{3}}x^{\frac{1}{3}} + x^{\frac{2}{3}}} = \frac{1}{3x^{\frac{2}{3}}}$$

Note: We can prove that $a^n - b^n = (a - b)(a^{n-1} + a^{n-2}b + a^{n-3}b^2 + \cdots + ab^{n-2} + b^{n-1})$ for $n \geq 2$. We could use this result to determine the derivative of $x^{\frac{1}{n}}$ by first principles, but instead we will use the chain rule.

Using the chain rule

Suppose that two variables x and y are related in such a way that $y = f(x)$ and $x = g(y)$. Then $y = f(g(y))$ and using the chain rule gives

$$1 = \frac{dy}{dy} = \frac{dy}{dx} \cdot \frac{dx}{dy}$$

Thus
$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\frac{dx}{dy}} \quad \text{for } \frac{dx}{dy} \neq 0$$

Now consider $y = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ and $x > 0$.

We have $x = y^n$ and so $\frac{dx}{dy} = ny^{n-1}$. Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{\frac{dx}{dy}} = \frac{1}{ny^{n-1}} = \frac{1}{n\left(x^{\frac{1}{n}}\right)^{n-1}} = \frac{1}{n}x^{\frac{1}{n}-1}$$

For $y = x^{\frac{1}{n}}$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{n}x^{\frac{1}{n}-1}$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$ and $x > 0$.

This result may now be extended to rational powers.

Let $y = x^{\frac{p}{q}}$, where $p, q \in \mathbb{Z} \setminus \{0\}$.

Write $y = \left(x^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)^p$. Let $u = x^{\frac{1}{q}}$. Then $y = u^p$. The chain rule yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= pu^{p-1} \cdot \frac{1}{q}x^{\frac{1}{q}-1} \\ &= p\left(x^{\frac{1}{q}}\right)^{p-1} \cdot \frac{1}{q}x^{\frac{1}{q}-1} \\ &= \frac{p}{q}x^{\frac{p}{q}-\frac{1}{q}}x^{\frac{1}{q}-1} \\ &= \frac{p}{q}x^{\frac{p}{q}-1} \end{aligned}$$

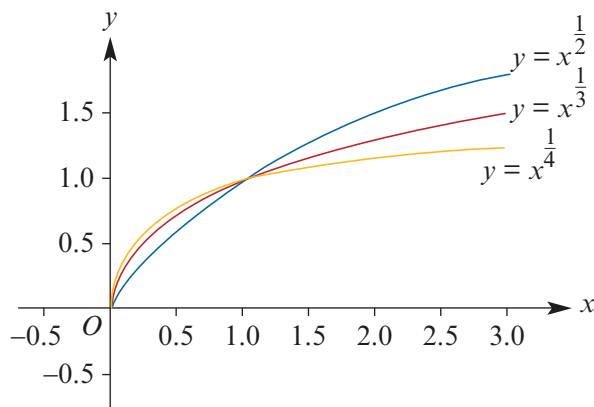
Thus the result for integer powers has been extended to rational powers. In fact, the analogous result holds for any non-zero real power:

For $f(x) = x^a$, $f'(x) = ax^{a-1}$, where $a \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ and $x > 0$.

This result is stated for $x > 0$, as $(-3)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ is not defined, although $(-2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ is defined.

The graphs of $y = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$, $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ and $y = x^{\frac{1}{4}}$ are shown.

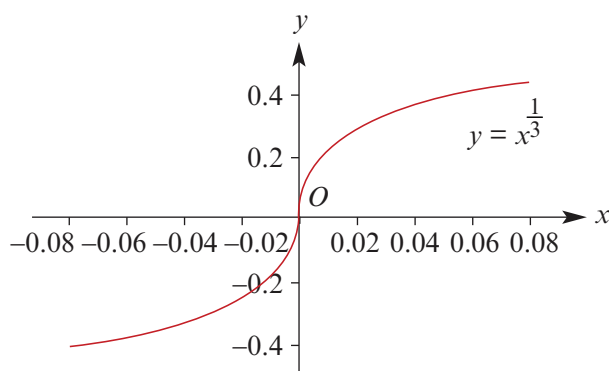
The domain of each has been taken to be $\mathbb{R}^+$.



The figure to the right is the graph of the function $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

Note that the values shown here are $-0.08 \leq x \leq 0.08$.

From this it can be seen that the tangent to $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ at the origin is on the y-axis.



Example 24

Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $2x^{-\frac{1}{5}} + 3x^{\frac{2}{7}}$

b $\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x}$

Solution

a $\frac{d}{dx}(2x^{-\frac{1}{5}} + 3x^{\frac{2}{7}})$

$$= 2\left(\frac{-1}{5}x^{-\frac{6}{5}}\right) + 3\left(\frac{2}{7}x^{-\frac{5}{7}}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{2}{5}x^{-\frac{6}{5}} + \frac{6}{7}x^{-\frac{5}{7}}$$

b $\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x})$

$$= \frac{d}{dx}((x^2 + 2x)^{\frac{1}{3}})$$

$$= \frac{1}{3}(x^2 + 2x)^{-\frac{2}{3}}(2x + 2) \quad (\text{chain rule})$$

$$= \frac{2x + 2}{3\sqrt[3]{(x^2 + 2x)^2}}$$

Summary 3F

For any non-zero rational number $r = \frac{p}{q}$, if $f(x) = x^r$, then $f'(x) = rx^{r-1}$.

Exercise 3F

Example 23

- 1 Differentiate $2x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ by first principles.

Example 24a

- 2 Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $x^{\frac{1}{5}}$

b $x^{\frac{5}{2}}$

c $x^{\frac{5}{2}} - x^{\frac{3}{2}}, x > 0$

d $3x^{\frac{1}{2}} - 4x^{\frac{5}{3}}$

e $x^{-\frac{6}{7}}$

f $x^{-\frac{1}{4}} + 4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$

- 3 Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve for each of the following at the stated value for x .

a $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ where $x = 27$

b $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ where $x = -8$

c $f(x) = x^{\frac{2}{3}}$ where $x = 27$

d $f(x) = x^{\frac{5}{4}}$ where $x = 16$

Example 24b

- 4 Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $\sqrt{2x+1}$

b $\sqrt{4-3x}$

c $\sqrt{x^2+2}$

d $\sqrt[3]{4-3x}$

e $\frac{x^2+2}{\sqrt{x}}$

f $3\sqrt{x}(x^2+2x)$

- 5 a Show that $\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}) = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 \pm a^2}}$.

b Show that $\frac{d}{dx}(\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}) = \frac{-x}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}}$.

- 6 If $y = (x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1})^2$, show that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2y}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}$.

- 7 Determine the derivative with respect to x of each of the following.

a $\sqrt{x^2+2}$

b $\sqrt[3]{x^2-5x}$

c $\sqrt[5]{x^2+2x}$

Chapter summary

The derivative

- The notation for the limit as h approaches 0 is $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0}$.

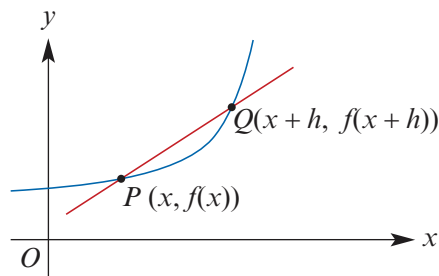
- For the graph of $y = f(x)$:

- The gradient of the secant PQ is given by

$$\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

- The gradient of the tangent to the graph at the point P is given by

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$



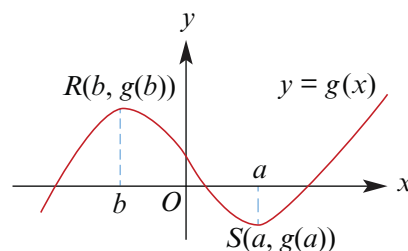
- The **derivative** of the function f is denoted f' and is defined by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

- At a point $(a, g(a))$ on the curve $y = g(x)$, the gradient is $g'(a)$.

For the graph shown:

- $g'(x) > 0$ for $x < b$ and for $x > a$
- $g'(x) < 0$ for $b < x < a$
- $g'(x) = 0$ for $x = b$ and for $x = a$.



Basic derivatives

- For $f(x) = x^n$, $f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$, where n is a non-zero integer.
- For $f(x) = c$, $f'(x) = 0$, where c is a constant.

Rules for differentiation

- If $f(x) = k g(x)$, where k is a constant, then $f'(x) = k g'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of a number multiple is the multiple of the derivative.
- If $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$, then $f'(x) = g'(x) + h'(x)$.
That is, the derivative of the sum is the sum of the derivatives.

Chain rule

- If $h(x) = f(g(x))$, then $h'(x) = f'(g(x)) g'(x)$
- $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



3A

1 I can calculate the average rate of change of a function over an interval. ☐

See Example 1 and Question 1

3A

2 I can calculate the gradient of a tangent at a given point by first principles. ☐

See Example 2 and Question 3

3A

3 I can evaluate limits. ☐

See Example 3 and Question 4

3A

4 I can differentiate by first principles. ☐

See Example 4 and Question 8

3B

5 I can differentiate polynomials using the rules for differentiation. ☐

See Example 5, Example 6 and Questions 1 and 2

3B

6 I can determine the gradient of the tangent at a point by differentiating. ☐

See Example 7 and Question 3

3B

7 I can use Liebniz notation for differentiation. ☐

See Example 8, Example 9 and Questions 4 and 5

3B

8 I can use operator notation for differentiation. ☐

See Example 10 and Question 6

3B

9 I can determine the coordinates of points on a polynomial curve with a given gradient. ☐

See Example 11 and Question 7

3B

10 I can determine the angle that the tangent to a curve makes with the x-axis. ☐

See Example 12 and Question 8

3B

11 I can determine the intervals for which the gradient is positive or negative. ☐

See Example 13 and Question 14

3C

12 I can determine derivatives of expressions which involve terms of the form x^n where n is a negative integer. ☐

See Example 14, Example 15, Example 16, Example 17, Example 18 and Questions 2, 4, 6 and 7

3D **13** I can determine sketch the derivative graph of a given function. □

See Example 19, Example 20 and Questions 1 and 2

3E **14** I can use the chain rule for differentiating. □

See Example 21, Example 22 and Questions 1 and 3

3E **15** I can differentiate rational powers. □

See Example 23, Example 24 and Questions 1, 2 and 4

Short - response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

1 Points P and Q lie on the curve $y = x^3$. The x -coordinates of P and Q are 2 and $2 + h$ respectively.

a Determine the gradient of the secant PQ .

b Hence determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = x^3$ at the point P .

2 For $y = x^2 + 1$:

a determine the average rate of change of y with respect to x over the interval $[3, 5]$

b determine the instantaneous rate of change of y with respect to x when $x = -4$.

3 Determine the derivative of each of the following functions.

a $f(x) = 5 - 3x$ **b** $f(x) = 4x^2 - 2x + 11$ **c** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x(x + 3)$

d $f(x) = \frac{5}{x^2} - \frac{3}{x} + x^2$ **e** $f(x) = \frac{x^3 + 4}{x}$ **f** $f(x) = \frac{(x^2 - 1)(x^2 - 5)}{x^4}$

4 Let $f(x) = 2x^2 - 3x + 5$. Determine:

a $f'(x)$ **b** $f'(0)$ **c** the value of x such that $f'(x) = 1$

5 Let $f(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 1$. Determine the values of x for which:

a $f'(x) = 0$ **b** $f'(x) > 0$ **c** $f'(x) < 0$

6 Let $y = 1 - x^2$. Prove that $x \frac{dy}{dx} + 2 = 2y$ for all values of x .

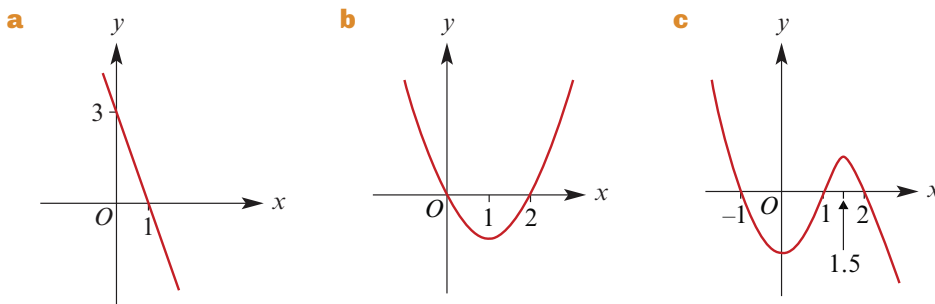
7 Let $A = 4\pi r^2$. Calculate the value of $\frac{dA}{dr}$ when $r = 3$.

8 At what point on the graph of $y = 1.8x^2$ is the gradient equal to 1?

9 If $y = 3x^2 - 4x + 7$, determine the value of x such that $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$.

10 Let $y = x^4$. Prove that $x \frac{dy}{dx} = 4y$.

- 11** Sketch the graph of the derivative function for each of the following functions.



- 12** Let $f(x) = 3 + 6x^2 - 2x^3$. Determine the values of x for which the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a positive gradient.
- 13** For what value(s) of x do the graphs of $y = x^3$ and $y = x^3 + x^2 + x - 2$ have the same gradient?
- 14** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- | | | | |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| a $x + \sqrt{1 - x^2}$ | b $\sqrt{1 + 3x}$ | c $\frac{2 + \sqrt{x}}{x}$ | d $\sqrt{1 + x^2}$ |
| e $(2 + 5x^2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ | f $(3x^2 + 2)^{\frac{2}{3}}$ | g $4(3 - 2x^2)^3$ | h $\frac{1}{(2x^2 - 1)^3}$ |
- 15** For each of the following functions, determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point corresponding to the given x -value.
- a** $y = 3x^2 - 4$ at $x = -1$ **b** $y = (x - 2)^5$ at $x = 1$ **c** $y = (2x + 2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ at $x = 3$
- 16** The graph of $y = bx^2 - cx$ crosses the x -axis at the point $(4, 0)$. The gradient at this point is 1. Determine the values of b and c .

Technology-active short-response questions

- 17** Using your calculator calculate the value of the derivative of the function f at the given value of x . Give the value correct to two decimal places where appropriate.
- | | |
|--|---|
| a $f(x) = x^3 + 2x^2 + 4, x = -3$ | b $f(x) = (x^2 + 3x)^{\frac{1}{3}}, x = 4$ |
| c $f(x) = \sqrt{x^3 + 2x^2}, x = 1$ | d $f(x) = x^2 + x^{\frac{1}{2}} + 6x^{\frac{1}{3}}, x = 2$ |
- 18** Let $f(x) = 2x^3 + 4x + 1$. Determine the coordinates of the points on the graph of $y = f(x)$ for which
- a** $f'(x) = 7$. Give values correct to two decimal places.
- b** $f'(x) = 4$
- 19** Let $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx$. If $f(2) = 6$, $f'(2) = -6$ and $f(6) = 18$ determine the values of a , b and c .
- 20** Let $f(x) = a\sqrt{x^2 - h} + k$. If $f(2) = 6$, $f'(2) = 6$ and $f(6) = 18$ determine the values of a , h and k .

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

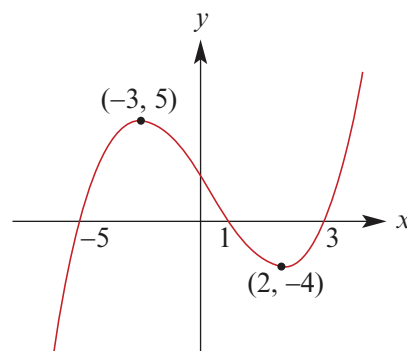
- 1 If $f(x) = \frac{4x^4 - 12x^2}{3x}$, then $f'(x)$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{16x^3 - 24x}{3}$ **B** $4x^2 - 4$ **C** $\frac{16x^3 - 24x}{3x}$ **D** $4x^2 - 8x$

- 2 Let $f(x) = x^5 + x^3 + x$. The value of $f'(1)$ is
- A** 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 9

- 3 If $f(x) = \frac{3}{x}$, then $\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{-3}{x(x+h)}$ **B** $\frac{3}{x^2}$ **C** $\frac{-3}{x^2}$ **D** $\frac{-3}{h(x+h)}$

- 4 For the graph shown, the gradient is positive for

- A** $-3 < x < 2$
B $-3 \leq x \leq 2$
C $x < -3$ or $x > 2$
D $x \leq -3$ or $x \geq 2$



- 5 If $f(x) = 4x(2 - 3x)$, then $f'(x) < 0$ for
- A** $x < \frac{1}{3}$ **B** $0 < x < \frac{2}{3}$ **C** $x = \frac{1}{3}$ **D** $x > \frac{1}{3}$
- 6 The point on the curve defined by the equation $y = (x + 3)(x - 2)$ at which the gradient is -7 has coordinates
- A** $(-4, 6)$ **B** $(-4, 0)$ **C** $(-3, 0)$ **D** $(-3, -5)$
- 7 If $\frac{f(3+h) - f(3)}{h} = h^2 + 9h + 27$, then $f'(3)$ equals
- A** 3 **B** 9 **C** 18 **D** 27
- 8 The function $y = ax^2 - bx$ has zero gradient only for $x = 2$. The x -axis intercepts of the graph of this function are
- A** $\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}$ **B** 0, 4 **C** 0, -4 **D** 0, $\frac{1}{2}$
- 9 For the function $f(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 9x + 7$, $f'(x) > 0$ only when
- A** $x > 0$ **B** $-3 < x < 1$ **C** $x < -1$ or $x > 3$ **D** $x < -3$ or $x > 1$

- 10** Let $f(x) = 5 + \frac{5}{(7-x)^2}$ for $x \neq 7$. Then $f'(x) > 0$ for
A $x \neq 7$ **B** $x \in \mathbb{R}$ **C** $x < 7$ **D** $x > 7$
- 11** Let $y = f(g(x))$ where $g(x) = 2x^4$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is equal to
A $8x^3 f'(2x^4)$ **B** $8x^2 f(4x^3)$
C $8x^4 f(x) f'(x^3)$ **D** $2f(x) f'(x^3)$
- 12** Which of the following is *not true* for the curve of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$?
A The gradient is defined for all real numbers.
B The curve passes through the origin.
C The curve passes through the points with coordinates $(1, 1)$ and $(-1, -1)$.
D For $x > 0$, the gradient is positive.
- 13** The graph of the function $y = \frac{k}{2(x^3 + 1)}$ has gradient 1 when $x = 1$. The value of k is
A 1 **B** $-\frac{8}{3}$ **C** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **D** -4
- 14** If $y = \sqrt{3 - 2f(x)}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is equal to
A $\frac{-1}{2\sqrt{3 - 2f(x)}}$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}\sqrt{3 - 2f'(x)}$
C $\frac{3}{2(3 - 2f'(x))}$ **D** $\frac{-f'(x)}{\sqrt{3 - 2f(x)}}$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 15** The coordinates of the point on the graph of $y = x^2 + 6x + 8$ at which the tangent is parallel to the line $y = 10x$ are
A $(-1, 3)$ **B** $(1, 15)$ **C** $(2, 24)$ **D** $(2, 20)$
- 16** If $y = 2x^6 - 36x^4$, the values of x at which the tangent to the curve is parallel to the x -axis are
A 0 and $2\sqrt{3}$ **B** $-2\sqrt{3}$ and $2\sqrt{3}$ **C** 0 and $-2\sqrt{3}$ **D** $-2\sqrt{3}$, 0 and $2\sqrt{3}$
- 17** The gradient of the tangent of the curve $y = 4x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x$ at the point where $x = 1.5$ is
A 33.5 **B** 155 **C** 25 **D** 35
- 18** The values of x for which the corresponding points on the graph of $y = 2x^3 - 1.25x^2 - 3x$ have tangent lines perpendicular to the line $y = -2x$ are
A $x = -\frac{2}{3}$ or $x = 1$ **B** $x = -\frac{7}{12}$ or $x = 1$
C $x = 0.58$ or $x = 1$ **D** $x = -\frac{1}{6}$ or $x = \frac{1}{4}$

- 19** The angle that the tangent line to the graph of the function with rule $f(x) = 2x^3 - x^2 - 4$, at the point with coordinates $(1, -3)$ makes with the positive direction of the x -axis, is closest to
A 72.57° **B** 108.43° **C** 75.96° **D** 104.04°
- 20** The tangent to the graph of $y = ax^3 + 4$ where $x = \frac{1}{3}$, makes an angle of 45° with the x -axis. The value of a is
A 1 **B** $\frac{1}{3}$ **C** $\frac{1}{9}$ **D** 3
- 21** The gradient of the curve $y = \frac{a}{x} + bx^2$ at the point $(1, 5)$ is -3 . The values of a and b are
A $a = 4, b = 1$ **B** $a = \frac{13}{3}, b = \frac{2}{3}$ **C** $a = \frac{10}{3}, b = \frac{1}{3}$ **D** $a = 3, b = 1$
- 22** The gradient of the curve $f(x) = a(2x + b)^2$ at the point $(1, 25)$ is 8. The values of a and b are
A $a = 4, b = 1$ **B** $a = 4, b = 6.5$ **C** $a = 1, b = 0.25$ **D** $a = 0.16, b = 10.5$
- 23** Let $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + 41$. If $f(1) = 40$, $f'(1) = 2$ and $f'(2) = 3$, then $a^2 + b^2 + c^2$ is equal to
A 41 **B** 50 **C** 51 **D** 42

4

Revision of preliminary topics

4A Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

Chapter 1: Refresher on functions and relations

- 1 State the maximal domain and range of each of the following.

a $f(x) = \frac{1}{x} + 2$

b $f(x) = 3 - 2\sqrt{3x - 2}$

c $f(x) = \frac{4}{(x - 2)^2} + 3$

d $h(x) = 4 - \frac{3}{x - 2}$

e $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 2} - 5$

- 2 If a graph has rule $y = \frac{a}{x^2} + b$ and passes through the points $(1, -1)$ and $(-2, \frac{1}{2})$, determine the values of a and b .

- 3 Let $f(x) = 2 - x$ and $g(x) = \sqrt{2x - 3}$.

- a** Determine:

i $f(-2)$

ii $g(4)$

iii $f(2a)$

iv $g(a - 1)$

- b** Determine the values of x for which:

i $f(x) = 10$

ii $g(x) = 10$

iii $f(2x) > 0$

- 4 State the implied domain for the function with rule $g(x) = \sqrt{1 - 5x}$.

- 5 Suppose that functions f , g and h satisfy $g(x) = \frac{1}{2}f(x + 4)$ and $h(x) = 2g(5x - 11) + 3$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. Write a rule for the function h in terms of the function f .

- 6 Consider the function defined by $f(x) = 2x^2 - 12x + 7$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

- a** Express $f(x)$ in the form $a(x - h)^2 + k$, where a , h and k are integers.

- b** Determine the minimum value of $f(x)$.

- c** Write down the range of the function f .

This Chapter includes questions based on Chapters 1, 2 and 3 and Appendices B and C.

7 Let $g(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$ for $-1 \leq x \leq 1$. Calculate:

a $g(1)$ **b** $g(0)$ **c** $g\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ **d** $g\left(\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ **e** $g\left(\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$

8 Let $f(x) = x^2 + 3x - 4$ and $g(x) = 2x - 3$. Solve the equation $f(x) = g(x)$ for x .

9 Let $f(x) = (x-1)^2$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 4$. State the range of f .

Appendix B: Coordinate geometry and transformations

10 Two points A and B have coordinates $(a, -2)$ and $(3, 1)$.

a Determine the value(s) of a if:

- i** the midpoint of AB is $(0, -\frac{1}{2})$
- ii** the length of AB is $\sqrt{13}$
- iii** the gradient of AB is $\frac{1}{2}$.

b Determine the equation of the line passing through A and B if $a = -2$, and find the angle the line makes with the positive direction of the x -axis.

11 Let $f(x) = 4x - 3$ and $g(x) = x^2 + 2x$.

a Find:

i $f(g(x))$ **ii** $g(f(x))$

b Find a transformation that takes the graph of $y = g(x)$ to the graph of $y = g(f(x))$.

c Find a transformation that takes the graph of $y = x^2$ to the graph of $y = g(x)$.

Chapter 2: Refresher on polynomial functions

12 Determine the value(s) of m for which the equation $x^2 + mx + 2 = 0$ has:

- a** one solution **b** two solutions **c** no solution.

13 Solve each of the following inequalities for x .

a $(x-3)(x+2)(2x-1) \geq 0$ **b** $-x^3 + 4x^2 - 4x > 0$

14 Factorise $x^3 - \frac{y^3}{27}$.

15 The equation $x^2 + 2(1-p)x + p^2 + 5 = 0$ is satisfied by only one value of x . Determine the value of p and the corresponding value of x .

Appendix C: Trigonometric functions

16 Solve the equation $\sin\left(\frac{3x}{2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$ for $-\pi \leq x \leq \pi$.

17 a State the range and period of the function $h(x) = 5 - 3\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{3}\right)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

b Solve the equation $\cos\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$ for $x \in [0, \pi]$.

18 Solve $\cos\left(x - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

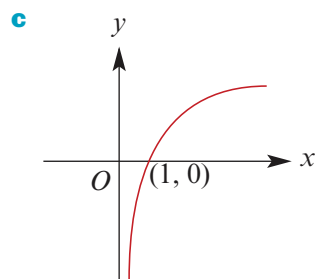
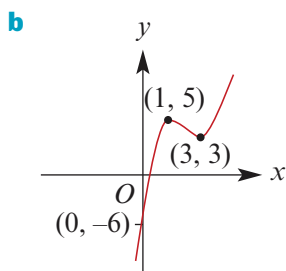
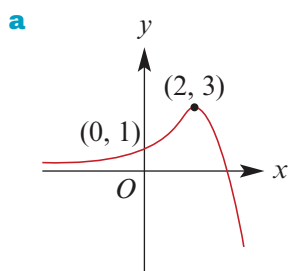
- 19** Define $f(x) = 8 \sin(5x)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$.
- State the period of f .
 - State the amplitude of f .
 - Describe a sequence of transformations that maps:
 - the graph of $y = \sin x$ to the graph of $y = f(x)$
 - the graph of $y = \cos x$ to the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 20** Given that $\sin A = \frac{1}{3}$, where A is an acute angle, determine the exact value of:
- $\cos A$
 - $\tan A$
- 21** Determine all values of x between 0° and 360° that satisfy $\cos(3x) = \frac{1}{2}$.
- 22** Solve the equation $1 - 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{6}\right) = 0$ for $-12 \leq x \leq 12$.
- 23** Let $f(t) = 4 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right) + 2$ for $t \geq 0$.
- State the period and amplitude of f .
 - State the maximum and minimum values of f .
 - Solve the equation $f(t) = 2$ for $0 \leq t \leq 12$.
 - Sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 12$.

Chapter 3: Refresher on differentiation

- 24** Determine the derivative of each of the following.
- $4x^3 - 2x + 1$
 - $(x - 3)(x + 4)$
 - $\frac{x^3 + 6x}{x}$
- 25** Determine the gradient of the tangent to each of the following curves at the given point.
- $y = 2x^4 + 3x$, $(1, 5)$
 - $y = 3x(1 - 2x)$, $(-2, -30)$
- 26** For the function $f(x) = 4x - 2x^2$, determine the values of x for which:
- $f(x) = 0$
 - $f'(x) = 0$
 - $f'(x) > 0$
 - $f'(x) < 0$
 - $f'(x) = -10$
- 27** Determine the equations of the tangent and the normal to the curve $y = x^2 - 6x$ at $x = 1$.
- 28** Determine:
- $\frac{d}{dx}(2x^{-4} - x^{-2})$
 - $\frac{d}{dz}\left(\frac{4 - 2z}{z^2}\right)$
- 29** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .
- $4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$
 - $\sqrt[4]{x}$
 - $-\frac{2}{x^{\frac{7}{3}}}$
 - $4x^{\frac{3}{2}}$
 - $x^{-\frac{1}{4}}$
 - $x^{-\frac{2}{5}} - 2x^{\frac{5}{2}}$
- 30** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- $(2x + 7)^2$
 - $-(3x + 2)^4$
 - $2(x^3 + 4x)^3$
 - $(5 - 2x^2)^{-\frac{1}{3}}$
 - $\frac{4}{6 + 5x}$
 - $\frac{1}{(x - 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$
 - $\frac{5}{\sqrt{2 + 7x^2}}$
 - $\left(4x^3 - \frac{6}{x}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

31 Let $y = (3x^2 - 4x)^4$. Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

32 Sketch the graph of the derivative function for each of the following functions.



33 Determine the derivative of $\left(4x + \frac{9}{x}\right)^2$ and determine the values of x at which the derivative is zero.

Technology-active short-response questions

Chapter 1: Refresher on functions and relations

34 Let $f(x) = \sqrt{2x - 1}$. Use your calculator to evaluate each of the following correct to three decimal places.

a $f(3)$

b $f(1.67)$

c $f(3.54)$

d $f(56.3)$

35 Let $f(x) = \sqrt[3]{x^2 + 6}$. Use your calculator to evaluate each of the following correct to three decimal places.

a $f(4)$

b $f(2.58)$

c $f(14.6)$

d $f(1.35)$

36 State the implied domain of the function $f(x) = \sqrt{(x - 2)(x + 4)}$.

37 Let $g(x) = x^3 + 2$. The equation $g(x) = 0$ has one solution. Solve the equation, giving your answer correct to three decimal places.

38 Use your calculator to help sketch the graphs of each of the following.

a $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 - 4 & x \leq 2 \\ 3x - 4 & x > 2 \end{cases}$

b $f(x) = \begin{cases} \sqrt{4 - x} & x \leq 4 \\ (x - 4)^2 & x > 4 \end{cases}$

c $f(x) = \begin{cases} x^3 + 2 & x \leq 0 \\ x^2 + 2 & 0 < x \leq 3 \\ 2x + 5 & x > 3 \end{cases}$

d $f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 & -3 \leq x < 0 \\ 2^x & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 3x - 2 & x > 2 \end{cases}$

Appendix B: Coordinate geometry and transformations

- 39** Consider the three points $A(-3, 5)$, $B(1, -2)$ and $C(5, \lambda)$.
- Let M be the midpoint of BC . Determine the coordinates of M in terms of λ .
 - Determine the values of λ for which AM is perpendicular to BC .
- 40** The line $y = 2x - 3$ is parallel to the line $y = ax + 7$ and perpendicular to the line $y = bx + 7$.
- State the values of a and b .
 - Determine the perpendicular distance between the two parallel lines.
- 41** The line with equation $y = x + 5$ is the perpendicular bisector of the line segment joining the points $P(3, 10)$ and $Q(\alpha, \beta)$.
- Determine the coordinates of the midpoint of PQ in terms of α and β .
 - Determine the values of α and β .
- 42** Two taxi services use the following different systems for charging for a journey.
- Speedy Taxi** Initial charge of \$12, plus a charge of 35 cents for each 200 m travelled
- Thrifty Taxi** Flat fee of \$30 for travelling up to 24 km, plus a charge of \$1.50 for each kilometre travelled beyond 24 km
- Let $S(d)$ be the cost (in dollars) of a journey of d km in a Speedy Taxi. Show that

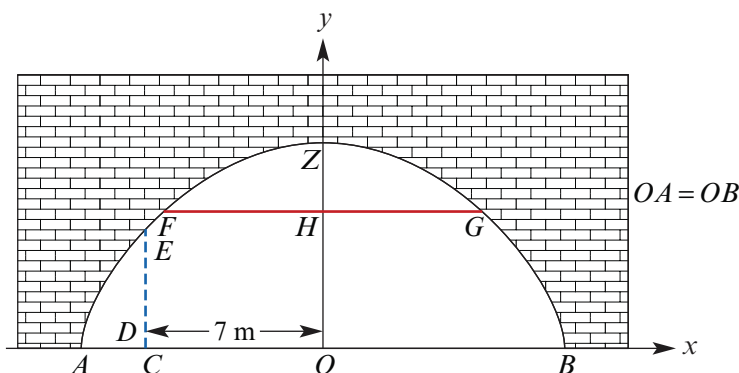
$$S(d) = 1.75d + 12 \quad \text{for } d \geq 0$$
 - Let $T(d)$ be the cost (in dollars) of a journey of d km in a Thrifty Taxi. Show that

$$T(d) = \begin{cases} 30 & \text{for } 0 \leq d \leq 24 \\ 1.5d - 6 & \text{for } d > 24 \end{cases}$$
 - On the same coordinate axes, sketch graphs to represent $S(d)$ and $T(d)$.
 - Determine the cost of a journey of:
 - 17 km in a Speedy Taxi
 - 15 km in a Thrifty Taxi
 - Karen wants to travel a distance of 45 km. Which taxi service will be cheaper?
 - Find the distances for which a Thrifty Taxi is the cheaper option.

Chapter 2: Refresher on polynomial functions

- 43** Factorise $x^4 + 2x^3 + 2x^2 + x - 6$.
- 44** Let $P(x) = 3x^3 + ax^2 + bx - 12$. If $P(-3) = P(-4) = 0$:
- determine the values of a and b
 - determine $P(-2)$.
- 45** Find the value of n such that dividing $x^{2n} - 8x^n + 10$ by $x - 2$ gives remainder 10.
- 46** Find all non-zero values of a for which the equation $2ax^2 + 2(a^2 + a)x + 3(a + 1) = 0$ has only one solution.

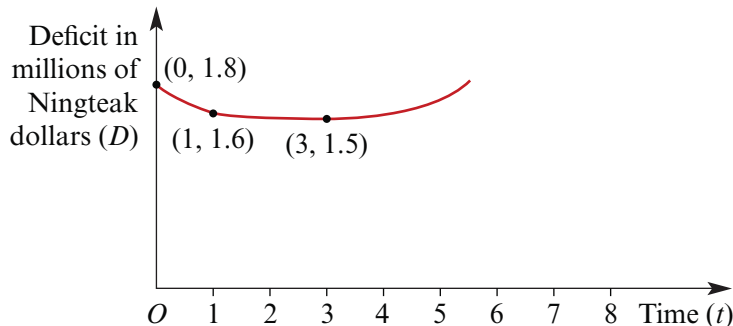
- 47** Let $P(x) = x^4 + ax^3 + bx^2 - 12x + 4$, where a and b are real constants.
- a** Find the values of a and b given that $P(x) = 0$ when $x = 1$ and when $x = 2$.
- b** Use the values of a and b obtained in part **a**. By factorising $P(x)$, show that the equation $P(x) = 0$ has no real solutions other than $x = 1$ and $x = 2$.
- 48** Determine the values of a , b and c such that the identity $3x^2 - 8x - 2 = a + b(x - 2) + c(x - 2)^2$ holds for all real numbers x .
- 49** Let $h(x) = x^3 + ax + b$. Given that the equation $h(x) = x$ has solutions $x = 2$ and $x = 3$, find the values of a and b .
- 50** Let $P(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 - 3x - 11$ and $Q(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 9$. If $P(-a) = Q(-a)$ find the possible values of a .
- 51** An arch is constructed as shown.



The height of the arch is 9 metres ($OZ = 9$ m). The width of the arch is 20 metres ($AB = 20$ m). The equation of the curve is of the form $y = ax^2 + b$, taking axes as shown.

- a** Determine the values of a and b .
- b** A man of height 1.8 m stands at C ($OC = 7$ m). How far above his head is the point E on the arch? (That is, find the distance DE .)
- c** A horizontal bar FG is placed across the arch as shown. The height, OH , of the bar above the ground is 6.3 m. Determine the length of the bar.
- 52 a** The expression $2x^3 + ax^2 - 72x - 18$ leaves a remainder of 17 when divided by $x + 5$. Determine the value of a .
- b** Solve the equation $2x^3 = x^2 + 5x + 2$.
- c i** Given that the expression $x^2 - 5x + 7$ leaves the same remainder whether divided by $x - b$ or $x - c$, where $b \neq c$, show that $b + c = 5$.
- ii** Given further that $4bc = 21$ and $b > c$, determine the values of b and c .

- 53** The deficit of a government department in Ningteak, a small monarchy east of Africa, is continually assessed over a period of 8 years. The following graph shows the deficit over these 8 years.



The graph is read as follows: The deficit at the beginning of the 8-year period is \$1.8 million. At the end of the third year the deficit is \$1.5 million.

- a** Find the rule for D in terms of t , assuming that it is of the form $D = at^2 + bt + c$.
b Use this model to predict the deficit at the end of 8 years.

- 54** The rate of rainfall, R mm per hour, was recorded during a very rainy day in North Queensland. The recorded data are given in the table. Assume a quadratic rule of the form

$$R = at^2 + bt + c$$

Time	Rainfall
4 a.m.	7.5 mm per hour
8 a.m.	9.0 mm per hour
10 a.m.	8.0 mm per hour

is applicable for $0 \leq t \leq 12$, where $t = 0$ is 4 a.m.

Use the quadratic model to predict the rate of rainfall at noon. At what time was the rate of rainfall greatest?

- 55** **a** Find the minimum integer value of a such that $ax^2 + 7x + 3$ is positive for all x .
b Find the minimum integer value of b such that $-3x^2 + bx - 4$ is negative for all x .

- 56** Consider the following equation in the variable x

$$\frac{\lambda}{2x} = \frac{a}{x+c} + \frac{b}{x-c}$$

where λ , a , b and c are real constants with $c \neq 0$.

- a** First assume that $a \neq b$ and that the equation has only one solution. Determine the product of the two possible values of λ in terms of a and b .
b Discuss what happens when $a = b$ and the equation has only one solution.
- 57** Consider the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where a , b and c are integers.
- a** Show that if $a + b + c = 0$, then $b^2 - 4ac$ is a perfect square.
b Show that if $b - a - c = 0$, then $b^2 - 4ac$ is a perfect square.
c Explain how these two results can help you to choose the coefficients of a quadratic equation so that it has rational solutions.

- d** Give several examples of quadratic equations with rational solutions.
- e** Give an example to show that not all quadratic equations with rational solutions satisfy one of the two properties $a + b + c = 0$ or $b - a - c = 0$.

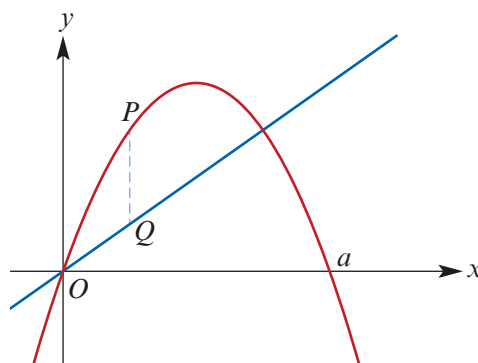
- 58** The parabola $y = ax - x^2$ and line $y = x$ are shown, where a is a constant with $a > 1$.

Point $P(x, y)$ is on the parabola and point $Q(x, x)$ is on the line, for $0 \leq x \leq a - 1$.

Let h be the length of line segment PQ .

Then h is the 'vertical distance' between the two graphs for a given value of x .

- a** Find an expression for h in terms of x .
- b** Find the value of x (expressed in terms of a) for which h is a maximum.
- c** Find this maximum value of h in terms of a .
- d** Find the value of a for which the maximum value of h is:
 - i** $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** 1 **iii** 5 **iv** 9 **v** 10



- 59** Let $f(x) = x^2 - ax$ and $g(x) = bx - x^2$, where a and b are constants with $0 < a < b$.

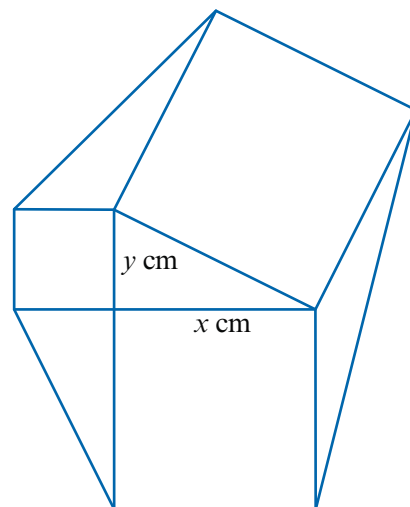
- a** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the graphs of f and g .
- b** Sketch the graphs of f and g on the one set of axes.

Consider points $P(x, f(x))$ and $Q(x, g(x))$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{a+b}{2}$.

- c** Determine an expression for the distance PQ in terms of x , a and b .
- d** Hence find the maximum possible distance PQ in terms of a and b .

- 60** The two shorter sides of a right-angled triangle have lengths x cm and y cm. A square is constructed on each side of the triangle and then a hexagon is constructed as shown.

- a** Show that the area, A cm², of the hexagon is given by $A = 2(x^2 + xy + y^2)$.
- b** Given that $x + y = 7$, find the minimum area of the hexagon and the values of x and y for which this occurs.
- c** Given that $x + y = a$, where a is a positive real number, find the minimum area of the hexagon and the values of x and y for which this occurs.
- d** Comment on this general result.



- 61** A ball is projected from ground level at an angle of 45° to the horizontal with an initial speed of v m/s. The path of the ball is described by the equation

$$y = x - \frac{10x^2}{v^2}$$

where the unit is metres. The ball is projected from the point $O(0, 0)$ and lands at the point $A(a, 0)$.

- a** Determine a in terms of v .
- b** Given that the ball's initial speed is $v = 25$ m/s, determine:
 - i** the value of a
 - ii** the coordinates of the point where the ball reaches its maximum height
 - iii** the values of x at which the height of the ball is 10 m.
- c** Now assume that the ball is projected at an angle of 60° to the horizontal. The equation of the path is

$$y = \sqrt{3}x - \frac{20x^2}{v^2}$$

Given that the ball's initial speed is $v = 30$ m/s, determine each of the following correct to two decimal places:

- i** the coordinates of the point where the ball reaches its maximum height
- ii** the value of a , where the ball is projected from $O(0, 0)$ and lands at $A(a, 0)$.

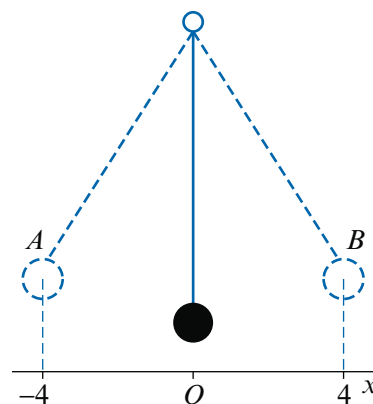
Appendix C: Trigonometric functions

- 62** As a pendulum swings, its horizontal position, x cm, measured from the central position, varies from -4 cm (at A) to 4 cm (at B).

The position x is given by the rule

$$x = -4 \sin(\pi t)$$

- a** Sketch the graph of x against t for $t \in [0, 2]$.
- b** Find the horizontal position of the pendulum for:
 - i** $t = 0$
 - ii** $t = \frac{1}{2}$
 - iii** $t = 1$
- c** Determine the first time that the pendulum has horizontal position $x = 2$.
- d** Determine the period of the pendulum, i.e. the time it takes to go from A to B and back to A .



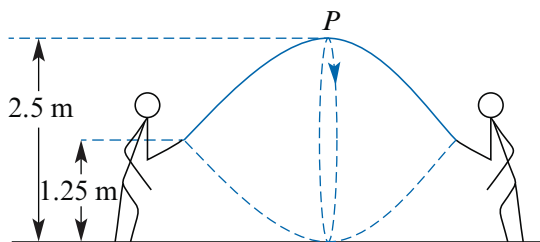
- 63** Two people are rotating a skipping rope. The rope is held 1.25 m above the ground. It reaches a height of 2.5 m above the ground, and just touches the ground. The vertical position, y m, of the point P on the rope at time t seconds is given by the rule

$$y = -1.25 \cos(2\pi t) + 1.25$$

- a** Determine y when:

i $t = 0$ **ii** $t = \frac{1}{2}$ **iii** $t = 1$

- b** How long does it take for one rotation of the rope?
c Sketch the graph of y against t .
d Determine the first time that the point P on the rope reaches a height of 2 m above the ground.



- 64** A rugby ball is kicked so that it leaves the player's foot with a velocity of V m/s. The total horizontal distance travelled by the ball, x m, is given by

$$x = \frac{V^2 \sin(2\alpha)}{10}$$

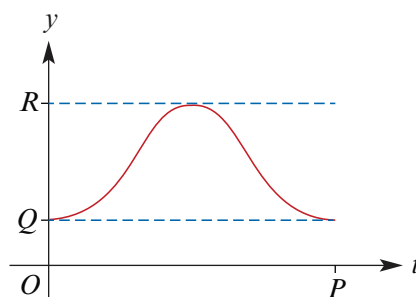
where α is the angle of projection.

- a** Determine the horizontal distance travelled by the ball if $V = 25$ m/s and $\alpha = 45^\circ$.
b For $V = 20$, sketch the graph of x against α for $0^\circ \leq \alpha \leq 90^\circ$.
c If the ball goes 30 m and the initial velocity is 20 m/s, determine the angle of projection.

- 65 a** The graph is of one complete cycle of

$$y = h - k \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$$

- i** How many units long is OP ?
ii Express OQ and OR in terms of h and k .



- b** For a certain city in the northern hemisphere, the number of hours of daylight on the 21st day of each month is given by the table:

x	Dec	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
y	7.5	8.2	9.9	12.0	14.2	15.8	16.5	15.9	14.3	12.0	9.8	8.1	7.5

Using suitable scales, plot these points and draw a curve through them. Call December month 0, January month 1, etc., and treat all months as of equal length.

- c** Determine the values of h and k so that your graph is approximately that of

$$y = h - k \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$$

Chapter 3: Refresher on differentiation

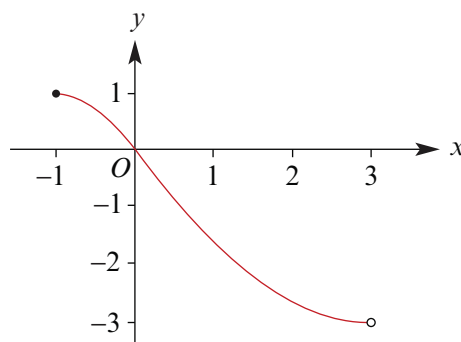
- 66** Use your calculator to determine the value of the derivative of
- a** $f(x) = 4x^{\frac{4}{3}} + 5x^{-3}$ when $x = 2$ correct to three decimal places.
- b** $f(x) = 4x^{-3} + 5x^{-4}$ when $x = 4$ correct to three decimal places.
- 67 a** Let $f(x) = x^2$, $g(x) = \frac{f(x+0.1) - f(x)}{0.1}$ and $h(x) = \frac{f(x+0.1) - f(x-0.1)}{0.2}$
Determine the value of $f'(3)$, $f'(2.1)$, $f'(-3)$ and the value of each of the following.
- i** $f(3), g(3), h(3)$ **ii** $f(2.1), g(2.1), h(2.1)$ **iii** $f(-3), g(3), h(-3)$
- b** Let $f(x) = x^3$, $g(x) = \frac{f(x+0.01) - f(x)}{0.01}$ and $h(x) = \frac{f(x+0.01) - f(x-0.01)}{0.02}$
Determine the value of $f'(3)$, $f'(2.1)$, $f'(-3)$ and the value of each of the following.
- i** $f(3), g(3), h(3)$ **ii** $f(2.1), g(2.1), h(2.1)$ **iii** $f(-3), g(3), h(-3)$
- 68** Let $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + 5$. If $f(1) = -1$, $f'(1) = -10$ and $f'(2) = -33$, determine the values of a , b and c .
- 69** Let $f(x) = a\sqrt{x-2} + b$. If $f(11) = 7$ and $f'(11) = \frac{1}{2}$, determine the values of a and b .

4B Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

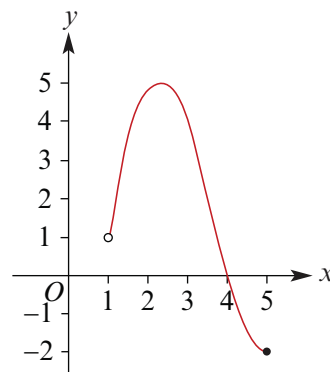
- 1** The domain of the function whose graph is shown is

- A** $(-3, 1]$
B $(-1, 3]$
C $[1, 3]$
D $[-1, 3)$



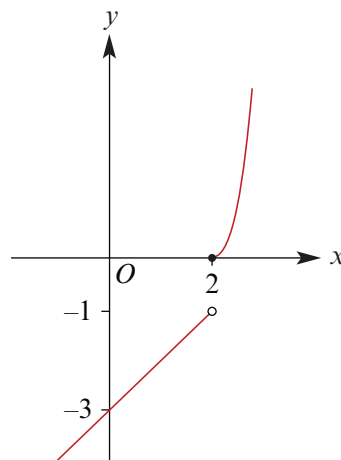
- 2** The implied (largest possible) domain for the function with the rule $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2-x}}$ is
- A** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$ **B** $(-\infty, 2)$ **C** $(2, \infty)$ **D** $(-\infty, 2]$
- 3** If $f(x) = \frac{x}{x-1}$, then $f\left(-\frac{1}{a}\right)$ can be simplified as
- A** $\frac{1}{-1-a}$ **B** 0 **C** $\frac{a^2}{1-a}$ **D** $\frac{1}{a+1}$
- 4** If $f(x) = \sin(2x)$ and $g(x) = 2 \sin x$, then the value of $(f+g)\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ is
- A** -2 **B** 0 **C** -1 **D** 1

- 5** If $f(x) = 3x + 2$ and $g(x) = 2x^2$, then $f(g(3))$ equals
A 36 **B** 20 **C** 56 **D** 144
- 6** The implied domain for the function with rule $y = \sqrt{4 - x^2}$ is
A $[2, \infty)$ **B** $\{x : -2 < x < 2\}$
C $[-2, 2]$ **D** $(-\infty, 2)$
- 7** If $f(x) = 3x^2$, $0 \leq x \leq 6$, and $g(x) = \sqrt{2 - x}$, $x \leq 2$, then the domain of $f + g$ is
A $[0, 2]$ **B** $[0, 6]$ **C** $(-\infty, 2]$ **D** $[0, \infty)$
- 8** If $g(x) = 2x^2 + 1$ and $f(x) = 3x + 2$, then the product function fg has rule
A $(fg)(x) = 2x^2 + 3x + 3$ **B** $(fg)(x) = 6x^3 + 4x^2 + 3x + 2$
C $(fg)(x) = 6x^3 + 3$ **D** $(fg)(x) = 6x^3 + 2x^2 + 3$
- 9** The domain of the function whose graph is shown is
A $[1, 5]$
B $(1, 5]$
C $(-2, 5]$
D $(1, 5)$



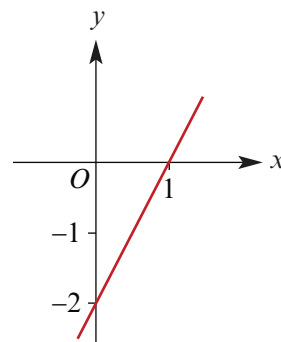
- 10** The graph shown has the rule

- A** $y = \begin{cases} (x-2)^2, & x \geq 2 \\ x-3, & x < 2 \end{cases}$
- B** $y = \begin{cases} x-2, & x \geq 2 \\ x-3, & x < 2 \end{cases}$
- C** $y = \begin{cases} (2-x)^2, & x \geq 2 \\ 2x-3, & x < 2 \end{cases}$
- D** $y = \begin{cases} (x-2)^2, & x < 2 \\ 2x-3, & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$



- 11 The graph shows

- A** $y + 2 = x$
B $y = 2x - 2$
C $y + 2x + 2 = 0$
D $y = -2x + 2$



- 12 The equation of the line that passes through the points $(-2, 3)$ and $(4, 0)$ is

- A** $2y = x + 4$ **B** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x - 2$
C $2y + x = 4$ **D** $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 2$

- 13 The straight line with equation $y = \frac{4}{5}x - 4$ meets the x -axis at A and the y -axis at B . If O is the origin, the area of the triangle OAB is

- A** $3\frac{1}{5}$ square units **B** $9\frac{2}{5}$ square units
C 10 square units **D** 15 square units

- 14 The graphs of the relations $7x - 6y = 20$ and $3x + 4y = 2$ are drawn on the same pair of axes. The x -coordinate of the point of intersection is

- A** -2 **B** -1 **C** 1 **D** 2

- 15 Which one of the following is an even function of x ?

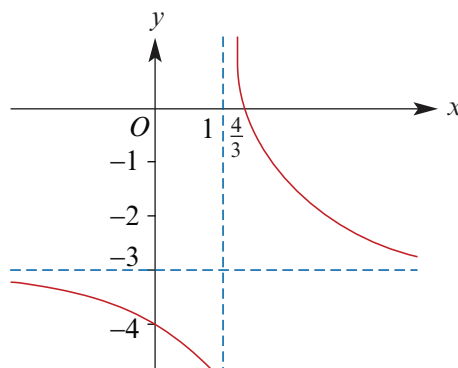
- A** $f(x) = 3x + 1$ **B** $f(x) = x^3 - x$
C $f(x) = (1 - x)^2$ **D** $f(x) = -x^2$

- 16 Which one of the following is *not* an even function?

- A** $f(x) = (x - 2)^2$ **B** $f(x) = \cos^2 x$
C $f(x) = \cos x$ **D** $f(x) = 4x^2 - 3$

- 17 A possible equation for the graph shown is

- A** $y + 3 = \frac{1}{x + 1}$
B $y - 3 = \frac{1}{x + 1}$
C $y - 4 = \frac{1}{x + 1}$
D $y = \frac{1}{x - 1} - 3$



- 18 The function given by $f(x) = \frac{1}{x + 3} - 2$ has the range

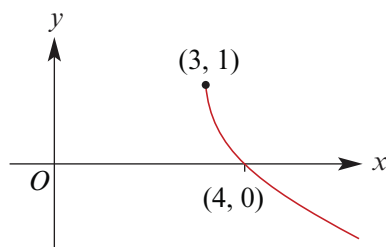
- A** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-2\}$ **B** $\mathbb{R}$ **C** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$ **D** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$

- 19** A parabola has its vertex at $(2, 3)$. A possible equation for this parabola is
- A** $y = (x + 2)^2 + 3$ **B** $y = (x - 2)^2 - 3$
C $y = (x + 2)^2 - 3$ **D** $y = (x - 2)^2 + 3$
- 20** The graph of $y = 3\sqrt{x+2}$ can be obtained from the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ by
- A** a translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 2, y)$ followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
B a translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y)$ followed by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the x -axis
C a translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 3, y)$ followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis
D a translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 2, y)$ followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis

- 21** A function with rule $f(x) = 3\sqrt{x-2} + 1$ has maximal domain
- A** $[2, \infty)$ **B** $[1, \infty)$ **C** $(2, \infty)$ **D** $[-2, \infty)$

- 22** A possible equation for the graph shown is

- A** $y = 2\sqrt{x-3} + 1$
B $y = -2\sqrt{x-3} + 1$
C $y = \sqrt{x-3} + 1$
D $y = -\sqrt{x-3} + 1$



- 23** Let $f(x) = \frac{3}{(x-2)^2} + 4$ for $x \neq 2$. The range of f is
- A** $(-\infty, 4)$ **B** $[3, 4)$ **C** $[4, \infty)$ **D** $(4, \infty)$

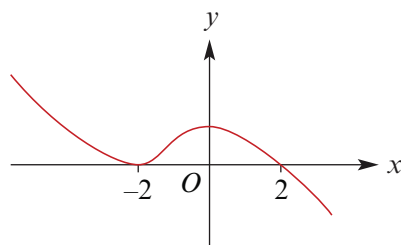
- 24** If $3x^2 + kx + 1 = 0$ when $x = 1$, then k equals
- A** -4 **B** -1 **C** 1 **D** 4

- 25** The quadratic equation with solutions 5 and -7 is
- A** $x^2 + 2x - 35 = 0$ **B** $x^2 - 2x - 35 = 0$
C $x^2 + 12x - 35 = 0$ **D** $x^2 - 12x - 35 = 0$

- 26** Let $P(x) = x^3 - 5x^2 + x + k$. If $P(-1) = 0$, then k equals
- A** 7 **B** -5 **C** -2 **D** 5

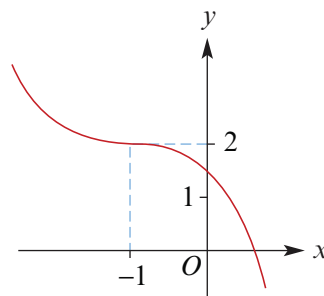
- 27** A possible equation for the graph shown is

- A** $y = x(x-2)(x+2)$
B $y = -x(x+2)(x-2)$
C $y = -(x+2)^2(x-2)$
D $y = (x-2)^2(x+2)$



28 The graph shown is

- A** $y + 2 = -2(x + 1)^3$
B $y - 2 = 2(x - 1)^3$
C $y = x^3 + 2$
D $y = -\frac{1}{2}(x + 1)^3 + 2$



29 $P(x) = x^3 + 2x^2 - 5x - 6$ has the factorisation

- A** $(x - 1)(x - 2)(x + 3)$ **B** $(x + 1)(x + 2)(x + 3)$
C $(x + 1)(x - 2)(x + 3)$ **D** $(x + 1)(x - 2)(x - 3)$

30 Let $P(x) = 2x^3 - 2x^2 + 3x + 1$. Then $P(2)$ is equal to

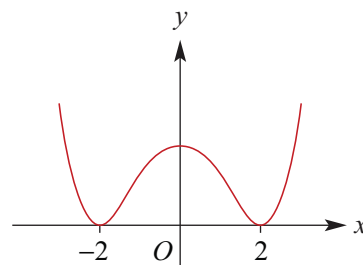
- A** 31 **B** 15 **C** 1 **D** -2

31 If $x^3 + 2x^2 + ax - 4$ has remainder 1 when divided by $x + 1$, then a equals

- A** -8 **B** -4 **C** -2 **D** 0

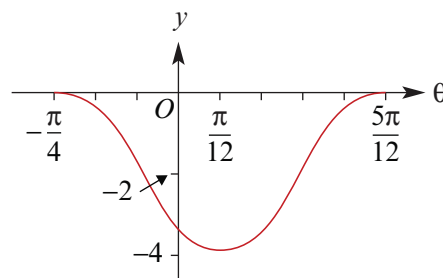
32 Which of these equations is represented by the graph shown?

- A** $y = (x + 2)^2(x - 2)$
B $y = 16 - x^4$
C $y = (x^2 - 4)^2$
D $y = (x + 2)^2(2 - x)$



33 A possible equation for the graph shown is

- A** $y = 2 \cos 3\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 4$
B $y = 2 \cos 2\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 2$
C $y = 2 \sin 3\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 2$
D $y = 2 \cos 3\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 2$



34 The function $f(x) = 2 - 3 \cos 2\left(x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, has range

- A** $[-3, 5]$ **B** $[2, 5]$ **C** $\mathbb{R}$ **D** $[-1, 5]$

35 Two values between 0 and 2π for which $2 \sin \theta + \sqrt{3} = 0$ are

- A** $\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}$ **B** $60^\circ, 240^\circ$ **C** $\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$ **D** $\frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$

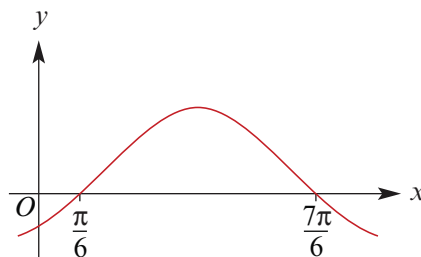
- 36** A possible equation for the graph shown is

A $y = \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

B $y = \sin\left(x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

C $y = -\sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$

D $y = \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$



- 37** The function $f(x) = 3 \sin(2x)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, has

A amplitude 3 and period π

B amplitude 2 and period $\frac{\pi}{2}$

C amplitude 1 and period $\frac{\pi}{2}$

D amplitude $\frac{3}{2}$ and period 2π

- 38** The function $f(x) = 3 \sin(2x)$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$, has range

A $[0, 3]$

B $[-2, 2]$

C $[2, 3]$

D $[-3, 3]$

- 39** It is known that the graph of the function with rule $y = 2ax + \cos(2x)$ has an x -axis intercept when $x = \pi$. The value of a is

A 2

B $\frac{1}{2\pi}$

C 2π

D $-\frac{1}{2\pi}$

- 40** Consider the polynomial $p(x) = (x - 2a)^2(x + a)(x^2 + a)$ where $a > 0$. The equation $p(x) = 0$ has exactly

A 1 distinct real solution

B 2 distinct real solutions

C 3 distinct real solutions

D 4 distinct real solutions

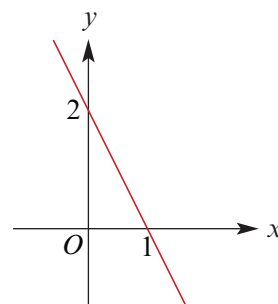
- 41** The gradient of a straight line perpendicular to the line shown is

A 2

B -2

C $-\frac{1}{2}$

D $\frac{1}{2}$



- 42** Let $f(x) = a \sin(bx + c)$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, where a , b and c are positive constants. The function f has period

A a

B $\frac{2\pi}{b}$

C c

D $\frac{2\pi}{a}$

- 43** If $y = \frac{x^4 + x}{x^2}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

A $\frac{4x^3 + 2x}{2x}$

B $2x - \frac{1}{x^2}$

C $2x$

D $\frac{2x^3 + 1}{x^2}$

44 If $y = (4 - 9x^4)^{\frac{1}{2}}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

A $-18x^3(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

B $\frac{1}{2}(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

C $2(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

D $-3x(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

45 The derivative of $\frac{1}{1+x}$ is

A $\frac{1}{(1+x)^2}$

B $\frac{1}{1-x}$

C $\frac{-1}{(1+x)^2}$

D 1

46 If $y = (3x^4 - 2)^4$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

A $4(3x^4 - 2)^3$

B $12x^{12}$

C $(12x^2 - 2)^4$

D $48x^3(3x^4 - 2)^3$

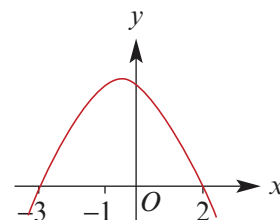
47 The graph of the derivative function f' given by $y = f'(x)$ is shown. $f'(x) \geq 0$ for

A $x \geq 0$

B $-3 \leq x \leq 2$

C $x \geq 2$

D $x \leq -3$ and $x \geq 2$



48 Which one of the following gives the gradient of the tangent to a curve with the equation $y = f(x)$ at the point $x = 2$?

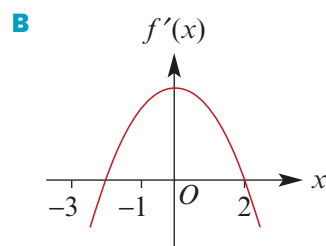
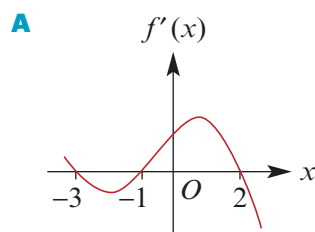
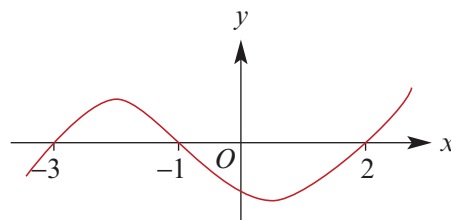
A $f(2+h) - f(2)$

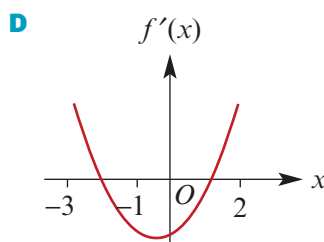
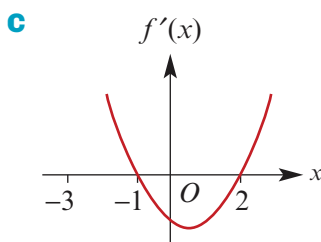
B $\frac{f(2+h) - f(2)}{h}$

C $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$

D $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(2+h) - f(2)}{h}$

49 The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown. A possible graph of the gradient function f' with rule given by $f'(x)$ is





- 50** The derivative of $\frac{4x^2 + 6}{x}$ is
A $8x + 6$ **B** $8x^3 - 6$ **C** $\frac{4x^2 + 6}{x^2}$ **D** $\frac{4x^2 - 6}{x^2}$
- 51** If $f(x) = 4x^3 - 3x + 7 - \frac{2}{x}$, then $f'(1)$ is equal to
A -2 **B** 18 **C** 7 **D** 11

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 52** The equation $2x^3 + 3x^2 - 36x + p = 0$ has one solution for
A $41 < p < 81$ **B** $p = 44$ **C** $p = 81$ **D** $p > 44$ or $p < -81$
- 53** The parabola $f(x) = ax^2 + bx + c$ passes through the points $(1, -5)$, $(-1, -7)$ and $(5, -49)$. $f(2.2)$ is equal to
A -11.48 **B** -4.28 **C** 7.4 **D** -23
- 54** The quadratic function $f(x) = 3x^2 - 4x + 3$ is defined for $-2 \leq x \leq 7$. The range of f is
A $23 < f(x) < 122$ **B** $\frac{2}{3} < f(x) < 7$ **C** $\frac{5}{3} < f(x) < 122$ **D** $\frac{5}{3} < f(x) < 23$
- 55** The function with rule $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2$ satisfies $f'(1) = 2$ and $f'(-1) = -14$. The values of a and b are
A $a = 2$ and $b = -4$ **B** $a = -2$ and $b = 4$
C $a = -1$ and $b = 1$ **D** $a = 2$ and $b = -44$
- 56** A solution to the equation $\frac{x}{4} - 1 = \sin 2x$ for $3 < x < \frac{3\pi}{2}$ correct to two decimal places is
A $x = 5.54$ **B** $x = 4.63$ **C** $x = 3.12$ **D** $x = 3.01$
- 57** The equation $\sin x = mx$ has two non-zero solutions. The value of m could be
A $m = 2$ **B** $m = 1$ **C** $m = \frac{1}{2}$ **D** $m = \frac{1}{8}$
- 58** The solution to the equation $2^x = \sin x$ for $x > -\frac{3\pi}{2}$ correct to two decimal places is
A $x = -3.29$ **B** $x = -6.27$ **C** $x = -3.25$ **D** $x = -3.12$
- 59** Let $P(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 - 3x$. The equation $f(x - p) = 0$ where p is a positive constant has three positive solutions for
A all $p < 1$ **B** all $p > 0$ **C** all $p < 0$ **D** all $p > 1$

5

Differentiation of exponential and logarithmic functions

Chapter contents

- ▶ **5A** Revision of exponential functions
- ▶ **5B** The exponential function $f(x) = e^x$
- ▶ **5C** Revision of exponential equations
- ▶ **5D** Logarithms and the logarithm laws
- ▶ **5E** Graphing logarithmic functions
- ▶ **5F** Solving equations involving exponential and logarithmic functions
- ▶ **5G** Differentiation of e^x
- ▶ **5H** Differentiation of the natural logarithm function
- ▶ **5I** Determining rules for graphs of the exponential and logarithmic functions
- ▶ **5J** Modelling data using a graphics calculator

In this chapter, we continue our study of exponential functions and logarithmic functions from Mathematical Methods Units 1&2. We also introduce the exponential function $f(x) = e^x$ and the natural logarithm function $g(x) = \log_e(x)$ which we write as $g(x) = \ln(x)$. These functions are very important in calculus and have many interesting properties. In particular, the function $f(x) = e^x$ is its own derivative. That is, $f'(x) = f(x)$. Initially we define the number e as

$$e = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$$

We will show that limits such as this arise in the consideration of compound interest.

A **logarithm function** has a rule of the form $f(x) = \log_a x$, where the base a is a positive real number other than 1. These functions are the ‘reverse’ of exponential functions, and have historical and practical importance.

This chapter covers Unit 3 Topic 1: Differentiation of exponential and logarithmic functions.

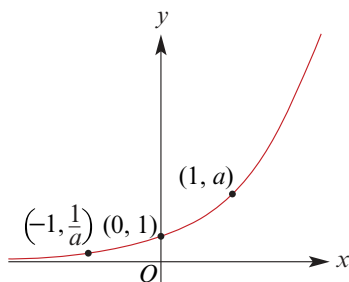
5A Revision of exponential functions.

Learning intentions

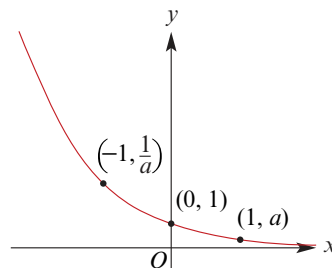
- To be able to graph functions of the form $y = a^x$.

The function $f(x) = a^x$, where a is a positive real number other than 1, is an **exponential function**. The shape of the graph depends on whether $a > 1$ or $0 < a < 1$.

Graph of $f(x) = a^x$ for $a > 1$



Graph of $f(x) = a^x$ for $0 < a < 1$



- Key values are $f(-1) = \frac{1}{a}$, $f(0) = 1$ and $f(1) = a$.
- The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$ and the range is the positive real numbers.
- The x -axis is a horizontal asymptote.

An exponential function with $a > 1$ is strictly increasing, and an exponential function with $0 < a < 1$ is strictly decreasing.

Graphing transformations of $f(x) = a^x$

Translations

If the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$ is applied to the graph of $y = a^x$, then the image has equation $y = a^{x-h} + k$.

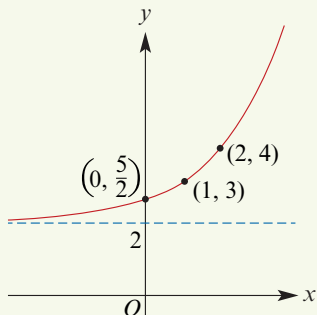
- The horizontal asymptote of the image has equation $y = k$.
- The range of the image is (k, ∞) .



Example 1

Sketch the graph and state the range of $y = 2^{x-1} + 2$.

Solution



The range of the function is $(2, \infty)$.

Explanation

The graph of $y = 2^x$ is translated 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis and 2 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, y + 2)$.

Translation of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{2}) \rightarrow (0, \frac{5}{2})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (1, 3)$
- $(1, 2) \rightarrow (2, 4)$

Reflections

If a **reflection in the x -axis**, given by the mapping $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$, is applied to the graph of $y = a^x$, then the image has equation $y = -a^x$.

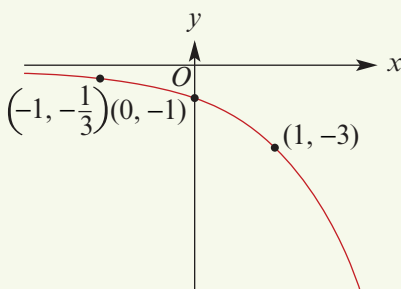
- The horizontal asymptote of the image has equation $y = 0$.
- The range of the image is $(-\infty, 0)$.



Example 2

Sketch the graph of $y = -3^x$.

Solution



Explanation

The graph of $y = 3^x$ is reflected in the x -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$.

Reflection of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{3}) \rightarrow (-1, -\frac{1}{3})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, -1)$
- $(1, 3) \rightarrow (1, -3)$

If a **reflection in the y -axis**, given by the mapping $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y)$, is applied to the graph of $y = a^x$, then the image has equation $y = a^{-x}$. This can also be written as $y = \frac{1}{a^x}$ or $y = \left(\frac{1}{a}\right)^x$.

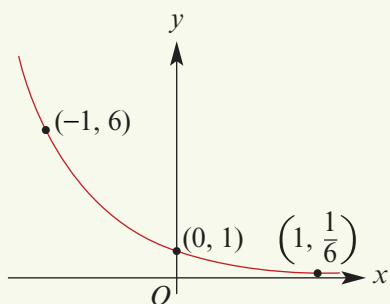
- The horizontal asymptote of the image has equation $y = 0$.
- The range of the image is $(0, \infty)$.



Example 3

Sketch the graph of $y = 6^{-x}$.

Solution



Explanation

The graph of $y = 6^x$ is reflected in the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y)$.

Reflection of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{6}) \rightarrow (1, \frac{1}{6})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 1)$
- $(1, 6) \rightarrow (-1, 6)$

Dilations

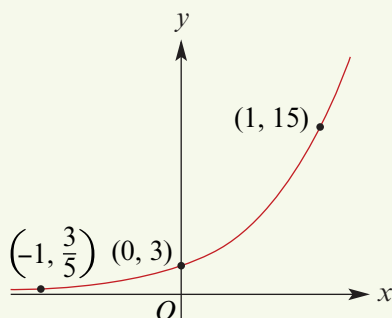
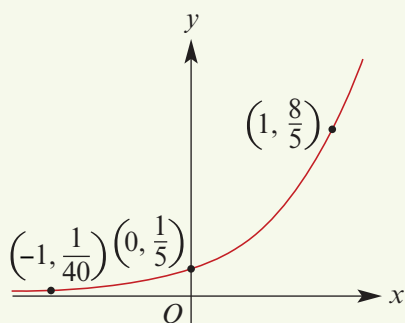
For $k > 0$, if a **dilation of factor k from the x -axis**, given by the mapping $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, ky)$, is applied to the graph of $y = a^x$, then the image has equation $y = ka^x$.

- The horizontal asymptote of the image has equation $y = 0$.
- The range of the image is $(0, \infty)$.

**Example 4**

Sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = 3 \times 5^x$ **b** $y = 0.2 \times 8^x$

Solution**a****b****Explanation**

The graph of $y = 5^x$ is dilated by factor 3 from the x -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 3y)$.

Dilation of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{5}) \rightarrow (-1, \frac{3}{5})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 3)$
- $(1, 5) \rightarrow (1, 15)$

The graph of $y = 8^x$ is dilated by factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the x -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, \frac{1}{5}y)$.

Dilation of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{8}) \rightarrow (-1, \frac{1}{40})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, \frac{1}{5})$
- $(1, 8) \rightarrow (1, \frac{8}{5})$

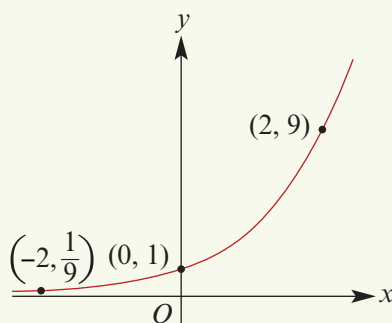
For $k > 0$, if a **dilation of factor k from the y -axis**, given by the mapping $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, ky)$, is applied to the graph of $y = a^x$, then the image has equation $y = a^{\frac{x}{k}}$.

- The horizontal asymptote of the image has equation $y = 0$.
- The range of the image is $(0, \infty)$.

**Example 5**

Sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = 9^{\frac{x}{2}}$ **b** $y = 3^{2x}$

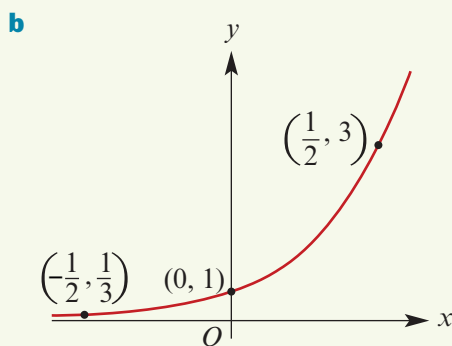
Solution**a****Explanation**

The graph of $y = 9^x$ is dilated by factor 2 from the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (2x, y)$.

Dilation of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{9}) \rightarrow (-2, \frac{1}{9})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 1)$
- $(1, 9) \rightarrow (2, 9)$



The graph of $y = 3^x$ is dilated by factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}x, y)$.

Dilation of key points:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{3}) \rightarrow (-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{3})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 1)$
- $(1, 3) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}, 3)$

Note: Since $9^{\frac{x}{2}} = (9^{\frac{1}{2}})^x = 3^x$, the graph of $y = 9^{\frac{x}{2}}$ is the same as the graph of $y = 3^x$.
Similarly, the graph of $y = 3^{2x}$ is the same as the graph of $y = 9^x$.

A translation parallel to the x -axis results in a dilation from the x -axis. For example, if the graph of $y = 5^x$ is translated 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis, then the image is the graph of $y = 5^{x-3}$, which can be written $y = 5^{-3} \times 5^x$. Hence, a translation of 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis is equivalent to a dilation of factor 5^{-3} from the x -axis.

Combinations of transformations

We have seen translations, reflections and dilations applied to exponential graphs. In the following example we consider combinations of these transformations.

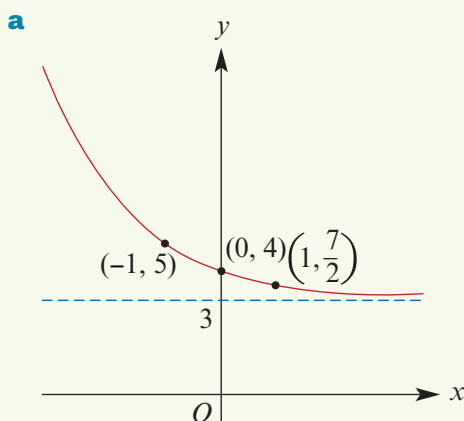


Example 6

Sketch the graph and state the range of each of the following:

- a** $y = 2^{-x} + 3$ **b** $y = 4^{3x} - 1$ **c** $y = -10^{x-1} - 2$

Solution



Graph of $y = 2^{-x} + 3$:

- The asymptote has equation $y = 3$.
- The y -axis intercept is $2^0 + 3 = 4$.
- The range of the function is: $x > 3$.

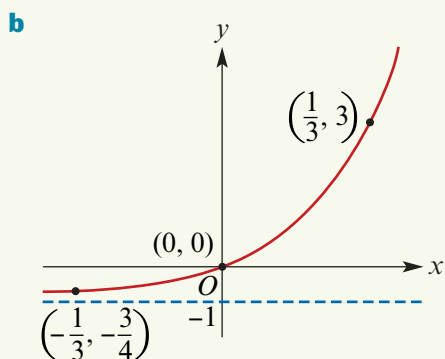
Explanation

The graph of $y = 2^{-x} + 3$ is obtained from the graph of $y = 2^x$ by a reflection in the y -axis followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y + 3)$.

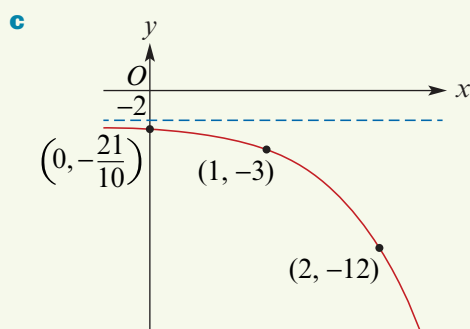
For example:

- $(-1, \frac{1}{2}) \rightarrow (1, \frac{7}{2})$
- $(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 4)$
- $(1, 2) \rightarrow (-1, 5)$



Graph of $y = 4^{3x} - 1$:

- The asymptote has equation $y = -1$.
- The y-axis intercept is $4^0 - 1 = 0$.
- The range of the function is: $x > -1$.



Graph of $y = -10^{x-1} - 2$:

- The asymptote has equation $y = -2$.
- The y-axis intercept is $-10^{-1} - 2 = -\frac{21}{10}$.
- The range of the function is: $x < -2$.

The graph of $y = 4^{3x} - 1$ is obtained from the graph of $y = 4^x$ by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y-axis followed by a translation 1 unit in the negative direction of the y-axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{3}x, y - 1)$.

For example:

$$(-1, \frac{1}{4}) \rightarrow (-\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{3}{4})$$

$$(0, 1) \rightarrow (0, 0)$$

$$(1, 4) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{3}, 3)$$

The graph of $y = -10^{x-1} - 2$ is obtained from the graph of $y = 10^x$ by a reflection in the x-axis followed by a translation 1 unit in the positive direction of the x-axis and 2 units in the negative direction of the y-axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, -y - 2)$.

For example:

$$(-1, \frac{1}{10}) \rightarrow (0, -\frac{21}{10})$$

$$(0, 1) \rightarrow (1, -3)$$

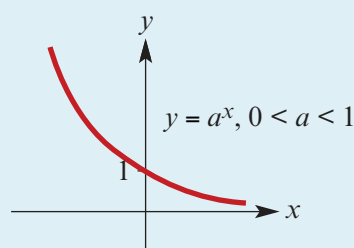
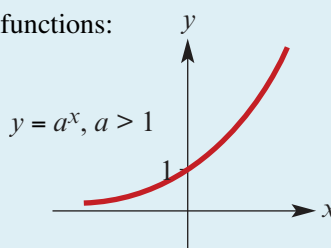
$$(1, 10) \rightarrow (2, -12)$$

Note: For each graph in Example 6, we can use the method for determining transformations from Appendix B. Here we show the method for part **c**:

- Write the equation as $y' = -10^{x'-1} - 2$.
- Rearrange to $-y' - 2 = 10^{x'-1}$.
- We choose to write $y = -y' - 2$ and $x = x' - 1$.
- Hence $y' = -y - 2$ and $x' = x + 1$.

Summary 5A

- Graphs of exponential functions:



- For a a positive real number other than 1, the graph of $y = a^x$ has the following properties:
 - The x -axis is an asymptote.
 - The y -axis intercept is 1.
 - The y -values are always positive.
 - There is no x -axis intercept.
- Transformations can be applied to exponential functions. For example, the graph of

$$y = a^{b(x-h)} + k, \quad \text{where } b > 0$$
 can be obtained from the graph of $y = a^x$ by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{b}$ from the y -axis followed by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$.

Exercise 5A

Example 1

- 1 For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling the asymptote) and state the range.

a $y = 2^{x+1} - 2$ **b** $y = 2^{x-3} - 1$ **c** $y = 2^{x+2} - 1$ **d** $y = 2^{x-2} + 2$

Example 2, 3

- 2 For each of the following, use the one set of axes to sketch the two graphs (labelling asymptotes).

a $y = 2^x$ and $y = 3^x$ **b** $y = 2^{-x}$ and $y = 3^{-x}$
c $y = 5^x$ and $y = -5^x$ **d** $y = 1.5^x$ and $y = -1.5^x$

Example 4, 5

- 3 For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling the asymptote) and state the range.

a $y = 3 \times 2^x$ **b** $y = \frac{1}{2} \times 5^x$ **c** $y = 2^{3x}$ **d** $y = 2^{\frac{x}{3}}$

Example 6

- 4 Sketch the graph and state the range of each of the following.

a $y = 3^{-x} + 2$ **b** $y = 2^{5x} - 4$ **c** $y = -10^{x-2} - 2$

- 5 For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling the asymptote) and state the range.

a $y = 3^x$ **b** $y = 3^x + 1$ **c** $y = 1 - 3^x$
d $y = (\frac{1}{3})^x$ **e** $y = 3^{-x} + 2$ **f** $y = (\frac{1}{3})^x - 1$

- 6 For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling the asymptote) and state the range.

a $y = (\frac{1}{2})^{x-2}$ **b** $y = (\frac{1}{2})^x - 1$ **c** $y = (\frac{1}{2})^{x-2} + 1$

- 7 For $f(x) = 2^x$, sketch the graph of each of the following, labelling asymptotes where appropriate.

a $y = f(x + 1)$ **b** $y = f(x) + 1$ **c** $y = f(-x) + 2$
d $y = -f(x) - 1$ **e** $y = f(3x)$ **f** $y = f\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$
g $y = 2f(x - 1) + 1$ **h** $y = f(x - 2)$

- 8** For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling the asymptote) and state the range.

a $y = 10^x - 1$ **b** $y = 10^{\frac{x}{10}} + 1$ **c** $y = 2 \times 10^x - 20$
d $y = 1 - 10^{-x}$ **e** $y = 10^{x+1} + 3$ **f** $y = 2 \times 10^{\frac{x}{10}} + 4$

- 9** A bank offers cash loans at 0.04% interest per day, compounded daily. A loan of \$10 000 is taken and the interest payable at the end of x days is given by $C_1 = 10\,000[(1.0004)^x - 1]$.

- a** Plot the graph of C_1 against x .
b Determine the interest at the end of:
 i 100 days **ii** 300 days.
c After how many days is the interest payable \$1000?
d A loan company offers \$10 000 and charges a fee of \$4.25 per day. The amount charged after x days is given by $C_2 = 4.25x$.
 i Plot the graph of C_2 against x (using the same window as in part **a**).
 ii Determine the smallest value of x for which $C_2 < C_1$.

- 10** If you invest \$100 at an interest rate of 2% per day, compounded daily, then after x days the amount of money you have (in dollars) is given by $y = 100(1.02)^x$. For how many days would you have to invest to double your money?

- 11 a i** Graph $y = 2^x$, $y = 3^x$ and $y = 5^x$ on the same set of axes.

ii For what values of x is $2^x > 3^x > 5^x$?

iii For what values of x is $2^x < 3^x < 5^x$?

iv For what values of x is $2^x = 3^x = 5^x$?

b Repeat part **a** for $y = (\frac{1}{2})^x$, $y = (\frac{1}{3})^x$ and $y = (\frac{1}{5})^x$.

c Use your answers to parts **a** and **b** to sketch the graph of $y = a^x$ for:

i $a > 1$ **ii** $a = 1$ **iii** $0 < a < 1$

5B The exponential function $f(x) = e^x$

Learning intentions

- To be able to graph functions of the form $y = e^x$ where e is Euler's number.

In the previous section, we explored the family of exponential functions $f(x) = a^x$, where a is a positive real number other than 1. One particular member of this family is of great importance in mathematics.

This function has the rule $f(x) = e^x$, where e is Euler's number, named after the eighteenth century Swiss mathematician Leonhard Euler.

Euler's number is defined as follows.

Euler's number

$$e = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n$$

To see what the value of e might be, we could try large values of n and use a calculator to evaluate $(1 + \frac{1}{n})^n$, as shown in the table on the right.

As n is taken larger and larger, it can be seen that $(1 + \frac{1}{n})^n$ approaches a limiting value ($\approx 2.718\ 28$).

n	$(1 + \frac{1}{n})^n$
100	$(1.01)^{100} = 2.704\ 813\dots$
1000	$(1.001)^{1000} = 2.716\ 923\dots$
10 000	$(1.0001)^{10\ 000} = 2.718\ 145\dots$
100 000	$(1.000\ 01)^{100\ 000} = 2.718\ 268\dots$
1 000 000	$(1.000\ 001)^{1\ 000\ 000} = 2.718\ 280\dots$

Like π , the number e is irrational:

$$e = 2.718\ 281\ 828\ 459\ 045\dots$$

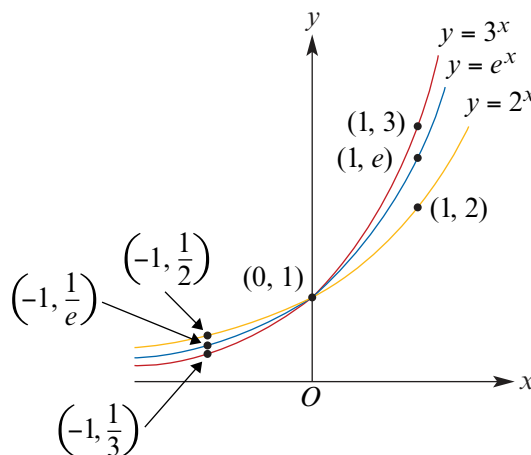
The function $f(x) = e^x$ is very important in mathematics. In Section 4G you will determine that it has the remarkable property that $f'(x) = f(x)$. That is, the derivative of e^x is e^x .

Note: The function e^x can be found on your calculator.

Graphing $f(x) = e^x$

The graph of $y = e^x$ is as shown.

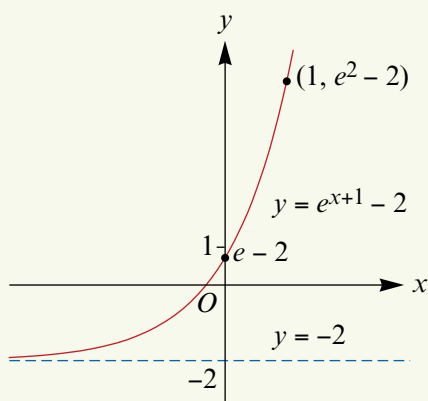
The graphs of $y = 2^x$ and $y = 3^x$ are shown on the same set of axes.



Example 7

Sketch the graph of $y = e^{x+1} - 2$.

Solution



The asymptote has equation $y = -2$.
The y -axis intercept is $e - 2$.

Explanation

To determine the transformation:

- Write the image as $y' + 2 = e^{x'+1}$.
- We can choose $y = y' + 2$ and $x = x' + 1$.
- Hence $y' = y - 2$ and $x' = x - 1$.

The mapping is

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 1, y - 2)$$

which is a translation of 1 unit in the negative direction of the x -axis and 2 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

Compound interest

Assume that you invest \$ P at an annual interest rate r . If the interest is compounded only once per year, then the balance of your investment after t years is given by $A = P(1 + r)^t$.

Now assume that the interest is compounded n times per year. The interest rate in each period is $\frac{r}{n}$. The balance at the end of one year is $P\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^n$, and the balance at the end of t years is given by

$$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{nt} = P\left(\left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{\frac{n}{r}}\right)^{rt}$$

We recognise that

$$\lim_{\frac{n}{r} \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{r}{n}\right)^{\frac{n}{r}} = e$$

So, as $n \rightarrow \infty$, we can write $A = Pe^{rt}$.

For example, if \$1000 is invested for one year at 5%, the resulting amount is \$1050. However, if the interest is compounded ‘continuously’, then the amount is given by

$$A = Pe^{rt} = 1000 \times e^{0.05} = 1000 \times 1.051\,271\dots \approx 1051.27$$

That is, the balance after one year is \$1051.27.

Note: In the continuous model $A = Pe^{rt}$, the constant r is known as the **relative growth rate**.

Summary 5B

Euler’s number is the natural base for exponential functions:

$$\begin{aligned} e &= \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n \\ &= 2.718\,281\dots \end{aligned}$$



Exercise 5B

Example 7

1 Sketch the graph of each of the following and state the range.

a $f(x) = e^x + 1$

c $f(x) = 1 - e^{-x}$

e $f(x) = e^{x-1} - 2$

g $h(x) = 2(1 + e^x)$

i $g(x) = 2e^{-x} + 1$

k $f(x) = 3e^{x+1} - 2$

b $f(x) = 1 - e^x$

d $f(x) = e^{-2x}$

f $f(x) = 2e^x$

h $h(x) = 2(1 - e^{-x})$

j $h(x) = 2e^{x-1}$

l $h(x) = 2 - 3e^x$

- 2** For each of the following, give a sequence of transformations that maps the graph of $y = e^x$ to the graph of $y = f_1(x)$.

a $f_1(x) = e^{x+2} - 3$

b $f_1(x) = 3e^{x+1} - 4$

c $f_1(x) = 5e^{2x+1}$

d $f_1(x) = 2 - e^{x-1}$

e $f_1(x) = 3 - 2e^{x+2}$

f $f_1(x) = 4e^{2x} - 1$

- 3** Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $f(x) = e^x$ undergoes each of the following sequences of transformations:

a a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis

b a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis

c a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis

d a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis

e a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis

f a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis.

- 4** For each of the following, give a sequence of transformations that maps the graph of $y = f_1(x)$ to the graph of $y = e^x$.

a $f_1(x) = e^{x+2} - 3$

b $f_1(x) = 3e^{x+1} - 4$

c $f_1(x) = 5e^{2x+1}$

d $f_1(x) = 2 - e^{x-1}$

e $f_1(x) = 3 - 2e^{x+2}$

f $f_1(x) = 4e^{2x} - 1$

- 5** Solve each of the following equations using a graphics calculator. Give answers correct to three decimal places.

a $e^x = x + 2$

b $e^{-x} = x + 2$

c $x^2 = e^x$

d $x^3 = e^x$

- 6 a** Using a calculator, plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = e^x$.

b Using the same screen, plot the graphs of:

i $y = f(x - 2)$

ii $y = f\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$

iii $y = f(-x)$

5C Revision of exponential equations

Learning intentions

- To be able to solve some exponential equations without the use of logarithms.

One method for solving exponential equations is to use the following property of exponential functions:

$$a^x = a^y \text{ implies } x = y, \text{ where } a \text{ is a positive real number other than } 1$$



Example 8

Determine the value of x for which:

a $4^x = 256$

b $3^{x-1} = 81$

Solution

a $4^x = 256$

$$4^x = 4^4$$

$$\therefore x = 4$$

b $3^{x-1} = 81$

$$3^{x-1} = 3^4$$

$$\therefore x - 1 = 4$$

$$x = 5$$

When solving an exponential equation, you may also need to use the index laws.

Index laws

For all positive numbers a and b and all real numbers x and y :

■ $a^x \times a^y = a^{x+y}$

■ $a^x \div a^y = a^{x-y}$

■ $(a^x)^y = a^{xy}$

■ $(ab)^x = a^x b^x$

■ $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^x = \frac{a^x}{b^x}$

■ $a^{-x} = \frac{1}{a^x}$

■ $a^x = \frac{1}{a^{-x}}$

■ $a^0 = 1$

Note: More generally, each index law applies for real numbers a and b provided both sides of the equation are defined. For example: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$ for $a \in \mathbb{R}$ and $m, n \in \mathbb{Z}$.



Example 9

Determine the value of x for which $5^{2x-4} = 25^{-x+2}$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} 5^{2x-4} &= 25^{-x+2} \\ &= (5^2)^{-x+2} \\ &= 5^{-2x+4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore 2x - 4 = -2x + 4$$

$$4x = 8$$

$$x = 2$$

Explanation

Express both sides of the equation as powers with base 5.

Use the fact that $5^a = 5^b$ implies $a = b$.

To solve the equations in the next example, we must recognise that they will become quadratic equations once we make a substitution.



Example 10

Solve for x :

a $9^x = 12 \times 3^x - 27$

b $3^{2x} = 27 - 6 \times 3^x$

Solution

a We can write the equation as

$$(3^x)^2 = 12 \times 3^x - 27$$

Let $y = 3^x$. The equation becomes

$$y^2 = 12y - 27$$

$$y^2 - 12y + 27 = 0$$

$$(y - 3)(y - 9) = 0$$

$$\therefore y = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad y = 9$$

$$3^x = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad 3^x = 3^2$$

$$x = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad x = 2$$

b We can write the equation as

$$(3^x)^2 = 27 - 6 \times 3^x$$

Let $y = 3^x$. The equation becomes

$$y^2 = 27 - 6y$$

$$y^2 + 6y - 27 = 0$$

$$(y - 3)(y + 9) = 0$$

$$\therefore y = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad y = -9$$

$$3^x = 3 \quad \text{or} \quad 3^x = -9$$

The only solution is $x = 1$, since $3^x > 0$ for all x .

Summary 5C

- One method for solving an exponential equation, without using a calculator, is first to express both sides of the equation as powers with the same base and then to equate the indices (since $a^x = a^y$ implies $x = y$, for any base $a \in \mathbb{R}^+ \setminus \{1\}$).

For example: $2^{x+1} = 8 \Leftrightarrow 2^{x+1} = 2^3 \Leftrightarrow x + 1 = 3 \Leftrightarrow x = 2$

- Equations such as $3^{2x} - 6 \times 3^x - 27 = 0$ can be solved by making a substitution. In this case, substitute $y = 3^x$ to obtain a quadratic equation in y .

Exercise 5C

1 Simplify the following expressions.

a $3x^2y^3 \times 2x^4y^6$

b $\frac{12x^8}{4x^2}$

c $18x^2y^3 \div (3x^4y)$

d $(4x^4y^2)^2 \div (2(x^2y)^4)$

e $(4x^0)^2$

f $15(x^5y^{-2})^4 \div (3(x^4y)^{-2})$

g $\frac{3(2x^2y^3)^4}{2x^3y^2}$

h $(8x^3y^6)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

i $\frac{x^2 + y^2}{x^{-2} + y^{-2}}$

Example 8

2 Solve for x in each of the following.

a $3^x = 81$

b $81^x = 9$

c $2^x = 256$

d $625^x = 5$

e $32^x = 8$

f $5^x = 125$

g $16^x = 1024$

h $2^{-x} = \frac{1}{64}$

Example 9

3 Solve for n in each of the following.

a $5^{2n} \times 25^{2n-1} = 625$

b $4^{2n-2} = 1$

c $4^{2n-1} = \frac{1}{256}$

d $\frac{3^{n-2}}{9^{2-n}} = 27$

e $2^{2n-2} \times 4^{-3n} = 64$

f $2^{n-4} = 8^{4-n}$

g $27^{n-2} = 9^{3n+2}$

h $8^{6n+2} = 8^{4n-1}$

i $125^{4-n} = 5^{6-2n}$

j $2^{n-1} \times 4^{2n+1} = 16$

k $(27 \times 3^n)^n = 27^n \times 3^{\frac{1}{4}}$

Example 10

4 Solve for x .

a $3^{2x} - 2(3^x) - 3 = 0$

b $5^{2x} - 23(5^x) - 50 = 0$

c $5^{2x} - 10(5^x) + 25 = 0$

d $2^{2x} = 6(2^x) - 8$

e $8(3^x) - 6 = 2(3^{2x})$

f $2^{2x} - 20(2^x) = -64$

g $4^{2x} - 5(4^x) = -4$

h $3(3^{2x}) = 28(3^x) - 9$

i $7(7^{2x}) = 8(7^x) - 1$

5D Logarithms and the logarithm laws

Learning intentions

► To be able to define logarithms, use the logarithm laws and solve logarithmic equations.

Consider the statement

$$2^3 = 8$$

This may be written in an alternative form:

$$\log_2 8 = 3$$

which is read as ‘the logarithm of 8 to the base 2 is equal to 3’.

For a a positive real number other than 1, the **logarithm function** with base a is defined as follows:

$$a^x = y \quad \text{is equivalent to} \quad \log_a y = x$$

Note: Since a^x is positive, the expression $\log_a y$ is only defined when y is positive.

Further examples:

- $3^2 = 9$ is equivalent to $\log_3 9 = 2$
- $10^4 = 10\,000$ is equivalent to $\log_{10} 10\,000 = 4$
- $a^0 = 1$ is equivalent to $\log_a 1 = 0$



Example 11

Without the aid of a calculator, evaluate the following:

a $\log_2 32$

b $\log_3 81$

Solution

a Let $\log_2 32 = x$

Then $2^x = 32$

$2^x = 2^5$

Therefore $x = 5$, giving $\log_2 32 = 5$.

b Let $\log_3 81 = x$

Then $3^x = 81$

$3^x = 3^4$

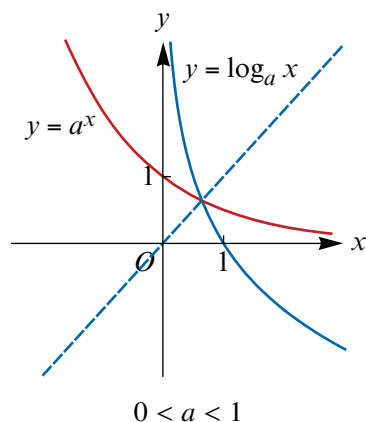
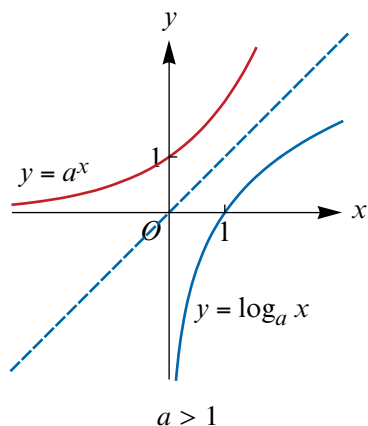
Therefore $x = 4$, giving $\log_3 81 = 4$.

Note: To determine $\log_2 32$, we ask ‘What power of 2 gives 32?’

To determine $\log_3 81$, we ask ‘What power of 3 gives 81?’

Inverse relationship between logarithms and exponentials

When the graph of $y = a^x$ is reflected in the line $y = x$, we obtain the graph of $x = a^y$. By the defining property of logarithms, this corresponds exactly to the graph of $y = \log_a x$.



The logarithm function with base a is the ‘reverse’ of the exponential function with base a . This can be stated more precisely as follows:

Inverse relationship

Let a be a positive real number other than 1. The function with rule $y = \log_a x$, for $x > 0$, and the function with rule $y = a^x$, for $x \in \mathbb{R}$, are inverse to each other in the following way:

■ $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all x

■ $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all positive values of x

The natural logarithm

Earlier in the chapter we defined the number e and the important exponential function $y = e^x$. The corresponding logarithmic function is $y = \log_e x$.

The logarithm function with base e is known as the **natural logarithm** function and is commonly written as $y = \ln x$. That is,

$$\ln x = \log_e x$$

Natural logarithm

The natural logarithm is defined as follows:

$e^x = y$ is equivalent to $\ln y = x$

The natural logarithm function $y = \ln x$, for $x > 0$, and the exponential function $y = e^x$ are inverse to each other in the following way:

■ $\ln(e^x) = x$ for all x

■ $e^{\ln x} = x$ for all positive values of x

Logarithm laws

The index laws are used to establish rules for computations with logarithms.

Law 1: Logarithm of a product

The logarithm of a product is the sum of their logarithms:

$$\log_a(mn) = \log_a m + \log_a n$$

Proof Let $\log_a m = x$ and $\log_a n = y$, where m and n are positive real numbers. Then $a^x = m$ and $a^y = n$, and therefore

$$mn = a^x \times a^y = a^{x+y} \quad (\text{using the first index law})$$

$$\text{Hence } \log_a(mn) = x + y = \log_a m + \log_a n.$$

For example:

$$\begin{aligned} \log_{10} 200 + \log_{10} 5 &= \log_{10}(200 \times 5) \\ &= \log_{10} 1000 = 3 \end{aligned}$$

Law 2: Logarithm of a quotient

The logarithm of a quotient is the difference of their logarithms:

$$\log_a\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) = \log_a m - \log_a n$$

Proof Let $\log_a m = x$ and $\log_a n = y$, where m and n are positive real numbers. Then as before $a^x = m$ and $a^y = n$, and therefore

$$\frac{m}{n} = \frac{a^x}{a^y} = a^{x-y} \quad (\text{using the second index law})$$

$$\text{Hence } \log_a\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) = x - y = \log_a m - \log_a n.$$

For example:

$$\begin{aligned} \log_2 32 - \log_2 8 &= \log_2\left(\frac{32}{8}\right) \\ &= \log_2 4 = 2 \end{aligned}$$

Law 3: Logarithm of a power

$$\log_a(m^p) = p \log_a m$$

Proof Let $\log_a m = x$. Then $a^x = m$, and therefore

$$m^p = (a^x)^p = a^{xp} \quad (\text{using the third index law})$$

$$\text{Hence } \log_a(m^p) = xp = p \log_a m.$$

For example:

$$\log_2 32 = \log_2(2^5) = 5$$

Law 4: Logarithm of $\frac{1}{m}$

$$\log_a(m^{-1}) = -\log_a m$$

Proof Use logarithm law 3 with $p = -1$.

For example:

$$\log_a\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) = \log_a(2^{-1}) = -\log_a 2$$

Law 5

$$\log_a 1 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \log_a a = 1$$

Proof Since $a^0 = 1$, we have $\log_a 1 = 0$. Since $a^1 = a$, we have $\log_a a = 1$.

**Example 12**

Express each of the following as the logarithm of a single term.

a $\log_{10} 5 + 2 \log_{10} 7$

b $2 \ln 3 + \ln 16 - 2 \ln\left(\frac{6}{5}\right)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad & \log_{10} 5 + 2 \log_{10} 7 \\ &= \log_{10} 5 + \log_{10}(7^2) \\ &= \log_{10} 5 + \log_{10} 49 \\ &= \log_{10}(5 \times 49) \\ &= \log_{10} 245 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad & 2 \ln 3 + \ln 16 - 2 \ln\left(\frac{6}{5}\right) \\ &= \ln(3^2) + \ln 16 - \ln\left(\frac{6}{5}\right)^2 \\ &= \ln 9 + \ln 16 - \ln\left(\frac{36}{25}\right) \\ &= \ln\left(9 \times 16 \times \frac{25}{36}\right) \\ &= \ln 100 \end{aligned}$$

Note: For part **b**, remember that $\ln x = \log_e x$.

Logarithmic equations**Example 13**

Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\log_2 x = 5$

b $\log_2(2x - 1) = 4$

c $\ln(3x + 1) = 0$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad & \log_2 x = 5 \\ & x = 2^5 \\ \therefore & x = 32 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad & \log_2(2x - 1) = 4 \\ & 2x - 1 = 2^4 \\ & 2x = 17 \\ \therefore & x = \frac{17}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{c} \quad & \ln(3x + 1) = 0 \\ & 3x + 1 = e^0 \\ & 3x = 1 - 1 \\ \therefore & x = 0 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 14**Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(x-1) + \ln(x+2) = \ln(6x-8)$

b $\log_2 x - \log_2(7-2x) = \log_2 6$

Solution

a $\ln(x-1) + \ln(x+2) = \ln(6x-8)$

$$\ln((x-1)(x+2)) = \ln(6x-8)$$

$$x^2 + x - 2 = 6x - 8$$

$$x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$$

$$(x-3)(x-2) = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 3 \text{ or } x = 2$$

Note: The solutions must satisfy $x-1 > 0$, $x+2 > 0$ and $6x-8 > 0$. Therefore both of these solutions are allowable.

b $\log_2 x - \log_2(7-2x) = \log_2 6$

$$\log_2\left(\frac{x}{7-2x}\right) = \log_2 6$$

$$\frac{x}{7-2x} = 6$$

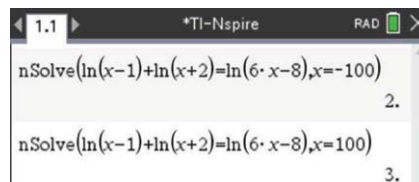
$$x = 42 - 12x$$

$$13x = 42$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{42}{13}$$

**Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS**

- Use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Numerical Solve** as shown. (Note the two extreme guess values used to obtain the two solutions.)
- Check the number of solutions by plotting the graphs of $f_1(x) = \ln(x-1) + \ln(x+2)$ and $f_2(x) = \ln(6x-8)$, and then finding the intersection points.

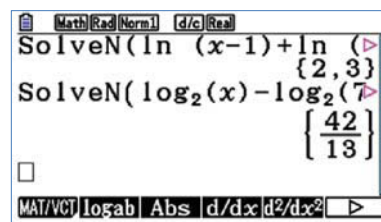


Note: For the natural logarithm (base e), press **ctrl** **e^x**. For logarithms with other bases, press **ctrl** **10^x** and complete the template.

Using the Casio

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, select the numerical solver (**Calculation** **OPTN** **F4**, **SolveN** **F5**).
- Enter the equation and press **EXE**.

Note: For the natural logarithm (base e), press **ln**. For logarithms with other bases, use the $\log_{\square}(\square)$ template, which is accessed from the **Math** menu **F4** by selecting **logab** **F2**.

**Example 15**Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(2x+1) - \ln(x-1) = 4$

b $\ln(x-1) + \ln(x+1) = 1$

Solution

$$\mathbf{a} \quad \ln(2x + 1) - \ln(x - 1) = 4$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{2x + 1}{x - 1}\right) = 4$$

$$\frac{2x + 1}{x - 1} = e^4$$

$$2x + 1 = e^4(x - 1)$$

$$(2 - e^4)x = -(e^4 + 1)$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{e^4 + 1}{e^4 - 2}$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad \ln(x - 1) + \ln(x + 1) = 1$$

$$\ln((x - 1)(x + 1)) = 1$$

$$\ln(x^2 - 1) = 1$$

$$x^2 - 1 = e$$

$$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{e + 1}$$

But the original equation is not defined for $x = -\sqrt{e + 1}$ and so the only solution is $x = \sqrt{e + 1}$.

**Example 16**

Solve the equation $\log_x 27 = \frac{3}{2}$ for x .

Solution

$$\log_x 27 = \frac{3}{2} \text{ is equivalent to } x^{\frac{3}{2}} = 27$$

$$(\sqrt{x})^3 = 3^3$$

$$\sqrt{x} = 3. \quad \therefore x = 9$$

Summary 5D

- For a a positive real number other than 1, the logarithm function base a is defined as follows:

$$a^x = y \text{ is equivalent to } \log_a y = x$$

- To evaluate $\log_a y$ ask the question: ‘What power of a gives y ?’
- Let a be a positive real number other than 1. The logarithmic function $y = \log_a x$, for $x > 0$, and the exponential function $y = a^x$, for $x \in \mathbb{R}$, are inverse to each other in the following way:

- $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all x
- $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all positive values of x

- **The natural logarithm**

The function $y = \log_e x$ is commonly written as $y = \ln x$. Therefore

$$e^x = y \text{ is equivalent to } \ln y = x$$

The natural logarithm function $y = \ln x$, for $x > 0$, and the exponential function $y = e^x$, for x a real number, are inverse to each other in the following way:

- $\ln(e^x) = x$ for all x
- $e^{\ln x} = x$ for all positive values of x

- **Logarithm laws**

$$\mathbf{1} \quad \log_a(mn) = \log_a m + \log_a n$$

$$\mathbf{2} \quad \log_a\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) = \log_a m - \log_a n$$

$$\mathbf{3} \quad \log_a(m^p) = p \log_a m$$

$$\mathbf{4} \quad \log_a(m^{-1}) = -\log_a m$$

$$\mathbf{5} \quad \log_a 1 = 0 \text{ and } \log_a a = 1$$



Exercise 5D

Example 11

1 Evaluate each of the following.

a $\log_{10} 1000$

b $\log_2 \left(\frac{1}{16} \right)$

c $\log_{10} 0.001$

d $\log_2 64$

e $\log_{10} 1\,000\,000$

f $\log_2 \left(\frac{1}{128} \right)$

Example 12

2 Express each of the following as the logarithm of a single term.

a $\log_{10} 2 + \log_{10} 3$

b $\log_{10} 32 - \log_{10} 8$

c $\ln 10 + \ln 100 + \ln 1000$

d $\ln \left(\frac{1}{2} \right) + \ln 14$

e $\ln \left(\frac{1}{3} \right) + \ln \left(\frac{1}{4} \right) + \ln \left(\frac{1}{5} \right)$

f $\ln(uv) + \ln(uv^2) + \ln(uv^3)$

g $2 \ln x + 5 \ln x$

h $\ln(x+y) + \ln(x-y) - \ln(x^2 - y^2)$

Example 13

3 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\log_{10} x = 2$

b $2 \log_2 x = 8$

c $\ln(x-5) = 0$

d $\log_2 x = 6$

e $2 \ln(x+5) = 6$

f $\ln(2x) = 0$

g $\ln(2x+3) = 0$

h $\ln x = -3$

i $2 \ln(x-4) = 10$

Example 14

4 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\log_{10} x = \log_{10} 3 + \log_{10} 5$

b $\ln x = \ln 15 - \ln 3$

c $\ln x = \frac{2}{3} \ln 8$

d $\ln x + \ln(2x-1) = 0$

e $2 \ln x - \ln(x-1) = \ln(x+3)$

5 Express each of the following as the logarithm of a single term.

a $\log_{10} 9 + \log_{10} 3$

b $\log_2 24 - \log_2 6$

c $\frac{1}{2} \ln a - \frac{1}{2} \ln b$

d $1 + \ln a - \frac{1}{3} \ln b$

e $\frac{1}{2} \log_{10} 36 - \frac{1}{3} \log_{10} 27 - \frac{2}{3} \log_{10} 64$

6 Without using your calculator, evaluate each of the following.

a $\log_{10} 5 + \log_{10} 2$

b $\log_{10} 5 + 3 \log_{10} 2 - \log_{10} 4$

c $\log_2 \sqrt{2} + \log_2 1 + 2 \log_2 2$

d $2 \log_{10} 5 + 2 \log_{10} 2 + 1$

e $4 \log_{10} 2 - \log_{10} 16$

7 Simplify the following expressions.

a $\log_3 \left(\frac{1}{3^x} \right)$

b $\log_2 x - 2 \log_2 y + \log_2 (xy^2)$

c $\ln(x^2 - y^2) - \ln(x-y) - \ln(x+y)$

Example 15

8 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(x^2 - 2x + 8) = 2 \ln x$

b $\ln(5x) - \ln(3-2x) = 1$

9 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln x + \ln(3x+1) = 1$

b $8e^{-x} - e^x = 2$

Example 16

10 Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\log_x 81 = 4$

b $\log_x \left(\frac{1}{32} \right) = 5$

11 Solve $2 \ln x + \ln 4 = \ln(9x - 2)$.

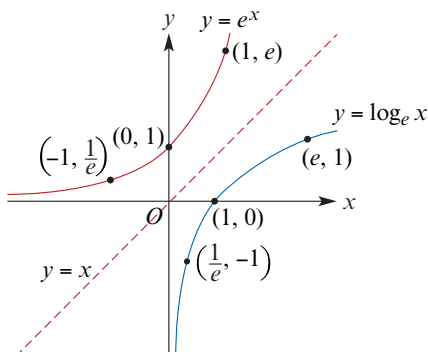
12 Given that $\log_a N = \frac{1}{2}(\log_a 24 - \log_a 0.375 - 6 \log_a 3)$, determine the value of N .

5E Graphing logarithmic functions

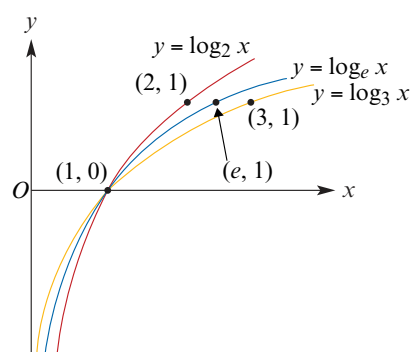
Learning intentions

- To be able to graph logarithmic functions.

The graphs of $y = e^x$ and $y = \log_e x$ are shown on the one set of axes.



The graphs of $y = \log_2 x$, $y = \log_e x$ and $y = \log_3 x$ are shown on the one set of axes.



Note: Recall that we usually write the natural logarithm function $y = \log_e x$ as $y = \ln x$.

For a a positive real number other than 1, the graph of $f(x) = \log_a x$ has the following features:

- Key values are $f\left(\frac{1}{a}\right) = -1$, $f(1) = 0$ and $f(a) = 1$.
- The maximal domain is the positive real numbers and the range is the real numbers.
- The y -axis is a vertical asymptote.

A logarithmic function with $a > 1$ is strictly increasing, and a logarithmic function with $0 < a < 1$ is strictly decreasing.

Graphing transformations of $f(x) = \log_a x$

We now look at transformations applied to the graph of $f(x) = \log_a x$ where $a > 1$.



Example 17

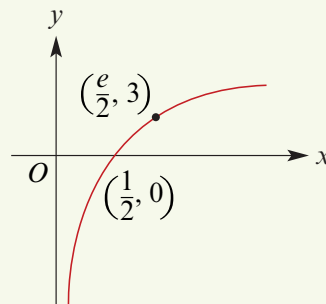
Sketch the graph of $y = 3 \ln(2x)$.

Solution

This is obtained from the graph of $y = \ln x$ by a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}x, 3y)$.

- $(1, 0) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}, 0)$
- $(e, 1) \rightarrow (\frac{1}{2}e, 3)$



**Example 18**

Sketch the graph and state the implied domain of each of the following.

a $y = \log_2(x - 5) + 1$ **b** $y = -\log_3(x + 4)$

Solution

a The graph of $y = \log_2(x - 5) + 1$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \log_2 x$ by a translation of 5 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the positive direction of the y -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 5, y + 1)$.

■ $(1, 0) \rightarrow (6, 1)$

■ $(2, 1) \rightarrow (7, 2)$

The asymptote has equation $x = 5$.

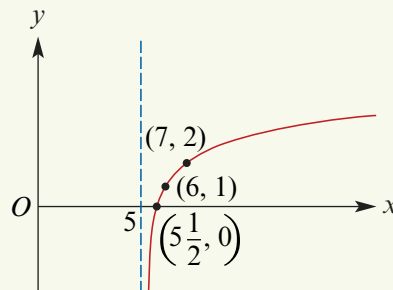
When $y = 0$, $\log_2(x - 5) + 1 = 0$

$$\log_2(x - 5) = -1$$

$$x - 5 = 2^{-1}$$

$$\therefore x = 5\frac{1}{2}$$

The domain of the function is $(5, \infty)$.



b The graph of $y = -\log_3(x + 4)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \log_3 x$ by a reflection in the x -axis and a translation of 4 units in the negative direction of the x -axis.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 4, -y)$.

■ $(1, 0) \rightarrow (-3, 0)$

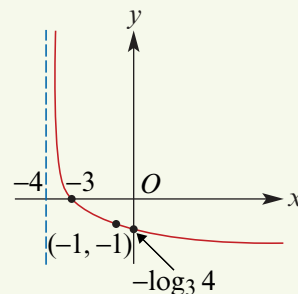
■ $(3, 1) \rightarrow (-1, -1)$

The asymptote has equation $x = -4$.

When $x = 0$, $y = -\log_3(0 + 4)$

$$= -\log_3 4$$

The domain of the function is $(-4, \infty)$.

**Example 19**

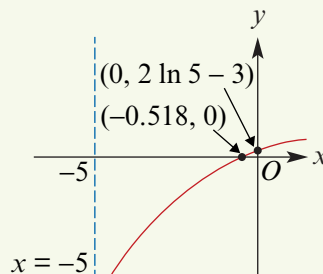
Sketch the graph of $y = 2 \ln(x + 5) - 3$ and state the implied domain.

Solution

The graph of $y = 2 \ln(x + 5) - 3$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \ln x$ by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by a translation of 5 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

The equation of the asymptote is $x = -5$.

The domain of the function is: $x > -5$.



Axis intercepts

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } x = 0, \quad y &= 2 \ln(0 + 5) - 3 \\ &= 2 \ln 5 - 3\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } y = 0, \quad 2 \ln(x + 5) - 3 &= 0 \\ \ln(x + 5) &= \frac{3}{2} \\ x + 5 &= e^{\frac{3}{2}} \\ \therefore x &= e^{\frac{3}{2}} - 5\end{aligned}$$

Exponential and logarithmic graphs with different bases

It is often useful to know how to go from one base to another.

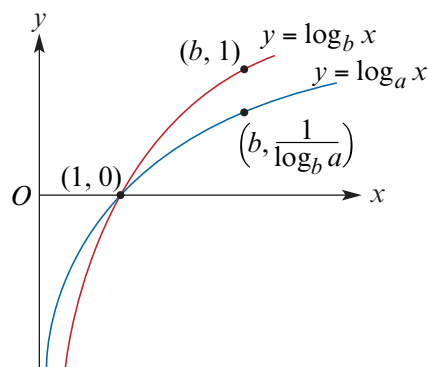
To change the base of $\log_a x$ from a to b (where $a, b > 0$ and $a, b \neq 1$), we use the definition that $y = \log_a x$ implies $a^y = x$. Taking $\log_b$ of both sides:

$$\begin{aligned}\log_b(a^y) &= \log_b x \\ y \log_b a &= \log_b x \\ y &= \frac{\log_b x}{\log_b a}\end{aligned}$$

Since $y = \log_a x$, this gives:

$$\log_a x = \frac{\log_b x}{\log_b a}$$

Hence the graph of $y = \log_a x$ can be obtained from the graph of $y = \log_b x$ by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\log_b a}$ from the x -axis.

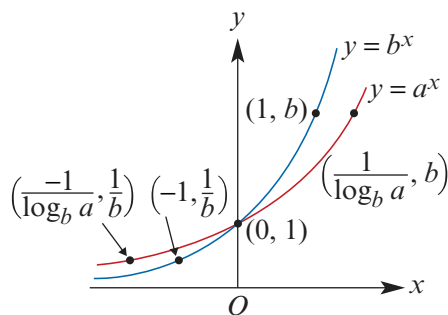


Using the inverse relationship between logarithms and exponentials, we can write $a = b^{\log_b a}$.

This gives:

$$a^x = b^{(\log_b a)x}$$

Hence the graph of $y = a^x$ can be obtained from the graph of $y = b^x$ by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\log_b a}$ from the y -axis.



**Example 20**

Determine a transformation that takes the graph of $y = 2^x$ to the graph of $y = e^x$.

Solution

We can write $e = 2^{\log_2 e}$ and so

$$\begin{aligned} e^x &= (2^{\log_2 e})^x \\ &= 2^{(\log_2 e)x} \end{aligned}$$

The graph of $y = e^x$ is the image of the graph of $y = 2^x$ under a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\log_2 e}$ from the y -axis.

Summary 5E

Let a be a positive real number other than 1.

- The function $y = \log_a x$ has domain the positive real numbers and range the real numbers.
- The graph of $y = \log_a x$ is the reflection of the graph of $y = a^x$ in the line $y = x$, and has the following properties:
 - The y -axis is an asymptote.
 - The x -axis intercept is 1.
 - The x -values are always positive.
 - There is no y -axis intercept.

Exercise 5E**Example 17**

- 1 Sketch the graph of each of the following.

a $y = 2 \ln(3x)$ **b** $y = 4 \ln(5x)$ **c** $y = 2 \ln(4x)$ **d** $y = 3 \ln\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

Example 18

- 2 For each of the following functions, sketch the graph (labelling axis intercepts and asymptotes) and state the maximal domain and range.

a $y = 2 \ln(x - 3)$ **b** $y = \ln(x + 3) - 2$ **c** $y = 2 \ln(x + 1) - 1$
d $y = 2 + \ln(3x - 2)$ **e** $y = -2 \ln(x + 2)$ **f** $y = -2 \ln(x - 2)$
g $y = 1 - \ln(x + 1)$ **h** $y = \ln(2 - x)$ **i** $y + 1 = \ln(4 - 3x)$

Example 19

- 3 Sketch the graph of each of the following. Label the axis intercepts and asymptotes. State the implied domain of each function.

a $y = \log_2(2x)$ **b** $y = \log_{10}(x - 5)$ **c** $y = -\log_{10} x$
d $y = \log_{10}(-x)$ **e** $y = \log_{10}(5 - x)$ **f** $y = 2 \log_2(2x) + 2$
g $y = -2 \log_2(3x)$ **h** $y = \log_{10}(-x - 5) + 2$ **i** $y = 4 \log_2(-3x)$
j $y = 2 \log_2(2 - x) - 6$ **k** $y = \ln(2x - 1)$ **l** $y = -\ln(3 - 2x)$

- 4 Solve each of the following equations using a calculator. Give answers correct to three decimal places.

a $-x + 2 = \ln x$ **b** $\frac{1}{3} \ln(2x + 1) = -\frac{1}{2}x + 1$

5 a Using a calculator, plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f(x) = \ln x$.

b Using the same screen, plot the graphs of:

i $y = f(-x)$ **ii** $y = -f(x)$ **iii** $y = f\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ **iv** $y = f(3x)$

Example 20

6 Determine a transformation that takes the graph of $y = 3^x$ to the graph of $y = e^x$.

7 Determine a transformation that takes the graph of $y = e^x$ to the graph of $y = 2^x$.

5F Solving equations involving exponential and logarithmic functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to solve exponential and logarithmic equations.

Using logarithms to solve exponential equations

If a is a positive real number other than 1, then the statements $a^x = b$ and $\log_a b = x$ are equivalent. This defining property of logarithms may be used in the solution of exponential equations.



Example 21

Solve for x if $2^x = 11$, expressing the answer to two decimal places.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} 2^x = 11 &\Leftrightarrow x = \log_2 11 \\ &= 3.45943 \dots \end{aligned}$$

Therefore $x \approx 3.46$ correct to two decimal places.



Example 22

Solve $e^{2x-1} = 28$. Give the exact answer and the answer to three decimal places.

Solution

$$e^{2x-1} = 28 \Leftrightarrow 2x - 1 = \ln 28$$

Thus $2x - 1 = \ln 28$

$$2x = \ln(28) + 1$$

$$x = \frac{1}{2}(\ln(28) + 1)$$

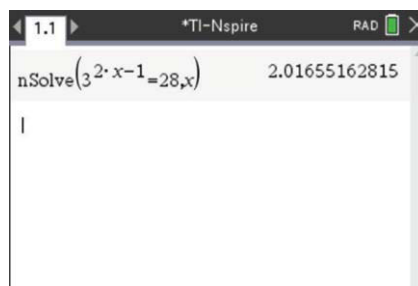
$$\approx 2.166 \quad \text{correct to three decimal places}$$



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Numerical Solve** and complete as shown.
- Round to three decimal places as required:
 $x = 2.017$.

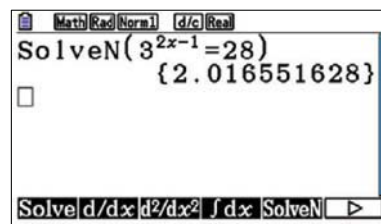
Hint: Check the number of solutions by finding the intersection points of the graphs of $f_1(x) = 3^{2x-1}$ and $f_2(x) = 28$.



Using the Casio

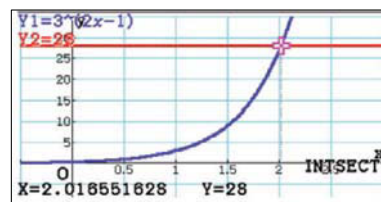
Method 1: Using the numerical solver

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, use the numerical solver (**Calculation** **OPTN** **F4**, **SolveN** **F5**).



Method 2: Using Graph mode

- In **Graph** mode, enter the rules $y = 3^{2x-1}$ and $y = 28$ in Y_1 and Y_2 respectively.
- Select **Draw** **F6** to view the graph. Adjust the View Window **(SHIFT)** **F3** if required.
- To find the intersection point, go to the **G-Solve** menu **(SHIFT)** **F5** and select **Intersection** **F5**.



Example 23

Solve the inequality $0.7^x \geq 0.3$.

Solution

Taking $\log_{10}$ of both sides:

$$\log_{10}(0.7^x) \geq \log_{10} 0.3$$

$$x \log_{10} 0.7 \geq \log_{10} 0.3$$

$$\therefore x \leq \frac{\log_{10} 0.3}{\log_{10} 0.7} \quad (\text{direction of inequality reversed since } \log_{10} 0.7 < 0)$$

Alternatively, we can solve the inequality $0.7^x \geq 0.3$ directly as follows:

Note that $0 < 0.7 < 1$ and thus $y = 0.7^x$ is strictly decreasing. Therefore the inequality $0.7^x \geq 0.3$ holds for $x \leq \log_{0.7} 0.3$.

Solving logarithmic equations

We solved equations involving logarithms in Section 5D. We consider further examples here.



Example 24

Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(3x - 4) = 5$

b $\ln\left(\frac{x-3}{2}\right) = -1$

Solution

a $\ln(3x - 4) = 5$

$$3x - 4 = e^5$$

$$3x = e^5 + 4$$

$$x = \frac{e^5 + 4}{3}$$

b $\ln\left(\frac{x-3}{2}\right) = -1$

$$\frac{x-3}{2} = e^{-1}$$

$$x - 3 = \frac{2}{e}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{2}{e} + 3$$



Example 25

Solve $\ln 25 + \ln x - \ln(x - 1) = 2$.

Solution

$$\ln 25 + \ln x - \ln(x - 1) = 2$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{25x}{x-1}\right) = 2$$

$$\frac{25x}{x-1} = e^2$$

$$x = \frac{e^2(x-1)}{25}$$

$$x(25 - e^2) = -e^2$$

$$x = \frac{-e^2}{25 - e^2}$$



Example 26

If $\log_2 6 = k \log_2 3 + 1$, determine the value of k .

Solution

$$\log_2 6 = k \log_2 3 + 1$$

$$= \log_2(3^k) + \log_2 2$$

$$= \log_2(2 \times 3^k)$$

$$\therefore 6 = 2 \times 3^k$$

$$3 = 3^k$$

$$k = 1$$

Transposing equations

The inverse relationship between logarithms and exponentials can be used when solving and rearranging equations:

- $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all real numbers x
- $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all positive real numbers x



Example 27

Rewrite the equation $y = 2 \ln(x) + 3$ with x as the subject.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} y &= 2 \ln(x) + 3 \\ \frac{y-3}{2} &= \ln x \\ \therefore x &= e^{\frac{y-3}{2}} \end{aligned}$$



Example 28

Rearrange the equation $x = 2 \ln(y-1) + 3$ to express y as a function of x .

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} x &= 2 \ln(y-1) + 3 \\ \frac{x-3}{2} &= \ln(y-1) \\ y-1 &= e^{\frac{x-3}{2}} \\ \therefore y &= e^{\frac{x-3}{2}} + 1 \end{aligned}$$



Example 29

Rewrite the equation $P = Ae^{kt}$ with t as the subject.

Solution

$$P = Ae^{kt}$$

Take logarithms with base e of both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} \ln P &= \ln(Ae^{kt}) \\ &= \ln A + \ln(e^{kt}) \\ &= \ln A + kt \\ \therefore t &= \frac{1}{k}(\ln P - \ln A) \\ &= \frac{1}{k} \ln\left(\frac{P}{A}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Summary 5F

- If a is a positive real number other than 1, then the statements $a^x = b$ and $\log_a b = x$ are equivalent. This defining property of logarithms may be used in the solution of exponential equations and inequalities. For example:
 - $2^x = 5 \Leftrightarrow x = \log_2 5$
 - $2^x \geq 5 \Leftrightarrow x \geq \log_2 5$
 - $0.3^x = 5 \Leftrightarrow x = \log_{0.3} 5$
 - $0.3^x \geq 5 \Leftrightarrow x \leq \log_{0.3} 5$
- An exponential inequality may also be solved by taking $\log_a$ of both sides. For $a > 1$, the direction of the inequality stays the same (as $y = \log_a x$ is strictly increasing). For $0 < a < 1$, the direction of the inequality reverses (as $y = \log_a x$ is strictly decreasing).
- The inverse relationship between logarithms and exponentials is helpful when solving and rearranging equations:
 - $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all real numbers x
 - $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all positive real numbers x

Exercise 5F

Example 21, 22

- Use your calculator to solve each of the following equations, correct to two decimal places.

a $2^x = 6$	b $e^x = 0.7$	c $3^x = 11$	d $e^x = 5$
e $2^{-x} = 5$	f $0.2^x = 3$	g $5^x = 3^{x-1}$	h $8^x = 2005^{x+1}$
i $e^{x-1} = 8$	j $0.3^{x+2} = 0.7$	k $2^{x-1} = 3^{x+1}$	l $1.4^{x+2} = 25(0.9^x)$
m $5^x = 2^{2x-2}$	n $2^{\frac{1}{2}(x+2)} = 3^{x-1}$	o $2^{x+1} \times 3^{x-1} = 100$	
- Solve for x using a graphics calculator. Express answers correct to two decimal places.

a $2^x < 7$	b $e^x > 6$	c $0.2^x > 3$	d $0.2^x \leq 0.4$
- Solve each of the following equations for x . Give exact answers.

a $e^x = 5$	b $e^{2x-1} = 8$	c $e^{3x+1} = 20$
d $e^x = 7$	e $e^x = 6$	f $5^x = 6$
g $3^{2x} - 3^{x+2} + 8 = 0$	h $5^{2x} - 4 \times 5^x - 5 = 0$	

Example 23

- Solve each of the following inequalities for x . Give exact answers.

a $e^x > 52$	b $e^{2x-1} < 40$	c $e^{3x+1} \geq 5$
d $3^{x-5} \leq 30$	e $3^x < 106$	f $5^x < 0.6$

Example 24

- Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(2x - 3) = 4$	b $\ln\left(\frac{x-3}{5}\right) = -2$

Example 25

- Solve each of the following equations for x .

a $\ln(x+2) - \ln x = 2$	b $\log_{10} 60 + \log_{10}(2x) - \log_{10}(x-2) = 3$

- 7 a** Solve $2 \log_{10} 15 + \log_{10}(5 - x) - \log_{10}(4x) = 2$.
b Solve $\log_{10}(1 - 2x) - 2 \log_{10} x = 1 - \log_{10}(2 - 5x)$.
c Solve $\log_{10}(3x + 2) + 6 \log_{10} 2 = 2 + \log_{10}(2x + 1)$.

Example 26

- 8 a** If $\log_2 8 = k \log_2 7 + 2$, determine the value of k .
b If $\log_2 7 - x \log_2 7 = 4$, determine the value of x .
c If $\ln 7 - x \ln 14 = 1$, determine the value of x .

Example 27

- 9** Rewrite the equation $y = 3 \ln(x) - 4$ with x as the subject.

Example 28

- 10** For each of the following functions $y = f(x)$, rearrange the rule to show that x can be expressed as a function of y .

a $y = \ln(2x)$	b $y = 3 \ln(2x) + 1$	c $y = e^x + 2$
d $y = e^{x+2}$	e $y = \ln(2x + 1)$	f $y = 4 \ln(3x + 2)$
g $y = \log_{10}(x + 1)$	h $y = 2e^{x-1}$	

- 11 a** Using a calculator, for each of the following plot the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$, together with the line $y = x$, on the one set of axes.

i $f(x) = \ln x$ and $g(x) = e^x$

ii $f(x) = 2 \ln(x) + 3$ and $g(x) = e^{\frac{x-3}{2}}$

iii $f(x) = \log_{10} x$ and $g(x) = 10^x$

- b** Use your answers to part **a** to comment on the relationship in general between the graphs of $f(x) = a \log_b(x) + c$ and $g(x) = b^{\frac{x-c}{a}}$.

Example 29

- 12** Rewrite the equation $P = Ae^{-kt} + b$ with t as the subject.

- 13** For each of the following formulas, make the pronumeral in brackets the subject.

a $y = 2 \ln(x) + 5$ (x)	b $P = Ae^{-6x}$ (x)
c $y = ax^n$ (n)	d $y = 5 \times 10^x$ (x)
e $y = 5 - 3 \ln(2x)$ (x)	f $y = 6x^{2n}$ (n)
g $y = \ln(2x - 1)$ (x)	h $y = 5(1 - e^{-x})$ (x)

- 14 a** If $a \ln 7 = 3 - \ln 14$, determine the value of a , correct to three significant figures.
b If $\ln 18 = \log_{10} k$, determine the value of k , correct to one decimal place.

- 15** If $u = \log_{e^2} x$, determine in terms of u .

a x **b** $\log_{e^2}(ex)$ **c** $\log_x e^4$

- 16** Solve the equation $\ln x = 16 \log_x e$.

5G Differentiation of e^x

Learning intentions

- To be able to differentiate exponential functions.

In this section we investigate the derivative of functions of the form $f(x) = a^x$. We will see that Euler's number e has the special property that $f'(x) = f(x)$ where $f(x) = e^x$.

First consider $f(x) = 2^x$.

To determine the derivative of f we recall that:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{2^{x+h} - 2^x}{h} \\ &= 2^x \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{2^h - 1}{h} \\ &= 2^x f'(0) \end{aligned}$$

We can investigate this limit numerically to determine that $f'(0) \approx 0.6931$ and therefore

$$f'(x) \approx 0.6931 \times 2^x$$

Now consider $g(x) = 3^x$. Then, as for f , it may be shown that $g'(x) = 3^x g'(0)$. We determine that $g'(0) \approx 1.0986$ and hence

$$g'(x) \approx 1.0986 \times 3^x$$

The question now arises:

Can we find a number b between 2 and 3 such that, if $f(x) = b^x$, then $f'(0) = 1$ and therefore $f'(x) = b^x$?

Using a calculator or a spreadsheet, we can investigate the limit as $h \rightarrow 0$ of $\frac{b^h - 1}{h}$, for various values of b between 2 and 3.

This investigation is carried out in the spreadsheet shown on the right.

Start by taking values for b between 2.71 and 2.72 (first table) and finding $f'(0)$ for each of these values. From these results it may be seen that the required value of b lies between 2.718 and 2.719.

The investigation is continued with values of b between 2.718 and 2.719 (second table). From this the required value of b is seen to lie between 2.7182 and 2.7183.

b	$f'(0)$
2.710	0.996949
2.711	0.997318
2.712	0.997686
2.713	0.998055
2.714	0.998424
2.715	0.998792
2.716	0.999160
2.717	0.999528
2.718	0.999896
2.719	1.000264
2.720	1.000632

b	$f'(0)$
2.7180	0.999896
2.7181	0.999933
2.7182	0.999970
2.7183	1.000007
2.7184	1.000043
2.7185	1.000080
2.7186	1.000117
2.7187	1.000154
2.7188	1.000191
2.7189	1.000227
2.7190	1.000264

The required value of b is in fact Euler's number e , which was introduced earlier in the chapter.

Our results can be recorded:

$$\text{If } f(x) = e^x, \text{ then } f'(x) = e^x.$$

Using the chain rule with the exponential function

We first recall:

The chain rule

If g is differentiable at x and f is differentiable at $g(x)$, then the composite function $q(x) = f(g(x))$ is differentiable at x and

$$q'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)$$

Or using Leibniz notation, where $u = g(x)$ and $y = f(u)$,

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

Next consider $y = e^{kx}$ where $k \in \mathbb{R}$. The chain rule can be used to find the derivative:

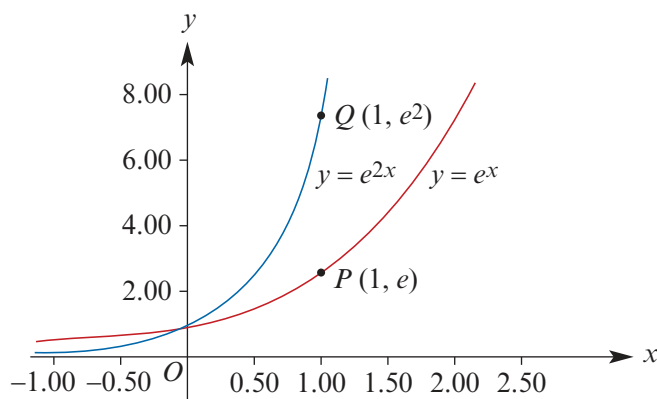
Let $u = kx$. Then $y = e^u$. The chain rule yields

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= e^u \cdot k \\ &= ke^{kx} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{If } f(x) = e^{kx}, \text{ then } f'(x) = ke^{kx}, \text{ where } k \in \mathbb{R}.$$

The graph illustrates the case where $k = 2$:

- the gradient of $y = e^x$ at the point $P(1, e)$ is e
- the gradient of $y = e^{2x}$ at the point $Q(1, e^2)$ is $2e^2$.



**Example 30**

Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a e^{3x}

b e^{-2x}

c e^{2x+1}

d $\frac{1}{e^{2x}} + e^{3x}$

Solution

a Let $y = e^{3x}$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3e^{3x}$.

b Let $y = e^{-2x}$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = -2e^{-2x}$.

c Let $y = e^{2x+1}$. Then

$$y = e^{2x} \cdot e \quad (\text{index laws})$$

$$= e \cdot e^{2x}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = 2e \cdot e^{2x} \\ = 2e^{2x+1}$$

d Let $y = \frac{1}{e^{2x}} + e^{3x}$. Then

$$y = e^{-2x} + e^{3x}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = -2e^{-2x} + 3e^{3x}$$

**Example 31**

Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a e^{x^2}

b e^{x^2+4x}

Solution

a Let $y = e^{x^2}$ and $u = x^2$.

Then $y = e^u$ and the chain rule yields

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ = e^u \cdot 2x \\ = 2xe^{x^2}$$

b Let $y = e^{x^2+4x}$ and $u = x^2 + 4x$.

Then $y = e^u$ and the chain rule yields

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ = e^u(2x + 4) \\ = (2x + 4)e^{x^2+4x}$$

In general, for $h(x) = e^{f(x)}$, the chain rule gives $h'(x) = f'(x)e^{f(x)}$.

**Example 32**

Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = e^{2x} + 4$ at the point:

a $(0, 5)$

b $(1, e^2 + 4)$

Solution

$$\text{We have } \frac{dy}{dx} = 2e^{2x}.$$

a When $x = 0$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2$.

The gradient at $(0, 5)$ is 2.

b When $x = 1$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2e^2$.

The gradient at $(1, e^2 + 4)$ is $2e^2$.

The chain rule can also be used to differentiate functions similar to the following.



Example 33

Determine the derivative of $(e^{2x} + x)^{\frac{2}{3}}$ with respect to x .

Solution

$$\text{Let } y = (e^{2x} + x)^{\frac{2}{3}}$$

$$\text{Let } u = e^{2x} + x. \text{ Then } y = u^{\frac{2}{3}}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= \frac{2}{3} u^{-\frac{1}{3}} \times (2e^{2x} + 1) \\ &= \frac{2}{3} (e^{2x} + x)^{-\frac{1}{3}} \times (2e^{2x} + 1) \\ &= \frac{2(2e^{2x} + 1)}{3(e^{2x} + x)^{\frac{1}{3}}} \end{aligned}$$



Example 34

For each of the following, first determine the derivative with respect to x . Then evaluate the derivative at $x = 2$, given that $f(2) = 0$, $f'(2) = 4$ and $f'(e^2) = 5$.

a $e^{f(x)}$

b $f(e^x)$

Solution

a Let $y = e^{f(x)}$ and $u = f(x)$. Then $y = e^u$.

By the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= e^u f'(x) \\ &= e^{f(x)} f'(x) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{When } x = 2, \frac{dy}{dx} = e^0 \times 4 = 4.$$

b Let $y = f(e^x)$ and $u = e^x$. Then $y = f(u)$.

By the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= f'(u) \cdot e^x \\ &= f'(e^x) \cdot e^x \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{When } x = 2, \frac{dy}{dx} = f'(e^2) \cdot e^2 = 5e^2.$$

Rates of change

The derivative was defined geometrically in Chapter 5 and in Mathematical Methods Units 1&2. However, the process of differentiation may also be used to tackle many kinds of problems involving rates of change.

For the function with rule $f(x)$:

- The **average rate of change** for $x \in [a, b]$ is given by $\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$.
- The **instantaneous rate of change** of f with respect to x when $x = a$ is given by $f'(a)$.



Example 35

A pot of liquid is put on the stove. When the temperature of the liquid reaches 80°C , the pot is taken off the stove and placed on the kitchen bench. The temperature in the kitchen is 20°C . The temperature of the liquid, $T^\circ\text{C}$, at time t minutes is given by

$$T = 20 + 60e^{-0.3t}$$

- a** Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time in terms of T .
- b** Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time when:
 - i** $T = 80$ **ii** $T = 30$

Solution

- a** By rearranging $T = 20 + 60e^{-0.3t}$, we see that $e^{-0.3t} = \frac{T - 20}{60}$.

Now $T = 20 + 60e^{-0.3t}$

$$\therefore \frac{dT}{dt} = -18e^{-0.3t}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } \frac{dT}{dt} &= -18 \left(\frac{T - 20}{60} \right) \\ &= -3 \left(\frac{T - 20}{10} \right) \\ &= 0.3(20 - T) \end{aligned}$$

- b i** When $T = 80$, $\frac{dT}{dt} = 0.3(20 - 80) = -18$ **ii** When $T = 30$, $\frac{dT}{dt} = 0.3(20 - 30) = -3$

The liquid is cooling at a rate of 18°C per minute.

The liquid is cooling at a rate of 3°C per minute.

Relative growth rate

The **relative growth rate** of a function f is defined to be $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$.

For an exponential function of the form $f(x) = Ae^{kx}$, the relative growth rate is

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{kAe^{kx}}{Ae^{kx}} = k$$

Hence the relative growth rate of $f(x) = Ae^{kx}$ is the constant k .

Example 36

The growth of a population of small marsupials can be modelled by a rule of the form $n(t) = Ae^{kt}$, where $n(t)$ is the size of the population after t years.

- a** If the initial population is 600 and the relative growth rate is 5%, find the rule for $n(t)$.
b When is the population increasing at a rate of 50 per year? (Give the value of t correct to one decimal place.)

Solution

- a** The relative growth rate is 5%,
 so $k = 0.05$.

Since $n(0) = 600$, we obtain

$$600 = Ae^{0.05 \times 0}$$

$$\therefore A = 600$$

$$\text{Hence } n(t) = 600e^{0.05t}.$$

- b** Solve the equation $n'(t) = 50$ for t :

$$n'(t) = 50$$

$$30e^{0.05t} = 50$$

$$e^{0.05t} = \frac{5}{3}$$

$$0.05t = \ln\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)$$

$$\therefore t \approx 10.2$$

The growth rate is 50 per year after 10.2 years.

Summary 5G

- If $f(x) = e^{kx}$, then $f'(x) = ke^{kx}$, where $k \in \mathbb{R}$.
- If $h(x) = e^{f(x)}$, then $h'(x) = f'(x)e^{f(x)}$.

Exercise 5G**Example 30**

- 1** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a e^{5x}

b $7e^{-3x}$

c $3e^{-4x} + e^x - x^2$

d $\frac{e^{2x} - e^x + 1}{e^x}$

e $\frac{4e^{2x} - 2e^x + 1}{2e^{2x}}$

f $e^{2x} + e^4 + e^{-2x}$

Example 31

- 2** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a e^{-2x^3}

b $e^{x^2} + 3x + 1$

c $e^{x^2-4x} + 3x + 1$

d $e^{x^2-2x+3} - x$

e $e^{\frac{1}{x}}, x \neq 0$

f $e^{x^{\frac{1}{2}}}$

Example 32

- 3** Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = e^{\frac{x}{2}} + 4x$ at the point:

a $(0, 1)$

b $(1, e^{\frac{1}{2}} + 4)$

- 4** Determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = e^{x^2+3x} + 2x$ at the point:

a $(0, 1)$

b $(1, e^4 + 2)$

Example 31, 33

5 Determine the derivative with respect to x of:

a $(e^{2x} - 1)^4$

b $e^{\sqrt{x}}$

c $\sqrt{e^x - 1}$

d $e^{x^{\frac{2}{3}}}$

e $e^{(x-1)(x-2)}$

f e^{e^x}

Example 34

6 Determine the derivative with respect to x of:

a $e^{2f(x)}$

b $f(e^{2x})$

7 A car tyre is inflated to a pressure of 30 units. Eight hours later it is found to have deflated to a pressure of 10 units. The pressure, P , at time t hours is given by

$$P = P_0 e^{-\lambda t}$$

a Determine the values of P_0 and λ .

b At what time would the pressure be 8 units?

c Find the rate of loss of pressure at:

i time $t = 0$

ii time $t = 8$

Example 35

8 A liquid is heated to a temperature of 90°C and then allowed to cool in a room in which the temperature is 15°C . While the liquid is cooling, its temperature, $T^\circ\text{C}$, at time t minutes is given by $T = 15 + 75e^{-0.3t}$.

a Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time $\frac{dT}{dt}$, in terms of T .

b Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time when:

i $T = 90$

ii $T = 60$

iii $T = 30$

9 A manufacturing company has a daily output on day t of a production run given by

$$y = 600(1 - e^{-0.5t})$$

where the first day of the production run is $t = 0$.

a Sketch the graph of y against t . (Assume a continuous model.)

b Determine the instantaneous rate of change of output y with respect to t , $\frac{dy}{dt}$, on the 10th day.

10 A culture contains 1000 bacteria and 5 hours later the number has increased to 10 000. The number, N , of bacteria present at any time, t hours, is given by $N = Ae^{kt}$.

a Determine the values of A and k .

b Determine the rate of growth at time t .

c Show that, at time t , the rate of growth is proportional to the number of bacteria present.

d Determine this rate of growth when:

i $t = 4$

ii $t = 50$

11 For each of the following, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$ in terms of y :

a $y = e^{-2x}$

b $y = Ae^{kx}$

- 12** The mass, m kg, of radioactive lead remaining in a sample t hours after observations began is given by $m = 2e^{-0.2t}$.
- a** Determine the mass left after 12 hours.
 - b** Determine how long it takes for the mass to fall to half of its value at $t = 0$.
 - c** Determine how long it takes for the mass to fall to **i** one-quarter and **ii** one-eighth of its value at $t = 0$.
 - d** Express the rate of decay as a function of m .

Example 36

- 13** The spread of a disease can be modelled by a rule of the form $N = Ae^{kt}$, where N is the number of people who have been infected after t days. When the disease is first identified ($t = 0$), there are 20 infected people. The relative growth rate is 10%.
- a** State the values of the constants A and k .
 - b** What is the initial rate of increase of the disease?
 - c** When does the rate of increase reach 100 people per day?

5H Differentiation of the natural logarithm function

Learning intentions

- To be able to differentiate the natural logarithm function.

For the function with rule $f(x) = e^x$, we have seen that $f'(x) = e^x$.

This will be used to determine the derivative of the function with rule $g(x) = \ln(kx)$, where k is a positive constant.

Let $y = \ln(kx)$ and solve for x :

$$e^y = kx$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{k}e^y$$

From our observation above:

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{1}{k}e^y$$

Since $e^y = kx$, this gives

$$\frac{dx}{dy} = \frac{kx}{k} = x$$

$$\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}$$

If $f(x) = \ln(kx)$, then $f'(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, where $k \in \mathbb{R}^+$.

Note: Here both the function f and its derivative f' have domain $\mathbb{R}^+$.

**Example 37**

Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $\ln(5x)$, $x > 0$

b $\ln(5x + 3)$, $x > -\frac{3}{5}$

Solution

a Let $y = \ln(5x)$ for $x > 0$.

Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x}$.

Alternatively, let $u = 5x$. Then
 $y = \ln u$ and the chain rule gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} = \frac{1}{u} \cdot 5 \\ &= \frac{5}{u} \\ &= \frac{1}{x}\end{aligned}$$

b Let $y = \ln(5x + 3)$ for $x > -\frac{3}{5}$.

Let $u = 5x + 3$. Then $y = \ln u$ and
the chain rule gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= \frac{1}{u} \cdot 5 \\ &= \frac{5}{u} \\ &= \frac{5}{5x + 3}\end{aligned}$$

In general, for $y = \ln(ax + b)$, the chain rule gives $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a}{ax + b}$.

**Example 38**

Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $\ln(x^2 + 2)$

b $(\ln x)^2$, $x > 0$

Solution

a We use the chain rule.

Let $y = \ln(x^2 + 2)$ and $u = x^2 + 2$.

Then $y = \ln u$.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= \frac{1}{u} \cdot 2x \\ &= \frac{2x}{x^2 + 2}\end{aligned}$$

b We use the chain rule.

Let $y = (\ln x)^2$ and $u = \ln x$.

Then $y = u^2$.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= 2u \cdot \frac{1}{x} \\ &= \frac{2 \ln x}{x}\end{aligned}$$

Summary 5H

■ If $y = \ln(ax + b)$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a}{ax + b}$.

■ If $h(x) = \ln(f(x))$, then the chain rule gives $h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$.

Exercise 5H

Example 37

- 1 Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $y = 2 \ln x$	b $y = 2 \ln(2x)$	c $y = x^2 + 3 \ln(2x)$
d $y = 3 \ln x + \frac{1}{x}$	e $y = 3 \ln(4x) + x$	f $y = \ln(x + 1)$
g $y = \ln(2x + 4)$	h $y = \ln(3x - 1)$	i $y = \ln(6x - 1)$

Example 38

- 2 Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $y = \ln(x^3)$	b $y = (\ln x)^3$	c $y = \ln(x^2 + x - 1)$
d $y = \ln(x^3 + x^2)$	e $y = \ln((2x + 3)^2)$	f $y = \ln((3 - 2x)^2)$

- 3 For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 1)$	b $f(x) = \ln(e^x)$

- 4 Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point corresponding to the given value of x .

a $y = \ln x$, $x > 0$, at $x = e$	b $y = \ln(x^2 + 1)$ at $x = e$
c $y = \ln(-x)$, $x < 0$, at $x = -e$	d $y = x + \ln x$ at $x = 1$
e $y = \ln(x^2 - 2x + 2)$ at $x = 1$	f $y = \ln(2x - 1)$ at $x = \frac{3}{2}$

- 5 Determine $f'(1)$ if $f(x) = \ln(\sqrt{x^2 + 1})$.

- 6 Differentiate $\ln(1 + x + x^2)$.

- 7 If $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 1)$, find $f'(3)$.

- 8 Determine the y -coordinate and gradient of the tangent to the curve at the given value of x .

a $y = \ln(2x + 2) - x^2$, at $x = 1$	b $y = 6x + 1 - \ln(2x)$, at $x = 4$
c $y = e^{\frac{x}{5}} - \ln\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ at $x = 1$	d $y = e^{\frac{x}{3}} - \ln\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ at $x = 1$

- 9 Let $f(t) = 2t + 12 \ln(t + 2)$, $t \geq 0$.

- Determine $f'(t)$.
- Determine $f'(0)$ and $f'(3)$.
- Solve the equation $f'(t) = 8$ for t .

- 10 Let $f(x) = 15 \ln(x + 2)$.

- Determine the value of a such that $f'(a) = 5$.
- The line $y = 5x + c$ meets the curve $y = f(x)$ at $(a, f(a))$ where a has the value determined in part **a**. Determine the value of c .

Note: You may use the equation of the tangent at the point $(a, f(a))$ here which is discussed in the following chapter but also in Mathematical Methods units 1&2. It is not necessary to do so.

- 11** Let $y = \ln(x + 3) - \ln(x + 2)$. Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Give your answer in the form $\frac{-1}{g(x)}$ where $g(x)$ is a quadratic function.

Note: You may use the quotient rule here which is discussed in the following chapter but also in Mathematical Methods units 1&2. It is not necessary to do so.

- 12** Given that $f(0) = 2$ and $f'(0) = 4$, determine $\frac{d}{dx}(\ln(f(x)))$ when $x = 0$.

- 13** You will need to use your graphics calculator. A population of small insects grows according to the model

$$N(t) = 2e^{\frac{t+5}{5}} + 5 - \ln(t + 1), \quad 0 \leq t \leq 30$$

where $N(t)$ is the number of bacteria present after t days.

- a** Evaluate $N(0)$ and $N(2)$. Give your answer to the nearest whole number.
 - b** Sketch the graph of $y = N(t)$.
 - c** After how many days has the population passed 100?
 - d** Determine the rate of increase of the population, $N'(t)$.
 - e** Let $R(t) = N'(t)$. Determine $R'(t)$ to show that the rate is always increasing.
 - f** Determine the value of t for which $N'(t) = 100$. Give your answer to the nearest day.
- 14** Human memory of certain information seems to deteriorate over time. For example, suppose a student learns Latin so well that on an initial exam they scores 95. Over time and without practice their score on comparable examinations decreases according to the rule $m(t) = 95 - 10 \ln(t + 1)$
- a** What score does the model predict for the examination for $t = 3$? Give your answer to the nearest integer.
 - b** Sketch the graph of $y = m(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 50$.
 - c** What is the rate of 'score change' with respect to time after
 - i** 9 days **ii** 19 days. **iii** 30 days?

5I Determining rules for the graphs of exponential and logarithmic functions

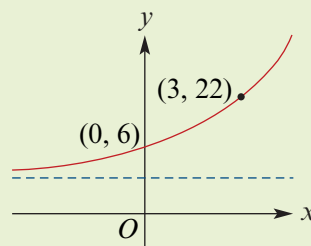
Learning intentions

- To be able to determine rules for logarithmic and exponential functions from their graphs.



Example 39

The rule for the function with the graph shown is of the form $y = ae^x + b$. Determine the values of a and b .



Solution

When $x = 0$, $y = 6$ and when $x = 3$, $y = 22$:

$$6 = ae^0 + b \quad (1)$$

$$22 = ae^3 + b \quad (2)$$

Subtract (1) from (2):

$$16 = a(e^3 - e^0)$$

$$16 = a(e^3 - 1)$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{16}{e^3 - 1}$$

From equation (1):

$$b = 6 - a$$

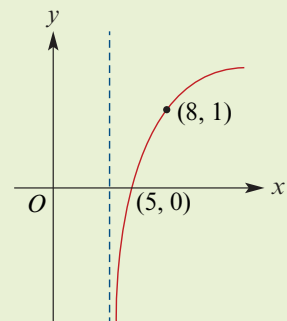
$$= 6 - \frac{16}{e^3 - 1}$$

$$= \frac{6e^3 - 22}{e^3 - 1}$$

The function has rule $y = \left(\frac{16}{e^3 - 1}\right)e^x + \frac{6e^3 - 22}{e^3 - 1}$.

**Example 40**

The rule for the function with the graph shown is of the form $y = a \ln(x + b)$. Determine the values of a and b .

**Solution**

$$0 = a \ln(5 + b) \quad (1)$$

$$1 = a \ln(8 + b) \quad (2)$$

From (1): $\ln(5 + b) = 0$

$$5 + b = e^0$$

$$\therefore b = -4$$

Substitute in (2): $1 = a \ln 4$

$$\therefore a = \frac{1}{\ln 4}$$

The rule is $y = \frac{1}{\ln 4} \ln(x - 4)$.

Explanation

Form two equations in a and b by substituting into the rule $y = a \ln(x + b)$:

■ $y = 0$ when $x = 5$

■ $y = 1$ when $x = 8$

**Example 41**

Given that $y = Ae^{bt}$ with $y = 6$ when $t = 1$ and $y = 8$ when $t = 2$, determine A and b .

Solution

$$6 = Ae^b \quad (1)$$

$$8 = Ae^{2b} \quad (2)$$

Divide (2) by (1): $\frac{4}{3} = e^b$

$$\therefore b = \ln \frac{4}{3}$$

Substitute in (1): $6 = Ae^{\ln \frac{4}{3}}$

$$6 = \frac{4}{3}A$$

$$\therefore A = \frac{18}{4} = \frac{9}{2}$$

The rule is $y = \frac{9}{2}e^{\left(\ln \frac{4}{3}\right)t}$.

Explanation

Form two equations in A and b by substituting into the rule $y = Ae^{bt}$:

■ $y = 6$ when $t = 1$

■ $y = 8$ when $t = 2$

$$e^{\ln \frac{4}{3}} = \frac{4}{3} \text{ since } e^{\ln a} = a \text{ for all } a > 0$$

Note that $y = \frac{9}{2}\left(e^{\ln \frac{4}{3}}\right)^t = \frac{9}{2}\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^t$

Exercise 5I**Example 39**

- 1 An exponential function has rule $y = a \times e^x + b$ and the points with coordinates $(0, 5)$ and $(4, 11)$ are on the graph of the function. Determine the values of a and b .

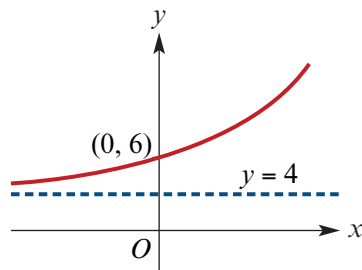
Example 40

- 2 A logarithmic function has rule $y = a \ln(x + b)$ and the points with coordinates $(5, 0)$ and $(10, 2)$ are on the graph of the function. Determine the values of a and b .

- 3 The graph shown has rule

$$y = ae^x + b$$

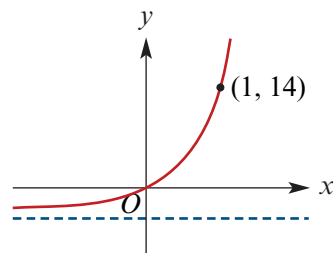
Determine the values of a and b .



- 4 The rule for the function for which the graph is shown is of the form

$$y = ae^x + b$$

Determine the values of a and b .



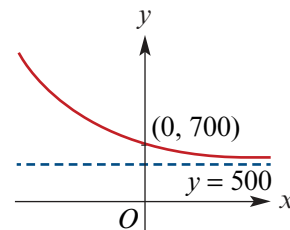
Example 41

5 Determine the values of a and b such that the graph of $y = ae^{-bx}$ goes through the points $(3, 50)$ and $(6, 10)$.

6 The rule for the function f is of the form

$$f(x) = ae^{-x} + b$$

Determine the values of a and b .

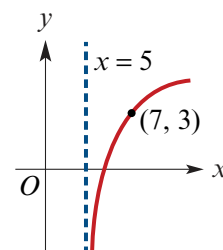


7 Determine the values of a and b such that the graph of $y = a \log_2 x + b$ goes through the points $(8, 10)$ and $(32, 14)$.

8 The rule of the graph shown is of the form

$$y = a \log_2(x - b)$$

Determine the values of a and b .



9 Determine the values of a and b such that the graph of $y = ae^{bx}$ goes through the points $(3, 10)$ and $(6, 50)$.

10 Determine the values of a and b such that the graph of $y = a \log_2(x - b)$ passes through the points $(5, 2)$ and $(7, 4)$.

11 The points $(3, 10)$ and $(5, 12)$ lie on the graph of $y = a \ln(x - b) + c$. The graph has a vertical asymptote with equation $x = 1$. Determine the values of a , b and c .

12 The graph of the function with rule $f(x) = a \ln(-x) + b$ passes through the points $(-2, 6)$ and $(-4, 8)$. Determine the values of a and b .

5J Modelling data using a graphics calculator

Learning intentions

- To be able to model data using a graphics calculator.

Scientists, economists and people in many other professions need to interpret data. This is often done by displaying the data in tabular or graphical form, and then finding a rule that ‘fits’ the data. In this section, we look at fitting sets of data using a graphics calculator.

The investigation of how well a rule fits the data requires statistical analysis, which is not part of this course. The examples in this section are therefore confined to finding a suitable rule. A rule that fits the data is called a **mathematical model**. The process of fitting a model to data is called **regression**.

Regression using a graphics calculator

The following example shows how to attempt linear regression by hand.



Example 42

The table gives observed values of variables x and y , which are claimed to be related by a linear equation $y = ax + b$. Without using technology, find possible values for a and b .

x	2	5	7	8	11	14	16
y	8	15	18	20	28	35	40

Solution

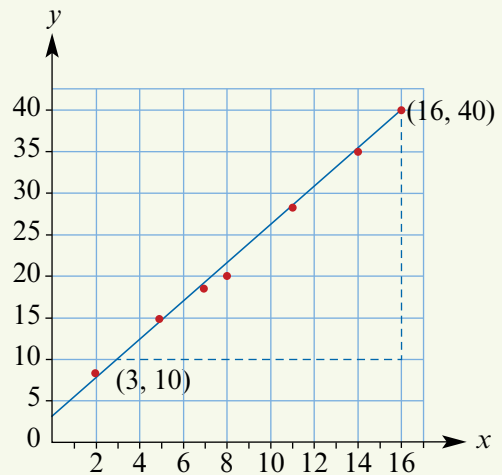
Plot the data points and draw a 'line of best fit'. Use two points on the line to determine its equation.

Here we obtain

$$y - 10 = \frac{30}{13}(x - 3)$$

So the rule $y = 2.31x + 3.08$ provides a model for the experimental data.

Note: The **residual** for a given x -value is the difference between the y -values from the data and the model. A table of residuals can give an indication as to how well the model fits the data.



x	2	5	7	8	11	14	16
y (data)	8	15	18	20	28	35	40
y (model)	7.70	14.63	19.25	21.56	28.49	35.42	40.04
Residual	0.30	0.37	-1.25	-1.56	-0.49	-0.42	-0.04

The next example shows how to use a graphics calculator to fit a linear model to data. The same steps can be followed to fit other models to data as appropriate (including quadratic, sinusoidal, exponential and logarithmic models).

Note: When you use your graphics calculator to fit a linear model to data, it will also give the value of r^2 , called the **coefficient of determination**. This is a statistical measure of how well the model fits the data. If $r^2 = 1$, then the model fits the data perfectly. The closer that r^2 is to 1, the better the fit.



Example 43

The table gives observed values of variables x and y , which are claimed to be related by a linear equation $y = ax + b$. Using technology, determine possible values for a and b .

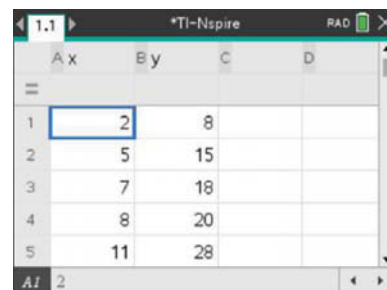
x	2	5	7	8	11	14	16
y	8	15	18	20	28	35	40



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

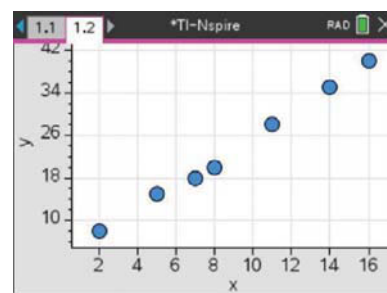
Step 1: Enter the data

- Insert a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page.
- Enter the data in columns named x and y as shown.



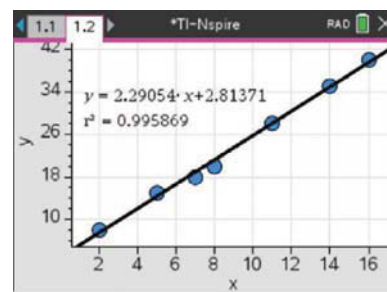
Step 2: Plot the data

- Insert a **Data & Statistics** page.
- Click on the 'Click to add variable' box on the x -axis and select x .
- Repeat for the y -axis and select y .



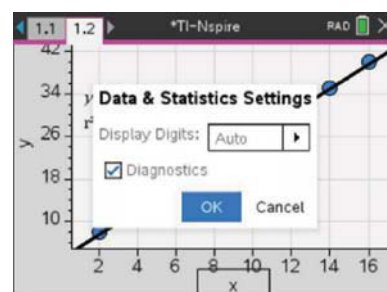
Step 3: Fit a model to the data

- Determine the linear regression model using **menu** > **Analyze** > **Regression** > **Show Linear (mx+b)**. The plot and the superimposed regression line are displayed as shown.
- The equation of the regression line with coefficients correct to 2 decimal places is $y = 2.29x + 2.81$.

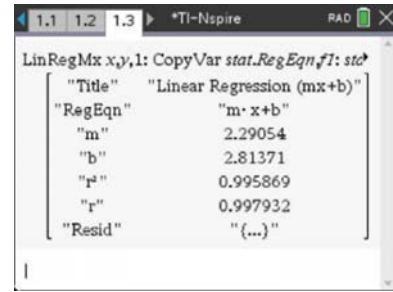


Statistical information

- If the value of r^2 is not showing on the graph, then you can turn on **Diagnostics** as follows:
 - In a **Data & Statistics** page, go to **menu** > **Settings**.
 - Tick the option **Diagnostics**, press **tab** to select **OK** and press **enter**.



- A full display of the statistical information can be shown on a **Calculator** page using **menu** > **Statistics** > **Stat Calculations** > **Linear Regression (mx+b)**.



Other regression models

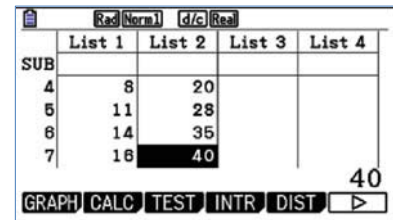
The same method can be used to fit different types of curves to data. In Step 3, choose a different option from **menu** > **Analyze** > **Regression**. Some of the options include:

- **Show Quadratic**
- **Show Exponential**
- **Show Logarithmic**

Using the Casio

Step 1: Enter the data

- Press **MENU** **(2)** to select **Statistics** mode.
- Enter the x -values in List1 and the y -values in List2 as shown.

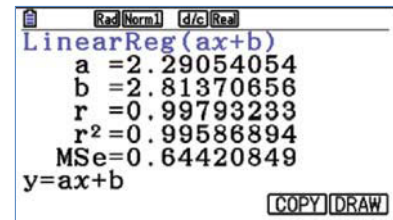


Step 2: Plot the data

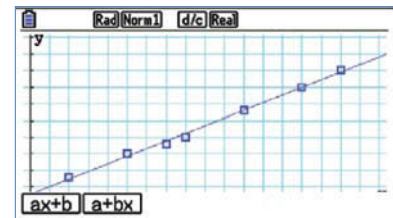
- Select **Graph** **(F1)**, then **Graph1** **(F1)**.

Step 3: Fit a model to the data

- To fit a line $y = ax + b$ to the data, go to **Calculation** **(F1)**, **X** **(F2)**, then **ax+b** **(F1)**.
- The equation of the regression line is $y = 2.29x + 2.81$.



- Select **Draw** **(F6)** to view the graph of the data with the superimposed regression line.



Other regression models

The same method can be used to fit different types of curves to data. In Step 3, choose a different option from the **Calculation** menu. Some options are given in the table below.

Model	Form	Option
Linear	$y = ax + b$	X (F2) , ax+b (F1)
Quadratic	$y = ax^2 + bx + c$	X^2 (F4)
Exponential	$y = ab^x$	Exp (F6) (F3) , ab^x (F2)
Exponential	$y = ae^{bx}$	Exp (F6) (F3) , ae^{bx} (F1)
Logarithmic	$y = a + b \ln x$	Log (F6) (F2)

Changing to 'linear form'

Sometimes we can understand a set of data better by 'transforming' the variables. This is illustrated by the next example.



Example 44

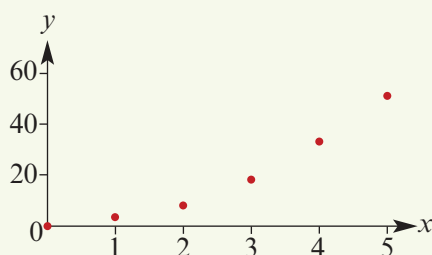
An experiment was conducted to determine the relationship between two variables x and y . The results are shown in the table.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
y	1	3	8	19	33	51

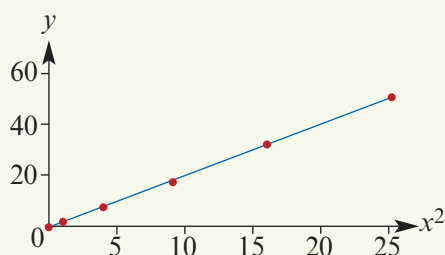
- a** Plot the graph of y against x .
- b** Plot the graph of y against x^2 .
- c** Fit a rule of the form $y = ax^2 + b$.

Solution

- a** Graph of y against x :



- b** Graph of y against x^2 :



- c** The graph of y against x^2 is 'approximately linear'. This suggests that the data can be modelled by a rule of the form $y = ax^2 + b$.

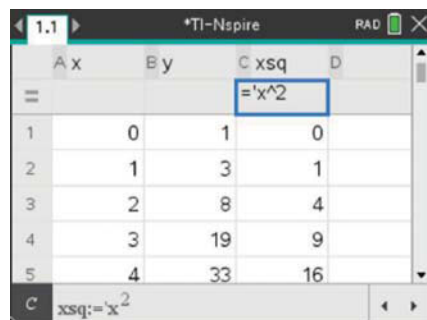
By fitting a straight line to the graph in part **b**, we obtain the rule

$$y = 2x^2 + 0.7$$



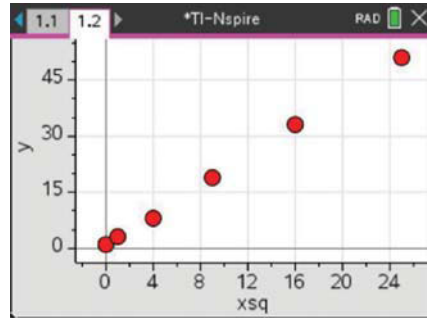
Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Insert a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page.
- Enter the data in columns named x and y .
- Label the third column as xsq (for x^2).
- To generate the third column, place the cursor in the formula line as shown and enter the formula $=x^2$. To obtain x in this formula, press **(var)** and select x from the dropdown list.
- Press **(enter)** to populate the third list.

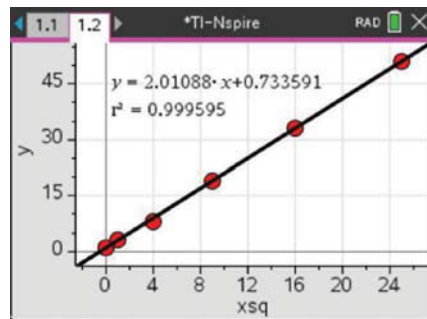


Note: If you press $\boxed{X}$ instead of $\boxed{\text{var}}$, you will be prompted as to whether you mean column X or variable x . Select variable x .

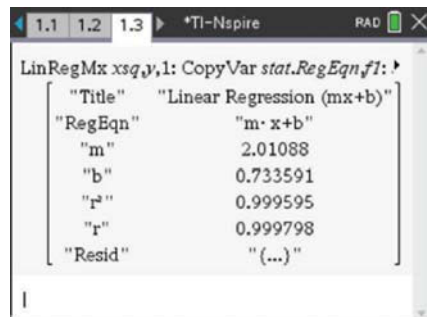
- Insert a **Data & Statistics** page.
- Click on the 'Click to add variable' box on the x -axis and select x_{sq} .
- Repeat for the y -axis and select y .



- Determine the linear regression model using $\boxed{\text{menu}} > \text{Analyze} > \text{Regression} > \text{Show Linear (mx+b)}$. The plot and the superimposed regression line are displayed as shown.
- Hence the data is modelled by the rule $y = 2.011x^2 + 0.734$.



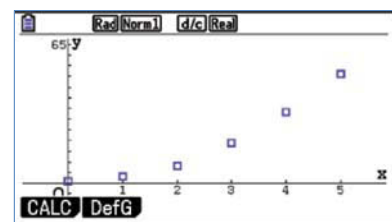
- A full display of the statistical information can be shown on a **Calculator** page using $\boxed{\text{menu}} > \text{Statistics} > \text{Stat Calculations} > \text{Linear Regression (mx+b)}$.



Using the Casio

a To graph y against x :

- Press $\boxed{\text{MENU}} \boxed{2}$ to select **Statistics** mode.
- Enter the x -values in List1 and the y -values in List2.
- Select **Graph** $\boxed{\text{F1}}$, **Graph1** $\boxed{\text{F1}}$.



b To graph y against x^2 :

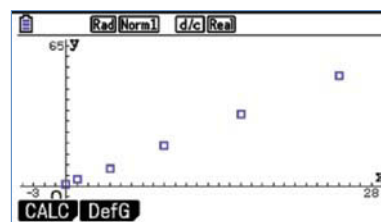
- Move the cursor to the top of List3.
- To generate List3, enter the formula List1² as follows:

(OPTN) (F1) (F1) (1) (x²) (EXE)

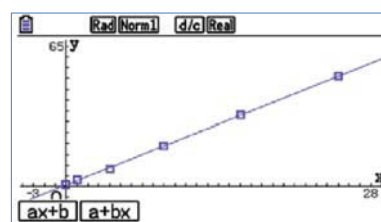
- Change the settings for Graph2 so that it is the graph of List2 (y) against List3 (x^2) as follows:
 - Select **Graph** (F1), **Set** (F6), **Graph2** (F2).
 - Move the cursor down to **XList**.
 - Change the setting to List3: (F1) (3) (EXE)
 - Press (EXIT).
- Select **Graph2** (F2) to view the graph.

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	0	1	0	
2	1	3	1	
3	2	8	4	
4	3	19	9	

StatGraph2
Graph Type : Scatter
XList : List3
YList : List2
Frequency : 1
Mark Type : $\square$
Color Link : Off
LIST



LinearReg(ax+b)
a = 2.01088101
b = 0.73359073
r = 0.99979769
r² = 0.99959542
MSe = 0.19427869
y = ax + b
COPY **DRAW**



c To determine the rule $y = ax^2 + b$:

- Select linear regression using **Calculation** (F1), **X** (F2), **ax+b** (F1).
- Hence the data is modelled by the rule $y = 2.011x^2 + 0.734$.
- Select **Draw** (F6) to view the graph.

Using logarithmic scales

In Mathematical Methods Units 1&2, we saw how to convert an exponential graph into a straight-line graph by using a logarithmic scale. In the next two examples, we apply similar ideas to modelling data. We consider the following two transformations.

■ Exponential model

Let $y = a \times e^{mx}$, where a and m are constants with $a > 0$. By taking logarithms base e of both sides, we obtain $\ln y = \ln a + mx$. The graph of $\ln y$ against x is linear.

■ Power model

Let $y = a \times x^m$ for $x > 0$, where a and m are constants with $a > 0$. By taking logarithms base e of both sides, we obtain $\ln y = \ln a + m \ln x$. The graph of $\ln y$ against $\ln x$ is linear.



Example 45

The data in the table gives the concentration of a gas, C , at time t seconds during thermal decomposition. (Concentration is measured in moles per millilitre.)

t	0	20	40	60	80
C	22.90	12.29	6.89	3.68	2.16

Given that a rule $C = ae^{-bt}$ can be used to model the data:

- determine a corresponding linear rule
- draw a linear graph from the data
- estimate the values of a and b .

Solution

- a** Take logarithms base e of both sides of the rule $C = ae^{-bt}$:

$$\ln C = \ln(ae^{-bt})$$

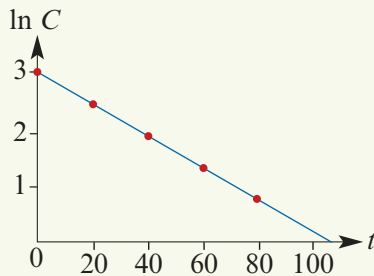
$$\ln C = \ln a + \ln(e^{-bt})$$

$$\therefore \ln C = \ln a - bt$$

A table of values for $\ln C$ against t is shown below.

t	0	20	40	60	80
$\ln C$	3.13	2.51	1.93	1.30	0.77

- b** Graph of $\ln C$ against t :



- c** By fitting a straight line to the graph in part **b**, we obtain

$$\ln C = 3.114 - 0.03t$$

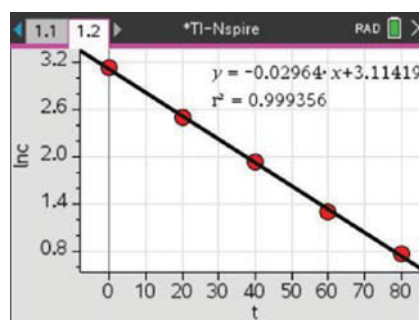
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore C &= e^{3.114-0.03t} \\ &= e^{3.114}e^{-0.03t} \\ &\approx 22.5e^{-0.03t} \end{aligned}$$



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Insert a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page and enter the data in lists named t and c .
- Label the third list as $\ln c$ (for $\ln c$).
- To generate the third list, place the cursor in the formula line as shown and enter the formula $=\ln(c)$. To obtain c in this formula, press var and select c .
- Press enter to populate the third list.
- Insert a **Data & Statistics** page. Add t on the x -axis and add $\ln c$ on the y -axis.
- Determine the linear regression model using $\text{menu} > \text{Analyze} > \text{Regression} > \text{Show Linear (a+bx)}$.
- The rule is $\ln C = 3.114 - 0.03t$, which gives $C = 22.5e^{-0.03t}$.

	A t	B c	C $\ln c$	D
=			$=\ln(c)$	
1	0	22.9	3.13114	
2	20	12.29	2.50879	
3	40	6.89	1.93007	
4	60	3.68	1.30291	
5	80	2.16	0.770108	



Using the Casio

Here we use exponential regression directly.

- Press MENU 2 to select **Statistics** mode.
- Enter the t -values in List1 and the C -values in List2 as shown.
- To plot the data, select **Graph** F1 , **Graph1** F1 .
- To fit a curve $y = ae^{bx}$ to the data, use **Calculation** F1 , **Exp** F6 F3 , **ae^{bx}** F1 .
- The rule is $C = 22.5e^{-0.03t}$.

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
2	20	12.29		
3	40	6.89		
4	60	3.68		
5	80	2.16		

ExpReg ($a \cdot e^{bx}$)
 $a = 22.5151651$
 $b = -0.0296396$
 $r = -0.9996779$
 $r^2 = 0.99935598$
 $MSe = 7.5485E-04$
 $y = a \cdot e^{bx}$

Note: Using exponential regression ($y = ab^x$) for Example 46 would give the rule $C = 22.5 \times 0.971^t$, which is not in the required form. To change to base e , we write

$$0.971 = e^k$$

$$\ln 0.971 = k$$

$$\therefore k \approx -0.03$$

The rule becomes $C = 22.5e^{-0.03t}$.



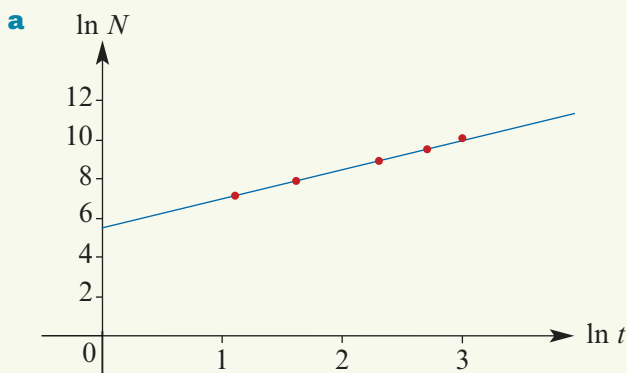
Example 46

An experiment involved estimating the number of microbes, N , in a culture after t days. The results are shown in the table.

t	3	5	10	15	20
N	1350	3000	7500	13 500	24 000

- a** Using technology, plot the graph of $\ln N$ against $\ln t$.
- b** Find estimates (two decimal places) for constants a and b such that $\ln N = a \ln t + b$.
- c** Hence determine estimates for constants A and B such that $N = At^B$.

Solution



- b** By fitting a straight line to the graph in part **a**, we obtain

$$\ln N = 1.47 \ln t + 5.59$$

- c** Rearrange the rule from part **b**:

$$\ln N - 1.47 \ln t = 5.59$$

$$\ln\left(\frac{N}{t^{1.47}}\right) = 5.59$$

$$\frac{N}{t^{1.47}} = e^{5.59}$$

$$N = e^{5.59} \times t^{1.47}$$

$$\therefore N = 267.7 \times t^{1.47}$$

Exercise 5J

Example 42

- 1** The table gives observed values of variables P and Q , which are claimed to be related by a linear equation $P = aQ + b$. Using technology, find possible values for a and b .

Q	2.5	3.5	4.4	5.8	7.5	9.6	12.0	15.1
P	13.6	17.6	22.2	28.8	35.5	47.4	56.1	74.6

- 2** Determine a quadratic model $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ for the following data set.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
y	6	8.2	10.8	13.5	16.5	20

- 3** Determine an exponential model $y = a \times b^x$ for each data set.

a

x	3.1	4.6	12.7	13.8	19.6
y	2.0771	2.9028	17.693	22.615	82.503

b

x	1	2	3	4	5
y	1.155	1.213	1.273	1.337	1.404

- 4** Determine a logarithmic model $y = a + b \ln x$ for each data set.

a

x	1.5	6.5	11.5	16.5	21.5
y	3.41	4.87	5.44	5.80	6.07

b

x	2	4.5	7	9.5	12
y	11.12	18.02	21.77	24.37	26.35

c

x	3	8.5	14	19.5	25
y	16.7	26.6	31.3	34.5	36.8

Example 43

- 5** The ABC Cable Company will manufacture cable of any given diameter. The price per metre for several different diameters is given in the following table.

Diameter, d mm	5	10	15	20	25
Price, $\$P$ per metre	10	22	40	62	95

- a** Plot the graph of P against d^2 .
b Hence find a rule for P in terms of d .

- 6** Determine a sinusoidal model $y = a \sin(bx + c) + d$ for each data set.

a

x	0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8
y	0	1.77	2.85	2.85	1.77

b

x	0	0.2	0.4	0.6	0.8
y	5	2.18	0.34	0.13	1.62

Example 44, 45

- 7** The number of bacteria in a culture at time t days is given by $N = ae^{kt}$. Determine the values of a and k using the following data.

t	1	2	3	4	5	6
N	1065	1515	2145	3045	4320	6120

Example 46

- 8** An experiment involved estimating the number of microbes, N , in a culture after t days. The results are shown in the table.

t	3	5	10	15	20
N	140	630	5000	16 900	40 100

- a** Using technology, plot the graph of $\ln N$ against $\ln t$.
- b** Determine estimates (two decimal places) for constants a and b such that $\ln N = a \ln t + b$.
- c** Hence determine estimates for constants A and B such that $N = Bt^A$.
- 9** A veterinarian is working for a politician who owns a large piggery. The veterinarian is interested in increasing the weight of the politician's pigs. She increases the amount of a particular chemical in the pigs' diet by feeding them tablets. Different groups of pigs are given different numbers of tablets. After a month, the veterinarian produces the following table of results, where N is the number of tablets per day and $P\%$ is the average percentage weight gain over a month.

N	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
P	2.25	12.75	20.25	24.75	26.25	24.75	20.25	12.75

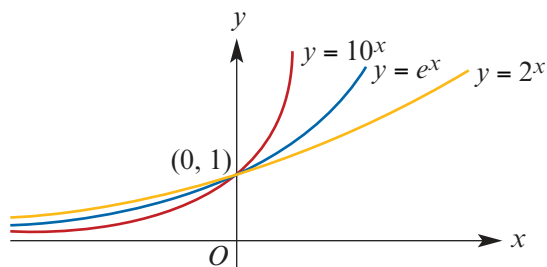
- a** Using a graphics calculator, plot the graph of P against N .
- b** The data can be modelled by a rule of the form $P = aN^2 + bN + c$. Determine values for a , b and c .
- 10** In 1618, the German astronomer Johannes Kepler discovered a relationship between the mean distance from the Sun to a planet and the period of the orbit. (As the measure of mean distance, we use the length in astronomical units of the semi-major axis of the approximately elliptical orbit.)

Planet	Mean distance (D AU)	Period of orbit (T days)
Mercury	0.387 10	87.9693
Venus	0.723 33	224.7008
Earth	1	365.2564
Mars	1.523 66	686.9796
Jupiter	5.303 36	4332.8201
Saturn	9.537 07	10 775.599
Uranus	19.1913	30 687.153
Neptune	30.0690	60 190.03

- a** Using the data in the table, plot the graph of $\ln T$ against $\ln D$.
- b** Determine a rule connecting $\ln T$ and $\ln D$.
- c** Transform this rule into an equation of the form $T = a \times D^b$.
- d** Square both sides of this equation to discover Kepler's result.

Chapter summary

- Sketch graphs of the form $y = a^x$ and transformations of these graphs.



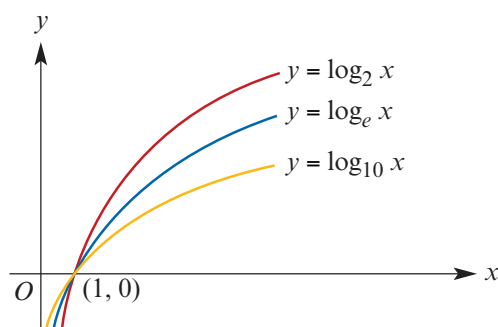
- **Index laws**

$$a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n} \quad a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n} \quad (a^m)^n = a^{mn}$$

- **Logarithms** For $a \in \mathbb{R}^+ \setminus \{1\}$, the logarithm function with base a is defined as follows:

$$a^x = y \quad \text{is equivalent to} \quad \log_a y = x$$

- Sketch graphs of the form $y = \log_a x$ and transformations of these graphs.



- **The natural logarithm** The function $y = \log_e x$ is commonly written as $y = \ln x$.

- **Logarithm laws**

$$\log_a(mn) = \log_a m + \log_a n$$

$$\log_a\left(\frac{m}{n}\right) = \log_a m - \log_a n$$

$$\log_a\left(\frac{1}{n}\right) = -\log_a n$$

$$\log_a(m^p) = p \log_a m$$

- **Change of base**

$$\log_a x = \frac{\log_b x}{\log_b a} \quad \text{and} \quad a^x = b^{(\log_b a)x}$$

- **Inverse relationship** The functions $f(x) = a^x$, for $x \in \mathbb{R}$, and $g(x) = \log_a x$, for $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$, are inverse to each other in the following way:

- $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$
- $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$

- **Differentiating e^x**

- If $f(x) = e^{kx}$, then $f'(x) = ke^{kx}$, where $k \in \mathbb{R}$.
- If $h(x) = e^{f(x)}$, then $h'(x) = f'(x)e^{f(x)}$.

- **Differentiating $\ln x$**

- If $y = \ln(ax + b)$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{a}{ax + b}$.
- If $h(x) = \ln(f(x))$, then the chain rule gives $h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$.

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



5A

- 1** I can sketch the graphs of functions which are transformations of $y = a^x$, $a > 1$ or $0 < a < 1$. ☐

See Example 1, Example 2, Example 3, Example 4, Example 5, Example 6 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 4

5B

- 2** I can sketch the graphs of functions which are transformations of $y = e^x$. ☐

See Example 7 and Question 1

5C

- 3** I can solve exponential equations. ☐

See Example 8, Example 9, Example 10 and Questions 2, 3 and 4

5D

- 4** I can simplify logarithmic expressions using the definition of logarithm and the logarithm laws. ☐

See Example 11, Example 12 and Questions 1 and 4

5D

- 5** I can solve logarithmic equations. ☐

See Example 13, Example 14, Example 15 Example 16 and Questions 3, 4, 8 and 10

5E

- 6** I can sketch the graph of logarithmic functions. ☐

See Example 17, Example 18, Example 19, Example 20 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 6

5F

- 7** I can solve exponential and logarithmic equations using the properties, $\log_a(a^x) = x$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$ and $a^{\log_a x} = x$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$ ☐

See Example 21, Example 22, Example 23, Example 24, Example 25, Example 26 Example 27, Example 28, Example 29 and Questions 1, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10 and 12

5G

- 8** I can differentiate exponential functions. ☐

See Example 30, Example 31, Example 32, Example 33, Example 34, Example 35 Example 36 and Questions 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 and 8

5H

- 9** I can differentiate logarithmic functions. ☐

See Example 37, Example 38 and Questions 1, 2, 3, 5, 6 and 8

5I

- 10** I can determine rules for graphs of exponential and logarithmic functions. ☐

See Example 39, Example 40, Example 41 and Questions 1, 2 and 5

5I

- 11** I can model data with a graphics calculator. ☐

See Example 42, Example 43, Example 44, Example 45, Example 46 and Questions 1, 5, 7 and 8

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1 Sketch the graph of each of the following. Label asymptotes and axis intercepts.

a $f(x) = e^x - 2$	b $g(x) = 10^{-x} + 1$	c $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}(e^x - 1)$
d $f(x) = 2 - e^{-x}$	e $f(x) = \ln(2x + 1)$	f $h(x) = \ln(x - 1) + 1$
g $g(x) = -\ln(x - 1)$	h $f(x) = -\ln(1 - x)$	
- 2 For each of the following, determine y in terms of x .

a $\ln y = \ln x + 2$	b $\log_{10} y = \log_{10} x + 1$	c $\log_2 y = 3 \log_2 x + 4$
d $\log_{10} y = -1 + 5 \log_{10} x$	e $\ln y = 3 - \ln x$	f $\ln y = 2x - 3$
- 3 Solve each of the following equations for x , expressing your answers in terms of logarithms with base e .

a $3^x = 11$	b $2^x = 0.8$	c $2^x = 3^{x+1}$
- 4 Solve each of the following for x .

a $2^{2x} - 2^x - 2 = 0$	b $\ln(3x - 1) = 0$
c $\log_{10}(2x) + 1 = 0$	d $e^{2x} - 7 \times e^x + 12 = 0$
- 5 Solve each of the following for x .

a $e^{4x} - 6e^{2x} + 8 = 0$	b $5e^{4x} - 16e^{2x} + 12 = 0$
c $3e^{2x} + 4e^{-2x} = 8$	d $3(\ln x)^2 - 10 \ln x + 8 = 0$
- 6 The graph of the function with rule $y = 3 \log_2(x + 1) + 2$ intersects the axes at the points $(a, 0)$ and $(0, b)$. Determine the exact values of a and b .
- 7 The graph of $y = 5 \log_{10}(x + 1)$ passes through the point $(k, 6)$. Find the value of k .
- 8 Determine the exact value of x for which $4e^{3x} = 287$.
- 9 Determine x in terms of a , where $3 \log_a x = 3 + \log_a 8$.
- 10 Given that $y = \log_3(x - 4)$, express x as a function of y .
- 11 Given that $y = e^{3x} - 4$, express x as a function of y .
- 12 Given that $\ln y = a + b \ln x$, where a and b are constants, find y in terms of x .
- 13 The graph of the function with rule $f(x) = e^{2x} - 3ke^x + 5$ intersects the axes at $(0, 0)$ and $(a, 0)$ and has a horizontal asymptote at $y = b$. Determine the exact values of a , b and k .
- 14 Evaluate $2 \log_2 12 + 3 \log_2 5 - \log_2 15 - \log_2 150$.
- 15 **a** Given that $\log_p 7 + \log_p k = 0$, find k .
b Given that $4 \log_q 3 + 2 \log_q 2 - \log_q 144 = 2$, find q .

- 16** Show that, if $3^x = 4^y = 12^z$, then $z = \frac{xy}{x+y}$.
- 17** Let $f(x) = 1 + e^x$. Show that $f(x) \times f(-x) = f(x) + f(-x)$.
- 18** Determine the gradient of each of the following curves at the stated value of x .
- a** $y = e^{2x} + 1$, $x = 1$ **b** $y = e^{x^2+1}$, $x = 1$
c $y = 5e^{3x} + x^2$, $x = 1$ **d** $y = 5 - e^{-x}$, $x = 0$
- 19** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- a** e^{x^2-4x} **b** $(e^{2x} + 1)^2$ **c** $\sqrt{e^{2x} - 3x}$ **d** e^{2x^2-4}
- 20** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- a** e^{ax} **b** e^{ax+b} **c** e^{a-bx} **d** $be^{ax} - ae^{bx}$ **e** $\frac{e^{ax}}{e^{bx}}$
- 21** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .
- a** $y = \ln(x^4)$ **b** $y = (\ln x)^4$ **c** $y = \ln(x^3 + x^2 - x)$
d $y = \ln((5 - 2x)^3)$ **e** $f(x) = \ln(3x^2 + x)$ **f** $f(x) = \ln(e^{2x})$
- 22** Solve the equation $\ln x - \frac{3}{\ln x} = 2$ for x .
- 23** Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point corresponding to the given value of x .
- a** $y = \ln(x)$, $x > 0$, at $x = e^2$ **b** $y = \ln(x^2 + 1)$ at $x = e$
c $y = \ln(-x)$, $x < 0$, at $x = -(e^2)$ **d** $y = 2x + \ln\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ at $x = 2$
- 24** The temperature, $\theta^\circ\text{C}$, of material inside a nuclear power station at time t seconds after a reaction begins is given by $\theta = \frac{1}{4}e^{100t}$.
- a** Determine the rate of increase of temperature at time t .
b Determine the rate of increase of temperature when $t = \frac{1}{20}$.
- 25** The diameter of a tree (D cm) t years after 1 January 2010 is given by $D = 50e^{kt}$.
- a** Prove that $\frac{dD}{dt} = cD$ for some constant c .
b If $k = 0.2$, find the rate of increase of D when $D = 100$.
- 26** Let $f(x) = e^{2x} - 16e^x - 36$.
- a** Solve the equation $f(x) = 0$.
b Determine the coordinates of the point on the graph where $f'(x) = 0$.
c Determine the values of x for which $f'(x) > 0$.
d Determine the average rate of change of $y = f(x)$ with respect to x for the interval $[\ln 8, \ln 18]$

- 27** Let $f(x) = e^x + e^{-x}$ and $g(x) = e^x - e^{-x}$.
- a** Show that f is an even function.
 - b** Determine $f(u) + f(-u)$.
 - c** Determine $f(u) - f(-u)$.
 - d** Determine $[f(u)]^2 - 2$.
 - e** Show that g is an odd function.
 - f** Determine $f(x) + g(x)$, $f(x) - g(x)$ and $f(x) \cdot g(x)$.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 28** A liquid cools from its original temperature of 90°C to a temperature of $T^\circ\text{C}$ in x minutes. Given that $T = 90(0.98)^x$, find:
- a** the value of T when $x = 10$
 - b** the value of x when $T = 27$.
- 29** The barometric pressure P (in centimetres of mercury) at a height h km above sea level is given by $P = 75(10^{-0.15h})$. Find:
- a** P when $h = 0$
 - b** P when $h = 10$
 - c** h when $P = 60$.
- 30** The value, $\$V$, of a particular car can be modelled by the equation $V = ke^{-\lambda t}$, where t years is the age of the car. The car's original price was $\$22\,497$, and after 1 year it is valued at $\$18\,000$.
- a** State the value of k and calculate λ , giving your answer to two decimal places.
 - b** Determine the value of the car when it is 3 years old.
- 31** A radioactive substance is decaying such that the amount, A g, at time t years is given by the formula $A = A_0e^{kt}$. If when $t = 1$, $A = 60.7$ and when $t = 6$, $A = 5$, find the values of the constants A_0 and k .
- 32** The amount of salt (s grams) in 100 litres of salt solution at time t minutes is given by
- $$s = 50 + 30e^{-\frac{1}{5}t}$$
- a** Determine the amount of salt in the mixture after 10 minutes.
 - b** Sketch the graph of s against t for $t \geq 0$.
 - c** Determine the rate of change of the amount of salt at time t (in terms of t).
 - d** Determine the rate of change of the amount of salt at time t (in terms of s).
 - e** Determine the concentration (grams per litre) of salt at time $t = 0$.
 - f** Determine the value of t for which the salt solution first reaches a concentration of 0.51 grams per litre.
- 33** A medium is kept at a constant temperature of 20°C . An object is placed in this medium. The temperature, $T^\circ\text{C}$, of the object at time t minutes is given by
- $$T = 40e^{-0.36t} + 20, \quad t \geq 0$$
- a** Determine the initial temperature of the object.
 - b** Sketch the graph of T against t for $t \geq 0$.
 - c** Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time (in terms of t).
 - d** Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time (in terms of T).

- 34** A certain chemical starts to dissolve in water at time $t = 0$. It is known that, if x is the number of grams not dissolved after t hours, then

$$x = \frac{60}{5e^{\lambda t} - 3}, \quad \text{where } \lambda = \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{6}{5}\right)$$

- a** Determine the amount of chemical present when:
- i** $t = 0$ **ii** $t = 5$
- b** Determine $\frac{dx}{dt}$ in terms of t .
- c** **i** Show that $\frac{dx}{dt} = -\lambda x - \frac{\lambda x^2}{20}$.
- ii** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dx}{dt}$ against x for $x > 0$.
 - iii** Write a short explanation of your result.
- 35** The growth of a population of bacteria is modelled by the formula $n = A(1 - e^{-Bt})$, where n is the size of the population at time t hours, and A and B are positive constants.
- a** When $t = 2$, $n = 10\,000$ and when $t = 4$, $n = 15\,000$.
- i** Show that $2e^{-4B} - 3e^{-2B} + 1 = 0$.
 - ii** Use the substitution $a = e^{-2B}$ to show that $2a^2 - 3a + 1 = 0$.
 - iii** Solve this equation for a .
 - iv** Determine the exact value of B .
 - v** Determine the exact value of A .
- b** Sketch the graph of n against t .
- c** After how many hours is the population of bacteria 18 000?
- 36** Newton's law of cooling for an object in a medium of constant temperature states

$$T - T_s = (T_0 - T_s)e^{-kt}$$

where:

- T is the temperature (in $^{\circ}\text{C}$) of the object at time t (in minutes)
- T_s is the temperature of the surrounding medium
- T_0 is the initial temperature of the object.

An egg at 96°C is placed to cool in a sink of water at 15°C . After 5 minutes the egg's temperature is 40°C . (Assume that the temperature of the water does not change.)

- a** Determine the value of k .
- b** Determine the temperature of the egg when $t = 10$.
- c** How long does it take for the egg to reach a temperature of 30°C ?

- 37** In a chemical reaction, the amount of time (t minutes) that it takes for x grams of a substance to have reacted is given by

$$t = 5 \ln\left(\frac{8}{8-x}\right) \quad \text{for } 0 \leq x < 8$$

- a** Determine the time that it takes for the amount of reacted substance to reach:
i 2 g **ii** 4 g **iii** 6 g
- b** Determine the amount of reacted substance after 7 minutes.
- c** Determine x in terms of t .
- 38** A parasite is growing on a large tree. The data in the table gives the size, s cm³, of the parasite after d days.

d	14	19	23	26	28	30	33	35	37	41
s	1.85	4.25	7.50	11.00	14.50	18.95	26.65	38.00	49.75	84.50

Using a graphics calculator:

- a** plot the graph of s against d **b** plot the graph of $\ln s$ against $\ln d$
c plot the graph of $\ln s$ against d **d** determine a model that fits the data.
- 39** When an athlete first began to train, they made rapid progress. After a while their improvement slowed. An athlete's performance for a half marathon can be modelled by the logarithmic function, $T(t) = -25 \ln(t+1) + 200$, $10 \leq t \leq 55$ where $T(t)$ is the time in minutes for a half marathon after t days of training.
- a** Determine the time predicted by the model for each of the following number of days of training. Give your answer to the nearest minute.
i 10 days **ii** 30 days **iii** 50 days
- b** Determine $T'(t)$ and the rate of change for the athlete for each of the following number of days. Give your answer to the nearest second/day.
i 10 days **ii** 30 days **iii** 50 days
- c** After how many days does the rate of improvement become less than a minute a day?
- 40** Consider the function with rule $f(x) = 8 \ln(6 - 0.2x)$ for $x < a$, where a is the largest possible value such that f can be defined in this way.
- a** What is the value of a ?
b Find the exact values for the coordinates of the points where the graph of $y = f(x)$ crosses each axis.
c Find the gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x)$ at the point where $x = 20$.
d Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 41** The populations of two ant colonies, A and B , are increasing according to the rules:
A population = $2 \times 10^4 e^{0.03t}$
B population = $10^4 e^{0.05t}$
- After how many years will their populations:
- a** be equal **b** be increasing at the same rate?

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

1 The average rate of change of the function with rule $f(x) = e^x + x^3$ for $x \in [0, 1]$ is

- A** e **B** $e^3 + 1$ **C** $\frac{e^3 + 1}{2}$ **D** $e + 1$

2 $\ln e^{2x}$ is equivalent to

- A** x^2 **B** $2x$ **C** 2 **D** $\frac{x^2}{2}$

3 Let $f(x) = e^{5-x}$. The value of $f'(3)$ is

- A** $5e^2$ **B** $-e^{-3}$ **C** e^4 **D** $-e^2$

4 If $4 \log_b(x^2) = \log_b 16 + 8$, then x is equal to

- A** b^4 **B** ± 6 **C** $\pm \sqrt{2}b$ **D** 2^6

5 The expression $\ln(4e^{3x})$ is equal to

- A** $\ln(e^{12x})$ **B** $\ln(12) + x$ **C** $3x \ln(4)$ **D** $\ln(4) + 3x$

6 The expression $3^{\log_3(x-4)}$ is equal to

- A** $\frac{x}{4}$ **B** $x - 4$ **C** $3(x - 4)$ **D** $3^x - 3^4$

7 If $x = 5$ is a solution of the equation $\log_{10}(kx - 3) = 2$, then the exact value of k is

- A** $\frac{103}{5}$ **B** $\frac{\log_{10} 2 + 3}{5}$ **C** 2 **D** 5

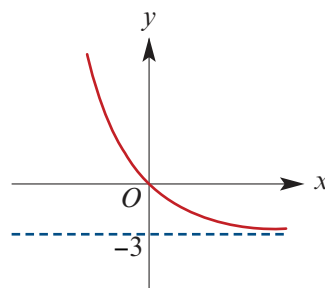
8 $3^{4 \log_3(x) + \log_3(4x)}$ is equal to

- A** $8x$ **B** $x^4 + 4x$ **C** $4x^5$ **D** 3^{8x}

9 The graph of the function with rule $y = ae^{-x} + b$ is shown on the right.

The values of a and b respectively are

- A** $3, -3$ **B** $-3, 3$
C $-3, -3$ **D** $0, -3$



10 Which one of the following statements is not true about the graph of the function defined by $f(x) = \log_5 x$ for $x > 0$?

- A** The domain is $\mathbb{R}^+$. **B** The range is $\mathbb{R}$.
C It passes through the point $(5, 0)$. **D** It has a vertical asymptote with equation $x = 0$.

- 11** If $3 \log_2 x - 7 \log_2(x-1) = 2 + \log_2 y$, then y is equal to
A $\frac{3x}{28(x-1)}$ **B** $\frac{1}{4x^4}$
C $3-4x$ **D** $\frac{x^3}{4(x-1)^7}$
- 12** The graph of the function $f(x) = e^{2x} - 12$ intersects the graph of $g(x) = -e^x$ where
A $x = \ln 3$ **B** $x = \ln 2$ **C** $x = \ln 7$ **D** $x = \ln 4$
- 13** Let the rule for a function g be $g(x) = \ln((x-4)^2)$. For the function g , the maximal domain and range are
A $\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{R}$ **B** $(4, \infty), \mathbb{R}^+$
C $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{4\}, \mathbb{R}$ **D** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}, \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$
- 14** The maximal domain for a function with rule $f(x) = \ln((x-3)^2) + 6$ is
A $(3, \infty)$ **B** $[3, \infty)$ **C** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$ **D** $\mathbb{R}^+$
- 15** If $h(x) = \ln(4-x^2)$, $-2 < x < 2$ then $h'(x)$ is equal to
A $\frac{1}{4-x^2}$ **B** $\frac{1}{2+x} - \frac{1}{2-x}$
C $\frac{2}{2-x^2}$ **D** $-\frac{2x}{2-x^2}$
- 16** When rewritten with x as the subject, the equation $y = e^{3x+4}$ becomes
A $x = -3 \ln(3y-4)$ **B** $x = \frac{\ln(y)-4}{3}$
C $x = -3 \ln\left(\frac{y-4}{3}\right)$ **D** $x = \ln(3y-4)$
- 17** If $f(x) = 2 \ln(3x)$ and $f(6x) = \ln(y)$, then
A $y = 18x$ **B** $y = \frac{x}{3}$ **C** $y = 6x^2$ **D** $y = 324x^2$
- 18** For $f(x) = e^x - ex$, the coordinates of the point of the graph of $y = f(x)$ where $f'(x) = 0$ are
A $\left(1, \frac{1}{e}\right)$ **B** $(1, e)$ **C** $(0, 1)$ **D** $(1, 0)$
- 19** Let $h(x) = \ln((f(x))^2 + 2)$. If $f(1) = -1$ and $f'(1) = 1$ then $h'(1)$ is equal to
A -2 **B** $-\frac{2}{3}$ **C** 1 **D** 2

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 20** The solution of the equation $3x = 10^{-0.3x}$ is closest to
A 0.83 **B** 0.28 **C** 0 **D** 0.30
- 21** Under certain conditions, the number of bacteria, N , in a sample increases with time, t hours, according to the rule $N = 4000e^{0.2t}$. The rate, to the nearest whole number of bacteria per hour, that the bacteria are growing 3 hours from the start is
A 1458 **B** 7288 **C** 16 068 **D** 80 342

- 22** If $\ln(3x) + \ln(2x) = 3$, then, correct to two decimal places the value of x is
A 12.91 **B** 4.02 **C** 3.35 **D** 1.83
- 23** The number of solutions of the equation $e^{x-1}(x^2 - 4) = x^2 - 1.5$ is
A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3
- 24** If $\ln x + \ln 4.56 = \ln 3.2$ then the value of x correct to three decimal places is equal to
A 1.4065 **B** 0.711 **C** 0.702 **D** 1.765
- 25** Let $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$. The gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x)$ is -0.5 for two values of x . These values of x correct to two decimal places are
A 0.27 and 1.28 **B** -0.24 and -1.24 **C** 0.15 and 1.26 **D** 0.31 and 1.54
- 26** Let $f(x) = (\ln(x))^2$. The gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x)$ is 0.5 for two values of x . These values of x correct to two decimal places are
A 0.27 and 3.28 **B** 5.23 and 6.24 **C** 1.43 and 8.61 **D** 1.11 and 8.52
- 27** The maximal domain of $f(x) = \ln(4 - 2x - x^2)$ is
A $-\sqrt{5} - 1 < x < \sqrt{5} - 1$ **B** $-3.2 < x < 1.23$
C $-3 < x < 1.26$ **D** $-2.8 < x < 1.23$
- 28** Let $f(x) = \ln(6 - 2x + x^2)$. Then $f'(x) > 0$ for
A $x > 6$ **B** $x > -2$ **C** $x > 1$ **D** $x < -1$

6

Differentiation of trigonometric functions and differentiation rules

Chapter contents

- ▶ **6A** Differentiation of trigonometric functions
- ▶ **6B** The product rule
- ▶ **6C** The quotient rule
- ▶ **6D** Tangents and normals
- ▶ **6E** Rates of change
- ▶ **6F** Motion in a straight line

In this chapter, we continue our study of differentiation. In Chapter 3 we rerevisited the chain rule for differentiation and in this chapter we revise the product rule and the quotient rule, and introduce differentiation of trigonometric functions.

The most important aspect of differential calculus is that it gives us the ability to consider how one quantity changes with respect to another. A useful example is the rate of change of position with respect to time for an object moving in a straight line. This rate of change is the velocity of the object.

This chapter covers Unit 3 Topic 2: Differentiation of trigonometric functions and differentiation rules.

6A Differentiation of trigonometric functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to differentiate sine and cosine.

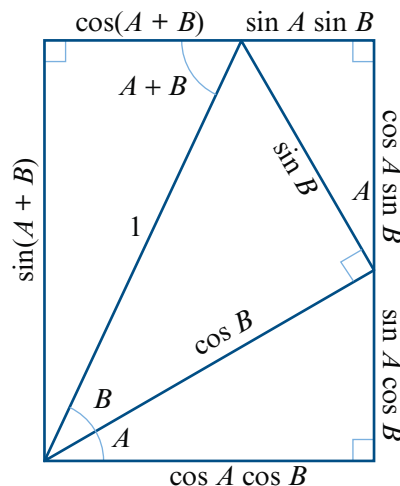
In this section we determine the derivatives of the sine and cosine functions.

In the proof for the derivative of sine, we will use the angle-sum identity

$$\sin(A + B) = \sin A \cos B + \cos A \sin B$$

You may have seen this identity in Specialist Mathematics Units 1 & 2. The diagram gives a geometric proof of the identity in the special case where the angles A , B and $A + B$ are acute.

Note: The derivatives that we establish for $\sin x$ and $\cos x$ only apply when the angle x is measured in radians.



The derivative of $\sin(ax + b)$

If $f(x) = \sin x$, then $f'(x) = \cos x$.

Proof Consider points $P(x, \sin x)$ and $Q(x + h, \sin(x + h))$ on the graph of $f(x) = \sin x$. The gradient of the secant PQ is

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{\sin(x + h) - \sin x}{h} &= \frac{\sin x \cos h + \cos x \sin h - \sin x}{h} \\ &= \frac{\sin x \cdot (\cos h - 1)}{h} + \frac{\cos x \sin h}{h} \end{aligned}$$

We now consider what happens as $h \rightarrow 0$. We use two limit results (the second limit is proved below and the first limit then follows using a trigonometric identity):

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos h - 1}{h} = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin h}{h} = 1$$

Therefore

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{\sin x \cdot (\cos h - 1)}{h} + \frac{\cos x \sin h}{h} \right) \\ &= \sin x \times 0 + \cos x \times 1 \\ &= \cos x \end{aligned}$$

We now prove the following result.

$$\lim_{\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin \theta}{\theta} = 1$$

Proof Let K be a point on the unit circle as shown, and let $\angle KOH = \theta$. The coordinates of K are $(\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$. Point H is on the x -axis such that $\angle KHO$ is a right angle.

Draw a tangent to the circle at $A(1, 0)$. The line OK intersects this tangent at $L(1, \tan \theta)$.

The area of sector OAK is $\frac{1}{2}\theta$.

Thus $\text{area } \triangle OAK \leq \frac{1}{2}\theta \leq \text{area } \triangle OAL$

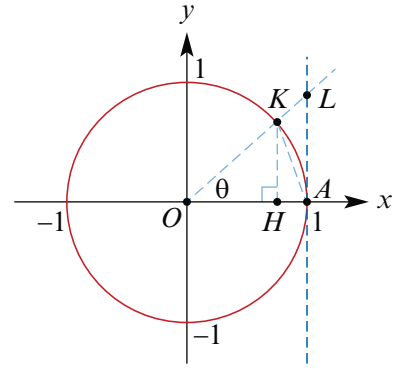
i.e. $\frac{1}{2}OA \cdot HK \leq \frac{1}{2}\theta \leq \frac{1}{2}OA \cdot AL$

This implies that $\sin \theta \leq \theta \leq \tan \theta$.

For $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, we have $\sin \theta > 0$, and so we can divide both inequalities by $\sin \theta$ to obtain

$$1 \leq \frac{\theta}{\sin \theta} \leq \frac{1}{\cos \theta}$$

As θ approaches 0, the value of $\cos \theta$ approaches 1, and so $\lim_{\theta \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin \theta}{\theta} = 1$.



We now turn our attention to the function $f(x) = \sin(ax + b)$, where a and b are constants. We use the chain rule to determine $f'(x)$.

Let $y = \sin(ax + b)$ and let $u = ax + b$. Then $y = \sin u$ and therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} = \cos u \cdot a = a \cos(ax + b)$$

If $f(x) = \sin(ax + b)$, then $f'(x) = a \cos(ax + b)$.

The derivative of $\cos(ax + b)$

We next determine the derivative of $\cos(ax + b)$. We first note the following:

$$\cos x = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \sin x = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$$

These results will be used in the following way.

Let $y = \cos x = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$ and let $u = \frac{\pi}{2} - x$. Then $y = \sin u$.

The chain rule gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} = \cos u \cdot (-1) \\ &= -\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right) \\ &= -\sin x\end{aligned}$$

We have the following results:

- If $f(x) = \cos x$, then $f'(x) = -\sin x$.
- If $f(x) = \cos(ax + b)$, then $f'(x) = -a \sin(ax + b)$.



Example 1

Determine the derivative with respect to x of each of the following:

a $\sin(2x)$

b $\sin^2(2x)$

c $\cos^3(4x + 1)$

Solution

a Let $y = \sin(2x)$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2 \cos(2x)$.

b Let $y = \sin^2(2x)$ and $u = \sin(2x)$.
Then $y = u^2$. Using the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= 2u \cdot 2 \cos(2x) \\ &= 4u \cos(2x) \\ &= 4 \sin(2x) \cos(2x)\end{aligned}$$

c Let $y = \cos^3(4x + 1)$ and $u = \cos(4x + 1)$.
Then $y = u^3$. Using the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= 3u^2 \cdot (-4) \sin(4x + 1) \\ &= -12u^2 \sin(4x + 1) \\ &= -12 \cos^2(4x + 1) \sin(4x + 1)\end{aligned}$$

Using the chain rule we also have the following which we want to emphasise as a particular case since these results are also used in the integration chapters where we use them from right to left.

■ $\frac{d}{dx} \cos f(x) = -f'(x) \sin f(x)$

■ $\frac{d}{dx} \sin f(x) = f'(x) \cos f(x)$

We can also state these results using full function notation.

- If $g(x) = \cos f(x)$ then $g'(x) = -f'(x) \sin f(x)$
- If $g(x) = \sin f(x)$ then $g'(x) = f'(x) \cos f(x)$

**Example 2**

Determine the derivative with respect to x of each of the following:

a $\sin(x^2 + 3x)$

b $\cos(e^{2x})$

c $\cos(x - 4x^2)$

Solution

a Let $y = \sin(x^2 + 3x)$

Let $u = x^2 + 3x \Rightarrow y = \sin u$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= \cos u \times (2x + 3) \\ &= (2x + 3) \cos(x^2 + 3x)\end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\frac{d}{dx} \sin(x^2 + 3x) = (2x + 3) \cos(x^2 + 3x)$$

c Let $y = \cos(x - 4x^2)$

Let $u = x - 4x^2 \Rightarrow y = \cos u$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= -\sin u \times (1 - 8x) \\ &= (8x - 1) \sin(x - 4x^2)\end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\frac{d}{dx} \cos(x - 4x^2) = (8x - 1) \sin(x - 4x^2)$$

b Let $y = \cos(e^{2x})$

Let $u = e^{2x} \Rightarrow y = \cos u$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then } \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \times \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= -\sin u \times 2e^{2x} \\ &= -2e^{2x} \sin(e^{2x})\end{aligned}$$

That is,

$$\frac{d}{dx} \cos(e^{2x}) = -2e^{2x} \sin(e^{2x})$$

**Example 3**

Consider the curve $y = \cos x$. Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient of the tangent at the point on this curve where:

a $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$

b $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$

Solution

Let $y = \cos x$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin x$.

a When $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$, we have

$$y = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

So the gradient at $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ is $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$.

b When $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, we have

$$y = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = -1$$

So the gradient at $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 0\right)$ is -1 .

Summary 6A

- If $f(x) = \sin(ax + b)$, then $f'(x) = a \cos(ax + b)$.
- If $f(x) = \cos(ax + b)$, then $f'(x) = -a \sin(ax + b)$.
- $\frac{d}{dx} \cos f(x) = -f'(x) \sin f(x)$ ■ $\frac{d}{dx} \sin f(x) = f'(x) \cos f(x)$

Exercise 6A**Example 1**

- 1** Determine the derivative with respect to x of each of the following.

a $\sin(5x)$ **b** $\cos(5x)$ **c** $\sin^2 x$ **d** $\cos(x^2 + 1)$
e $\sin^2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **f** $\cos^2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ **g** $\sin^3\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$ **h** $\cos^3\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

Example 2

- 2** Determine the derivative with respect to x of each of the following.

a $\cos(x^2)$ **b** $\sin(e^{2x+3})$ **c** $5 \cos(x^3 + x^2 + 2x + 1)$
d $\cos(-x^3 + 2x^2)$ **e** $\cos(e^{x^2})$ **f** $\sin\left(e^{-\frac{x}{5}}\right)$

Example 3

- 3** Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient of the tangent at the points on the following curves corresponding to the given values of x .

a $y = \sin(2x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{8}$ **b** $y = \sin(3x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$ **c** $y = 1 + \sin(3x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$
d $y = \cos^2(2x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ **e** $y = \sin^2(2x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ **f** $y = \sin(4x)$ at $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$

- 4** For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = 5 \cos x - 2 \sin(3x)$ **b** $f(x) = \cos x + \sin x$

- 5** Determine the derivative of each of the following. (Change degrees to radians first.)

a $2 \cos x^\circ$ **b** $3 \sin x^\circ$ **c** $\sin(3x)^\circ$

- 6** Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for each of the following.

a $y = -\ln(\cos x)$ **b** $y = -\ln(\sin x)$ **c** $y = e^{2 \sin x}$ **d** $y = e^{\cos(2x)}$

- 7** Determine the values of x of the points on the graph of $y = \cos x$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ at which the gradient is $\frac{1}{2}$.

- 8** Determine the values of x of the points on the graph of $y = \sin x$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ at which the gradient is $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$.

- 9** Use your calculator to help solve the equation $\frac{d}{dx} \cos(x^2) = 1$ for $0 \leq x \leq \pi$.

6B The product rule

Learning intentions

- To be able to use the product rule for differentiation.

In the next two sections, we revise two more rules for differentiation. The first of these is the product rule.

Let $f(x) = u(x) \cdot v(x)$. If $u'(x)$ and $v'(x)$ exist, then

$$f'(x) = u(x) \cdot v'(x) + v(x) \cdot u'(x)$$

For example, consider $f(x) = (x^2 + 3x)(4x + 5)$. Then f is the product of two functions u and v , where $u(x) = x^2 + 3x$ and $v(x) = 4x + 5$. The product rule gives:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= u(x) \cdot v'(x) + v(x) \cdot u'(x) \\ &= (x^2 + 3x) \cdot 4 + (4x + 5) \cdot (2x + 3) \\ &= 4x^2 + 12x + 8x^2 + 22x + 15 \\ &= 12x^2 + 34x + 15 \end{aligned}$$

This could also have been found by expanding the brackets and then differentiating.

The product rule (using function notation)

Let $f(x) = u(x) \cdot v(x)$. If $u'(x)$ and $v'(x)$ exist, then

$$f'(x) = u(x) \cdot v'(x) + v(x) \cdot u'(x)$$

Proof By the definition of the derivative of f , we have

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{u(x+h)v(x+h) - u(x)v(x)}{h} \end{aligned}$$

Adding and subtracting $u(x+h)v(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{u(x+h)v(x+h) - u(x)v(x) + [u(x+h)v(x) - u(x+h)v(x)]}{h} \\ &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left[u(x+h) \cdot \left(\frac{v(x+h) - v(x)}{h} \right) + v(x) \cdot \left(\frac{u(x+h) - u(x)}{h} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

Since u and v are differentiable, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} u(x+h) \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{v(x+h) - v(x)}{h} \right) + \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} v(x) \cdot \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \left(\frac{u(x+h) - u(x)}{h} \right) \\ &= u(x) \cdot v'(x) + v(x) \cdot u'(x) \end{aligned}$$

We can state the product rule in Leibniz notation and give a geometric interpretation.

The product rule (using Leibniz notation)

If $y = uv$, where u and v are functions of x , then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$$

In the following figure, the white region represents $y = uv$ and the shaded region δy , as explained below.

δv	$u\delta v$	$\delta u\delta v$
v	uv	$v\delta u$
	u	δu

$$\begin{aligned}\delta y &= (u + \delta u)(v + \delta v) - uv \\ &= uv + u\delta v + v\delta u + \delta u\delta v - uv \\ &= u\delta v + v\delta u + \delta u\delta v\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\delta y}{\delta x} = u \frac{\delta v}{\delta x} + v \frac{\delta u}{\delta x} + \frac{\delta u}{\delta x} \frac{\delta v}{\delta x} \delta x$$

In the limit, as $\delta x \rightarrow 0$, we have

$$\frac{\delta u}{\delta x} \rightarrow \frac{du}{dx}, \quad \frac{\delta v}{\delta x} \rightarrow \frac{dv}{dx} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{\delta y}{\delta x} \rightarrow \frac{dy}{dx}$$

Therefore

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$$

**Example 4**

Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $(2x^2 + 1)(5x^3 + 16)$

b $x^3(3x - 5)^4$

Solution

a Let $y = (2x^2 + 1)(5x^3 + 16)$. Let $u = 2x^2 + 1$ and $v = 5x^3 + 16$.

Then $\frac{du}{dx} = 4x$ and $\frac{dv}{dx} = 15x^2$.

The product rule gives:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= (2x^2 + 1) \cdot 15x^2 + (5x^3 + 16) \cdot 4x \\ &= 30x^4 + 15x^2 + 20x^4 + 64x \\ &= 50x^4 + 15x^2 + 64x\end{aligned}$$

b Let $y = x^3(3x - 5)^4$. Let $u = x^3$ and $v = (3x - 5)^4$.

Then $\frac{du}{dx} = 3x^2$ and $\frac{dv}{dx} = 12(3x - 5)^3$ using the chain rule.

The product rule gives:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx} = 12x^3(3x - 5)^3 + (3x - 5)^4 \cdot 3x^2 \\ &= (3x - 5)^3 [12x^3 + 3x^2(3x - 5)] \\ &= (3x - 5)^3 [12x^3 + 9x^3 - 15x^2] \\ &= (3x - 5)^3 (21x^3 - 15x^2) \\ &= 3x^2(7x - 5)(3x - 5)^3\end{aligned}$$



Example 5

For $f(x) = x^{-3}(10x^2 - 5)^3$, determine $f'(x)$.

Solution

Let $u(x) = x^{-3}$ and $v(x) = (10x^2 - 5)^3$.

Then $u'(x) = -3x^{-4}$ and $v'(x) = 60x(10x^2 - 5)^2$ using the chain rule.

By the product rule:

$$\begin{aligned}f'(x) &= x^{-3} \cdot 60x(10x^2 - 5)^2 + (10x^2 - 5)^3 \cdot (-3x^{-4}) \\ &= (10x^2 - 5)^2 [60x^{-2} + (10x^2 - 5) \cdot (-3x^{-4})] \\ &= (10x^2 - 5)^2 \left(\frac{60x^2 - 30x^2 + 15}{x^4} \right) \\ &= \frac{(10x^2 - 5)^2(30x^2 + 15)}{x^4}\end{aligned}$$



Example 6

Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $e^x(2x^2 + 1)$

b $e^x\sqrt{x-1}$

Solution

a Use the product rule.

Let $y = e^x(2x^2 + 1)$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= e^x(2x^2 + 1) + 4xe^x \\ &= e^x(2x^2 + 4x + 1)\end{aligned}$$

b Use the product rule and the chain rule.

Let $y = e^x\sqrt{x-1}$. Then

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dy}{dx} &= e^x\sqrt{x-1} + \frac{1}{2}e^x(x-1)^{-\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= e^x\sqrt{x-1} + \frac{e^x}{2\sqrt{x-1}} \\ &= \frac{2e^x(x-1) + e^x}{2\sqrt{x-1}} \\ &= \frac{2xe^x - e^x}{2\sqrt{x-1}}\end{aligned}$$

**Example 7**

Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $2x^2 \sin(2x)$

b $e^{2x} \sin(2x + 1)$

c $\cos(4x) \sin(2x)$

Solution

a Let $y = 2x^2 \sin(2x)$.

Applying the product rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 4x \sin(2x) + 4x^2 \cos(2x)$$

b Let $y = e^{2x} \sin(2x + 1)$.

Applying the product rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= 2e^{2x} \sin(2x + 1) + 2e^{2x} \cos(2x + 1) \\ &= 2e^{2x} [\sin(2x + 1) + \cos(2x + 1)] \end{aligned}$$

c Let $y = \cos(4x) \sin(2x)$. Then the product rule gives

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = -4 \sin(4x) \sin(2x) + 2 \cos(2x) \cos(4x)$$

Summary 6B

■ **The product rule (using function notation)**

If $h(x) = f(x)g(x)$, then $h'(x) = f(x)g'(x) + f'(x)g(x)$.

■ **The product rule (using Leibniz notation)**

If $y = uv$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$.

Exercise 6B**Example 4, 5**

1 Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x , using the product rule.

a $(2x^2 + 6)(2x^3 + 1)$

b $3x^{\frac{1}{2}}(2x + 1)$

c $3x(2x - 1)^3$

d $4x^2(2x^2 + 1)^2$

e $(3x + 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}(2x + 4)$

f $(x^2 + 1)\sqrt{2x - 4}$

g $x^3(3x^2 + 2x + 1)^{-1}$

h $x^4\sqrt{2x^2 - 1}$

i $x^2\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x}$

j $x^{-2}(5x^2 - 4)^3$

k $x^{-3}(x^3 - 4)^2$

l $x^3\sqrt[5]{x^3 - x}$

Example 6

2 Determine $f'(x)$ for each of the following.

a $f(x) = e^x(x^2 + 1)$

b $f(x) = e^{2x}(x^3 + 3x + 1)$

c $f(x) = e^{4x+1}(x + 1)^2$

d $f(x) = e^{-4x}\sqrt{x + 1}, x \geq -1$

3 For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = x \ln x, x > 0$

b $f(x) = 2x^2 \ln x, x > 0$

c $f(x) = e^x \ln x, x > 0$

d $f(x) = x \ln(-x), x < 0$

4 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $x^4 e^{-2x}$

b e^{2x+3}

c $(e^{2x} + x)^{\frac{3}{2}}$

d $\frac{1}{x} e^{-x}$

e $e^{\frac{1}{2}x^2}$

f $(x^2 + 2x + 2)e^{-x}$

5 Determine each of the following.

a $\frac{d}{dx}(e^x f(x))$ **b** $\frac{d}{dx}\left(\frac{e^x}{f(x)}\right)$ **c** $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{f(x)})$ **d** $\frac{d}{dx}(e^x(f(x))^2)$

Example 7

6 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $x^3 \cos x$ **b** $(1 + x^2) \cos x$ **c** $e^{-x} \sin x$ **d** $6x \cos x$
e $\sin(3x) \cos(4x)$ **f** $12x \sin x$ **g** $x^2 e^{\sin x}$ **h** $x^2 \cos^2 x$

7 For each of the following, determine $f'(\pi)$.

a $f(x) = e^x \sin x$ **b** $f(x) = \cos^2(2x)$

8 Given that $f(1) = 2$ and $f'(1) = 4$, determine the derivative of $f(x) \ln(x)$ when $x = 1$.

12

13

6C The quotient rule

Learning intentions

- To be able to use the quotient rule for differentiation.

Let $f(x) = \frac{u(x)}{v(x)}$, where $v(x) \neq 0$. If $u'(x)$ and $v'(x)$ exist, then

$$f'(x) = \frac{v(x) \cdot u'(x) - u(x) \cdot v'(x)}{[v(x)]^2}$$

For example, if

$$f(x) = \frac{x^3 + 2x}{x^5 + 2}$$

then f can be considered as a quotient of two functions u and v , where $u(x) = x^3 + 2x$ and $v(x) = x^5 + 2$. The quotient rule gives

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \frac{(x^5 + 2)(3x^2 + 2) - (x^3 + 2x)5x^4}{(x^5 + 2)^2} \\ &= \frac{3x^7 + 6x^2 + 2x^5 + 4 - 5x^7 - 10x^5}{(x^5 + 2)^2} \\ &= \frac{-2x^7 - 8x^5 + 6x^2 + 4}{(x^5 + 2)^2} \end{aligned}$$

The quotient rule (using function notation)

Let $f(x) = \frac{u(x)}{v(x)}$, where $v(x) \neq 0$. If $u'(x)$ and $v'(x)$ exist, then

$$f'(x) = \frac{v(x) \cdot u'(x) - u(x) \cdot v'(x)}{[v(x)]^2}$$

Proof The quotient rule can be proved from first principles, but instead we will use the product rule and the chain rule.

We can write $f(x) = u(x) \cdot g(x)$, where $g(x) = [v(x)]^{-1}$. Using the chain rule, we have

$$g'(x) = -[v(x)]^{-2} \cdot v'(x)$$

Therefore, using the product rule, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= u(x) \cdot g'(x) + g(x) \cdot u'(x) \\ &= -u(x) \cdot [v(x)]^{-2} \cdot v'(x) + [v(x)]^{-1} \cdot u'(x) \\ &= [v(x)]^{-2} (-u(x) \cdot v'(x) + v(x) \cdot u'(x)) \\ &= \frac{v(x) \cdot u'(x) - u(x) \cdot v'(x)}{[v(x)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

The quotient rule (using Leibniz notation)

If $y = \frac{u}{v}$, where u and v are functions of x and $v \neq 0$, then

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}$$



Example 8

Determine the derivative of $\frac{x-2}{x^2+4x+1}$ with respect to x .

Solution

Let $y = \frac{x-2}{x^2+4x+1}$. The quotient rule gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{x^2+4x+1 - (x-2)(2x+4)}{(x^2+4x+1)^2} \\ &= \frac{x^2+4x+1 - (2x^2-8)}{(x^2+4x+1)^2} \\ &= \frac{-x^2+4x+9}{(x^2+4x+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$



Example 9

Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $\frac{e^x}{e^{2x}+1}$

b $\frac{\sin x}{x+1}, x \neq -1$

Solution

a Let $y = \frac{e^x}{e^{2x}+1}$.

Applying the quotient rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{(e^{2x}+1)e^x - e^x \cdot 2e^{2x}}{(e^{2x}+1)^2} \\ &= \frac{e^x - e^{3x}}{(e^{2x}+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

b Let $y = \frac{\sin x}{x+1}$ for $x \neq -1$.

Applying the quotient rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{(x+1)\cos x - \sin x}{(x+1)^2}$$

Summary 6C**■ The quotient rule (using function notation)**

$$\text{If } h(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}, \text{ then } h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{(g(x))^2}.$$

■ The quotient rule (using Leibniz notation)

$$\text{If } y = \frac{u}{v}, \text{ then } \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}.$$

Exercise 6C**Example 8**

- 1** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $\frac{x}{x+4}$

b $\frac{x^2-1}{x^2+1}$

c $\frac{x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{1+x}$

d $\frac{(x+2)^3}{x^2+1}$

e $\frac{x-1}{x^2+2}$

f $\frac{x^2+1}{x^2-1}$

g $\frac{3x^2+2x+1}{x^2+x+1}$

h $\frac{2x+1}{2x^3+2x}$

- 2** Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient at the point on the curve corresponding to the given value of x .

a $y = (2x+1)^4 x^2$ at $x = 1$ **b** $y = x^2 \sqrt{x+1}$ at $x = 0$ **c** $y = x^2(2x+1)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ at $x = 0$

d $y = \frac{x}{x^2+1}$ at $x = 1$ **e** $y = \frac{2x+1}{x^2+1}$ at $x = 1$

- 3** For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = (x+1)\sqrt{x^2+1}$

b $f(x) = (x^2+1)\sqrt{x^3+1}, x > -1$

c $f(x) = \frac{2x+1}{x+3}, x \neq -3$

Example 9

- 4** For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = \frac{e^x}{e^{3x}+3}$

b $f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{x+1}, x \neq -1$

c $f(x) = \frac{\ln x}{x+1}, x > 0$

- 5** For each of the following, determine $f'(x)$.

a $f(x) = \frac{\ln x}{x}, x > 0$

b $f(x) = \frac{\ln x}{x^2+1}, x > 0$

- 6** Determine $f'(x)$ for each of the following.

a $f(x) = \frac{e^{3x}}{e^{3x}+3}$

b $f(x) = \frac{e^x+1}{e^x-1}$

c $f(x) = \frac{e^{2x}+2}{e^{2x}-2}$

- 7** For each of the following, determine $f'(\pi)$.

a $f(x) = \frac{2x}{\cos x}$

b $f(x) = \frac{3x^2+1}{\cos x}$

c $f(x) = \frac{e^x}{\cos x}$

d $f(x) = \frac{\sin x}{x}$

- 8 Derivative of tangent** Let $f(x) = \tan x = \frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$. Show that $f'(x) = \frac{1}{\cos^2 x}$.

6D Tangents and normals

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to determine the equations of tangents and normals of a curve.

The derivative of a function is a new function that gives the measure of the gradient of the tangent at each point on the curve. Having the gradient, we can determine the equation of the tangent line at a given point on the curve.

Suppose that (x_1, y_1) is a point on the curve $y = f(x)$. Then, if f is differentiable at $x = x_1$, the equation of the tangent at (x_1, y_1) is given by

$$y - y_1 = f'(x_1)(x - x_1)$$



Example 10

Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = x^3 + \frac{1}{2}x^2$ at the point $x = 1$.

Solution

When $x = 1$, $y = \frac{3}{2}$, and so $\left(1, \frac{3}{2}\right)$ is a point on the tangent.

Since $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 + x$, the gradient of the tangent at $x = 1$ is 4.

Hence the equation of the tangent is

$$y - \frac{3}{2} = 4(x - 1)$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad y = 4x - \frac{5}{2}$$

The **normal** to a curve at a point on the curve is the line that passes through the point and is perpendicular to the tangent at that point.

Recall from Appendix B that two lines with gradients m_1 and m_2 are perpendicular if and only if $m_1 m_2 = -1$.

Thus, if a tangent has gradient m , the normal has gradient $-\frac{1}{m}$.



Example 11

Determine the equation of the normal to the curve with equation $y = x^3 - 2x^2$ at the point $(1, -1)$.

Solution

The point $(1, -1)$ is on the normal.

Since $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 - 4x$, the gradient of the normal at $x = 1$ is $\frac{-1}{-1} = 1$.

Hence the equation of the normal is

$$y - (-1) = 1(x - 1)$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad y = x - 2$$

**Example 12**

Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ at the point on the graph where $x = 4$.

Solution

Let $y = x^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}} - 2x^{-\frac{1}{2}}$.

When $x = 4$,

$$y = 4^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4 \times 4^{\frac{1}{2}} = 0$$

and $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3}{2} \times 4^{\frac{1}{2}} - 2 \times 4^{-\frac{1}{2}} = 2$

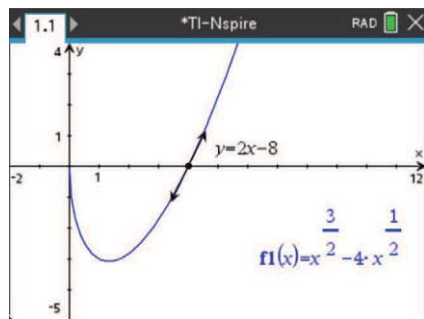
Hence the equation of the tangent is

$$y - 0 = 2(x - 4)$$

i.e. $y = 2x - 8$

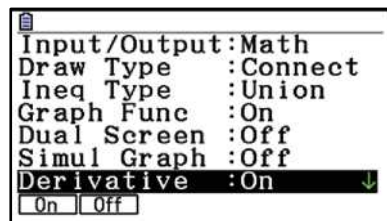
**Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS**

- In a **Graphs** application, plot the graph of $f1(x) = x^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$.
- To add a tangent line to the graph, use **menu** > **Geometry** > **Points & Lines** > **Tangent**. Click on the curve and press **()**. Then type in the x -value 4 and press **(enter)**.
- Hence the tangent line at $x = 4$ has the equation $y = 2x - 8$.

**Using the Casio**

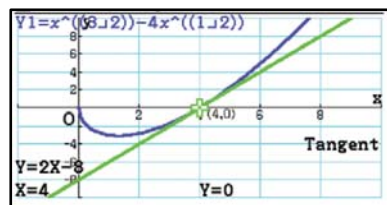
To change the derivative setting:

- In **Graph** mode, go to the set-up screen by pressing **(SHIFT)** **(MENU)**.
- Use the cursor key **▼** to move down to **Derivative**. Press **(F1)** to change the setting to **On**. Then press **(EXIT)**.



To draw a tangent line on a graph:

- Plot the graph of $y = x^{\frac{3}{2}} - 4x^{\frac{1}{2}}$.
- Select **Sketch** **(SHIFT)** **(F4)**, then **Tangent** **(F2)**.
- Enter the x -value 4 and press **(EXE)** twice.
- Hence the tangent line at $x = 4$ has the equation $y = 2x - 8$.



**Example 13**

Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $y = \sin x$ at the point where $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

Solution

Let $y = \sin x$. Then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \cos x$. When $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$, $y = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}$.

Therefore the equation of the tangent is

$$y - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} = \frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

i.e. $y = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\pi}{6} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

**Example 14**

Determine the equations of the tangent and normal to the graph of $y = -\cos x$ at the point $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 0\right)$.

Solution

First determine the gradient of the curve at this point:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \sin x \text{ and so, when } x = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{dy}{dx} = 1.$$

The equation of the tangent is

$$y - 0 = 1\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

i.e. $y = x - \frac{\pi}{2}$

The gradient of the normal is -1 and therefore the equation of the normal is

$$y - 0 = -1\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

i.e. $y = -x + \frac{\pi}{2}$

The following example shows two situations in which we can view a graph as having a 'vertical tangent line' at a point where the derivative is not defined.

**Example 15**

Determine the equation of the tangent to:

a $f(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ where $x = 0$ **b** $f(x) = x^{\frac{2}{3}}$ where $x = 0$.

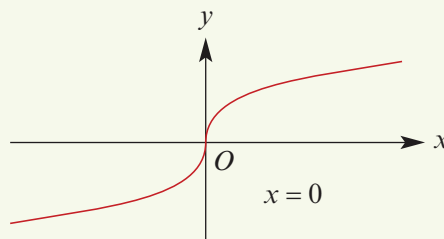
Solution

a The derivative of f is not defined at $x = 0$.

$$\text{For } x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}, f'(x) = \frac{1}{3}x^{-\frac{2}{3}}.$$

It is clear that f is continuous at $x = 0$ and that $f'(x) \rightarrow \infty$ as $x \rightarrow 0$.

The graph has a **vertical tangent** at $x = 0$.



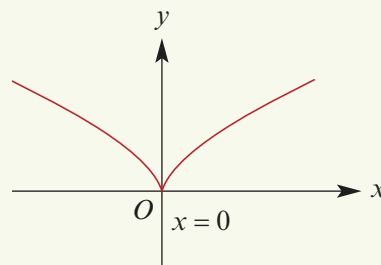
b $f(x) = x^{\frac{2}{3}}$

The derivative of f is not defined at $x = 0$.

For $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$, $f'(x) = \frac{2}{3}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}$.

It is clear that f is continuous at $x = 0$ and that $f'(x) \rightarrow \infty$ as $x \rightarrow 0$ from the right and $f'(x) \rightarrow -\infty$ as $x \rightarrow 0$ from the left.

There is a **cusp** at $x = 0$, and the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a **vertical tangent** at $x = 0$.



Summary 6D

■ Equation of a tangent line

Suppose (x_1, y_1) is a point on the curve $y = f(x)$. Then, if f is differentiable at $x = x_1$, the equation of the tangent to the curve at (x_1, y_1) is given by $y - y_1 = f'(x_1)(x - x_1)$.

■ Gradient of a normal line

If a tangent has gradient m , the normal has gradient $-\frac{1}{m}$.

Exercise 6D

Example 10

- 1** Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = x^2 - 1$ at the point $(2, 3)$.

Example 11

- 2** Determine the equation of the normal to the curve $y = x^2 + 3x - 1$ at the point where the curve cuts the y -axis.
- 3** Determine the equations of the normals to the curve $y = x^2 - 5x + 6$ at the points where it cuts the x -axis.
- 4** Determine the equations of the tangent and the normal to the curve $y = (2x + 1)^9$ at the point $(0, 1)$.
- 5** Determine the coordinates of the point on $y = x^2 - 5$ at which the curve has gradient 3. Hence determine the value of c for which the line $y = 3x + c$ is tangent to $y = x^2 - 5$.
- 6** Determine the equations of **i** the tangent and **ii** the normal at the point corresponding to the given x -value on each of the following curves.
- | | |
|--|--|
| a $y = x^2 - 2$; $x = 1$ | b $y = x^2 - 3x - 1$; $x = 0$ |
| c $y = \frac{1}{x}$; $x = -1$ | d $y = (x - 2)(x^2 + 1)$; $x = -1$ |
| e $y = \sqrt{3x + 1}$; $x = 0$ | f $y = \sqrt{x}$; $x = 1$ |
| g $y = x^{\frac{2}{3}} + 1$; $x = 1$ | h $y = x^3 - 8x$; $x = 2$ |
| i $y = x^3 - 3x^2 + 2$; $x = 2$ | j $y = 2x^3 + x^2 - 4x + 1$; $x = 1$ |

Example 12

- 7** Use a graphics calculator to help to determine the equation of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = 4x^{\frac{5}{2}} - 8x^{\frac{3}{2}}$ at the point on the graph where $x = 4$.
- 8** Determine the equation of the tangent at the point corresponding to the given x -value on each of the following curves.

a $y = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}; x = 0$

b $y = \sqrt{3x^2 + 1}; x = 1$

c $y = \frac{1}{2x - 1}; x = 0$

d $y = \frac{1}{(2x - 1)^2}; x = 1$

Example 13, 14

- 9** Determine the equation of the tangent to each of the following curves at the given x -value.

a $y = \sin(2x); x = 0$

b $y = \cos(2x); x = \frac{\pi}{2}$

c $y = \cos(2x) + \sin x; x = \pi$

d $y = \sin x + x \sin(2x); x = 0$

- 10** For each function, determine the equation of the tangent to the graph at the given value of x .

a $f(x) = e^x + e^{-x}; x = 0$

b $f(x) = \frac{e^x - e^{-x}}{2}; x = 0$

c $f(x) = x^2 e^{2x}; x = 1$

d $f(x) = e^{\sqrt{x}}; x = 1$

e $f(x) = x e^{x^2}; x = 1$

f $f(x) = x^2 e^{-x}; x = 2$

- 11 a** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $f(x) = \ln x$ at the point $(1, 0)$.

b Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $f(x) = \ln(2x)$ at the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, 0\right)$.

c Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $f(x) = \ln(kx)$ at the point $\left(\frac{1}{k}, 0\right)$, where $k \in \mathbb{R}^+$.

Example 15

- 12** Determine the equation of the tangent at the point where $y = 0$ for each of the following curves.

a $y = x^{\frac{1}{5}}$

b $y = x^{\frac{3}{5}}$

c $y = (x - 4)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

d $y = (x + 5)^{\frac{2}{3}}$

e $y = (2x + 1)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

f $y = (x + 5)^{\frac{4}{5}}$

- 13** The tangent to the curve with equation $y = 2e^x$ at the point $(a, 2e^a)$ passes through the origin. Determine the value of a .

- 14** The tangent to the curve with equation $y = \ln x$ at the point $(a, \ln a)$ passes through the origin. Determine the value of a .

- 15** The tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^2 + 2x$ at the point $(a, a^2 + 2a)$ passes through the origin. Determine the value of a .

- 16** The tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^3 + x$ at the point $(a, a^3 + a)$ passes through the point $(1, 1)$. Determine the value of a .

- 17** The tangent to the curve with equation $y = \tan(2x) = \frac{\sin(2x)}{\cos(2x)}$ at the point where $x = \frac{\pi}{8}$ meets the y -axis at the point A . Determine the distance OA , where O is the origin.

6E Rates of change

Learning intentions

- To be able to calculate the rate of change and average rate of change.

The derivative was defined geometrically in the previous chapter. However, the process of differentiation may also be used to tackle many kinds of problems involving rates of change.

For the function with rule $f(x)$:

- The **average rate of change** for $x \in [a, b]$ is given by $\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$.
- The **instantaneous rate of change** of f with respect to x when $x = a$ is given by $f'(a)$.

The derivative $\frac{dy}{dx}$ gives the instantaneous rate of change of y with respect to x .

- If $\frac{dy}{dx} > 0$, then y is increasing as x increases.
- If $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$, then y is decreasing as x increases.



Example 16

For the function with rule $f(x) = x^2 + 2x$, determine:

- a** the average rate of change for $x \in [2, 3]$
- b** the average rate of change for the interval $[2, 2 + h]$
- c** the instantaneous rate of change of f with respect to x when $x = 2$.

Solution

a Average rate of change = $\frac{f(3) - f(2)}{3 - 2} = 15 - 8 = 7$

b Average rate of change = $\frac{f(2 + h) - f(2)}{2 + h - 2}$

$$= \frac{(2 + h)^2 + 2(2 + h) - 8}{h}$$

$$= \frac{4 + 4h + h^2 + 4 + 2h - 8}{h}$$

$$= \frac{6h + h^2}{h} = 6 + h$$

- c** The derivative is $f'(x) = 2x + 2$. When $x = 2$, the instantaneous rate of change is $f'(2) = 6$. This can also be seen from the result of part **b**.



Example 17

A balloon develops a microscopic leak and gradually decreases in volume. Its volume, $V \text{ cm}^3$, at time t seconds is $V = 600 - 10t - \frac{1}{100}t^2$, $t \geq 0$.

a Determine the rate of change of volume after:

- i** 10 seconds **ii** 20 seconds

b For how long could the model be valid?

Solution

a $\frac{dV}{dt} = -10 - \frac{t}{50}$

i When $t = 10$, $\frac{dV}{dt} = -10\frac{1}{5}$

i.e. the volume is decreasing at a rate of $10\frac{1}{5} \text{ cm}^3$ per second.

ii When $t = 20$, $\frac{dV}{dt} = -10\frac{2}{5}$

i.e. the volume is decreasing at a rate of $10\frac{2}{5} \text{ cm}^3$ per second.

b The model will not be meaningful when $V < 0$. Consider $V = 0$:

$$600 - 10t - \frac{1}{100}t^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore t = 100(\sqrt{31} - 5) \quad \text{or} \quad t = -100(\sqrt{31} + 5)$$

The model may be suitable for $0 \leq t \leq 100(\sqrt{31} - 5)$.



Example 18

It is suggested that the height, $h(t)$ metres, of the tide above mean sea level on 1 January at Warnung is given approximately by the rule

$$h(t) = 4 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$$

where t is the number of hours after midnight.

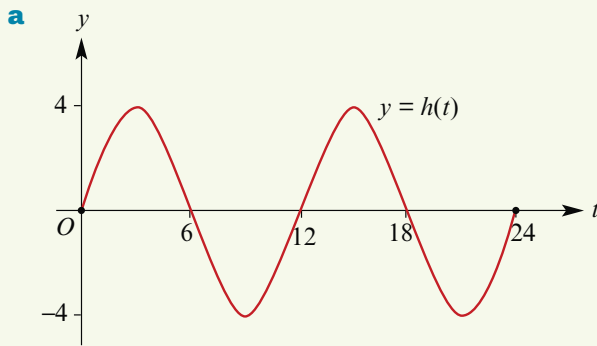
a Draw the graph of $y = h(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.

b Determine the average rate of change of the height of the tide with respect to time between 3 a.m. and 9 a.m.

c Determine the rate of change of the height of the tide at time t hours after midnight.

d Determine the times at which the magnitude of this rate of change reaches its maximum value, and state the maximum value.

Solution



Note: Period = $2\pi \div \frac{\pi}{6} = 12$

b Average rate of change = $\frac{h(9) - h(3)}{9 - 3} = \frac{-4 - 4}{6} = -\frac{4}{3}$ metres per hour

c $h'(t) = \frac{2\pi}{3} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$

d The magnitude of $h'(t)$ is at a maximum when:

$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right) = \pm 1$$

$$\frac{\pi t}{6} = 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi \text{ or } 4\pi$$

$$\therefore t = 0, 6, 12, 18 \text{ or } 24$$

The times are 12 a.m., 6 a.m., 12 p.m., 6 p.m. and 12 a.m.

The maximum magnitude of $h'(t)$ is $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ metres per hour.

Relative growth rate

In Chapter 7 we defined **relative growth rate** of a function f to be $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$.

For an exponential function of the form $f(x) = Ae^{kx}$, the relative growth rate is

$$\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{kAe^{kx}}{Ae^{kx}} = k$$

Hence the relative growth rate of $f(x) = Ae^{kx}$ is the constant k .



Example 19

Under certain laboratory conditions the population of a particular single-celled organism is known to grow exponentially. It can be modelled by the rule $P(t) = P_0 e^{kt}$ where t is the time in hours, $P(0) = P_0$ and k is the relative growth rate.

a If $P(4) = 1.5 \times P_0$, determine the value of k and express this relative growth as a percentage.

b Determine the value of t for which $P(t) = 2P_0$.

Solution

a Since $P(4) = 1.5 \times P_0$, we obtain

$$1.5 \times P_0 = P_0 e^{4k}$$

$$1.5 = e^{4k}$$

$$k = \frac{1}{4} \log_e(1.5)$$

The relative growth rate is

$$\frac{1}{4} \ln(1.5) = 0.1013 \dots$$

The relative growth is approximately 10%

b Solve the equation $P_0 e^{kt} = 2P_0$ for t

$$\text{Use } k = \frac{1}{4} \ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$$

$$P_0 e^{kt} = 2P_0$$

$$e^{kt} = 2$$

$$t \times \frac{1}{4} \ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right) = \ln(2)$$

$$t = \frac{4 \ln(2)}{\ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)} \approx 6.84 \text{ hours}$$

Summary 6E

For the function with rule $f(x)$:

- The average rate of change for $x \in [a, b]$ is given by $\frac{f(b) - f(a)}{b - a}$.
- The instantaneous rate of change of f with respect to x when $x = a$ is given by $f'(a)$.



Exercise 6E

Example 16

1 For the function with rule $f(x) = 3x^2 + 6x$, determine:

- a** the average rate of change for $x \in [2, 3]$
- b** the average rate of change for the interval $[2, 2 + h]$
- c** the instantaneous rate of change of f with respect to x when $x = 2$.

2 Express each of the following in symbols:

- a** the rate of change of volume (V) with respect to time (t)
- b** the rate of change of surface area (S) of a sphere with respect to radius (r)
- c** the rate of change of volume (V) of a cube with respect to edge length (x).

Example 17

3 If your interest (I) in Mathematical Methods can be expressed as

$$I = \frac{4}{(t + 1)^2}$$

where t is the time in days measured from the first day of Term 1, how fast is your interest waning when $t = 10$?

4 A reservoir is being emptied and the quantity of water, $V \text{ m}^3$, remaining in the reservoir t days after it starts to empty is given by $V(t) = 10^3(90 - t)^3$.

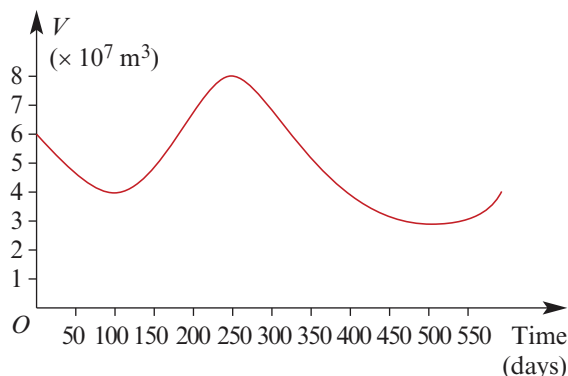
- a** At what rate is the reservoir being emptied at time t ?
- b** How long does it take to empty the reservoir?
- c** What is the volume of water in the reservoir when $t = 0$?
- d** After what time is the reservoir being emptied at $3 \times 10^5 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$?
- e** Sketch the graph of $V(t)$ against t .
- f** Sketch the graph of $V'(t)$ against t .

- 5** A coffee percolator allows 1000 mL of water to flow into a filter in 20 minutes. The volume which has flowed into the filter at time t minutes is given by

$$V(t) = \frac{1}{160} \left(5t^4 - \frac{t^5}{5} \right), \quad 0 \leq t \leq 20$$

- a** At what rate is the water flowing into the filter at time t minutes?
- b** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dV}{dt}$ against t for $0 \leq t \leq 20$.
- c** When is the rate of flow greatest?

- 6** The graph shows the volume, $V \text{ m}^3$, of water in a reservoir at time t days.



- a** At what times is the rate of flow from the reservoir $0 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$?
- b** Determine an estimate for the rate of flow at $t = 200$.
- c** Determine the average rate of flow for the interval $[100, 250]$.
- d** State the times for which there is net flow into the reservoir.

Example 18

- 7** The water level on a beach wall is given by

$$d(t) = 6 + 4 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6}t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

where t is the number of hours after midnight and d is the depth of the water in metres.

- a** Sketch the graph of $d(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
 - b** What is the earliest time of day at which the water is at its highest?
 - c** Determine the average rate of change of the depth of the water with respect to time between 3 a.m. and 9 a.m.
 - d** Determine the rate of change of the depth of the water at time t hours after midnight.
 - e** Determine the times at which the magnitude of this rate of change reaches its maximum value, and state the maximum value.
- 8** If $y = 3x + 2 \cos x$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$ and hence show that y increases as x increases.
- 9** The volume of water in a reservoir at time t is given by $V(t) = 3 + 2 \sin\left(\frac{t}{4}\right)$.
- a** Determine the volume in the reservoir at time $t = 10$.
 - b** Determine the rate of change of the volume of water in the reservoir at time $t = 10$.

- 10** A manufacturing company has a daily output on day t of a production run given by

$$y = 800(1 - e^{-0.45t})$$

where the first day of the production run is $t = 0$.

- a** Sketch the graph of y against t . (Assume a continuous model.)
- b** Determine the average rate of change of production of y with respect to t from
 - i** $t = 0$ to $t = 5$
 - ii** $t = 5$ to $t = 10$
- c** Find the instantaneous rate of change of output y with respect to t on the 5th day.

- 11** The mass, m kg, of radioactive substance remaining in a material t hours after observations began is given by $m = 10e^{-0.1t}$. In the following give answers correct to three decimal places.

- a** Find the mass left after 12 hours.
- b** Find how long it takes for the mass to fall to half of its value at $t = 0$.
- c** Find how long it takes for the mass to fall to **i** 20% and **ii** 1% of its value at $t = 0$.
- d** Express the rate of decay as a function of m .

Example 19

- 12** The spread of a disease can be modelled by a rule of the form $N = Ae^{kt}$, where N is the number of people who have been infected after t days. When the disease is first identified ($t = 0$), there are 50 infected people. The relative growth rate is 15%.

- a** State the values of the constants A and k .
- b** What is the initial rate of increase of the disease?
- c** When does the rate of increase reach 200 people per day?

- 13** The number of tonnes of paper waiting to be recycled at a 24 hour recycling plant can be modelled by the equation $Q(t) = 1.5 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right) + 5$, where t is the time in hours and $Q(t)$ is the number of tonnes waiting to be recycled.

- a** Determine the maximum and minimum amounts of paper waiting to be recycled.
- b** Determine an expression for $\frac{dQ}{dt}$ the rate at which the amount of paper is waiting to be recycled changes.
- c** Determine the values of t over a 24 hour period for which this magnitude of this rate is a maximum.

- 14** The concentration, x units of a particular drug in the blood t hours after the drug has been administered is given by the formula $x = 0.25te^{-1.15t}$.

- a** Determine $\frac{dx}{dt}$ the rate at which the concentration changes with respect to time.
- b** Determine the time, correct to the nearest minute, when the rate is zero and give the concentration at this time.
- c** Determine the interval when $\frac{dx}{dt} > 0$ and the interval when $\frac{dx}{dt} < 0$.

6F Motion in a straight line

Learning intentions

- To be able to solve problems involving motion in a straight line.

We continue our study of motion in a straight line from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

Position

The **position** of a particle moving in a straight line is determined by its distance from a fixed point O on the line, called the **origin**, and whether it is to the right or left of O . By convention, the direction to the right of the origin is considered to be positive.

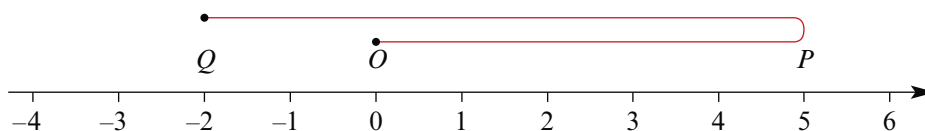


Consider a particle which starts at O and begins to move. The position of the particle at any instant can be specified by a real number s . For example, if the unit is metres and if $s = -3$, the position is 3 m to the left of O ; while if $s = 3$, the position is 3 m to the right of O .

Displacement and distance

The **displacement** of a particle is defined as the change in position of the particle.

It is important to distinguish between the scalar quantity **distance** and the vector quantity displacement (which has a direction). For example, consider a particle that starts at O and moves first 5 units to the right to point P , and then 7 units to the left to point Q .



The difference between its final position and its initial position is -2 . So the displacement of the particle is -2 units. However, the distance it has travelled is 12 units.

Velocity and speed

Average velocity

The average rate of change of position with respect to time is **average velocity**.

A particle's average velocity for a time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{change in time}} = \frac{s_2 - s_1}{t_2 - t_1}$$

where s_1 is the position at time t_1 and s_2 is the position at time t_2 .

Instantaneous velocity

The instantaneous rate of change of position with respect to time is **instantaneous velocity**. We will refer to the instantaneous velocity as simply the **velocity**.

If a particle's position, s , at time t is given as a function of t , then the velocity of the particle at time t is determined by differentiating the rule for position with respect to time.

If s is the position of a particle at time t , then

$$\text{velocity } v = \frac{ds}{dt}$$

Velocity may be positive, negative or zero. If the velocity is positive, the particle is moving to the right, and if it is negative, the particle is moving to the left. A velocity of zero means the particle is instantaneously at rest.

Speed and average speed

- **Speed** is the magnitude of the velocity.
- **Average speed** for a time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by $\frac{\text{distance travelled}}{t_2 - t_1}$

Units of measurement

Common units for velocity (and speed) are:

$$1 \text{ metre per second} = 1 \text{ m/s} = 1 \text{ ms}^{-1}$$

$$1 \text{ centimetre per second} = 1 \text{ cm/s} = 1 \text{ cms}^{-1}$$

$$1 \text{ kilometre per hour} = 1 \text{ km/h} = 1 \text{ kmh}^{-1}$$

The first and third units are connected in the following way:

$$1 \text{ kmh}^{-1} = 1000 \text{ mh}^{-1} = \frac{1000}{60 \times 60} \text{ ms}^{-1} = \frac{5}{18} \text{ ms}^{-1}$$

$$\therefore 1 \text{ ms}^{-1} = \frac{18}{5} \text{ kmh}^{-1}$$



Example 20

A particle moves in a straight line so that its position, x cm, relative to O at time t seconds is given by $s = t^2 - 7t + 6$, $t \geq 0$.

- a Determine its initial velocity.
- b When does its velocity equal zero, and what is its position at this time?
- c What is its average velocity for the first 4 seconds?
- d Determine its average speed for the first 4 seconds.

Solution

a $s = t^2 - 7t + 6$

$$v = \frac{dx}{dt} = 2t - 7$$

At $t = 0$, $v = -7$. The particle is initially moving to the left at 7 cms^{-1}

b $\frac{ds}{dt} = 0$ implies $2t - 7 = 0$, i.e. $t = 3.5$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{When } t = 3.5, s &= (3.5)^2 - 7(3.5) + 6 \\ &= -6.25\end{aligned}$$

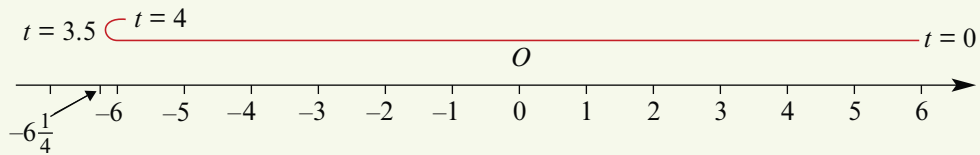
So, at $t = 3.5$ seconds, the particle is at rest 6.25 cm to the left of O .

c Average velocity = $\frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{change in time}}$

Position is given by $s = t^2 - 7t + 6$. So at $t = 4$, $s = -6$, and at $t = 0$, $s = 6$.

$$\therefore \text{Average velocity} = \frac{-6 - 6}{4} = -3 \text{ cms}^{-1}$$

d Average speed = $\frac{\text{distance travelled}}{\text{change in time}}$



The particle stopped at $t = 3.5$ and began to move in the opposite direction. So we must consider the distance travelled in the first 3.5 seconds (from $s = 6$ to $s = -6.25$) and then the distance travelled in the final 0.5 seconds (from $s = -6.25$ to $s = -6$).

$$\text{Total distance travelled} = 12.25 + 0.25 = 12.5$$

$$\therefore \text{Average speed} = \frac{12.5}{4} = 3.125 \text{ cms}^{-1}$$

Note: Remember that speed is the magnitude of the velocity. However, we can see from this example that average speed is *not* the magnitude of the average velocity.

Acceleration

The acceleration of a particle is the rate of change of its velocity with respect to time.

■ **Average acceleration** for the time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by $\frac{v_2 - v_1}{t_2 - t_1}$, where v_2 is the velocity at time t_2 and v_1 is the velocity at time t_1 .

■ **Instantaneous acceleration** $a = \frac{dv}{dt}$

Acceleration may be positive, negative or zero. Zero acceleration means the particle is moving at a constant velocity. The direction of motion and the acceleration need not coincide. For example, a particle may have a positive velocity, indicating it is moving to the right, but a negative acceleration, indicating it is slowing down.

Also, although a particle may be instantaneously at rest, its acceleration at that instant need not be zero. If acceleration has the same sign as velocity, then the particle is 'speeding up'. If the sign is opposite, the particle is 'slowing down'.

The most commonly used units for acceleration are cm s^{-2} and m s^{-2} .



Example 21

A particle moves along a straight line. Its position, x m, relative to a fixed point O on the line is given by $s = 3 + 2 \sin(3t)$, where t is the time in seconds ($0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$).

- a i** Determine the particle's greatest distance from O .
- ii** Determine the particle's least distance from O .
- b** Determine the times at which the particle is 5 m from O .
- c** Determine the velocity, $v \text{ m s}^{-1}$, and acceleration, $a \text{ m s}^{-2}$, of the particle at time t seconds.
- d** Determine the maximum speed, and find the times and locations at which this occurs.
- e** Determine the maximum magnitude of the acceleration, and determine the times and locations at which this occurs.
- f** Describe the motion of the particle.

Solution

- a i** Greatest distance from O occurs when $\sin(3t) = 1$. Greatest distance is 5 m.
- ii** Least distance from O occurs when $\sin(3t) = -1$. Least distance is 1 m.

$$\mathbf{b} \quad 3 + 2 \sin(3t) = 5$$

$$\sin(3t) = 1$$

$$3t = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{9\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore t = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{3\pi}{2}$$

- d** Maximum speed is 6 m s^{-1} and occurs when:

$$\cos(3t) = \pm 1$$

$$3t = 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, 4\pi, 5\pi \text{ or } 6\pi$$

$$\therefore t = 0, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \pi, \frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3} \text{ or } 2\pi$$

Locations are all $s = 3$.

$$\mathbf{c} \quad s = 3 + 2 \sin(3t)$$

$$v = \frac{ds}{dt} = 6 \cos(3t)$$

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = -18 \sin(3t)$$

- e** Maximum magnitude of acceleration is 18 m s^{-2} and occurs when:

$$\sin(3t) = \pm 1$$

$$3t = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2}, \frac{7\pi}{2}, \frac{9\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{11\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore t = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{3\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{11\pi}{6}$$

Locations are $s = 5$ and $s = 1$ alternating.

- f** The particle starts at $s = 3$ and oscillates between $s = 5$ and $s = 1$ three times.

Summary 6F

- Position (s m) is specified with respect to a reference point O on the line.
- Velocity (v ms⁻¹) and acceleration (a ms⁻²) are given by:
 - velocity $v = \frac{ds}{dt}$
 - acceleration $a = \frac{dv}{dt}$

Exercise 6F**Example 20**

- 1 A particle moves in a straight line so that its position, x cm, relative to O at time t seconds is given by $s = t^2 - 6t + 8$, $t \geq 0$.
 - a Determine its initial velocity.
 - b When does its velocity equal zero, and what is its position at this time?
 - c What is its average velocity for the first 4 seconds?
 - d Determine its average speed for the first 4 seconds.
- 2 A particle moving in a straight line has position x cm relative to the point O at time t seconds ($t \geq 0$), where $s = t^3 - 11t^2 + 24t - 3$. Determine:
 - a its initial position and velocity
 - b its velocity at time t
 - c at what times the particle is stationary
 - d where the particle is stationary
 - e how far it travels in the first 2 seconds
 - f how far it travels in the first 7 seconds.

Example 21

- 3 A particle moves along a straight line. Its position, s m, relative to a fixed point O on the line is given by $s = 30 + 20 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$, where t is the time in seconds ($0 \leq t \leq 24$).
 - a i Determine the particle's greatest distance from O .
ii Determine the particle's least distance from O .
 - b Determine the times at which the particle is 10 m from O .
 - c Determine the velocity, v ms⁻¹, and acceleration, a ms⁻², of the particle at time t seconds.
 - d Determine the maximum speed, and when and where this occurs.
 - e Determine the maximum magnitude of the acceleration, and when and where this occurs.
 - f Determine the distance travelled by the particle during the 24 seconds of motion.
- 4 A particle moves along a straight line such that its position, s cm, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s = 2t^3 - 9t^2 + 12t$ for $t \geq 0$.
 - a Determine the velocity, v cms⁻¹, as a function of t .
 - b Determine the acceleration, a cm⁻², as a function of t .
 - c At what times and in what positions will the particle have zero velocity?
 - d At what times and in what positions will the particle have zero acceleration?

- 5** A particle moves in a straight line such that its position, s cm, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s = 8 + 2t - t^2$ for $t \geq 0$. Determine:
- a** its initial position
 - b** its initial velocity
 - c** when and where the velocity is zero
 - d** its acceleration at time t .
- 6** A particle is moving in a straight line such that its position, x cm, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s = \sqrt{2t^2 + 2}$. Determine:
- a** the velocity as a function of t
 - b** the velocity when $t = 1$
 - c** the acceleration as a function of t
 - d** the acceleration when $t = 1$.
- 7** A vehicle is travelling in a straight line away from point O . Its distance from O after t seconds is $0.4e^t$ metres. Determine the velocity and acceleration of the vehicle when $t = 0$, $t = 1$ and $t = 2$.
- 8** The position of a particle moving along the x -axis is given by $s(t) = -5 \ln\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) + t + 8$ where $t \geq 1$. Distance is measured in centimetres and time in seconds.
- a** Determine $s(2e)$.
 - b** Determine an expression for the velocity and an expression for the acceleration.
 - c** Determine the interval of time when the particle is moving to the right.
- 9** A particle moves in a straight line such that its velocity, v ms⁻¹, at time t seconds is given by $v = e^{-2t} \sin(3t)$ for $t \geq 0$.
- a** Determine the first three times at which the particle's velocity is zero.
 - b** Determine the particle's acceleration at time t seconds.
 - c** Use a graphics calculator to determine the first time at which the particle's acceleration is zero. Give your answer correct to three decimal places.
- 10** A particle moves in a straight line such that its velocity, v ms⁻¹, at time t seconds is given by $v = c - \ln(t + d)$ for $t \geq 0$, where c and d are positive constants.
- a** Determine the particle's acceleration, a ms⁻², at time t seconds.
 - b** Given that the acceleration is $-\frac{1}{20}$ ms⁻² when $t = 10$, determine the value of d .
 - c** Determine the time at which the particle is stationary in terms of c .
- 11** A block of stone is falling through a layer of mud. The depth, s metres, of the block below ground level at time t minutes is given by $s = 10 - 10e^{-0.5t}$.
- a** Determine the velocity of the block at time t .
 - b** Determine the acceleration of the block at time t .
 - c** When is the block 5 m below ground level and what is its velocity at this time?

- 12** A motion detector is set up to measure the horizontal component of the motion of a swing. The motion is described by the function $d(t) = 1.7 \cos\left(\frac{5\pi t}{4}\right) + 2.1$ where t is the time in seconds and $d(t)$ is the horizontal distance of the swing to the motion detector.
- a** Determine a rule $v(t)$ for the horizontal velocity of the swing.
 - b** Determine the maximum and minimum horizontal distances of the swing to the motion detector and the times over the first five seconds of motion at which these occur.
 - c** Determine the maximum and minimum horizontal speed of the swing and the times over the first five seconds of motion at which these occur.
- 13** A weight is bouncing on the end of a spring. The displacement from the centre of motion at time t seconds is y cm with $y = 0$ being the centre of motion. At time $t = 0$, the weight is at the lowest point, $y = -5$ cm. After 10 seconds, the weight is back at the lowest point. The motion can be described by a rule of the form $y = a \cos bt$.
- a** Determine the values of a and b .
 - b** Determine expressions in terms of t for the velocity and acceleration of the weight.
 - c** Determine an expression for the acceleration in terms of y .
 - d** Determine the times in the first 10 seconds when the magnitude of the velocity is a maximum.

Chapter summary

Basic derivatives

$f(x)$	$f'(x)$
c	0
x^a	ax^{a-1}
e^{ax}	ae^{ax}
$\ln(ax)$	$\frac{1}{x}$
$\sin(ax + b)$	$a \cos(ax + b)$
$\cos(ax + b)$	$-a \sin(ax + b)$

where c is a constant

where a is a non-zero real number.

Rules for differentiation

■ Chain rule

- If $h(x) = f(g(x))$, then $h'(x) = f'(g(x))g'(x)$
- $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$

■ Product rule

- If $h(x) = f(x)g(x)$, then $h'(x) = f(x)g'(x) + f'(x)g(x)$.
- If $y = uv$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$.

■ Quotient rule

- If $h(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$, then $h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{(g(x))^2}$.
- If $y = \frac{u}{v}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}$.

Tangents and normals

Let (x_1, y_1) be a point on the curve $y = f(x)$. If f is differentiable at $x = x_1$, then

- the equation of the **tangent** to the curve at (x_1, y_1) is given by $y - y_1 = f'(x_1)(x - x_1)$
- the equation of the **normal** to the curve at (x_1, y_1) is given by $y - y_1 = \frac{-1}{f'(x_1)}(x - x_1)$.

Motion in a straight line

For an object moving in a straight line with position x at time t :

- velocity $v = \frac{dx}{dt}$
- acceleration $a = \frac{dv}{dt}$

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills. ☒

6A

1 I can differentiate the sine and cosine functions. ☐

See Example 1, Example 2, Example 3 and Questions 1, 2 and 3

6B

2 I can use the product rule for differentiation. ☐

See Example 4, Example 5, Example 6, Example 7 and Questions 1, 2 and 6

6C

3 I can use the quotient rule for differentiation. ☐

See Example 8, Example 9 and Questions 1 and 4

6D

4 I can determine the equation of the tangent and of the normal at a given point on a curve. ☐

See Example 10, Example 11, Example 12, Example 13, Example 14, Example 15 and Questions 1, 2, 7, 9 and 12

6E

5 I can determine the rate of change and the average rate of change of a function. ☐

See Example 16, Example 17, Example 18, Example 19 and Questions 1, 3 and 7

6F

6 I can solve problems involving motion in a straight line. ☐

See Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 1 and 3

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

1 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

a $x + \sqrt{1 - x^2}$

b $\frac{4x + 1}{x^2 + 3}$

c $\sqrt{1 + 3x}$

d $\frac{2 + \sqrt{x}}{x}$

e $(x - 9)\sqrt{x - 3}$

f $x\sqrt{1 + x^2}$

g $\frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2 + 1}$

h $\frac{x}{x^2 + 1}$

i $(2 + 5x^2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

j $\frac{2x + 1}{x^2 + 2}$

k $(3x^2 + 2)^{\frac{2}{3}}$

2 For each of the following functions, determine the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point corresponding to the given x -value.

a $y = 3x^2 - 4$ at $x = -1$

b $y = \frac{x - 1}{x^2 + 1}$ at $x = 0$

c $y = (x - 2)^5$ at $x = 1$

d $y = (2x + 2)^{\frac{1}{3}}$ at $x = 3$

3 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

- a** $\ln(x+2)$ **b** $\sin(3x+2)$ **c** $\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **d** e^{x^2-2x}
e $\ln(3-x)$ **f** $\sin(2\pi x)$ **g** $\sin^2(3x+1)$ **h** $\sqrt{\ln x}, x > 1$
i $\frac{2\ln(2x)}{x}$ **j** $x^2 \sin(2\pi x)$

4 Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .

- a** $e^x \sin(2x)$ **b** $2x^2 \ln x$ **c** $\frac{\ln x}{x^3}$ **d** $\sin(2x) \cos(3x)$
e $\frac{\sin(2x)}{\cos(2x)}$ **f** $\cos^3(3x+2)$ **g** $x^2 \sin^2(3x)$

5 a For $y = \frac{2x-3}{x^2+4}$, show that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{8+6x-2x^2}{(x^2+4)^2}$.

b Determine the values of x for which both y and $\frac{dy}{dx}$ are positive.

6 Determine the derivative of each of the following, given that the function f is differentiable for all real numbers.

- a** $xf(x)$ **b** $\frac{1}{f(x)}$ **c** $\frac{x}{f(x)}$ **d** $\frac{x^2}{[f(x)]^2}$

7 a Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = x^3 - 8x^2 + 15x$ at the point with coordinates $(4, -4)$.

b Determine the coordinates of the point where the tangent meets the curve again.

8 Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = 3x^2$ at the point where $x = a$. If this tangent meets the y -axis at P , determine the y -coordinate of P in terms of a .

9 a Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^3 - 7x^2 + 14x - 8$ at the point where $x = 1$.

b Determine the x -coordinate of a second point on this curve at which the tangent is parallel to the tangent at $x = 1$.

10 Use the formula $A = \pi r^2$ for the area of a circle to determine:

- a** the average rate at which the area of a circle changes with respect to the radius as the radius increases from $r = 2$ to $r = 3$
b the instantaneous rate at which the area changes with respect to r when $r = 3$.

11 For the function with rule $f(x) = (x-1)^{\frac{4}{5}}$:

- a** State the values of x for which the function is differentiable, and determine the rule for f' .
b Determine the equations of the tangents at the points $(2, 1)$ and $(0, 1)$.
c Determine the coordinates of the point of intersection of the two tangents.

- 12** A vehicle is travelling in a straight line away from a point O . Its distance from O after t seconds is $0.25e^t$ metres. Determine the velocity and acceleration of the vehicle at $t = 0$, $t = 1$ and $t = 4$.
- 13** A particle moves in a straight line such that the position, x metres, of the particle relative to a fixed origin at time t seconds is given by $x = 2 \sin t + \cos t$, for $t \geq 0$. Determine the first value of t , correct to three decimal places, for which the particle is instantaneously at rest.
- 14** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = e^x$ at $(1, e)$.
- 15**
- a** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = \ln x$ at the point $(e, 1)$.
 - b** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ at the point $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \sqrt{2}\right)$.
 - c** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = \cos x$ at the point $\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 0\right)$.
 - d** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = \ln(x^2)$ at the point $(-\sqrt{e}, 1)$.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 16** A certain food is susceptible to contamination from bacterial spores of two types, F and G . In order to kill the spores, the food is heated to a temperature of 120°C . The number of live spores after t minutes can be approximated by $f(t) = 1000e^{-0.5t}$ for F -type spores and by $g(t) = 1200e^{-0.7t}$ for G -type spores.
- a** Determine the time required to kill 50% of the F -type spores.
 - b** Determine the total number of live spores of both types when $t = 0$, and determine the percentage of these that are still alive when $t = 5$.
 - c** Determine the rate at which the total number of live spores is decreasing when $t = 5$.
 - d** Determine the value of t for which the number of live F -type spores and the number of live G -type spores are equal.
 - e** On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = f(t)$ and $y = g(t)$ for $t \geq 0$.
- 17** The depth of water at the entrance to a harbour t hours after high tide is D m, where $D = p + q \cos(rt)^\circ$ for suitable constants p, q, r . At high tide the depth is 7 m; at low tide, 6 hours later, the depth is 3 m.
- a** Show that $r = 30$ and determine the values of p and q .
 - b** Sketch the graph of D against t for $0 \leq t \leq 12$.
 - c** Determine the average rate of change of depth with respect to time over the period from high tide to low tide.
 - d** Determine the instantaneous rate of change of the depth of the water at time t hours.
 - e** Determine how soon after low tide a ship that requires a depth of at least 4 m of water will be able to enter the harbour.

- 18** Let $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 6x - 10$.
- a** Determine the coordinates of the point on the graph of f for which $f'(x) = 3$.
 - b** Express $f'(x)$ in the form $a(x + p)^2 + q$.
 - c** Hence show that the gradient of f is greater than 3 for all points on the curve of f other than the point found in part **a**.
- 19** The kangaroo population in a certain confined region is given by $f(x) = \frac{100\,000}{1 + 100e^{-0.3x}}$, where x is the time in years.
- a** Determine $f'(x)$.
 - b** Determine the rate of growth of the kangaroo population when:
 - i** $x = 0$ **ii** $x = 4$
- 20** **a** Show that the tangent to the graph of $y = e^x$ for $x = 0$ has equation $y = x + 1$.
b Plot the graphs of $y = e^x$ and $y = x + 1$ on a calculator.
c Let $f(x) = e^x$ and $g(x) = x + 1$. Use a calculator to investigate functions of the form $h(x) = af(x - b) + c$ and $k(x) = ag(x - b) + c$.
 Comment on your observations.
- d** Use the chain rule and properties of transformations to prove that, if the tangent to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point (x_1, y_1) has equation $y = mx + c$, then the tangent to the curve $y = af(bx)$ at the point $\left(\frac{x_1}{b}, y_1a\right)$ has equation $y = a(mb x + c)$.
- 21** A particle on the end of a spring, which is hanging vertically, is oscillating such that its height, h metres, above the floor after t seconds is given by
- $$y = 0.5 + 0.2 \sin(3\pi t), \quad t \geq 0$$
- a** Determine the greatest height above the floor and the time at which this height is first reached.
 - b** Determine the period of oscillation.
 - c** Determine the speed of the particle when $t = \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, \frac{1}{6}$.
- 22** A lettuce is placed in a refrigerator that has a constant temperature of 2°C . The temperature $T^\circ\text{C}$ of the lettuce at time t minutes is given by a formula of the form $T = 2 + Ae^{-kt}$.
- a** If initially the temperature of the lettuce is 25°C and 10°C after 15 minutes, determine the values of A and k .
 - b** Determine the temperature, correct to two decimal places, of the lettuce after 18 minutes.
 - c** Determine $\frac{dT}{dt}$ in terms of t .
 - d** Determine $\frac{dT}{dt}$ in terms of T .

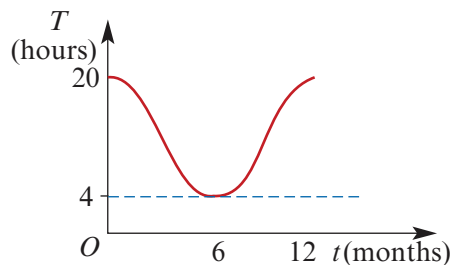
- 23** The length of night on Seal Island varies between 20 hours in midwinter and 4 hours in midsummer. The relationship between T , the number of hours of night, and t , the number of months past the longest night in 2010, is given by

$$T(t) = p + q \cos(\pi r t)$$

where p , q and r are constants.

Assume that the year consists of 12 months of equal length.

The graph of T against t is illustrated.



- a** Determine the value of:
- r
 - p and q
- b** Determine $T'(3)$ and $T'(9)$ and determine the rate of change of hours of night with respect to the number of months.
- c** Determine the average rate of change of hours of night from $t = 0$ to $t = 6$.
- d** After how many months is the rate of change of hours of night a maximum?
- 24** The population, $P(t)$, of a country in thousands after t years can be modelled by the rule
- $$P(t) = \frac{76\,500e^{\frac{t}{17}}}{t + 17}.$$
- a** Determine the present population of the country. That is, determine $P(0)$.
- b** How many years will it take for the population of the city to double?
- c** Determine the rate of growth of the city when
- $t = 0$
 - $t = 10$
 - $t = 20$
- 25** A curve with equation of the form $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ has zero gradient at the point $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{4}{27}\right)$ and also touches, but does not cross, the x -axis at the point $(1, 0)$.
- a** Determine a , b , c and d .
- b** Determine the values of x for which the curve has a negative gradient.
- c** Sketch the curve.
- 26**
- Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = e^x$ at the point $(1, e)$.
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = e^{2x}$ at the point $\left(\frac{1}{2}, e\right)$.
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = e^{kx}$ at the point (k^{-1}, e) .
 - Show that $y = xke$ is the only tangent to the curve $y = e^{kx}$ which passes through the origin.
 - Hence determine for what values of k the equation $e^{kx} = x$ has:
 - a unique real solution
 - no real solution.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- The derivative of $e^{-2ax} \cos(ax)$ with respect to x is
A $-ae^{-2ax} \cos(ax) - 2ae^{-2ax} \sin(ax)$ **B** $ae^{-2ax} \cos(ax) - 2ae^{-2ax} \sin(ax)$
C $-2ae^{-2ax} \cos(ax) - ae^{-2ax} \sin(ax)$ **D** $2ae^{-2ax} \cos(ax) + 2ae^{-2ax} \sin(ax)$
- If $f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{x-a}$, where a is a constant, then $f'(x)$ is
A $\frac{\sin x}{x-a} + \frac{\cos x}{(x-a)^2}$ **B** $-\frac{\sin x}{x-a} - \frac{\cos x}{(x-a)^2}$
C $\frac{\sin x}{x-a} - \frac{\cos x}{(x-a)^2}$ **D** $\frac{x \sin x}{x-a} + \frac{x \cos x}{(x-a)^2}$
- The line with equation $y = 4x + c$ is a tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^2 - x - 5$. The value of c is
A $-\frac{45}{4}$ **B** $-1 + 2\sqrt{2}$ **C** 2 **D** $\frac{5}{2}$
- The equation of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = x^4$ at the point where $x = 1$ is
A $y = \frac{1}{4}x - 3$ **B** $y = -4x$
C $y = \frac{1}{4}x + \frac{5}{4}$ **D** $y = 4x - 3$
- The equation of the normal to the curve with equation $y = x^2$ at the point where $x = a$ is
A $y = \frac{-1}{2a}x + 2 + a^2$ **B** $y = \frac{-1}{2a}x + \frac{1}{2} + a^2$
C $y = 2ax - a^2$ **D** $y = 2ax + 3a^2$
- The equation of the tangent to $y = e^{ax}$ at the point $\left(\frac{1}{a}, e\right)$ is
A $y = aex$ **B** $y = ae^{ax}x$ **C** $y = 1 - ae^{ax}$ **D** $y = \frac{e^2x}{a}$
- The gradient of the tangent to the curve $y = x^2 \cos(5x)$ at the point where $x = \pi$ is
A $-5\pi^2$ **B** 5π **C** -5π **D** -2π
- The equation of the tangent to the curve with equation $y = e^{-x} - 1$ at the point where the curve crosses the y -axis is
A $y = x$ **B** $y = -x$ **C** $y = \frac{1}{2}x$ **D** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x$
- If $f(x) = \frac{4x^4 - 12x^2}{3x - k}$, $f'(k) = 2$ and $f(5) > 150$ then k is equal to
A -5 **B** -1 **C** 0 **D** 1

- 10** The functions f and g are differentiable and $g(x) \neq 0$ for all x . Let $h(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$. If $f(2) = 3$, $g(2) = 6$, $f'(2) = -4$ and $g'(2) = 8$ then $h'(2)$ is equal to.
- A** 2 **B** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **C** $-\frac{4}{3}$ **D** $\frac{1}{2}$
- 11** Let f be a one-to-one differentiable function such that $f(6) = 3$, $f(8) = 6$, $f'(8) = 4$, $f'(6) = 11$. The function g is differentiable and $g(f(x)) = x$ for all x . $g'(6)$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{1}{4}$ **B** 1 **C** $\frac{1}{6}$ **D** $\frac{3}{8}$
- 12** The average rate of change of the function with rule $f(x) = x \ln x$ for $2 \leq x \leq 4$ is
- A** $\frac{1}{2}(\log_e(4) - \log_e 2)$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}(3 \log_e(2) + 2)$
C $\frac{1}{2} \log_e(16)$ **D** $3 \log_e(2)$
- 13** The point on the curve defined by the equation $y = (x + 3)(x - 2)$ at which the gradient is -7 has coordinates
- A** $(-4, 6)$ **B** $(-4, 0)$ **C** $(-3, 0)$ **D** $(-3, -5)$
- 14** If $f(x) = e^{5x}(2x + 1)^3$ then $f'(x)$ is equal to
- A** $10(2x + 1)^2 e^{5x}$ **B** $(2x + 1)^2(5x + 1)e^{5x}$
C $110(2x + 1)^2 e^{5x}$ **D** $(2x + 1)^2(10x + 11)e^{5x}$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 15** Let $f(x) = \cos(5x)$. The value of $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{7}\right)$ correct to three decimal places is
- A** -0.068 **B** -0.623 **C** 3.117 **D** -3.909
- 16** Let $f(x) = x^2 \sin x$ and $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = z$. The value of z correct to two decimal places is
- A** 0.44 **B** 1.12 **C** 0.79 **D** 1.55
- 17** The tangent to the graph of $f(x) = x^2 e^x$ is parallel to the line $y = -\frac{2}{5}x$ at the points $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$ where $b > a$. The value of b correct to two decimal places, x is equal to
- A** -0.34 **B** -0.33 **C** -0.40 **D** -0.25
- 18** Let $h(x) = \frac{p(x)}{q(x)}$ where $q(x) \neq 0$ for all x . If $h'(4) = 6$, $q(4) = 3$, $q'(4) = 2$ and $p'(4) = 2p(4)$ then $p(4)$ is equal to
- A** -12 **B** 12 **C** 13.5 **D** 13.25

- 19** A particle moves in a straight line. It starts from rest at a point O . The position $s(t)$ m of the particle t seconds after passing O is given by $s(t) = \sin 4\pi t$. The velocity, correct to two decimal places, of the particle when $t = 0.525$ is
A 11.05 ms^{-1} **B** 12.05 ms^{-1} **C** 11.95 ms^{-1} **D** 12.48 ms^{-1}
- 20** A particle moves in a straight line. It starts from rest at a point O . The position $s(t)$ m of the particle t seconds after passing O is given by $s(t) = 0.1(\sin 4\pi t + \cos 2\pi t)$. The acceleration, correct to two decimal places of the particle when $t = 0.825$ is
A 11.2 ms^{-2} **B** 11.8 ms^{-2} **C** 10.49 ms^{-2} **D** 10.98 ms^{-2}
- 21** The gradient of the tangent to the graph of $y = xe^{-x}$ at the point where $x = a$ is 0.5. The value of a correct to two decimal places is
A 0.68 **B** -0.22 **C** 0.31 **D** 1.34
- 22** The area, correct to two decimal places, of the triangle formed by the coordinate axes and the tangent to the curve $y = \ln(x^2 - 4)$ at $(\sqrt{5}, 0)$ is
A 22.36 **B** 11.18 **C** 5.59 **D** 10.00
- 23** All of the values of x for which the line $y = x$ is tangent to the curve $y = x \sin x$ are described exactly by
A $n\pi$, where n is an integer. **B** $\frac{n\pi}{2}$, where n is an integer.
C $(4n + 1)\frac{\pi}{2}$, where n is an integer. **D** $\frac{3n\pi}{2}$, where n is an integer.
- 24** Let $f(x) = \sqrt{x + \sin x}$, $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$. The coordinates of the point on the graph of $y = f(x)$ at which the tangent is horizontal are
A $(\pi, \sqrt{\pi})$ **B** $(0, 0)$ **C** $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2(\pi + 2)}\right)$ **D** (π, π)
- 25** The graph of the function with rule $y = be^{-\frac{x}{a}}$ crosses the y -axis at P . The equation of the tangent to the graph at P has equation
A $\frac{x}{a} - \frac{y}{b} = 1$ **B** $\frac{y}{a} + \frac{x}{b} = 1$ **C** $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ **D** $\frac{y}{a} - \frac{x}{b} = 1$

7

Further applications of differentiation

Chapter contents

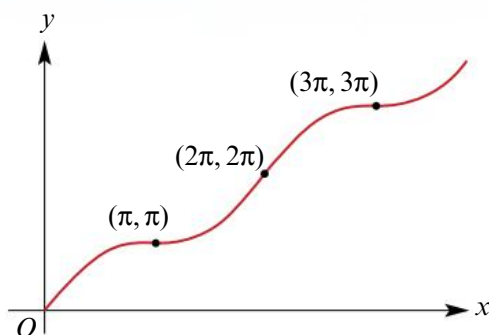
- ▶ **7A** The second derivative and acceleration
- ▶ **7B** Stationary points
- ▶ **7C** Types of stationary points
- ▶ **7D** Using the second derivative in graph sketching
- ▶ **7E** Absolute maximum and minimum values
- ▶ **7F** Optimisation problems

In this chapter, we introduce the **second derivative** of a function. This is simply the derivative of the derivative. We will see that the second derivative can provide extra information about the shape of the graph of a function.

For example, part of the graph of $y = x + \sin x$ is shown for $x \geq 0$. You can clearly see how the gradient is changing.

From the point $(0, 0)$ to the point (π, π) , the gradient is decreasing. At (π, π) , this changes and the gradient starts increasing. At $(2\pi, 2\pi)$, the gradient starts decreasing again, and so on.

These points are called **points of inflection**. They can be identified through the second derivative.



This chapter covers Unit 3 Topic 3: Further applications of differentiation.

7A The second derivative and acceleration

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to determine the second derivative of a function.
- ▶ To be able to solve problems involving acceleration of a particle moving in a straight line.

For the function f with rule $f(x)$, the derivative is denoted by f' and has rule $f'(x)$. This notation is extended to taking the derivative of the derivative: the new function is denoted by f'' and has rule $f''(x)$. This new function is known as the **second derivative**.

For example, consider the function g with rule $g(x) = 2x^3 - 4x^2$.

- The derivative has rule $g'(x) = 6x^2 - 8x$.
- The second derivative has rule $g''(x) = 12x - 8$.

Note: The second derivative might not exist at a point even if the first derivative does.

For example, let $f(x) = x^{\frac{4}{3}}$. Then $f'(x) = \frac{4}{3}x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ and $f''(x) = \frac{4}{9}x^{-\frac{2}{3}}$.

We see that $f'(0) = 0$, but the second derivative $f''(x)$ is not defined at $x = 0$.

In Leibniz notation, the second derivative of y with respect to x is denoted by $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.



Example 1

Determine the second derivative of each of the following with respect to x .

a $f(x) = 6x^4 - 4x^3 + 4x$

b $y = e^x \sin x$

Solution

a $f(x) = 6x^4 - 4x^3 + 4x$

$$f'(x) = 24x^3 - 12x^2 + 4$$

$$f''(x) = 72x^2 - 24x$$

b $y = e^x \sin x$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x \quad (\text{by the product rule})$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2y}{dx^2} &= e^x \sin x + e^x \cos x + e^x \cos x - e^x \sin x \\ &= 2e^x \cos x \end{aligned}$$



Example 2

If $f(x) = e^{2x}$, determine $f''(0)$.

Solution

$$f(x) = e^{2x}$$

$$f'(x) = 2e^{2x}$$

$$f''(x) = 4e^{2x}$$

Therefore $f''(0) = 4e^0 = 4$.

**Example 3**

Consider $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x - 6$.

a Determine $f''(x)$.

b Solve the equation $f''(x) = 0$ for x .

Solution

a $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2 + 4x - 6$

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 - 4x + 4$$

$$f''(x) = 6x - 4$$

b $f''(x) = 0$

$$6x - 4 = 0$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{2}{3}$$

**Example 4**

Consider $y = x^2 e^x$.

a Determine $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2}$.

b Solve the equation $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = 0$ for x .

Solution

a $y = x^2 e^x$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2xe^x + x^2 e^x$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} &= 2e^x + 2xe^x + 2xe^x + x^2 e^x \\ &= 2e^x + 4xe^x + x^2 e^x \end{aligned}$$

b $\frac{d^2 y}{dx^2} = 0$ implies

$$2e^x + 4xe^x + x^2 e^x = 0$$

$$e^x(2 + 4x + x^2) = 0$$

$$x^2 + 4x + 2 = 0$$

$$\text{Therefore } x = -2 + \sqrt{2} \text{ or } x = -2 - \sqrt{2}.$$

Motion in a straight line

We have studied motion in a straight line in Section 6F.

Recall that an object's position, s m, at time t seconds is specified with respect to a reference point O on the line. Velocity, v ms⁻¹, and acceleration, a ms⁻², are given by:

$$\text{velocity } v = \frac{ds}{dt} \qquad \text{acceleration } a = \frac{dv}{dt}$$

We can now recognise that acceleration is the second derivative of position with respect to time:

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left(\frac{ds}{dt} \right) = \frac{d^2 s}{dt^2}$$

That is, the object's acceleration is the rate of change of the rate of change of its position.



Example 5

A particle moves along a straight line such that its position, x m, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s = 5 + \sin(2\pi t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 2$. Determine:

- a** at what times and in what positions the particle will have zero velocity
- b** its acceleration at those instants.

Solution

a Velocity $v = \frac{ds}{dt} = 2\pi \cos(2\pi t)$

Solve the equation $v = 0$ for $0 \leq t \leq 2$:

$$2\pi \cos(2\pi t) = 0$$

$$\cos(2\pi t) = 0$$

$$2\pi t = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore t = \frac{1}{4}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{4} \text{ or } \frac{7}{4}$$

The times and positions at which the velocity is zero:

■ $t = \frac{1}{4}, s = 5 + \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 6 \text{ m}$

■ $t = \frac{3}{4}, s = 5 + \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 4 \text{ m}$

■ $t = \frac{5}{4}, s = 5 + \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right) = 6 \text{ m}$

■ $t = \frac{7}{4}, s = 5 + \sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{2}\right) = 4 \text{ m}$

b Acceleration $a = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2} = \frac{dv}{dt} = -4\pi^2 \sin(2\pi t)$

The acceleration when the velocity is zero:

■ $t = \frac{1}{4}, a = -4\pi^2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = -4\pi^2 \text{ ms}^{-2}$ ■ $t = \frac{3}{4}, a = -4\pi^2 \sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 4\pi^2 \text{ ms}^{-2}$

■ $t = \frac{5}{4}, a = -4\pi^2 \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right) = -4\pi^2 \text{ ms}^{-2}$ ■ $t = \frac{7}{4}, a = -4\pi^2 \sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{2}\right) = 4\pi^2 \text{ ms}^{-2}$

Summary 7A

- The **second derivative** of a function f is the derivative of the derivative of f .
- For a function f with rule $f(x)$, the second derivative of f is denoted by f'' and has rule $f''(x)$.
- In Leibniz notation, the second derivative of y with respect to x is denoted by $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.
- For an object moving in a straight line with position s at time t :
 - velocity $v = \frac{ds}{dt}$
 - acceleration $a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2s}{dt^2}$

Exercise 7A

Example 1

1 Determine the second derivative of each of the following.

- a** $2x + 5$ **b** x^8 **c** $\sqrt{x}$ **d** $(2x + 1)^4$ **e** $\sin x$
f $\cos x$ **g** e^x **h** $\ln x$ **i** $\frac{1}{x+1}$ **j** $\sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

2 Determine the second derivative of each of the following.

- a** $\sqrt{x^5}$ **b** $(x^2 + 3)^4$ **c** $\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$
d $3 \cos(4x + 1)$ **e** $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x+1}$ **f** $\ln(2x + 1)$
g $x^4 + 3x^2 - 7x + 2$ **h** x^3e^x **i** $x \ln x$

3 For each of the following, determine $f''(x)$.

- a** $f(x) = 6e^{3-2x}$ **b** $f(x) = -8e^{-0.5x^2}$ **c** $f(x) = e^{\ln x}$
d $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 2x)$ **e** $f(x) = 2(1 - 3x)^5$ **f** $f(x) = e^{x^2}$
g $f(x) = \frac{x-1}{x+1}$ **h** $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x}}$ **i** $f(x) = 5 \sin(3-x)$
j $f(x) = \cos(1-3x)$ **k** $f(x) = \sin\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ **l** $f(x) = \cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$

Example 2

4 For each of the following, determine $f''(0)$.

- a** $f(x) = e^{\sin x}$ **b** $f(x) = e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2}$ **c** $f(x) = \sqrt{1-x^2}$ **d** $f(x) = \cos(x^2)$

Example 3

5 For each of the following, solve the equation $f''(x) = 0$ for x .

- a** $f(x) = 2x^3 + 4x^2$ **b** $f(x) = 5 - x - x^2 + 5x^3$ **c** $f(x) = x^4 - 3x^2 - 4x$

Example 4

6 For each of the following, solve the equation $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 0$ for x .

- a** $y = 2xe^x$ **b** $y = x^2e^x - xe^x$ **c** $y = x^3e^x$ **d** $y = \frac{x}{\ln x}$ **e** $y = \frac{\ln x}{x}$

7 Let $f(x) = \frac{1 - \sin x}{\cos x}$, $-\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$.**a** Determine

- i** $f'(x)$ **ii** $f''(x)$ **Hint:** You will need to use the identity $\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$.

b Evaluate

- i** $f\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **ii** $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **iii** $f''\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

c Evaluate

- i** $f\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **ii** $f'\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **iii** $f''\left(-\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

Example 5

8 A particle moves along a straight line such that its position, s m, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s = 7 + 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{4}\right)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 8$. Determine:

- a** at what times and in what positions the particle has zero velocity
b its acceleration at those instants.

- 9** A particle moves along the x -axis so that at time t seconds its distance, s m, from the origin O is given by $s = e^{-t} - e^{-2t}$ for $t \geq 0$.
- Determine the particle's velocity and acceleration at time t seconds.
 - Determine the times when the velocity is zero and the distance from the origin when this occurs.
 - Determine the acceleration of the particle when the velocity is zero.
 - Determine the speed of the particle when the acceleration is zero.
- 10** A particle moves along the x -axis from the origin O so that at time t seconds its velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by $v(t) = (2 - t)(t - 5)$ where $t \geq 0$. Describe the intervals of time for which the velocity $v(t)$ and the acceleration $a(t)$ are
- both positive
 - both negative
- 11** A particle moves along a straight line such that its position, s m, relative to a point O at time t seconds is given by $s(t) = 100 - 20 \ln(t + 1)$ where $t \geq 0$.
- Determine the velocity, $v(t) \text{ ms}^{-1}$ and acceleration, $a(t) \text{ ms}^{-2}$ of the particle at time t in terms of t .
 - Determine an expression for the acceleration in terms of v .
 - Determine the acceleration of the particle when the velocity is 4 ms^{-1} .
 - After how many seconds is the particle 50 m from O ? Give your answer correct to two decimal places.
- 12** A particle moves in a straight line so that its position, s , relative to a fixed point O on the line at any time $t \geq 2$ is given by $s = 4 \log_e(t - 1)$. Determine expressions for the velocity and acceleration at time t .
- 13** A particle moves in a straight line so that its position, s m, relative to a fixed point O on the line at any time t seconds where $t \geq 0$ is given by $s(t) = e^{-\pi t} \sin \pi t$.
- Evaluate
 - $s\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$
 - $s\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$
 - $s\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)$
 and calculate $\frac{s\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)}{s\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)}$ and $\frac{s\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)}{s\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)}$
 - Determine expressions for the velocity, $v(t) \text{ ms}^{-1}$, and acceleration, $a(t) \text{ ms}^{-2}$, of the particle at time t seconds.
 - Determine the first two values of t for which
 - $v(t) = 0$
 - $a(t) = 0$
- 14** A particle moves along the x -axis from the origin O so that at time t seconds its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by $v = \frac{1}{c + bt}$ where $t \geq 0$ and c and b are positive constants.
- Determine the acceleration of the particle at time t seconds in terms of t .
 - Determine the acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, of the particle at time t seconds in terms of v .
 - If when $t = 0$, $a = -1$ and $v = 80$ determine the values of c and b .

7B Stationary points

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the location of stationary points by differentiating.

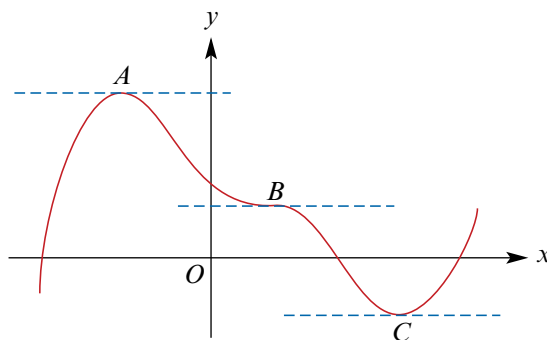
In the previous chapter, we have seen that the gradient of the tangent at a point $(a, f(a))$ on the curve with rule $y = f(x)$ is given by $f'(a)$.

A point $(a, f(a))$ on a curve $y = f(x)$ is said to be a **stationary point** if $f'(a) = 0$.

Equivalently, a point $(a, f(a))$ on $y = f(x)$ is a stationary point if $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ when $x = a$.

In the graph shown, there are stationary points at A , B and C .

At such points, the tangents are parallel to the x -axis (illustrated as dashed lines).



The reason for the name *stationary point* becomes clear if we look at an application to the motion of a particle.



Example 6

A particle is moving in a straight line. Its position, x metres, relative to a point O on the line at time t seconds is given by

$$x = 9t - \frac{1}{3}t^3, \quad 0 \leq t \leq 4$$

Determine the particle's maximum distance from O . (Here the particle is always on the right of O and so its distance from O is its position.)

Solution

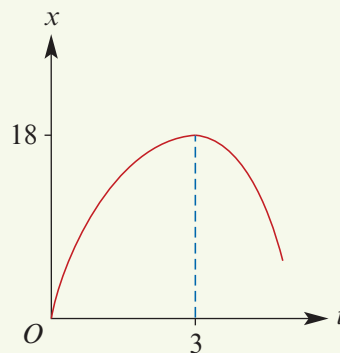
$$\frac{dx}{dt} = 9 - t^2$$

The maximum distance from O occurs when $\frac{dx}{dt} = 0$.

So $t = 3$ or $t = -3$. But $t = -3$ lies outside the domain.

At $t = 3$, $x = 18$.

Thus the stationary point is $(3, 18)$ and the maximum distance from O is 18 metres.



Note: The stationary point occurs when the rate of change of position with respect to time (the velocity) is zero. At this moment, the particle is stationary.

**Example 7**

Determine the stationary points of the following functions.

a $y = 9 + 12x - 2x^2$ **b** $y = 4 + 3x - x^3$ **c** $p = 2t^3 - 5t^2 - 4t + 13, t > 0$

Solution

a $y = 9 + 12x - 2x^2$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 12 - 4x$$

A stationary point occurs when $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$,
i.e. when $12 - 4x = 0$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } x &= 3 \text{ and } y = 9 + 12 \times 3 - 2 \times 3^2 \\ &= 27 \end{aligned}$$

The stationary point is (3, 27).

b $y = 4 + 3x - x^3$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3 - 3x^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \text{ implies } 3(1 - x^2) &= 0 \\ \therefore x &= \pm 1 \end{aligned}$$

The stationary points are (1, 6)
and (-1, 2).

c $p = 2t^3 - 5t^2 - 4t + 13$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = 6t^2 - 10t - 4, \quad t > 0$$

$$\frac{dp}{dt} = 0 \text{ implies } 2(3t^2 - 5t - 2) = 0$$

$$(3t + 1)(t - 2) = 0$$

$$\therefore t = -\frac{1}{3} \text{ or } t = 2$$

But $t > 0$, and so the only acceptable solution is $t = 2$. The corresponding stationary point is (2, 1).

**Example 8**

Determine the stationary points of the following functions.

a $y = \sin(2x), x \in [0, 2\pi]$ **b** $y = e^{2x} - x$ **c** $y = x \ln(2x), x \in (0, \infty)$

Solution

a $y = \sin(2x)$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2 \cos(2x)$$

$$\text{So } \frac{dy}{dx} = 0 \text{ implies } 2 \cos(2x) = 0$$

$$\cos(2x) = 0$$

$$2x = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}, \frac{5\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{4}$$

The stationary points are $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, 1\right), \left(\frac{3\pi}{4}, -1\right), \left(\frac{5\pi}{4}, 1\right)$ and $\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}, -1\right)$.

b $y = e^{2x} - x$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = 2e^{2x} - 1$$

So $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ implies

$$2e^{2x} - 1 = 0$$

$$e^{2x} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \ln 2$$

When $x = -\frac{1}{2} \ln 2$,

$$\begin{aligned} y &= e^{2 \times \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} + \frac{1}{2} \ln 2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \ln 2 \end{aligned}$$

The coordinates of the stationary point are $\left(-\frac{1}{2} \ln 2, \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \ln 2\right)$.

c $y = x \ln(2x)$

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \ln(2x) + 1$$

So $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ implies

$$\ln(2x) + 1 = 0$$

$$\ln(2x) = -1$$

$$2x = e^{-1}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{2e}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{When } x = \frac{1}{2e}, y &= \frac{1}{2e} \ln\left(\frac{2}{2e}\right) \\ &= \frac{-1}{2e} \end{aligned}$$

The coordinates of the stationary point are $\left(\frac{1}{2e}, \frac{-1}{2e}\right)$.



Example 9

The curve with equation $y = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ passes through the point $(0, 5)$ and has a stationary point at $(2, 7)$. Determine a , b and c .

Solution

When $x = 0$, $y = 5$. Thus $5 = c$.

$\frac{dy}{dx} = 3x^2 + 2ax + b$ and at $x = 2$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$. Therefore

$$12 + 4a + b = 0 \quad (1)$$

The point $(2, 7)$ is on the curve and so

$$8 + 4a + 2b + 5 = 7$$

$$\therefore 6 + 4a + 2b = 0 \quad (2)$$

Subtracting (1) from (2) gives $-6 + b = 0$. Thus $b = 6$. Substitute in (1):

$$12 + 4a + 6 = 0$$

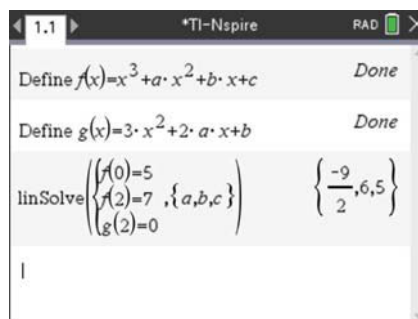
$$4a = -18$$

Hence $a = -\frac{9}{2}$, $b = 6$ and $c = 5$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Define the function $f(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ and derivative function $g(x) = 3x^2 + 2ax + b$ as shown.
- Use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Solve System of Linear Equations** to solve for a , b and c given that $f(0) = 5$, $f(2) = 7$ and $g(2) = 0$.
- Hence $a = -\frac{9}{2}$, $b = 6$ and $c = 5$.

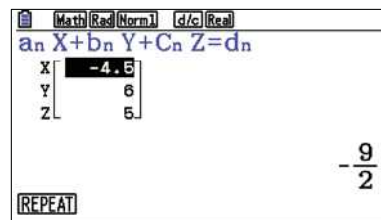
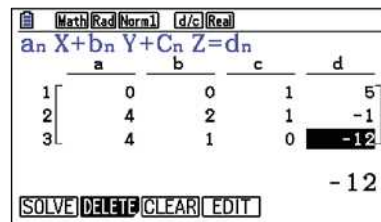


Using the Casio

- Select **Equation** mode (MENU) (ALPHA) (X,0,T).
- Select **Simultaneous** (F1), then select three unknowns (F2).
- For $f(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$, we obtain the following three equations:

$$\begin{aligned} c &= 5 & (\text{as } f(0) = 5) \\ 4a + 2b + c &= -1 & (\text{as } f(2) = 7) \\ 4a + b &= -12 & (\text{as } f'(2) = 0) \end{aligned}$$

- Enter the coefficients of these equations in the table as shown. Select **Solve** (F1).
- Hence $a = -\frac{9}{2}$, $b = 6$ and $c = 5$.



Summary 7B

- A point $(a, f(a))$ on a curve $y = f(x)$ is said to be a **stationary point** if $f'(a) = 0$.
- Equivalently, a point $(a, f(a))$ on $y = f(x)$ is a stationary point if $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ when $x = a$.

Exercise 7B

Example 6

- 1 Determine the stationary points for each of the following.

a $f(x) = x^3 - 12x$

c $h(x) = 5x^4 - 4x^5$

e $g(z) = 8z^2 - 3z^4$

g $h(x) = x^3 - 4x^2 - 3x + 20, x > 0$

b $g(x) = 2x^2 - 4x$

d $f(t) = 8t + 5t^2 - t^3$ for $t > 0$

f $f(x) = 5 - 2x + 3x^2$

h $f(x) = 3x^4 - 16x^3 + 24x^2 - 10$

Example 7, 8**2** Determine the stationary points of the following functions.

a $y = e^{2x} - 2x$

b $y = x \ln(3x), x > 0$

c $y = \cos(2x), x \in [-\pi, \pi]$

d $y = xe^x$

e $y = x^2 e^{-x}$

f $y = 2x \ln x, x > 0$

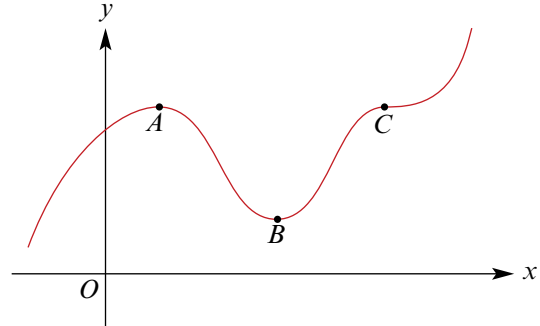
3 Determine the coordinates of the stationary point on the graph of $y = \ln x - 4x$.**4** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point on the graph of $y = \ln x + \frac{2}{x}$.**5** Determine the coordinates of the stationary points on the graph of $y = x^2 e^{-ax}$, where a is a non-zero constant.**6 a** The curve with rule $f(x) = x^2 - ax + 9$ has a stationary point when $x = 3$. Determine a .**b** The curve with rule $h(x) = x^3 - bx^2 - 9x + 7$ has a stationary point when $x = -1$. Determine b .**Example 9****7** The curve with equation $y = x^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ passes through the point $(0, 3)$ and has a stationary point at $(1, 3)$. Determine b, c and d .**8** The tangent to the curve of $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ at the point where $x = 2$ is parallel to the line $y = 4x$. There is a stationary point at $(1, -3)$. Determine the values of a, b and c .**9** The graph of $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$ touches the line $2y + 6x = 15$ at the point $A(0, 7\frac{1}{2})$ and has a stationary point at $B(3, -6)$. Determine the values of a, b, c and d .**10** The curve with equation $y = ax + \frac{b}{2x-1}$ has a stationary point at $(2, 7)$. Determine:**a** the values of a and b **b** the coordinates of the other stationary point.**11** Determine the x -coordinates, in terms of n , of the stationary points of the curve with equation $y = (2x - 1)^n(x + 2)$, where n is a natural number.**12** Determine the x -coordinates of the stationary points of the curve with equation $y = (x^2 - 1)^n$ where n is an integer greater than 1.**13** Determine the coordinates of the stationary points of the curve with equation $y = \frac{x}{x^2 + 1}$.**14** Let $f(x) = ae^{2x+1} - 2a^2x$ where $a > 0$. If the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a stationary point when $x = \ln 3$ then determine the value of a .

7C Types of stationary points

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the nature of a stationary point by using the first derivative.

The graph of $y = f(x)$ shown has three stationary points A , B , C .



- A** Point A is called a **local maximum** point.
Notice that immediately to the left of A the gradient is positive, and immediately to the right the gradient is negative.

gradient	+	0	-
shape of f	/	—	\

- B** Point B is called a **local minimum** point.
Notice that immediately to the left of B the gradient is negative, and immediately to the right the gradient is positive.

gradient	-	0	+
shape of f	\	—	/

- C** Point C is called a **stationary point of inflection**.
The gradient is positive immediately to the left and right of C .

gradient	+	0	+
shape of f	/	—	/

Clearly it is also possible to have stationary points of inflection such that the gradient is negative immediately to the left and right.

gradient	-	0	-
shape of f	\	—	\

Stationary points of types A and B are referred to as **turning points**.



Example 10

For the function $f(x) = 3x^3 - 4x + 1$:

- a** determine the stationary points and state their nature
b sketch the graph.

Solution

- a** The derivative is $f'(x) = 9x^2 - 4$.

The stationary points occur where $f'(x) = 0$:

$$9x^2 - 4 = 0$$

$$\therefore x = \pm \frac{2}{3}$$

There are stationary points at $(-\frac{2}{3}, f(-\frac{2}{3}))$ and $(\frac{2}{3}, f(\frac{2}{3}))$, that is, at $(-\frac{2}{3}, 2\frac{7}{9})$ and $(\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{7}{9})$.

So $f'(x)$ is of constant sign for each of

$$x < -\frac{2}{3}, \quad -\frac{2}{3} < x < \frac{2}{3} \quad \text{and} \quad x > \frac{2}{3}$$

To calculate the sign of $f'(x) = 9x^2 - 4$ for each of these intervals, simply choose a representative number in the interval.

Thus $f'(-1) = 9 - 4 = 5 > 0$

$$f'(0) = 0 - 4 = -4 < 0$$

$$f'(1) = 9 - 4 = 5 > 0$$

x		$-\frac{2}{3}$		$\frac{2}{3}$	
$f'(x)$	+	0	-	0	+
shape of f	/	—	\	—	/

We can now put together the table shown on the right.

There is a local maximum at $(-\frac{2}{3}, 2\frac{7}{9})$ and a local minimum at $(\frac{2}{3}, -\frac{7}{9})$.

- b** To sketch the graph of $f(x) = 3x^3 - 4x + 1$, we now need to determine the axis intercepts and investigate the behaviour of the graph for $x > \frac{2}{3}$ and $x < -\frac{2}{3}$.

The y-axis intercept is $f(0) = 1$.

To determine the x-axis intercepts, consider $f(x) = 0$, which implies $3x^3 - 4x + 1 = 0$. Using the factor theorem, we determine that $x - 1$ is a factor of $3x^3 - 4x + 1$.

By division:

$$3x^3 - 4x + 1 = (x - 1)(3x^2 + 3x - 1)$$

Now $f(x) = (x - 1)(3x^2 + 3x - 1) = 0$ implies that $x = 1$ or $3x^2 + 3x - 1 = 0$.

We have

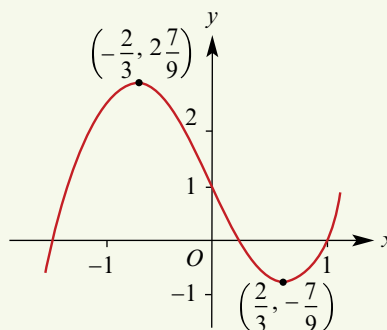
$$\begin{aligned} 3x^2 + 3x - 1 &= 3\left[\left(x + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{3}\right] \\ &= 3\left[\left(x + \frac{1}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{21}{36}\right] \\ &= 3\left(x + \frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{21}}{6}\right)\left(x + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{21}}{6}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Thus the x-axis intercepts are at

$$x = -\frac{1}{2} + \frac{\sqrt{21}}{6}, \quad x = -\frac{1}{2} - \frac{\sqrt{21}}{6}, \quad x = 1$$

For $x > \frac{2}{3}$, $f(x)$ becomes larger.

For $x < \frac{2}{3}$, $f(x)$ becomes smaller.



A graphics calculator can be used to plot the graph of a function and determine its key features, including:

- the value of the function at any point
- the value of its derivative at any point
- the axis intercepts
- the turning points.



Example 11

Plot the graph of $y = x^3 - 19x + 20$ and determine:

- a** the value of y when $x = -4$
- b** the values of x when $y = 0$
- c** the value of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ when $x = -1$
- d** the coordinates of the local maximum.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

Plot the graph of $f(x) = x^3 - 19x + 20$ and select an appropriate window (**menu** > **Window/Zoom** > **Window Settings**).

- a** Use **menu** > **Trace** > **Graph Trace**, type -4 and press **enter**. The cursor will jump to the point where $x = -4$.

Hence $y = 32$ when $x = -4$.

- b** Use **menu** > **Trace** > **Graph Trace** and press **◀** and **▶** to move the trace cursor around the curve. Move the trace cursor to the x -axis to determine the zeroes.

The zeroes are -4.812 , 1.128 and 3.684 .

Note: Change the display precision if necessary using **menu** > **Settings**.

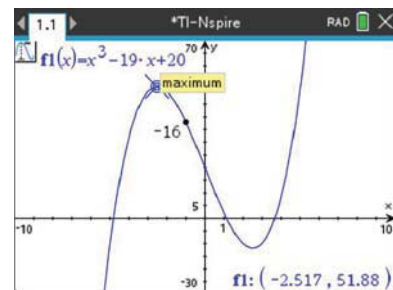
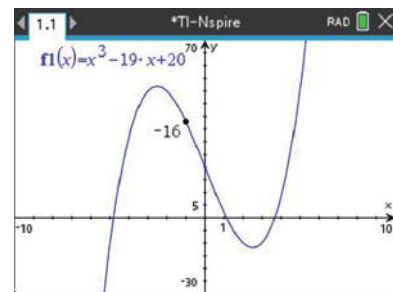
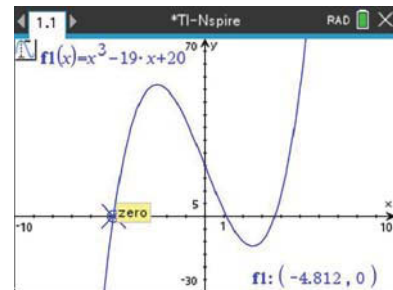
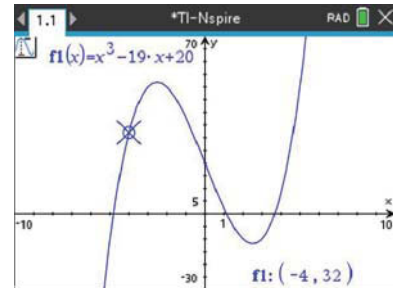
Alternatively, the zeroes can be found using **menu** > **Analyze Graph** > **Zero**.

- c** Use **menu** > **Analyze Graph** > **dy/dx**, type -1 and press **enter**. The cursor will jump to $x = -1$ and the gradient will be displayed.

Hence $\frac{dy}{dx} = -16$ when $x = -1$.

- d** Use **menu** > **Trace** > **Graph Trace** press **◀** and **▶** and move the trace cursor to the local maximum. The local maximum is at $(-2.517, 51.88)$.

Note: Alternatively, the local maximum can be found using **menu** > **Analyze Graph** > **Maximum**.

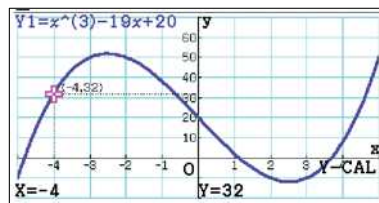


Using the Casio

Plot the graph of $y = x^3 - 19x + 20$ and select an appropriate View Window.

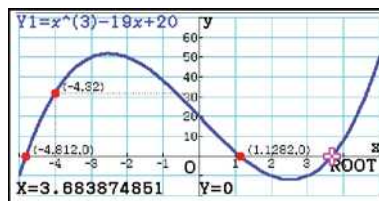
a To determine the y -value when $x = -4$:

- Go to the **G-Solve** menu (SHIFT) (F5) and select **y-Cal** (F6) (F1).
- Enter the x -value -4 and press (EXE).
- Hence $y = 32$ when $x = -4$.



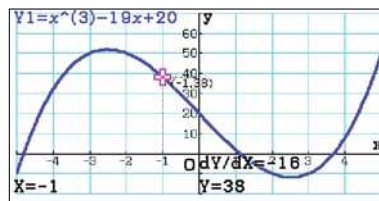
b To determine the x -axis intercepts:

- Go to the **G-Solve** menu (SHIFT) (F5) and select **Root** (F1).
- Hence the x -axis intercepts are -4.812 , 1.128 and 3.684 .



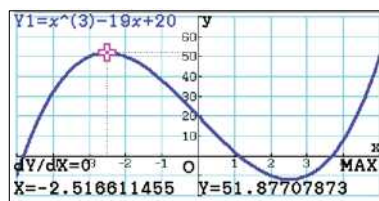
c To determine the derivative at $x = -1$:

- Ensure that the derivative setting is On. (Go to the set-up screen (SHIFT) (MENU).)
- On the graph screen, go to **Trace** (SHIFT) (F1) and enter the x -value -1 .
- Hence the derivative at $x = -1$ is -16 .



d To determine the local maximum:

- Go to the **G-Solve** menu (SHIFT) (F5) and select **Maximum** (F2).
- Hence the local maximum has coordinates $(-2.517, 51.877)$.



Example 12

Sketch the graph of $f(x) = e^{x^3}$.

Solution

As $x \rightarrow -\infty$, $f(x) \rightarrow 0$.

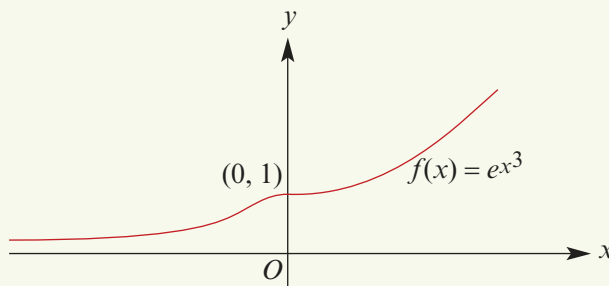
Axis intercepts

When $x = 0$, $f(x) = 1$.

Stationary points

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 e^{x^3}$$

So $f'(x) = 0$ implies $x = 0$.



The gradient of f is always greater than or equal to 0, which means that $(0, 1)$ is a stationary point of inflection.

**Example 13**

Consider the function f given by $f(x) = x \ln x$ for $x > 0$.

- a** Determine $f'(x)$. **b** Solve the equation $f(x) = 0$.
c Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$. **d** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

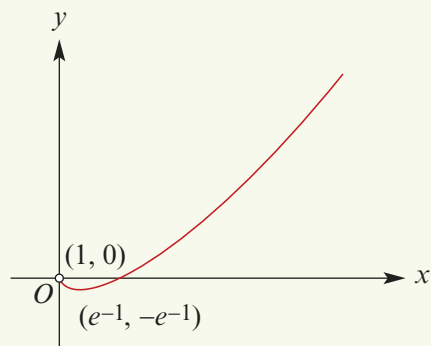
Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad f'(x) &= x \times \frac{1}{x} + \ln x && \text{(product rule)} \\ &= 1 + \ln x \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad f(x) &= x \ln x \\ \text{Thus } f(x) = 0 &\text{ implies } x = 0 \text{ or } \ln x = 0. \\ \text{Since } x > 0, &\text{ the only solution is } x = 1. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{c} \quad f'(x) = 0 &\text{ implies } 1 + \ln x = 0. \\ \text{Therefore } \ln x &= -1 \text{ and so } x = e^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{d} \quad \text{When } x = e^{-1}, y &= e^{-1} \ln(e^{-1}) \\ &= e^{-1} \times (-1) = -e^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 14**

Determine the local maximum and local minimum points of $f(x) = 2 \sin x + 1 - 2 \sin^2 x$, where $0 < x < 2\pi$.

Solution

Determine $f'(x)$ and solve $f'(x) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= 2 \sin x + 1 - 2 \sin^2 x \\ \therefore f'(x) &= 2 \cos x - 4 \sin x \cos x \\ &= 2 \cos x \cdot (1 - 2 \sin x) \end{aligned}$$

Thus $f'(x) = 0$ implies

$$\begin{aligned} \cos x &= 0 \quad \text{or} \quad 1 - 2 \sin x = 0 \\ \text{i.e. } \cos x &= 0 \quad \text{or} \quad \sin x = \frac{1}{2} \\ \text{i.e. } x &= \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2} \quad \text{or} \quad x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{We have } f\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 1, f\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -3, f\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{3}{2} \text{ and } f\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{3}{2}$$

x		$\frac{\pi}{6}$		$\frac{\pi}{2}$		$\frac{5\pi}{6}$		$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	
$f'(x)$	+	0	−	0	+	0	−	0	+
shape of f	/	—	\	—	/	—	\	—	/

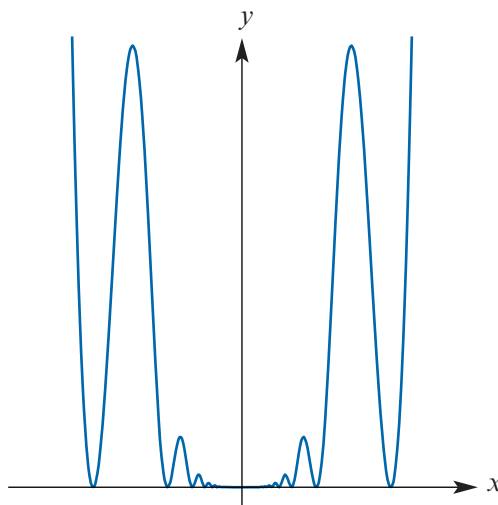
Local maximums at $\left(\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{3}{2}\right)$. Local minimums at $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 1\right)$ and $\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, -3\right)$.

Bad behaviour? In this course, and in school courses around the world, we deal with functions that are ‘conveniently behaved’. This avoids some complications.

For an example of a function which is not in this category, consider

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^4 \sin^2\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) & \text{if } x \neq 0 \\ 0 & \text{if } x = 0 \end{cases}$$

The derivative of this function is defined for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$. In any open interval around $x = 0$, the graph of this function has infinitely many stationary points, no matter how small the interval.



Summary 7C

A point $(a, f(a))$ on a curve $y = f(x)$ is said to be a **stationary point** if $f'(a) = 0$.

Types of stationary points

A Point A is a **local maximum**:

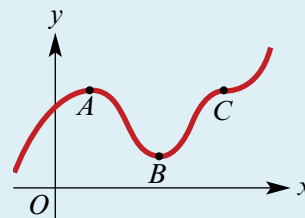
- $f'(x) > 0$ immediately to the left of A
- $f'(x) < 0$ immediately to the right of A .

B Point B is a **local minimum**:

- $f'(x) < 0$ immediately to the left of B
- $f'(x) > 0$ immediately to the right of B .

C Point C is a **stationary point of inflection**.

Stationary points of types A and B are called **turning points**.



Exercise 7C

Example 10

- 1** For each of the following derivative functions, write down the values of x at which the derivative is zero and prepare a gradient table (as in Example 10) showing whether the corresponding points on the graph of $y = f(x)$ are local maximums, local minimums or stationary points of inflection.

a $f'(x) = 4x^2$

c $f'(x) = (x+1)(2x-1)$

e $f'(x) = x^2 - x - 12$

g $f'(x) = (x-1)(x-3)$

b $f'(x) = (x-2)(x+5)$

d $f'(x) = -x^2 + x + 12$

f $f'(x) = 5x^4 - 27x^3$

h $f'(x) = -(x-1)(x-3)$

- 2** Determine the x -coordinates of the stationary points on each of the following curves and state their nature.

a $y = x(x^2 - 12)$

b $y = x^2(3 - x)$

c $y = x^3 - 5x^2 + 3x + 2$

d $y = 3 - x^3$

e $y = 3x^4 + 16x^3 + 24x^2 + 3$

f $y = x(x^2 - 1)$

- 3** Sketch the graph of each of the following, determining **i** axis intercepts and **ii** stationary points.

a $y = 4x^3 - 3x^4$

b $y = x^3 - 6x^2$

c $y = 3x^2 - x^3$

d $y = x^3 + 6x^2 + 9x + 4$

e $y = (x^2 - 1)^5$

f $y = (x^2 - 1)^4$

- 4 a** Determine the stationary points of the graph of $y = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 12x + 7$, stating the nature of each.

- b** Show that the graph passes through $(1, 0)$.

- c** Determine the other axis intercepts.

- d** Sketch the graph.

- 5 a** Show that the polynomial $P(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + b$ has a stationary point at $x = 0$ for all a and b .

- b** Given that $P(x)$ has a second stationary point at $(-2, 6)$, determine the values of a and b and the nature of both stationary points.

- 6** Sketch the graph of $f(x) = (2x - 1)^5(2x - 4)^4$.

- a** State the coordinates of the axis intercepts.

- b** State the coordinates and nature of each stationary point.

- 7 a** Sketch the graphs of $f(x) = (4x^2 - 1)^6$ and $g(x) = (4x^2 - 1)^5$ on the one set of axes.

- b i** Determine the values of x for which $f(x) > g(x)$.

- ii** Determine the values of x for which $f'(x) > g'(x)$.

- 8** Sketch the graph of each of the following. State the axis intercepts and the coordinates of stationary points.

a $y = x^3 + x^2 - 8x - 12$

b $y = 4x^3 - 18x^2 + 48x - 290$

- 9** For each of the following, determine the coordinates of the stationary points and determine their nature.

a $f(x) = 3x^4 + 4x^3$

b $f(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 - 1$

c $f(x) = 3x^3 - 3x^2 + 12x + 9$

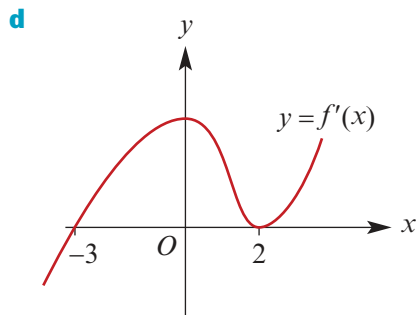
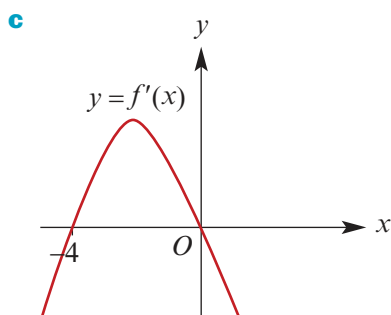
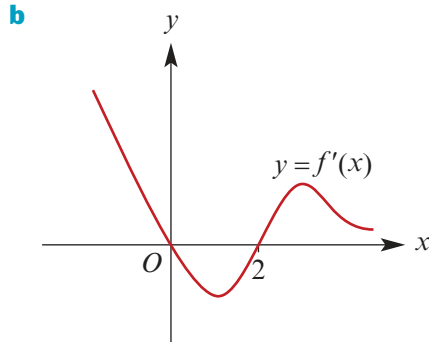
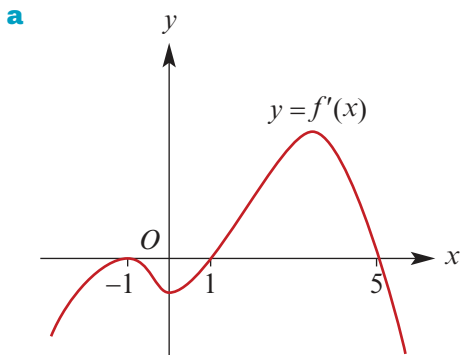
- 10** Consider the function f defined by $f(x) = \frac{1}{8}(x - 1)^3(8 - 3x) + 1$.

- a** Show that $f(0) = 0$ and $f(3) = 0$.

- b** Show that $f'(x) = \frac{3}{8}(x - 1)^2(9 - 4x)$ and specify the values of x for which $f'(x) \geq 0$.

- c** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 11** Each graph below shows the graph of f' for a function f . Determine the values of x for which the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a stationary point and state the nature of each stationary point.



- 12** Determine the coordinates of the stationary points, and state the nature of each, for the curve with equation:

a $y = x^4 - 16x^2$

b $y = x^{2m} - 16x^{2m-2}$, where m is a natural number greater than or equal to 2.

Example 11 **13** Sketch the graph of $f(x) = e^{-\frac{x^2}{2}}$.

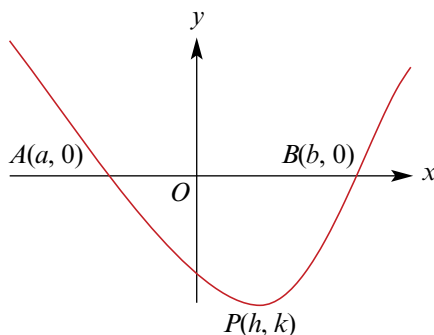
- 14** Let $f(x) = x^2 e^x$. Determine the values of x for which $f'(x) < 0$.
- 15** Determine the values of x for which $100e^{-x^2+2x-5}$ increases as x increases and hence determine the maximum value of $100e^{-x^2+2x-5}$.
- 16** Let $f(x) = e^x - 1 - x$.
- a** Determine the minimum value of $f(x)$. **b** Hence show $e^x \geq 1 + x$ for all real x .
- 17** For $f(x) = x + e^{-x}$:
- a** determine the position and nature of any stationary points
- b** determine, if they exist, the equations of any asymptotes
- c** sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 18** The curve $y = e^x(px^2 + qx + r)$ is such that the tangents at $x = 1$ and $x = 3$ are parallel to the x -axis. The point with coordinates $(0, 9)$ is on the curve. Determine p , q and r .

Example 12

- 19 a** Let $y = e^{4x^2-8x}$. Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
- b** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point on the curve of $y = e^{4x^2-8x}$ and state its nature.
- c** Sketch the graph of $y = e^{4x^2-8x}$.
- d** Determine the equation of the normal to the curve of $y = e^{4x^2-8x}$ at the point where $x = 2$.
- 20** On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = \ln x$ and $y = \ln(5x)$, and use them to explain why $\frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{d}{dx}(\ln(5x))$.

Example 13

- 21** Consider the function f given by $f(x) = x^2 \ln x$ for $x > 0$.
- a** Determine $f'(x)$. **b** Solve the equation $f(x) = 0$.
- c** Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$. **d** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 22** Determine the stationary point on the graph of $y = \frac{x}{\ln x}$ and state its nature.
- 23** Let $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 - 9x + 11$. Sketch the graph of:
- a** $y = f(x)$ **b** $y = 2f(x)$ **c** $y = f(x+2)$ **d** $y = f(x-2)$ **e** $y = -f(x)$
- 24** Let $f(x) = 2 + 3x - x^3$. Sketch the graph of:
- a** $y = f(x)$ **b** $y = -2f(x)$ **c** $y = 2f(x-1)$ **d** $y = f(x) - 3$ **e** $y = 3f(x+1)$
- 25** The graph shown opposite has equation $y = f(x)$. Suppose a dilation of factor p from the x -axis followed by a translation of ℓ units in the positive direction of the x -axis is applied to the graph. For the graph of the image, state:
- a** the x -axis intercepts
- b** the coordinates of the turning point.



Example 14

- 26** Determine the values of x for which the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a stationary point and state the nature of each stationary point. Consider $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$ only.
- a** $f(x) = 2 \cos x - (2 \cos^2 x - 1)$ **b** $f(x) = 2 \cos x + 2 \sin x \cos x$
- c** $f(x) = 2 \sin x - (2 \cos^2 x - 1)$ **d** $f(x) = 2 \sin x + 2 \sin x \cos x$
- 27** The graph of a quartic function passes through the points with coordinates $(1, 21)$, $(2, 96)$, $(5, 645)$, $(6, 816)$ and $(7, 861)$.
- a** Determine the rule of the quartic and plot the graph. Determine the turning points and axis intercepts.
- b** Plot the graph of the derivative on the same screen.
- c** Determine the value of the function when $x = 10$.
- d** For what value(s) of x is the value of the function 500?

7D Using the second derivative in graph sketching

Learning intentions

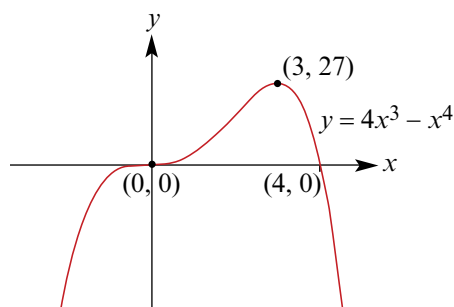
- To be able to use the second derivative to help with graph sketching.

In Section 7C, you have used the first derivative when sketching the graphs of polynomial and other functions. The second derivative enables us to determine out more information about these graphs. We start this section by considering the graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$.

The graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$

The graph of this function is shown in the diagram on the right.

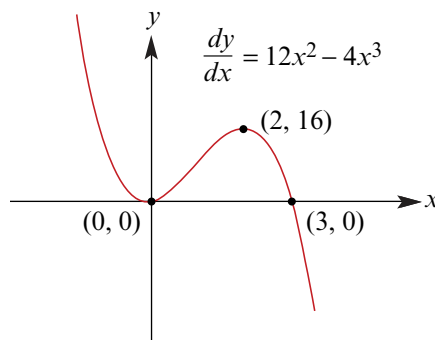
There is a local maximum at $(3, 27)$ and a stationary point of inflection at $(0, 0)$. These points have been determined by considering the derivative function $\frac{dy}{dx} = 12x^2 - 4x^3$.



The graph of the derivative function

Note that the local maximum and the stationary point of inflection of the original graph correspond to the x -axis intercepts of the graph of the derivative.

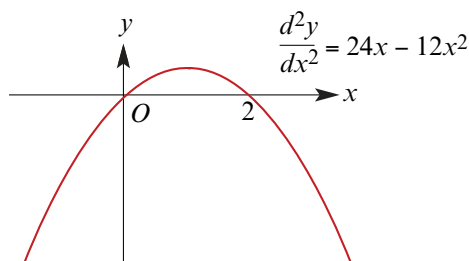
Also, it can be seen that the gradient of the original graph is positive for $x < 0$ and $0 < x < 3$ and negative for $x > 3$.



The graph of the second derivative function

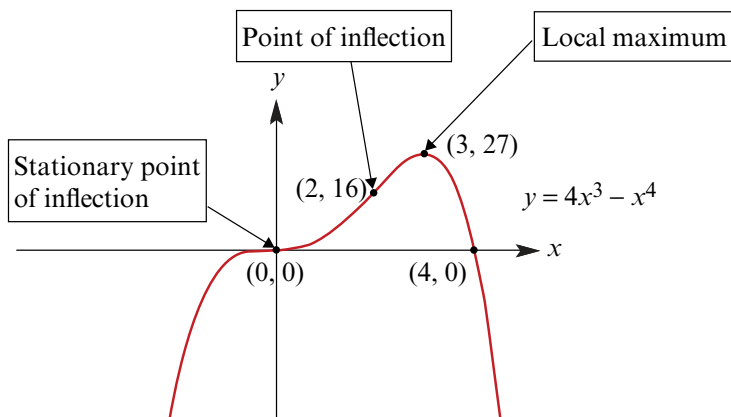
Further information can be obtained by considering the graph of the second derivative.

The graph of the second derivative reveals that, at the points on the original graph where $x = 0$ and $x = 2$, there are important changes in the gradient.



- At the point where $x = 0$, the gradient of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ changes from decreasing (positive) to increasing (positive). This point is also a stationary point, but it is neither a local maximum nor a local minimum. It is known as a **stationary point of inflection**.
- At the point where $x = 2$, the gradient of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ changes from increasing (positive) to decreasing (positive). This point is called a **point of inflection**. In this case, the point corresponds to a local maximum of the derivative graph.

The gradient of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ increases on the interval $(0, 2)$ and then decreases on the interval $(2, 3)$. The point $(2, 16)$ is the point of maximum gradient of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ for the interval $(0, 3)$.



Behaviour of tangents

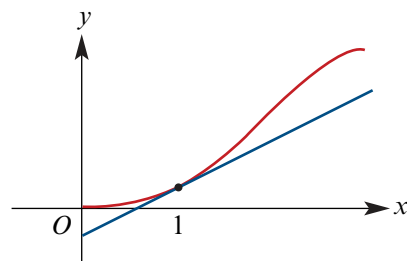
A closer look at the graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ for the interval $(0, 3)$ and, in particular, the behaviour of the tangents to the graph in this interval will reveal more.

The tangents at $x = 1, 2$ and 2.5 have equations $y = 8x - 5$, $y = 16x - 16$ and $y = \frac{25}{2}x - \frac{125}{16}$ respectively. The following graphs illustrate the behaviour.

- The first diagram shows a section of the graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ and its tangent at $x = 1$.

The tangent lies *below* the graph in the immediate neighbourhood of where $x = 1$.

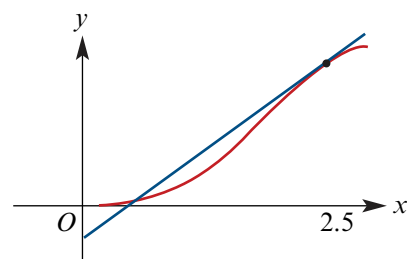
For the interval $(0, 2)$, the gradient of the graph is increasing; the graph is said to be *concave up*.



- The second diagram shows a section of the graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ and its tangent at $x = 2.5$.

The tangent lies *above* the graph in the immediate neighbourhood of where $x = 2.5$.

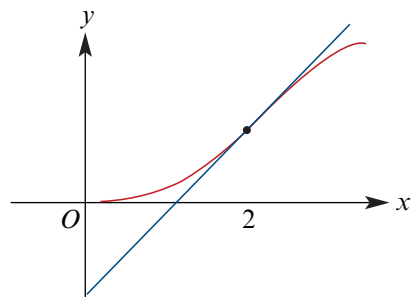
For the interval $(2, 3)$, the gradient of the graph is decreasing; the graph is said to be *concave down*.



- The third diagram shows a section of the graph of $y = 4x^3 - x^4$ and its tangent at $x = 2$.

The tangent *crosses* the graph at the point $(2, 16)$.

At $x = 2$, the gradient of the graph changes from increasing to decreasing; the point $(2, 16)$ is said to be a *point of inflection*.



Concavity and points of inflection

For a curve $y = f(x)$:

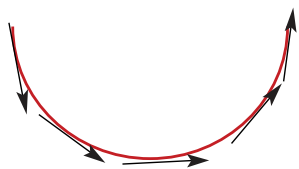
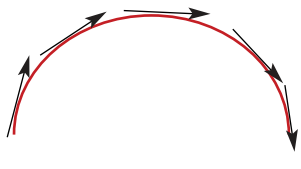
- the derivative $f'(a)$ gives the gradient of the curve at $x = a$
- the second derivative $f''(a)$ gives the rate of change of the gradient of the curve at $x = a$.

We have met the ideas of concave up and concave down in the example at the beginning of this section. We now give the definitions of these ideas.

Concave up and concave down

For a curve $y = f(x)$:

- If $f''(x) > 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is increasing over the interval (a, b) . The curve is said to be **concave up**.
- If $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is decreasing over the interval (a, b) . The curve is said to be **concave down**.

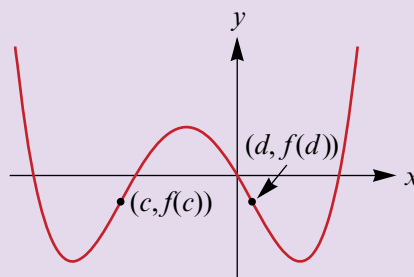
Concave up for an interval	Concave down for an interval
 The tangent is below the curve at each point and the gradient is increasing i.e. $f''(x) > 0$	 The tangent is above the curve at each point and the gradient is decreasing i.e. $f''(x) < 0$

Point of inflection

A point where a curve changes from concave up to concave down or from concave down to concave up is called a **point of inflection**.

That is, a point of inflection occurs where the sign of the second derivative changes.

In the graph on the right, there are points of inflection at $x = c$ and $x = d$.



Note: At a point of inflection, the tangent will pass through the curve.

At a point of inflection of a twice differentiable function f , we must have $f''(x) = 0$.

However, this condition does not necessarily guarantee a point of inflection. At a point of inflection, there must also be a change of concavity.

For example, consider $f(x) = x^4$. Then $f''(x) = 12x^2$ and so $f''(0) = 0$. But the graph of $y = x^4$ has a local minimum at $x = 0$.

From now on, we can use these new ideas in our graphing.



Example 15

For each of the following functions, determine the coordinates of the points of inflection of the curve and state the intervals where the curve is concave up.

a $f(x) = x^3$

b $f(x) = -x^3$

c $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 1$

Solution

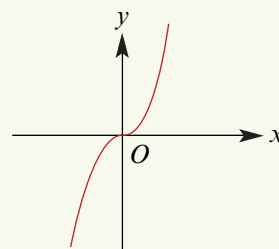
a ■ There is a stationary point of inflection at $(0, 0)$.

At $x = 0$, the gradient is zero and the curve changes from concave down to concave up.

■ The curve is concave up on the interval $(0, \infty)$.

The second derivative is positive on this interval.

Note: The tangent at $x = 0$ is the line $y = 0$.



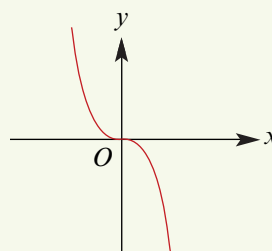
b ■ There is a stationary point of inflection at $(0, 0)$.

At $x = 0$, the gradient is zero and the curve changes from concave up to concave down.

■ The curve is concave up on the interval $(-\infty, 0)$.

The second derivative is positive on this interval.

Note: The tangent at $x = 0$ is the line $y = 0$.



c $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 1$

$$f'(x) = 3x^2 - 6x$$

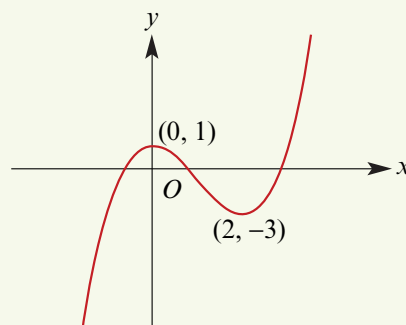
$$f''(x) = 6x - 6$$

There is a local maximum at $(0, 1)$ and a local minimum at $(2, -3)$.

The second derivative is zero at $x = 1$, it is positive for $x > 1$, and it is negative for $x < 1$.

■ There is a point of inflection at $(1, -1)$.

■ The curve is concave up on the interval $(1, \infty)$.



Test for local maximum or minimum

The following test provides a useful method for identifying local maximums and minimums.

Second derivative test

For the graph of $y = f(x)$:

- If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) > 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local minimum, as the curve is concave up.
- If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) < 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local maximum, as the curve is concave down.
- If $f''(a) = 0$, then further investigation is necessary.



Example 16

Consider the graph of $y = f(x)$, where $f(x) = x^2(10 - x)$.

- a Determine the coordinates of the stationary points and determine their nature using the second derivative test.
- b Determine the coordinates of the point of inflection and determine the gradient at this point.
- c On the one set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$, $y = f'(x)$ and $y = f''(x)$ for $x \in [0, 10]$.

Solution

We have $f(x) = x^2(10 - x) = 10x^2 - x^3$

$$f'(x) = 20x - 3x^2$$

$$f''(x) = 20 - 6x$$

- a $f'(x) = 0$ implies $x(20 - 3x) = 0$, and therefore $x = 0$ or $x = \frac{20}{3}$.

Since $f''(0) = 20 > 0$, there is a local minimum at $(0, 0)$.

Since $f''\left(\frac{20}{3}\right) = -20 < 0$, there is a local maximum at $\left(\frac{20}{3}, \frac{4000}{27}\right)$.

- b $f''(x) = 0$ implies $x = \frac{10}{3}$.

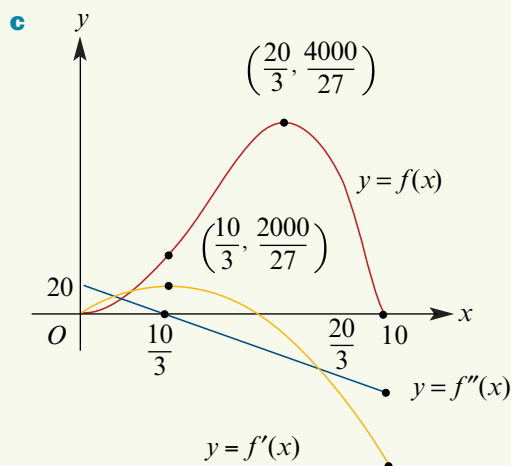
We have $f''(x) > 0$ for $x < \frac{10}{3}$

and $f''(x) < 0$ for $x > \frac{10}{3}$.

Hence there is a point of inflection at $\left(\frac{10}{3}, \frac{2000}{27}\right)$.

The gradient at this point is $\frac{100}{3}$.

Note: The maximum gradient of $y = f(x)$ is at the point of inflection.





Example 17

Using a graphics calculator, determine approximate coordinates for the stationary points and the points of inflection on the graph of the function

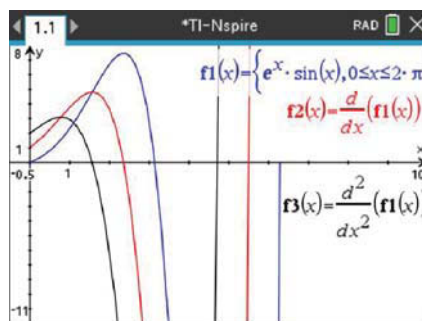
$$f(x) = e^x \sin x, \quad x \in [0, 2\pi]$$



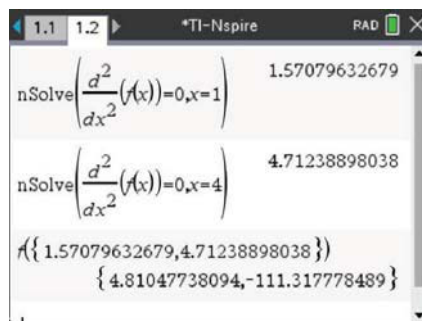
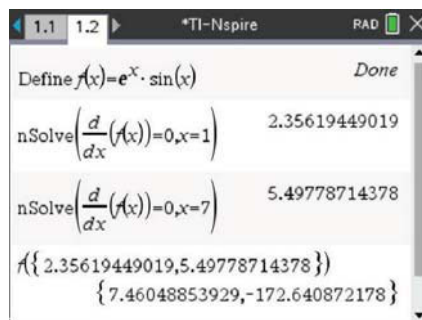
Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Plot the graphs of the original function ($f1$), its derivative ($f2$) and its second derivative ($f3$) as shown. Note that:

- The graph of the derivative ($f2$) has two x -axis intercepts, so there are two stationary points.
- The graph of the second derivative ($f3$) crosses the x -axis twice, so there are two points of inflection.



- In a **Calculator** application, define the function $f(x) = e^x \sin(x)$.
- Use **nSolve** to determine the x -values such that the derivative equals zero, for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.
- The stationary points are at (2.36, 7.46) and (5.50, -172.64).
- Use **nSolve** to determine the x -values such that the second derivative equals zero, for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.
- Substitute the x -values in $f(x)$ to determine the corresponding y -values:
 - The points of inflection are at (1.57, 4.81) and (4.71, -111.32).



Notes:

- The derivative templates can be accessed from the 2D-template palette .
- In the **Graphs** application, you can use **menu** > **Trace** > **Graph Trace** to determine the x -axis intercepts of the derivative and the second derivative.
- When using **nSolve**, you may need to try several guess values in order to determine all the solutions.

Using the Casio

- Press **MENU** **5** to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = e^x \sin(x)$ in $Y1$.
- Enter the derivative of $Y1$ in $Y2$:
 OPTN **F2** **F1** **F1** **1** $\blacktriangleright$ **X,0,T** **EXE**
- Enter the second derivative of $Y1$ in $Y3$:
 OPTN **F2** **F2** **F1** **1** $\blacktriangleright$ **X,0,T** **EXE**

Turning points

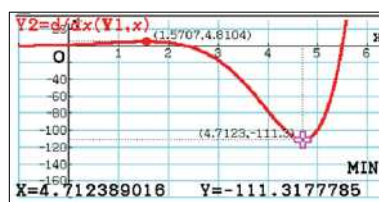
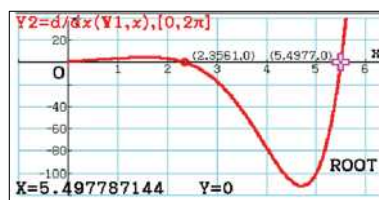
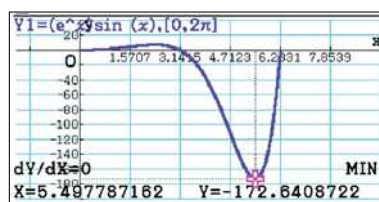
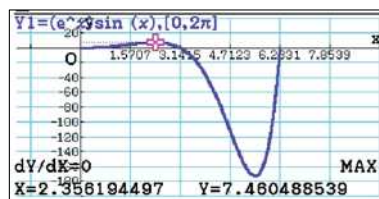
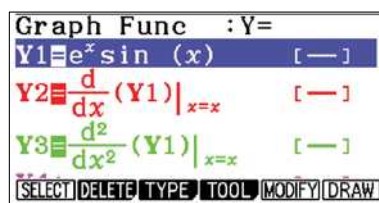
- Plot the graph of the original function $Y1$:
 $\blacktriangle$ **F1** $\blacktriangle$ **F1** **F6**
- Go to **G-Solve** **SHIFT** **F5**; select **Maximum** **F2**.
 The local maximum is at $(2.36, 7.46)$.
- Go to **G-Solve** **SHIFT** **F5**; select **Minimum** **F3**.
 The local minimum is at $(5.50, -172.64)$.

Note: The x -coordinates of the stationary points are the x -axis intercepts of the graph of the derivative function $Y2$.

Points of inflection

- Press **EXIT** to return to the function list.
- Plot the graph of the derivative function $Y2$:
 $\blacktriangle$ **F1** $\blacktriangle$ **F1** **F6**
- Determine the turning points using **Maximum** and **Minimum** from the **G-Solve** menu.
- The points of inflection occur when $x = 1.571$ and $x = 4.712$.
- On the graph of the original function $Y1$, determine the y -coordinate of each inflection point using **y-Cal** from the **G-Solve** menu.
- The points of inflection are at $(1.57, 4.81)$ and $(4.71, -111.32)$.

Note: The x -coordinates of the points of inflection can also be found by determining where the graph of the second derivative function $Y3$ crosses the x -axis.





Example 18

Sketch the graph of $f(x) = x^4 - 8x^3 + 18x^2 + 4$, locating the stationary points and the points of inflection.

Solution

$$f(x) = x^4 - 8x^3 + 18x^2 + 4$$

$$f'(x) = 4x^3 - 24x^2 + 36x = 4x(x - 3)^2$$

$$f''(x) = 12x^2 - 48x + 36 = 12(x - 1)(x - 3)$$

Stationary points

$$f'(x) = 0 \text{ implies } x = 0 \text{ or } x = 3$$

- Since $f''(0) = 36 > 0$, there is a local minimum at $(0, 4)$.
- Since $f''(3) = 0$, the test is inconclusive; further investigation is required.

Points of inflection

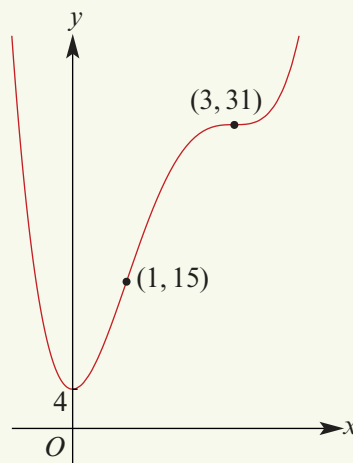
$$f''(x) = 0 \text{ implies } x = 1 \text{ or } x = 3$$

When $x < 1$, $f''(x) > 0$.

When $1 < x < 3$, $f''(x) < 0$.

When $x > 3$, $f''(x) > 0$.

- There is a point of inflection at $(1, 15)$ and a stationary point of inflection at $(3, 31)$.



Summary 7D

- For a curve $y = f(x)$:
 - If $f''(x) > 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is increasing over the interval (a, b) . The curve is said to be **concave up**.
 - If $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is decreasing over the interval (a, b) . The curve is said to be **concave down**.
- A **point of inflection** is where the curve changes from concave up to concave down or from concave down to concave up.
- At a point of inflection of a twice differentiable function f , we must have $f''(x) = 0$. However, this condition does not necessarily guarantee a point of inflection. At a point of inflection, there must also be a change of concavity.
- **Second derivative test**
For the graph of $y = f(x)$:
 - If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) > 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local minimum.
 - If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) < 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local maximum.
 - If $f''(a) = 0$, then further investigation is necessary.



Exercise 7D

- 1** Sketch a small portion of a continuous curve around a point $x = a$ having the property:

a $\frac{dy}{dx} > 0$ when $x = a$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$ when $x = a$

b $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$ when $x = a$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$ when $x = a$

c $\frac{dy}{dx} > 0$ when $x = a$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$ when $x = a$

d $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$ when $x = a$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$ when $x = a$

Example 15

- 2** For each of the following functions, determine the coordinates of the points of inflection of the curve and state the intervals where the curve is concave up.

a $f(x) = x^3 - x$

b $f(x) = x^3 - x^2$

c $f(x) = x^2 - x^3$

d $f(x) = x^4 - x^3$

Example 16

- 3** Let $f(x) = \frac{x^2}{10}(20 - x)$ for $x \in [0, 20]$.

a Determine the coordinates of the stationary points and determine their nature using the second derivative test.

b Determine the coordinates of the point of inflection and determine the gradient at this point.

c On the one set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$, $y = f'(x)$ and $y = f''(x)$ for $x \in [0, 20]$.

- 4** Let $f(x) = 2x^3 + 6x^2 - 12$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

a i Determine $f'(x)$. **ii** Determine $f''(x)$.

b Determine the coordinates of the stationary points and use the second derivative test to establish their nature.

c Use $f''(x)$ to determine the point of inflection.

- 5** Repeat Question 4 for each of the following functions.

a $f(x) = \sin x$, $x \in [0, 2\pi]$

b $f(x) = xe^x$, $x \in \mathbb{R}$

Example 17

- 6** Sketch the graph of $y = x^3(4 - x)$, locating the stationary points and the points of inflection.

- 7** Sketch the graph of $y = 3x^4 - 44x^3 + 144x^2$, locating the stationary points and the points of inflection.

- 8** Let $f(x) = x(10 - x)e^x$ for $x \in [0, 10]$.

a Determine $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$.

b Sketch the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = f''(x)$ on the one set of axes for $x \in [0, 10]$.

c Determine the value of x for which the gradient of the graph of $y = f(x)$ is a maximum and indicate this point on the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 9** Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection of $y = x - \sin x$ for $x \in [0, 4\pi]$. IS
- 10** For each of the following functions, determine the values of x in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$ for which the graph of the function has a point of inflection.
- a** $y = \sin x$ **b** $y = \tan x$ **c** $y = \sin(2x)$
- 11** Show that the parabola with equation $y = ax^2 + bx + c$ has no points of inflection. CF
- 12** For the curve with equation $y = 2x^3 - 9x^2 + 12x + 8$, determine the values of x for which:
- a** $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$ **b** $\frac{dy}{dx} < 0$ and $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$
- 13** For each of the following functions, determine the coordinates of any points of inflection and the gradient of the graph at these points. SF
- a** $y = x^3 - 6x$ **b** $y = x^4 - 6x^2 + 4$ **c** $y = 3 - 10x^3 + 10x^4 - 3x^5$
- d** $y = (x^2 - 1)(x^2 + 1)$ **e** $y = x\sqrt{x+1}$ **f** $y = \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1}$
- 14** Determine the values of x in $[-2\pi, 2\pi]$ for which the graph of $y = e^{-x} \sin x$ has:
- a** stationary points **b** points of inflection.
- 15** Given that $f(x) = x^3 + bx^2 + cx$ and $b^2 > 3c$, prove that: CF
- a** the graph of f has two stationary points
- b** the graph of f has one point of inflection
- c** the point of inflection is the midpoint of the interval joining the stationary points.
- 16** Consider the function with rule $f(x) = 2x^2 \ln(x)$.
- a** Determine $f'(x)$.
- b** Determine $f''(x)$.
- c** Determine the stationary points and the points of inflection of the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 17** The graph of $y = x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c$ passes through the point $(2, 7)$, has a local maximum when $x = 1$ and a point of inflection when $x = 3$.
- a** Determine the values of a , b and c .
- b** Sketch the graph.
- 18** The graph of $y = ax^3 + bx + c$ has a point of inflection where $y = 3$, a local maximum where $x = 1$ and passes through the point $(2, 1)$.
- a** Determine the values of a , b and c .
- b** Give the value of x for which there is a local minimum.
- c** Sketch the graph.
- 19** Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = \frac{6}{x} - 6 + 3 \ln x$, $x > 0$, showing all key features.

7E Absolute maximum and minimum values

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the absolute maximum and minimum of a function.

Local maximum and minimum values were considered in the previous section. These are often not the actual maximum and minimum values of the function. For a function defined on an interval:

- the actual maximum value of the function is called the **absolute maximum**
- the actual minimum value of the function is called the **absolute minimum**.

The corresponding points on the graph of the function are not necessarily stationary points.

More precisely, for a continuous function f defined on an interval $[a, b]$:

- if M is a value of the function such that $f(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then M is the absolute maximum value of the function
- if N is a value of the function such that $f(x) \geq N$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then N is the absolute minimum value of the function.



Example 19

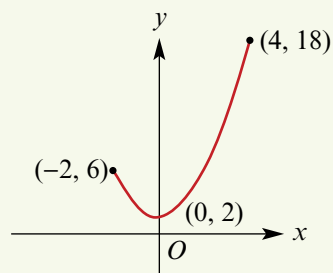
Let $f(x) = x^2 + 2$ for $x \in [-2, 4]$. Determine the absolute maximum value and the absolute minimum value of the function.

Solution

The maximum value is 18 and occurs when $x = 4$.

The minimum value is 2 and occurs when $x = 0$.

(Note that the absolute minimum occurs at a stationary point of the graph. The absolute maximum occurs at an endpoint, not at a stationary point.)



Example 20

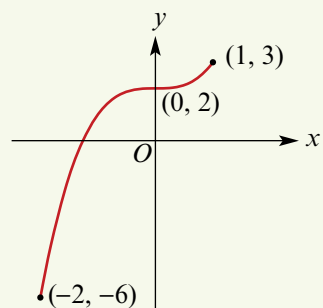
Let $f(x) = x^3 + 2$ for $x \in [-2, 1]$. Determine the maximum and minimum values of the function.

Solution

The maximum value is 3 and occurs when $x = 1$.

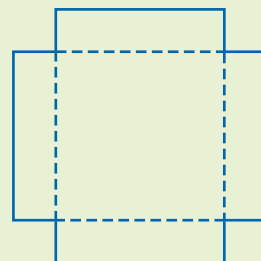
The minimum value is -6 and occurs when $x = -2$.

(Note that the absolute maximum and minimum values do not occur at stationary points.)



**Example 21**

From a square piece of metal of side length 2 m, four squares are removed as shown in the diagram. The metal is then folded along the dashed lines to form an open box with height x m.



- a** Show that the volume of the box, $V \text{ m}^3$, is given by $V = 4x^3 - 8x^2 + 4x$.
- b** Determine the value of x that gives the box its maximum volume and show that the volume is a maximum for this value.
- c** Sketch the graph of V against x for a suitable domain.
- d** If the height of the box must be less than 0.3 m, i.e. $x \leq 0.3$, what will be the maximum volume of the box?

Solution

- a** The box has length and width $2 - 2x$ metres, and has height x metres. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} V &= (2 - 2x)^2 x \\ &= (4 - 8x + 4x^2)x \\ &= 4x^3 - 8x^2 + 4x \end{aligned}$$

- b** Let $V(x) = 4x^3 - 8x^2 + 4x$. A local maximum will occur when $V'(x) = 0$.

We have $V'(x) = 12x^2 - 16x + 4$, and so $V'(x) = 0$ implies that

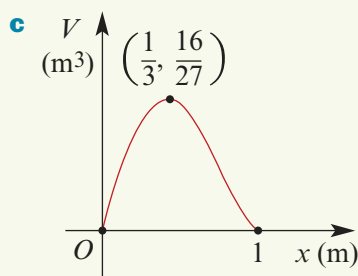
$$\begin{aligned} 12x^2 - 16x + 4 &= 0 \\ 3x^2 - 4x + 1 &= 0 \\ (3x - 1)(x - 1) &= 0 \\ \therefore x &= \frac{1}{3} \text{ or } x = 1 \end{aligned}$$

But, when $x = 1$, the length of the box is $2 - 2x = 0$. Therefore the only value to be considered is $x = \frac{1}{3}$. We show the entire chart for completeness.

The maximum occurs when $x = \frac{1}{3}$.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Maximum volume} &= \left(2 - 2 \times \frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{3} \\ &= \frac{16}{27} \text{ m}^3 \end{aligned}$$

x		$\frac{1}{3}$		1
$V'(x)$	+	0	-	0
shape of V	/	—	\	—



- d** The local maximum of $V(x)$ defined on $[0, 1]$ is at $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{16}{27}\right)$.

But $\frac{1}{3}$ is not in the interval $[0, 0.3]$.

Since $V'(x) > 0$ for all $x \in [0, 0.3]$, the maximum volume for this situation occurs when $x = 0.3$ and is 0.588 m^3 .

Summary 7E

For a continuous function f defined on an interval $[a, b]$:

- if M is a value of the function such that $f(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then M is the **absolute maximum** value of the function
- if N is a value of the function such that $f(x) \geq N$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then N is the **absolute minimum** value of the function.

Skill-sheet

**Exercise 7E****Example 19**

- 1 Let $f(x) = 2 - 8x^2$ for $x \in [-3, 3]$. Determine the absolute maximum value and the absolute minimum value of the function.

Example 20

- 2 Let $f(x) = x^3 + 2x + 3$ for $x \in [-3, 2]$. Determine the absolute maximum value and the absolute minimum value of the function for its domain.
- 3 Let $f(x) = 2x^3 - 6x^2$ for $x \in [-1.5, 2.5]$. Determine the absolute maximum and absolute minimum values of the function.
- 4 Let $f(x) = 2x^4 - 8x^2$ for $x \in [-2, 6]$. Determine the absolute maximum and absolute minimum values of the function.

Example 21

- 5 A rectangular block is such that the sides of its base are of length x cm and $3x$ cm. The sum of the lengths of all its edges is 20 cm.
- a Show that the volume, V cm³, of the block is given by $V = 15x^2 - 12x^3$.
 - b Determine $\frac{dV}{dx}$.
 - c Determine the coordinates of the local maximum of the graph of V against x for $x \in [0, 1.25]$.
 - d If $x \in [0, 0.8]$, determine the absolute maximum value of V and the value of x for which this occurs.
 - e If $x \in [0, 1]$, determine the absolute maximum value of V and the value of x for which this occurs.
- 6 Variables x , y and z are such that $x + y = 30$ and $z = xy$.
- a If $x \in [2, 5]$, determine the possible values of y .
 - b Determine the absolute maximum and absolute minimum values of z .
- 7 Consider the function $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-1} + \frac{1}{4-x}$, $x \in [2, 3]$.
- a Determine $f'(x)$.
 - b Determine the coordinates of the stationary point of the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - c Determine the absolute maximum and absolute minimum of the function.
- 8 Let $f(x) = \frac{2}{\sin(2x)}$ where $\frac{\pi}{6} \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{3}$. Determine the absolute maximum and minimum of the function.

- 9** A piece of string 10 metres long is cut into two pieces to form two squares.
- a** If one piece of string has length x metres, show that the combined area of the two squares is given by $A = \frac{1}{8}(x^2 - 10x + 50)$.
 - b** Determine $\frac{dA}{dx}$.
 - c** Determine the value of x that makes A a minimum.
 - d** If two squares are formed but $x \in [4, 5]$, determine the maximum possible combined area of the two squares.
- 10** Determine the maximum and minimum values of the function $g(x) = x + \frac{1}{x-2}$, $x \in [2.1, 8]$.
- 11** Consider the function $f(x) = \frac{1}{x+1} + \frac{1}{4-x}$, $x \in [0, 3]$.
- a** Determine $f'(x)$.
 - b** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point of the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - c** Determine the absolute maximum and absolute minimum of the function.
- 12** Let $f(x) = \sin(2x)$ for $x \in \left[-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{8}\right]$. State the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function.
- 13** Let $f(x) = \cos(2x)$ for $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{8}\right]$. State the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function.
- 14** Let $f(x) = 2 - x^{\frac{2}{3}}$ for $x \in [-1, 8]$. Sketch the graph and state the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function.
- 15** Let $f(x) = 2e^x + e^{-x}$ for $x \in [-1, 2]$. Sketch the graph and state the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function.
- 16** Let $f(x) = (x-5)\ln\left(\frac{x-5}{10}\right)$ for $x \in [6, 10]$. Sketch the graph and state the absolute maximum and minimum values of the function.

7F Optimisation problems

Learning intentions

- To be able to use differentiation in optimisation problems.

Many practical problems require that some quantity (for example, cost of manufacture or fuel consumption) be **minimised**, that is, made as small as possible. Other problems require that some quantity (for example, profit on sales or attendance at a concert) be **maximised**, that is, made as large as possible. In both cases, we say that the quantity is to be **optimised**. We can use differential calculus to solve many of these types of problems.

We now have two methods for identifying whether a stationary point corresponds to a local maximum or local minimum value:

Method 1 create a gradient chart

Method 2 use the second derivative test.

**Example 22**

A farmer has sufficient fencing to make a rectangular pen of perimeter 200 metres. What dimensions will give an enclosure of maximum area?

Solution

Let the length of the rectangle be x metres. Then the width is $100 - x$ metres and the area is $A \text{ m}^2$, where

$$\begin{aligned} A &= x(100 - x) \\ &= 100x - x^2 \end{aligned}$$

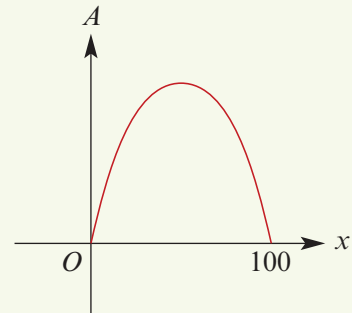
The maximum value of A occurs when $\frac{dA}{dx} = 0$.

$$\frac{dA}{dx} = 100 - 2x$$

$$\therefore \frac{dA}{dx} = 0 \text{ implies } x = 50$$

From the gradient chart, the maximum area occurs when $x = 50$.

The pen with maximum area has dimensions 50 m by 50 m, and so has area 2500 m^2 .



x		50	
$\frac{dA}{dx}$	+	0	-
shape of A	/	—	\

**Example 23**

Two variables x and y are such that $x^4y = 8$. A third variable z is defined by $z = x + y$. Determine the values of x and y that give z a stationary value. Use the second derivative test to show that this value of z is a minimum.

Solution

Obtain y in terms of x from the equation $x^4y = 8$:

$$y = 8x^{-4}$$

Substitute in the equation $z = x + y$:

$$z = x + 8x^{-4}$$

Now z is expressed in terms of one variable, x . Differentiate with respect to x :

$$\frac{dz}{dx} = 1 - 32x^{-5}$$

A stationary point occurs where $\frac{dz}{dx} = 0$:

$$1 - 32x^{-5} = 0$$

$$32x^{-5} = 1$$

$$x^5 = 32$$

$$\therefore x = 2$$

There is a stationary point at $x = 2$. The corresponding value of y is $8 \times 2^{-4} = \frac{1}{2}$.

So the corresponding value of z is

$$z = x + y = 2\frac{1}{2}$$

Second derivative test:

When $x = 2$, we have

$$\frac{d^2z}{dx^2} = 160x^{-6} = \frac{160}{2^6} > 0$$

which corresponds to a local minimum.

The minimum value of z is $2\frac{1}{2}$ and occurs when $x = 2$ and $y = \frac{1}{2}$.



Example 24

A cylindrical tin canister closed at both ends has a surface area of 100 cm^2 . Determine, correct to two decimal places, the greatest volume it can have. If the radius of the canister can be at most 2 cm, determine the greatest volume it can have.

Solution

Let the radius of the circular end of the tin be r cm, let the height of the tin be h cm and let the volume of the tin be $V \text{ cm}^3$.

Obtain equations for the surface area and the volume.

$$\text{Surface area: } 100 = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh \quad (1)$$

$$\text{Volume: } V = \pi r^2 h \quad (2)$$

The process we follow now is very similar to Example 23. Obtain h in terms of r from equation (1):

$$h = \frac{1}{2\pi r}(100 - 2\pi r^2)$$

Substitute in equation (2):

$$V = \pi r^2 \times \frac{1}{2\pi r}(100 - 2\pi r^2)$$

$$\therefore V = 50r - \pi r^3 \quad (3)$$

A stationary point of the graph of $V = 50r - \pi r^3$ occurs when $\frac{dV}{dr} = 0$.

$$\frac{dV}{dr} = 0 \text{ implies } 50 - 3\pi r^2 = 0$$

$$\therefore r = \pm \sqrt{\frac{50}{3\pi}} \approx \pm 2.3$$

But $r = -2.3$ does not fit the practical situation.

Substitute $r = 2.3$ in equation (3) to determine $V \approx 76.78$.

So there is a stationary point at $(2.3, 76.8)$.

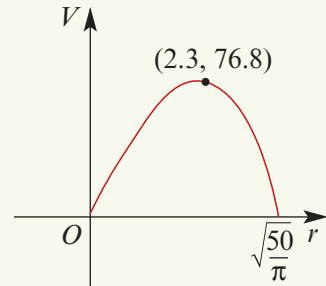
Use a gradient chart to determine the nature of this stationary point.

The maximum volume is 76.78 cm^3 correct to two decimal places.

r		2.3	
$\frac{dV}{dr}$	+	0	-
shape of V	/	—	\

It can be observed that the volume is given by a function f with rule $f(r) = 50r - \pi r^3$ and domain $[0, \sqrt{\frac{50}{\pi}}]$, giving the graph on the right.

If the greatest radius the canister can have is 2 cm, then the function f has domain $[0, 2]$. It has been seen that $f'(r) > 0$ for all $r \in [0, 2]$. The maximum value occurs when $r = 2$. The maximum volume in this case is $f(2) = 100 - 8\pi \approx 74.87 \text{ cm}^3$.



In some situations the variables may not be continuous. For instance, one of them may only take integer values. In such cases, we may be able to model the non-continuous case with a continuous function so that the techniques of differential calculus can be used.



Example 25

A TV cable company has 1000 subscribers who are paying \$5 per month. It can get 100 more subscribers for each \$0.10 decrease in the monthly fee. What monthly fee will yield the maximum revenue and what will this revenue be?

Solution

Let x denote the monthly fee. Then the number of subscribers is $1000 + 100\left(\frac{5-x}{0.1}\right)$.

(Note that we are treating a discrete situation with a continuous function.)

Let R denote the revenue. Then

$$\begin{aligned} R &= x(1000 + 1000(5 - x)) \\ &= 1000(6x - x^2) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dR}{dx} = 1000(6 - 2x)$$

Thus $\frac{dR}{dx} = 0$ implies $6 - 2x = 0$ and hence $x = 3$.

Second derivative test:

When $x = 3$, we have

$$\frac{d^2R}{dx^2} = -2000 < 0$$

which corresponds to a local maximum.

For maximum revenue, the monthly fee should be \$3, and this gives a total revenue of \$9000.



Example 26

A manufacturer annually produces and sells 10 000 shirts. Sales are uniformly distributed throughout the year. The production cost of each shirt is \$23 and the carrying costs (storage, insurance, interest) depend on the total number of shirts in a production run. (A production run is the number, x , of shirts which are under production at a given time.)

The set-up costs for a production run are \$40. The annual carrying costs are $\$x^{\frac{3}{2}}$.

Determine the size of a production run that minimises the total set-up and carrying costs for a year.

Solution

$$\text{Number of production runs per year} = \frac{10\,000}{x}$$

$$\text{Set-up costs for these production runs} = 40 \left(\frac{10\,000}{x} \right)$$

Let C be the total set-up and carrying costs. Then

$$\begin{aligned} C &= x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{400\,000}{x} \\ &= x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 400\,000x^{-1}, \quad x > 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{dC}{dx} = \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{400\,000}{x^2}$$

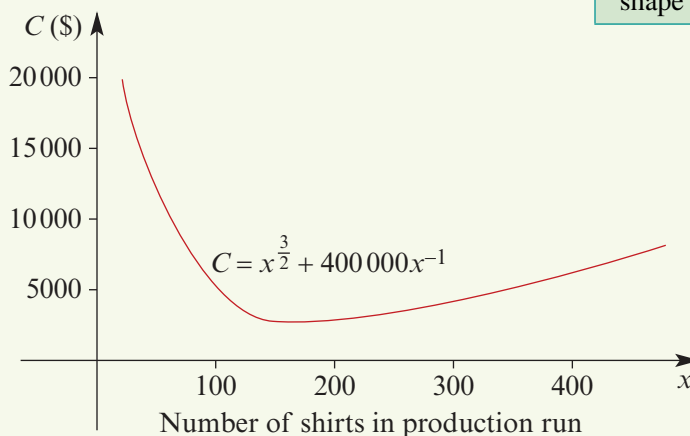
$$\text{Thus } \frac{dC}{dx} = 0 \text{ implies } \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}} = \frac{400\,000}{x^2}$$

$$x^{\frac{5}{2}} = \frac{400\,000 \times 2}{3}$$

$$\therefore x \approx 148.04$$

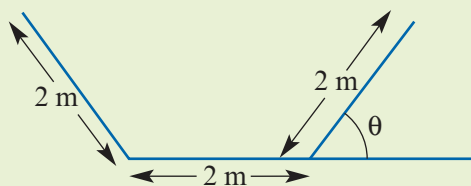
Each production run should be 148 shirts.

x		148.04	
$\frac{dC}{dx}$	-	0	+
shape of C	\	—	/



**Example 27**

The cross-section of a drain is to be an isosceles trapezium, with three sides of length 2 metres, as shown. Determine the angle θ that maximises the cross-sectional area, and determine this maximum area.

**Solution**

Let $A \text{ m}^2$ be the area of the trapezium. Then

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \sin \theta \times (2 + 2 + 4 \cos \theta) \\ &= \sin \theta \cdot (4 + 4 \cos \theta) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } A'(\theta) &= \cos \theta \cdot (4 + 4 \cos \theta) - 4 \sin^2 \theta \\ &= 4 \cos \theta + 4 \cos^2 \theta - 4(1 - \cos^2 \theta) \\ &= 4 \cos \theta + 8 \cos^2 \theta - 4 \end{aligned}$$

The maximum will occur when $A'(\theta) = 0$:

$$\begin{aligned} 8 \cos^2 \theta + 4 \cos \theta - 4 &= 0 \\ 2 \cos^2 \theta + \cos \theta - 1 &= 0 \\ (2 \cos \theta - 1)(\cos \theta + 1) &= 0 \\ \therefore \cos \theta &= \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } \cos \theta = -1 \end{aligned}$$

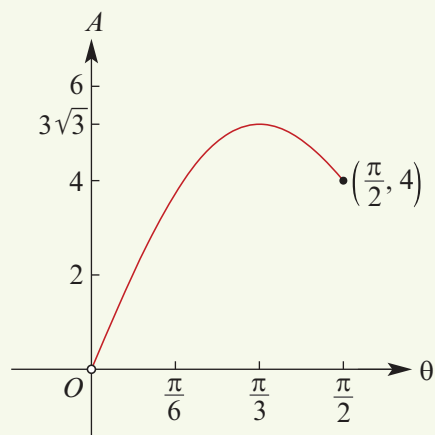
The practical restriction on θ is that $0 < \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$.

Therefore the only possible solution is $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$, and a gradient chart confirms that $\frac{\pi}{3}$ gives a maximum.

θ		$\frac{\pi}{3}$	
$A'(\theta)$	+	0	-
shape of A	/	—	\

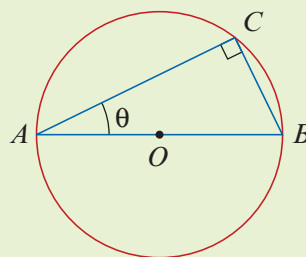
$$\text{When } \theta = \frac{\pi}{3}, A = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}(4 + 2) = 3\sqrt{3},$$

i.e. the maximum cross-sectional area is $3\sqrt{3} \text{ m}^2$.



**Example 28**

The figure shows a circular lake, centre O , of radius 2 km. A man swims across the lake from A to C at 3 km/h and then walks around the edge of the lake from C to B at 4 km/h.



- a** If $\angle BAC = \theta$ radians and the total time taken is T hours, show that

$$T = \frac{1}{3}(4 \cos \theta + 3\theta)$$

- b** Determine the value of θ for which $\frac{dT}{d\theta} = 0$ and determine whether this gives a maximum or minimum value of T ($0^\circ < \theta^\circ < 90^\circ$).

Solution

- a** Time taken = $\frac{\text{distance travelled}}{\text{speed}}$

Therefore the swim takes $\frac{4 \cos \theta}{3}$ hours and the walk takes $\frac{4\theta}{4}$ hours.

Thus the total time taken is given by $T = \frac{1}{3}(4 \cos \theta + 3\theta)$.

- b** $\frac{dT}{d\theta} = \frac{1}{3}(-4 \sin \theta + 3)$

The stationary point occurs where $\frac{dT}{d\theta} = 0$, and $\frac{1}{3}(-4 \sin \theta + 3) = 0$ implies $\sin \theta = \frac{3}{4}$.

Therefore $\theta = 48.59^\circ$ to two decimal places.

Second derivative test:

Note that $\frac{d^2T}{d\theta^2} = -\frac{4}{3} \cos \theta$. When $\theta = 48.59^\circ$, we have $\cos \theta > 0$ and so $\frac{d^2T}{d\theta^2} < 0$.

Hence the value of T is a maximum when $\theta = 48.59^\circ$.

Note: The maximum time taken is 1.73 hours. If the man swims straight across the lake, it takes $1\frac{1}{3}$ hours. If he walks all the way, it takes approximately 1.57 hours.

**Example 29**

Assume that the number of bacteria present in a culture at time t is given by $N(t)$, where $N(t) = 36te^{-0.1t}$. At what time will the population be at a maximum? Determine the maximum population.

Solution

$$N(t) = 36te^{-0.1t}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore N'(t) &= 36e^{-0.1t} - 3.6te^{-0.1t} \\ &= e^{-0.1t}(36 - 3.6t) \end{aligned}$$

Thus $N'(t) = 0$ implies $t = 10$.

The maximum population is $N(10) = 360e^{-1} \approx 132$.

Maximum rates of increase and decrease

We know that we can use the derivative of a function to help determine the maximum and minimum values of the function. Similarly, we can use the second derivative to help determine the maximum rate of increase or decrease of the function.

The second derivative gives the instantaneous rate of change of the derivative.

- If $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} > 0$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is increasing as x increases.
- If $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} < 0$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is decreasing as x increases.



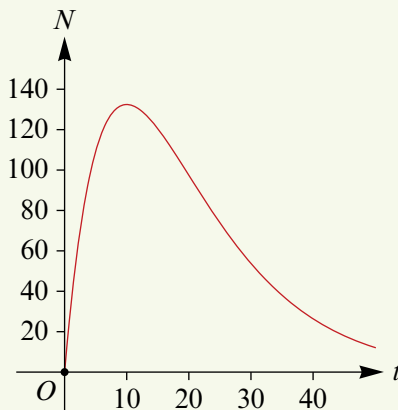
Example 30

Assume that the number of bacteria present in a culture at time t is given by $N(t)$, where $N(t) = 36te^{-0.1t}$.

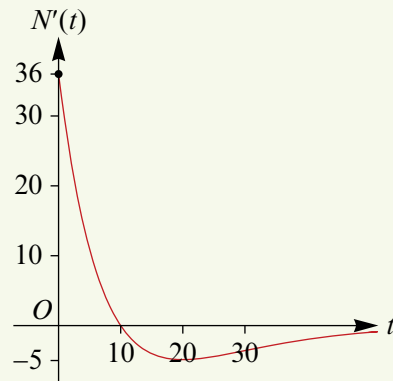
- a Sketch the graphs of $N(t)$ against t and $N'(t)$ against t .
- b Determine the maximum rates of increase and decrease of the population and the times at which these occur.

Solution

a $N(t) = 36te^{-0.1t}$



$$N'(t) = 36e^{-0.1t} - 3.6te^{-0.1t}$$



- b The rate of change of the population is $N'(t) = e^{-0.1t}(36 - 3.6t)$.

From the graph, the maximum value of $N'(t)$ occurs at $t = 0$. Thus the maximum rate of increase of the population is $N'(0) = 36$ bacteria per unit of time.

We now calculate

$$\begin{aligned} N''(t) &= -7.2e^{-0.1t} + 0.36te^{-0.1t} \\ &= e^{-0.1t}(-7.2 + 0.36t) \end{aligned}$$

Thus $N''(t) = 0$ implies $t = 20$.

The minimum value of $N'(t)$ occurs at $t = 20$. Since $N'(20) = -36e^{-2} \approx -4.9$, the maximum rate of decrease of the population is 4.9 bacteria per unit of time.

Note: The graph of the original function N has a point of inflection at $t = 20$.

Summary 7F

Here are some steps for solving optimisation problems:

- Where possible, draw a diagram to illustrate the problem. Label the diagram and designate your variables and constants. Note the values that the variables can take.
- Write an expression for the quantity that is going to be maximised or minimised. Form an equation for this quantity in terms of a single independent variable. This may require some algebraic manipulation.
- If $y = f(x)$ is the quantity to be maximised or minimised, determine the values of x for which $f'(x) = 0$.
- Test each point for which $f'(x) = 0$ to determine whether it is a local maximum, a local minimum or neither.
- If the function $y = f(x)$ is defined on an interval, such as $[a, b]$ or $[0, \infty)$, check the values of the function at the endpoints.

Exercise 7F

Example 22

- 1 Determine the maximum area of a rectangular field that can be enclosed by 100 m of fencing.

Example 23

- 2 Determine two positive numbers that sum to 4 and such that the sum of the cube of the first and the square of the second is as small as possible.
- 3 For $x + y = 100$, prove that the product $P = xy$ is a maximum when $x = y$ and determine the maximum value of P . (Use the second derivative test.)
- 4 A farmer has 4 km of fencing wire and wishes to fence a rectangular piece of land through which flows a straight river, which is to be utilised as one side of the enclosure. How can this be done to enclose as much land as possible?
- 5 Two positive quantities p and q vary in such a way that $p^3q = 9$. Another quantity z is defined by $z = 16p + 3q$. Determine values of p and q that make z a minimum. (Use the second derivative test.)

Example 24

- 6 A cuboid has a total surface area of 150 cm^2 with a square base of side length $x \text{ cm}$.
- a Show that the height, $h \text{ cm}$, of the cuboid is given by $h = \frac{75 - x^2}{2x}$.
 - b Express the volume of the cuboid in terms of x .
 - c Hence determine its maximum volume as x varies.

Example 25, 26

- 7 A manufacturer determines that the daily profit, $\$P$, from selling n articles is given by $P = 100n - 0.4n^2 - 160$.
- a
 - i Determine the value of n which maximises the daily profit.
 - ii Determine the maximum daily profit.
 - b Sketch the graph of P against n . (Use a continuous graph.)
 - c State the allowable values of n for a profit to be made.
 - d Determine the value of n which maximises the profit per article.

- 8** The number of salmon swimming upstream in a river to spawn is approximated by $s(x) = -x^3 + 3x^2 + 360x + 5000$ with x representing the temperature of the water in degrees ($^{\circ}\text{C}$). (This function is valid only if $6 \leq x \leq 20$.) Determine the water temperature that produces the maximum number of salmon swimming upstream.
- 9** The number of mosquitos, $M(x)$ in millions, in a certain area depends on the average daily rainfall, x mm, during September and is approximated by

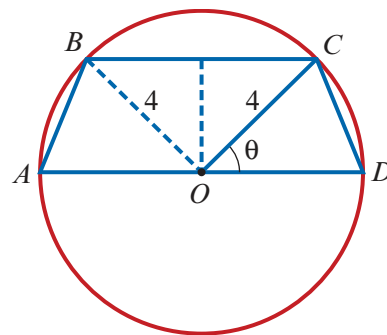
$$M(x) = \frac{1}{30}(50 - 32x + 14x^2 - x^3) \quad \text{for } 0 \leq x \leq 10$$

Determine the rainfall that will produce the maximum and the minimum number of mosquitos.

Example 27

- 10** $ABCD$ is a trapezium with $AB = CD$. The vertices are on a circle with centre O and radius 4 units. The line segment AD is a diameter of the circle.

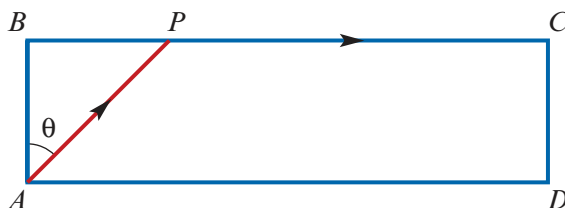
- a** Determine BC in terms of θ .
b Determine the area of the trapezium in terms of θ and hence determine the maximum area.



- 11** Determine the point on the parabola $y = x^2$ that is closest to the point $(3, 0)$.

Example 28

- 12** The figure shows a rectangular field in which $AB = 300$ m and $BC = 1100$ m.



$$AB = 300 \text{ m}$$

$$BC = 1100 \text{ m}$$

- a** An athlete runs across the field from A to P at 4 ms^{-1} . Determine the time taken to run from A to P in terms of θ .
b The athlete, on reaching P , immediately runs to C at 5 ms^{-1} . Determine the time taken to run from P to C in terms of θ .
c Use the results from parts **a** and **b** to show that the total time taken, T seconds, is given by $T = 220 + \frac{75 - 60 \sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$.
d Determine $\frac{dT}{d\theta}$.
e Determine the value of θ for which $\frac{dT}{d\theta} = 0$ and show that this is the value of θ for which T is a minimum.
f Determine the minimum value of T and determine the distance of point P from B that will minimise the athlete's running time.

Example 29 **13** The number, $N(t)$, of insects in a population at time t is given by $N(t) = 50te^{-0.1t}$. At what time will the population be at a maximum? Determine the maximum population.

Example 30 **14** The number, $N(t)$, of insects in a population at time t is given by $N(t) = 50te^{-0.1t}$.

- a** Sketch the graphs of $N(t)$ against t and $N'(t)$ against t .
- b** Determine the maximum rates of increase and decrease of the population and the times at which these occur.

15 Water is being poured into a flask. The volume, V mL, of water in the flask at time t seconds is given by

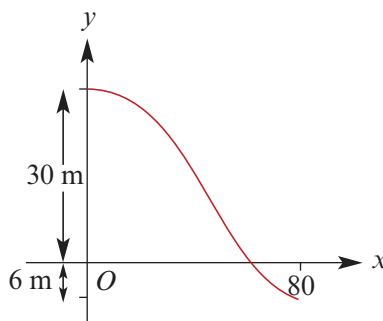
$$V(t) = \frac{3}{4} \left(10t^2 - \frac{t^3}{3} \right), \quad 0 \leq t \leq 20$$

- a** Determine the volume of water in the flask when:
 - i** $t = 0$ **ii** $t = 20$
- b** Determine $V'(t)$, the rate of flow of water into the flask.
- c** Sketch the graph of $V(t)$ against t for $0 \leq t \leq 20$.
- d** Sketch the graph of $V'(t)$ against t for $0 \leq t \leq 20$.
- e** At what time is the flow greatest and what is the flow at this time?

16 A section of a roller coaster can be described by the rule

$$y = 18 \cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{80}\right) + 12, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 80$$

- a** Determine the gradient function, $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
- b** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dy}{dx}$ against x .
- c** State the coordinates of the point on the track for which the magnitude of the gradient is maximum.



17 The depth, $D(t)$ metres, of water at the entrance to a harbour at t hours after midnight on a particular day is given by

$$D(t) = 10 + 3 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right), \quad 0 \leq t \leq 24$$

- a** Sketch the graph of $y = D(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
- b** Determine the values of t for which $D(t) \geq 8.5$.
- c** Determine the rate at which the depth is changing when:
 - i** $t = 3$ **ii** $t = 6$ **iii** $t = 12$
- d**
 - i** At what times is the depth increasing most rapidly?
 - ii** At what times is the depth decreasing most rapidly?

Chapter summary

The second derivative

- The **second derivative** of a function f is the derivative of the derivative of f and it is denoted by f'' .
- In Leibniz notation, the second derivative of y with respect to x is denoted by $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.

Stationary points

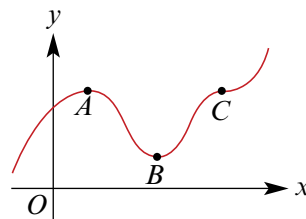
- A point with coordinates $(a, f(a))$ on a curve $y = f(x)$ is a **stationary point** if $f'(a) = 0$.
- The graph shown has three stationary points: A , B and C .

A Point A is a **local maximum** point. Notice that immediately to the left of A the gradient is positive, and immediately to the right the gradient is negative.

B Point B is a **local minimum** point. Notice that immediately to the left of B the gradient is negative, and immediately to the right the gradient is positive.

C Point C is a **stationary point of inflection**.

Stationary points of types A and B are referred to as **turning points**.

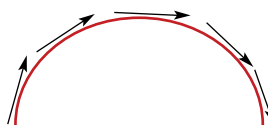


Using the second derivative in graph sketching

- **Concave up:** $f''(x) > 0$



- **Concave down:** $f''(x) < 0$



- A **point of inflection** is where the curve changes from concave up to concave down or from concave down to concave up.
- At a point of inflection of a twice differentiable function f , we must have $f''(x) = 0$. However, this condition does not necessarily guarantee a point of inflection. At a point of inflection, there must also be a change of concavity.
- **Second derivative test**
For the graph of $y = f(x)$:
 - If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) > 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local minimum.
 - If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) < 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local maximum.
 - If $f''(a) = 0$, then further investigation is necessary.

Maximum and minimum values

For a continuous function f defined on an interval $[a, b]$:

- if M is a value of the function such that $f(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then M is the **absolute maximum** value of the function
- if N is a value of the function such that $f(x) \geq N$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then N is the **absolute minimum** value of the function.

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



7A

1 I can determine the second derivative of a function.



See Example 1, Example 2, Example 3, Example 4 and Questions 1, 4, 5 and 6

7A

2 I can determine an expression for the acceleration of a particle moving in a straight line by determining the second derivative of the position function.



See Example 5 and Question 7

7B

3 I can determine the location of stationary points.



See Example 6, Example 7, Example 8, Example 9 and Questions 1, 2 and 7

7C

4 I can determine the nature of stationary points.



See Example 10, Example 11, Example 12, Example 13, Example 14 and Questions 1, 13, 19, 21 and 26

7D

5 I can determine the concavity and points of inflection of a graph using the second derivative.



See Example 15, Example 16, Example 17, Example 18 and Questions 2, 3 and 6

7E

6 I can determine the absolute maximum and minimum values of a function.



See Example 19, Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 1, 2 and 5

7F

7 I can use differentiation for optimisation problems.



See Example 22, Example 23, Example 24, Example 25, Example 26, Example 27, Example 28, Example 29 and Questions 1, 2, 6, 7, 10, 12 and 13

7F

8 I can determine maximum rates of increase and decrease.



See Example 30 and Question 14

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

1 Determine the second derivative of each of the following.

a $(2x + 5)^8$

b $\sin(2x)$

c $\cos\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$

d e^{-4x}

e $\ln(6x)$

f $\ln(\sin x)$

- 2** For each of the following, determine the stationary points of the graph and state their nature.

a $f(x) = 4x^3 - 3x^4$

b $g(x) = x^3 - 3x - 2$

c $h(x) = x^3 - 9x + 1$

- 3** Sketch the graph of $y = x^3 - 6x^2 + 9x$.

- 4** The derivative of the function $y = f(x)$ is $\frac{dy}{dx} = (x-1)^2(x-2)$. Determine the x -coordinate and state the nature of each stationary point.

- 5** Determine the minimum value of $e^{3x} + e^{-3x}$.

- 6** For each of the following curves, state the coordinates of the point(s) of inflection:

a $y = x^3 - 8x^2$

b $y = \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right), 0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$

c $y = \ln x + \frac{1}{x}$

d $y = \frac{x}{\ln x}$

- 7** Consider the graph of $f(x) = x^2 \ln x$.

- a** Determine the value of x for which there is a local minimum.

- b** Determine the value of x for which there is a point of inflection.

- 8** Consider the graph of $f(x) = x^3 e^x$.

- a** Determine the value of x for which there is a local minimum.

- b** Determine the value of x for which there is a stationary point of inflection.

- 9** Consider the graph of $f(x) = ce^{-kx^2}$, where c and k are constants.

- a** Determine $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$ in terms of c and k .

- b** Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection if $c = 1$ and $k = 2$.

- c** Determine the value of k for which there are points of inflection at $x = \frac{1}{4}$ and $x = -\frac{1}{4}$.

- 10** A particle moves in a straight line such that after t seconds its position, x metres, relative to a point O on the line is given by $x = t\sqrt{9-t^2}$, $0 \leq t < 3$.

- a** When is the position $x = 2\sqrt{5}$?

- b** Determine expressions for the velocity and acceleration of the particle at time t .

- c** When is the velocity zero?

- d** Determine the particle's maximum distance from O .

- 11** A particle moves in a straight line. Its position, x m, at time t seconds is given by

$$x = \frac{1}{9}(1 - (3t + 1)e^{-3t})$$

- a** Determine the velocity of the particle at time t .

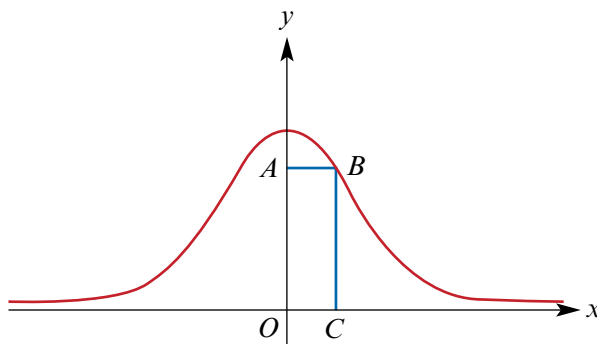
- b** Determine the acceleration of the particle at time t .

- c** Determine the maximum velocity of the particle and the time and location at which this maximum velocity occurs.

- 12** The graph of $f(x) = e^{-x^2}$ is shown.

Let $B(x, f(x))$ be a point on the graph, where $x > 0$.

Draw the rectangle $OABC$ as shown, where A is on the y -axis and C is on the x -axis.



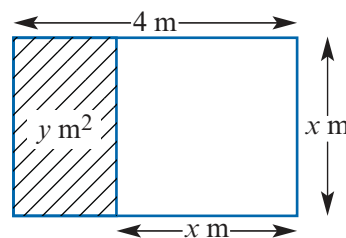
- Determine an expression for the area, W , of the rectangle in terms of x .
- Determine $\frac{dW}{dx}$ and $\frac{d^2W}{dx^2}$.
- Determine the coordinates of the point of inflection on the graph of W against x .
- Determine the maximum value of W and the value of x for which this occurs. Verify that the point is a local maximum by showing that $\frac{d^2W}{dx^2} < 0$.

Technology-active short-response questions

- An object moves in a horizontal line such that its position, x m, at time t seconds is given by $x = 2 + \sqrt{t+1}$. Determine when the acceleration is -0.016 ms^{-2} .
- An object falls from rest in a medium and its velocity, $V \text{ ms}^{-1}$, after t seconds is given by $V = 100(1 - e^{-0.2t})$.
 - Sketch the graph of V against t for $t \geq 0$.
 - Express the acceleration at any instant:
 - in terms of t
 - in terms of V .
 - Determine the value of t for which the velocity of the object is 80 ms^{-1} .
- For the function with rule $f(x) = x^3 + ax^2 + bx$, plot the graph of each of the following using a calculator. (Give axis intercepts, coordinates of stationary points and the nature of stationary points.)

i $a = 1, b = 1$	ii $a = -1, b = -1$
iii $a = 1, b = -1$	iv $a = -1, b = 1$
 - Determine $f'(x)$ giving your answer in terms of x, a and b .
 - Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$ for x , giving your answer in terms of a and b .
 - Show that the graph of $y = f(x)$ has exactly one stationary point if $a^2 - 3b = 0$.
 - If $b = 3$, determine the corresponding value(s) of a which satisfy $a^2 - 3b = 0$. Determine the coordinates of the stationary points and state the nature of each.
 - Using a calculator, plot the graph(s) of $y = f(x)$ for these values of a and b .
 - Plot the graphs of the corresponding derivative functions on the same set of axes.
 - State the relationship between a and b if no stationary points exist for the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 16** For what value of x is $\frac{\ln x}{x}$ a maximum? That is, when is the ratio of the logarithm of a number to the number a maximum?
- 17** For the quartic function f with rule $f(x) = (x - a)^2(x - b)^2$, where $a > 0$ and $b > 0$:
- a** Show that $f'(x) = 2(x - a)(x - b)[2x - (b + a)]$.
 - b i** Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$ for x .
 - ii** Solve the equation $f(x) = 0$ for x .
 - c** Hence determine the coordinates of the stationary points of the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - d** Using a calculator, plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ for several values of a and b .
 - e i** If $a = b$, then $f(x) = (x - a)^4$. Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - ii** If $a = -b$, determine the coordinates of the stationary points.
 - iii** Plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ for several values of a , given that $a = -b$.
- 18** For the quartic function f with rule $f(x) = (x - a)^3(x - b)$, where $a > 0$ and $b > 0$:
- a** Show that $f'(x) = (x - a)^2[4x - (3b + a)]$.
 - b i** Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$ for x .
 - ii** Solve the equation $f(x) = 0$ for x .
 - c** Determine the coordinates of the stationary points of the graph of $y = f(x)$ and state the nature of the stationary points.
 - d** Using a calculator, plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ for several values of a and b .
 - e** If $a = -b$, state the coordinates of the stationary points in terms of a .
 - f i** State the relationship between b and a if there is a local minimum for $x = 0$.
 - ii** Illustrate this for $b = 1$ and $a = -3$ on a calculator.
 - g** Show that, if there is a turning point for $x = \frac{a + b}{2}$, then $b = a$ and $f(x) = (x - a)^4$.
- 19** The diagram shows a rectangle with sides 4 m and x m and a square with side x m. The area of the shaded region is $y \text{ m}^2$.



- 20** A flower bed is to be L-shaped, as shown in the figure, and its perimeter is 48 m.

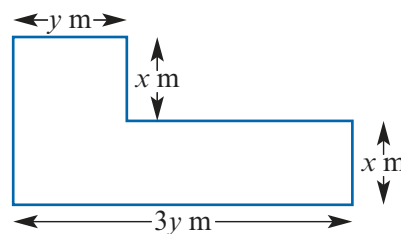
a Write down an expression for the area, $A \text{ m}^2$, in terms of y and x .

b Determine y in terms of x .

c Write down an expression for A in terms of x .

d Determine the values of x and y that give the maximum area.

e Determine the maximum area.



- 21** It costs $(12 + 0.008x)$ dollars per kilometre to operate a truck at $x \text{ km/h}$. In addition it costs \$14.40 per hour to pay the driver.

a What is the total cost per kilometre if the truck is driven at:

i 40 km/h

ii 64 km/h?

b Write an expression for C , the total cost per kilometre, in terms of x .

c Sketch the graph of C against x for $0 < x < 120$.

d At what speed should the truck be driven to minimise the total cost per kilometre?

- 22** A box is to be made from a 10 cm by 16 cm sheet of metal by cutting equal squares out of the corners and bending up the flaps to form the box. Let the lengths of the sides of the squares be $x \text{ cm}$ and let the volume of the box formed be $V \text{ cm}^3$.

a Show that $V = 4(x^3 - 13x^2 + 40x)$.

b State the set of x -values for which the expression for V in terms of x is valid.

c Determine the values of x such that $\frac{dV}{dx} = 0$.

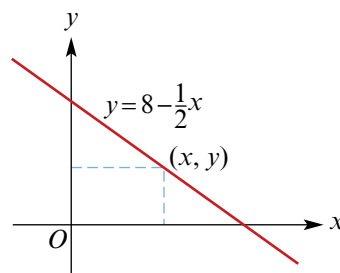
d Determine the dimensions of the box if the volume is to be a maximum.

e Determine the maximum volume of the box.

f Sketch the graph of V against x for the domain established in **b**.

- 23** A rectangle has one vertex at the origin, another on the positive x -axis, another on the positive y -axis and a fourth on the line $y = 8 - \frac{x}{2}$.

What is the greatest area the rectangle can have?



- 24** At a factory the time, T seconds, spent in producing a certain size metal component is related to its weight, $w \text{ kg}$, by $T = k + 2w^2$, where k is a constant.

a If a 5 kg component takes 75 seconds to produce, determine k .

b Sketch the graph of T against w .

c Write down an expression for the average time A (in seconds per kilogram).

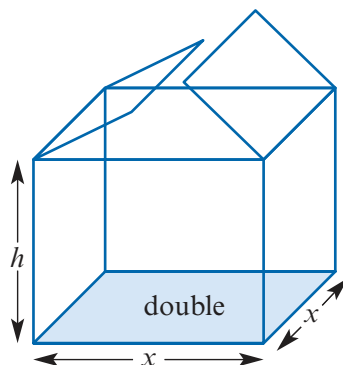
d i Determine the weight that yields the minimum average machining time per kilogram.

ii State the minimum average machining time.

- 25** An open tank is to be constructed with a square base and vertical sides to contain 500 m^3 of water. What must be the area of sheet metal used in its construction if this area is to be a minimum?

- 26** A manufacturer produces cardboard boxes that have a square base. The top of each box consists of a double flap that opens as shown. The bottom of the box has a double layer of cardboard for strength. Each box must have a volume of 12 cubic metres.

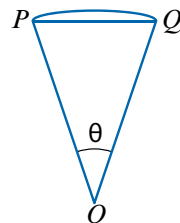
- Show that the area of cardboard required is given by $C = 3x^2 + 4xh$.
- Express C as a function of x only.
- Sketch the graph of C against x for $x > 0$.
- What dimensions of the box will minimise the amount of cardboard used?
 - What is the minimum area of cardboard used?



- 27** A piece of wire of length 1 m is bent into the shape of a sector of a circle of radius a cm and sector angle θ where $\theta < 2\pi$. Let the area of the sector be $A \text{ cm}^2$.

- Determine A in terms of a and θ .
- Determine A in terms of θ .
- Determine the value of θ for which A is a maximum.
- Determine the maximum area of the sector.

- 28** A piece of wire of fixed length, L cm, is bent to form the boundary $OPQO$ of a sector of a circle. The circle has centre O and radius r cm. The angle of the sector is θ radians.



- Show that the area, $A \text{ cm}^2$, of the sector is given by

$$A = \frac{1}{2}rL - r^2$$

- Determine a relationship between r and L for which $\frac{dA}{dr} = 0$.
 - Determine the corresponding value of θ .
 - Determine the nature of the stationary point found in part **i**.
- Show that, for the value of θ found in part **b ii**, the area of the triangle OPQ is approximately 45.5% of the area of sector OPQ .

- 29** Assume that the number of bacteria present in a culture at time t is given by $N(t)$ where $N(t) = 24te^{-0.2t}$. At what time will the population be at a maximum? Determine the maximum population.

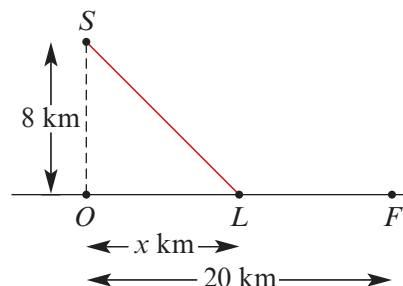
- 30** At noon the captain of a ship sees two fishing boats approaching. One of them is 10 km due east and travelling west at 8 km/h. The other is 6 km due north and travelling south at 6 km/h. At what time will the fishing boats be closest together and how far apart will they be?

- 31** The point S is 8 km offshore from the point O , which is located on the straight shore of a lake, as shown in the diagram. The point F is on the shore, 20 km from O . Contestants race from the start, S , to the finish, F , by rowing in a straight line to some point, L , on the shore and then running along the shore to F . A certain contestant rows at 5 km per hour and runs at 15 km per hour.

- a** Show that, if the distance OL is x km, the time taken by this contestant to complete the course is (in hours):

$$T(x) = \frac{\sqrt{64 + x^2}}{5} + \frac{20 - x}{15}$$

- b** Show that the time taken by this contestant to complete the course has its minimum value when $x = 2\sqrt{2}$. Determine this time.



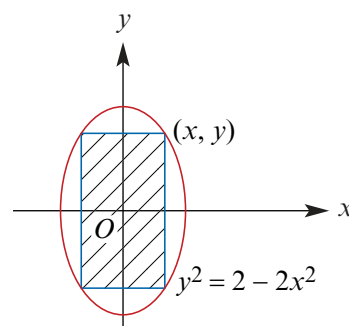
- 32** A rectangular beam is to be cut from a non-circular tree trunk whose cross-sectional outline can be represented by the equation $y^2 = 2 - 2x^2$.

- a** Show that the area of the cross-section of the beam is given by

$$A = 4x\sqrt{2 - 2x^2}$$

where x is the half-width of the beam.

- b** State the possible values for x .
c Determine the value of x for which the cross-sectional area of the beam is a maximum and determine the corresponding value of y .
d Determine the maximum cross-sectional area of the beam.



- 33** An isosceles trapezium is inscribed in the parabola $y = 4 - x^2$ as illustrated.

- a** Show that the area of the trapezium is given by $\frac{1}{2}(4 - x^2)(2x + 4)$.

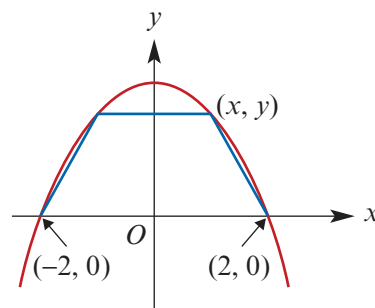
- b** Show that the trapezium has its greatest area when $x = \frac{2}{3}$.

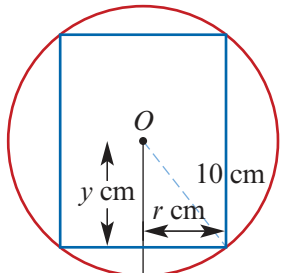
- c** Repeat with the parabola $y = a^2 - x^2$:

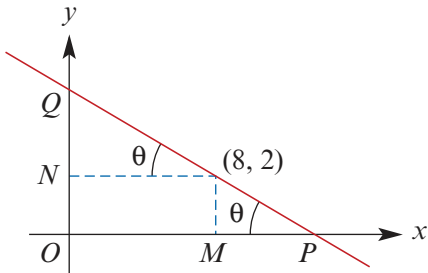
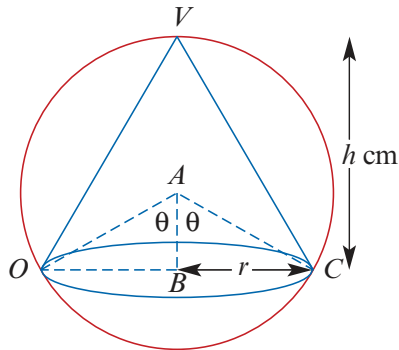
i Show that the area, A , of the trapezium is given by $(a^2 - x^2)(a + x)$.

ii Use the product rule to determine $\frac{dA}{dx}$.

iii Show that a maximum occurs when $x = \frac{a}{3}$.



- 34** Consider the function with rule $f(x) = 6x^4 - x^3 + ax^2 - 6x + 8$.
- i** If $x + 1$ is a factor of $f(x)$, determine the value of a .
 - ii** Using a calculator, plot the graph of $y = f(x)$ for this value of a .
 - b** Let $g(x) = 6x^4 - x^3 + 21x^2 - 6x + 8$.
 - i** Plot the graph of $y = g(x)$.
 - ii** Determine the minimum value of $g(x)$ and the value of x for which this occurs.
 - iii** Determine $g'(x)$.
 - iv** Using a calculator, solve the equation $g'(x) = 0$ for x .
 - v** Determine $g'(0)$ and $g'(10)$.
 - vi** Determine $g''(x)$.
 - vii** Show that the graph of $y = g'(x)$ has no stationary points and thus deduce that $g'(x) = 0$ has only one solution.
- 35** A psychologist hypothesised that the ability of a mouse to memorise during the first 6 months of its life can be modelled by $f(x) = x \ln x + 1$ for $x \in (0, 6]$, where $f(x)$ is the ability to memorise at age x months.
- a** Determine $f'(x)$.
 - b** Determine the value of x for which $f'(x) = 0$ and hence determine when the mouse's ability to memorise is a minimum.
 - c** Sketch the graph of f .
 - d** When is the mouse's ability to memorise a maximum in this period?
- 36** A cylinder is to be cut from a sphere. The cross-section through the centre of the sphere is as shown. The radius of the sphere is 10 cm. Let r cm be the radius of the cylinder.
- 
- a** **i** Determine y in terms of r and hence the height, h cm, of the cylinder.
 - ii** The volume of a cylinder is given by $V = \pi r^2 h$. Determine V in terms of r .
 - b** **i** Plot the graph of V against r using a calculator.
 - ii** Determine the maximum volume of the cylinder and the corresponding values of r and h . (Use a calculator.)
 - iii** Determine the two possible values of r if the volume is 2000 cm^3 .
 - c** **i** Determine $\frac{dV}{dr}$.
 - ii** Hence determine the exact value of the maximum volume and the value of r for which this occurs.
 - d** **i** Plot the graph of the derivative function $\frac{dV}{dr}$ against r , using a calculator.
 - ii** From the calculator, determine the values of r for which $\frac{dV}{dr}$ is positive.
 - iii** From the calculator, determine the values of r for which $\frac{dV}{dr}$ is increasing.

- 37** Consider the curve with equation $y = (x^2 - 2x)e^x$.
- Determine the x -axis intercepts.
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve at $x = 1$.
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve at $x = 2$.
 - Determine the x -values for which there is a turning point.
 - Determine the x -values for which there is a point of inflection.
 - Sketch the curve.
- 38** Consider the family of curves with equations $y = (2x^2 - 5x)e^{ax}$, where $a \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$.
- Determine the x -axis intercepts.
 - Determine the x -values for which there is a turning point, in terms of a .
 - Determine the x -values for which there is a point of inflection, in terms of a .
 - If a curve from this family passes through the point $(3, 10)$, determine the value of a .
- 39** A straight line is drawn through the point $(8, 2)$ to intersect the positive y -axis at Q and the positive x -axis at P . (In this question, we determine the minimum value of $OP + OQ$.)
- 
- Show that $\frac{d}{d\theta} \left(\frac{1}{\tan \theta} \right) = -\frac{1}{\sin^2 \theta}$.
 - Determine MP in terms of θ .
 - Determine NQ in terms of θ .
 - Hence determine $OP + OQ$ in terms of θ . Denote $OP + OQ$ by x .
 - Determine $\frac{dx}{d\theta}$.
 - Determine the minimum value of x and the value of θ for which this occurs.
- 40** A cone is inscribed inside a sphere as illustrated.
- 
- The radius of the sphere is a cm, and both the angles $\angle OAB$ and $\angle CAB$ have magnitude θ . The height of the cone is h cm and the radius of the cone is r cm.
- Determine h in terms of a and θ .
 - Determine r in terms of a and θ .
- The volume, V cm³, of the cone is given by $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$.
- Use the results from parts **a** and **b** to show that
- $$V = \frac{1}{3}\pi a^3 \sin^2 \theta \cdot (1 + \cos \theta)$$
- Determine $\frac{dV}{d\theta}$ (where a is a constant) and hence determine the value of θ for which the volume is a maximum.
 - Determine the maximum volume of the cone in terms of a .

- 41** Some bacteria are introduced into a supply of fresh milk. After t hours there are y grams of bacteria present, where

$$y = \frac{Ae^{bt}}{1 + Ae^{bt}} \quad (1)$$

and A and b are positive constants.

- a** Show that $0 < y < 1$ for all values of t .
- b** Determine $\frac{dy}{dt}$ in terms of t .
- c** From equation (1), show that $Ae^{bt} = \frac{y}{1-y}$.
- d i** Show that $\frac{dy}{dt} = by(1-y)$.
ii Hence, or otherwise, show that the maximum value of $\frac{dy}{dt}$ occurs when $y = 0.5$.
- e** If $A = 0.01$ and $b = 0.7$, determine when, to the nearest hour, the bacteria will be increasing at the fastest rate.

- 42** Let $f(x) = \frac{e^x}{x}$ for $x > 0$.

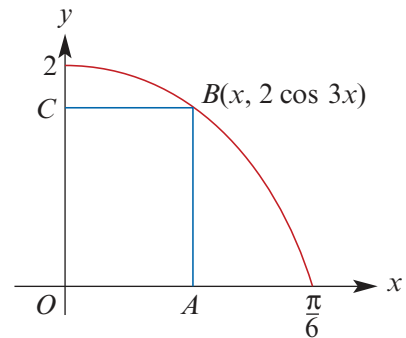
- a** Determine $f'(x)$.
- b** Determine the value of x such that $f'(x) = 0$.
- c** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point and state its nature.
- d i** Determine $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$. **ii** Determine $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$ and comment.
- e** Sketch the graph of f .
- f** Over a period of years, the number of birds (n) in an island colony decreased and increased with time (t years) according to the approximate formula

$$n = \frac{ae^{kt}}{t}$$

where t is measured from 1900 and a and k are constant. If during this period the population was the same in 1965 as it was in 1930, when was it least?

- 43** A section of the graph of $y = 2 \cos(3x)$ is shown in the diagram.

- a** Show that the area, A , of the rectangle $OABC$ in terms of x is $2x \cos(3x)$.
- b i** Determine $\frac{dA}{dx}$.
ii Determine $\frac{dA}{dx}$ when $x = 0$ and $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$.
- c i** On a calculator, plot the graph of $A = 2x \cos(3x)$ for $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{6}\right]$.
ii Determine the two values of x for which the area of the rectangle is 0.2 square units.
iii Determine the maximum area of the rectangle and the value of x for which this occurs.



Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

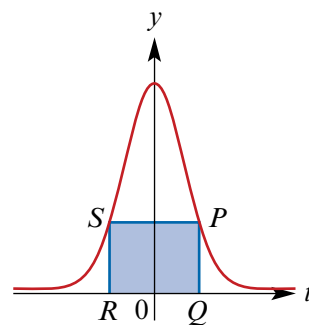
- For a polynomial function with rule $f(x)$, the derivative satisfies $f'(a) = f'(b) = 0$, $f'(x) > 0$ for $a < x < b$, $f'(x) < 0$ for $x < a$ and $f'(x) > 0$ for $x > b$. The nature of the stationary points of the graph of $y = f(x)$ is
 - local minimum at $(a, f(a))$ and local maximum at $(b, f(b))$
 - stationary point of inflection at $(a, f(a))$ and local minimum at $(b, f(b))$
 - stationary point of inflection at $(a, f(a))$ and local maximum at $(b, f(b))$
 - local minimum at $(a, f(a))$ and stationary point of inflection at $(b, f(b))$
- The second derivative of e^{-x^3} is
 - e^{-6x}
 - $-3x^2e^{-x^3}$
 - $-6x^4e^{-x^3}$
 - $3x(3x^3 - 2)e^{-x^3}$
- For $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 1$, the values of x for which the graph of $y = f(x)$ has stationary points are
 - $\frac{2}{3}$ only
 - 0 and $\frac{2}{3}$
 - 0 and $-\frac{2}{3}$
 - $-\frac{1}{3}$ and 1
- For $f(x) = e^x - ex$, the coordinates of the turning point of the graph of $y = f(x)$ are
 - $(1, \frac{1}{e})$
 - $(1, e)$
 - $(0, 1)$
 - $(1, 0)$
- For $f(x) = e^{ax} - \frac{ax}{e}$, the coordinates of the turning point of the graph of $y = f(x)$ are
 - $(-\frac{1}{a}, 0)$
 - $(\frac{1}{a}, \frac{1}{e})$
 - $(-\frac{1}{a}, \frac{2}{e})$
 - $(-1, \frac{1}{e})$
- The graph of $y = 5x^4 - x^5$ has a point of inflection at
 - $(0, 0)$ only
 - $(3, 162)$ only
 - $(4, 256)$ only
 - $(0, 0)$ and $(3, 162)$
- The position of a particle moving along the x -axis is given by $x(t) = \sin(2t) - \cos(3t)$ at time $t \geq 0$. When $t = \pi$, the acceleration of the particle is
 - 19
 - 0
 - 19
 - 9
- The volume, $V \text{ cm}^3$, of a solid is given by the formula $V = -10x(2x^2 - 6)$, where $x \text{ cm}$ is a particular measurement. The value of x for which the volume is a maximum is
 - 0
 - 1
 - $\sqrt{2}$
 - $\sqrt{3}$
- If $f(x) = ax^4 + bx^2$, where $a > 0$ and $b > 0$, then which of the following must be true?
 - There are no stationary points.
 - There are two stationary points.
 - The graph is concave up for all x .
 - The graph is concave down for all x .

- 10** The coordinates of the points of inflection of $y = \sin x$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$ are
A $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right), \left(\frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ and $\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$ **B** $(\pi, 0)$
C $(1, 0)$ **D** $(0, 0), (\pi, 0)$ and $(2\pi, 0)$
- 11** Let $g(x) = e^{f(x)}$, where the function f is twice differentiable. Then $g''(x)$ is equal to
A $f'(x)e^{f(x)}$ **B** $f''(x)e^{f(x)} + (f'(x))^2 e^{f(x)}$
C $e^{f''(x)}$ **D** $f''(x)e^{f(x)}$
- 12** Let $g(x) = e^{-x}f(x)$, where the function f is twice differentiable. There is a point of inflection on the graph of $y = g(x)$ at $(a, g(a))$. An expression for $f''(a)$ in terms of $f'(a)$ and $f(a)$ is
A $f''(a) = 2f(a)f'(a)$ **B** $f''(a) = 2f(a) + f'(a)$
C $f''(a) = \frac{f'(a)}{f(a)}$ **D** $f''(a) = 2f'(a) - f(a)$
- 13** The graph of a polynomial function with rule $y = f(x)$ has a local maximum at the point with coordinates $(a, f(a))$. The graph also has a local minimum at the origin, but no other stationary points. The graph of the function with rule $y = -2f\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) + k$, where k is a positive real number, has
A a local minimum at the point with coordinates $(2a, -2f(a) + k)$
B a local maximum at the point with coordinates $(2a, -2f(a) + k)$
C a local minimum at the point with coordinates $\left(\frac{a}{2}, 2f(a) + k\right)$
D a local maximum at the point with coordinates $\left(\frac{a}{2}, -2f(a) + k\right)$
- 14** A particle moves in a straight line such that its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds is given by $v = \frac{\ln t}{t}$, for $t \geq 1$. When does the particle have its maximum velocity?
A $t = 1$ **B** $t = e^{\frac{1}{2}}$ **C** $t = e$ **D** $t = e^{\frac{3}{2}}$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 15** The absolute minimum value of $y = x^3 e^x$, correct to two decimal places, is
A -3.00 **B** -1.34 **C** -4.10 **D** 1.50
- 16** Let $f(x) = x^3 e^x$ and $g(x) = f'(x)$. A local maximum of the graph of $y = g(x)$ occurs at the point with x -coordinate (correct to two decimal places)
A $x = -4.73$ **B** $x = -1.27$ **C** $x = 0.00$ **D** $x = 0.784$
- 17** Let $f(x) = -(x-3)^3 e^{x-3}$. How many points of inflection does the graph of $y = f(x)$ have?
A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

- 18** A box in the shape of a rectangular prism with a square base with edges of length x cm and a height of h cm has a volume of 20 cm^3 . The minimum surface area of the outside of such a box correct to two decimal places is
A 15.61 cm^2 **B** 17.82 cm^2 **C** 44.21 cm^2 **D** 32.11 cm^2
- 19** The graph of the function $y = x^3 + 12x^2 + 15x + 3$ has a local maximum at.
A $x = 1.138$ **B** $x = -0.683$ **C** $x = -0.248$ **D** $x = -7.317$
- 20** The concentration of a certain drug in the blood at time t hours after taking the dose is x units where $x = 0.35te^{-1.2t}$. The maximum concentration of the blood correct to three decimal places is
A 0.833 units **B** 0.111 units **C** 0.107 units **D** 0.201 units
- 21** The graph of $y = \sin x + x$ has four points of inflection in the interval $0 \leq x \leq 10$. These occur for the following values of x :
A $x = 0, x = \pi, x = 2\pi, x = 3\pi$ **B** $x = 0, x = \frac{\pi}{2}, x = 2\pi, x = \frac{3\pi}{2}$
C $x = \frac{\pi}{3}, x = \frac{\pi}{2}, x = 2\pi, x = 3\pi$ **D** $x = \frac{\pi}{6}, x = \frac{\pi}{3}, x = 2\pi, x = 3\pi$
- 22** Let $f(x) = (4 - x) \ln x$ where $x > 0$. The maximum value of $f(x)$ correct to two decimal places is
A 1.35 **B** 1.38 **C** 1.42 **D** 2.22
- 23** A rectangle has two vertices on the x -axis and two vertices on the graph of $y = 8e^{-0.45x^2}$. The maximum area, correct to two decimal places, of such a rectangle is
A 1.31
B 1.38
C 10.23
D 10.55



- 24** The inflection points of $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 2)$ occur when x is equal to
A -1 and 1 only **B** $-\sqrt{2}$ and $\sqrt{2}$ only
C 0 only **D** $-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2}$ and 0
- 25** The absolute maximum and absolute minimum values of $f(x) = \sin^2 x + \cos x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \pi$ are
A absolute minimum value -2 , absolute maximum value 2
B absolute minimum value -1 , absolute maximum value 1.25
C absolute minimum value 0 , absolute maximum value 2
D absolute minimum value -2 , absolute maximum value 1

8

Introduction to integration

Chapter contents

- ▶ **8A** Anti-differentiation of polynomial functions
- ▶ **8B** Anti-differentiation of power functions
- ▶ **8C** The anti-derivative of $(ax + b)^n$
- ▶ **8D** The anti-derivative of e^{kx}
- ▶ **8E** Anti-differentiation of trigonometric functions
- ▶ **8F** Further anti-differentiation techniques
- ▶ **8G** Applications of integration
- ▶ **8H** Applications of integration to motion in a straight line

In the previous three chapters, we have been given the rule for a function and found a rule for its derivative function. In this chapter, we try to go in the opposite direction:

- If we are given the rule for the derivative of a function, can we determine a rule for the original function? What extra information do we need?
- For example, if we are given the rule for the velocity of an object moving in a straight line, can we determine a rule for its position? What extra information do we need?

The process of ‘undoing the derivative’ is called anti-differentiation.

In the first case, the required extra information is a point on the graph of the function, and in the second case it is the position of the object at a particular time.

In the next chapter, we will see a more surprising application of anti-differentiation to finding the areas of regions bounded by curves.

This chapter covers Unit 3 Topic 4: Introduction to integration.

8A Anti-differentiation of polynomial functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to anti-differentiate polynomial functions.

The derivative of x^2 with respect to x is $2x$. Conversely, given that an unknown expression has derivative $2x$, it is clear that the unknown expression could be x^2 . The process of finding a function from its derivative is called **anti-differentiation**.

Now consider the functions $f(x) = x^2 + 1$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 7$.

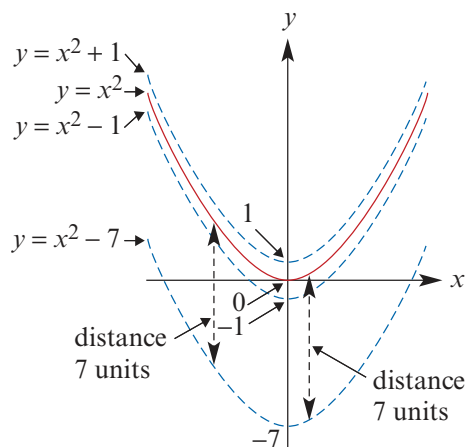
We have $f'(x) = 2x$ and $g'(x) = 2x$. So the two different functions have the same derivative function.

Both $x^2 + 1$ and $x^2 - 7$ are said to be **anti-derivatives** of $2x$.

If two functions have the same derivative function, then they differ by a constant. So the graphs of the two functions can be obtained from each other by translation parallel to the y -axis.

The diagram shows several anti-derivatives of $2x$.

Each of the graphs is a translation of $y = x^2$ parallel to the y -axis.



Notation

The general anti-derivative of $2x$ is $x^2 + c$, where c is an arbitrary real number. We use the notation of Leibniz to state this with symbols:

$$\int 2x \, dx = x^2 + c$$

This is read as ‘the **general anti-derivative** of $2x$ with respect to x is equal to $x^2 + c$ ’ or as ‘the **indefinite integral** of $2x$ with respect to x is $x^2 + c$ ’.

To be more precise, the indefinite integral is the set of all anti-derivatives and to emphasise this we could write:

$$\begin{aligned} \int 2x \, dx &= \{ f(x) : f'(x) = 2x \} \\ &= \{ x^2 + c : c \in \mathbb{R} \} \end{aligned}$$

This set notation is not commonly used, but it should be clearly understood that there is not a unique anti-derivative for a given function. We will not use this set notation, but it is advisable to keep it in mind when considering further results.

In general:

If $F'(x) = f(x)$, then $\int f(x) dx = F(x) + c$, where c is an arbitrary real number.

Rules for anti-differentiation

We know that:

$$f(x) = x^3 \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = 3x^2$$

$$f(x) = x^8 \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = 8x^7$$

$$f(x) = x \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = 1$$

$$f(x) = x^n \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$$

Reversing this process we have:

$$\int 3x^2 dx = x^3 + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

$$\int 8x^7 dx = x^8 + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

$$\int 1 dx = x + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

$$\int nx^{n-1} dx = x^n + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

We also have:

$$\int x^2 dx = \frac{1}{3}x^3 + c$$

$$\int x^7 dx = \frac{1}{8}x^8 + c$$

$$\int 1 dx = x + c$$

$$\int x^{n-1} dx = \frac{1}{n}x^n + c$$

From this we see that:

$$\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + c \quad \text{where } n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$$

We also record the following results, which follow immediately from the corresponding results for differentiation:

Sum $\int f(x) + g(x) dx = \int f(x) dx + \int g(x) dx$

Difference $\int f(x) - g(x) dx = \int f(x) dx - \int g(x) dx$

Multiple $\int kf(x) dx = k \int f(x) dx$, where k is a real number

**Example 1**

Determine the general anti-derivative (indefinite integral) of each of the following.

a $3x^5$

b $3x^2 + 4x^3 + 3$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \quad \int 3x^5 dx &= 3 \int x^5 dx \\ &= 3 \times \frac{x^6}{6} + c \\ &= \frac{x^6}{2} + c\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad \int 3x^2 + 4x^3 + 3 dx &= 3 \int x^2 dx + 4 \int x^3 dx + 3 \int 1 dx \\ &= \frac{3x^3}{3} + \frac{4x^4}{4} + \frac{3x}{1} + c \\ &= x^3 + x^4 + 3x + c\end{aligned}$$

Given extra information, we can determine a unique anti-derivative.

**Example 2**

It is known that $f'(x) = x^3 + 4x^2$ and $f(0) = 0$. Determine $f(x)$.

Solution

$$\int x^3 + 4x^2 dx = \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{4x^3}{3} + c$$

$$\text{Thus } f(x) = \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{4x^3}{3} + c \quad \text{for some real number } c.$$

Since $f(0) = 0$, we have $c = 0$.

$$\therefore f(x) = \frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{4x^3}{3}$$

**Example 3**

If the gradient of the tangent at a point (x, y) on a curve is given by $5x$ and the curve passes through the point $(0, 6)$, determine the equation of the curve.

Solution

Let the curve have equation $y = f(x)$. Then $f'(x) = 5x$.

$$\int 5x dx = \frac{5x^2}{2} + c$$

$$\therefore f(x) = \frac{5x^2}{2} + c$$

This describes the family of curves for which $f'(x) = 5x$. Here we are given the additional information that the curve passes through the point $(0, 6)$, i.e. $f(0) = 6$.

$$\text{Hence } c = 6 \text{ and so } f(x) = \frac{5x^2}{2} + 6.$$

**Example 4**

Determine y in terms of x if:

a $\frac{dy}{dx} = x^2 + 2x$, and $y = 1$ when $x = 1$

b $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3 - x$, and $y = 2$ when $x = 4$

Solution

a $\int x^2 + 2x \, dx = \frac{x^3}{3} + x^2 + c$

$$\therefore y = \frac{x^3}{3} + x^2 + c$$

As $y = 1$ when $x = 1$,

$$1 = \frac{1}{3} + 1 + c$$

$$c = -\frac{1}{3}$$

$$\text{Hence } y = \frac{x^3}{3} + x^2 - \frac{1}{3}$$

b $\int 3 - x \, dx = 3x - \frac{x^2}{2} + c$

$$\therefore y = 3x - \frac{x^2}{2} + c$$

As $y = 2$ when $x = 4$,

$$2 = 3 \times 4 - \frac{4^2}{2} + c$$

$$c = -2$$

$$\text{Hence } y = 3x - \frac{x^2}{2} - 2$$

Summary 8A

- Anti-derivative of x^n , where $n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$:

$$\int x^n \, dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$$

- Properties of anti-differentiation (indefinite integrals):

- $\int f(x) + g(x) \, dx = \int f(x) \, dx + \int g(x) \, dx$
- $\int f(x) - g(x) \, dx = \int f(x) \, dx - \int g(x) \, dx$
- $\int kf(x) \, dx = k \int f(x) \, dx$, where k is a real number

Exercise 8A**Example 1**

- 1** Determine:

a $\int \frac{1}{2}x^3 \, dx$

b $\int 3x^2 - 2 \, dx$

c $\int 5x^3 - 2x \, dx$

d $\int \frac{4}{5}x^3 - 2x^2 \, dx$

e $\int (x-1)^2 \, dx$

f $\int x(x + \frac{1}{x}) \, dx, x \neq 0$

g $\int 2z^2(z-1) \, dz$

h $\int (2t-3)^2 \, dt$

i $\int (t-1)^3 \, dt$

Example 2

- 2** It is known that $f'(x) = 4x^3 + 6x^2 + 2$ and $f(0) = 0$. Find $f(x)$.

Example 3

- 3** If the gradient at any point (x, y) on a curve is given by $6x^2$ and the curve passes through the point $(0, 12)$, find the equation of the curve.

Example 4

- 4 Determine y in terms of x in each of the following.

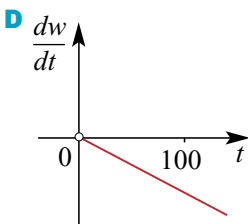
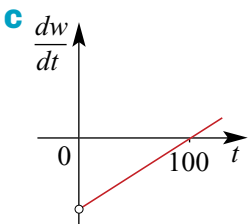
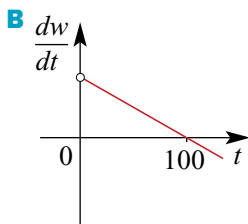
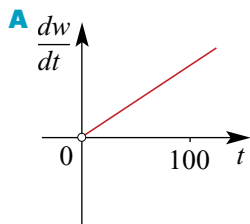
a $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x - 1$, and $y = 0$ when $x = 1$ **b** $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3 - x$, and $y = 1$ when $x = 0$
c $\frac{dy}{dx} = x^2 + 2x$, and $y = 2$ when $x = 0$ **d** $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3 - x^2$, and $y = 2$ when $x = 3$
e $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x^4 + x$, and $y = 0$ when $x = 0$

- 5 Assume that $\frac{dV}{dt} = t^2 - t$ for $t > 1$, and that $V = 9$ when $t = 3$.

- a** Determine V in terms of t .
b Calculate the value of V when $t = 10$.

- 6 The gradient of the tangent at any point $(x, f(x))$ on the curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is given by $3x^2 - 1$. Find $f(x)$ if the curve passes through the point $(1, 2)$, i.e. $f(1) = 2$.

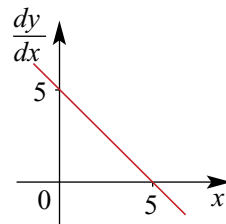
- 7 **a** Which one of the following graphs represents $\frac{dw}{dt} = 2000 - 20t$, $t > 0$?



- b** Now assume w and $\frac{dw}{dt}$ are defined when $t = 0$. Determine w in terms of t if when $t = 0$, $w = 100\,000$.

- 8 The graph shows $\frac{dy}{dx}$ against x for a certain curve with equation $y = f(x)$.

Find $f(x)$, given that the point $(0, 4)$ lies on the curve.



- 9 Determine the equation of the curve $y = f(x)$ which passes through the point $(2, -6)$ and for which $f'(x) = x^2(x - 3)$.
- 10 The curve $y = f(x)$ for which $f'(x) = 4x + k$, where k is a constant, has a turning point at $(-2, -1)$.
- a** Determine the value of k .
b Determine the coordinates of the point at which the curve meets the y -axis.
- 11 Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = ax^2 + 1$ and that when $x = 1$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3$ and $y = 3$, find the value of y when $x = 2$.

- 12** The curve for which $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x + k$, where k is a constant, is such that the tangent at $(3, 6)$ passes through the origin. Determine the gradient of this tangent and hence determine:
- a** the value of k **b** the equation of the curve.
- 13** The curve $y = f(x)$ for which $f'(x) = 16x + k$, where k is a constant, has a turning point at $(2, 1)$. Determine:
- a** the value of k **b** the value of $f(x)$ when $x = 7$.
- 14** Suppose that a point moves along some unknown curve $y = f(x)$ in such a way that, at each point (x, y) on the curve, the tangent line has slope x^2 . Determine an equation for the curve, given that it passes through $(2, 1)$.

CF

8B Anti-differentiation of power functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to anti-differentiate power functions.

A power function has a rule of the form $f(x) = x^r$, where r is a rational number. In this section, we consider linear combinations of power functions:

e.g. $f(x) = 5x + 7x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ for $x > 0$
 $f(x) = 2x^{-2} - 3x^{-3}$ for $x \neq 0$

Here we restrict our attention to power functions $f(x) = x^r$ where $r \neq -1$. We will consider the case $r = -1$ in the next section.

The anti-derivative of x^r where $r \neq -1$

We know that:

$$f(x) = x^{\frac{3}{2}} \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

$$f(x) = x^{-4} \quad \text{implies} \quad f'(x) = -4x^{-5}$$

Reversing this process gives:

$$\int \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

$$\int -4x^{-5} dx = x^{-4} + c \quad \text{where } c \text{ is an arbitrary constant}$$

We can also show that:

$$\int x^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c \quad \int x^{-5} dx = -\frac{1}{4}x^{-4} + c$$

Generalising, it is seen that:

$$\int x^r dx = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + c \quad \text{where } r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$$

Note: This result can only be applied for suitable values of x for a given value of r .

For example, if $r = \frac{1}{2}$, then $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$ is a suitable restriction. If $r = -2$, we can take $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$, and if $r = 3$, we can take $x \in \mathbb{R}$.

**Example 5**

Determine y in terms of x if:

a $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x^2}$

b $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3\sqrt{x}$

c $\frac{dy}{dx} = x^{\frac{3}{4}} + x^{-\frac{3}{4}}$

Solution

a $\int \frac{1}{x^2} dx = \int x^{-2} dx$

$$= \frac{x^{-1}}{-1} + c$$

$$\therefore y = \frac{-1}{x} + c$$

b $\int 3\sqrt{x} dx = 3 \int x^{\frac{1}{2}} dx$

$$= 3 \times \frac{x^{\frac{3}{2}}}{\frac{3}{2}} + c$$

$$\therefore y = 2x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$$

c $y = \frac{4}{7}x^{\frac{7}{4}} + 4x^{\frac{1}{4}} + c$

**Example 6**

It is known that $f'(x) = x - 3x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ and $f(1) = 3$. Determine $f(x)$.

Solution

$$\int x - 3x^{\frac{1}{2}} dx = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 3 \times \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$$

$$\therefore f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$$

As $f(1) = 3$, we have

$$3 = \frac{1}{2} - 2 + c$$

$$\therefore c = \frac{9}{2}$$

Hence $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}x^2 - 2x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{9}{2}$

Summary 8B

Anti-derivative of x^r , where $r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$:

$$\int x^r dx = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + c$$

**Exercise 8B****Example 5**

1 Determine y in terms of x if:

a $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x^3}$

b $\frac{dy}{dx} = 4\sqrt[3]{x}$

c $\frac{dy}{dx} = x^{\frac{1}{4}} + x^{-\frac{3}{5}}$

2 Determine:

a $\int 3x^{-2} dx$

b $\int 2x^{-4} + 6x dx$

c $\int 2x^{-2} + 6x^{-3} dx$

d $\int 3x^{\frac{1}{3}} - 5x^{\frac{5}{4}} dx$

e $\int 3x^{\frac{3}{4}} - 7x^{\frac{1}{2}} dx$

f $\int 4x^{\frac{3}{5}} + 12x^{\frac{5}{3}} dx$

Example 6

3 Determine $f(x)$ for each of the following.

a $f'(x) = x^{\frac{5}{2}}$ and $f(1) = 1$

b $f'(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ and $f(0) = 5$

c $f'(x) = x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x$ and $f(4) = 6$

4 Determine:

a $\int \sqrt{x}(2+x) dx$

b $\int \frac{3z^4 + 2z}{z^3} dz$

c $\int \frac{5x^3 + 2x^2}{x} dx$

d $\int \sqrt{x}(2x + x^2) dx$

e $\int x^2(2 + 3x^2) dx$

f $\int \sqrt[3]{x}(x + x^4) dx$

5 A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(2, 0)$ and $f'(x) = 3x^2 - \frac{1}{x^2}$. Determine $f(x)$.

6 Determine s in terms of t if $\frac{ds}{dt} = 3t - \frac{8}{t^2}$ and $s = 1\frac{1}{2}$ when $t = 1$.

7 A curve $y = f(x)$ for which $f'(x) = x - \frac{2}{\sqrt{x}} + k$, where k is a constant, has a stationary point at $(1, 4)$. Determine:

a the value of k

b the value of $f(x)$ when $x = 4$.

8C The anti-derivative of $(ax + b)^r$

Learning intentions

► To be able to determine anti-derivatives of expressions of the form $(ax + b)^r$.

Case 1: $r \neq -1$

For $f(x) = (ax + b)^{r+1}$, where $r \neq -1$, we can use the chain rule to determine

$$f'(x) = a(r+1)(ax + b)^r$$

Thus it follows that:

$$\int (ax + b)^r dx = \frac{1}{a(r+1)} (ax + b)^{r+1} + c \quad \text{where } r \neq -1$$

This result does not hold for $r = -1$.



Example 7

Find the general anti-derivative of:

a $(3x + 1)^5$

b $(2x - 1)^{-2}$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a } \int (3x + 1)^5 dx &= \frac{1}{3 \times 6} (3x + 1)^6 + c \\ &= \frac{1}{18} (3x + 1)^6 + c \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b } \int (2x - 1)^{-2} dx &= \frac{1}{2 \times (-1)} (2x - 1)^{-1} + c \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} (2x - 1)^{-1} + c \end{aligned}$$

Case 2: $r = -1$

But what happens when $r = -1$? In other words, what is $\int \frac{1}{ax+b} dx$?

Remember that $\frac{d}{dx}(\ln x) = \frac{1}{x}$. Thus $\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \ln x + c$ provided that $x > 0$.

More generally:

$$\int \frac{1}{ax+b} dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln(ax+b) + c \quad \text{for } ax+b > 0$$

**Example 8**

a Determine the general anti-derivative of $\frac{2}{3x-2}$ for $x > \frac{2}{3}$.

b Determine the general anti-derivative of $\frac{2}{2-3x}$ for $x < \frac{2}{3}$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \int \frac{2}{3x-2} dx &= \frac{1}{3} \times 2 \ln(3x-2) + c \\ &= \frac{2}{3} \ln(3x-2) + c \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \int \frac{2}{2-3x} dx &= -\frac{1}{3} \times 2 \ln(2-3x) + c \\ &= -\frac{2}{3} \ln(2-3x) + c \end{aligned}$$

**Example 9**

a Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3}{x}$ and $y = 10$ when $x = 1$, determine y in terms of x for $x > 0$.

b Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{1-x}$ and $y = 5$ when $x = 1 - e$, determine y in terms of x for $x < 1$.

Solution

$$\mathbf{a} \quad y = \int \frac{3}{x} dx = 3 \ln x + c$$

When $x = 1$, $y = 10$ and so

$$10 = 3 \ln 1 + c$$

$$10 = 0 + c$$

$$\therefore c = 10$$

$$\text{Hence } y = 3 \ln x + 10.$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad y = \int \frac{2}{1-x} dx = -2 \ln(1-x) + c$$

When $x = 1 - e$, $y = 5$ and so

$$5 = -2 \ln e + c$$

$$5 = -2 + c$$

$$\therefore c = 7$$

$$\text{Hence } y = -2 \ln(1-x) + 7.$$

Summary 8C

$$\int (ax+b)^r dx = \frac{1}{a(r+1)} (ax+b)^{r+1} + c \quad \text{where } r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$$

$$\int \frac{1}{ax+b} dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln(ax+b) + c \quad \text{for } ax+b > 0$$



Exercise 8C

Example 7

1 Determine:

a $\int (2x - 1)^2 dx$

b $\int (2 - t)^3 dt$

c $\int (5x - 2)^3 dx$

d $\int (4x - 6)^{-2} dx$

e $\int (6 - 4x)^{-3} dx$

f $\int (4x + 3)^{-3} dx$

g $\int (3x + 6)^{\frac{1}{2}} dx$

h $\int (3x + 6)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx$

i $\int (2x - 4)^{\frac{7}{2}} dx$

j $\int (3x + 11)^{\frac{4}{3}} dx$

k $\int \sqrt{2 - 3x} dx$

l $\int (5 - 2x)^4 dx$

2 Determine the function f such that $f'(x) = \sqrt{1 - x}$ and $f(0) = 1$.

Example 8

3 Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following.

a $\frac{1}{2x}, x > 0$

b $\frac{1}{3x + 2}, x > -\frac{2}{3}$

c $\frac{4}{1 + 4x}, x > -\frac{1}{4}$

d $\frac{5}{3x - 2}, x > \frac{2}{3}$

e $\frac{3}{1 - 4x}, x < \frac{1}{4}$

f $\frac{3}{2 - \frac{x}{2}}, x < 4$

4 Determine:

a $\int \frac{5}{x} dx$, for $x > 0$

b $\int \frac{3}{x - 4} dx$, for $x > 4$

c $\int \frac{10}{2x + 1} dx$, for $x > -\frac{1}{2}$

d $\int \frac{6}{5 - 2x} dx$, for $x < \frac{5}{2}$

e $\int 6(1 - 2x)^{-1} dx$, for $x < \frac{1}{2}$

f $\int (4 - 3x)^{-1} dx$, for $x < \frac{4}{3}$

5 Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following.

a $\frac{3x + 1}{x}, x > 0$

b $\frac{x + 1}{x}, x > 0$

c $\frac{1}{(x + 1)^2}, x \neq -1$

d $\frac{(x + 1)^2}{x}, x > 0$

e $\frac{3}{(x - 1)^3}, x \neq 1$

f $\frac{1 - 2x}{x}, x > 0$

Example 9

6 a Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2x}$ and $y = 2$ when $x = e^2$, determine y in terms of x for $x > 0$.b Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{5 - 2x}$ and $y = 10$ when $x = 2$, determine y in terms of x for $x < \frac{5}{2}$.7 A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(5 + e, 10)$ and $f'(x) = \frac{10}{x - 5}$. Determine the equation of the curve for $x > 5$.

8 Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following.

a $\frac{x}{x + 1}, x > -1$

b $\frac{1 - 2x}{x + 1}, x > -1$

c $\frac{2x + 1}{x + 1}, x > -1$

9 Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3}{(x - 2)^2}$ and $y = -1$ when $x = 0$, determine y in terms of x for $x < 2$.10 Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{5}{2 - 4x}$ and $y = 10$ when $x = -2$, determine y in terms of x for $x < \frac{1}{2}$.

8D The anti-derivative of e^{kx}

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine anti-derivatives of e^{kx} .

In Chapter 5 we found that, if $f(x) = e^{kx}$, then $f'(x) = ke^{kx}$. Thus:

$$\int e^{kx} dx = \frac{1}{k}e^{kx} + c \quad \text{where } k \neq 0$$



Example 10

Determine the general anti-derivative of each of the following.

a e^{4x}

b $e^{5x} + 6x$

c $e^{3x} + 2$

d $e^{-x} + e^x$

Solution

a $\int e^{4x} dx = \frac{1}{4}e^{4x} + c$

b $\int e^{5x} + 6x dx = \frac{1}{5}e^{5x} + 3x^2 + c$

c $\int e^{3x} + 2 dx = \frac{1}{3}e^{3x} + 2x + c$

d $\int e^{-x} + e^x dx = -e^{-x} + e^x + c$



Example 11

If the gradient of the tangent at a point (x, y) on a curve is given by $5e^{2x}$ and the curve passes through the point $(0, 7.5)$, find the equation of the curve.

Solution

Let the curve have equation $y = f(x)$. Then $f'(x) = 5e^{2x}$.

$$\int 5e^{2x} dx = \frac{5}{2}e^{2x} + c$$

$$\therefore f(x) = \frac{5}{2}e^{2x} + c$$

But $f(0) = 7.5$ and therefore

$$7.5 = \frac{5}{2}e^0 + c$$

$$= 2.5 + c$$

$$\therefore c = 5$$

$$\text{Hence } f(x) = \frac{5}{2}e^{2x} + 5.$$

Summary 8D

$$\int e^{kx} dx = \frac{1}{k}e^{kx} + c$$



Exercise 8D

Example 10

1 Determine the general anti-derivative of each of the following.

a e^{6x}

b $e^{2x} + 3x$

c $e^{-3x} + 2x$

d $e^{-2x} + e^{2x}$

2 Determine:

a $\int e^{2x} - e^{\frac{x}{2}} dx$

b $\int \frac{e^{2x} + 1}{e^x} dx$

c $\int 2e^{3x} - e^{-x} dx$

d $\int 5e^{\frac{x}{3}} - 2e^{\frac{x}{5}} dx$

e $\int 3e^{\frac{2x}{3}} - 3e^{\frac{7x}{5}} dx$

f $\int 5e^{\frac{4x}{3}} - 3e^{\frac{2x}{3}} dx$

Example 11

3 Determine y in terms of x for each of the following:

a $\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{2x} - x$ and $y = 5$ when $x = 0$

b $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{3 - e^{2x}}{e^x}$ and $y = 4$ when $x = 0$

4 For the function f it is known that $f'(x) = e^{2x}$ and $f(1) = 4$. Determine $f(x)$.

5 Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = ae^{-x} + 1$ and that when $x = 0$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3$ and $y = 5$, find the value of y when $x = 2$.

6 A curve for which $\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{kx}$, where k is a constant, is such that the tangent at $(1, e^2)$ passes through the origin. Find the gradient of this tangent and hence determine:

a the value of k

b the equation of the curve.

7 A curve for which $\frac{dy}{dx} = -e^{kx}$, where k is a constant, is such that the tangent at $(1, -e^3)$ passes through the origin. Find the gradient of this tangent and hence determine:

a the value of k

b the equation of the curve.

8E Anti-differentiation of trigonometric functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine anti-derivatives of trigonometric functions.

Recall the following results from Chapter 6:

- If $f(x) = \sin(ax + b)$, then $f'(x) = a \cos(ax + b)$.
- If $g(x) = \cos(ax + b)$, then $g'(x) = -a \sin(ax + b)$.

Thus:

$$\int \sin(ax + b) dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos(ax + b) + c$$

$$\int \cos(ax + b) dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin(ax + b) + c$$

**Example 12**

Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following:

a $\sin\left(3x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

b $\frac{1}{4} \sin(4x)$

Solution

a $-\frac{1}{3} \cos\left(3x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + c$

b $-\frac{1}{16} \cos(4x) + c$

Summary 8E

$$\int \sin(ax + b) dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos(ax + b) + c$$

$$\int \cos(ax + b) dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin(ax + b) + c$$

Exercise 8E**Example 12**

1 Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following.

a $\cos(3x)$

b $\sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$

c $3 \cos(3x)$

d $2 \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$

e $\sin\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

f $\cos(3x) + \sin(2x)$

g $\cos(4x) - \sin(4x)$

h $-\frac{1}{2} \sin(2x) + \cos(3x)$

i $-\frac{1}{2} \cos\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

j $\sin(\pi x)$

k $2\pi \cos(2\pi x)$

l $-2 \cos(\pi - 2x)$

2 For each of the following, determine $f(x)$.

a $f'(x) = \cos(2x)$ and $f\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1$

b $f'(x) = \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ and $f\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right) = 2$

3 The gradient of a curve is given by $\frac{dy}{dx} = x + \sin(2x)$. Find the equation of the curve, given that it passes through the point $(0, 1)$.

4 Determine the function g such that $g'(x) = 4 \sin(2x)$ and $g\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 2$.

5 A curve has gradient function $\frac{dy}{dx} = \cos(2x) + \sin(3x)$ and the point $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 0\right)$ lies on the curve.

a Determine the equation of the curve.

b Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve at the point $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 0\right)$.

6 Given that $f'(x) = \cos x - \cos(2x)$ and $f(0) = 8$, find $f(x)$.

- 7** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(\pi, 0)$ and $f'(x) = 1 - 3 \sin(3x)$.
- Determine $f(x)$.
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(\pi, 0)$.

11

8F Further anti-differentiation techniques

Learning intentions

- To be able to use different techniques to determine anti-derivatives.

In this section, we introduce further methods for finding an anti-derivative.



Example 13

Let $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 1)$.

- Show that $f'(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1}$.
- Hence find an anti-derivative of $\frac{x}{x^2 + 1}$.

Solution

- Let $y = \ln(x^2 + 1)$ and $u = x^2 + 1$.
Then $y = \ln u$. By the chain rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= \frac{1}{u} \cdot 2x \quad \therefore f'(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b } \int \frac{x}{x^2 + 1} dx &= \frac{1}{2} \int \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \ln(x^2 + 1) + c \end{aligned}$$

We can generalise the previous example as follows.

Let $g(x) = \ln(f(x))$, for $f(x) > 0$. Then the chain rule gives $g'(x) = \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$, and therefore we have

$$\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} dx = \ln(f(x)) + c \quad \text{for } f(x) > 0$$

This result is used in the following example.



Example 14

Determine an anti-derivative for each of the following.

- $\frac{6x}{x^2 + 1}$
- $\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$, for $\cos x > 0$
- $\frac{e^x}{e^x + 1}$

Solution

- $$\begin{aligned} \int \frac{6x}{x^2 + 1} dx &= 3 \int \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1} dx \\ &= 3 \ln(x^2 + 1) + c \end{aligned}$$
- $$\begin{aligned} \int \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} dx &= - \int \frac{-\sin x}{\cos x} dx \\ &= - \ln(\cos x) + c \end{aligned}$$
- $$\begin{aligned} \int \frac{e^x}{e^x + 1} dx &= \ln(e^x + 1) + c \end{aligned}$$

In a similar way to Example 14 and from the chain rule results of Chapters 7 and 8.

$$\begin{aligned} \blacksquare \int f'(x) \cos(f(x)) \, dx &= \sin(f(x)) + c & \blacksquare \int f'(x) \sin(f(x)) \, dx &= -\cos(f(x)) + c \\ \blacksquare \int f'(x) e^{f(x)} \, dx &= e^{f(x)} + c \end{aligned}$$

The results given above are explicitly mentioned in the syllabus. This idea can be applied more generally. Let $y = \int f(u) \, du$, where $u = g(x)$.

By the chain rule for differentiation:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dy}{dx} &= \frac{dy}{du} \frac{du}{dx} \\ &= f(u) \cdot \frac{du}{dx} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore y = \int f(u) \frac{du}{dx} \, dx$$

This gives the following technique for integration.

Integration by substitution

$$\int f(u) \frac{du}{dx} \, dx = \int f(u) \, du$$

This is also called the **change of variable rule**.

This idea is used more extensively in Specialist Mathematics Units 3 & 4.



Example 15

Determine an anti-derivative for each of the following.

a $(2x + 2) \sin(x^2 + 2x)$

b $(x^2 + 2)e^{3x^3+18x}$

Solution

a Let $u = x^2 + 2x$.

Then, $\frac{du}{dx} = 2x + 2$.

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \int (2x + 2) \sin(x^2 + 2x) \, dx \\ &= \int \sin u \frac{du}{dx} \, dx \\ &= \int \sin u \, du \\ &= -\cos u + c \\ &= -\cos(x^2 + 2x) + c \end{aligned}$$

b Let $u = 3x^3 + 18x$.

Then, $\frac{du}{dx} = 9x^2 + 18$.

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} \int (x^2 + 2)e^{3x^3+18x} \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{9} \int (9x^2 + 18)e^{3x^3+18x} \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{9} \int (9x^2 + 18)e^u \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{9} \int e^u \frac{du}{dx} \, dx \\ &= \frac{1}{9} \int e^u \, du \\ &= \frac{1}{9} e^u + c = \frac{1}{9} e^{3x^3+18x} + c \end{aligned}$$

**Example 16**

Let $f(x) = \frac{\cos x}{\sin x}$.

a Show that $f'(x) = \frac{-1}{\sin^2 x}$.

b Hence determine $\int \frac{1}{\sin^2 x} dx$.

Solution

a Using the quotient rule:

$$\begin{aligned} f'(x) &= \frac{-\sin^2 x - \cos^2 x}{\sin^2 x} \\ &= \frac{-(\sin^2 x + \cos^2 x)}{\sin^2 x} \\ &= \frac{-1}{\sin^2 x} \end{aligned}$$

b
$$\int \frac{1}{\sin^2 x} dx = -\int \frac{-1}{\sin^2 x} dx$$

$$= -\frac{\cos x}{\sin x} + c$$

**Example 17**

a If $f(x) = x \ln(kx)$, determine $f'(x)$ and hence determine $\int \ln(kx) dx$, where k is a positive constant.

b If $f(x) = x^2 \ln(kx)$, determine $f'(x)$ and hence determine $\int x \ln(kx) dx$, where k is a positive constant.

Solution

a
$$f'(x) = \ln(kx) + x \times \frac{1}{x}$$

$$= \ln(kx) + 1$$

Anti-differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to x :

$$\begin{aligned} \int f'(x) dx &= \int \ln(kx) dx + \int 1 dx \\ x \ln(kx) + c_1 &= \int \ln(kx) dx + x + c_2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus
$$\begin{aligned} \int \ln(kx) dx &= x \ln(kx) - x + c_1 - c_2 \\ &= x \ln(kx) - x + c \end{aligned}$$

b
$$f'(x) = 2x \ln(kx) + x^2 \times \frac{1}{x}$$

$$= 2x \ln(kx) + x$$

Anti-differentiate both sides of the equation with respect to x :

$$\begin{aligned} \int f'(x) dx &= \int 2x \ln(kx) dx + \int x dx \\ x^2 \ln(kx) + c_1 &= \int 2x \ln(kx) dx + \frac{x^2}{2} + c_2 \end{aligned}$$

Thus
$$\int x \ln(kx) dx = \frac{1}{2} x^2 \ln(kx) - \frac{x^2}{4} + c$$

Exercise 8F

Example 13

- 1** Differentiate $\ln(3x^2 + 7)$ and hence determine $\int \frac{x}{3x^2 + 7} dx$.

Example 14

- 2** Determine an anti-derivative for each of the following.

a $\frac{x^2}{x^3 + 3}$, for $x^3 + 3 > 0$ **b** $\frac{x + 2}{x^2 + 4x}$, for $x^2 + 4x > 0$ **c** $\frac{e^{2x}}{3 + e^{2x}}$
d $\frac{x^2 + 1}{x^3 + 3x}$, for $x^3 + 3x > 0$ **e** $\frac{5}{3x - 2}$, for $x > \frac{2}{3}$

Example 15

- 3** Determine an anti-derivative for each of the following.

a $(3x^2 + 4) \cos(x^3 + 4x)$ **b** $(x^2 + 1)e^{x^3 + 3x}$ **c** $\cos(x)e^{\sin x}$

Example 16

- 4 a** Differentiate $\frac{\sin x}{\cos x}$ and hence determine an anti-derivative of $\frac{1}{\cos^2 x}$.
b Differentiate $\frac{\cos(2x)}{\sin(2x)}$ and hence determine an anti-derivative of $\frac{1}{\sin^2(2x)}$.

- 5** Differentiate $e^{2\sqrt{x}}$ with respect to x and hence determine $\int \frac{e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}} dx$.

- 6** Differentiate $\cos^3 x$ with respect to x and hence find an anti-derivative of $\cos^2 x \sin x$.

Example 17

- 7 a** If $f(x) = x \ln(2x)$, determine $f'(x)$ and hence determine $\int \ln(2x) dx$.
b If $f(x) = x^2 \ln(2x)$, determine $f'(x)$ and hence determine $\int x \ln(2x) dx$.

- 8** Differentiate $x \sin x$ with respect to x and hence determine $\int x \cos x dx$.

- 9** Differentiate xe^{2x} with respect to x and hence determine $\int xe^{2x} dx$.

- 10** Let $f(x) = (2x + a)\sqrt{4x - a}$, where a is a positive constant.

- a** Determine $f'(x)$. Simplify your answer.
b Hence find an anti-derivative of $\frac{x}{\sqrt{4x - a}}$.

- 11** Differentiate $\sqrt{1 + 4x^2}$ and hence determine an anti-derivative of $\frac{x}{\sqrt{1 + 4x^2}}$.

- 12** Show that $\frac{4}{x^2 - 4} = \frac{1}{x - 2} - \frac{1}{x + 2}$. Hence determine an anti-derivative of $\frac{1}{x^2 - 4}$.

- 13** Let $f(x) = g'(x)$ and $h(x) = k'(x)$, where $g(x) = (x^2 + 1)^3$ and $k(x) = \sin(x^2)$. Determine in terms of x :

a $\int f(x) dx$ **b** $\int h(x) dx$ **c** $\int f(x) + h(x) dx$
d $\int -f(x) dx$ **e** $\int f(x) - 4 dx$ **f** $\int 3h(x) dx$

8G Applications of integration

Learning intentions

- To be able to use integration in problems concerning rates of change.

In this section we have questions where the rate of change of a quantity as a function is known. The original function can then be found using integration, provided that we know some value of that function. Questions such as these will also appear in Section 13G.



Example 18

The height h cm of a plant has a rate of growth, in centimetres per year, after t years of

$$\frac{dh}{dt} = 40\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{-\frac{1}{3}}, \quad t \geq 0.$$

When $t = 0$, $h = 20$.

- a** Determine the height of the plant after t years.
b After how many years will the plant be 4.25 metres high?

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \frac{dh}{dt} &= 40\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{-\frac{1}{3}} \\ h &= 60\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + c \end{aligned}$$

When $t = 0$, $h = 20$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore 20 &= 60 \times \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + c \\ \therefore 20 &= 60 \times \frac{1}{4} + c \\ \therefore c &= 5 \end{aligned}$$

$$h = 60\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + 5$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad 60\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} + 5 = 425$$

$$60\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 420$$

$$\left(t + \frac{1}{8}\right)^{\frac{2}{3}} = 7$$

$$t + \frac{1}{8} = 7^{\frac{3}{2}}$$

$$t = 7^{\frac{3}{2}} - \frac{1}{8}$$

$$= 18.39525 \dots \quad (t \geq 0)$$

The height of plant will be 4.25 m high after 18.395 years.

Exercise 8G

Example 18

- 1 A team of workers is clearing an area of land. They clear it more slowly as they become tired. Let $A \text{ m}^2$ be the amount of land cleared after t minutes. The rate of clearing is given by $\frac{dA}{dt} = 3\left(t + \frac{1}{2}\right)^{-\frac{1}{3}}$. When $t = 0, A = 0$. How long does it take to clear 100 m^2 . Use your calculator to give your answer to the nearest minute.
- 2 The rate at which ice is melting on a surface depends on the time of day. There are $m \text{ kg}$ of ice at time t hours. The rate at which it is melting is described by $\frac{dm}{dt} = -8 + 8 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{12}\right)$. When $t = 0, m = 500$.
 - a Determine an expression for m at time t .
 - b Determine correct to the nearest hour when there is no ice on the surface.
- 3 A container is being filled with water. After t seconds the depth of the water, $h \text{ cm}$, in the container is increasing at a rate of $\frac{dh}{dt} = 1 + 0.045t \text{ cm/second}$. When $t = 0, h = 0$. Determine the value of t when $h = 20$.
- 4 When a tap at the base of a storage tank is turned on, water flows out of the tank at the rate of $\frac{dV}{dt} = -24e^{\frac{t}{4}}$ litres per minute where V litres is the amount of water in the tank at time t minutes. The volume of water in the tank at the start is 2400 litres. Determine how much, correct to the nearest litre, is left in the storage tank after the tap has been running for 10 minutes.
- 5 A population of a particular species of animal has a growth rate given by $600\pi \cos 3\pi t$ where t is the time in years. If the initial size of the population is 3600 , determine the size of the population at time t .
- 6 A dose of a drug was taken by a patient. The concentration of the drug at time t hours in the patient's blood after taking the drug was changing at a rate give by $8e^{-2t} - e^{-0.25t}$. None of the drug was present in the blood at the time the dose was taken.
 - a Determine the concentration of the drug in the patient's blood t hours later.
 - b How long after administration will the concentration be greatest?
- 7 After a heavy thunderstorm the rate of increase in water stored in a tank is given by $\frac{dV}{dt} = \frac{800}{t+2}$ litres/day where t is in days and V the amount of water in the tank is in litres. If the tank contained 4000 litres before the storm calculate, to the nearest litre, the amount of water in the tank when $t = 8$.
- 8 The flow of water into a dam over a year varies with time and is modelled by $\frac{dV}{dt} = 1.5 - 2 \cos 2t$ where V is the amount of water held in the dam measured in thousands of cubic metres and t is the number of months from the beginning of January. Initially the dam holds $10\,000 \text{ m}^3$
 - a Determine the maximum flow into the dam.
 - b Determine V as a function of t .

8H Applications of integration to motion in a straight line

Learning intentions

- To be able to use integration in problems concerning a particle moving in a straight line.

In the previous chapter, we considered examples in which we were given a rule for the position of a particle in terms of time, and from it we derived rules for the velocity and the acceleration by using differentiation.

We may be given a rule for acceleration and, by using anti-differentiation and some additional information, we can deduce rules for both velocity and position.



Example 19

A particle starts from a point O and moves in a straight line. After t seconds ($t \geq 0$) its velocity, $v \text{ m s}^{-1}$, is given by $v = 2t - 4$. Determine:

- its position, $s \text{ m}$, relative to O after t seconds
- its position after 3 seconds
- its average velocity in the first 3 seconds
- the distance travelled in the first 3 seconds
- its average speed in the first 3 seconds.

Solution

- a** Anti-differentiate velocity to determine the expression for position:

$$s = t^2 - 4t + c$$

When $t = 0$, $s = 0$, and so $c = 0$.

$$\therefore s = t^2 - 4t$$

- b** When $t = 3$, $s = -3$. The particle is 3 m to the left of O .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c Average velocity} &= \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{change in time}} \\ &= \frac{-3 - 0}{3} = -1 \text{ m s}^{-1} \end{aligned}$$

- d** First determine when the particle is at rest: $v = 0$ implies $2t - 4 = 0$, i.e. $t = 2$.

When $t = 2$, $s = -4$. Therefore the particle goes from $s = 0$ to $s = -4$ in the first 2 seconds, and then back to $s = -3$ in the next second.

Thus it has travelled 5 m in the first 3 seconds.

$$\text{e Average speed} = \frac{\text{distance travelled}}{\text{change in time}} = \frac{5}{3} \text{ ms}^{-1}$$

**Example 20**

A particle moves in a straight line. It starts from rest 3 metres to the right of a point O . Its acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, at time t seconds is given by $a = 6t + 8$. Determine its position (displacement), $s \text{ m}$, and velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds.

Solution

We are given the acceleration:

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = 6t + 8$$

Determine the velocity by anti-differentiating:

$$v = 3t^2 + 8t + c$$

At $t = 0$, $v = 0$, and so $c = 0$.

$$\therefore v = 3t^2 + 8t$$

Determine the position by anti-differentiating again:

$$s = t^3 + 4t^2 + d$$

At $t = 0$, $s = 3$, and so $d = 3$.

$$\therefore s = t^3 + 4t^2 + 3$$

**Example 21**

A stone is projected vertically upwards from the top of a building 20 m high with an initial velocity of 15 ms^{-1} . Determine:

- a** the time taken for the stone to reach its maximum height
- b** the maximum height reached by the stone
- c** the time taken for the stone to reach the ground
- d** the velocity of the stone as it hits the ground.

In this case we only consider the stone's motion in a vertical direction, so we can treat it as motion in a straight line. Also we will assume that the acceleration due to gravity is approximately -10 ms^{-2} . (Note that downwards is considered the negative direction.)

Solution

Anti-differentiating $a = -10$ gives $v = -10t + c$.

At $t = 0$, $v = 15$ and therefore $v = -10t + 15$.

Anti-differentiating v gives $s = -5t^2 + 15t + d$.

At $t = 0$, $s = 20$ and so $s = -5t^2 + 15t + 20$.

- a** The stone will reach its maximum height when $v = 0$:

$$-10t + 15 = 0$$

$$\therefore t = 1.5$$

The stone takes 1.5 seconds to reach its maximum height.

b At $t = 1.5$, $s = -5(1.5)^2 + 15(1.5) + 20$
 $= 31.25$

The maximum height reached by the stone is 31.25 metres.

c The stone reaches the ground when $s = 0$:

$$-5t^2 + 15t + 20 = 0$$

$$-5(t^2 - 3t - 4) = 0$$

$$-5(t - 4)(t + 1) = 0$$

$$\therefore t = 4$$

(The solution $t = -1$ is rejected as $t \geq 0$.)

The stone takes 4 seconds to reach the ground.

d At $t = 4$, $v = -10(4) + 15$
 $= -25$

The velocity on impact is -25 ms^{-1} .

Summary 8H

Anti-differentiation may be used to go from acceleration to velocity, and from velocity to position.

Exercise 8H

Example 19

- 1** An object starts from a point O and moves in a straight line. After t seconds ($t \geq 0$) its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by $v = 2t - 3$. Determine:
 - a** its position, $s \text{ m}$, relative to O after t seconds
 - b** its position after 3 seconds
 - c** its average velocity in the first 3 seconds
 - d** the distance travelled in the first 3 seconds
 - e** its average speed in the first 3 seconds.
- 2** For each of the following acceleration functions determine the corresponding velocity ($v(t) = \frac{ds}{dt}$) function and displacement function $s(t)$ given that the initial velocity and displacement are both zero and $t \geq 0$.

a $a(t) = -1$	b $a(t) = e^{\frac{t}{3}}$	c $a(t) = \cos(4t)$
d $a(t) = \sin(2\pi t)$	e $a(t) = \frac{2}{(t+1)^2}$	f $a(t) = 2e^{-\frac{t}{2}}$
g $a(t) = \cos(2\pi t + 2)$	h $a(t) = \frac{2}{(3t+1)^2}$	i $a(t) = 2 - e^t$

- 3** For each of the following velocity functions determine the corresponding acceleration ($a(t) = \frac{ds}{dt}$) function and displacement function $s(t)$ given that the initial displacement is given by $s(0) = -1$ and $t \geq 0$.

a $v(t) = 4$ **b** $v(t) = e^{-\frac{2t}{3}}$ **c** $v(t) = 4 \sin(4t)$
d $v(t) = \cos(2\pi t)$ **e** $v(t) = \frac{2}{3t+4}$ **f** $v(t) = \cos(2t) + \sin(2t)$

- 4** A particle is moving in a straight line. Its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds is given by $v = 3t^2 - 2$. Determine an expression for its position, $x \text{ m}$, at time t seconds, given that $s = 4$ when $t = 1$.
- 5** The velocity of a particle, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds ($t \geq 0$) is given by $v = 2t^2 - 8t + 6$. It is initially 4 m to the right of a point O . Determine:
- a** its position and acceleration at time t
 - b** its position when the velocity is zero
 - c** its acceleration when the velocity is zero.

Example 20

- 6** An object moves in a straight line so that its acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, after t seconds ($t \geq 0$) is given by $a = 2t - 3$. If the initial position of the object is 2 m to the right of a point O and its initial velocity is 3 ms^{-1} , find the object's position and velocity after 10 seconds.
- 7** An object moves in a straight line with an acceleration of 8 ms^{-2} . If after 1 second it passes through point O and after 3 seconds it is 30 metres from O , determine its initial position relative to O .
- 8** A stone is thrown upwards from the top of a tower 50 metres high. Its velocity in an upwards direction t seconds later is $19.6 - 9.8t$ metres per second. Determine the height of the stone above the ground 3 seconds later.

Example 21

- 9** An object is projected vertically upwards with a velocity of 25 ms^{-1} . (Its acceleration due to gravity is -10 ms^{-2} .) Determine:
- a** the object's velocity at time t
 - b** its height above the point of projection at time t
 - c** the time it takes to reach its maximum height
 - d** the maximum height reached
 - e** the time taken to return to the point of projection.
- 10** A particle moves in a straight line. At time t seconds after leaving a fixed point O , the velocity of the particle, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by $v = 9(1 - e^{-\frac{1}{3}t})$ for $t \geq 0$.
- a** Sketch the graph of v against t for $t \geq 0$.
 - b** Determine an expression for the particle's position, $x \text{ m}$, relative to O at time t seconds.
 - c** Determine the position of the particle after 3 seconds.

- 11** A particle starts at a point O and moves in a straight line. Its velocity, $v \text{ s}^{-1}$, at time t seconds is given by $v = 4 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{4}\right)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 8$.
- Sketch the graph of v against t for $0 \leq t \leq 8$.
 - Find an expression for the particle's position, $x \text{ m}$, relative to O at time t seconds.
 - Sketch the graph of x against t for $0 \leq t \leq 8$.
 - State the maximum speed of the particle, and state its position(s) when it has this speed.
- 12** The acceleration of a lift in a tall building is $\frac{1}{9}(t - 5) \text{ ms}^{-2}$ at time t seconds. At time $t = 0$, the lift is passing the 50th floor with a velocity of -8 ms^{-1} . If each floor spans a height of 6 metres, determine the floor at which the lift will stop.
- 13** A particle moves in a straight line so that at t seconds after leaving a fixed point O its velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ is given by $v = 10e^{-\frac{t}{2}}$. Calculate the displacement from O when $t = 4$ giving your answer correct to one decimal place.
- 14** The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of a particle moving in a straight line is given by $v = 8 + pt + qt^2$ where t is the time in seconds after the particle has passed through a fixed point O . Given that when $t = 2$ the distance from O is 16 m and its acceleration is 32 ms^{-2} determine:
- the value of p and q
 - the displacement from O when $t = 4$
 - the velocity of the particle when the acceleration is 0.
- 15** A particle moving in a straight line passes through a fixed point O . The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of the particle is given by $v = 15 \sin \frac{3t}{2}$ where t is the time in seconds after passing through O . Determine:
- correct to two decimal places, the time at which the velocity is first 10 ms^{-1} .
 - the value of t when the acceleration is first zero.
 - an expression for the position of the particle t seconds after passing through O .
- 16** Two particles A and B start to move at the same instant from a point O . The particles move from rest in the same direction along the same straight line. The acceleration of A at time t seconds after starting to move is $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, where $a(t) = 0.4 + 0.08t$. Particle B moves with constant acceleration for the first 15 s and has the same velocity as A when $t = 15$. Particle B moves with a different constant acceleration from $t = 15$ to $t = 30$ and has the same velocity as A when $t = 30$. Determine the distance between A and B when $t = 30$.

Chapter summary

- To determine the general anti-derivative:

If $F'(x) = f(x)$, then $\int f(x) dx = F(x) + c$, where c is an arbitrary real number.

- **Basic anti-derivatives**

$$\int x^r dx = \frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + c \quad \text{where } r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$$

$$\int (ax+b)^r dx = \frac{1}{a(r+1)} (ax+b)^{r+1} + c \quad \text{where } r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$$

$$\int \frac{1}{ax+b} dx = \frac{1}{a} \ln(ax+b) + c \quad \text{for } ax+b > 0$$

$$\int e^{ax} dx = \frac{1}{a} e^{ax} + c$$

$$\int \sin(ax+b) dx = -\frac{1}{a} \cos(ax+b) + c$$

$$\int \cos(ax+b) dx = \frac{1}{a} \sin(ax+b) + c$$

- **Properties of anti-differentiation**

- $\int f(x) + g(x) dx = \int f(x) dx + \int g(x) dx$
- $\int f(x) - g(x) dx = \int f(x) dx - \int g(x) dx$
- $\int k f(x) dx = k \int f(x) dx$, where k is a real number

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



8A

1 I can anti-differentiate polynomial functions.



See Example 1, Example 2, Example 3, Example 4 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 4

8B

2 I can anti-differentiate power functions.



See Example 5, Example 6 and Questions 1 and 3

8C

3 I can anti-differentiate expressions of the form $(ax+b)^r$.

See Example 7, Example 8, Example 9 and Questions 1, 3 and 6

8D

4 I can anti-differentiate e^{kx} .

See Example 10, Example 11 and Question 1

8E

5 I can anti-differentiate the trigonometric functions.



See Example 12 and Questions 1 and 3

8F **6** I can use other techniques to anti-differentiate. ☐

See Example 13, Example 14, Example 15, Example 16, Example 17 and Questions 1, 2, 3, 4 and 7

8G **7** I can use integration in problems concerning rates of change. ☐

See Example 18 and Question 1

8H **8** I can use integration in problems concerning a particle moving in a straight line. ☐

See Example 19, Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 1, 4 and 6

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

1 Find:

a $\int \frac{1}{2} dx$

b $\int \frac{1}{2} x^2 dx$

c $\int x^2 + 3x dx$

d $\int (2x + 3)^2 dx$

e $\int at dt$

f $\int \frac{1}{3} t^3 dt$

g $\int (t + 1)(t - 2) dt$

h $\int (2 - t)(t + 1) dt$

2 Suppose that $\frac{dy}{dx} = k\sqrt{x}$, where k is a positive constant. When $x = 1$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 6$ and $y = 6$. Determine y in terms of x .

3 Suppose that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{k}{x^2}$, where k is a positive constant. When $x = 2$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 6$ and $y = 6$. Determine y in terms of x .

4 A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(3, -1)$ and its gradient is given by $f'(x) = 2x + 5$. Determine the equation of the curve.

5 For each of the following, determine $f(x)$:

a $f'(x) = \cos(2x)$ and $f(\pi) = 1$

b $f'(x) = \frac{3}{x}$ and $f(1) = 6$ (for $x > 0$)

c $f'(x) = e^{\frac{x}{2}}$ and $f(0) = 1$

6 A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the origin and its gradient is given by $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 8x + 3$.

a Determine the equation of the curve.

b Determine the x -axis intercepts of the curve.

7 Determine the derivatives of $x + \sqrt{1 + x^2}$ and $\ln(x + \sqrt{1 + x^2})$.

By simplifying your last result if necessary, determine $\int \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + x^2}} dx$.

- 8** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(2, 0)$ and its gradient is given by $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 12x + 8$.
- Determine the equation of the curve.
 - Determine the x -axis intercepts of the curve.
- 9** The gradient of a curve is given by $\frac{dy}{dx} = 4 - kx$, where k is a positive constant. The tangent to the curve at $x = 1$ is perpendicular to the tangent at $x = -1$.
- Determine the value of k .
 - Determine the equation of the curve, given that it passes through the point $(6, 0)$.
- 10** The acceleration of a particle moving in a straight line, in ms^{-2} , at time t seconds is given by $\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = 8 - e^{-t}$. If the initial velocity is 3 m/s, determine the velocity when $t = 2$.
- 11** A particle moves in a straight line. It starts from rest at an origin O and its acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, at time t seconds is given by $a = 4 - t$. Calculate:
- the velocity of the particle when $t = 3$
 - the displacement from O when it next comes to rest
 - the displacement from O when $t = 12$
 - the average speed during the first 12 seconds.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 12** The slope of a children's slide is given by

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{9}{32}(x^2 - 4x) \quad \text{for } x \in [0, 4]$$

where the origin is taken to be at ground level beneath the highest point of the slide, which is 3 m above the ground. All units are in metres.

- Determine the equation of the curve which describes the slide.
 - Sketch the curve of the slide, labelling stationary points.
 - Does the slope of the slide ever exceed 45° ?
- 13** **a** Differentiate $e^{-3x} \sin(2x)$ and $e^{-3x} \cos(2x)$ with respect to x .
- b** Hence show that
- $$e^{-3x} \sin(2x) + c_1 = -3 \int e^{-3x} \sin(2x) dx + 2 \int e^{-3x} \cos(2x) dx$$
- and
- $$e^{-3x} \cos(2x) + c_2 = -3 \int e^{-3x} \cos(2x) dx - 2 \int e^{-3x} \sin(2x) dx$$
- c** Use the two equations from part **b** to determine $\int e^{-3x} \sin(2x) dx$.
- 14** A particle moves along a straight line. Let x m be its position relative to a fixed point O at time t seconds ($t \geq 0$). The particle's initial position is $x = 0$ and its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds is given by

$$v = 5 - \ln(t + k)$$

where k is a positive constant.

- a** Determine $\frac{d}{dt}((t+k)\ln(t+k))$ and hence find $\int \ln(t+k) dt$.
- b** Determine an expression for the position, x m, of the particle in terms of t .
- c** Given that the particle is at rest when $t = 100$, determine the value of k correct to two decimal places.
- d** Determine the position of the particle when it is at rest.
- e** Sketch the graph of v against t . (Use the value of k from part **c**.)

- 15** A particle moves along a straight line. Let x_1 m be the particle's position relative to a fixed point O at time t seconds ($0 \leq t \leq 24$). Its initial position is $x_1 = 0$ and its velocity, $v_1 \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by

$$v_1 = 6 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$$

- a** Sketch the graph of v_1 against t for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
- b** Determine an expression for x_1 in terms of t .
- c** Sketch the graph of x_1 against t for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
- d** State the maximum speed of the particle and its position when it has this speed.

A second particle moves along the same straight line. Let x_2 m be the particle's position relative to O at time t . Its initial position is $x_2 = 12$ and its velocity, $v_2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by

$$v_2 = 6 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$$

- e** Determine an expression for x_2 in terms of t .
- f** Sketch the graph of x_2 against t for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.

A third particle moves along the same straight line. Let x_3 m be the particle's position relative to O at time t . Its velocity, $v_3 \text{ ms}^{-1}$, is given by

$$v_3 = 6 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{3}\right)$$

- g** Determine the initial position of the third particle given that it meets the first particle twice during the 24 seconds of motion.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1** An anti-derivative of $x^3 + 3x$ is
- | | |
|---|------------------------|
| A $x(x^2 + 3)$ | B $3(x^2 + 1)$ |
| C $\frac{x^4}{4} + \frac{3x^2}{2} + c$ | D $x^3 + 3 + c$ |
- 2** $\int \sqrt{x} + x dx$ equals
- | | |
|---|--|
| A $\frac{\sqrt{x^2} + x^2}{2} + c$ | B $x^{\frac{3}{2}} + x^2 + c$ |
| C $\frac{1}{2}x + 1$ | D $\frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{1}{2}x^2 + c$ |

- 3** $3 \int x^{-4} dx$ equals
A $\frac{-1}{x^3} + c$ **B** $-x^3 + c$ **C** $-12x^{-3} + c$ **D** $-12x^{-5} + c$
- 4** An expression for y , if $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2x + 5$ and if $y = 1$ when $x = 0$, is
A $y = x^2 + 5x$ **B** $y = 2$
C $y = x^2 + 5x - 1$ **D** $y = x^2 + 5x + 1$
- 5** If $f'(x) = 5x^4 - 9x^2$ and $f(1) = 2$, then $f(x) =$
A $x^5 - 3x^2 + 2$ **B** $x^5 - 3x^3 + 4$
C $x^5 - 9x^2 + 5$ **D** $x^5 - 3x^3$
- 6** An expression for y , if $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{4}{x^3}$ and if $y = 0$ when $x = 1$, is
A $y = \frac{-2}{x^2}$ **B** $y = \frac{-2}{x^2} + 2$
C $y = \frac{-2}{3x^2} - \frac{2}{3}$ **D** $y = \frac{-4}{x^2} - 2$
- 7** $\int 3x^2 + 6 dx =$
A $x^3 + 6x + c$ **B** $6x$ **C** $6x + c$ **D** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{6}{x} + c$
- 8** Let a and b be positive constants. The general anti-derivative of $\sqrt{(ax - b)^3}$ for $x > \frac{b}{a}$ is
A $\frac{3}{2}(ax - b)^{\frac{1}{2}} + c$ **B** $\frac{1}{5\sqrt{ax - b}} + c$
C $\frac{2}{5a}(ax - b)^{\frac{5}{2}} + c$ **D** $\frac{1}{5a}\sqrt{(ax - b)^5} + c$
- 9** An expression for y , if $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2}ax + 1$ and if $y = 1$ when $x = 0$, is
A $y = \frac{1}{4}ax^2 + x + 1$ **B** $y = a$
C $y = ax^2 + x - 1$ **D** $y = ax^2 + x + a$
- 10** If $f'(x) = -6 \sin(3x)$ and $f\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right) = 3$, then $f(x) =$
A $-18 \cos(3x) + 21$ **B** $-2 \cos(2x) + 5$
C $-2 \sin(3x) + 1$ **D** $2 \cos(3x) + 1$
- 11** Suppose that $\frac{dy}{dx} = ae^{-x} + 2$ and that, when $x = 0$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 5$ and $y = 1$. When $x = 2$, $y =$
A $-\frac{3}{e^2} + 2$ **B** $-\frac{3}{e^2} + 4$ **C** $-\frac{3}{e^2} + 8$ **D** $3e^2 + 4$

- 12** An anti-derivative of $\sin(3x) + \cos(3x)$ is
- A** $\frac{1}{3} \cos(3x) + \frac{1}{3} \sin(3x)$ **B** $-\frac{1}{3} \cos(3x) + \frac{1}{3} \sin(3x)$
C $3 \cos(3x) + 3 \sin(3x)$ **D** $3 \cos(3x) - 3 \sin(3x)$
- 13** If $g'(x) = \frac{1}{x+1}$ and $g(0) = 2$, then $g(x) =$
- A** $\ln(x+1) + 2$ **B** $-\frac{1}{(x+1)^2} + 3$
C $-\ln(x+1) + 3$ **D** $\ln(x+1)$
- 14** The derivative of xe^{3x} is $(3x+1)e^{3x}$. It follows that $\int xe^{3x} dx =$
- A** $\frac{1}{3}e^{3x}\left(x - \frac{1}{3}\right) + c$ **B** $(3x+1)e^{3x} + c$
C $(3x-1)e^{3x} + c$ **D** $3xe^{3x} + \int e^{3x} dx$
- 15** A particle moves along the x -axis with velocity given by $v = 3t^2 + 6t$ at time $t \geq 0$. The particle's position at time $t = 0$ is $x = 2$. What is the particle's position at time $t = 1$?
- A** $x = 4$ **B** $x = 6$ **C** $x = 9$ **D** $x = 11$
- 16** A particle has initial velocity 3 ms^{-1} and its acceleration t seconds later is given by $(6t^2 + 5t - 3) \text{ ms}^{-2}$. After 2 seconds, its velocity in ms^{-1} is
- A** 23 **B** 18 **C** 21 **D** 27
- 17** A particle starts from rest at a point O and moves in a straight line so that after t seconds its velocity, v , is given by $v = 4 \sin(2t)$. Its displacement from O is given by
- A** $s = 2 \cos(2t)$ **B** $s = -2 \cos(2t)$
C $s = 8 \cos(2t) - 8$ **D** $s = 2 - 2 \cos(2t)$
- 18** A body moves in a straight line so that its acceleration (in ms^{-2}) at time t seconds is given by $\frac{d^2x}{dt^2} = 4 - e^{-t}$. If the body's initial velocity is 3 m/s , then when $t = 2$ its velocity (in ms^{-1}) is
- A** e^{-2} **B** $2 + e^{-2}$ **C** $11 + e^{-2}$ **D** $10 + e^{-2}$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 19** A body starts from a point O and moves in a straight line so that its velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ at time t seconds after leaving O is given by $v = \sin 3t + \cos t$. The displacement $s \text{ m}$ of the particle relative to O at time $t = 1$ correct to three decimal places is
- A** 1.057 **B** 1.589 **C** 1.171 **D** 1.505

- 20** A body starts from a point O and moves in a straight line so that its velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ at time t seconds after leaving O is given by $v = \sin 3t + \cos t$. The displacement $x \text{ m}$ of the particle relative to O at time $t = 2$ correct to three decimal places is
A 0.923 **B** 0.589 **C** 0.734 **D** 0.981
- 21** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the origin and $f'(x) = e^{2x} + 3$. The solution of the equation $f(x) = 1$ correct to three decimal places is
A 1.301 **B** 0.435 **C** 0.234 **D** 0.435
- 22** A body starts from a point O and moves in a straight line so that its acceleration $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$ at time t seconds after leaving O is given by $a = \pi \sin 3\pi t$. The velocity at time $t = 0$ is $\frac{4}{3} \text{ ms}^{-1}$. The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of the particle at time $t = 2$ correct to two decimal places is
A 1.66 **B** 1.33 **C** 2.33 **D** 0.166
- 23** Let $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = e^{-0.6x}$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} = 8$ when $x = 2$ and $y = 4$ when $x = 2$. The value of y correct to two decimal places when $x = 1$ is
A -2.66 **B** -4.72 **C** 2.65 **D** -3.81
- 24** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ where $0 \leq x \leq 0.5$ passes through the origin and $f'(x) = \sin 2\pi x$. The solution of the equation $f(x) = 0.05$ correct to three decimal places is
A 0.130 **B** 0.243 **C** 0.307 **D** 0.421
- 25** A stone is dropped from a balloon which is ascending at 2.5 ms^{-1} when the balloon is 40 m above the ground. (Its acceleration due to gravity is -10 ms^{-2} .) Neglecting air resistance, the time in seconds, correct to the nearest tenth of a second, taken for the stone to hit the ground is
A 2.8 **B** 2.9 **C** 3.1 **D** 3.3
- 26** A particle starts from the origin with initial velocity 2 ms^{-1} and moves in a line with acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, given by $a = 4e^{-2t}$ at time t seconds. If x metres is the position of the particle at time t , which one of the following is not true?
A The acceleration is always positive.
B The distance travelled in the first 3 seconds is 11.0025 metres (correct to three decimal places).
C The particle stops at $t = \ln \sqrt{2}$.
D The particle never returns to the origin.
- 27** A particle moves along the x -axis so that at any time $t > 0$, its acceleration is given by $a(t) = \frac{2t}{t^2 + 2}$. If the velocity of the particle is 2 at time $t = 1$, then the velocity, correct to three decimal places, of the particle at time $t = 2$ is
A 4.231 **B** 1.808 **C** 2.443 **D** 2.693

9

Discrete random variables

Chapter contents

- ▶ **9A** Review of probability
- ▶ **9B** Review of conditional probability and independence
- ▶ **9C** Discrete random variables
- ▶ **9D** Expected value, variance and standard deviation
- ▶ **9E** Bernoulli sequences and the binomial distribution

In this chapter, we introduce the probability distribution for a discrete random variable. Using this distribution, we can determine probabilities associated with the random variable, as well as the theoretical values of two important parameters which describe the random variable, the mean and the standard deviation. We also introduce two useful discrete probability distributions, the uniform distribution and the binomial distribution.

The binomial distribution is important because it has very wide application. It is concerned with situations where there are two possible outcomes, and many ‘real life’ scenarios of interest fall into this category. For example:

- A political poll of voters is carried out. Each polled voter is asked whether or not they would vote for the present government.
- A poll of Year 12 students in Australia is carried out. Each student is asked whether or not they watch the ABC on a regular basis.
- The effectiveness of a medical procedure is tested by selecting a group of patients and recording whether or not it is successful for each patient in the group.

The binomial distribution has application in each of these examples. We will use the binomial distribution again in Chapter 16, where we further develop our understanding of sampling.

This chapter covers Unit 3 Topic 5: Discrete random variables.

9A Review of probability

Learning intentions

- ▶ To review the language of sets and events.
- ▶ To review the basic concepts of probability.

In this section we will review the fundamental concepts of probability, the numerical value which we assign to give a measure of the likelihood of an outcome of an experiment. Probability takes a value between 0 and 1, where a probability of 0 means that the outcome is impossible, and a probability of 1 means that it is certain. Generally, the probability of an outcome will be somewhere in between, with a higher value meaning that the outcome is more likely.

Sample spaces and events

When a six-sided die is rolled, the possible outcomes are the numbers 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6. Rolling a six-sided die is an example of a **random experiment**, since while we can list all the possible outcomes, we do not know which one will be observed.

The possible outcomes are generally listed as the elements of a set, and the set of all possible outcomes is called the **sample space** and denoted by the Greek letter ϵ (epsilon). Thus, for this example:

$$\epsilon = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

An **event** is a subset of the sample space, usually denoted by a capital letter. If the event A is defined as ‘an even number when a six-sided die is rolled’, we write

$$A = \{2, 4, 6\}$$

If A and B are two events, then the **union** of A and B , denoted by $A \cup B$, is equivalent to either event A or event B or both occurring.

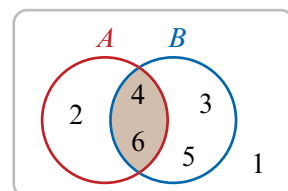
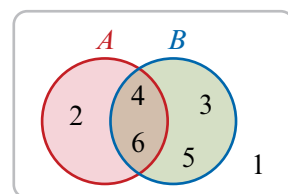
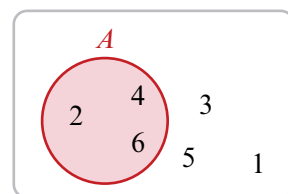
Thus, if event A is ‘an even number when a six-sided die is rolled’ and event B is ‘a number greater than 2 when a six-sided die is rolled’, then $A = \{2, 4, 6\}$, $B = \{3, 4, 5, 6\}$ and

$$A \cup B = \{2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$$

The **intersection** of A and B , denoted by $A \cap B$, is equivalent to both event A and event B occurring.

Thus, using the events A and B already described:

$$A \cap B = \{4, 6\}$$



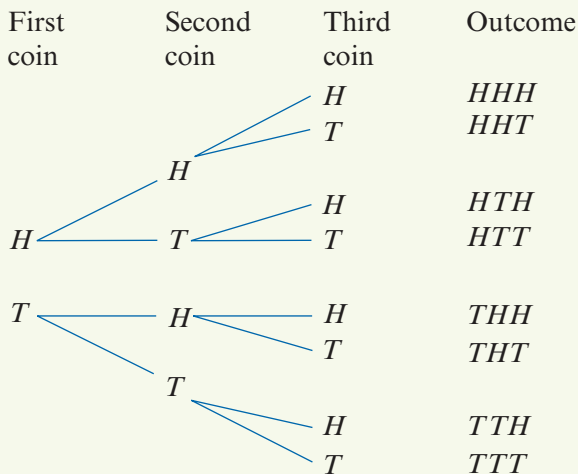
In some experiments, it is helpful to list the elements of the sample space systematically by means of a tree diagram.

**Example 1**

List the sample space when three coins are tossed and the results noted.

Solution

To list the elements of the sample space, construct a tree diagram:



Each path along the branches of the tree identifies an outcome, giving the sample space as

$$\epsilon = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, HTT, THH, THT, TTH, TTT\}$$

Determining probabilities for equally likely outcomes

Probability is a numerical measure of the chance of a particular event occurring. There are many approaches to determining probability, but often we assume that all of the possible outcomes are equally likely.

We require that the probabilities of all the outcomes in the sample space sum to 1, and that the probability of each outcome is a non-negative number. This means that the probability of each outcome must lie in the interval $[0, 1]$. Since six outcomes are possible when rolling a die, we can assign the probability of each outcome to be $\frac{1}{6}$. That is,

$$P(1) = P(2) = P(3) = P(4) = P(5) = P(6) = \frac{1}{6}$$

When the sample space is finite, the **probability of an event** is equal to the sum of the probabilities of the outcomes in that event.

For example, let A be the event that an even number is rolled on the die. Then $A = \{2, 4, 6\}$ and $P(A) = P(2) + P(4) + P(6) = \frac{1}{2}$. Since the outcomes are equally likely, we can calculate this more easily as

$$P(A) = \frac{\text{number of outcomes in } A}{\text{total number of outcomes}} = \frac{3}{6} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Equally likely outcomes

In general, if the sample space ϵ for an experiment contains n outcomes, all of which are equally likely to occur, we assign a probability of $\frac{1}{n}$ to each of these outcomes.

Then the probability of any event A which contains m of these outcomes is the ratio of the number of elements in A to the number of elements in ϵ . That is,

$$P(A) = \frac{n(A)}{n(\epsilon)} = \frac{m}{n}$$

where the notation $n(S)$ is used to represent the number of elements in set S .

We will see that there are other methods of determining probabilities. But whichever method is used, the following rules of probability will hold:

- $P(A) \geq 0$ for all events $A \subseteq \epsilon$
- $P(\epsilon) = 1$
- The sum of the probabilities of all outcomes of an experiment is 1.
- $P(\emptyset) = 0$, where $\emptyset$ represents the empty set
- $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$, where A' is the complement of A
- $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$, the **addition rule**

When two events A and B have no outcomes in common, i.e. when they cannot occur together, they are called **mutually exclusive** events. In this case, we have $P(A \cap B) = 0$ and so the addition rule becomes:

$$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B), \quad \text{the addition rule when } A \text{ and } B \text{ are mutually exclusive}$$

We illustrate some of these rules in the following example.



Example 2

If one card is chosen at random from a well-shuffled deck of 52 cards, determine the probability that the card is:

- a** an ace **b** not a heart **c** an ace or a heart **d** either a king or an ace.

Solution

- a** Let A be the event 'the card drawn is an ace'. A standard deck of cards contains four aces, so

$$P(A) = \frac{4}{52} = \frac{1}{13}$$

- b** Let H be the event 'the card drawn is a heart'. There are 13 cards in each suit, so

$$P(H) = \frac{13}{52} = \frac{1}{4}$$

and therefore

$$P(H') = 1 - P(H) = 1 - \frac{1}{4} = \frac{3}{4}$$

- c** Using the addition rule:

$$P(A \cup H) = P(A) + P(H) - P(A \cap H)$$

Now $P(A \cap H) = \frac{1}{52}$, since the event $A \cap H$ corresponds to drawing the ace of hearts. Therefore

$$P(A \cup H) = \frac{1}{13} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{52} = \frac{4}{13}$$

- d** Let K be the event 'the card drawn is a king'. We observe that $K \cap A = \emptyset$. That is, the events K and A are mutually exclusive. Hence

$$P(K \cup A) = P(K) + P(A) = \frac{1}{13} + \frac{1}{13} = \frac{2}{13}$$



Example 3

500 people were questioned and classified according to age and whether or not they regularly use social media. The results are shown in the table.

Do you regularly use social media?

	Age < 25	Age ≥ 25	Total
Yes	200	100	300
No	40	160	200
Total	240	260	500

One person is selected from these 500. Determine the probability that:

- a** the person regularly uses social media
- b** the person is less than 25 years of age
- c** the person is less than 25 years of age and does not regularly use social media.

Solution

a $P(\text{Yes}) = \frac{300}{500} = \frac{3}{5}$

b $P(\text{Age} < 25) = \frac{240}{500} = \frac{12}{25}$

c $P(\text{No} \cap \text{Age} < 25) = \frac{40}{500} = \frac{2}{25}$

Explanation

There are 300 out of 500 people who say yes.

There are 240 out of 500 people who are less than 25 years of age.

There are 40 out of 500 people who are less than 25 years of age and say no.

Other methods of determining probabilities

When we are dealing with a random experiment which does not have equally likely outcomes, other methods of determining probability are required.

Subjective probabilities

Sometimes, the probability is assigned a value on the basis of judgement. For example, a farmer may look at the weather conditions and determine that there is a 70% chance of rain that day, and take appropriate actions. Such probabilities are called **subjective probabilities**.

Probabilities from data

A better way to estimate an unknown probability is by experimentation: by performing the random experiment many times and recording the results. This information can then be used to estimate the chances of the event happening again in the future. The proportion of trials that resulted in this event is called the **relative frequency** of the event. (For most purposes we can consider proportion and relative frequency as interchangeable.) That is,

$$\text{Relative frequency of event } A = \frac{\text{number of times event } A \text{ occurs}}{\text{number of trials}}$$

This information can then be used to estimate the probability of the event.

When the number of trials is sufficiently large, the observed relative frequency of an event A becomes close to the probability $P(A)$. That is,

$$P(A) \approx \frac{\text{number of times event } A \text{ occurs}}{\text{number of trials}} \quad \text{for a large number of trials}$$

If the experiment was repeated, it would generally be found that the results were slightly different. One might conclude that relative frequency is not a very good way of estimating probability. In many situations, however, experiments are the only way to get at an unknown probability. One of the most valuable lessons to be learnt is that such estimates are not exact, and will in fact vary from sample to sample.

Understanding the variation between estimates is extremely important in the study of statistics, and this is the topic of Chapter 15. At this stage it is valuable to realise that the variation does exist, and that the best estimates of the probabilities will result from using as many trials as possible.



Example 4

Suppose that a die is tossed 1000 times and the following outcomes observed:

Outcome	1	2	3	4	5	6
Frequency	135	159	280	199	133	97

- a** Use this information to estimate the probability of observing a 6 when this die is rolled.
- b** What outcome would you predict to be most likely the next time the die is rolled?

Solution

a $P(6) \approx \frac{97}{1000} = 0.097$

- b** The most likely outcome is 3, since it has the highest relative frequency.

Probabilities from area

When we use the model of equally likely outcomes to determine probabilities, we count both the outcomes in the event and the outcomes in the sample space, and use the ratio to determine the probability of the event.

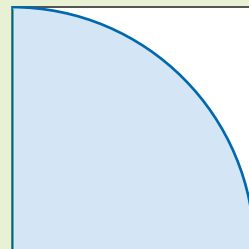
This idea can be extended to calculate probabilities when areas are involved, by assuming that the probability of two events represented by equal areas in the region are equally likely.



Example 5

A dartboard consists of a square of side length 2 metres containing a blue one-quarter of a circular disc centred at the bottom-left vertex of the square, as shown.

If a dart thrown at the square is equally likely to hit any part of the square, and it hits the square every time, determine the probability of it hitting the blue region.



Solution

$$\text{Area of blue region} = \frac{1}{4}\pi r^2 = \frac{1}{4}\pi \times 4 = \pi \text{ m}^2$$

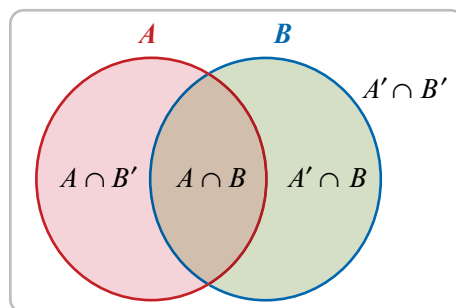
$$\text{Area of dartboard} = 2 \times 2 = 4 \text{ m}^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} P(\text{hitting blue region}) &= \frac{\text{area of blue region}}{\text{area of dartboard}} \\ &= \frac{\pi}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Probability tables

A **probability table** is an alternative to a Venn diagram when illustrating a probability problem diagrammatically. Consider the Venn diagram which illustrates two intersecting sets A and B .

From the Venn diagram it can be seen that the sample space is divided by the sets into four disjoint regions: $A \cap B$, $A \cap B'$, $A' \cap B$ and $A' \cap B'$. These regions may be represented in a table as follows. Such a table is sometimes referred to as a **Karnaugh map**.



	B	B'
A	$A \cap B$	$A \cap B'$
A'	$A' \cap B$	$A' \cap B'$

In a probability table, the entries give the probabilities of each of these events occurring.

	B	B'
A	$P(A \cap B)$	$P(A \cap B')$
A'	$P(A' \cap B)$	$P(A' \cap B')$

Summing the rows and columns, we can complete the table as shown.

	B	B'	
A	$P(A \cap B)$	$P(A \cap B')$	$P(A)$
A'	$P(A' \cap B)$	$P(A' \cap B')$	$P(A')$
	$P(B)$	$P(B')$	1

These tables can be useful when solving problems involving probability, as shown in the next example.



Example 6

Simone visits the dentist every 6 months for a checkup. The probability that she will need her teeth cleaned is 0.35, the probability that she will need a filling is 0.1 and the probability that she will need both is 0.05.

- a** Determine the probability that she will not need her teeth cleaned on a visit, but will need a filling.
- b** Determine the probability that she will not need either of these treatments.

Solution

The information in the question may be entered into a table as shown, where we use C to represent ‘cleaning’ and F to represent ‘filling’.

	F	F'	
C	0.05		0.35
C'			
	0.1		1

All the empty cells in the table may now be filled in by subtraction:

	F	F'	
C	0.05	0.3	0.35
C'	0.05	0.6	0.65
	0.1	0.9	1

- a** The probability that she will not need her teeth cleaned but will need a filling is given by $P(C' \cap F) = 0.05$.
- b** The probability that she will not need either of these treatments is $P(C' \cap F') = 0.6$.

Summary 9A

- The **sample space**, ϵ , for a random experiment is the set of all possible outcomes.
- An **event** is a subset of the sample space. The probability of an event A occurring is denoted by $P(A)$.
- **Equally likely outcomes** If the sample space ϵ for an experiment contains n outcomes, all of which are equally likely to occur, we assign a probability of $\frac{1}{n}$ to each outcome. Then the probability of an event A is given by

$$P(A) = \frac{\text{number of outcomes in } A}{\text{total number of outcomes}} = \frac{n(A)}{n(\epsilon)}$$

- **Estimates of probability** When a probability is unknown, it can be estimated by the relative frequency obtained through repeated trials of the random experiment under consideration. In this case,

$$P(A) \approx \frac{\text{number of times event } A \text{ occurs}}{\text{number of trials}} \quad \text{for a large number of trials}$$

- Whichever method of determining probability is used, the rules of probability hold:
 - $P(A) \geq 0$ for all events $A \subseteq \epsilon$
 - $P(\emptyset) = 0$ and $P(\epsilon) = 1$
 - The sum of the probabilities of all outcomes of an experiment is 1.
 - $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$, where A' is the complement of A
 - $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$, the **addition rule**
- If two events A and B are **mutually exclusive** (i.e. if A and B have no outcomes in common), then $P(A \cap B) = 0$ and therefore $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$.

Exercise 9A**Example 1**

- 1 An experiment consists of rolling a six-sided die and tossing a coin. Use a tree diagram to list the sample space for the experiment.
- 2 Two coins are tossed and a six-sided die is rolled. Use a tree diagram to show all the possible outcomes.

Example 2

- 3 If one card is chosen at random from a well-shuffled deck of 52 cards, determine the probability that the card is:
 - a queen
 - not a club
 - a queen or a heart
 - either a king or a queen.

- 4** A blank six-sided die is marked with a 1 on two sides, a 2 on one side, and a 3 on the remaining three sides. Determine the probability that when the die is rolled:
- a** a 3 shows **b** a 2 or a 3 shows.
- 5** Suppose that the probability that a student owns a smartphone is 0.7, the probability that they own a laptop is 0.6, and the probability that they own both is 0.5. Determine the probability that a student owns either a smartphone or a laptop or both.
- 6** At a particular university, the probability that an Arts student studies a language is 0.3, literature is 0.6, and both is 0.25. Determine the probability that an Arts student studies either a language or literature or both.
- 7** A computer manufacturer notes that 5% of their computers are returned owing to faulty disk drives, 2% are returned owing to faulty keyboards, and 0.3% are returned because both disk drives and keyboards are faulty. Determine the probability that the next computer manufactured will be returned with:
- a** a faulty disk drive or a faulty keyboard
b a faulty disk drive and a working keyboard.
- 8** A new drug has been released and produces some minor side effects: 8% of users suffer only loss of sleep, 12% of users suffer only nausea, and 75% of users have no side effects at all. Determine the percentage of users who suffer from both loss of sleep and nausea.
- Example 3** **9** An insurance company analysed the records of 500 drivers to determine the relationship between age and accidents in the last year.

Age	Accidents in the last year				
	0	1	2	3	Over 3
Under 20	19	35	25	17	10
20–29	30	45	33	39	17
30–39	40	33	15	6	2
40–49	18	15	10	3	1
Over 49	21	25	17	13	11

Determine the probability that a driver chosen from this group at random:

- a** is under 20 years old and has had three accidents in the last year
b is from 40 to 49 years old and has had no accidents in the last year
c is from 20 to 29 years old
d had more than three accidents in the last year.

- 10** 200 people were questioned and classified according to gender and whether or not they think private individuals should be allowed to carry guns. The results are shown in the table.

Do you think private individuals should be allowed to carry guns?

	Male	Female	Total
Yes	70	60	130
No	50	20	70
Total	120	80	200

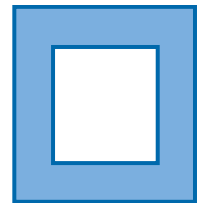
One person is selected at random from these 200.

- a** Determine the probability that the person thinks private individuals should be allowed to carry guns.
- b** Determine the probability that the person is male and thinks private individuals should be allowed to carry guns.

Example 4 **11** Use the given data to estimate the probability of the specified event occurring:

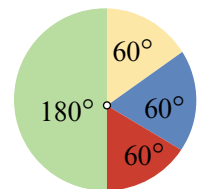
- a** $P(\text{head})$ if a coin is tossed 200 times and 114 heads observed
- b** $P(\text{ten})$ if a spinner is spun 380 times and lands on the 'ten' 40 times
- c** $P(\text{two heads})$ if two coins are tossed 200 times and two heads are observed on 54 occasions
- d** $P(\text{three sixes})$ if three dice are rolled 500 times and three sixes observed only twice.

Example 5 **12** Suppose that a square dartboard consists of a white square of side length 30 cm inside a larger blue square of side length 50 cm, as shown. If a dart thrown at the board has equal chance of landing anywhere on the board, determine the probability it lands in the white area. (Ignore the possibility that it might land on the line or miss the board altogether.)



- 13** A spinner is as shown in the diagram. Determine the probability that when spun the pointer will land on:

- a** the green section
- b** the yellow section
- c** any section except the yellow section.



Example 6 **14** In a particular country it has been established that the probability that a person drinks tea is 0.45, the probability that a person drinks coffee is 0.65, and the probability that a person drinks neither tea nor coffee is 0.22. Use the information to complete a probability table and hence determine the probability that a randomly selected person in that country:

- a** drinks tea but not coffee
- b** drinks tea and coffee.

- 15** A chocolate is chosen at random from a box of chocolates. It is known that in this box:

- the probability that the chocolate is dark but not soft-centred is 0.15
- the probability that the chocolate is not dark but is soft-centred is 0.42
- the probability that the chocolate is not dark is 0.60.

Determine the probability that the randomly chosen chocolate is:

- a** dark **b** soft-centred **c** not dark and not soft-centred.

- 16** Records indicate that, in Australia, 65% of secondary students participate in sport, and 71% of secondary students are Australian by birth. They also show that 53% of students are Australian by birth and participate in sport. Use this information to determine the probability that a student selected at random:

- a** does not participate in sport
- b** is Australian by birth and does not participate in sport
- c** is not Australian by birth and participates in sport
- d** is not Australian by birth and does not participate in sport.

9B Review of conditional probability and independence

Learning intentions

- To review the concepts of conditional probability and independence,

The probability of an event A occurring when it is known that some event B has occurred is called conditional probability and is written $P(A|B)$. This is usually read as ‘the probability of A given B ’, and can be thought of as a means of adjusting probability in the light of new information.

Sometimes, the probability of an event is not affected by knowing that another event has occurred. For example, if two coins are tossed, then the probability of the second coin showing a head is independent of whether the first coin shows a head or a tail. For other situations, however, a previous result may alter the probability. For example, the probability of rain today given that it rained yesterday will generally be different from the probability that it will rain today given that it didn’t rain yesterday.

The **conditional probability** of an event A , given that event B has already occurred, is given by

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} \quad \text{if } P(B) \neq 0$$

This formula may be rearranged to give the **multiplication rule of probability**:

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A|B) \times P(B)$$

The probabilities associated with a multi-stage experiment can be calculated by constructing an appropriate tree diagram and multiplying along the relevant branches (from the multiplication rule).



Example 7

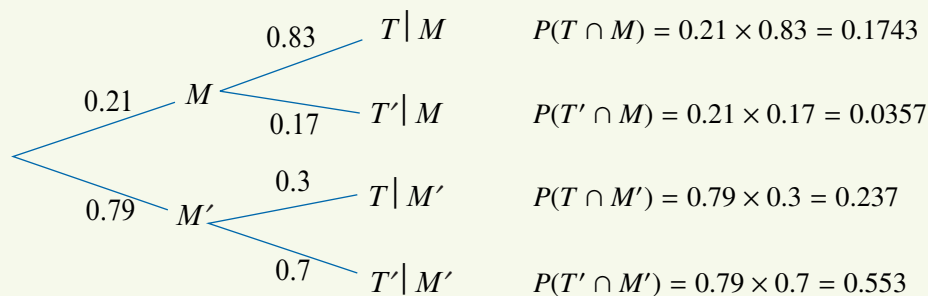
In a certain town, the probability that it rains on any Monday is 0.21. If it rains on Monday, then the probability that it rains on Tuesday is 0.83. If it does not rain on Monday, then the probability of rain on Tuesday is 0.3. For a given week, determine the probability that it rains:

- a** on both Monday and Tuesday
- b** on Tuesday.

Solution

Let M represent the event 'rain on Monday' and T represent the event 'rain on Tuesday'.

The situation described in the question can be represented by a tree diagram. You can check that the probabilities are correct by seeing if they add to 1.



- a** The probability that it rains on both Monday and Tuesday is given by

$$\begin{aligned} P(T \cap M) &= 0.21 \times 0.83 \\ &= 0.1743 \end{aligned}$$

- b** The probability that it rains on Tuesday is given by

$$\begin{aligned} P(T) &= P(T \cap M) + P(T \cap M') \\ &= 0.1743 + 0.237 \\ &= 0.4113 \end{aligned}$$

The solution to part **b** of Example 7 is an application of a rule known as the law of total probability. This can be expressed in general terms as follows:

The law of total probability states that, in the case of two events A and B ,

$$P(A) = P(A|B)P(B) + P(A|B')P(B')$$



Example 8

Adrienne, Regan and Michael are doing the dishes. Since Adrienne is the oldest, she washes the dishes 40% of the time. Regan and Michael each wash 30% of the time. When Adrienne washes the probability of at least one dish being broken is 0.01, when Regan washes the probability is 0.02, and when Michael washes the probability is 0.03. Their parents don't know who is washing the dishes one particular night.

- a** Determine the probability that at least one dish will be broken.
- b** Given that at least one dish is broken, determine the probability that the person washing was Michael.

Solution

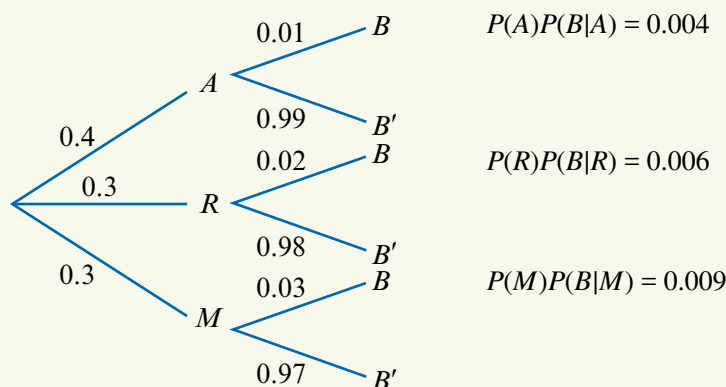
Let A be the event 'Adrienne washes the dishes', let R be the event 'Regan washes the dishes' and let M be the event 'Michael washes the dishes'. Then

$$P(A) = 0.4 \quad P(R) = 0.3 \quad P(M) = 0.3$$

Let B be the event 'at least one dish is broken'. Then

$$P(B|A) = 0.01 \quad P(B|R) = 0.02 \quad P(B|M) = 0.03$$

This information can be summarised in a tree diagram as shown:



- a** The probability of at least one dish being broken is

$$\begin{aligned} P(B) &= P(B \cap A) + P(B \cap R) + P(B \cap M) \\ &= P(A)P(B|A) + P(R)P(B|R) + P(M)P(B|M) \\ &= 0.004 + 0.006 + 0.009 \\ &= 0.019 \end{aligned}$$

- b** The required probability is

$$\begin{aligned} P(M|B) &= \frac{P(M \cap B)}{P(B)} \\ &= \frac{0.009}{0.019} = \frac{9}{19} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 9**

As part of an evaluation of the school tuck shop, all students at a Senior Secondary College (Years 10–12) were asked to rate the tuck shop as poor, good or excellent. The results are shown in the table.

Rating	Year			Total
	10	11	12	
Poor	30	20	10	60
Good	80	65	35	180
Excellent	60	65	35	160
Total	170	150	80	400

Determine the probability that a student chosen at random from this college:

- a** is in Year 12
- b** is in Year 12 and rates the tuck shop as excellent
- c** is in Year 12, given that they rate the tuck shop as excellent
- d** rates the tuck shop as excellent, given that they are in Year 12.

Solution

Let T be the event ‘the student is in Year 12’ and let E be the event ‘the rating is excellent’.

$$\mathbf{a} \quad P(T) = \frac{80}{400} = \frac{1}{5}$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad P(T \cap E) = \frac{35}{400} = \frac{7}{80}$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad P(T|E) = \frac{35}{160} = \frac{7}{32}$$

$$\mathbf{d} \quad P(E|T) = \frac{35}{80} = \frac{7}{16}$$

Explanation

From the table, we can see that there are 80 students in Year 12 and 400 students altogether.

From the table, there are 35 students who are in Year 12 and also rate the tuck shop as excellent.

From the table, a total of 160 students rate the tuck shop as excellent, and of these 35 are in Year 12.

From the table, there are 80 students in Year 12, and of these 35 rate the tuck shop as excellent.

Note: The answers to parts **c** and **d** could also have been found using the rule for conditional probability, but here it is easier to determine the probability directly from the table.

Independent events

Two events A and B are **independent** if the probability of A occurring is the same, whether or not B has occurred.

Independent events

For events A and B with $P(A) \neq 0$ and $P(B) \neq 0$, the following three conditions are all equivalent conditions for the independence of A and B :

- $P(A|B) = P(A)$
- $P(B|A) = P(B)$
- $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$



Example 10

The probability that Monica remembers to do her homework is 0.7, while the probability that Patrick remembers to do his homework is 0.4. If these events are independent, determine the probability that:

- a** both will do their homework
- b** Monica will do her homework but Patrick forgets.

Solution

Let M be the event ‘Monica does her homework’ and let P be the event ‘Patrick does his homework’. Since these events are independent:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 \mathbf{a} & P(M \cap P) = P(M) \times P(P) \\
 & = 0.7 \times 0.4 \\
 & = 0.28 \\
 \mathbf{b} & P(M \cap P') = P(M) \times P(P') \\
 & = 0.7 \times 0.6 \\
 & = 0.42
 \end{array}$$

Summary 9B

■ Conditional probability

- The probability of an event A occurring when it is known that some event B has already occurred is called conditional probability and is written $P(A | B)$.
- In general, the **conditional probability** of an event A , given that event B has already occurred, is given by

$$P(A | B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} \quad \text{if } P(B) \neq 0$$

This formula may be rearranged to give the **multiplication rule of probability**:

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A | B) \times P(B)$$

■ Law of total probability

The **law of total probability** states that, in the case of two events A and B ,

$$P(A) = P(A | B)P(B) + P(A | B')P(B')$$

■ Independence

Two events A and B are **independent** if the occurrence of one event has no effect on the probability of the occurrence of the other, that is, if

$$P(A | B) = P(A)$$

Events A and B are independent if and only if

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$$



Exercise 9B

Example 7

- In a certain town, the probability that it rains on any Saturday is 0.25. If it rains on Saturday, then the probability of rain on Sunday is 0.8. If it does not rain on Saturday, then the probability of rain on Sunday is 0.1. For a given week, determine the probability that:
 - it rains on both Saturday and Sunday
 - it rains on neither day
 - it rains on Sunday.
- Given that for two events A and B , $P(A) = 0.6$, $P(B) = 0.3$ and $P(A \cap B) = 0.1$, determine:
 - $P(B|A)$
 - $P(A|B)$
- Given that for two events A and B , $P(A) = 0.6$, $P(B) = 0.3$ and $P(B|A) = 0.1$, determine:
 - $P(A \cap B)$
 - $P(A|B)$
- In Alia's school, the probability that a student studies French is 0.5, and the probability that they study both French and Chinese is 0.3. Determine the probability that a student studies Chinese, given that they study French.

Example 8

- The chance that a harvest is poorer than average is 0.5 when a certain disease D is not present, but if it is known that disease D is present, this probability increases to 0.8. The disease D is present in 30% of harvests. Determine the probability that, when a harvest is observed to be poorer than average, the disease D is present.

Example 9

- A group of 1000 eligible voters were asked their age and their preference in an upcoming election, with the following results.

Preference	Age			Total
	18–25	26–40	Over 40	
Candidate A	200	100	85	385
Candidate B	250	230	50	530
No preference	50	20	15	85
Total	500	350	150	1000

Determine the probability that a person chosen from this group at random:

- is 18–25 years of age
- prefers candidate A
- is 18–25 years of age, given that they prefer candidate A
- prefers candidate A, given that they are 18–25 years of age.

- 7** The following data was derived from accident records on a highway noted for its above-average accident rate.

Type of accident	Probable cause			Total
	Speed	Alcohol	Other	
Fatal	42	61	12	115
Non-fatal	88	185	60	333
Total	130	246	72	448

Use the table to determine:

- a** the probability that speed is the cause of the accident
- b** the probability that the accident is fatal
- c** the probability that the accident is fatal, given that speed is the cause
- d** the probability that the accident is fatal, given that alcohol is the cause.

Example 10

- 8** The probability of James winning a particular tennis match is independent of Sally winning another particular tennis match. If the probability of James winning is 0.8 and the probability of Sally winning is 0.3, determine:
- a** the probability that they both win
 - b** the probability that either or both of them win.
- 9** An experiment consists of drawing a number at random from $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$. Let $A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$, $B = \{1, 3, 5, 7, 9\}$ and $C = \{4, 6, 8, 9\}$.
- a** Determine whether A and B are independent.
 - b** Determine whether A and C are independent.
 - c** Determine whether B and C are independent.
- 10** If A and B are independent events such that $P(A) = 0.5$ and $P(B) = 0.4$, determine:
- a** $P(A|B)$
 - b** $P(A \cap B)$
 - c** $P(A \cup B)$
- 11** Nathan knows that his probability of kicking more than four goals on a wet day is 0.3, while on a dry day it is 0.6. The probability that it will be wet on the day of the next game is 0.7. Calculate the probability that Nathan will kick more than four goals in the next game.
- 12** Determine the probability that, in three tosses of a fair coin, there are three heads, given that there is at least one head.
- 13** The test used to determine if a person suffers from a particular disease is not perfect. The probability of a person with the disease returning a positive result is 0.95, while the probability of a person without the disease returning a positive result is 0.02. The probability that a randomly selected person has the disease is 0.03. Determine the probability that a randomly selected person will return a positive result.

- 14** Anya goes through three sets of traffic lights when she cycles to school each morning. The probability she stops at the first set is 0.6. If she stops at any one set, the probability that she has to stop at the next is 0.9. If she doesn't have to stop at any one set, the probability that she doesn't have to stop at the next is 0.7. Use a tree diagram to determine the probability that:
- a** she stops at all three sets of lights
 - b** she stops only at the second set of lights
 - c** she stops at exactly one set of lights.

- 15** There are four red socks and two blue socks in a drawer. Two socks are removed at random. Determine the probability of obtaining:
- a** two red socks
 - b** two blue socks
 - c** one of each colour.

- 16** A car salesperson was interested in the relationship between the size of the car a customer purchased and their marital status. From the sales records, the table on the right was constructed.

Size of car	Marital status		Total
	Married	Single	
Large	60	20	80
Medium	100	60	160
Small	90	70	160
Total	250	150	400

Determine the probability that a person chosen at random from this group:

- a** drives a small car
 - b** is single and drives a small car
 - c** is single, given that they drive a small car
 - d** drives a small car, given that they are single.
- 17** Jenny has two boxes of chocolates. Box A contains three white chocolates and four dark chocolates. Box B contains two white chocolates and five dark chocolates. Jenny first chooses a box at random and then selects a chocolate at random from it. Determine the probability that:
- a** Jenny selects a white chocolate
 - b** given that Jenny selects a white chocolate, it was chosen from box A.
- 18** At a particular petrol station, 30% of customers buy premium unleaded, 60% buy standard unleaded and 10% buy diesel. When a customer buys premium unleaded, there is a 25% chance they will fill the tank. Of the customers buying standard unleaded, 20% fill their tank. Of those buying diesel, 70% fill their tank.
- a** Determine the probability that, when a car leaves the petrol station, it will not have a full tank.
 - b** Given that a car leaving the petrol station has a full tank, determine the probability that the tank contains standard unleaded petrol.
- 19** A bag contains three red, four white and five black balls. If three balls are taken without replacement, determine the probability that they are not all the same colour.

9C Discrete random variables

Learning intentions

- ▶ To understand the concept of a **discrete random variable** and its probability function.
- ▶ To use relative frequencies to estimate probabilities associated with discrete random variables.
- ▶ To recognise **uniform** discrete random variables and use them to model random phenomena with equally likely outcomes.
- ▶ To recognise **non-uniform** discrete random variables and use them to model random phenomena.

Suppose that three balls are drawn at random from a jar containing four white and six black balls, with replacement (i.e. each selected ball is replaced before the next draw). The sample space for this random experiment is as follows:

$$\varepsilon = \{WWW, WWB, WBW, BWW, WBB, BWB, BBW, BBB\}$$

Suppose the variable of interest is the number of white balls in the sample. This corresponds to a simpler sample space whose outcomes are numbers.

If X represents the number of white balls in the sample, then the possible values of X are 0, 1, 2 and 3. Since the actual value that X will take is the result of a random experiment, we say that X is a random variable.

A **random variable** is a function that assigns a number to each outcome in the sample space ε .

A random variable can be discrete or continuous:

- A **discrete random variable** is one that can take only a countable number of values. For example, the number of white balls in a sample of size three is a discrete random variable which may take one of the values 0, 1, 2, 3. Other examples include the number of children in a family, and a person's shoe size. (Note that discrete random variables do not have to take only whole-number values.)
- A **continuous random variable** is one that can take any value in an interval of the real number line, and is usually (but not always) generated by measuring. Height, weight, and the time taken to complete a puzzle are all examples of continuous random variables.

Consider again the sample space for the random experiment described above. Each outcome in the sample space is associated with a value of X :

Experiment outcome	Value of X
WWW	3
WWB	2
WBW	2
BWW	2
WBB	1
BWB	1
BBW	1
BBB	0

Associated with each event is a probability. Since the individual draws of the ball from the jar are independent events, we can determine the probabilities by multiplying and adding appropriate terms.



Example 11

A jar contains four white and six black balls. Determine the probability that, if three balls are drawn at random from the jar, with replacement, a white ball will be drawn exactly once (i.e. the situations where $X = 1$ in the table).

Solution

$X = 1$ corresponds to the outcomes WBB , BWB and BBW .

Since there are 10 balls in total, $P(W) = \frac{4}{10} = 0.4$ and $P(B) = \frac{6}{10} = 0.6$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Thus } P(X = 1) &= P(WBB) + P(BWB) + P(BBW) \\
 &= (0.4 \times 0.6 \times 0.6) + (0.6 \times 0.4 \times 0.6) + (0.6 \times 0.6 \times 0.4) \\
 &= 0.432
 \end{aligned}$$

Discrete probability distributions

The **probability distribution** for a discrete random variable consists of all the values that the random variable can take, together with the probability of each of these values. For example, if a fair die is rolled, then the probability distribution is:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(X = x)$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

By convention we use a capital letter, X , to represent a random variable, and a lower case letter, x , to represent the particular values that the random variable can take.

The probability distribution of a discrete random variable X is described by a function

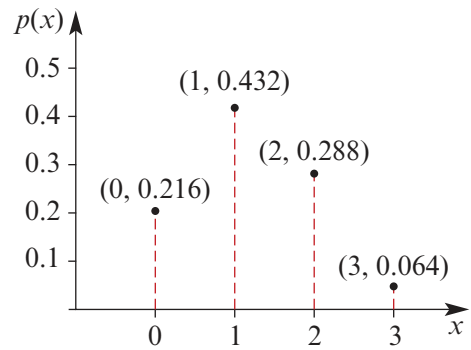
$$p(x) = P(X = x)$$

This function is called a **discrete probability function** or a **probability mass function**.

Consider again the black and white balls from Example 11. The probability distribution for X , the number of white balls in the sample, is given by the following table:

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.216	0.432	0.288	0.064

The probability distribution may also be given graphically, as shown on the right.



We will use the following notation:

- the sum of all the values of $p(x)$ is written as $\sum_x p(x)$
- the sum of the values of $p(x)$ for x between a and b inclusive is written as $\sum_{a \leq x \leq b} p(x)$

For any discrete probability function $p(x)$, the following two conditions must hold:

- 1 Each value of $p(x)$ belongs to the interval $[0, 1]$. That is,

$$0 \leq p(x) \leq 1 \quad \text{for all } x$$

- 2 The sum of all the values of $p(x)$ is 1. That is,

$$\sum_x p(x) = 1$$

To determine the probability that X takes a value in the interval from a to b (including the values a and b), add the values of $p(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{a \leq x \leq b} p(x)$$



Example 12

Consider the table shown.

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.2	0.3	0.1	0.4

- a Show that this table represents a discrete probability distribution.

- b Use the table to determine $P(X \leq 2)$.

Solution

- a Yes, each value of $p(x)$ is between 0 and 1, and the values add to 1.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{b } P(X \leq 2) &= p(0) + p(1) + p(2) \\
 &= 0.2 + 0.3 + 0.1 \\
 &= 0.6
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 13**

Let X be the number of heads showing when a fair coin is tossed three times. Determine:

- a** the probability distribution of X and show that all the probabilities sum to 1
- b** the probability that one or more heads show
- c** the probability that more than one head shows.

Solution

a The sample space is $\varepsilon = \{HHH, HHT, HTH, THH, HTT, THT, TTH, TTT\}$.

$$\text{Now } p(0) = P(X = 0) = P(\{TTT\}) = \frac{1}{8}$$

$$p(1) = P(X = 1) = P(\{HTT, THT, TTH\}) = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{3}{8}$$

$$p(2) = P(X = 2) = P(\{HHT, HTH, THH\}) = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{3}{8}$$

$$p(3) = P(X = 3) = P(\{HHH\}) = \frac{1}{8}$$

Thus the probability distribution of X is:

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{8}$

b The probability that one or more heads show is

$$P(X \geq 1) = p(1) + p(2) + p(3) = \frac{3}{8} + \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{7}{8}$$

c The probability that more than one head shows is

$$P(X > 1) = P(X \geq 2) = p(2) + p(3) = \frac{3}{8} + \frac{1}{8} = \frac{4}{8} = \frac{1}{2}$$

**Example 14**

The random variable X represents the number of chocolate chips in a certain brand of biscuit, and is known to have the following probability distribution.

x	2	3	4	5	6	7
$p(x)$	0.01	0.25	0.40	0.30	0.02	0.02

Determine:

- a** $P(X \geq 4)$
- b** $P(X \geq 4 | X > 2)$
- c** $P(X < 5 | X > 2)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{a} \quad P(X \geq 4) &= P(X = 4) + P(X = 5) + P(X = 6) + P(X = 7) \\
 &= 0.4 + 0.3 + 0.02 + 0.02 \\
 &= 0.74
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{b} \quad P(X \geq 4 | X > 2) &= \frac{P(X \geq 4)}{P(X > 2)} \\
 &= \frac{0.74}{0.99} \quad \text{since } P(X > 2) = 1 - 0.01 = 0.99 \\
 &= \frac{74}{99}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{c} \quad P(X < 5 | X > 2) &= \frac{P(2 < X < 5)}{P(X > 2)} \\
 &= \frac{P(X = 3) + P(X = 4)}{P(X > 2)} \\
 &= \frac{0.65}{0.99} \\
 &= \frac{65}{99}
 \end{aligned}$$

Uniform discrete random variables

A uniform discrete random variable X is one where each value of X is equally likely. For example, if X is the number showing when a fair die is rolled, then X is a uniform discrete random variable:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(X = x)$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

Instead of giving the whole table for the probability distribution of X , we could write

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{6} \quad x = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$$

A **uniform discrete random variable** X is one where each value of X has equal probability of occurring. If X can take n different values, say $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$, then

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$$

**Example 15**

The lottery Powerball uses 40 balls numbered $1, 2, 3, \dots, 40$. Let the random variable X represent the first number of a Powerball draw.

- a** Determine the probability distribution of X .
- b** Calculate the probability that X is an even number.

Solution

- a** Since each of the 40 possible values of X is equally likely, the random variable X has a discrete uniform distribution:

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{40} \quad x = 1, 2, 3, \dots, 40$$

- b** There are 20 even numbers in the set $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, 40\}$. Since each value of X is equally likely, we have

$$P(X \text{ is even}) = \frac{20}{40} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Non-uniform discrete random variables

Of course, most discrete random variables do not have a uniform distribution. In many cases, we can use our knowledge of probability to determine the probability distribution of a non-uniform discrete random variable.

**Example 16**

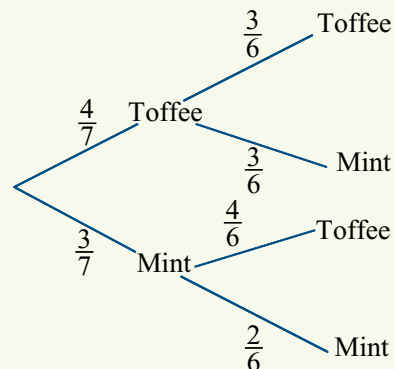
Kim selects two lollies at random from a jar containing three mints and four toffees. Determine the probability distribution for the number of mints she selects.

Solution

There are seven lollies in total. The probability that Kim chooses a mint with her first selection is $\frac{3}{7}$, and the probability that she chooses a toffee is $\frac{4}{7}$.

When Kim makes her second selection, there are only six lollies left, and the probability that she selects a mint or a toffee will depend on what she selected the first time.

The problem can be illustrated with a tree diagram as shown.



Since this can be considered as a sequence of two trials in which the second is dependent on the first, we can determine the probabilities associated with each outcome using the multiplication rule.

Let X be the number of mints that Kim selects. Then

$$P(X = 0) = \frac{4}{7} \times \frac{3}{6} = \frac{2}{7}$$

$$P(X = 1) = \left(\frac{4}{7} \times \frac{3}{6}\right) + \left(\frac{3}{7} \times \frac{4}{6}\right) = \frac{2}{7} + \frac{2}{7} = \frac{4}{7}$$

and $P(X = 2) = \frac{3}{7} \times \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{7}$

Thus the probability distribution for the number of mints is:

x	0	1	2
$P(X = x)$	$\frac{2}{7}$	$\frac{4}{7}$	$\frac{1}{7}$



Example 17

Robyn is playing a board game and must roll a 6 on a fair die before she can proceed. Let X represent the number of times that Robyn rolls the die to obtain a 6. Determine the probability distribution of X .

Solution

Since the die is fair, on each roll we have $P(6) = \frac{1}{6}$ and $P(\text{not } 6) = \frac{5}{6}$.

1 If $X = 1$, then Robyn obtains a 6 on the first roll. Therefore

$$P(X = 1) = \frac{1}{6}$$

2 If $X = 2$, then Robyn does not obtain a 6 on the first roll, but she does obtain a 6 on the second roll. Since the rolls of the die are independent, we have

$$P(X = 2) = \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{1}{6}$$

3 If $X = 3$, then Robyn does not obtain a 6 on the first two rolls, but she does obtain a 6 on the third roll. Therefore

$$P(X = 3) = \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{1}{6} = \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^2 \times \frac{1}{6}$$

4 If $X = 4$, then Robyn does not obtain a 6 on the first three rolls, but she does obtain a 6 on the fourth roll. Therefore

$$P(X = 4) = \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{5}{6} \times \frac{1}{6} = \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^3 \times \frac{1}{6}$$

Following this pattern, we have

$$P(X = x) = \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{x-1} \times \frac{1}{6} \quad x = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

Summary 9C

- For any discrete probability function $p(x)$, the following two conditions must hold:

- 1 Each value of $p(x)$ belongs to the interval $[0, 1]$. That is,

$$0 \leq p(x) \leq 1 \quad \text{for all } x$$

- 2 The sum of all the values of $p(x)$ is 1. That is,

$$\sum_x p(x) = 1$$

- To determine the probability that X takes a value in the interval from a to b (including the values a and b), add the values of $p(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{a \leq x \leq b} p(x)$$

- **Uniform distributions** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution of the form:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$$

**Exercise 9C**

- 1 Identify which of the following are discrete random variables.

- a the number of people in your family
- b waist measurement in cms
- c shirt size (small, medium, large, or extra large).
- d the number of times a die is rolled before obtaining a six

Example 11

- 2 A fair coin is tossed three times and the number of heads noted.

- a List the sample space.
- b List the possible values of the random variable X , the number of heads, together with the corresponding outcomes.
- c Determine $P(X \geq 2)$.

Example 12

- 3 Consider the following table:

x	0	1	2	3	4
$p(x)$	0.1	0.2	0.1	0.4	0.2

- a Show that this meets the conditions to be a discrete probability distribution.
- b Use the table to determine $P(X \leq 3)$.

- 4 Consider the table shown on the right.

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.1	0.4	0.2	0.3

- a Show that this meets the conditions to be a discrete probability distribution.
 b Use the table to determine $P(X \geq 2)$.

- 5 Which of the following are *not* probability distributions?

a

x	1	3	5	7
$p(x)$	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.7

b

x	-1	0	1	2
$p(x)$	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25

c

x	0.25	0.5	0.75	1.0
$p(x)$	-0.5	-0.25	0.25	0.5

d

x	10	20	30	40
$p(x)$	10%	20%	30%	40%

Example 13

- 6 A jar contains four red and five blue balls. A ball is withdrawn, its colour is observed, and it is then replaced. This is done twice. Let X be the number of red balls in sample of two balls withdrawn.
- a List the sample space.
 b List the possible values of X .
 c Determine the probability distribution of X .

- 7 A coin is known to be biased such that the probability of obtaining a head on any toss is 0.4. Determine the probability distribution of X , the number of heads observed when the coin is tossed twice.

- 8 Two dice are rolled and the numbers noted.

- a List the sample space for this experiment.
 b Determine the probability distribution of Y , the remainder when the larger number showing is divided by the smaller number. (Note that, if the two numbers are the same, then $Y = 0$.)

Example 14

- 9 Two dice are rolled and the numbers noted.

- a List the sample space.
 b A random variable Y is defined as the total of the numbers showing on the two dice. Determine the probability distribution of Y .
 c Determine:

i $P(Y < 5)$

ii $P(Y = 3 | Y < 5)$

iii $P(Y \leq 3 | Y < 7)$

iv $P(Y \geq 7 | Y > 4)$

v $P(Y = 7 | Y > 4)$

vi $P(Y = 7 | Y < 8)$

- 10** Suppose that three balls are selected at random, with replacement, from a jar containing four white and six black balls. Let X be the number of white balls in the sample.

a Determine the probability distribution of X .

b Determine:

i $P(X \geq 2)$

ii $P(X = 3 | X \geq 2)$

- 11** A spinner is numbered from 1 to 5, and each of the five numbers is equally likely to come up. Determine:

a the probability distribution of X , the number showing on the spinner

b $P(X \geq 3)$, the probability that the number showing on the spinner is three or more

c $P(X \leq 3 | X \geq 3)$.

Example 15

- 12** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{10} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 10$$

Determine:

a $P(X = 5)$

b $P(X \leq 2)$

c $P(1 \leq X \leq 5)$

- 13** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{8} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 8$$

Determine:

a $P(X = 8)$

b $P(X \geq 6)$

c $P(2 \leq X < 4)$

- 14** An urn contains 100 balls that are numbered from 1 to 100. Let X be the number obtained when a ball is drawn at random from the urn.

a Determine the probability distribution of X .

b Determine the probability that the number drawn is a multiple of 10.

- 15** A random variable X has a discrete uniform distribution:

$$P(X = x) = k \quad x = 1, 2, 3, 4$$

Determine:

a the value of k

b $P(X = 2)$

c $P(X = 2 | X > 1)$.

Example 16

- 16** Lee selects two lollies at random, without replacement, from a jar containing four mints and three toffees. Determine the probability distribution for the number of mints selected.

Example 17

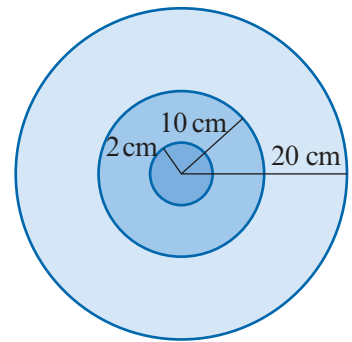
- 17** Belle decides to phone her friends one at a time until someone answers. Suppose that the probability of any one of her friends answering her call when she phones is 0.3. Let X represent the number of phone calls she makes before someone answers. Determine the probability distribution of X .

- 18** Three balls are selected from a jar containing four black and six red balls. Determine the probability distribution of the number of black balls in the sample:
- a** if the ball chosen is replaced after each selection
 - b** if the ball chosen is not replaced after each selection.

- 19** Suppose that two socks are drawn without replacement from a drawer containing four red and six black socks. Let X represent the number of red socks obtained.
- a** Determine the probability distribution of X .
 - b** From the probability distribution, determine the probability that a pair of socks is obtained.

- 20** A dartboard consists of three circular sections, with radii of 2 cm, 10 cm and 20 cm respectively, as shown in the diagram.

When a dart lands in the centre circle the score is 100 points, in the middle circular section the score is 20 points and in the outer circular section the score is 10 points. Assume that all darts thrown hit the board, each dart is equally likely to land at any point on the dartboard, and none lands on the lines.



- a** Determine the probability distribution for X , the number of points scored on one throw.
- b** Determine the probability distribution for Y , the total score when two darts are thrown.

- 21** A die is weighted as follows:

$$P(2) = P(3) = P(4) = P(5) = 0.2, \quad P(1) = P(6) = 0.1$$

The die is rolled twice, and the smaller of the numbers which showed is noted, or the number on both rolls if the same number shows twice. Let Y represent this value.

- a** List the sample space.
 - b** List the possible values of Y .
 - c** Determine the probability distribution of Y .
- 22** Erin and Nick are going to play a tennis match. Suppose that they each have an equal chance of winning any set (0.5) and that they plan to play until one player has won three sets. Let X be the number of sets played until the match is complete.
- a** Determine $P(X = 3)$.
 - b** List the outcomes that correspond to $X = 4$, and use this to determine $P(X = 4)$.
 - c** Hence, or otherwise, determine $P(X = 5)$.

9D Expected value, variance and standard deviation

Learning intentions

- ▶ To understand and calculate the **expected value** of a discrete random variable.
- ▶ To understand and calculate the **variance** and the **standard deviation** of a discrete random variable.

From your studies of statistics, you may already be familiar with the mean as a measure of centre and with the variance and the standard deviation as measures of spread. When these are calculated from a set of data, they are termed ‘sample statistics’. It is also possible to use the probability distribution to determine the theoretically ‘true’ values of the mean, variance and standard deviation. When they are calculated from the probability distribution, they are called ‘population parameters’. Determining the values of these parameters is the topic for this section.

Expected value

When the mean of a random variable is determined from the probability distribution, it is generally called the **expected value** of the random variable. Expected value has a wide variety of applications. The concept of expected value first arose in gambling problems, where gamblers wished to know how much they could expect to win or lose in the long run, in order to decide whether or not a particular game was a good investment.



Example 18

A person may buy a lucky ticket for \$1. They have a 20% chance of winning \$2, a 5% chance of winning \$11, and otherwise they lose. Is this a good game to play?

Solution

Let Y be the amount the person will profit from each game. As it costs \$1 to play, the person can lose \$1 ($Y = -1$), win \$2 so that their profit is \$1 ($Y = 1$) or win \$11 so that their profit is \$10 ($Y = 10$). Thus the profit from each game, Y , has a probability distribution given by:

p	-1	1	10
$P(P = p)$	0.75	0.20	0.05

Suppose you played the game 1000 times. You would expect to lose \$1 about 750 times, to win \$1 about 200 times and to win \$10 about 50 times. Thus, you would win about

$$\frac{-1 \times 750 + 1 \times 200 + 10 \times 50}{1000} = -\$0.05 \text{ per game}$$

Thus your ‘expectation’ is to lose 5 cents per game, and we write this as

$$E(P) = -0.05$$

Note: This value tells us that in the long run, you would expect to lose about 5 cents per game. It is not the amount we expect to profit on any one game. (You cannot lose 5 cents in one game!) It is the amount that we expect to win (or lose) on average per game in the long run.

We can use the probability distribution of a random variable to determine the **expected value**.

The **expected value** of a discrete random variable X is determined by summing the products of each value of X and the probability that X takes that value. That is:

$$E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot P(X = x) = \sum_x x \cdot p(x)$$

Alternatively we can write the rule for $E(X)$ as:

$$E(X) = \sum_i p_i \cdot x_i$$

where p_i is the probability of outcome x_i occurring.

The expected value $E(X)$ may be considered as the long-run average value of X . It is generally denoted by the Greek letter μ (mu), and is also called the **mean** of X .



Example 19

A coin is biased in favour of heads such that the probability of obtaining a head on any single toss is 0.6. The coin is tossed three times and the results noted. If X is the number of heads obtained on the three tosses, determine $E(X)$, the expected value of X .

Solution

The following probability distribution can be found by listing the outcomes in the sample space and determining the value of X and the associated probability for each outcome.

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.064	0.288	0.432	0.216

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mu = E(X) &= \sum_x x \cdot p(x) \\
 &= (0 \times 0.064) + (1 \times 0.288) + (2 \times 0.432) + (3 \times 0.216) \\
 &= 0.288 + 0.864 + 0.648 \\
 &= 1.8
 \end{aligned}$$

Note: This means that, if the experiment were repeated many times, then an average of 1.8 heads per three tosses would be observed.

Sometimes we wish to find the expected value of a function of X . This is determined by calculating the value of the function for each value of X , and then summing the products of these values and the associated probabilities.

The expected value of $g(X)$ is given by

$$E[g(X)] = \sum_x g(x) \cdot p(x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot g(x_i)$$

where p_i is the probability of outcome x_i occurring.



Example 20

For the random variable X defined in Example 19, determine:

a $E(3X + 1)$

b $E(X^2)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad E(3X + 1) &= \sum_x (3x + 1) \cdot p(x) \\ &= (1 \times 0.064) + (4 \times 0.288) + (7 \times 0.432) + (10 \times 0.216) \\ &= 6.4 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad E(X^2) &= \sum_x x^2 \cdot p(x) \\ &= (0^2 \times 0.064) + (1^2 \times 0.288) + (2^2 \times 0.432) + (3^2 \times 0.216) \\ &= 3.96 \end{aligned}$$

Let us compare the values found in Example 20 with the value of $E(X)$ found in Example 19.

In part **a**, we found that:

$$E(3X + 1) = 6.4$$

$$\text{Since } 3E(X) + 1 = 3 \times 1.8 + 1 = 6.4$$

$$\text{then } E(3X + 1) = 3E(X) + 1$$

In part **b**, we found that:

$$E(X^2) = 3.96$$

$$\text{Since } [E(X)]^2 = 1.8^2 = 3.24$$

$$\text{then } E(X^2) \neq [E(X)]^2$$

These two examples illustrate an important point concerning expected values.

In general, the expected value of a function of X is not equal to that function of the expected value of X . That is,

$$E[g(X)] \neq g[E(X)]$$

An exception is when the function is linear:

Expected value of $aX + b$

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b \quad (\text{for } a, b \text{ constant})$$

This is illustrated in the following example.

**Example 21**

For a \$5 monthly fee, a TV repair company guarantees customers a complete service. The company estimates the probability that a customer will require one service call in a month as 0.05, the probability of two calls as 0.01 and the probability of three or more calls as 0.00. Each call costs the repair company \$40. Determine the TV repair company's expected monthly gain from such a contract.

Solution

We may summarise the given information in the following table.

Calls	0	1	2	≥ 3
Gain, g	5	-35	-75	
$p(g)$	0.94	0.05	0.01	0.00

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(G) &= \sum_{g=0}^2 g \cdot p(g) \\
 &= 5 \times 0.94 - 35 \times 0.05 - 75 \times 0.01 \\
 &= 2.20
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the company can expect to gain \$2.20 per month on each contract sold.

Alternative solution

An alternative method of solution uses the formula for the expected value of $aX + b$, as follows.

Let X be the number of calls received. Then

$$G = 5 - 40X$$

and so $E(G) = 5 - 40 \times E(X)$

Since $E(X) = 1 \times 0.05 + 2 \times 0.01$

$$= 0.07$$

we have $E(G) = 5 - 40 \times 0.07$

$$= 2.20 \quad \text{as previously determined.}$$

Another useful property of expectation is that the expected value of the sum of two random variables is equal to the sum of their expected values. That is, if X and Y are two random variables, then

$$E(X + Y) = E(X) + E(Y)$$

Measures of variability: variance and standard deviation

As well as knowing the long-run average value of a random variable (the mean), it is also useful to have a measure of how close to this mean the possible values of the random variable are—that is, a measure of how spread out the probability distribution is. The most useful measures of variability for a discrete random variable are the variance and the standard deviation.

The **variance** of a random variable X is a measure of the spread of the probability distribution about its mean or expected value μ . It is defined as

$$\text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2] = \sum_x (x - \mu)^2 \cdot p(x)$$

Alternatively we can write the rule for $\text{Var}(X)$ as:

$$\text{Var}(X) = \sum_i p_i \cdot (x_i - \mu)^2$$

where p_i is the probability of outcome x_i occurring.

The variance is usually denoted by σ^2 , where σ is the lowercase Greek letter *sigma*.

Since the variance is determined by squaring the distance from X to μ , it is no longer in the units of measurement of the original random variable X . A measure of spread in the appropriate unit is found by taking the square root of the variance.

The **standard deviation** of X is defined as

$$\text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$$

The standard deviation is usually denoted by σ .



Example 22

Suppose that a discrete random variable X has the probability distribution shown in the following table, where $c > 0$.

x	$-c$	c
$p(x)$	0.5	0.5

Determine the standard deviation of X .

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mu &= E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot p(x) \\ &= (-c \times 0.5) + (c \times 0.5) \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\sigma^2 &= \text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2] \\
&= E(X^2) && \text{since } \mu = 0 \\
&= \sum_x x^2 \cdot p(x) \\
&= (-c)^2 \times 0.5 + c^2 \times 0.5 \\
&= c^2
\end{aligned}$$

which is the average of (the distance from X to μ)².

Therefore $\sigma = \text{sd}(X) = c$.

Using the definition is not always the easiest way to calculate the variance.

An alternative (computational) formula for variance is

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2$$

Proof We already know that

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b \quad (1)$$

$$\text{and } E(X + Y) = E(X) + E(Y) \quad (2)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Hence } \text{Var}(X) &= E[(X - \mu)^2] \\
&= E(X^2 - 2\mu X + \mu^2) \\
&= E(X^2) + E(-2\mu X + \mu^2) && \text{using (2)} \\
&= E(X^2) - 2\mu E(X) + \mu^2 && \text{using (1)} \\
&= E(X^2) - 2\mu^2 + \mu^2 && \text{since } \mu = E(X) \\
&= E(X^2) - \mu^2
\end{aligned}$$



Example 23

For the probability distribution shown, determine $E(X^2)$ and $[E(X)]^2$ and hence calculate the variance of X .

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.08	0.18	0.4	0.34

Solution

We have

$$E(X) = 1 \times 0.18 + 2 \times 0.4 + 3 \times 0.34 = 2$$

$$[E(X)]^2 = \mu^2 = 4$$

$$E(X^2) = 1 \times 0.18 + 4 \times 0.4 + 9 \times 0.34 = 4.84$$

Hence

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2 = 4.84 - 4 = 0.84$$

Variance of $aX + b$

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X) \quad (\text{for } a, b \text{ constant})$$

**Example 24**

If X is a random variable such that $\text{Var}(X) = 9$, determine:

a $\text{Var}(3X + 2)$

b $\text{Var}(-X)$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a } \text{Var}(3X + 2) &= 3^2 \text{Var}(X) \\ &= 9 \times 9 \\ &= 81 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b } \text{Var}(-X) &= \text{Var}(-1 \times X) \\ &= (-1)^2 \text{Var}(X) \\ &= \text{Var}(X) \\ &= 9 \end{aligned}$$

The mean and variance of a uniform discrete random variable

A **uniform discrete random variable** X is one where each value of X has equal probability of occurring. If X can take n different values, say $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$, then

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$$

We can determine the mean and standard deviation of a uniform discrete random variable from first principles, as shown in the following example.

**Example 25**

Let X represent the number appearing on the uppermost face when a fair die is rolled. The probability distribution of X is shown in the table below.

a Determine $E(X)$.

b Determine $\text{Var}(X)$.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a } E(X) &= \sum_x x \cdot p(x) \\ &= \frac{1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6}{6} \\ &= \frac{21}{6} \\ &= 3.5 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b } \text{Var}(X) &= E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2 \\ E(X^2) &= \sum_x x^2 \cdot p(x) \\ &= \frac{1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + 4^2 + 5^2 + 6^2}{6} \\ &= \frac{91}{6} \\ \text{Var}(X) &= \frac{91}{6} - \left[\frac{21}{6} \right]^2 = \frac{35}{12} = 2.917 \end{aligned}$$

We can determine a general rule for the mean and variance of a discrete uniform random variable which has the following distribution:

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

To determine $E(X)$:

$$E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot p(x) = \frac{1 + 2 + \dots + n}{n}$$

$$\text{Using the result } 1 + 2 + 3 + \dots + n = \frac{1}{2}n(n+1)$$

$$E(X) = \frac{1}{2}n(n+1) \div n = \frac{(n+1)}{2}$$

To determine $\text{Var}(X)$

$$E(X^2) = \sum_x x^2 \cdot p(x) = \frac{1^2 + 2^2 + \dots + n^2}{n}$$

$$\text{Using the result } 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \dots + n^2 = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1)$$

$$E(X^2) = \frac{1}{6}n(n+1)(2n+1) \div n = \frac{(n+1)(2n+1)}{6}$$

$$\text{Thus } \text{Var}(X) = \frac{(n+1)(2n+1)}{6} - \left[\frac{(n+1)}{2} \right]^2 = \frac{n^2 - 1}{12}$$

If X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$E(X) = \frac{(n+1)}{2}$$

$$\text{Var}(X) = \frac{n^2 - 1}{12}$$



Example 26

Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{10} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 10$$

Determine

a $E(X)$

b $\text{Var}(X)$

Solution

$$\mathbf{a} \quad E(X) = \frac{(n+1)}{2} = \frac{11}{2} = 5.5$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad \text{Var}(X) = \frac{n^2 - 1}{12} = \frac{10^2 - 1}{12} = \frac{33}{4}$$

Summary 9D

- The **expected value** (or **mean**) of a discrete random variable X may be considered as the long-run average value of X . It is found by summing the products of each value of X and the probability that X takes that value. That is,

$$\mu = E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot P(X = x) = \sum_x x \cdot p(x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot x_i$$

- The **variance** of a discrete random variable X is a measure of the spread of the probability distribution about its mean μ . It is defined as

$$\sigma^2 = \text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2] = \sum_x (x - \mu)^2 \cdot p(x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot (x_i - \mu)^2$$

An alternative (computational) formula for variance is

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2$$

- The **standard deviation** of a random variable X is defined as

$$\sigma = \text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$$

- The mean and variance of $aX + b$, where a and b are constants, are given by:

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b$$

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$$

- If X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

then

$$E(X) = \frac{(n+1)}{2}$$

$$\text{Var}(X) = \frac{n^2 - 1}{12}$$

Exercise 9D

Example 18

- 1 A person's profit from the game of chance, $\$P$, has a probability distribution given by:

p	-2	0	18
$P(P = p)$	0.6	0.3	0.1

Determine the expected profit if you play the game 100 times.

Example 19

- 2 For each of the following probability distributions, determine the expected value, $E(X)$:

a

x	1	3	5	7
$p(x)$	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.3

b

x	-1	0	1	2
$p(x)$	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25

c

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$p(x)$	0.09	0.22	0.26	0.21	0.13	0.06	0.02	0.01

d

x	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{36}$	$\frac{2}{36}$	$\frac{3}{36}$	$\frac{4}{36}$	$\frac{5}{36}$	$\frac{6}{36}$	$\frac{5}{36}$	$\frac{4}{36}$	$\frac{3}{36}$	$\frac{2}{36}$	$\frac{1}{36}$

e

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{10}$	$\frac{1}{10}$

- 3** A business consultant evaluates a proposed venture as follows. A company stands to make a profit of \$10 000 with probability 0.15, to make a profit of \$5000 with probability 0.45, to break even with probability 0.25, and to lose \$5000 with probability 0.15. Determine the expected profit of the company.

Example 20

- 4** A random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.1	0.3	0.2	0.4

Determine:

- a** $E(X)$ **b** $E(X^2)$ **c** $E(X^3)$

Example 21

- 5** If X is a random variable such that $E(X) = 2$, determine:

- a** $E(3X + 2)$ **b** $E(2X - 1)$ **c** $E(1 - 2X)$ **d** $E\left(\frac{X}{2} + 3\right)$

- 6** The random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	2	3	4	5	6
$p(x)$	0.01	0.25	0.40	0.30	0.04

Calculate:

- a** $E(X)$ **b** $E(5X - 4)$

- 7** Manuel is a car salesperson. In any week his probability of making sales is as follows:

Number of cars sold, x	2	3	4	5	6
$p(x)$	0.45	0.25	0.20	0.08	0.02

- a** Determine the expected value of the number of cars he sells each week.
b Hence determine his expected weekly income:
i if he is paid \$1000 commission on each car sold.
ii if he is paid a base salary of \$1000 per week plus \$600 commission on each car sold.

Example 22, 23

- 8** For each of the following probability distributions, determine the variance and standard deviation of X :

a

x	1	3	5	7
$p(x)$	0.1	0.3	0.3	0.3

b

x	-1	0	1	2
$p(x)$	0.25	0.25	0.25	0.25

c

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.1	0.1	0.2	0.2	0.2	0.1	0.1

- 9** A discrete random variable X has the probability distribution as shown in the table. Determine:

x	0	1	2	4	8
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{16}$

- a** $E(X)$ **b** $\text{Var}(X)$ **c** $\text{sd}(X)$
- 10** The random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	-2	0	2	4	6
$p(x)$	0.01	0.25	0.40	0.30	0.04

Determine:

- a** $E(X)$ **b** $\text{Var}(X)$ **c** $\text{sd}(X)$

Example 24

- 11** If X is a random variable such that $\text{Var}(X) = 16$, determine:

- a** $\text{Var}(3X + 2)$ **b** $\text{Var}(2X - 1)$ **c** $\text{Var}(1 - 2X)$ **d** $\text{Var}\left(\frac{X}{2} + 3\right)$

- 12** If X is a random variable such that $\text{Var}(X) = 9$, determine:

- a** $\text{Var}(2 - 3X)$ **b** $\text{Var}(1.5X)$ **c** $\text{sd}(1 - 3X)$ **d** $\text{sd}\left(\frac{X}{3} + 1\right)$

Example 25, 26

- 13** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{20} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 20$$

Determine:

- a** $E(X)$ **b** $\text{Var}(X)$ **c** $P(X < \mu)$

- 14** A number is chosen randomly from the set $\{1, 2, 3, \dots, 10\}$. Let X represent the number chosen. Determine:

- a** $P(X = 4)$ **b** $P(X \leq 4)$ **c** $E(X)$ **d** $\text{Var}(X)$

- 15** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{8} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 8$$

Let $Y = 2X + 1$. Determine:

a $E(Y)$

b $\text{Var}(Y)$

- 16** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

If $E(X) = 7$, determine the value of n .

- 17** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

If $\text{Var}(X) = 44$, determine the value of n .

- 18** Jessie makes tables for a living. In any week the number of tables she makes has the following probability distribution:

Number of tables made, x	4	5	6	7
$p(x)$	0.25	0.25	0.35	0.15

It costs her \$500 per week fixed costs to run her business, plus another \$100 per table for materials. Determine the minimum price she should sell each table for, if she would like to generate an average income of at least \$1000 per week.

- 19** The average hourly wage for a hospitality worker in a certain restaurant is \$33.80 per hour, with a standard deviation of \$5.45. The restaurant has been very successful, so the manager agrees to give each worker an increase of 10% of their hourly wage, plus an additional \$2.10 per hour. Determine the mean and standard deviation of the new hourly rates for these hospitality workers.

- 20** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{6} \quad x = 7, 8, \dots, 12$$

Determine the mean and variance of Y .

- 21** Suppose X is a discrete uniform random variable with distribution

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{5} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 5$$

Let $Y = aX + b$. If $E(Y) = 9$, and $\text{Var}(Y) = 50$, determine the values of a and b .

- 22** Suppose that X is a discrete uniform random variable such that

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{n} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, n$$

If $E(X) = \frac{3}{7} \text{Var}(X)$, determine the value of n .

9E Bernoulli sequences and the binomial distribution

Learning intentions

- ▶ To use a Bernoulli random variable as a model for two-outcome situations.
- ▶ To understand the concept of a **binomial random variable** as the number of successes in a sequence of Bernoulli trials.
- ▶ To determine probabilities associated with the **binomial probability distribution**.
- ▶ To calculate the mean and variance of a binomial distribution.
- ▶ To modelling and solve problems that involve with binomial distributions.

Bernoulli trials

Suppose we are interested in a random experiment which has only two possible outcomes. For example, when tossing a coin, the random experiment might be ‘head’ or ‘tail’. When tossing a dice the random experiment might be a ‘six’ or ‘not a six’. Suppose further that the probability of observing a particular outcome is the same each time we undertake the random experiment. Such random experiments are called **Bernoulli trials**.

A **Bernoulli trial** is a random experiment with the following properties:

- The outcomes take one of two values, which are usually designated either a success S , or a failure F .
- The probability of success each time the random experiment is conducted is a constant p , and thus the probability of failure is $(1 - p)$.

Bernoulli random variables

The outcome from a Bernoulli trial is represented by a **Bernoulli random variable**, which is a random variable that takes only the values 0 (indicating a failure) and 1 (indicating a success). Thus a Bernoulli random variable X has a probability distribution of the form

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	$(1 - p)$	p



Example 27

Suppose that a hockey player has a probability of 0.3 of scoring a goal from a penalty shot each time that they take the shot. If the random variable X represents the outcome from a shot, write down the probability distribution of X .

Solution

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.7	0.3

Explanation

X will take the value 0 if goal is missed, and the value 1 if the goal is scored.

The binomial probability distribution

Consider now a sequence of n independent Bernoulli trials. The total number of successes in a sequence of n independent Bernoulli trials is called a **binomial random variable** and is said to have a **binomial distribution**.

Suppose for example the hockey player from Example 27 takes three penalty shots, where each time the probability of scoring a goal is 0.3. The random variable X is defined as the total number of goals they score. The possible values that X can take are $\{0, 1, 2, 3\}$. We can list the possible outcomes from the three shots, and determine the probability of each, as follows (G represents making the goal, M represents missing the goal):

Outcome	Score	Probability	
GGG	$X = 3$	$0.3 \times 0.3 \times 0.3$	$P(X = 3) = (0.3)^3 = 0.027$
GGM	$X = 2$	$0.3 \times 0.3 \times 0.7$	$P(X = 2) = 3 \times (0.3)^2 \times (0.7) = 0.189$
GMG	$X = 2$	$0.3 \times 0.7 \times 0.3$	
MGG	$X = 2$	$0.7 \times 0.3 \times 0.3$	
MMG	$X = 1$	$0.7 \times 0.7 \times 0.3$	$P(X = 1) = 3 \times (0.3) \times (0.7)^2 = 0.441$
MGM	$X = 1$	$0.7 \times 0.3 \times 0.7$	
GMM	$X = 1$	$0.3 \times 0.7 \times 0.7$	
MMM	$X = 0$	$0.7 \times 0.7 \times 0.7$	$P(X = 0) = (0.7)^3 = 0.343$

Thus the entire probability distribution can be defined by the following table.

x	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	0.027	0.189	0.441	0.343

Instead of listing all the outcomes to determine the probability distribution, we can use our knowledge of selections from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

Consider the probability that $X = 1$, that is, when exactly one 3 is observed. We can see from the table that there are three ways this can occur. Since the 3 could occur on the first, second or third roll of the die, we can consider this as selecting one object from a group of three, which can be done in $\binom{3}{1}$ ways.

Consider the probability that $X = 2$, that is, when exactly two 3s are observed. Again from the table there are three ways this can occur. Since the two 3s could occur on any two of the three rolls of the die, we can consider this as selecting two objects from a group of three, which can be done in $\binom{3}{2}$ ways.

This leads us to a general formula for this probability distribution

$$P(X = x) = \binom{3}{x} \left(\frac{1}{6}\right)^x \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{3-x} \quad x = 0, 1, 2, 3$$

This is an example of the binomial distribution.

Consider a sequence of n identical trials such that:

- Each trial results in one of two outcomes, which are usually designated as either a **success**, S , or a **failure**, F .
- The probability of success on a single trial, p , is constant for all trials (and thus the probability of failure on a single trial is $(1 - p)$).
- The trials are independent (so that the outcome of any trial is not affected by the outcome of any previous trial).

If the random variable, X , is the number of successes in n such trials then X has a **binomial distribution** and

$$P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

where $\binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$

Note: n and p are referred to as **parameters** of the binomial distribution.



Example 28

Suppose that in a certain town the probability of rain falling on any one day is 0.4. Assuming that the occurrence of rain on any day is independent of whether or not rain falls on any other day, determine the probability that rain will fall on exactly three days in a week.

Solution

Let X represent the number of days on which it rains in a week. Since there are only two possible outcomes on each day (rain or no rain), and the probability of rain on any day is constant (0.4), regardless of previous outcomes, then X has a binomial distribution with parameters $n = 7$ and $p = 0.4$.

Thus $P(X = x) = \binom{7}{x} (0.4)^x (0.6)^{7-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, 7$

and so

$$\begin{aligned} P(X = 3) &= \binom{7}{3} (0.4)^3 (0.6)^{7-3} \\ &= \frac{7!}{3!4!} \times 0.064 \times 0.1296 \\ &= 0.290304 \end{aligned}$$



Example 29

For the situation described in Example 28, use a calculator to determine the probability that:

- a** rain will fall on exactly three days of a chosen week
- b** rain will fall on no more than three days of a chosen week
- c** rain will fall on at least three days of a chosen week.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non CAS

- a** As shown in Example 28, we want to determine $P(X = 3)$, where $n = 7$ and $p = 0.4$. Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Binomial Pdf** as shown to determine that $P(X = 3) = 0.290304$.

The dialog box for Binomial Pdf is shown. It has three input fields: 'Num Trials, n:' with value 7, 'Prob Success, p:' with value 0.4, and 'X Value:' with value 3. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

The calculator screen shows the command `binomPdf(7,0.4,3)` entered, and the result `0.290304` is displayed.

- b** Here $P(X \leq 3)$ is required. Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Binomial Cdf** and complete as shown to determine that $P(X \leq 3) = 0.710208$.

The dialog box for Binomial Cdf is shown. It has four input fields: 'Num Trials, n:' with value 7, 'Prob Success, p:' with value 0.4, 'Lower Bound:' with value 0, and 'Upper Bound:' with value 3. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

The calculator screen shows the command `binomCdf(7,0.4,0,3)` entered, and the result `0.710208` is displayed.

- c** Here $P(X \geq 3)$ is required. Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Binomial Cdf** and complete as shown to determine that $P(X \geq 3) = 0.580096$.

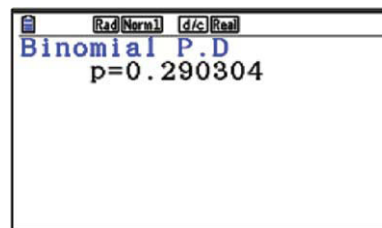
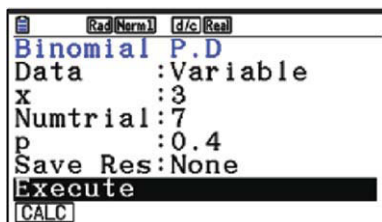
The dialog box for Binomial Cdf is shown. It has four input fields: 'Num Trials, n:' with value 7, 'Prob Success, p:' with value 0.4, 'Lower Bound:' with value 3, and 'Upper Bound:' with value 7. There are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons at the bottom.

The calculator screen shows the command `binomCdf(7,0.4,3,7)` entered, and the result `0.580096` is displayed.

Using the Casio

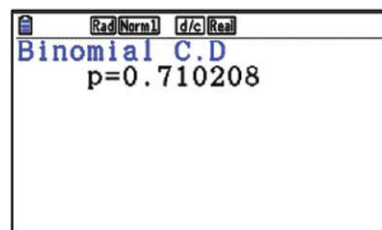
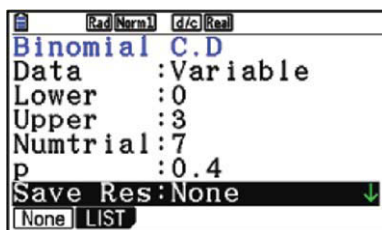
a As shown in Example 28, we want to determine $P(X = 3)$, where $n = 7$ and $p = 0.4$.

- In the **Statistics** mode, go to Menu 2.
- For the binomial probability distribution, select **Distributions** (F5), **Binomial** (F5), **Bpd** (F1).
- Enter the values of $x = 3$, $n = 7$, and $p = 0.4$ as shown.
- Press (EXE) to determine that $P(X = 3) = 0.290304$.



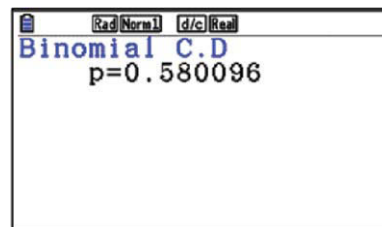
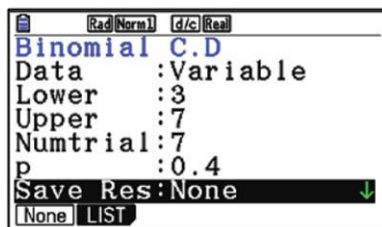
b Here $P(X \leq 3)$ is required.

- For the binomial cumulative distribution, select **Distributions** (F5), **Binomial** (F5), **Bcd** (F2).
- Enter the values of $Lower = 0$, $Upper = 3$, $n = 7$ and $p = 0.4$ as shown.
- Press (EXE) to determine that $P(X \leq 3) = 0.710208$.



c Here $P(X \geq 3)$ is required.

- For the binomial cumulative distribution, select **Distributions** (F5), **Binomial** (F5), **Bcd** (F2).
- Enter the values of $Lower = 3$, $Upper = 7$, $n = 7$ and $p = 0.4$ as shown.
- Press (EXE) to determine that $P(X \geq 3) = 0.580096$.



Expectation and variance for a Bernoulli random variable

The table on the right shows the probability distribution for a Bernoulli random variable.

y	0	1
$P(Y = y)$	$1 - p$	p

Thus $E(Y) = 0 \times (1 - p) + 1 \times p = p$

and $E(Y^2) = 0^2 \times (1 - p) + 1^2 \times p = p$

so $\text{Var}(Y) = p - p^2 = p(1 - p)$

Hence, if Y is a Bernoulli random variable with probability of success p , then

$$E(Y) = p$$

$$\text{Var}(Y) = p(1 - p)$$

Expectation and variance for a binomial random variable

How many heads would you expect to obtain, on average, if a fair coin was tossed 10 times?

While the exact number of heads in the 10 tosses would vary, and could theoretically take values from 0 to 10, it seems reasonable that the long-run average number of heads would be 5. It turns out that this is correct. That is, for a binomial random variable X with $n = 10$ and $p = 0.5$,

$$E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot P(X = x) = 5$$

In general, the expected value of a binomial random variable is equal to the number of trials multiplied by the probability of success. The variance can also be calculated from the parameters n and p .

If X is the number of successes in n trials, each with probability of success p , then the expected value and the variance of X are given by

$$E(X) = np$$

$$\text{Var}(X) = np(1 - p)$$

Note: These formulas are consistent with those for a Bernoulli random variable, which is a special case of a binomial random variable where $n = 1$.

While it is not necessary in this course to be familiar with the derivations of these formulas, they are included for completeness in the final section of this chapter.



Example 30

An examination consists of 30 multiple-choice questions, each question having three possible answers. A student guesses the answer to every question. Let X be the number of correct answers.

- a** Determine how many she will expect to get correct. That is, determine $E(X) = \mu$.
- b** Determine $\text{Var}(X)$.

Solution

The number of correct answers, X , is a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 30$ and $p = \frac{1}{3}$.

a The student has an expected result of $\mu = np = 10$ correct answers. (This is not enough to pass if the pass mark is 50%.)

b $\text{Var}(X) = np(1 - p)$

$$= 30 \times \frac{1}{3} \times \frac{2}{3} = \frac{20}{3}$$

Finding the sample size

While we can never be absolutely certain about the outcome of a random experiment, sometimes we are interested in knowing what size sample would be required to observe a certain outcome. For example, how many times do you need to roll a die to be reasonably sure of observing a six, or how many lotto tickets must you buy to be reasonably sure that you will win a prize?

**Example 31**

The probability of winning a prize in a game of chance is 0.48.

- a** Determine the least number of games that must be played to ensure that the probability of winning at least once is more than 0.95.
- b** Determine the least number of games that must be played to ensure that the probability of winning at least twice is more than 0.95.

Solution

Since the probability of winning each game is the same each time the game is played, this is an example of a binomial distribution, with the probability of success $p = 0.48$.

- a** The required answer is the smallest value of n such that $P(X \geq 1) > 0.95$.

$$\begin{aligned} P(X \geq 1) &> 0.95 \\ \Leftrightarrow 1 - P(X = 0) &> 0.95 \\ \Leftrightarrow P(X = 0) &< 0.05 \\ \Leftrightarrow 0.52^n &< 0.05 \quad \text{since } P(X = 0) = 0.52^n \end{aligned}$$

This can be solved by taking logarithms of both sides:

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(0.52^n) &< \ln(0.05) \\ n \ln(0.52) &< \ln(0.05) \\ \therefore n &> \frac{\ln(0.05)}{\ln(0.52)} \approx 4.58 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the game must be played at least five times to ensure that the probability of winning at least once is more than 0.95.

- b** The required answer is the smallest value of n such that $P(X \geq 2) > 0.95$, or equivalently, such that $P(X < 2) < 0.05$. We have

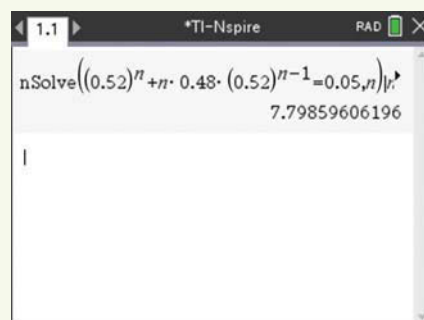
$$\begin{aligned} P(X < 2) &= P(X = 0) + P(X = 1) \\ &= \binom{n}{0} 0.48^0 0.52^n + \binom{n}{1} 0.48^1 0.52^{n-1} \\ &= 0.52^n + 0.48n(0.52)^{n-1} \end{aligned}$$

So the answer is the smallest value of n such that

$$0.52^n + 0.48n(0.52)^{n-1} < 0.05$$

This equation cannot be solved algebraically; but a graphics calculator can be used to find the solution $n > 7.7985 \dots$

Thus the game must be played at least eight times to ensure that the probability of winning at least twice is more than 0.95.



The following calculator inserts give a solution to part **b** of Example 31. Similar techniques can be used for part **a**.

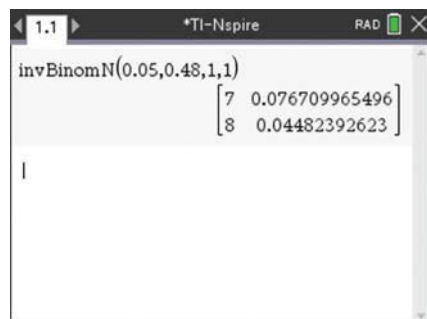
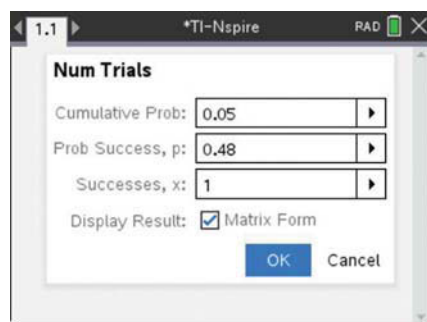


Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To find the smallest value of n such that $P(X \geq 2) > 0.95$, where $p = 0.48$:

- Rearrange the inequality to form $P(X \leq 1) < 0.05$
- Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Inverse Binomial N** and complete as shown, using **tab** or **▼** to move between cells.

Note: To help confirm that $n = 8$ satisfies $P(X \leq 1) < 0.05$, select the matrix display form.



Using the Casio

- Press **MENU** **7** to select **Table** mode.
- Select the binomial cumulative distribution:

OPTN **F6** **F3** **F1** **F5** **F2**

- Complete the rule as follows: 2, x , x , 0.48)
- Press **EXE**.

Note that this rule gives the probability of winning between 2 and x times, when x games are played.

- Select **Set** **F5** and adjust the Table Settings as shown. Press **EXIT** to return to the function list.
- Select **Table** **F6** and scroll down until the probability exceeds 0.95.
- Hence, at least eight games must be played to ensure that the probability of winning at least twice is more than 0.95.

Table Func :Y=
Y1=BinomialCD(2, []
Y2: []
Y3: []

Table Setting
X
Start:0
End :100
Step :1

X	Y1
5	0.7885
6	0.8707
7	0.9232
8	0.9551

FORMULA DELETE ROW EDIT GPH-CON GPH-PLT 8

Summary 9E

- A **Bernoulli sequence** is a sequence of trials with the following properties:
 - Each trial results in one of two outcomes, which are usually designated as either a success, S , or a failure, F .
 - The probability of success on a single trial, p , is constant for all trials (and thus the probability of failure on a single trial is $1 - p$).
 - The trials are independent (so that the outcome of any trial is not affected by the outcome of any previous trial).
- A **Bernoulli random variable** describes the outcome from a Bernoulli trial; it has a probability distribution of the form $P(Y = 1) = p$ and $P(Y = 0) = 1 - p$.
- The number of successes, X , in a Bernoulli sequence of n trials is called a **binomial random variable** and has a **binomial probability distribution**:

$$P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

$$\text{where } \binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x! (n - x)!}$$

- If X is the number of successes in n trials, each with probability of success p , then the expected value and the variance of X are given by
 - $E(X) = np$
 - $\text{Var}(X) = np(1 - p)$



Exercise 9E

Example 27

- 1 Explain which of the following describes a Bernoulli sequence:
 - a tossing a fair coin many times
 - b drawing balls from an urn containing five red and three black balls, replacing the chosen ball each time
 - c selecting people at random from the population and noting their age
- 2 Suppose that the probability of winning a game of chance is $\frac{1}{50}$, and this probability remains unchanged each time the game is played. Suppose further that a 'success' is defined as winning the game. The random variable X represents the number of successes in a single play of the game.
 - a Explain why X can be considered a Bernoulli random variable.
 - b Write down the probability distribution of X .

Example 28

- 3 Determine the probability of obtaining exactly four heads when a fair coin is tossed seven times, correct to four decimal places.
- 4 For a binomial distribution with $n = 4$ and $p = 0.2$, determine the probability of:
 - a three successes
 - b four successes.
- 5 For a binomial distribution with $n = 5$ and $p = 0.4$, determine the probability of:
 - a no successes
 - b three successes
 - c five successes.
- 6 Suppose that a fair coin is tossed three times, and the number of heads observed.
 - a Write down a general rule for the probability distribution of the number of heads.
 - b Use the rule to calculate the probability of observing exactly two heads.
- 7 Suppose that X is the number of male children born into a family of six children. Assume that the distribution of X is binomial, with probability of success 0.48.
 - a Write down a rule for the probability distribution of the number of male children.
 - b Use the rule to calculate the probability that a family with six children will have exactly two male children.

Example 29

- 8 A fair die is rolled six times and the number of 2s noted. Determine the probability of:
 - a exactly three 2s
 - b more than three 2s
 - c at least three 2s.
- 9 Jo knows that each ticket has a probability of 0.1 of winning a prize in a lucky ticket competition. Suppose she buys 10 tickets.
 - a Write down a rule for the probability distribution of the number of winning tickets.
 - b Use the rule to calculate the probability that Jo has:
 - i no wins
 - ii at least one win.

- 10** Suppose that the probability that a person selected at random is left-handed is always 0.2. If 11 people are selected at random for the cricket team:
- a** Write down a rule for the probability distribution of the number of left-handed people on the team.
 - b** Use the rule to calculate the probability of selecting:
 - i** exactly two left-handers **ii** no left-handers **iii** at least one left-hander.
- 11** In a particular city, the probability of rain falling on any given day independent of weather on previous days is $\frac{1}{5}$.
- a** Write down a general rule for the probability distribution of the number of days of rain in a week.
 - b** Use the rule to calculate the probability that in a particular week rain will fall:
 - i** every day **ii** not at all **iii** on two or three days.
- 12** The probability of a particular drug causing side effects in a person is 0.2. Determine the probability that at least two people in a random sample of 10 people will experience side effects.
- 13** Records show that $x\%$ of people will pass their driver's licence on the first attempt. If six students attempt their driver's licence, write down in terms of x the probability that:
- a** all six students pass **b** only one fails **c** no more than two fail.
- 14** A supermarket has four checkouts. A customer in a hurry decides to leave without making a purchase if all the checkouts are busy. At that time of day the probability of each checkout being free is 0.25. Assuming that whether or not a checkout is busy is independent of any other checkout, calculate the probability that the customer will make a purchase.
- 15** A fair die is rolled 50 times. Determine the probability of observing:
- a** exactly 10 sixes **b** no more than 10 sixes **c** at least 10 sixes.
- 16** Determine the probability of obtaining at least nine successes in 100 trials for which the probability of success is $p = 0.1$.
- 17** A fair coin is tossed 50 times. If X is the number of heads observed, determine:
- a** $P(X = 25)$ **b** $P(X \leq 25)$ **c** $P(X \leq 10)$ **d** $P(X \geq 40)$
- 18** A survey of the population in a particular city found that 40% of people regularly participate in sport. Determine the probability that fewer than half of a random sample of six people regularly participate in sport.
- 19** An examination consists of six multiple-choice questions. Each question has four possible answers. At least three correct answers are required to pass the examination. Suppose that a student guesses the answer to each question.
- a** Determine the probability the student guesses every question correctly.
 - b** Determine the probability the student will pass the examination.

- 20** Determine the mean and variance of a Bernoulli random variable if the probability of success is:

a 0.2

b 0.3

c 0.4

Example 30

- 21** Determine the mean and variance of the binomial random variables with parameters:

a $n = 25$, $p = 0.2$

b $n = 10$, $p = 0.6$

c $n = 500$, $p = \frac{1}{3}$

d $n = 40$, $p = 20\%$

- 22** A fair die is rolled six times.

a Determine the expected value for the number of sixes obtained.

b Determine the probability that more than the expected number of sixes is obtained.

- 23** The survival rate for a certain disease is 75%. Of the next 50 people who contract the disease, determine how many you would expect to survive.

- 24** Records show that 60% of the students in a certain state attend government schools. If a group of 200 students are to be selected at random, calculate the mean and standard deviation of the number of students in the group who attend government schools.

- 25** Suppose X is a Bernoulli random variable, and $E(X) = 0.16$, determine the standard deviation of X .

- 26** The manager of a shop knows from experience that 70% of her customers will use a credit card to pay for their purchases. Of the next ten customers, determine:

a the mean and standard deviation of the number of customers who will use a credit card

b the probability that six of the next ten customers will use a credit card

c the probability that exactly six of the next ten customers will use a credit card, given that at least six of the next ten customers use a credit card.

- 27** A multiple-choice test has eight questions, each with four possible answers, only one of which is correct. If a student guesses the answer to every question, determine:

a the mean and standard deviation of the number of correct answers

b the probability of six or more correct answers

c the probability that every answer is correct, given they have six or more correct.

- 28** A binomial random variable X has mean 12 and variance 9. Determine the parameters n and p , and hence determine $P(X = 7)$.

- 29** A binomial random variable X has mean 30 and variance 21. Determine the parameters n and p , and hence determine $P(X = 20)$.

Example 31

- 30** The probability of a target shooter hitting the bullseye on any one shot is 0.2.

a If the shooter takes five shots at the target, determine the probability of:

i missing the bullseye every time

ii hitting the bullseye at least once.

- b** Determine the smallest number of shots the shooter should make to ensure a probability of more than 0.95 of hitting the bullseye at least once.
- c** Determine the smallest number of shots the shooter should make to ensure a probability of more than 0.95 of hitting the bullseye at least twice.
- 31** The probability of winning a prize with a lucky ticket on a wheel of fortune is 0.1.
- a** If a person buys 10 lucky tickets, determine the probability of:
- winning twice
 - winning at least once.
- b** Determine the smallest number of tickets that should be bought to ensure a probability of more than 0.7 of winning at least once.
- 32** Rex is shooting at a target. His probability of hitting the target is 0.6. Determine the minimum number of shots needed for the probability of Rex hitting the target exactly five times to be more than 25%.
- 33** Janet is selecting chocolates at random out of a box. She knows that 20% of the chocolates have hard centres. Determine the minimum number of chocolates she needs to select to ensure that the probability of choosing exactly three hard centres is more than 10%.
- 34** The probability of winning a prize in a game of chance is 0.35. Determine the fewest number of games that must be played to ensure that the probability of winning at least twice is more than 0.9.
- 35** X is a binomial random variable with parameters p and n . The probability distribution of X is given in the following table.

x	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	0.512	0.384	0.096	0.008

Determine the values of p and n .

- 36** X is a binomial random variable with parameters $p = \frac{1}{4}$ and n .
If $P(X = 1) = \frac{729}{2048}$, determine the value of n .

Chapter summary

Probability

- Probability is a numerical measure of the chance of a particular event occurring and may be determined experimentally or by consideration of equally likely outcomes.
- Whatever method is used to determine the probability, the following rules will hold:
 - $0 \leq P(A) \leq 1$ for all events $A \subseteq \epsilon$
 - $P(\emptyset) = 0$ and $P(\epsilon) = 1$
 - $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$, where A' is the complement of A
 - $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$, the **addition rule**.
- Two events A and B are **mutually exclusive** if $A \cap B = \emptyset$. In this case, we have $P(A \cap B) = 0$ and therefore $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$.
- The **conditional probability** of event A occurring, given that event B has already occurred, is

$$P(A | B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)} \quad \text{if } P(B) \neq 0$$

giving $P(A \cap B) = P(A | B) \times P(B)$ (the **multiplication rule**)

- The **law of total probability** states that, in the case of two events A and B ,

$$P(A) = P(A | B)P(B) + P(A | B')P(B')$$

- Two events A and B are **independent** if $P(A | B) = P(A)$, so whether or not B has occurred has no effect on the probability of A occurring.
- Events A and B are independent if and only if $P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$.

Discrete random variables

- A **random variable** associates a number with each outcome of a random experiment.
- A **discrete** random variable is one which can take only a countable number of values. Often these values are whole numbers, but not necessarily.
- The **probability distribution** of a discrete random variable X is a function

$$p(x) = P(X = x)$$

that assigns a probability to each value of X . It can be represented by a rule, a table or a graph, and must give a probability $p(x)$ for every value x that X can take.

- For any discrete probability distribution, the following two conditions must hold:

1 Each value of $p(x)$ belongs to the interval $[0, 1]$. That is,

$$0 \leq p(x) \leq 1 \quad \text{for all } x$$

2 The sum of all the values of $p(x)$ is 1. That is,

$$\sum_x p(x) = 1$$

- To determine the probability that X takes a value in the interval from a to b (including the values a and b), add the values of $p(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$:

$$P(a \leq X \leq b) = \sum_{a \leq x \leq b} p(x)$$

Measures of centre and spread

- The **expected value** (or **mean**) of a discrete random variable X may be considered as the long-run average value of X . It is found by summing the products of each value of X and the probability that X takes that value. That is,

$$\mu = E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot P(X = x) = \sum_x x \cdot p(x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot x_i$$

- The expected value of a function of X is given by

$$E[g(X)] = \sum_x g(x) \cdot p(x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot g(x_i)$$

- The **variance** of a random variable X is a measure of the spread of the probability distribution about its mean μ . It is defined as

$$\sigma^2 = \text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2] = \sum_i p_i \cdot (x_i - \mu)^2$$

An alternative (computational) formula for variance is

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2$$

- The **standard deviation** of a random variable X is defined as

$$\sigma = \text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$$

- Linear function of a discrete random variable:

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b$$

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$$

Bernoulli trials and the binomial distribution

- A **Bernoulli trial** is a random experiment with the following properties:
 - The outcomes take one of two values, which are usually designated either a success S , or a failure F .
 - The probability of success each time the random experiment is conducted is a constant p , and thus the probability of failure is $(1 - p)$.
- If the random variable, X , is the number of successes in n independent Bernoulli trials then X has a **binomial distribution** and

$$P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1 - p)^{n-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

$$\text{where } \binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$$

Note: n and p are referred to as **parameters** of the binomial distribution.

- If X has a binomial distribution with parameters n and p , then

$$E(X) = np$$

$$\text{Var}(X) = np(1 - p)$$

- If X is a Bernoulli random variable with probability of success p , then

$$E(X) = p$$

$$\text{Var}(X) = p(1 - p)$$

Skills checklist

Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills. 

9A	1 I can list the sample space for a random experiment. See Example 1 and Question 1	☐
9A	2 I can determine probabilities when outcomes are equally likely. See Example 2 and Question 3	☐
9A	3 I can determine probabilities from a frequency table. See Example 3 and Questions 9	☐
9A	4 I can estimate probabilities from data. See Example 4 and Question 11	☐
9A	5 I can determine probabilities based on area. See Example 5 and Question 12	☐
9A	6 I can construct probability tables. See Example 6 and Question 14	☐
9B	7 I can use a tree diagram to solve problems involving conditional probability. See Example 7, Example 8 and Questions 1 and 8	☐
9B	8 I can solve problems involving conditional probability from data. See Example 9 and Question 9	☐
9B	9 I can solve problems involving independent events. See Example 10 and Question 10	☐
9C	10 I can determine the values of a discrete random variable from the sample space. See Example 11 and Question 2	☐
9C	11 I understand the concept of a discrete probability distribution. See Example 12 and Question 3	☐
9C	12 I can use a discrete probability distribution determine probabilities. See Example 13, Example 14 and Questions 6 and 11	☐
9C	13 I can recognise uniform discrete random variables and use them to determine probabilities. See Example 15 and Question 15	☐

410 Chapter 9: Discrete random variables

- 9C** **14** I can recognise non-uniform discrete random variables and use them to determine probabilities. ☐
See Example 16, Example 17 and Questions 19 and 20
- 9D** **15** I can determine the mean of a discrete random variable. ☐
See Example 18, Example 19 and Questions 1 and 2
- 9D** **16** I can determine the mean of a function of a discrete random variable. ☐
See Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 4 and 5
- 9D** **17** I can determine the variance and standard deviation of a discrete random variable. ☐
See Example 22, Example 23 and Question 8
- 9D** **18** I can determine the variance of a linear function of a discrete random variable. ☐
See Example 24 and Question 12
- 9D** **19** I can determine the mean and variance of a uniform discrete random variable. ☐
See Example 25, Example 26 and Question 14
- 9E** **20** I can determine the probability distribution for a Bernoulli random variable. ☐
See Example 27 and Question 1
- 9E** **21** I can identify a binomial random variable and evaluate probabilities using the binomial distribution formula. ☐
See Example 28 and Question 2
- 9E** **22** I can use a calculator to determine binomial probabilities. ☐
See Example 29 and Question 7
- 9E** **23** I can recognise and determine the mean and variance of the Bernoulli distribution. ☐
See Question 19
- 9E** **24** I can recognise and determine the mean and variance of the binomial distribution. ☐
See Example 30 and Question 20
- 9E** **25** I can determine the minimum sample size required to achieve a given outcome for a binomial random variable. ☐
See Example 31 and Question 28

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1** A group of 1000 drivers were classified according to their age and the number of accidents they had been involved in during the previous year. The results are shown in the table.

	Age < 30	Age ≥ 30	Total
At most one accident	130	170	300
More than one accident	470	230	700
Total	600	400	1000

- a** Calculate the probability that, if a driver is chosen at random from this group, the driver is aged less than 30 and has had more than one accident.
- b** Calculate the probability that a randomly chosen driver is aged less than 30, given that he or she has had more than one accident.
- 2** Consider the following table:

x	1	4	7	11	12
$p(x)$	0.3	0.2	0.1	0.3	0.1

- a** Show that this meets the conditions to be a discrete probability distribution.
- b** Use the table to determine $P(X \geq 11)$.
- 3** A jar contains three red and two blue balls. A ball is withdrawn, its colour is observed, and it is then replaced. This is done twice. Let X be the number of red balls in the two balls withdrawn.
- a** List the sample space.
- b** List the possible values of X .
- c** Determine the probability distribution of X .
- 4** A random variable X has a discrete uniform distribution:

$$P(X = x) = k \quad x = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5$$

Determine:

- a** the value of k **b** $P(X = 2)$ **c** $P(X = 2 | X > 1)$.
- 5** A random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	-1	0	1	2
$P(X = x)$	k	$2k$	$3k$	$2k$

Determine:

- a** the constant k **b** $E(X)$, the mean of X **c** $\text{Var}(X)$, the variance of X

- 6** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution:

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{12} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 12$$

Determine:

- a** $P(X = 5)$ **b** $P(X \leq 2)$ **c** $E(X)$

- 7** The probability of winning a certain game can be modelled as a Bernoulli distribution. Given that the probability of winning the game is 0.1, determine:

- a** the mean of this distribution.
b the variance of this distribution.
c the standard deviation of this distribution.

- 8** Let X represent the number of bullseyes scored by a player in a game of darts. The probability distribution of X is given by

$$P(X = x) = \binom{7}{x} (0.2)^x (0.8)^{7-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, 7$$

- a** Write down the probability that this player will score a bullseye on any single throw.
b How many darts are thrown by the player in this game?

- 9** A salesperson knows that $\frac{2}{3}$ of the people who enter a particular shop will make a purchase.

- a** State the two conditions that make this context suitable for using a binomial random variable.
b Determine the probability that of the next three people who enter the shop no-one will make a purchase.

- 10** In a particular city, the probability of rain on any day in June is $\frac{1}{5}$, independent of whether or not it rains on any other day. Determine the probability of rain on exactly two of three randomly selected days in June.

- 11** In a large batch of eggs, one in three is found to be bad. Determine the probability that of four eggs there will be:

- a** no bad egg
b exactly one bad egg
c more than one bad egg.

- 12** An experiment consists of four independent trials. Each trial results in either a success or a failure. The probability of success in a trial is p . Determine the probability of each of the following in terms of p :

- a** no successes **b** one success **c** at least one success

- 13** An experiment consists of five independent trials. Each trial results in either a success or a failure. The probability of success in a trial is p . Determine, in terms of p , an expression for the probability of exactly one success given there is at least one success.

- 14** The probability distribution of a discrete random variable X is given by the following table. Show that $p = 0.5$ or $p = 1$.

x	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	$0.4p^2$	0.1	0.1	$1 - 0.6p$

- 15** A manufacturer sells cylinders for \$ x each; the cost of the manufacture of each cylinder is \$2. If a cylinder is defective, it is returned and the purchase money refunded. A returned cylinder is regarded as a total loss to the manufacturer. The probability that a cylinder is returned is $\frac{1}{5}$.

- a** Let P be the profit per cylinder. Determine the probability function of P .
b Determine the mean of P in terms of x .
c Determine the minimum price the manufacturer should sell the cylinders for in order to make a profit in the long term.

- 16** An experiment consists of four independent trials. Each trial results in either a success or a failure. The probability of success in a trial is p .

- a** If the probability of at least one success is 0.9984, what is the value of p ?
b Write down an expression for $P(X = 2)$ in terms of p , and show that probability of exactly two successes is maximised when $p = 0.5$.

- 17** The probability of winning a particular game is $\frac{3}{5}$. (Assume all games are independent.)

- a** Determine the probability of winning at least one game when the game is played three times.
b Given that, when the game is played m times, the probability of winning exactly two games is three times the probability of winning exactly one game, determine the value of m .

Technology-active short-response questions

- 18** Suppose that the random variable X has the probability distribution given in the following table:

x	0	1	2	3	4
$P(X = x)$	0.07	0.22	0.32	0.22	0.17

Determine:

- a** $P(X \leq 2)$ **b** $E(X)$
c $\text{Var}(X)$ **d** $\text{sd}(X)$

- 19** A biased die is such that the probability of any face landing uppermost is proportional to the number on that face. Thus, if X denotes the score obtained in one throw of this die, then $P(X = r) = kr$ for $r = 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6$, where k is a constant. Determine:

- a** the value of k **b** $E(X)$ **c** $\text{Var}(X)$

- 20** A salesperson knows that 60% of the people who enter a particular shop will make a purchase. Determine the probability that of the next five people who enter the shop:
- a** exactly two will make a purchase
 - b** at least two will make a purchase.
- 21** If 10% of patients fail to improve on a certain medication, determine the probability that of ten patients selected at random:
- a** two or more will fail to show improvement
 - b** less than four will fail to show improvement.
- 22** It has been found in the past that 4% of the CDs produced in a certain factory are defective. A sample of 10 CDs is drawn randomly from each hour's production and the number of defective CDs is noted. Determine:
- a** the percentage of these hourly samples that would contain at least two defective CDs
 - b** the mean and standard deviation of the number of defective CDs in a sample.
- 23** The probability that Jun Wei logs onto his computer successfully when he comes into work in the morning is $\frac{2}{3}$. If he enters the wrong password he gets another two attempts and if he is unsuccessful on all three attempts he is locked out and a member of the IT team must be called to log him in.
- a** Determine the probability that Jun Wei is locked out of his computer any one day.
 - b** Determine the probability that on three randomly chosen days Jun Wei was locked out of his computer at least once.

- 24** Given the following probability function:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
$P(X = x)$	c	$2c$	$2c$	$3c$	c^2	$2c^2$	$7c^2 + c$

- a** Determine the value of c .
 - b** Evaluate $P(X \geq 5)$.
 - c** If $P(X \leq k) > 0.5$, determine the minimum value of k .
- 25** The probability of winning a prize with a lucky ticket on a wheel of fortune is 0.08.
- a** If a person buys 10 lucky tickets, determine the probability of:
 - i** winning twice
 - ii** winning at least once.
 - b** Determine the smallest number of tickets that should be bought to ensure a probability of more than 0.8 of winning at least once.

- 26** A recent study found that P , the number of passengers per car entering a city on the freeway on a workday morning, is given by:

p	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(P = p)$	0.39	0.27	0.16	0.12	0.04	0.02

- Compute $E(P)$, the mean number of passengers per car.
 - Compute $\text{Var}(P)$ and hence determine the standard deviation of P .
 - Cars carrying two or more passengers are allowed to use the express lane on the freeway. Determine the probability that of 20 cars randomly selected cars, at least five are allowed to use the express lane.
- 27** In a test to detect learning disabilities, a child is asked 10 questions, each of which has possible answers labelled A , B and C . Children with a disability of type 1 almost always answer A or B on every question, while children with a disability of type 2 almost always answer C on every question. Children without either disability have an equal chance of answering A , B or C for each question.
- Determine the probability that the answers given by a child without either disability will be all A s and B s, thereby indicating a type 1 disability.
 - A child is further tested for type 2 disability if he or she answers C five or more times. Determine the probability that a child without either disability will test positive for type 2 disability.
- 28** Assume that dates of birth in a large population are distributed such that the probability of a randomly chosen person's birthday being in any particular month is $\frac{1}{12}$.
- Determine the probability that of six people chosen at random exactly two will have a birthday in January.
 - Determine the probability that of eight people at least one will have a birthday in January.
 - N people are chosen at random. Determine the least value of N such that the probability that at least one will have a birthday in January exceeds 0.9.
- 29** Groups of six people are chosen at random and the number, x , of people in each group who normally wear glasses is recorded. The table gives the results from 200 groups.

Number wearing glasses, x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Number of occurrences	17	53	65	45	18	2	0

- Calculate, from the above data, the mean value of x .
- Assuming that the situation can be modelled by a binomial distribution having the same mean as the one calculated above, state the appropriate values for the binomial parameters n and p .
- Calculate the theoretical frequencies corresponding to those in the table.

- 30** A pizza company claims that they deliver 90% of orders within 30 minutes. If they take more than 30 minutes to deliver, the pizzas are late and the the customer gets the pizza free.
- a** If the company claim is correct, determine the probability correct to four decimal places that, of the next 10 orders:
 - i** exactly one pizza is delivered late
 - ii** more than one pizza is delivered late, given that at least one pizza is delivered late.
 - b** In a particular time period, the supervisor notes that there are 67 orders, and of these 12 are delivered late. Based on the data collected by the supervisor, what is your estimate of the probability that a pizza is delivered late? Give your answer correct to two decimal places.
 - c** Suppose the supervisor wanted to assure the management that the probability of more than 1 in each 50 pizzas being delivered late is less than 3%. If p is the probability of a pizza being delivered late, determine the values of p required for this to be true. Give your answer correct to three decimal places.
- 31** **a** A sample of six objects is to be drawn from a large population in which 20% of the objects are defective. Determine the probability that the sample contains:
- i** three defectives
 - ii** fewer than three defectives.
- b** Another large population contains a proportion p of defective items.
- i** Write down an expression in terms of p for P , the probability that a sample of six items contains exactly two defectives.
 - ii** Determine the value of p for which P is a maximum.
- 32** A sampling inspection scheme is devised as follows. A sample of size 10 is drawn at random from a large batch of articles and all 10 articles are tested. If the sample contains fewer than two faulty articles, the batch is accepted; if the sample contains three or more faulty articles, the batch is rejected; but if the sample contains exactly two faulty articles, a second sample of size 10 is taken and tested. If this second sample contains no faulty articles, the batch is accepted; but if it contains any faulty articles, the batch is rejected. Previous experience has shown that 5% of the articles in a batch are faulty. Determine:
- a** the probability that the batch is accepted after the first sample is taken
 - b** the probability that the batch is rejected
 - c** the expected number of articles to be tested.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 Consider the following table:

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
$P(X = x)$	$2k$	$3k$	0.1	$3k$	$2k$

For the table to represent a probability function, the value of k is

- A** 0.09 **B** 0.9 **C** 0.01 **D** 0.2
- 2 A random variable X is such that $E(X) = 1.20$ and $E(X^2) = 1.69$. The standard deviation of X is equal to
- A** 0.7 **B** $\sqrt{3.13}$ **C** 0.25 **D** 0.5
- 3 Suppose that a random variable X is such that $E(X) = 100$ and $\text{Var}(X) = 100$. Suppose further that Y is a random variable such that $Y = 3X + 10$. Then
- A** $E(Y) = 300$ and $\text{Var}(Y) = 900$ **B** $E(Y) = 310$ and $\text{Var}(Y) = 300$
C $E(Y) = 310$ and $\text{Var}(Y) = 900$ **D** $E(Y) = 300$ and $\text{Var}(Y) = 30$
- 4 The random variable X has the probability distribution shown, where $0 < p < \frac{1}{3}$.
The mean of X is
- | | | | |
|------------|-----|------|----------|
| x | -1 | 0 | 1 |
| $P(X = x)$ | p | $2p$ | $1 - 3p$ |
- A** 1 **B** $1 - 4p$ **C** $4p$ **D** $1 + 4p$
- 5 The random variable X has the probability distribution shown on the right.
If the mean of X is 0.2, then
- | | | | |
|------------|-----|-----|-----|
| x | -2 | 0 | 2 |
| $P(X = x)$ | a | b | 0.2 |
- A** $a = 0.2$, $b = 0.6$ **B** $a = 0.1$, $b = 0.7$
C $a = 0.4$, $b = 0.4$ **D** $a = 0.7$, $b = 0.1$
- 6 A coin is biased such that the probability of a head is 0.6. The probability that exactly three heads will be observed when the coin is tossed five times is
- A** $(0.6)^3$ **B** $(0.6)^3(0.4)^2$ **C** $10 \times (0.6)^3(0.4)^2$ **D** $\binom{5}{3}(0.6)^5$
- 7 A fair coin is tossed 10 times. If the probability of three heads is $m \times (\frac{1}{2})^{10}$ then the value of m is
- A** 120 **B** 10 **C** 60 **D** 210
- 8 Suppose that X is a binomial random variable with mean $\mu = 10$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 2$. The probability of success, p , in any trial is
- A** 0.2 **B** 0.8 **C** 0.6 **D** 0.4

- 9** The probability that the 8:25 train arrives on time is 0.35 with each day's probability being independent of other days. The probability that the train is on time at least once during a working week (Monday to Friday) is
A $1 - (0.65)^5$ **B** $(0.35)^5$ **C** $(0.65)^5$ **D** $5 \times (0.35)^1(0.65)^4$
- 10** A fair die is rolled four times. The probability that a number greater than 4 is observed on two occasions is
A $\frac{16}{81}$ **B** $\frac{1}{9}$ **C** $\frac{1}{81}$ **D** $\frac{8}{27}$
- 11** Let X be the number of successes in 5 independent trials, each with probability of success p . An expression for $P(X \leq 1)$ is given by:
A $(1 - p)^4(1 + 4p)$ **B** $5p(1 - p)^4$ **C** $1 - (1 - p)^5$ **D** $(1 - p)^4(1 + 5p)$
- 12** If X is a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 18$ and $p = \frac{1}{3}$, then the mean and variance of X are equal to
A $\mu = 6, \sigma^2 = 4$ **B** $\mu = 9, \sigma^2 = 4$ **C** $\mu = 6, \sigma^2 = 2$ **D** $\mu = 6, \sigma^2 = 16$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 13** Suppose that the random variable X has the probability distribution given in the following table:

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	0.07	0.15	0.22	0.22	0.17	0.12	0.05

$P(-3 \leq X < 0)$ is equal to

- A** 0.37 **B** 0.22 **C** 0.44 **D** 0.66
- 14**
- | | | | | | |
|------------|------|------|------|------|------|
| x | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| $P(X = x)$ | 0.46 | 0.24 | 0.14 | 0.09 | 0.07 |
- For this probability distribution, the expected value $E(X)$ is
A 2 **B** 1 **C** 1.59 **D** 2.07

- 15** The probability that a person in a certain town has a tertiary education is 0.4. The probability that, if 80 people are chosen at random from this town, less than 30 will have a tertiary education is
A 0.7139 **B** 0.2861 **C** 0.0827 **D** 0.3687
- 16** Batteries are packed in boxes of 50, and the mean number of defectives per box is 1.8. Assuming that the number of defective items per box is binomially distributed, the probability of less than three defective batteries in a randomly selected box is
A 0.2684 **B** 0.5234 **C** 0.6754 **D** 0.7316

- 17** A netballer can successfully shoot a goal from anywhere in the shooting circle with probability of 0.7. She attempts 50 shots at goal, with the outcome of each shot independent of any other shot. Given that she scores at least 35 goals, the probability that she scores exactly 40 goals is
- A** 0.0679 **B** 0.0896 **C** 0.0688 **D** 0.0698

Questions 18 and 19 refer to the following information.

The probability of Thomas beating William in a set of tennis is 0.24, and Thomas and William decide to play a set of tennis every day for n days.

- 18** The least number of days on which they should play to ensure that the probability of Thomas winning at least one set is more than 0.95 is
- A** 8 **B** 9 **C** 10 **D** 11
- 19** The least number of days on which they should play to ensure that the probability of Thomas winning at least two sets is more than 0.95 is
- A** 12 **B** 18 **C** 17 **D** 21
- 20** Suppose that X is a binomial random variable with parameters n and p , and that X has a mean of 8.4 and a variance of 5.46. The values of n and p are
- A** $n = 24$ and $p = 0.36$ **B** $n = 12$ and $p = 0.70$
C $n = 24$ and $p = 0.35$ **D** $n = 70$ and $p = 0.12$
- 21** Suppose that X is the number of heads observed when a coin known to be biased towards heads is tossed 10 times. If $\text{Var}(X) = 1.875$, then the probability of a head on any one toss is
- A** 0.25 **B** 0.55 **C** 0.75 **D** 0.65

10

Revision of Unit 3

10A Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

Unit 3: Topic 1 Differentiation of exponential and logarithmic functions

- 1** Let $g(x) = x^2$. For each of the following functions f :
- i** Determine $f(g(x))$ and determine the maximal domain and range of the function $y = f(g(x))$.
 - ii** Determine $g(f(x))$ and determine the maximal domain and range of the function $y = g(f(x))$.
- a** $f(x) = \ln(3x)$ **b** $f(x) = \ln(2 - x)$ **c** $f(x) = -\ln(2x)$
- 2** Solve each of the following equations for x :
- a** $\ln x + \ln 25 = \ln(x^3)$ **b** $3 \times 3^{2x} + 3^x - 10 = 0$
- c** $\log_{16}(3x - 1) = \log_4(3x) + \log_4\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$
- 3** Simplify $2 \log_{10} 5 + 3 \log_{10} 2 - \log_{10} 20$.
- 4** Determine x in terms of a if $3 \log_a x = 3 + \log_a 12$.
- 5** Solve $2 \times 2^{-x} = 1024$.
- 6** Solve the equation $4e^{2x} = 9$ for x .
- 7** Solve the equation $\ln(x + 12) = 1 + \ln(2 - x)$.
- 8** Evaluate $\log_a 4 \times \log_{16} a$.

- 9** Let $y = 5 \times 3^{2x}$ for $x \geq 0$.
- Determine the values of m and c such that $\log_3 y = mx + c$.
 - Sketch the graph of $\log_3 y$ against x .
- 10** **a** The graph of the function f with rule $f(x) = 2 \ln(x + 2)$ intersects the axes at the points $(a, 0)$ and $(0, b)$. Determine the exact values of a and b .
- b** Hence sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 11** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- $e^{x^3-4x^2}$
 - $(e^{-2x} + x^2)^2$
 - $\sqrt{e^{4x} - 2x}$
 - $5e^{2x^2-4x}$
- 12** Determine the gradient of each of the following curves at the stated value of x .
- $y = e^{x^7} + 1$, $x = 1$
 - $y = e^{x^2+x^3}$, $x = 2$
 - $y = 6e^{-3x} + x^2$, $x = 1$
 - $y = 5x - e^{-x^2}$, $x = 1$
- 13** Determine the derivative of each of the following with respect to x . (Assume maximal domain.)
- $y = \ln(2x^3)$, $x > 0$
 - $y = (\ln x)^5$, $x > 0$
 - $y = \ln(2x^4 + 3x^2 + 2)$
 - $y = \ln(6 + 4x^2)$
 - $f(x) = \ln(x^3 + x)$, $x > 0$
 - $f(x) = \ln(e^{-3x})$
- 14** Determine the y -coordinate and the gradient of the tangent to the curve at the point corresponding to the given value of x .
- $y = 3 \ln(2x)$, $x > 0$, at $x = e^3$
 - $y = 3 \ln(x^2 + 4)$ at $x = e$
 - $y = 4 \ln(-x)$, $x < 0$, at $x = -(e^3)$
 - $y = 3x + \ln\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$ at $x = 2$
- 15** Solve the equation $2^{4x} - 5 \times 2^{2x} + 4 = 0$ for x .
- 16** A function has rule $y = Ae^{kt}$. Given that $y = 4$ when $t = 1$ and that $y = 10$ when $t = 2$, determine the values of A and k .
- 17** Let $y = Ae^{bx}$, where A and b are constants with $A > 0$. The graph of $\ln y$ against x is a straight line with $(\ln y)$ -axis intercept 2 and gradient -0.25 . Determine the values of A and b .
- 18** Solve the equation $\log_2(7x^2 + 8x + 3) = \log_2(x^2) + 1$.
- 19** A liquid is heated to a temperature of 100°C and then allowed to cool in a room in which the temperature is 25°C . While the liquid is cooling, its temperature, $T^\circ\text{C}$, at time t minutes is given by $T = 25 + 75e^{-\frac{t}{5}}$.
- Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time $\frac{dT}{dt}$, in terms of T .
 - Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time when $t = 15$.
 - Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time when $T = 60$.

- 20** The growth of a colony of small insects's is modelled by the function $N(t) = 100e^{0.04t}$, where N is measured in grams and t is measured in days.
- Determine $\frac{dN}{dt}$
 - What is the weight of the population after 5 days?
 - Determine the value of $\frac{dN}{dt}$ when $t = 5$.
 - How long will it take for the population to reach 200 grams?
- 21** Strontium-90 is a radioactive material that decays according to the function $A(t) = A_0e^{-0.025t}$, where A_0 is the initial amount present and A is the amount present at time t (in years). Assume that a scientist has a sample of 1000 grams of strontium-90.
- How much strontium-90 is left after 10 years?
 - Determine $\frac{dA}{dt}$.
 - Determine the value of t for which $A = 500$ and the value of $\frac{dA}{dt}$ for this value of t .
- 22** Recall that the pH of a solution can be found using
- $$pH = -\log_{10}([H_3O^+])$$
- where $[H_3O^+]$ is the concentration of hydronium ions in moles per litre.
- In a glass of tomato juice, the concentration of hydronium ions is $10^{-4.1}$ moles per litre. Determine the pH.
 - In the gastric juices in your stomach, the concentration of hydronium ions is 10^{-1} moles per litre. Determine the pH.

Unit 3: Topic 2 Differentiation of trigonometric functions and differentiation rules

- 23** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x .
- | | | |
|-------------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------------|
| a $\frac{\cos(2x)}{x}$ | b x^2e^{4x} | c $\sin(3x^2)$ |
| d $\ln(\sin x)$ | e $x^3 \ln x$ | f $\frac{e^{2x}}{x+2}$ |
- 24** Let $y = \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^4 - 1}$.
- Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
 - Determine the value(s) of x for which $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$.
- 25** Let $f(x) = x^2 \ln(2x)$. Determine $f'(x)$.
- 26** **a** Let $f(x) = e^{2x+1}$. The tangent to the graph of f at the point where $x = b$ passes through the point $(0, 0)$. Determine b .
- b** Let $f(x) = e^{2x+1} + k$, where k is a real number. The tangent to the graph of f at the point where $x = b$ passes through the point $(0, 0)$. Determine k in terms of b .

- 27** The line $y = mx - 8$ is tangent to the curve $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}} + c$ at the point $(8, a)$. Determine the values of a , c and m .
- 28** If $f(3) = -2$ and $f'(3) = 5$, determine $g'(3)$ where:
- a** $g(x) = 3x^2 - 5f(x)$ **b** $g(x) = \frac{3x+1}{f(x)}$ **c** $g(x) = [f(x)]^2$
- 29** Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = 8 + \ln(x+2)$ at the point where $x = 0$.
- 30** Determine the equation of the tangent to the curve $y = x \sin x$ at the point where $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$.
- 31** For each of the following functions, determine the coordinates of the points on the graph at which the tangent passes through the origin:
- a** $y = x \sin x, \quad -\pi \leq x \leq \pi$ **b** $y = x \cos(2x), \quad -\pi \leq x \leq \pi$
- 32** **a** Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = \sin x$ when $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.
b The graph of this tangent intersects the x -axis at P and the y -axis at Q . Determine the coordinates of the midpoint of line segment PQ .

Unit 3: Topic 3 Further applications of differentiation

- 33** Let $f(x) = 2x^2 - \ln x$ for $x > 0$. Determine the coordinates of the stationary point on the graph of f , and state whether this point is a local maximum or a local minimum.
- 34** Determine the coordinates of the three stationary points on the graph of $y = e^{x^4 - 18x^2}$.
- 35** Determine the second derivative of each of the following.
- a** $x^3 + 2x^2 + 5x - 2$ **b** $e^{-\frac{x}{4}}$ **c** xe^{-5x}
d $\sin\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)$ **e** $\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{2}\right)$ **f** $e^{2x} - e^{-2x}$
- 36** Determine the second derivative of each of the following with respect to x .
- a** $x \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **b** $x^2 \ln(2x)$ **c** $e^{-2x} \cos(2x)$
- 37** Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection on each of the following graphs.
- a** $y = x^3(x-4)$ **b** $y = x^3 \ln x$ **c** $y = 4x^2 + \sin(4x), \quad 0 \leq x \leq \pi$
- 38** A particle moves in a straight line so that after t seconds its position, x m, relative to a fixed point O on the line is given by $x = 2t^3 - 24t$. Determine the velocity and acceleration of the particle at time t seconds.
- 39** A particle starts at a point O and moves along a straight line. The position, x m, of the particle relative to O after t seconds is given by $x = 6(1 - e^{-0.5t})$.
- a** Determine the velocity, v m/s, of the particle at time t .
b Determine the acceleration, a m/s², of the particle at time t .
c What is the velocity of the particle when it is 3 m from O ?

- 40** Let $f(x) = xe^{2x^2-4x}$.
- Determine $f'(x)$.
 - Show that $f'(x) \geq 0$ for all x .
 - Hence show that the only stationary point on the graph of f is a stationary point of inflection.
- 41** For each of the following, determine the largest open intervals for which:
- f is increasing
 - f is decreasing
 - f is concave up
 - f is concave down.
- $f(x) = x^3 - 12x + 24$
 - $f(x) = x^3 - 12x^2 + 24$
 - $f(x) = \cos x, \quad 0 < x < 2\pi$
 - $f(x) = \sin^2 x, \quad 0 < x < \pi$
 - $f(x) = 3x^4 - 4x^3 + 6$
 - $f(x) = 2x^2 \ln(2x), \quad x > 0$
- 42** Let $f(x) = (x-a)^3(x-b)$, where a and b are real constants.
- Determine $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$.
 - Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection on the graph of f .
 - Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of f at the point where $x = \frac{a+b}{2}$, and determine the x -axis intercept of this tangent.
- 43** For the graph of $y = x^4 - 6x^2 + 8x + 24$, determine the coordinates of:
- the local minimum
 - the stationary point of inflection
 - the other point of inflection.
- 44** Let $f(x) = \ln(x^2 + 4)$.
- Determine $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$.
 - Determine the coordinates of the stationary point on the graph of f .
 - Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection on the graph of f .
 - Sketch the graph of f .
- 45** For $f(x) = x^3 - 3x^2 + 1$, determine the values of x for which the graph of f is concave up.
- 46** Let $f(x) = 4x - \sin(2x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$. Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection on the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- 47** A polynomial function f has derivative f' with rule $f'(x) = (x-1)^2(x+1)(x-3)$.
- Solve the equation $f'(x) = 0$ for x .
 - Given that $f''(x) = 4(x-1)(x^2 - 2x - 1)$, determine the nature of the stationary points corresponding to the x -values found in part **a**.
 - Determine the x -values at which there is a point of inflection.

- 48** A function h has a rule of the form $h(x) = (ax^2 + b)e^{cx}$. Determine the values of the constants a , b and c , given that the function has the following three properties:
- $h(0) = -4$
 - $h'(0) = 8$
 - the graph of h has a local minimum at $x = -1$.
- 49** Sketch the graph of $f(x) = x^4 - 10x^2 + 9$, locating the stationary points and the points of inflection.
- 50** A particle moves in a straight line. The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of the particle at time t seconds ($t \geq 0$) is given by $v(t) = 2 + (3t - 1)e^{-\frac{t}{2}}$. Determine the maximum velocity of the particle and the time at which this occurs.
- 51** Let $f(x) = e^{-x} \sin x$, $0 \leq x \leq \pi$.
- a** Determine the coordinates of the local maximum of the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - b** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

Unit 3: Topic 4 Introduction to integration

- 52** Determine:
- a** $\int \sin(3x + 5) dx$ **b** $\int e^{-4x} dx$ **c** $\int \cos(4 - 2x) dx$
- 53** Determine an anti-derivative of each of the following.
- a** $x^2 - 4x + 6$ **b** $x^2 - 3x + \frac{3}{x}$, $x > 0$ **c** $4x^3 - 2x - \frac{4}{x^2}$
- d** $\frac{x+1}{\sqrt{x}}$ **e** $\sin(3x) + \cos(4x)$ **f** e^{2x-3}
- 54** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the point $(0, 12)$ and its gradient is given by $f'(x) = 4(x+2)(x-3)$. Determine $f(x)$.
- 55** Determine an anti-derivative of:
- a** $\frac{3}{5x-2}$, $x > \frac{2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{3}{(5x-2)^2}$, $x \neq \frac{2}{5}$
- 56** Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = e^{2x} + \sin(2x)$ and that $y = 0$ when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, determine y in terms of x .
- 57** **a** Differentiate $\sin^3(2x)$ with respect to x .
b Write $\cos^3(2x)$ as $(1 - \sin^2(2x))\cos(2x)$ and hence determine an anti-derivative of $\cos^3(2x)$.
- 58** Given that $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{2}{x^2} + \cos(2x)$ and that $y = 0$ when $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$, determine y in terms of x .

- 59** A particle moves along a straight line. It starts at rest at a point O on the line. Its acceleration, a m/s², after t seconds is given by $a = 18 \sin(3t)$.
- a** Determine an expression for the particle's velocity, v m/s, after t seconds.
 - b** Determine an expression for the particle's position, x m, relative to O after t seconds.
 - c** Determine the velocity and position of the particle when $t = \frac{\pi}{2}$.
- 60** If $f'(x) = 5e^x$ and $f(\ln 3) = 11$, determine $f(x)$.

Unit 3: Topic 5 Discrete random variables

- 61** The random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	0	1	2	3	4
$P(X = x)$	0.3	0.2	0.1	0.3	0.1

Determine:

- a** $P(X > 3 | X > 1)$
 - b** $P(X > 1 | X \leq 3)$
 - c** $E(X)$
- 62** The probability that a certain football club has all its first-team players fit is 0.7. When the club has a fully fit team, the probability of it winning a home game is 0.9. When the team is not fully fit, the probability of winning a home game is 0.4.
- a** Determine the probability that the team will win its next home game.
 - b** Given that the team did not win its last home game, determine the probability that the team was fully fit.
- 63** A factory has two machines, Machine I and Machine II. Machine I produces 800 items each day, and on average 20 are faulty. Machine II produces 700 items each day, and on average 14 are faulty.
- a** Determine the probability that an item selected at random from the day's production is faulty.
 - b** If the item selected is faulty, determine the probability that it was produced by Machine II.
- 64** Eight coloured balls are placed in a box: 3 red balls, 2 black balls, 2 green balls and a yellow ball. A ball is randomly selected from the box and not returned, and then a second ball is randomly selected. Determine:
- a** the probability of selecting a red ball first and a green ball second
 - b** the probability of selecting one green and one red ball
 - c** the probability that the second ball selected is not red, given that the first ball selected is red
 - d** the probability that neither of the two balls selected is red
 - e** the probability of selecting two balls of the same colour.

- 65** A fair die is rolled three times. Calculate:
- a** the probability that a 6 is obtained on all three rolls
 - b** the probability that a 6 is obtained on at least two of the three rolls.
- 66** The probability that a football team wins a match can be modelled as a Bernoulli distribution. The probability that the team wins a match is $\frac{1}{5}$. Determine
- a** the mean of this distribution
 - b** the variance of this distribution
 - c** the standard deviation of this distribution.
- 67** Let p be the probability that a randomly chosen person believes in ghosts. Eight people are asked whether they believe in ghosts. Write down an expression for the probability:
- a** all eight people believe in ghosts
 - b** none of the eight people believes in ghosts
 - c** at least one of the eight people believes in ghosts.
- 68** A machine has a probability of $\frac{1}{8}$ of manufacturing a defective part. The parts are packed in boxes of 16. Determine the mean and the variance of the number of defective parts in a box.
- 69** In a particular suburb it is known that two out of every three households owns a dog. Miller has to make four deliveries to that suburb on the same day. Calculate the probability that he delivers to exactly two households with dogs.
- 70** A biased coin is tossed three times. On each toss, the probability of a head is p .
- a** Determine, in terms of p , the probability that all three tosses show tails.
 - b** If the probability of three tails is equal to 8 times the probability of three heads, determine the value of p .
- 71** A binomial distribution with parameters n and p has mean 6 and variance 3.6. Determine the values of n and p .
- 72** Suppose that X is a binomial random variable with mean 3 and variance 2. Express $P(X = 1)$ in the form $\frac{a^b}{c^d}$, where a and c are prime numbers.
- 73** The random variable X has probability distribution:
- | | | | | | |
|------------|-----|-----|-----|-----|-----|
| x | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 |
| $P(X = x)$ | a | 0.3 | 0.1 | 0.2 | b |
- Given that $E(X) = 2.34$, determine the values of a and b .
- 74** Two events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{4}{7}$ and $P(B) = \frac{1}{3}$. Determine $P(A' \cap B)$ if:
- a** $P(A \cup B) = \frac{5}{7}$
 - b** A and B are mutually exclusive.

- 75** Two events A and B are such that $P(A) = \frac{3}{4}$, $P(B|A) = \frac{1}{5}$ and $P(B'|A') = p$. Determine:
- a** $P(B)$ in terms of p **b** $P(A|B)$ in terms of p .
- 76** There are n identical black balls and n identical white balls. A blue box contains 3 black balls and $n - 3$ white balls. A red box contains $n - 3$ black balls and 3 white balls. A ball is taken at random from the red box and put in the blue box. A ball is then taken at random from the blue box.
- a** Determine the probability, in terms of n , that the ball taken from the blue box is:
- i** black **ii** white.
- b** Determine the probability, in terms of n , that the first ball is black given that the second is white.
- 77** An experiment consists of five independent trials. Each trial results in either a success or a failure. The probability of success in a trial is p .
- a** If the probability of at least one success is 0.99968, determine the value of p .
- b** Write down an expression for $P(X = 3)$ in terms of p , and determine the value of p which maximises the probability of exactly three successes.
- 78** Consider a binomial random variable X with parameters $n = 20$ and $p = \frac{1}{5}$.
- a** Write expressions for $P(X = k)$ and $P(X = k + 1)$.
- b** Show that $\frac{P(X = k + 1)}{P(X = k)} = \frac{20 - k}{4(k + 1)}$.
- c** Use this result to find the value of k for which $P(X = k)$ is a maximum.

Technology-active short-response questions

Unit 3: Topic 1 Differentiation of exponential and logarithmic functions

- 79** **a** Let $f(x) = e^{x^3 - 2x^2}$. Determine the values of a for which $f'(a) = 0$ and the values of $f(a)$ correct to three decimal places.
- b** Let $g(x) = \ln(x^4 - 27x)$, $x > 3$. Determine the values of a for which $g'(a) = 1$ correct to three decimal places.
- 80** The graph of the function with rule $f(x) = ab^x$ passes through the points with coordinates $(2, 400)$ and $(5, 50)$.
- a** Determine the values of a and b .
- b** Solve the inequality $f(x) < 2$ for x .
- 81** The population of a country increases by 2.96% each year. The population t years after 1 January 1950 is given by the formula
- $$p(t) = (150 \times 10^6)e^{kt}$$
- a** Determine the value of k .
- b** Determine the population on 1 January 1950.
- c** Determine the population on 1 January 2000.
- d** After how many years would the population be 300×10^6 ?

- 82** A large urn was filled with water. It was turned on, and the water was heated until its temperature reached 95°C . This occurred at exactly 2 p.m., at which time the urn was turned off and the water began to cool. The temperature of the room where the urn was located remained constant at 15°C .

Commencing at 2 p.m. and finishing at midnight, Jenny measured the temperature of the water every hour on the hour for the next 10 hours and recorded the results.

At 4 p.m., Jenny recorded the temperature of the water as 55°C . She found that the temperature, $T^{\circ}\text{C}$, of the water could be described by the equation

$$T = Ae^{-kt} + 15 \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 10$$

where t is the number of hours after 2 p.m.

- Determine the values of A and k .
 - Determine the temperature of the water at midnight.
 - Determine the rate of change of temperature with respect to time at 3:00 p.m.
 - At what time did Jenny first record a temperature less than 24°C ?
 - Sketch the graph of T against t .
- 83** A machine in a factory has 20 different power settings. The noise produced by the machine, N dB, depends on the power setting, P , according to a rule of the form
- $$N = a \log_{10}(bP) \quad \text{for } P = 1, 2, 3, \dots, 20$$
- where a and b are constants.
- Determine the values of a and b , given that the machine produces a noise of 45 dB on power setting 1 and a noise of 90 dB on power setting 10.
 - Determine the maximum noise level produced by the machine (to the nearest decibel).
 - On weekends, the local council imposes a noise-level restriction of 75 dB on the factory. What is the maximum power setting that can be used on the machine if it is being run on the weekend?
- 84**
- Determine all values of x for which $(\ln x)^2 = 2 \ln x$.
 - Determine the gradient of each of the curves $y = 2 \ln x$ and $y = (\ln x)^2$ at the point $(1, 0)$.
 - Use these results to sketch, on one set of axes, the graphs of $y = 2 \ln x$ and $y = (\ln x)^2$.
 - Determine the values of x for which $2 \ln x > (\ln x)^2$.
- 85** An object that is at a higher temperature than its surroundings cools according to Newton's law of cooling: $T = T_0 e^{-kt}$, where T_0 is the original excess of temperature and T is the excess of temperature after time t minutes.
- Prove that $\frac{dT}{dt}$ is proportional to T .
 - If the original temperature of the object is 100°C , the temperature of its surroundings is 30°C and the object cools to 70°C in 20 minutes, determine the value of k correct to three decimal places.
 - At what rate is the temperature decreasing after 30 minutes?

Unit 3: Topic 2 Differentiation of trigonometric functions and differentiation rules

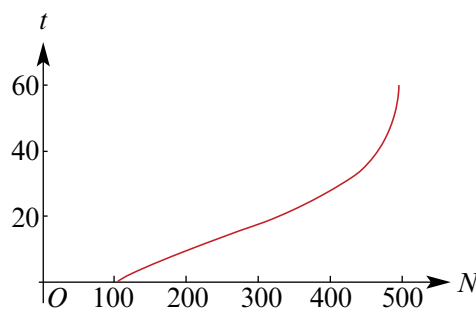
- 86** The tangent to the graph of $y = \sin x$ at the point where $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$ meets the graph of $y = \cos x$ at a point P and meets the graph of $y = \sin x$ again at point Q . Determine the coordinates of points P and Q giving values correct to three decimal places.
- 87** The rate of flow of water into a tank is given by $\frac{dV}{dt} = 10e^{-(t+1)}(5-t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 5$, where V litres is the amount of water in the tank at time t minutes. Initially the tank is empty.
- i** Determine the initial rate of flow of water into the tank.
 - ii** Determine the value of t for which $\frac{dV}{dt} = 0$.
 - iii** Determine the time, to the nearest second, when the rate is 1 litre per minute.
 - iv** Determine the first time, to the nearest second, when $\frac{dV}{dt} < 0.1$.
- b** Determine the amount of water in the tank when $t = 5$.
- c** Determine the time, to the nearest second, when there are 10 litres of water in the tank.
- 88** A large clock is hanging on a wall. The height (h cm) of the tip of the second hand above the ground varies as a function of time (t seconds). The second hand is 25 cm long and the centre of the clock face is 250 cm above the ground.
- Determine a function to model the height of the tip of the second hand above the ground as a function of time, assuming that the second hand starts at the 9 o'clock position.
 - How far above the ground is the tip of the second hand after 15 seconds?
 - How far above the ground is the tip of the second hand when it reaches the 8 o'clock position?
 - Determine the first time that the tip of the second hand is 262.5 cm above the ground.
 - Determine the average rate of change of h with respect to t as the second hand moves from the 9 o'clock position to the 12 o'clock position.
 - Determine the instantaneous rate of change of h with respect to t when the second hand is at the 10 o'clock position.

- 89** A population of single-celled fresh-water organisms grows according to the model

$$t = 10 \ln \left(\frac{4N}{500 - N} \right), \quad 100 \leq N < 500$$

where t is the number of days that it takes for the population to reach size N . The graph of t against N is shown.

- a** Determine $\frac{dt}{dN}$.



- b** For each of the following values of N , determine the corresponding value of t .
(Give answers correct to two decimal places.)
- i** $N = 110$ **ii** $N = 120$ **iii** $N = 250$ **iv** $N = 450$
- c** For each of the following values of N , determine the corresponding value of $\frac{dt}{dN}$.
(Give answers correct to two decimal places.)
- i** $N = 110$ **ii** $N = 120$ **iii** $N = 250$ **iv** $N = 450$
- d** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of t against N where:
- i** $N = 250$ **ii** $N = 100$
- e** Rearrange the equation $t = 10 \ln\left(\frac{4N}{500 - N}\right)$ to make N the subject.

Unit 3: Topic 3 Further applications of differentiation

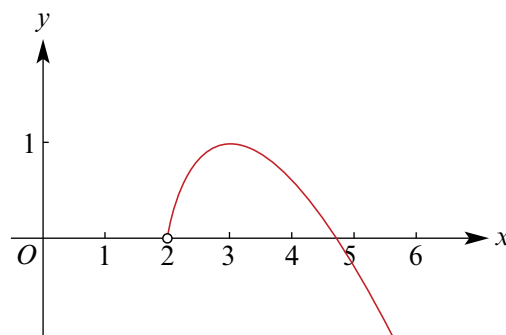
- 90** The graph of f is shown, where $f(x) = x - (x - 2) \ln(x - 2) - 2$ for $x > 2$.

- a** Determine the coordinates of the local maximum of the graph of f .
- b** Determine the values of x for which $\frac{1}{2} < f'(x) < 1$.

- c** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of f where:

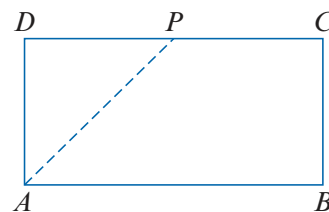
i $x = e + 2$

ii $x = \frac{1}{e} + 2$



- d** Determine the coordinates of the point of intersection of the two tangents from part **c**.
- e** For $a > 3$, determine the x -axis intercept, b , of the tangent to the graph of f at $(a, f(a))$. Determine the minimum possible value of b .

- 91** A Queensland resort has a large swimming pool as illustrated, with $AB = 75$ m and $AD = 30$ m. A boy can swim at 1 m/s and walk at $1\frac{2}{3}$ m/s. He starts at A , swims to a point P on DC , and runs from P to C . He takes 2 seconds to pull himself out of the pool. Let $DP = x$ m and the total time taken be T s.

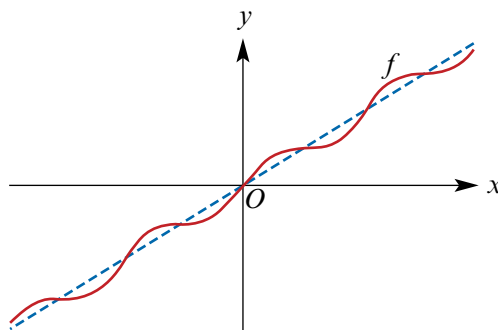


- a** Show that

$$T = \sqrt{x^2 + 900} + \frac{3}{5}(75 - x) + 2$$

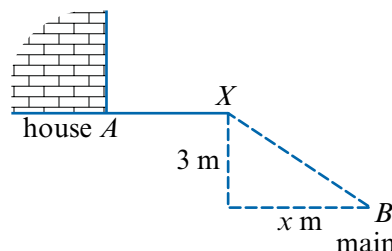
- b** Determine $\frac{dT}{dx}$.
- c** **i** Determine the value of x for which the time taken is a minimum.
ii Determine the minimum time.
- d** Determine the time taken if the boy walks from A to D and then from D to C .

- 92** Consider the function f given by $f(x) = x + \sin x$ for $-4\pi \leq x \leq 4\pi$.
- Determine $f'(x)$ and $f''(x)$.
 - Show that $f'(x) \geq 0$ for all x .
 - Solve the equation $f''(x) = 0$ for $-4\pi \leq x \leq 4\pi$.
 - Determine the coordinates of the stationary points of inflection on the graph of f .

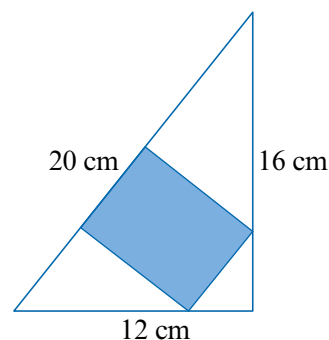


Now consider $g(x) = \frac{x}{2} + \sin x$ for $-2\pi \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

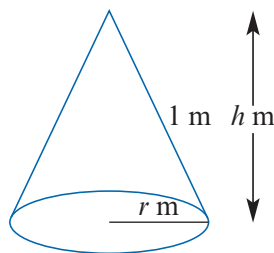
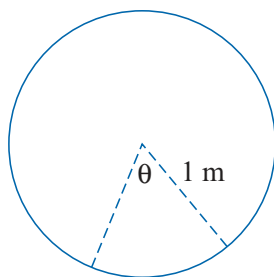
- Solve the equation $g'(x) = 0$ for $-2\pi \leq x \leq 2\pi$.
 - Determine the coordinates of the stationary points on the graph of g .
- 93** To connect a house to a gas supply, a pipe must be installed connecting the point A on the house to the point B on the main, where B is 3 m below ground level and at a horizontal distance of 4 m from the building. If it costs \$25 per metre to lay pipe underground and \$10 per metre on the surface, determine the length of pipe which should be on the surface to minimise costs.



- 94** A right-angled triangle has sides 12 cm, 16 cm and 20 cm as shown. A rectangle is inscribed in the triangle with one side along the hypotenuse and a vertex on each of the other two sides of the triangle. What are the dimensions of the largest such rectangle?



- 95** A cone is made by cutting out a sector with central angle θ from a circular piece of cardboard of radius 1 m and joining the two cut edges to form a cone of slant height 1 m as shown in the following diagrams.



The volume of a cone is given by the formula $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi r^2 h$.

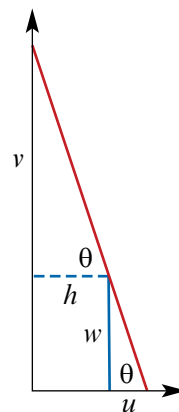
- a** **i** Determine r in terms of θ .
- ii** Determine h in terms of θ .
- iii** Show that $V = \frac{1}{3}\pi \left(\frac{2\pi - \theta}{2\pi}\right)^2 \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{2\pi - \theta}{2\pi}\right)^2}$.
- b** Determine the value of V when $\theta = \frac{\pi}{4}$.
- c** Determine the value(s) of θ for which the volume of the cone is 0.3 m^3 .
- d** **i** Use a calculator to determine the value of θ that maximises the volume of the cone.
- ii** Determine the maximum volume.
- e** Determine the maximum volume using calculus.

- 96** A certain disease is being spread across a population. The percent of people, P , who are affected by the disease is given by

$$P(t) = 80(e^{-\frac{t}{40}} - e^{-\frac{3t}{80}})$$

where t is measured in days.

- a** After how many days is the number of people affected greatest?
 - b** Determine this greatest value of P correct to two decimal places.
- 97** A ladder is to be placed against a wall but there is a fence w m high h m from the wall and the foot of ladder can only be placed to the right of the wall. Let L be the length of a ladder and θ the angle the ladder makes with the ground. Determine the shortest ladder with which it is possible to achieve this and the value of θ for this shortest ladder assuming $w = 3$ m and $h = 1$ m.



- 98** A container holding a fixed volume is being made in the shape of a cylinder with a hemispherical top. (The hemispherical top has the same radius as the cylinder.) Determine the ratio of height to radius of the cylinder which minimises the cost of the container if
- a** the cost per unit area of the top is twice as great as the cost per unit area of the curved surface of the cylinder, and the container is made with no bottom.
 - b** the same as in part **a**, except that the container is made with a circular bottom, for which the cost per unit area is 1.5 times the cost per unit area of the side.

Unit 3: Topic 4 Introduction to integration

- 99** The function with rule f has a local maximum at $(1, -4)$ and $f'(x) = 3x^2 - 9x + k$.
- Determine the value of k .
 - Determine the rule $f(x)$ for the function.
 - Determine $f''(x)$.
 - Determine the coordinates of the point of inflection.
- 100** Given that $f'(x) = \frac{2}{2x+3}$, $x > -\frac{3}{2}$ and $f(6) = 2$ determine $f(x)$ and give the value of $f(0)$ correct to three decimal places.
- 101** An object is dropped from a great height. Its velocity, $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$, at time t seconds after being dropped is given by
- $$v = 48 - 48e^{-0.2t}, \quad t \geq 0$$
- Determine the initial velocity of the object.
 - Determine the acceleration, $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$, of the object at time t .
 - As t becomes very large, what value does v approach?
 - As t becomes very large, what value does a approach?
 - Explain in words what is happening as t becomes very large.
 - Determine an expression for the distance, $s \text{ m}$, that the object has fallen at time t seconds after being dropped.
 - Determine, correct to two decimal places, the time that it takes for the object to fall 240 m.
- 102** A particle is moving in a straight line from a fixed point O . Let $s(t)$ be the position of the particle relative to O at time t . The velocity, $v(t) \text{ ms}^{-1}$, of the particle at time t seconds is $v(t) = -8e^{4t} + 12e^{6t}$. Initially the particle is at O .
- Determine the expression for $s(t)$.
 - Determine the displacement from O at time $t = 1$ correct to three decimal places.
- 103** A population of a particular species of animal has a growth rate given by $400\pi \sin 3\pi t$ where t is the time in years. If the initial size of the population is 4000,
- determine the size of the population at time t .
 - determine the size of the modelled population when $t = 7.25$ correct to three decimal places
- 104** The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of a particle moving in a straight line is given by $v = 10 + pt + qt^2$ where t is the time in seconds after the particle has passed through a fixed point O . Given that when $t = 5$ the distance from O is 32 m and its acceleration is 10 ms^{-2} determine
- the value of p and q
 - the displacement from O when $t = 3$, correct to one decimal place
 - the velocity of the particle when the acceleration is 0.

Unit 3: Topic 5 Discrete random variables

- 105** A Bernoulli sequence consists of eight independent trials, each with probability of success 0.3. Calculate the probability that there are exactly two successes are observed.
- 106** In a particular country, 55% of the babies born are boys.
- Write down a general rule for the probability distribution of the number of boys in a family of four children.
 - Use this rule to calculate the probability that a family of four children consists of one boy and three girls.
- 107** A multiple-choice test has eight questions, each with four alternatives.
- Calculate the probability that a student who guesses:
 - gets all of the questions correct
 - gets none of the questions correct
 - passes the test (that is, gets at least half of the questions correct)?
 - Determine the number of questions you expect a student who guesses to get correct.
- 108** In a particular city, the probability of rain on any day in June is 0.2, independent of any other day.
- Write down a general rule for the probability distribution of the number of days on which it rains during one week in June.
 - Use this rule to calculate the probability that during one week in June:
 - it rains on three days
 - it rains on two or three days
 - it rains on three days, given that it rains on at least two days.
- 109** A tomato farmer knows that $\frac{1}{5}$ of the tomatoes seedlings he plants will not survive. He plants four tomato seedlings in each of his planter boxes.
- Calculate the probability that none of the tomato plants in a box will survive.
 - Calculate the probability that at least one of the tomato plants in a box will survive.
 - A customer buys six boxes, each with four plants. Determine the probability that all the plants survive.
- 110** Marcel knows that his probability of hitting the bullseye when throwing a dart is 0.4.
- What is the probability that he hits the bullseye exactly once in five throws?
 - What is the minimum number of darts he should throw to ensure that the probability that he hits the bullseye at least once is more than 0.99?

- 111** In a sequence of trials, the probability of a certain event occurring in the first trial is $\frac{1}{2}$. In subsequent trials, the probability is $\frac{1}{2}$ if the event did not occur in the previous trial, and 0 if it did.
- a** Show that the probability of this event occurring:
 - i** exactly twice in three trials is $\frac{1}{4}$
 - ii** exactly twice in four trials is $\frac{1}{2}$.
 - b** Calculate the probability of this event occurring exactly twice in five trials.
- 112** When a telemarketer makes a phone call, the probability that someone will answer the phone is 0.1.
- a** Determine the probability that none of her next 10 calls are answered.
 - b** Determine the probability that more than two of her next 20 calls are answered.
 - c** The telemarketer is required to speak to at least four people per day on average. Determine the least number of calls per day that she should make to meet this requirement.
 - d** Determine the least number of calls that she needs to make for the probability that at least one person answers the phone to be greater than 0.95.
- 113** A flight is declared to be 'on time' if it touches down within 5 minutes either side of the advertised arrival time; otherwise, it is declared early or late. On any one occasion, the probability that a flight is on time is 0.5 and the probability that it is late is 0.3. Whether or not a flight is late is independent of whether or not any other flight is late.
- a** Calculate the probability that:
 - i** on any given day, the flight arrives early
 - ii** on any given day, the flight does not arrive late
 - iii** the flight arrives on time on three consecutive days
 - iv** in any given week, the flight arrives late on Monday, but is on time for all the remaining four weekdays.
 - b** In a given week of five days, determine the probability that:
 - i** the flight is late exactly once
 - ii** the flight is early exactly twice.
 - c** The airline is reported to the authority if the flight is late on more than two occasions in a five-day week. Determine the probability that this happens.

- 114** An electronic game comes with five batteries. The game only needs four batteries to work. But because the batteries are sometimes faulty, the manufacturer includes five of them with the game. Suppose that X is the number of good batteries included with the game. The probability distribution of X is given in the following table.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5
$P(X = x)$	0.01	0.02	0.03	0.04	0.45	0.45

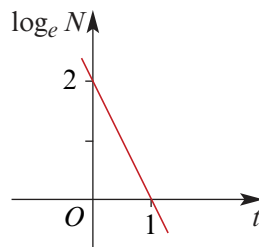
The electronic games are packed in boxes of 20. Whether or not an electronic game in a box will work is independent of any other game in the box working. Let Y be the number of working games in a box.

- Name the distribution of Y .
 - Determine the expected number of working games in a box.
 - Determine the standard deviation of the number of working games in a box.
 - Calculate the probability that a randomly chosen box will contain at least 19 working games.
- 115** A chocolatier randomly chooses chocolates from a the day's production to fill boxes of 12. The chocolates are either soft-centred or hard centred. Let p be the proportion of hard-centred chocolates manufactured one day. If $\text{Var}(X)=1.92$, determine the possible values of p .
- 116** X is a binomial random variable with parameters $p = \frac{1}{3}$ and n .
If $P(X = 1) = \frac{1024}{6561}$ determine the value of n .

10B Multiple-choice questions

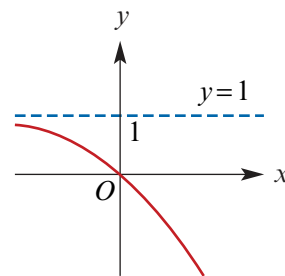
Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- Let $f(x) = e^{-x} - 1$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}$. The range of the function f is
A $(1, \infty)$ **B** $\mathbb{R}$ **C** $[-1, \infty)$ **D** $(-1, \infty)$
- If $y = 2 \ln x + 1$, then x can be expressed as a function of y using the rule
A $x = 2e^{y-1}$ **B** $x = e^{\frac{1}{2}(y-1)}$ **C** $x = e^{\frac{y}{2}-1}$ **D** $x = 2e^{y+1}$
- Rearranging the equation $y = e^x - 1$ to make x the subject yields the equation
A $x = \frac{1}{e^y - 1}$ **B** $x = -\ln(y + 1)$
C $x = \ln(y + 1)$ **D** $x = \ln(y - 1)$
- The equation $A = e^{b-1}$ is equivalent to
A $b = e^{-(A-1)}$ **B** $b = -\ln A$
C $b = 1 + \ln A$ **D** $b = \ln(A + 1)$
- When rewritten with x as the subject, the equation $y = \ln\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ becomes
A $x = e^{\frac{1}{2}y}$ **B** $x = \ln\left(\frac{2}{y}\right)$ **C** $x = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{y}{2}}$ **D** $x = 2e^y$
- For which values of x is the function f with the rule $f(x) = -2 + \ln(3x - 2)$ defined?
A $x > 2$ **B** $x > \frac{2}{3}$ **C** $x \geq -2$ **D** $x \geq \frac{2}{3}$
- If $\log_2(8x) + \log_2(2x) = 6$, then $x =$
A 1.5 **B** ± 1.5 **C** 2 **D** ± 2
- The equation $\log_{10} x = y(\log_{10} 3) + 1$ is equivalent to the equation
A $x = 10(3^y)$ **B** $x = 30^y$ **C** $x = 3^y + 10$ **D** $x = y^3 + 10$
- The graph indicates that the relationship between N and t is
A $N = 2 - e^{-2t}$ **B** $N = e^{2-2t}$
C $N = e^{2t} + 2$ **D** $N = \frac{e^{-2t}}{100}$



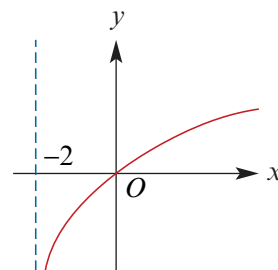
- 10** A possible equation for the graph is

- A** $y = 1 - e^x$
B $y = 1 - e^{-x}$
C $y = 1 + e^x$
D $y = 1 + e^{-x}$



- 11** A possible equation for the graph is

- A** $y = \ln(x - 2)$
B $y = \ln(\frac{1}{2}x + 1)$
C $y = \ln(2x + 2)$
D $y = 2 \ln(x + 1)$



- 12** If $y = \frac{x^4 + x}{x^2}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

- A** $\frac{4x^3 + 2x}{2x}$ **B** $x^2 + 1$ **C** $2x$ **D** $\frac{2x^3 - 1}{x^2}$

- 13** If $y = (4 - 9x^4)^{\frac{1}{2}}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

- A** $-\frac{9}{2}(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$
C $-18x^3(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ **D** $2(4 - 9x^4)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

- 14** The gradient of the curve with equation $y = \sin(2x) + 1$ at $(0, 1)$ is

- A** 1 **B** -1 **C** 0 **D** 2

- 15** $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{x^2+1})$ is

- A** $2x$ **B** $2xe^{x^2+1}$ **C** $2xe^{2x}$ **D** $(x^2 + 1)e^{x^2}$

- 16** The derivative of $\frac{1}{1+x}$ is

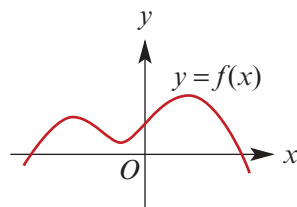
- A** $\frac{1}{(1+x)^2}$ **B** $\frac{1}{1-x}$ **C** $\frac{-1}{(1+x)^2}$ **D** 1

- 17** The gradient of $y = ce^{2x}$ is equal to 11 when $x = 0$. The value of c is

- A** 0 **B** 1 **C** 5 **D** 5.5

- 18** For the graph of $y = f(x)$ shown, $f'(x) = 0$ at

A 3 points **B** 2 points
C 5 points **D** 0 points



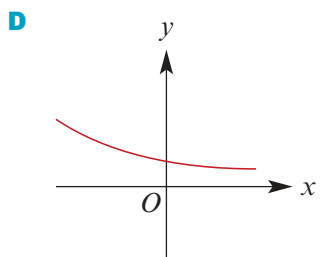
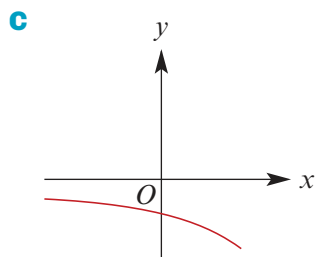
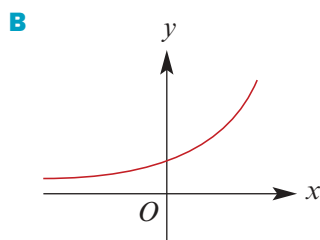
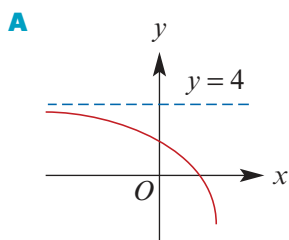
- 19** If $y = (3x^4 - 2)^4$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ equals

A $x^4(3x^4 - 2)^3$ **B** $48x^3(3x^4 - 2)^3$
C $4(3x^4 - 2)^3$ **D** $12x^{12}$

- 20** Let $f(x) = 3x^2 + 2$. If $g'(x) = f'(x)$ and $g(2) = 29$, then $g(x) =$

A $3x^3 + 5$ **B** $3x^2 - 3$ **C** $\frac{x^3}{3} + 2x$ **D** $3x^2 + 17$

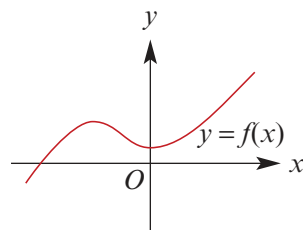
- 21** Let $f(x) = 4 - e^{-2x}$. The graph of $y = f'(x)$ is best represented by

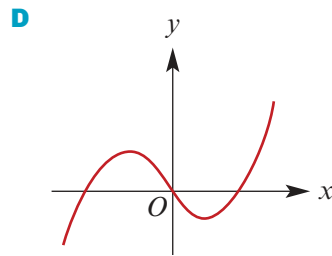
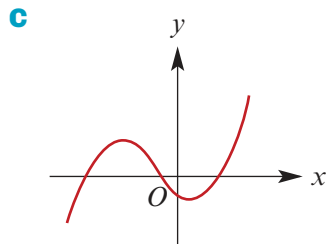
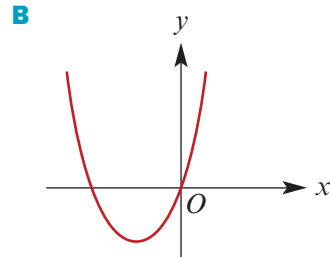
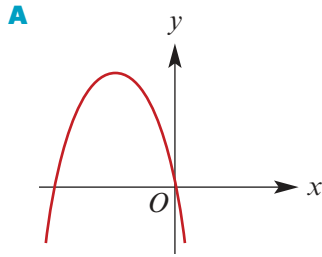


- 22** If $f(x) = e^{kx} + e^{-kx}$, then $f'(x) > 0$ for

A $x \in \mathbb{R}$ **B** $x \geq 0$ **C** $x > 0$ **D** $x < 0$

- 23** The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown on the right. The graph that best represents the graph of $y = f'(x)$ is



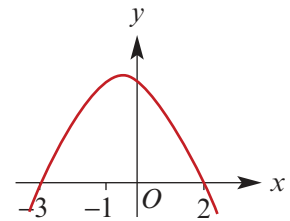


- 24** Rainwater is being collected in a water tank. The volume, $V \text{ m}^3$, of water in the tank after time t minutes is given by $V = 2t^2 + 3t + 1$. The average rate of change of volume of water between times $t = 2$ and $t = 4$, in m^3/min , is

A 11 **B** 13 **C** 15 **D** 17

- 25** The graph of the derivative function f' given by $y = f'(x)$ is shown. The function f is increasing for

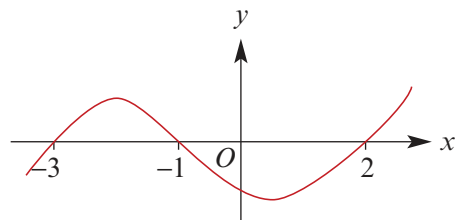
A $x \geq 0$ **B** $-3 \leq x \leq 2$
C $x \geq 2$ **D** $x \leq -3$ and $x \geq 2$

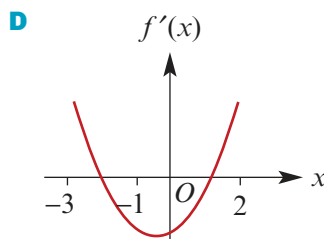
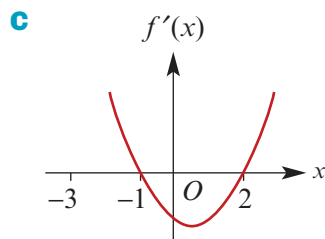
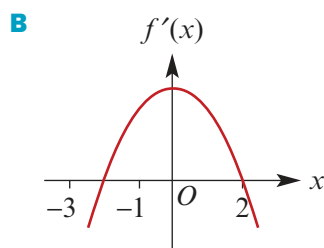
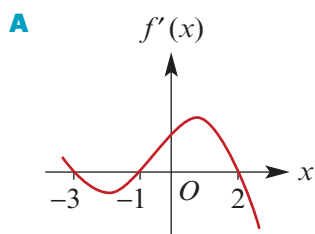


- 26** Which one of the following gives the gradient of the tangent to a curve with the equation $y = f(x)$ at the point $x = 2$?

A $\frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ **B** $\frac{f(2+h) - f(2)}{h}$
C $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$ **D** $\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(2+h) - f(2)}{h}$

- 27** The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown. A possible graph of the gradient function f' with rule given by $f'(x)$ is





- 28** The derivative of $\frac{e^{2x} + e^{-2x}}{e^x}$ is
- A** $e^x + e^{-3x}$ **B** $e^x - 3e^{-3x}$ **C** $xe^x - 3xe^{-3x}$ **D** $\frac{2e^{2x} - e^{-2x}}{e^x}$
- 29** The equation of the tangent to the curve $y = 1 + e^{2x}$ at the point $(0, 2)$ is
- A** $y = 2e^{2x}$ **B** $y = 2x + 2$ **C** $y = \frac{-1}{2}x + 2$ **D** $y = 2$
- 30** The graph of $y = x^2 - x^3$ has stationary points where x is equal to
- A** 0 and $\frac{2}{3}$ **B** 0 and 1 **C** -1 and 0 **D** 0 and $\frac{3}{2}$
- 31** The derivative of $\frac{4x^2 + 6}{x}$ is
- A** $8x + 6$ **B** $8x^3 - 6$ **C** $\frac{4x^2 + 6}{x^2}$ **D** $\frac{4x^2 - 6}{x^2}$
- 32** If $f(x) = 4x^3 - 3x + 7 - \frac{2}{x}$, then $f'(1)$ is equal to
- A** -2 **B** 18 **C** 7 **D** 11
- 33** If $f'(x) = x^2 + \frac{1}{x}$ and $f(1) = \frac{1}{3}$, then $f(x)$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \ln x$ **B** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \ln x + \frac{2}{3}$
C $\frac{x^3}{3} - \ln x - \frac{1}{3}$ **D** $\frac{-x^3}{3} + \ln x + \frac{2}{3}$
- 34** If $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{x^2}$ and $y = 2$ when $x = 1$, then
- A** $y = \frac{-1}{x}$ **B** $y = \frac{-1}{x} + 3$ **C** $y = \frac{-2}{x^3}$ **D** $y = \frac{2}{x^3}$

- 35** $\int x^2 - \frac{1}{x^2} + \sin x \, dx$ is
- A** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{x} + \cos x + c$ **B** $\frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{2}{x} - \cos x + c$
C $2x - \frac{3}{x^2} + \cos x + c$ **D** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{1}{x} - \cos x + c$
- 36** An anti-derivative of $x^2 - \frac{1}{x}$ is
- A** $2x - \frac{2}{x^2}$ **B** $\frac{x^3}{3} - \ln x$ **C** $x^3 + \frac{1}{x^2}$ **D** $x^3 - \ln x$
- 37** For $f(x) = \frac{\sin x}{x}$, $f'(x) =$
- A** $\cos x$ **B** $\frac{x \cos x - \sin x}{x^2}$
C $\frac{x \cos x - \sin x}{x}$ **D** $\frac{\sin x - x \cos x}{x^2}$
- 38** If $y = \ln(\cos(2x))$ for $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{4}$, then $\frac{dy}{dx}$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{2}{\cos(2x)}$ **B** $-\frac{2 \sin(2x)}{\cos(2x)}$
C $\frac{1}{x} \cos(2x) - 2 \sin(2x) \ln x$ **D** $\frac{\sin(2x)}{2 \cos(2x)}$
- 39** If $f'(x) = \sin(2x)$ and $f(0) = 3$, then
- A** $f(x) = -\frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) + 3$ **B** $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) + 3$
C $f(x) = -\frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) + 3\frac{1}{2}$ **D** $f(x) = -\frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) + 2\frac{1}{2}$
- 40** The equation of the tangent to the curve $y = 4e^{3x} - x$ at the point $(0, 4)$ is
- A** $y = 12x + 4$ **B** $y = -4x + 4$ **C** $y = 4$ **D** $y = 11x + 4$
- 41** The function $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - x + 2$ has a local minimum at the point
- A** $(-1, 0)$ **B** $(1, 1)$ **C** $(2, 0)$ **D** $(-1, 1)$
- 42** $\frac{d}{dx} \left(\frac{x-1}{\sqrt{x}} \right)$ equals
- A** $2\sqrt{x}$ **B** $\frac{x+1}{x\sqrt{x}}$ **C** $\frac{3x-1}{2\sqrt{x}}$ **D** $\frac{x+1}{2x\sqrt{x}}$
- 43** $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{\cos x}) =$
- A** $e^{\cos x}$ **B** $e^{\cos x} \cdot \sin x$ **C** $-e^{\cos x} \cdot \sin x$ **D** $e^{\sin x}$
- 44** The gradient of the normal to the curve $y = e^{-\cos x}$ at the point where $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$ is
- A** $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2e^{\frac{1}{2}}}$ **B** $\frac{-2e^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{3}}$ **C** $\frac{1}{2e^{\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}}}$ **D** $\frac{2e^{\frac{1}{2}}}{\sqrt{3}}$

- 45** Rainwater is being collected in a water tank. The rate of change of volume, V L, with respect to time, t seconds, is given by

$$\frac{dV}{dt} = 5t + 2$$

The volume of water that is collected in the tank between times $t = 2$ and $t = 6$ is

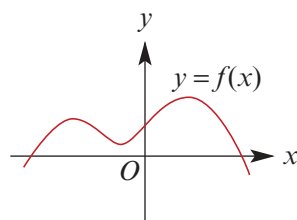
- A** 5 L **B** 20 L **C** 22 L **D** 88 L
- 46** If $f(x) = \ln(3x)$, then $f'(1)$ is
- A** $\frac{1}{3}$ **B** $\ln 3$ **C** 1 **D** $3 \ln 3$
- 47** Let $f(x) = a \sin(3x)$, where a is constant. If $f'(\pi) = 2$, then a is equal to
- A** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **B** $\frac{3}{2}$ **C** $\frac{2}{3}$ **D** $-\frac{2}{3}$

- 48** The second derivative of $3x^2 + 2x - \frac{4}{x^2}$ with respect to x is

A $6x + 2 - \frac{8}{x^3}$ **B** $6x + 2 + \frac{8}{x^3}$ **C** $6 - \frac{24}{x^4}$ **D** $6 + \frac{24}{x^4}$

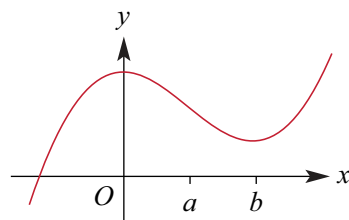
- 49** For the graph of $y = f(x)$ shown, the number of points of inflection is

- A** 3 points **B** 2 points
C 5 points **D** 0 points



- 50** The curve shown is concave down on the interval

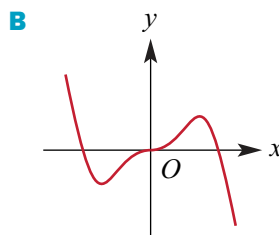
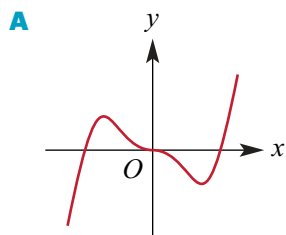
- A** (a, ∞) **B** $(-\infty, a)$
C $(0, b)$ **D** $(0, \infty)$

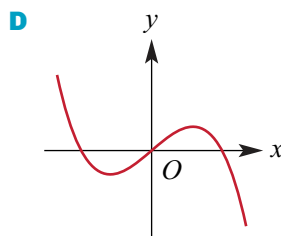
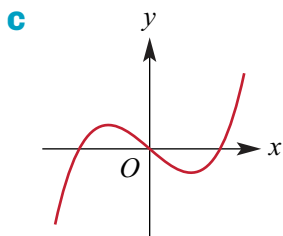


- 51** A particular polynomial function f has the following three properties:

- $f'(x) = 0$ for $x = -2$ and $x = 2$ only
- $f''(x) > 0$ for all $x < 0$
- $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x > 0$.

Which of the following could be the graph of f ?





- 52** Which of the following graphs has no point of inflection?
A $y = \sin x$ **B** $y = \tan x$ **C** $y = x^3 - 3x$ **D** $y = 2x^2 - 1$
- 53** If $y = x^2 e^x$, then the minimum value of y is
A -2 **B** 0 **C** $4e^{-2}$ **D** $-4e^{-2}$
- 54** Given that $x + y = 1$, the maximum value of $P = x^2 + xy - y^2$ occurs for x equal to
A 2 **B** -1 **C** $\frac{3}{2}$ **D** 1
- 55** An anti-derivative of $\frac{1}{(2x-5)^{\frac{5}{2}}}$ is equal to
A $\frac{-3}{(2x-5)^{\frac{5}{2}}}$ **B** $\frac{-1}{3(2x-5)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$ **C** $\frac{5}{(2x-5)^{\frac{5}{2}}}$ **D** $\frac{7}{2(2x-5)^{\frac{7}{2}}}$
- 56** Suppose that a spinner numbered 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6 is spun until a '3' appears, and the number of spins is noted. The sample space for this random experiment is
A $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ **B** $\{0, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ **C** $\{1, 2, 3, \dots\}$ **D** $\{3\}$
- 57** A box contains 12 red balls and 4 green balls. A ball is selected at random from the box and not replaced, and then a second ball is drawn. The probability that the two balls are both green is equal to
A $\frac{1}{16}$ **B** $\frac{3}{64}$ **C** $\frac{1}{8}$ **D** $\frac{1}{20}$
- 58** If three fair coins are tossed, then the probability that there are at least two heads is
A $\frac{1}{3}$ **B** $\frac{6}{7}$ **C** $\frac{1}{4}$ **D** $\frac{1}{2}$
- 59** Let X be a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 400$ and $p = 0.1$. Then $E(X)$, the mean of X , is equal to
A 36 **B** 6 **C** 40 **D** 6.32
- 60** Which of the following does *not* define a binomial random variable?
A A die is rolled 10 times, and the number of sixes observed.
B A die is rolled until a six is obtained, and the number of rolls counted.
C A die is rolled five times, and the number of even numbers showing observed.
D A student guesses the answer to every question on a multiple-choice test, and the number of correct answers is noted.

- 61** If p is the probability of success in one trial, then $\binom{7}{5} p^5(1-p)^2$ is the probability in seven trials of observing
A exactly two failures **B** exactly two successes
C at least two failures **D** exactly five failures
- 62** Suppose that in Brisbane the probability of the temperature exceeding 30°C on a particular day is 0.6 if the temperature exceeded 30°C on the previous day, and 0.25 if it did not. If the temperature exceeds 30°C on Monday, then the probability that it exceeds 30°C on Wednesday is
A 0.46 **B** 0.10 **C** 0.30 **D** 0.36
- 63** The probability that England wins the toss exactly 250 times in the next 500 Tests is
A $\frac{1}{2}$ **B** $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{250}$ **C** $\binom{500}{250}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{250}$ **D** $\binom{500}{250}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{500}$
- 64** If six fair dice are rolled, the probability of observing at least one 4 is
A $\frac{4}{6}$ **B** $\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^6$ **C** $1 - \left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^6$ **D** $\frac{1}{6}$
- 65** A hockey player attempts to score a goal in a practice session. The probability of each shot scoring is $\frac{1}{8}$, independently of the outcome of any other shot. The probability that the player hits four goals out of six shots is
A $\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^4 \left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^2$ **B** $15 \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^4 \left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^2$ **C** $15 \left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^4 \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^2$ **D** $20 \left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^4 \left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^2$
- 66** In an experiment the constant probability that a trial will be successful is p . Three trials are to be made. The probability that not more than one will be successful is
A $(1-p)^3$ **B** $3p(1-p)^2$ **C** $1-3p^2+2p^3$ **D** $p^2(3-2p)$
- 67** It is found that an archer hits a target with a probability of 0.8. The probability that he hits the target at least once from 10 shots is
A $1-(0.2)^{10}$ **B** $1-{}^{10}C_1(0.8)^1(0.2)^9$
C ${}^{10}C_1(0.8)^9(0.2)^1$ **D** $1-(0.8)^{10}$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 68** A function f with domain $0 < x < 4$ satisfies $f'(x) = x \sin x - \cos x$. The graph of f has a point of inflection when x is approximately
- A** 0.9 **B** 1.2 **C** 2.3 **D** 3.4
- 69** A curve with equation $y = f(x)$ passes through the origin and $f''(x) = e^{3x}$. If $f'(0) = -6$ then the non-zero solution of the equation $f(x) = 0$ correct to three decimal places is
- A** 1.346 **B** 1.483 **C** 1.594 **D** 1.261
- 70** The minimum value of $\frac{1}{9}e^{3x} - \frac{19x}{3} - \frac{1}{9}$ correct to two decimal places is.
- A** 0.98 **B** 0.00 **C** -3.89 **D** -4.22

- 71** A body starts from a point O and moves in a straight line so that its velocity v m/s at time t seconds after leaving O is given by $v = 2 \cos\left(\frac{t}{3}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$. The displacement x m of the particle relative to O at time $t = 1$ correct to three decimal places is

A 2.208 **B** 2.256 **C** 1.171 **D** 1.634

- 72** Under certain conditions, the number of bacteria, N , in a sample increases with time, t hours, according to the rule $N = 500e^{0.15t}$. The rate, to the nearest whole number of bacteria per hour, that the bacteria are growing 4 hours from the start is

A 137 **B** 128 **C** 162 **D** 98

- 73** An object is dropped from a point O . Its velocity, v m/s, at time t seconds after being dropped is given by

$$v = 52 - 52e^{-0.25t}, \quad t \geq 0$$

Correct to two decimal places, the displacement x m of the particle from O when $t = 0.6$ is

A 3.86 **B** 2.23 **C** 5.01 **D** 12.4

- 74** The solutions of the equation $2 \sin 2\pi x + \cos 3\pi x = 0.5$, $0 \leq x \leq 1.5$ correct to two decimal places are

A 0.00, 0.29 and 1.12 **B** 0.37, 1.10 and 1.48
C 0.36 and 1.09 **D** 1.24 and 1.95

- 75** The number of solutions of the equation $2 \cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) = -\frac{x}{3} + 1$ is

A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

- 76** The tangent to the graph of $y = x^2 \ln x$ at the point where $x = a$ has gradient 2. The value of a correct to one decimal place is

A 1.1 **B** 1.2 **C** 1.3 **D** 1.4

- 77** A particle is moving in a straight line which passes through a fixed point O . The displacement from t seconds after passing through O is given by $s(t) = t^3 - 18t^2 - 84t + 6$. The values of t for which the speed (note: speed not velocity) is increasing are

A $t > 6$ **B** $0 \leq t < 6$
C $0 \leq t < 6$ and $t > 14$. **D** $6 < t < 14$

- 78** A function with rule $y = 2x^3 + 3x^2 - 12x + 10$ has domain $-3 \leq x \leq 3$. The range of the function is

A $3 \leq y \leq 55$ **B** $19 \leq y \leq 55$
C $y \geq 19$ and $y \geq 55$. **D** $y \leq 55$

- 79** The area of the triangle formed by the coordinate axes and the tangent to the curve $y = \ln x$ at $(1, 0)$ is
A 1 **B** $\frac{1}{2}$ **C** 2 **D** $\frac{3}{2}$
- 80** If the normal to the curve $y = f(x)$ at the point $(2, 8)$ makes an angle of 150° with the positive direction of the x -axis, then $f'(2)$ is equal to
A $\frac{1}{2}$ **B** $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **C** $\sqrt{3}$ **D** $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
- 81** Let x, y and z be positive numbers such that $x + y + z = 24$ and $y = 2x$. The minimum value of $x^2 + y^2 + z^2$ occurs when x is equal to
A $\frac{10}{7}$ **B** $\frac{36}{7}$ **C** $\frac{7}{24}$ **D** $\frac{1}{8}$
- 82** Consider the function f with $f'(x) = x^5 - x^4$ and $f''(x) = 5x^4 - 4x^3$. Which one of the following statements is true?
P $f(x)$ is concave up for $x > \frac{4}{5}$
Q $f(x)$ has inflection points at both $x = 0$ and $x = \frac{4}{5}$
R $f(x)$ is both concave up and increasing for $x > 1$
A Q only **B** P and R only
C P and Q only **D** P, Q and R
- 83** The number of inflection points of the graph of $y = x^4 + 2x^2 + 5$ is
A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3
- 84** For the graph of $y = xe^{-2x}$ which one of the following statements is true?
A The graph has exactly one inflection point at $x = 1$ and it is concave up where $x > 1$.
B The graph has exactly one inflection point at $x = 1$ and it is concave down when $x > 1$.
C The graph has exactly one inflection point at $x = 0$ and it is concave up where $x > 0$.
D The graph has exactly one inflection point at $x = 0$ and it is concave down when $x > 0$.
- 85** A test consists of six true/false questions. The probability that a student who guesses will obtain six correct answers is
A 0.9844 **B** 0.0278 **C** 0.5 **D** 0.0156
- 86** Let $f(x) = \sin^4 x + \cos^4 x$, $0 \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$. Then $f'(x) > 0$ for
A $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{8}$ **B** $\frac{\pi}{4} < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$ **C** $\frac{\pi}{8} < x < \frac{\pi}{4}$ **D** $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{6}$
- 87** The function f is continuous and has domain $x > 0$. If $F(x)$ is a differentiable function such that $F'(x) = f(x)$ and $F(x^2) = x^2 + x^3$ then $f(4)$ equals
A $\frac{1}{4}$ **B** 2 **C** 4 **D** 7

- 88** A random variable X has the following probability distribution, where c is a positive number.

x	1	2	3	4
$P(X = x)$	$4c^2$	$5c^2$	$4c^2$	$3c^2$

The value of c is

- A** 0.5 **B** 0.25 **C** 0.0263 **D** 0.0625
- 89** If a random variable X is such that $E(X) = 11$ and $E(X^2) = 202$, then the standard deviation of X is equal to
- A** 191 **B** 13.82 **C** 9 **D** 81

Questions 90 and 91 refer to the following probability distribution.

x	4	6	7	9
$P(X = x)$	0.3	0.2	0.1	0.4

- 90** For this probability distribution, the mean, $E(X)$, is equal to
- A** 6.7 **B** 0.275 **C** 6.5 **D** 2.75
- 91** For this probability distribution, the variance, $\text{Var}(X)$, is equal to
- A** 19.45 **B** 4.41 **C** 6.7 **D** 2.1
- 92** If the probability of success in a Bernoulli trial is 0.4, the variance is
- A** 0.4 **B** 0.24 **C** 0.4899 **D** 0.6325
- 93** Let X be a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 900$ and $p = 0.2$. The standard deviation of X is equal to
- A** 18 **B** 144 **C** 13.42 **D** 12
- 94** The proportion of female students at a particular university is 0.2. A sample of 10 students is chosen at random from the entire student population. The probability that the sample contains at least four female students is
- A** 0.1209 **B** 0.0881 **C** 0.0328 **D** 0.9672
- 95** Mai decides to call five friends to invite each of them to a party. The probability of a friend not being at home when Mai calls is 0.4. The probability that Mai finds at least one of her friends at home is
- A** 0.0778 **B** 0.9222 **C** 0.0102 **D** 0.9898
- 96** Two events A and B are independent, where $P(A) = \frac{P(B)}{3}$, and $P(A \cup B) = 0.5325$. $P(A)$ is equal to
- A** 0.0675 **B** 0.15 **C** 0.45 **D** 0.60

- 97** Let X be a binomial random variable with a variance of 9.4248. If $n = 42$, then the probability of success p is equal to
A 0.45 **B** 0.34 or 0.66 **C** 0.34 **D** 0.68
- 98** The probability that Trevor hits the bullseye on a dartboard is 0.15. The least number of darts that Trevor should throw to ensure that the probability he throws at least one bullseye is more than 0.9 is
A 2 **B** 6 **C** 14 **D** 15
- 99** Suppose X is a Bernoulli random variable, and $E(X) = 0.36$, then the standard deviation of X is
A 0.48 **B** 0.6 **C** 0.24 **D** 0.2304
- 100** X is a binomial random variable with parameters p and n . The probability distribution of X is given in the following table.

x	0	1	2	3	4
$P(X = x)$	0.0081	0.0756	0.2646	0.4116	0.2401

The values of p and n which will generate this probability distribution are

- A** $n = 5, p = 0.6$ **B** $n = 4, p = 0.7$ **C** $n = 4, p = 0.3$ **D** $n = 5, p = 0.7$

11

Further integration

Chapter contents

- ▶ **11A** Approximating the area under a graph
- ▶ **11B** Determining the exact area: the definite integral
- ▶ **11C** Signed area
- ▶ **11D** Integration of more families of functions
- ▶ **11E** Further integration techniques
- ▶ **11F** The area of a region between two curves
- ▶ **11G** Applications of integration
- ▶ **11H** Additional problems on velocity-time graphs
- ▶ **11I** The area under a graph as the limit of a sum (Optional)

We have used the derivative to determine the gradients of tangents to curves, and in turn this has been used in graph sketching. The derivative has also been used to define instantaneous rate of change and to solve problems involving motion in a straight line. It comes as a surprise that the reverse process – anti-differentiation – can be used to determine areas.

In this chapter, we define an area function A for a given function f on an interval $[a, b]$, and show that the derivative of the area function is the original function f . Hence, you can go from the function f to its area function by anti-differentiation. This result is so important that it carries the title **fundamental theorem of calculus**.

The result was developed over many centuries, and some of the methods discussed in this chapter date back to Archimedes. The final result was brought together by both Leibniz and Newton in the seventeenth century. The wonder of it is that the two seemingly distinct ideas – calculation of areas and calculation of gradients – were shown to be so closely related.

11A Approximating the area under a graph

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine an approximation for the area under a curve.

Consider the graph of a function f . We want to determine the area under the graph. For now we'll assume that the graph $y = f(x)$ is always *above the x -axis*, and we will estimate the area between the graph $y = f(x)$ and the x -axis. We set left and right endpoints and estimate the area between those endpoints.

Below is the graph of $f(x) = 9 - 0.1x^2$. We consider three methods for determining the area under this graph between $x = 2$ and $x = 5$. The **trapezoidal rule** is mentioned in the syllabus.

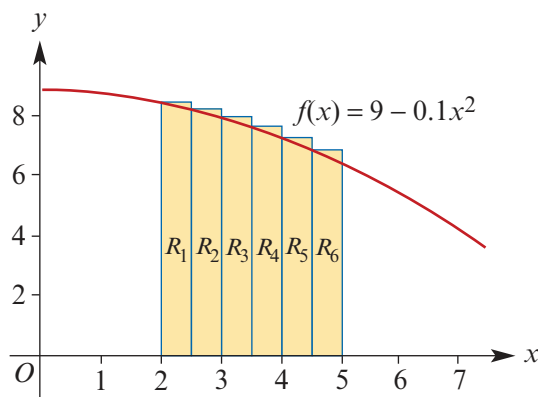
The left-endpoint method

We first determine an approximation for the area under the graph between $x = 2$ and $x = 5$ by dividing the region into rectangles as illustrated. The width of each rectangle is 0.5.

Areas of rectangles:

- $R_1 = 0.5 \times f(2.0) = 0.5 \times 8.60 = 4.30$
- $R_2 = 0.5 \times f(2.5) = 0.5 \times 8.38 = 4.19$
- $R_3 = 0.5 \times f(3.0) = 0.5 \times 8.10 = 4.05$
- $R_4 = 0.5 \times f(3.5) = 0.5 \times 7.78 = 3.89$
- $R_5 = 0.5 \times f(4.0) = 0.5 \times 7.40 = 3.70$
- $R_6 = 0.5 \times f(4.5) = 0.5 \times 6.98 = 3.49$

The sum of the areas of the rectangles is 23.62 square units. This is called the **left-endpoint estimate** for the area under the graph.



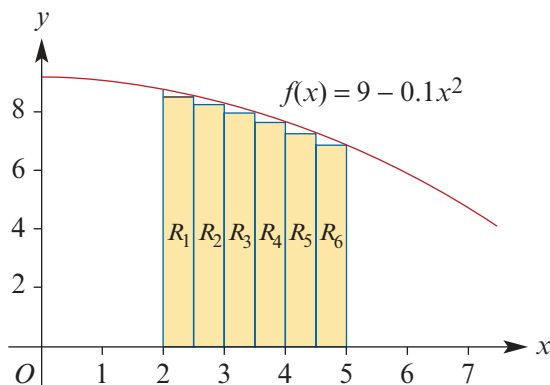
The left-endpoint estimate will be larger than the actual area for a graph that is decreasing over the interval, and smaller than the actual area for a graph that is increasing.

The right-endpoint method

Areas of rectangles:

- $R_1 = 0.5 \times f(2.5) = 0.5 \times 8.38 = 4.19$
- $R_2 = 0.5 \times f(3.0) = 0.5 \times 8.10 = 4.05$
- $R_3 = 0.5 \times f(3.5) = 0.5 \times 7.78 = 3.89$
- $R_4 = 0.5 \times f(4.0) = 0.5 \times 7.40 = 3.70$
- $R_5 = 0.5 \times f(4.5) = 0.5 \times 6.98 = 3.49$
- $R_6 = 0.5 \times f(5.0) = 0.5 \times 6.50 = 3.25$

The sum of the areas of the rectangles is 22.67 square units.



This is called the **right-endpoint estimate** for the area under the graph.

For $a \leq x \leq b$, f decreasing: left-endpoint estimate $\geq$ true area $\geq$ right-endpoint estimate

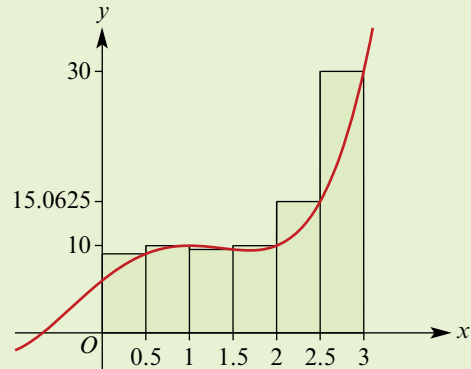
For $a \leq x \leq b$, f increasing: left-endpoint estimate $\leq$ true area $\leq$ right-endpoint estimate

Example 1

Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded rectangles to approximate the area under the graph of

$$f(x) = (x-2)(x+2)(x-1)^2 + 10$$

between $x = 0$ and $x = 3$.



Solution

We use the right-endpoint method with rectangles of width 0.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= f(0.5) \times 0.5 + f(1) \times 0.5 + f(1.5) \times 0.5 + f(2) \times 0.5 + f(2.5) \times 0.5 + f(3) \times 0.5 \\ &= (f(0.5) + f(1) + f(1.5) + f(2) + f(2.5) + f(3)) \times 0.5 \\ &= 83.6875 \times 0.5 \\ &= 41.84375 \end{aligned}$$

Note: The left-endpoint estimate with the same intervals is 29.84375.
The actual area under the graph is 35.1.

The trapezoidal rule

For this method we work with trapeziums instead of rectangles.

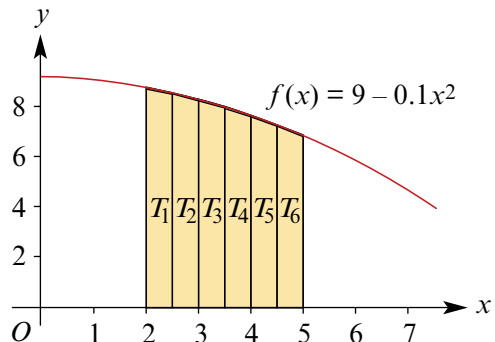
The area of a trapezium is $\frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$, where a and b are the lengths of the two parallel sides and h is their distance apart.

Areas of trapeziums:

- $T_1 = \frac{1}{2}[f(2.0) + f(2.5)] \times 0.5 = 4.24375$
- $T_2 = \frac{1}{2}[f(2.5) + f(3.0)] \times 0.5 = 4.11875$
- $T_3 = \frac{1}{2}[f(3.0) + f(3.5)] \times 0.5 = 3.96875$
- $T_4 = \frac{1}{2}[f(3.5) + f(4.0)] \times 0.5 = 3.79375$
- $T_5 = \frac{1}{2}[f(4.0) + f(4.5)] \times 0.5 = 3.59375$
- $T_6 = \frac{1}{2}[f(4.5) + f(5.0)] \times 0.5 = 3.36875$

The sum of the areas is 23.0875 square units.

This is called the **trapezoidal estimate** for the area under the graph.



We can see that the trapezoidal estimate for this example can also be calculated as

$$\frac{1}{2} [f(2) + 2f(2.5) + 2f(3) + 2f(3.5) + 2f(4) + 2f(4.5) + f(5)] \times 0.5$$

It is clear that, if narrower strips are chosen, we obtain an estimate that is closer to the true value. This is time-consuming to do by hand, but a computer program or spreadsheet makes the process quite manageable.

The trapezoidal estimate is the average of the left-endpoint and right-endpoint estimates.

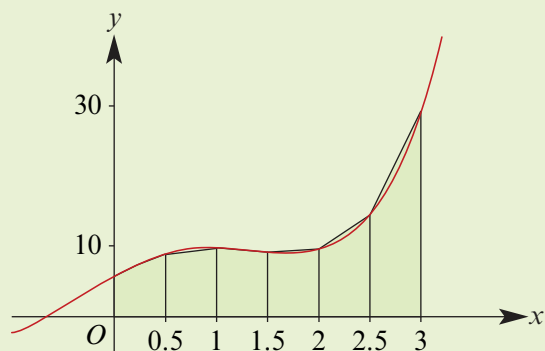


Example 2

Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded trapeziums to approximate the area under the graph of

$$f(x) = (x-2)(x+2)(x-1)^2 + 10$$

between $x = 0$ and $x = 3$.



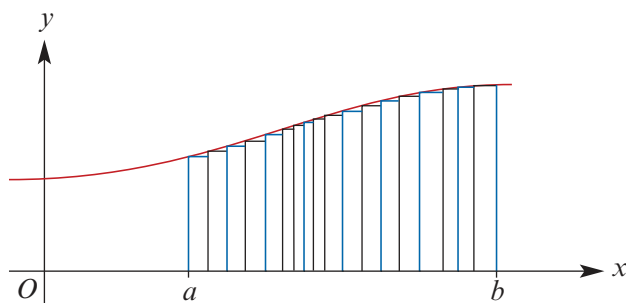
Solution

We use the trapezoidal rule with trapeziums of width 0.5:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2} [f(0) + 2f(0.5) + 2f(1) + 2f(1.5) + 2f(2) + 2f(2.5) + f(3)] \times 0.5 \\ &= \frac{1}{4} (6 + 2 \times 9.0625 + 2 \times 10 + 2 \times 9.5625 + 2 \times 10 + 2 \times 15.0625 + 30) \\ &= 35.84375 \end{aligned}$$

If f is a continuous function such that $f(x)$ is positive for all x in the interval $[a, b]$, and if the interval $[a, b]$ is partitioned into arbitrarily small subintervals, then the **area** under the curve between $x = a$ and $x = b$ can be defined by this limiting process.

The diagram on the right shows rectangles formed from a partition. The rectangles can be of varying width, but in the limit the width of all the rectangles must approach zero.



The definite integral

Suppose that f is a continuous function on a closed interval $[a, b]$ and that $f(x)$ is positive for all x in this interval. Then the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$ is called the **definite integral** of $f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$, and is denoted by

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx$$

The function f is called the integrand, and a and b are the lower and upper limits of the integral.

By using summation notation (discussed in Appendix D), this limiting process can be expressed as

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \lim_{\delta x \rightarrow 0} \sum_{i=1}^n f(x_i^*) \delta x_i$$

where the interval $[a, b]$ is partitioned into n subintervals, with the i th subinterval of length δx_i and containing x_i^* , and $\delta x = \max\{\delta x_i : i = 1, 2, \dots, n\}$.

The trapezoidal rule can be used to obtain an approximation for the definite integral. For Example 1 we can describe this approximation for the definite integral as

$$\int_0^3 f(x) dx \approx \frac{1}{4} [f(0) + 2f(0.5) + 2f(1) + 2f(1.5) + 2f(2) + 2f(2.5) + f(3)]$$

and in general

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx \approx \frac{b-a}{2n} [f(x_0) + 2f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + \dots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)]$$

For a linear function or a piecewise-defined function with linear components, the area under the graph may be found using geometric techniques.



Example 3

Evaluate each of the following by using an area formula:

a $\int_1^3 x - 1 dx$ **b** $\int_1^3 (x - 1) dx + \int_{-1}^1 (1 - x) dx$ **c** $\int_1^2 x + 1 dx$

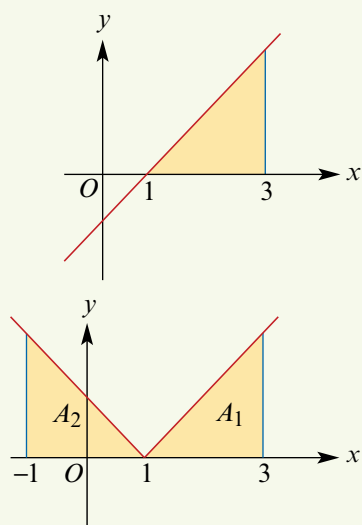
Solution

a Area of triangle $= \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 2$
 $= 2$ square units

Therefore $\int_1^3 x - 1 dx = 2$

b Area $= A_1 + A_2$
 $= 2 + \frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 2$
 $= 4$ square units

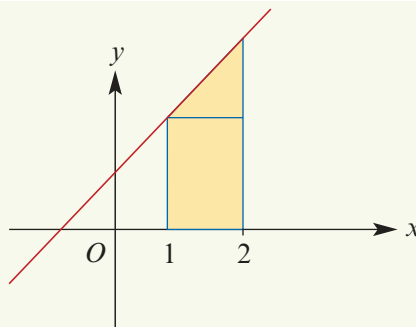
Therefore $\int_1^3 (x - 1) dx + \int_{-1}^1 (1 - x) dx = 4$



c The required region is a trapezium.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times (2 + 3) \\ &= \frac{5}{2} \text{ square units}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Therefore } \int_1^2 x + 1 \, dx = \frac{5}{2}$$



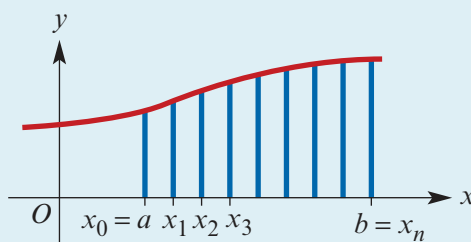
In all of our examples we have considered areas of regions above the x -axis. In Section 13C we will consider regions below the x -axis. The convention is that these areas will have a negative sign assigned to them. The trapezoidal rule can be used in these situations too and you will determine some questions in the review section of this chapter to illustrate the use of this convention and its use in approximating definite integrals.

A calculus method for determining areas will be introduced in Section 11B.

Summary 11A

Divide the interval $[a, b]$ on the x -axis into n equal subintervals $[x_0, x_1]$, $[x_1, x_2]$, $[x_2, x_3]$, $\dots$, $[x_{n-1}, x_n]$ as illustrated.

Estimates for the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$:



■ Left-endpoint method

$$L_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_0) + f(x_1) + \dots + f(x_{n-1})]$$

■ Right-endpoint method

$$R_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \dots + f(x_n)]$$

■ Trapezoidal rule

$$T_n = \frac{b-a}{2n} [f(x_0) + 2f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + \dots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)]$$

These methods are not limited to situations in which the graph is either increasing or decreasing for the whole interval. They may be used to estimate the area under the curve for any continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$.

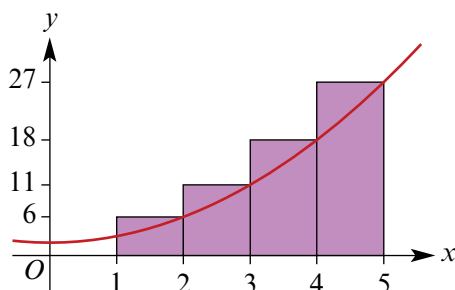
■ Exact area

Let f be a continuous function on a closed interval $[a, b]$ such that $f(x)$ is positive for all $x \in [a, b]$. The exact area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$ is called the **definite integral** of $f(x)$ from $x = a$ to $x = b$, and is denoted by $\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$.

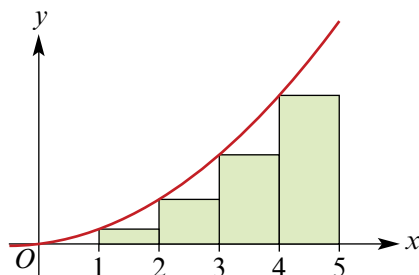
Exercise 11A

Example 1

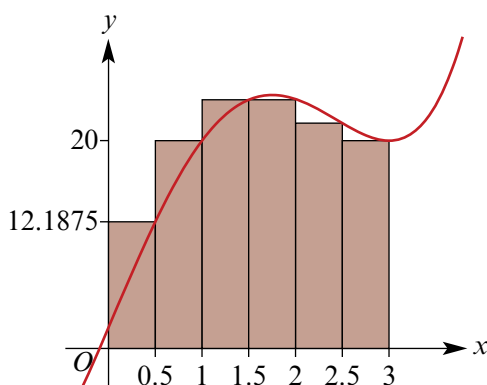
- 1 Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded rectangles to approximate the area under the curve $y = x^2 + 2$ between $x = 1$ and $x = 5$.



- 2 Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded rectangles to approximate the area under the curve $y = 2x^2 + 2x$ between $x = 1$ and $x = 5$.



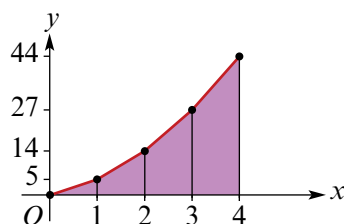
- 3 Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded rectangles to approximate the area under the curve $y = (x - 1)(x + 2)$ $(x - 3)^2 + 20$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 3$.



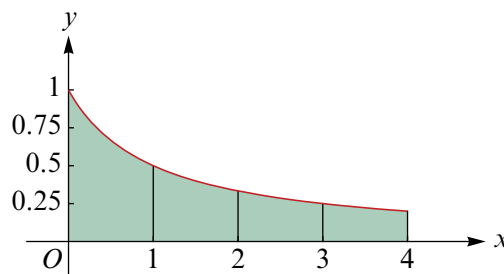
We use the trapezoidal rule in all of the following questions of this exercise

Example 2

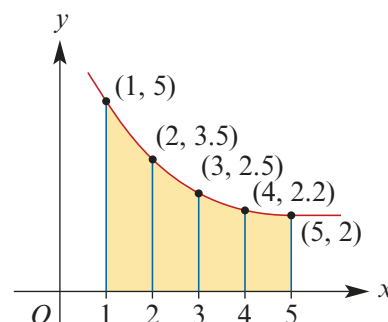
- 4 Determine the sum of the areas of the shaded trapeziums to approximate the area under the curve $y = 2x^2 + 3x$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 4$.



- 5** A part of the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x+1}$ is shown. Use the trapezoidal rule to approximate the area of the shaded region.



- 6** Use the trapezoidal rule to approximate the area of the shaded region.



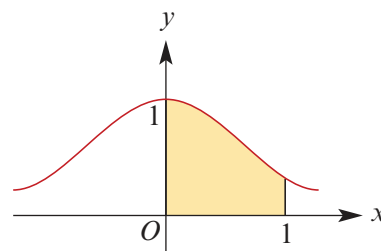
- 7** Using the trapezoidal rule calculate an approximation to the area under the graph of $y = x(3 - x)$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 3$ using strips of width:
- a** 0.5 **b** 0.2

- 8** A table of values is given for the rule $y = f(x)$.

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	3	3.5	3.7	3.8	3.9	3.9	4.0	4.0	3.7	3.3	2.9

Using the trapezoidal rule estimate the area enclosed by the graph of $y = f(x)$, the lines $x = 0$ and $x = 10$, and the x -axis.

- 9** The graph is that of $y = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$. It is known that the area of the shaded region is $\frac{\pi}{4}$. Apply the trapezoidal rule with strips of width 0.25, and hence determine an approximate value for π .



- 10** Use the trapezoidal rule to determine an approximate value for the area under the graph of:
- a** $y = 2^x$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 2$, using intervals of width 0.5
- b** $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ between $x = 0$ and $x = 0.9$, using intervals of width 0.1.

- 11** An engineer takes soundings at intervals of 3 metres across a river 30 metres wide to obtain the data in the following table. Use the trapezoidal rule to determine an approximate value for the area of the cross-section of the river's channel.

Distance from bank in metres	0	3	6	9	12	15	18	21	24	27	30
Depth of sounding in metres	1	2	3	4	5	5	6	4	4	2	2

Example 3

- 12** Evaluate each of the following by using an area formula:

a $\int_2^5 x - 2 \, dx$ **b** $\int_{-1}^2 (2 - x) \, dx + \int_2^5 (x - 2) \, dx$ **c** $\int_1^2 2x + 1 \, dx$

11B Determining the exact area: the definite integral

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the exact area under a curve by using definite integration.

Definition of the integral

Assume that we want to determine the area of the region under the graph of a continuous function f between $x = a$ and $x = b$. In this section, we again assume that the region is *above* the x -axis. (That is, we assume that $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.)

Using one of the three methods from the previous section, we can make better and better estimates of the area by taking narrower and narrower strips. In the limit (i.e. as $n \rightarrow \infty$), these estimates will converge to an answer for the exact area under the graph. Furthermore, it does not matter which of the three methods we choose, we will obtain the same answer in each case.

The limit we obtain for the exact area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$ is denoted by

$$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$$

This is called the **definite integral** of $f(x)$ with respect to x from $x = a$ to $x = b$.

Note: The symbol $\int$ is called the **integral sign**, the numbers a and b are called the **limits** or **endpoints** of the integral, and the function f is called the **integrand**.

You will recognise the integral sign from Chapter 8, where it was used (without endpoints) to denote the general anti-derivative. We now see why the symbol for the area under a graph is also used for anti-derivatives.

The exact area

In the previous section we looked at ways of approximating the area under the graph of $f(x) = 9 - 0.1x^2$ between $x = 2$ and $x = 5$. We can now denote the exact area by

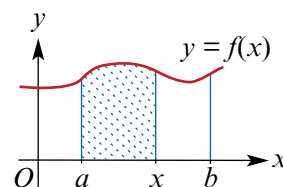
$$\int_2^5 f(x) \, dx$$

We will show that this area can be found by an anti-derivative of f .

The derivative of the area function

Let f be a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$ such that $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.

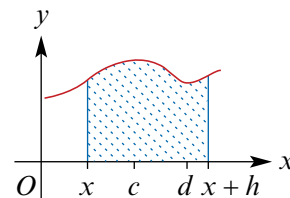
We define the function A geometrically by saying that $A(x)$ is the measure of the area under the curve between a and x . We thus have $A(a) = 0$. We will see that $A'(x) = f(x)$, and thus that A is an anti-derivative of f .



First consider the quotient $\frac{A(x+h) - A(x)}{h}$ for $h > 0$.

By our definition of $A(x)$, it follows that $A(x+h) - A(x)$ is the area between x and $x+h$.

Let c be the point in the interval $[x, x+h]$ such that $f(c) \geq f(z)$ for all $z \in [x, x+h]$, and let d be the point in the same interval such that $f(d) \leq f(z)$ for all $z \in [x, x+h]$.



Thus $f(d) \leq f(z) \leq f(c)$ for all $z \in [x, x+h]$.

Therefore $hf(d) \leq A(x+h) - A(x) \leq hf(c)$.

That is, the shaded region has an area less than the area of the rectangle with base h and height $f(c)$ and an area greater than the area of the rectangle with base h and height $f(d)$.

Dividing by h gives

$$f(d) \leq \frac{A(x+h) - A(x)}{h} \leq f(c)$$

As $h \rightarrow 0$, both $f(c)$ and $f(d)$ approach $f(x)$.

Thus we have shown that $A'(x) = f(x)$, and therefore A is an anti-derivative of f .

The example again

Now we return to the example $f(x) = 9 - 0.1x^2$ from Section 11A.

Define $A(x)$ to be the area under this graph between 2 and x . Then A is an anti-derivative of f such that $A(2) = 0$. The function defined by

$$A(x) = 9x - \frac{x^3}{30} - \frac{266}{15} = \frac{1}{30}(-x^3 + 270x - 532)$$

is an anti-derivative of f such that $A(2) = 0$. (Check this for yourself.) So the area under the graph between $x = 2$ and $x = 5$ is given by $A(5) = 23.1$ square units.

We can write $\int_2^5 9 - 0.1x^2 dx = 23.1$.

The fundamental theorem of calculus

A general method to determine the area under a graph $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by the following important theorem. (In the next section, we will see how to interpret this theorem when the graph is not above the x -axis.)

Fundamental theorem of calculus

If f is a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx = \left[F(x) \right]_a^b = F(b) - F(a)$$

where F is any anti-derivative of f .

Proof Let A be the area function we defined above. Since both A and F are anti-derivatives of f , they must differ by a constant. That is,

$$A(x) = F(x) + k$$

where k is a constant. First let $x = a$. We then have

$$0 = A(a) = F(a) + k$$

and so $k = -F(a)$.

Thus $A(x) = F(x) - F(a)$, and letting $x = b$ yields

$$A(b) = F(b) - F(a)$$

Therefore the area under the curve $y = f(x)$ between a and b is equal to $F(b) - F(a)$, where F is an anti-derivative of f .

The notation $[F(x)]_a^b$ in the statement of this theorem helps with setting out integral calculations. It is just another way of writing $F(b) - F(a)$. The use of this notation is illustrated in the following example.

**Example 4**

Evaluate each of the following definite integrals:

a $\int_2^3 x^2 \, dx$

b $\int_3^2 x^2 \, dx$

c $\int_0^1 3x^3 + 2 \, dx$

Solution

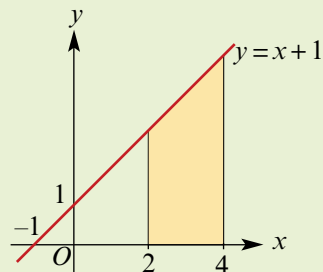
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \int_2^3 x^2 \, dx &= \left[\frac{x^3}{3} \right]_2^3 \\ &= \frac{27}{3} - \frac{8}{3} \\ &= 9 - 2\frac{2}{3} \\ &= 6\frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \int_3^2 x^2 \, dx &= \left[\frac{x^3}{3} \right]_3^2 \\ &= \frac{8}{3} - \frac{27}{3} \\ &= -6\frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{c} \quad \int_0^1 3x^3 + 2 \, dx &= \left[\frac{3x^4}{4} + 2x \right]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{3}{4} + 2 \\ &= \frac{11}{4} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 5**

Determine the area of the shaded region.

**Solution**

$$\text{Area} = \int_2^4 x + 1 \, dx$$

An anti-derivative of $x + 1$ is $\frac{x^2}{2} + x$.

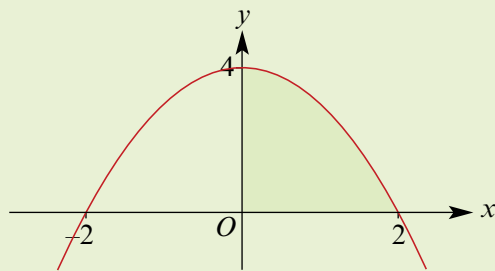
$$\begin{aligned} \text{We write } \int_2^4 x + 1 \, dx &= \left[\frac{x^2}{2} + x \right]_2^4 \\ &= \left(\frac{4^2}{2} + 4 \right) - \left(\frac{2^2}{2} + 2 \right) \\ &= 12 - 4 \\ &= 8 \end{aligned}$$

The shaded region has area 8 square units. (You do not have to write ‘square units’. This is understood from the context.)

Note: This area can also be found without using calculus, since the region is a trapezium with area $\frac{1}{2}(3 + 5) \times 2 = 8$.

**Example 6**

Part of the graph of $y = 4 - x^2$ is shown on the right. Determine the area of the shaded region.

**Solution**

By the fundamental theorem of calculus, the shaded area is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \int_0^2 4 - x^2 \, dx &= \left[4x - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^2 \\ &= 8 - \frac{8}{3} \\ &= \frac{16}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Summary 11B

- Let f be a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$ such that $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$. Then the **definite integral** $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ denotes the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$.

■ **Fundamental theorem of calculus**

If f is a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = [F(x)]_a^b = F(b) - F(a)$$

where F is any anti-derivative of f .

Exercise 11B

- 1 Evaluate each of the following definite integrals by using geometry to determine the exact area under the graph.

a $\int_2^5 x - 2 dx$ **b** $\int_{-1}^2 (2 - x) dx + \int_2^5 (x - 2) dx$ **c** $\int_1^2 2x + 1 dx$

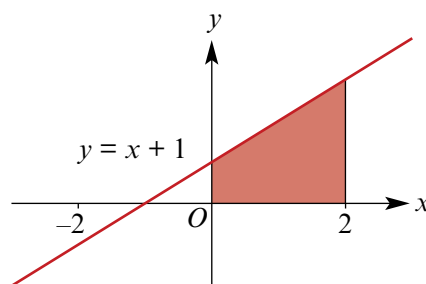
Example 4

- 2 Evaluate each of the following definite integrals by using the fundamental theorem of calculus.

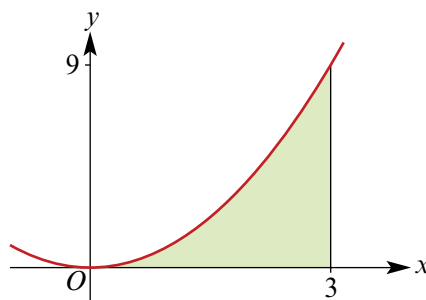
a $\int_1^2 x^2 dx$ **b** $\int_2^3 x^3 dx$ **c** $\int_1^2 x^3 - x dx$
d $\int_{-1}^2 (x + 1)^2 dx$ **e** $\int_1^2 x^3 dx$ **f** $\int_1^4 x + 2x^2 dx$
g $\int_0^2 x^3 + 2x^2 + x + 2 dx$ **h** $\int_1^4 2x + 5 dx$

Example 5

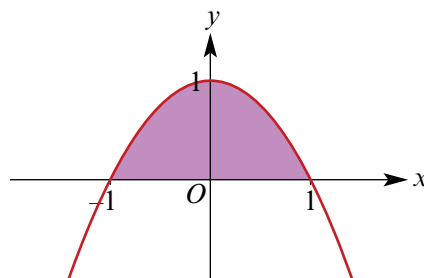
- 3 Part of the graph of $y = x + 1$ is shown to the right. Determine the area of the shaded region.

**Example 6**

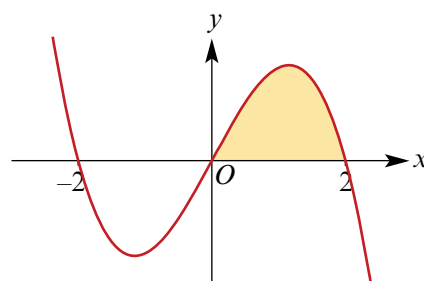
- 4 Part of the graph of $y = x^2$ is shown to the right. Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 5 Part of the graph of $y = 1 - x^2$ is shown to the right. Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 6 Part of the graph of $y = 4x - x^3$ is shown to the right. Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 7 For each of the following, sketch a graph to illustrate the region for which the definite integral gives the area:
- a $\int_0^3 3 - x \, dx$ b $\int_{-1}^1 4 - 2x^2 \, dx$ c $\int_0^1 (1 - x)(1 + x)^2 \, dx$
- 8 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 1 + x^3$ and determine the exact area of the region bounded by the curve and the axes.

11C Signed area

Learning intentions

- To be able to work with signed areas.

We now look at regions below the x -axis as well as those above the x -axis.

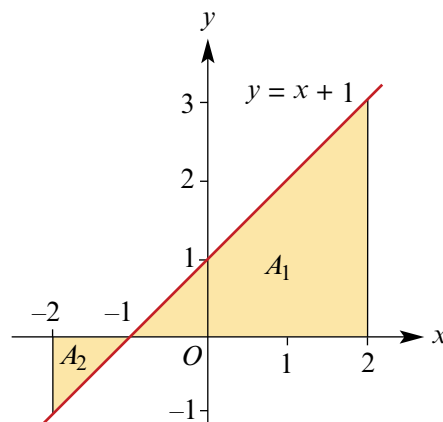
Consider the graph of $y = x + 1$ shown to the right.

$$A_1 = \frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 3 = 4\frac{1}{2} \quad (\text{area of a triangle})$$

$$A_2 = \frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times 1 = \frac{1}{2}$$

The total area is $A_1 + A_2 = 5$.

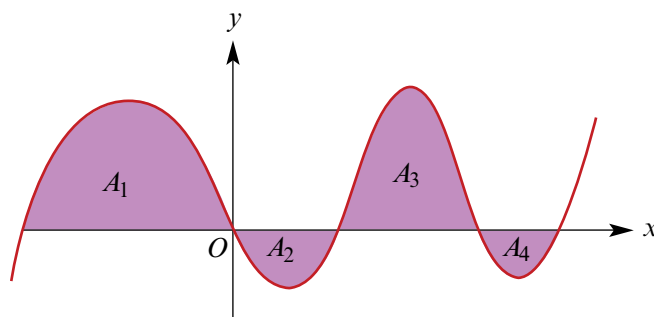
The **signed area** is $A_1 - A_2 = 4$.



- Regions above the x -axis have *positive* signed area.
- Regions below the x -axis have *negative* signed area.

The total area of the shaded region is $A_1 + A_2 + A_3 + A_4$.

The signed area of the shaded region is $A_1 - A_2 + A_3 - A_4$.



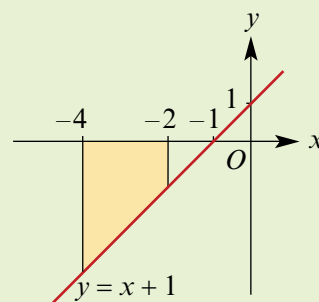
The left-endpoint, right-endpoint and trapezoidal estimates from Section 11A clearly give negative values when the graph lies below the x -axis, and so our definition of the integral is satisfactory in this situation.

The definite integral $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ gives the **signed area** enclosed by the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$.



Example 7

Determine the area of the shaded region.



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= - \int_{-4}^{-2} x + 1 \, dx \\ &= - \left[\frac{x^2}{2} + x \right]_{-4}^{-2} \\ &= -(0 - 4) \\ &= 4 \end{aligned}$$

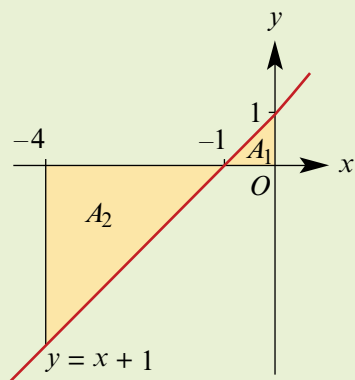
The area of the shaded region is 4 square units.

Explanation

The integral gives the signed area. Since the region is below the x -axis, its signed area is negative, and so its area is the negative of the integral from -4 to -2 .

**Example 8**

- a** Determine the total area of the shaded regions.
b Determine the signed area of the shaded regions.

**Solution**

Area A_1 is above the x -axis and area A_2 is below the x -axis. Therefore

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_1 &= \int_{-1}^0 x + 1 \, dx & A_2 &= -\int_{-4}^{-1} x + 1 \, dx \\
 &= \left[\frac{x^2}{2} + x \right]_{-1}^0 & &= -\left[\frac{x^2}{2} + x \right]_{-4}^{-1} \\
 &= 0 - \left(\frac{1}{2} - 1 \right) & &= -\left(\left(\frac{1}{2} - 1 \right) - \left(\frac{16}{2} - 4 \right) \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} & &= -\left(-\frac{1}{2} - 4 \right) \\
 & & &= 4\frac{1}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

a Total area $= A_1 + A_2 = \frac{1}{2} + 4\frac{1}{2} = 5$

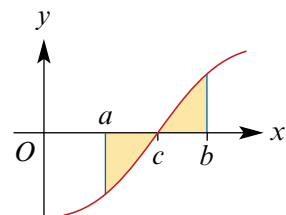
b Signed area $= A_1 - A_2 = \frac{1}{2} - 4\frac{1}{2} = -4$

Note: You can also determine the signed area directly by evaluating $\int_{-4}^0 x + 1 \, dx$.

Determining areas

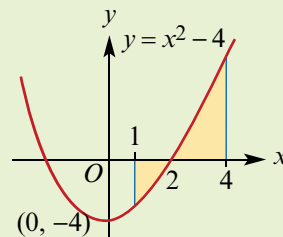
- If $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$.
- If $f(x) \leq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $-\int_a^b f(x) \, dx$.
- If $c \in (a, b)$ with $f(c) = 0$ and $f(x) \geq 0$ for $x \in (c, b]$ and $f(x) \leq 0$ for $x \in [a, c)$, then the area of the shaded region is given by $\int_c^b f(x) \, dx + \left(-\int_a^c f(x) \, dx \right)$.

Note: In determining the area ‘under’ a curve $y = f(x)$, the sign of $f(x)$ in the given interval is the critical factor.



**Example 9**

Determine the area of the shaded region.

**Solution**

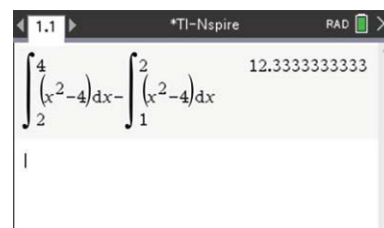
$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Area} &= \int_2^4 (x^2 - 4) \, dx + \left(- \int_1^2 (x^2 - 4) \, dx \right) \\
 &= \left[\frac{x^3}{3} - 4x \right]_2^4 - \left[\frac{x^3}{3} - 4x \right]_1^2 \\
 &= \left(\frac{64}{3} - 16 \right) - \left(\frac{8}{3} - 8 \right) - \left(\left(\frac{8}{3} - 8 \right) - \left(\frac{1}{3} - 4 \right) \right) \\
 &= \frac{56}{3} - 8 - \left(\frac{7}{3} - 4 \right) = \frac{37}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

The area is $\frac{37}{3}$ square units.

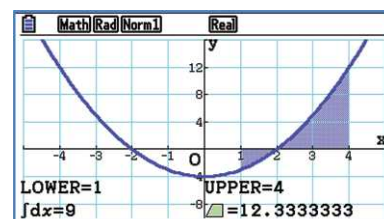
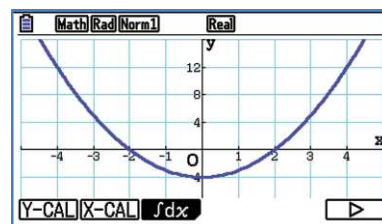
**Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS**

Use **menu** > **Calculus** > **Numerical Integral** and complete as shown.

Note: The definite-integral template can also be accessed from the 2D-template palette **Int** or by using **shift** **+**.

**Using the Casio****Method 1: Using Graph mode**

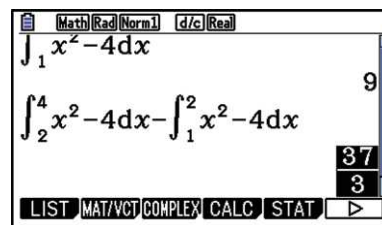
- In **Graph** mode, plot the graph of $y = x^2 - 4$.
- Adjust the View Window **SHIFT** **F3** for $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and $-10 \leq y \leq 16$ with y-scale 4.
- Go to the **G-Solve** menu **SHIFT** **F5** and select **fdx** **F6** **F3**, then **Mixed** **F4**.
- Enter 1 for the lower bound and 4 for the upper bound.
- The signed area is 9 (shown bottom left). The area is 12.33 (shown bottom right).



Method 2: Using Run-Matrix mode

To determine the signed area:

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Calculation** menu (OPTN) (F4) and select **fdx** (F4).
- Enter the integrand $x^2 - 4$ and endpoints 1 and 4:
 $(X,0,T) (x^2) (-) (4) \blacktriangleright (1) \blacktriangleright (4) \text{EXE}$
- The signed area is 9.



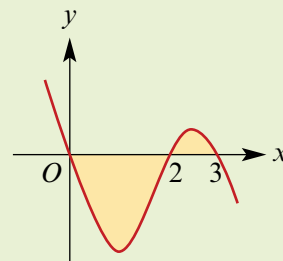
To determine the area:

- Enter the expression $\int_2^4 x^2 - 4 \, dx - \int_1^2 x^2 - 4 \, dx$ as shown, using **fdx** from the **Calculation** menu.
- The exact shaded area is $\frac{37}{3}$.



Example 10

Determine the area enclosed by the graph of $y = x(2-x)(x-3)$ and the x -axis.



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} y &= x(-x^2 + 5x - 6) \\ &= -x^3 + 5x^2 - 6x \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \int_2^3 (-x^3 + 5x^2 - 6x) \, dx + \left(- \int_0^2 (-x^3 + 5x^2 - 6x) \, dx \right) \\ &= \left[\frac{-x^4}{4} + \frac{5x^3}{3} - \frac{6x^2}{2} \right]_2^3 - \left[\frac{-x^4}{4} + \frac{5x^3}{3} - \frac{6x^2}{2} \right]_0^2 \\ &= \left(\frac{-81}{4} + 45 - 27 \right) - \left(-4 + \frac{40}{3} - 12 \right) - \left(-4 + \frac{40}{3} - 12 \right) \\ &= \frac{-81}{4} + 18 + 32 - \frac{80}{3} \\ &= 50 - \frac{243 + 320}{12} \\ &= \frac{37}{12} \end{aligned}$$

The area is $\frac{37}{12}$ square units.

Note: There is no need to determine the coordinates of stationary points.

Properties of the definite integral

We present these properties without proof. The proofs are straightforward.

- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$
- $\int_a^a f(x) dx = 0$
- $\int_a^b k f(x) dx = k \int_a^b f(x) dx$
- $\int_a^b f(x) \pm g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) dx \pm \int_a^b g(x) dx$
- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = -\int_b^a f(x) dx$



Example 11

Given that $\int_1^3 f(x) dx = 6$, evaluate:

a $\int_1^3 2f(x) dx$

b $\int_1^3 f(x) + 3 dx$

c $\int_3^1 f(x) dx$

Solution

a $\int_1^3 2f(x) dx$

$$= 2 \int_1^3 f(x) dx$$

$$= 2 \times 6$$

$$= 12$$

b $\int_1^3 f(x) + 3 dx$

$$= \int_1^3 f(x) dx + \int_1^3 3 dx$$

$$= 6 + [3x]_1^3$$

$$= 6 + (9 - 3)$$

$$= 12$$

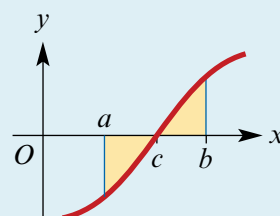
c $\int_3^1 f(x) dx$

$$= -\int_1^3 f(x) dx$$

$$= -6$$

Summary 11C

- For any continuous function f on an interval $[a, b]$, the **definite integral** $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ gives the **signed area** enclosed by the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$.
- **Determining areas**
 - If $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $\int_a^b f(x) dx$.
 - If $f(x) \leq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $-\int_a^b f(x) dx$.
 - If $c \in (a, b)$ with $f(c) = 0$ and $f(x) \geq 0$ for $x \in (c, b]$ and $f(x) \leq 0$ for $x \in [a, c)$, then the area of the shaded region is given by $\int_c^b f(x) dx + \left(-\int_a^c f(x) dx\right)$.



Exercise 11C

Example 7

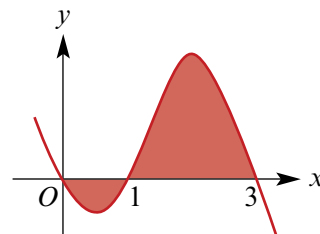
- 1 On a graph of $y = x^2 - 4x$, shade the region corresponding to $\int_0^4 x^2 - 4x \, dx$ and calculate its value.

Example 8, 9

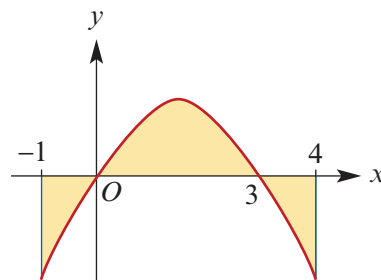
- 2 On a graph of $y = x^2 - 9$, shade the region corresponding to $\int_{-3}^3 x^2 - 9 \, dx$ and calculate its value.

Example 10

- 3 The figure shows part of the graph of the curve with equation $y = x(x-1)(3-x)$. Calculate the area of the shaded region.



- 4 a Evaluate $\int_{-1}^4 x(3-x) \, dx$.
b Determine the exact area of the shaded region in the figure.



Example 11

- 5 Given that $\int_1^5 h(x) \, dx = 4$, evaluate:

a $\int_1^5 2h(x) \, dx$ b $\int_1^5 h(x) + 3 \, dx$ c $\int_5^1 h(x) \, dx$ d $\int_1^5 h(x) - x \, dx$

- 6 Given that $\int_2^5 f(x) \, dx = 12$, evaluate:

a $\int_5^2 f(x) \, dx$ b $\int_2^5 3f(x) \, dx$ c $\int_2^4 (f(x) + 4) \, dx + \int_4^5 f(x) \, dx$

- 7 Calculate the values of $\int_1^3 f(x) \, dx$, $\int_3^4 f(x) \, dx$ and $\int_1^4 f(x) \, dx$ for:

a $f(x) = 6x$

b $f(x) = 6 - 2x$

What is the relationship between your three answers in each case?

- 8 Sketch the graph of $y = 5x - x^2 - 4$ and determine the area enclosed by the x -axis and the portion of the curve above the x -axis.

- 9 Sketch the graph of $y = x(10-x)$ and hence determine the area enclosed between the x -axis and the portion of the curve above the x -axis.

- 10 Sketch the graph of $y = x(x-2)(x+1)$ and determine the area of the region contained between the graph and the x -axis. (Do not attempt to determine the coordinates of the turning points.)

- 11** Determine the area bounded by the x -axis and the graph of each of the following functions.

a $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$

b $f(x) = (4 - x)(3 - x)$

c $f(x) = (x + 2)(7 - x)$

d $f(x) = x^2 - 5x + 6$

e $f(x) = 3 - x^2$

f $f(x) = x^3 - 6x^2$

11D Integration of more families of functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to integrate some other functions.

So far in this chapter, we have been integrating polynomial functions. We now broaden our scope to include power functions, exponential functions and trigonometric functions. We use the following basic anti-derivatives, which were established in Chapter 8.

Basic anti-derivatives

$f(x)$	$\int f(x) dx$	
x^r	$\frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + c$	where $r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$
$(ax + b)^r$	$\frac{1}{a(r+1)} (ax + b)^{r+1} + c$	where $r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$
$\frac{1}{ax + b}$	$\frac{1}{a} \ln(ax + b) + c$	for $ax + b > 0$
e^{ax}	$\frac{1}{a} e^{ax} + c$	
$\sin(ax + b)$	$-\frac{1}{a} \cos(ax + b) + c$	
$\cos(ax + b)$	$\frac{1}{a} \sin(ax + b) + c$	



Example 12

a Evaluate $\int_0^1 x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{3}{2}} dx$.

b Evaluate $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^3} dx$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{a} \quad \int_0^1 x^{\frac{1}{2}} + x^{\frac{3}{2}} dx &= \left[\frac{2}{3} x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{2}{5} x^{\frac{5}{2}} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= \frac{2}{3} + \frac{2}{5} \\
 &= \frac{16}{15}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \mathbf{b} \quad \int_1^2 x^{-3} dx &= \left[-\frac{1}{2} x^{-2} \right]_1^2 \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} (2^{-2} - 1^{-2}) \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{4} - 1 \right) = \frac{3}{8}
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 13**

Evaluate each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_0^1 2e^{-2x} dx$

b $\int_1^4 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + e^{\frac{x}{2}} dx$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \int_0^1 2e^{-2x} dx &= \left[\frac{2}{-2} e^{-2x} \right]_0^1 \\ &= -1(e^{-2 \times 1} - e^{-2 \times 0}) \\ &= -1(e^{-2} - 1) \\ &= 1 - e^{-2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \int_1^4 2x^{\frac{1}{2}} + e^{\frac{x}{2}} dx &= \left[\frac{4}{3} x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2e^{\frac{x}{2}} \right]_1^4 \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \times 8 + 2e^2 - \left(\frac{4}{3} + 2e^{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \\ &= \frac{28}{3} + 2e^2 - 2e^{\frac{1}{2}} \\ &= 2 \left(\frac{14}{3} + e^2 - e^{\frac{1}{2}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 14**

Evaluate each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_6^8 \frac{1}{x-5} dx$

b $\int_4^5 \frac{1}{2x-5} dx$

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \int_6^8 \frac{1}{x-5} dx &= [\ln(x-5)]_6^8 \\ &= \ln 3 - \ln 1 \\ &= \ln 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \int_4^5 \frac{1}{2x-5} dx &= \frac{1}{2} [\ln(2x-5)]_4^5 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} (\ln 5 - \ln 3) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \ln \left(\frac{5}{3} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**Example 15**

Determine the exact value of each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin(2x) dx$

b $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 2 \cos x + 1 dx$

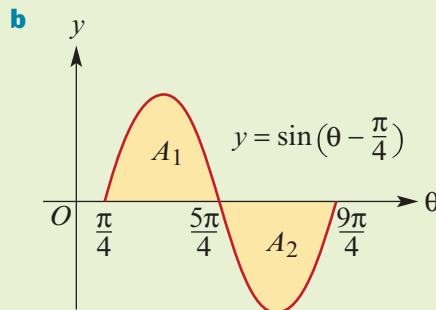
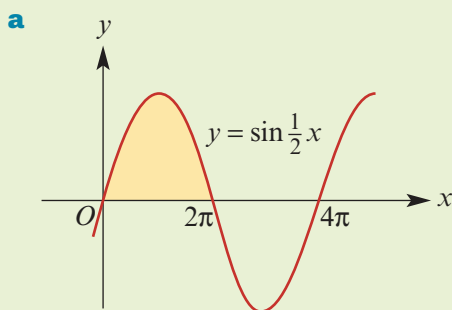
Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin(2x) dx &= \left[-\frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) \right]_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) - \left(-\frac{1}{2} \cos 0\right) \\ &= 0 + \frac{1}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 2 \cos x + 1 dx &= [2 \sin x + x]_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \\ &= 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) + \frac{\pi}{2} - (2 \sin 0 + 0) \\ &= 2 + \frac{\pi}{2} \end{aligned}$$

**Example 16**

Determine the exact area of the shaded region for each graph.

**Solution**

a Area $= \int_0^{2\pi} \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right) dx$

$$= \left[-2 \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)\right]_0^{2\pi}$$

$$= -2 \cos \pi - (-2 \cos 0)$$

$$= 4$$

$\therefore$ Area of shaded region is 4 square units.

b Regions A_1 and A_2 must be considered separately:

$$\text{Area } A_1 = \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{5\pi}{4}} \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) d\theta$$

$$= \left[-\cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right]_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{5\pi}{4}}$$

$$= -(\cos \pi - \cos 0)$$

$$= 2$$

$$\text{Area } A_2 = -\int_{\frac{5\pi}{4}}^{\frac{9\pi}{4}} \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) d\theta$$

$$= -\left[-\cos\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right]_{\frac{5\pi}{4}}^{\frac{9\pi}{4}}$$

$$= \cos(2\pi) - \cos \pi$$

$$= 2$$

$\therefore$ Total area of shaded region is 4 square units.

Skill-sheet

**Exercise 11D****Example 12**

1 Evaluate each of the following.

a $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2} dx$

b $\int_1^4 x^{\frac{1}{2}} + 2x^2 dx$

c $\int_1^4 2x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 5x^3 dx$

2 Evaluate each of the following.

a $\int_1^2 \frac{(2-x)(2+x)}{x^2} dx$

b $\int_1^4 2x - 3\sqrt{x} dx$

c $\int_1^3 \frac{4x^2 + 9}{x^2} dx$

d $\int_1^4 6x - 3\sqrt{x} dx$

e $\int_1^4 \frac{x^2 - 1}{x^2} dx$

f $\int_1^4 \frac{2x - 3\sqrt{x}}{x} dx$

3 Evaluate each of the following.

a $\int_0^1 (2x+1)^3 dx$

b $\int_0^2 (4x+1)^{-\frac{1}{2}} dx$

c $\int_1^2 (1-2x)^2 dx$

d $\int_0^1 (3-2x)^{-2} dx$

e $\int_0^2 (3+2x)^{-3} dx$

f $\int_{-1}^1 (4x+1)^3 dx$

g $\int_0^1 \sqrt{2-x} dx$

h $\int_3^4 \frac{1}{\sqrt{2x-4}} dx$

i $\int_0^1 \frac{1}{(3+2x)^2} dx$

Example 13

4 Evaluate each of the following.

a $\int_0^1 e^{2x} dx$

b $\int_0^1 e^{-2x} + 1 dx$

c $\int_0^1 2e^{\frac{x}{3}} + 2 dx$

d $\int_{-2}^2 \frac{e^x + e^{-x}}{2} dx$

Example 14

5 Determine each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_7^8 \frac{1}{x-6} dx$

b $\int_2^4 \frac{1}{2x-3} dx$

c $\int_5^6 \frac{3}{2x+7} dx$

d $\int_2^5 \frac{3}{x+3} dx$

e $\int_{-1}^2 \frac{3}{x+5} dx$

f $\int_{-2}^{-1} \frac{3}{2x+5} dx$

6 Determine the exact area of the region bounded by the curve $y = 3x + 2x^{-2}$, the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 5$ and the x -axis.

7 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 4e^{2x} + 3$. Determine the exact area of the region enclosed by the curve, the axes and the line $x = 1$.

8 Sketch the graph of $y = \frac{1}{3x-2}$. Determine the exact area of the region enclosed by the curve, the x -axis and the lines with equations $x = 2$ and $x = 3$.

9 Sketch the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x+4} - 2$ for $x > -4$. Determine the exact area of the region enclosed by the curve, the x -axis and the line $x = 2$.

Example 15

10 Determine the exact value of each of the following definite integrals:

a $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin x dx$

b $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos(2x) dx$

c $\int_{-\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos \theta d\theta$

d $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin \theta + \cos \theta d\theta$

e $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin(2\theta) d\theta$

f $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \cos(3\theta) + \sin(3\theta) d\theta$

g $\int_0^{\pi} \sin\left(\frac{x}{4}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right) dx$

h $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) dx$

i $\int_0^{\pi} \cos(2x) - \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) dx$

Example 16

11 Calculate the exact area of the region bounded by the curve $y = \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$, the x -axis and the lines $x = 0$ and $x = \frac{\pi}{2}$.

12 For each of the following, draw a graph to illustrate the area given by the definite integral and evaluate the integral.

a $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos x dx$

b $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \sin(2x) dx$

c $\int_{-\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{6}} \cos(2x) dx$

d $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \cos \theta + \sin \theta d\theta$

e $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin(2\theta) + 1 d\theta$

f $\int_{-\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{4}} 1 - \cos(2\theta) d\theta$

13 Determine the exact value of each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) dx$

b $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \cos\left(3x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) dx$

c $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \cos\left(3x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) dx$

d $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos(3\pi - x) dx$

14 Sketch the curve $y = 2 + \sin(3x)$ for the interval $0 \leq x \leq \frac{2\pi}{3}$ and calculate the exact area enclosed by the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = 0$ and $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

15 Determine the exact value of each of the following.

a $\int_1^4 \sqrt{x} dx$

b $\int_{-1}^1 (1+x)^2 dx$

c $\int_0^8 \sqrt[3]{x} dx$

d $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \cos(2x) - \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) dx$

e $\int_1^2 e^{2x} + \frac{4}{x} dx$

f $\int_0^{\pi} \sin\left(\frac{x}{4}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right) dx$

g $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 5x + \sin(2x) dx$

h $\int_1^4 \left(2 + \frac{1}{x}\right)^2 dx$

i $\int_0^1 x^2(1-x) dx$

11E Further integration techniques

Learning intentions

- To be able to use other techniques to be able to integrate further functions.

The techniques used for anti-differentiation in Chapter 8 can also be used for determining definite integrals. In the examples and exercise questions for this section, we revisit these techniques and introduce some new techniques.



Example 17

Let $f(x) = \ln(2x^2 - 1)$.

a Show that $f'(x) = \frac{4x}{2x^2 - 1}$.

b Hence evaluate $\int_1^2 \frac{x}{2x^2 - 1} dx$.

Solution

a Let $y = \ln(2x^2 - 1)$ and $u = 2x^2 - 1$.

Then $y = \ln u$. By the chain rule:

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

$$= \frac{1}{u} \cdot 4x$$

$$\therefore f'(x) = \frac{4x}{2x^2 - 1}$$

b $\int_1^2 \frac{x}{2x^2 - 1} dx = \frac{1}{4} \int_1^2 \frac{4x}{2x^2 - 1} dx$

$$= \frac{1}{4} [\ln(2x^2 - 1)]_1^2$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} (\ln 7 - \ln 1)$$

$$= \frac{1}{4} \ln 7$$

As seen in Section 8F we can generalise this example. Let $g(x) = \ln(f(x))$, for $f(x) > 0$. Then the chain rule gives $g'(x) = \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$, and therefore we have

$$\int \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} dx = \ln(f(x)) + c \quad \text{for } f(x) > 0$$

This result is used in the following example.



Example 18

Evaluate $\int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} dx$.

Solution

We know that the derivative of $\sin x$ is $\cos x$.

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\cos x}{\sin x} dx &= \left[\ln(\sin x) \right]_{\frac{\pi}{6}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \\ &= \ln\left(\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)\right) - \ln\left(\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)\right) \\ &= \ln 1 - \ln\left(\frac{1}{2}\right) \\ &= 0 + \ln 2 \\ &= \ln 2 \end{aligned}$$

It is not possible to determine rules for anti-derivatives of all continuous functions: for example, for e^{-x^2} . However, for these functions we can determine approximations of definite integrals.

Exercise 11E

Example 17, 18

1 Evaluate each of the following definite integrals.

a $\int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{\pi}{3}} \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} dx$

b $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{2x}{x^2 + 1} dx$

c $\int_0^1 \frac{3x^2}{x^3 + 6} dx$

d $\int_{-1}^2 \frac{20x}{10x^2 + 11} dx$

e $\int_{-1}^1 \frac{5x}{5x^2 + 11} dx$

f $\int_1^2 \frac{3x^2 + 2x}{x^3 + x^2} dx$

g $\int_1^2 \frac{5x}{5x^2 + 11} dx$

h $\int_1^e \frac{e^x}{e^x + 1} dx$

i $\int_2^e \frac{1}{x \ln x} dx$

2 Determine $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{\sqrt{x}})$ and hence evaluate $\int_1^2 \frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}} dx$.

3 Determine $\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^3(2x))$ and hence evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \sin^2(2x) \cos(2x) dx$.

4 Using a graphics calculator, determine the value of each of the following definite integrals correct to two decimal places.

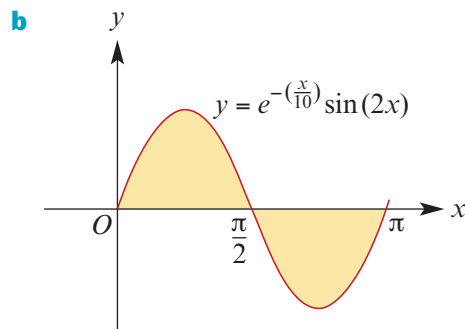
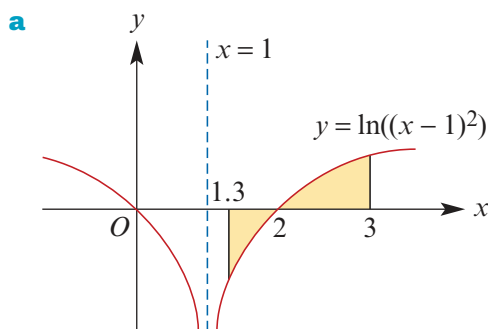
a $\int_0^{20} 10 \cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{40}\right) e^{\frac{x}{80}} dx$

b $\int_2^5 \frac{e^x}{(x-1)^2} dx$

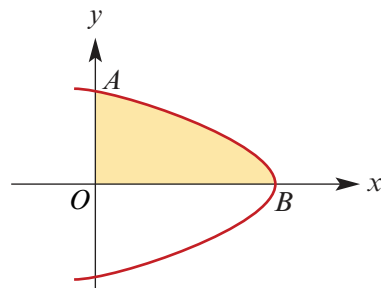
c $\int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}} \frac{\cos x}{(x-1)^2} dx$

5 Show that $\frac{2x+3}{x-1} = 2 + \frac{5}{x-1}$. Hence evaluate $\int_2^4 \frac{2x+3}{x-1} dx$.

- 6** Show that $\frac{5x-4}{x-2} = 5 + \frac{6}{x-2}$. Hence evaluate $\int_3^4 \frac{5x-4}{x-2} dx$.
- 7 a** Determine $\frac{d}{dx}(xe^x)$ and hence evaluate $\int_0^1 xe^x dx$.
- b** Determine $\frac{d}{dx}(x \sin(3x))$ and hence evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{6}} x \cos(3x) dx$.
- 8** The curve with equation $y = a + b \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{2}\right)$ passes through the points $(0, 1)$ and $(3, 3)$. Determine a and b . Determine the area of the region enclosed by this curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = 0$ and $x = 1$.
- 9** For each of the following, determine the area of the shaded region correct to three decimal places.



- 10** Evaluate $\int_0^{\pi} e^{-(\frac{x}{10})} \sin(2x) dx$, correct to four decimal places.
- 11** Sketch the graph of $y = \frac{2}{x-1} + 4$ and evaluate $\int_2^3 \frac{2}{x-1} + 4 dx$.
Indicate on your graph the region for which you have determined the area.
- 12** Sketch the graph of $y = \sqrt{2x-4} + 1$ and evaluate $\int_2^3 \sqrt{2x-4} + 1 dx$.
Indicate on your graph the region for which you have determined the area.
- 13 a** In the figure, the graph of $y^2 = 9(1-x)$ is shown. Determine the coordinates of A and B .
- b** Determine the exact area of the shaded region by evaluating
- $$\int_0^b 1 - \frac{y^2}{9} dy$$
- for a suitable choice of b .



- 14** Let $a > 0$ with $a \neq 1$.
- a** Show that $a^x = e^{x(\ln a)}$.
- b** Hence determine the derivative and an anti-derivative of a^x .
- c** Hence, or otherwise, show that the area under the curve $y = a^x$ between the lines $x = 0$ and $x = b$ is $\frac{1}{\ln a}(a^b - 1)$.

11F The area of a region between two curves

Learning intentions

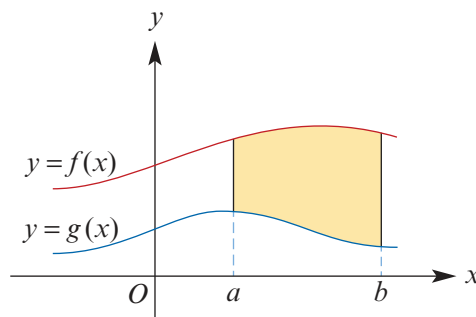
- To be able to anti-differentiate polynomial functions.

Let f and g be continuous functions on the interval $[a, b]$ such that

$$f(x) \geq g(x) \quad \text{for all } x \in [a, b]$$

Then the area of the region bounded by the two curves and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ can be found by evaluating

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx - \int_a^b g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) - g(x) dx$$



Example 19

Determine the area of the region bounded by the parabola $y = x^2$ and the line $y = 2x$.

Solution

We first determine the coordinates of the point P :

$$x^2 = 2x$$

$$x(x - 2) = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 0 \text{ or } x = 2$$

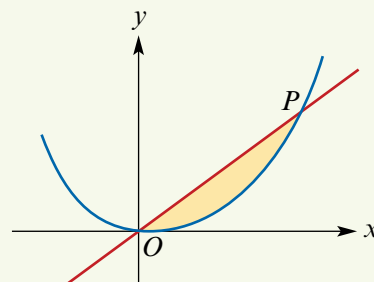
Therefore the coordinates of P are $(2, 4)$.

$$\text{Required area} = \int_0^2 2x - x^2 dx$$

$$= \left[x^2 - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^2$$

$$= 4 - \frac{8}{3} = \frac{4}{3}$$

The area is $\frac{4}{3}$ square units.



Example 20

Calculate the area of the region enclosed by the curves with equations $y = x^2 + 1$ and $y = 4 - x^2$ and the lines $x = -1$ and $x = 1$.

Solution

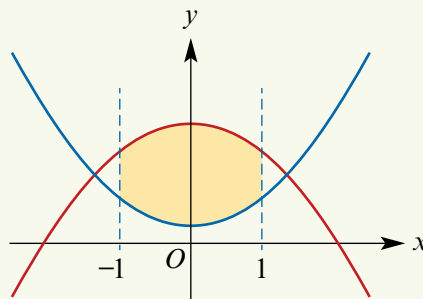
$$\text{Required area} = \int_{-1}^1 4 - x^2 - (x^2 + 1) dx$$

$$= \int_{-1}^1 3 - 2x^2 dx$$

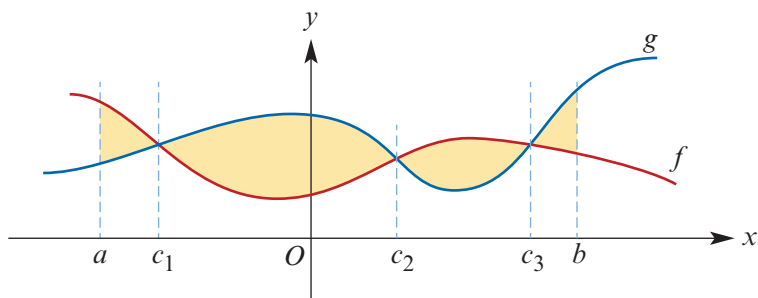
$$= \left[3x - \frac{2x^3}{3} \right]_{-1}^1$$

$$= 3 - \frac{2}{3} - \left(-3 + \frac{2}{3} \right)$$

$$= \frac{14}{3}$$



In Examples 19 and 20, the graph of one function is always 'above' the graph of the other for the intervals considered. What happens if the graphs cross?



To determine the area of the shaded region, we must consider the intervals $[a, c_1]$, $[c_1, c_2]$, $[c_2, c_3]$ and $[c_3, b]$ separately. Thus, the shaded area is given by

$$\int_a^{c_1} f(x) - g(x) \, dx + \int_{c_1}^{c_2} g(x) - f(x) \, dx + \int_{c_2}^{c_3} f(x) - g(x) \, dx + \int_{c_3}^b g(x) - f(x) \, dx$$



Example 21

Determine the area of the region enclosed by the graphs of $f(x) = x^3$ and $g(x) = x$.

Solution

The graphs intersect where $f(x) = g(x)$:

$$x^3 = x$$

$$x^3 - x = 0$$

$$x(x^2 - 1) = 0$$

$$\therefore x = 0 \text{ or } x = \pm 1$$

We see that:

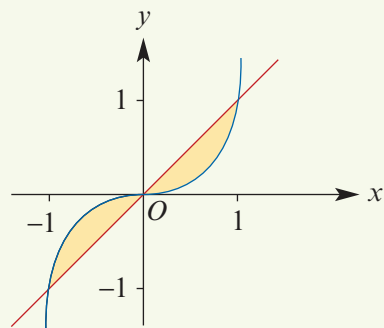
■ $f(x) \geq g(x)$ for $-1 \leq x \leq 0$

■ $f(x) \leq g(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 1$

Thus the area is given by

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-1}^0 f(x) - g(x) \, dx + \int_0^1 g(x) - f(x) \, dx &= \int_{-1}^0 x^3 - x \, dx + \int_0^1 x - x^3 \, dx \\ &= \left[\frac{x^4}{4} - \frac{x^2}{2} \right]_{-1}^0 + \left[\frac{x^2}{2} - \frac{x^4}{4} \right]_0^1 \\ &= -\left(-\frac{1}{4}\right) + \frac{1}{4} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

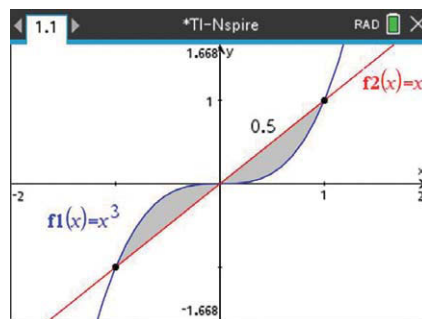
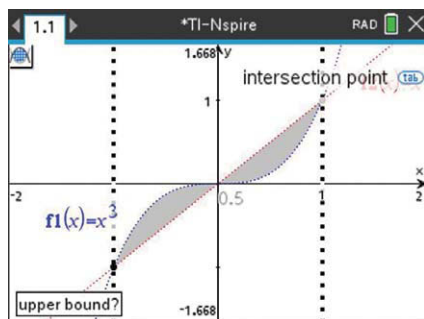
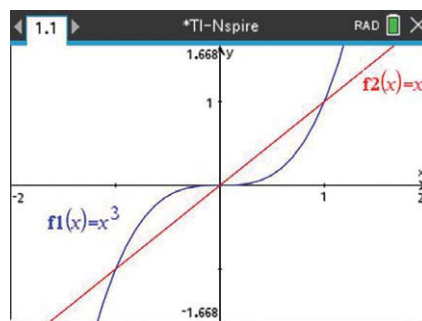
The area is $\frac{1}{2}$ square unit.





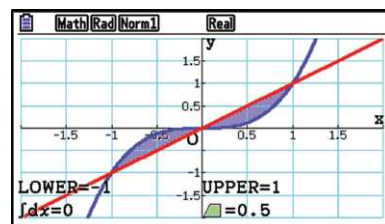
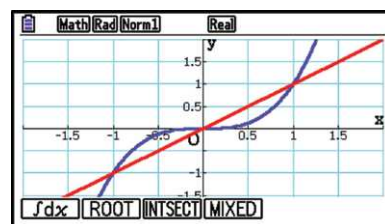
Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- Plot the graphs of $f_1(x) = x^3$ and $f_2(x) = x$ as shown.
- Use **menu** > **Analyze Graph** > **Bounded Area** and select the left intersection point. Then move the cursor to select the right intersection point. Press **enter**.
- Hence the enclosed area is 0.5 square units.



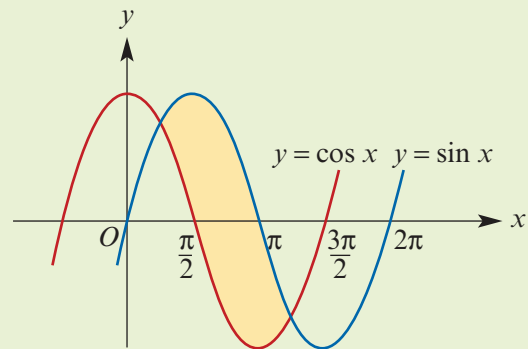
Using the Casio

- Plot the graphs of $y = x^3$ and $y = x$.
- Adjust the View Window **SHIFT** **F3** as shown.
- Go to **G-Solve** **SHIFT** **F5** and select **fdx** **F6** **F3**, then **Intersection** **F3**.
- Select the first and third intersection points by pressing **EXE** **▶** **▶** **EXE**.
- Hence the enclosed area is 0.5 square units.



**Example 22**

Determine the area of the shaded region.

**Solution**

First determine the x -coordinates of the two points of intersection.

If $\sin x = \cos x$, then $\tan x = 1$ and so $x = \frac{\pi}{4}$ or $x = \frac{5\pi}{4}$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Area} &= \int_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{5\pi}{4}} \sin x - \cos x \, dx \\
 &= \left[-\cos x - \sin x \right]_{\frac{\pi}{4}}^{\frac{5\pi}{4}} \\
 &= -\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right) - \left[-\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\
 &= \frac{4}{\sqrt{2}} = 2\sqrt{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

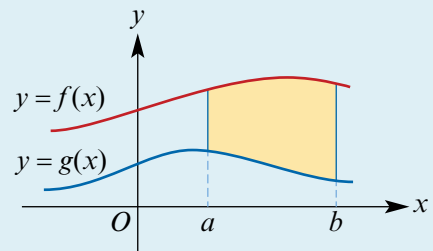
The area is $2\sqrt{2}$ square units.

Summary 11F

To determine the area of the shaded region bounded by the two curves and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$, use

$$\int_a^b f(x) \, dx - \int_a^b g(x) \, dx = \int_a^b f(x) - g(x) \, dx$$

where f and g are continuous functions on $[a, b]$ such that $f(x) \geq g(x)$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.



Exercise 11F

Example 19

- 1 Determine the exact area of the region bounded by the graphs of $y = 12 - x - x^2$ and $y = x + 4$.

Example 20

- 2 Determine the exact area of the region bounded by the graphs of $f(x) = 5 - x^2$ and $g(x) = (x - 1)^2$.

Example 21

- 3 Determine the exact area of the region bounded by the graphs with equations.

a $y = x + 3$ and $y = 12 + x - x^2$

b $y = 3x + 5$ and $y = x^2 + 1$

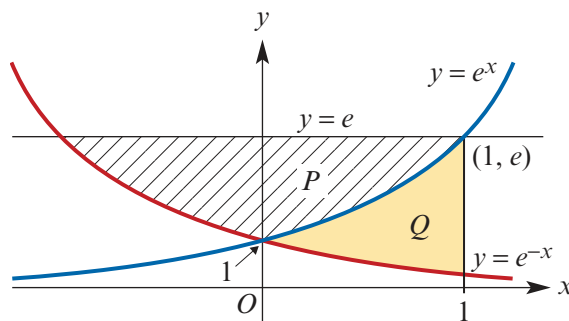
c $y = 3 - x^2$ and $y = 2x^2$

d $y = x^2$ and $y = 3x$

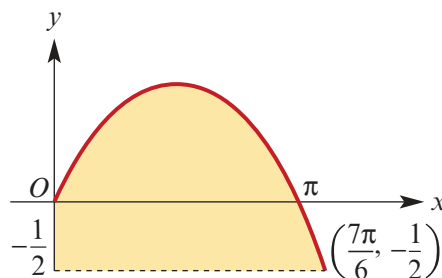
e $y^2 = x$ and $x - y = 2$

- 4 **a** Determine the area of region P .

- b** Determine the area of region Q .



- 5 The figure shows part of the curve $y = \sin x$. Calculate the area of the shaded region, correct to three decimal places.



Example 22

- 6 Using the same axes, sketch the curves $y = \sin x$ and $y = \sin(2x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \pi$. Calculate the smaller of the two areas enclosed by the curves.

- 7 Determine the coordinates of P , the point of intersection of the curves $y = e^x$ and $y = 2 + 3e^{-x}$. If these curves cut the y -axis at points A and B respectively, calculate the area bounded by AB and the arcs AP and BP . Give your answer correct to three decimal places.

- 8 **a** Determine the point of intersection of the graphs of $y = 8e^{-x}$ and $y = e^x - 2$.
b Sketch the graphs of $y = 8e^{-x}$ and $y = e^x - 2$ and determine the area of the region bounded by the two curves and the y -axis.

- 9 Determine the area of the region bounded by the graphs of $y = \frac{3}{x}$ and $y = 4 - x$.

- 10 Determine the area of the region bounded by the graphs of $y = \sqrt{x}$ and $y = x^2$.

11G Applications of integration

Learning intentions

- To be able to apply integration.

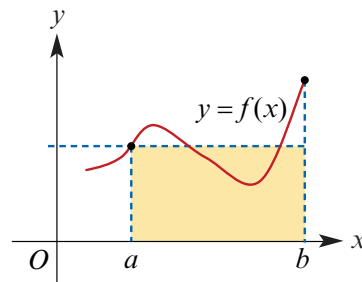
In this section we look at three applications of integration.

Average value of a function

The average value of a function f for an interval $[a, b]$ is defined as:

$$\frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

In terms of the graph of $y = f(x)$, the average value is the height of a rectangle having the same area as the area under the graph for the interval $[a, b]$.



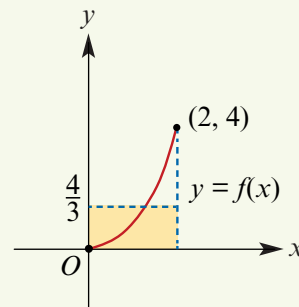
Example 23

Determine the average value of $f(x) = x^2$ for the interval $[0, 2]$. Illustrate with a horizontal line determined by this value.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Average} &= \frac{1}{2-0} \int_0^2 x^2 dx \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[\frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{8}{3} = \frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$

Note: Area of rectangle $= \int_0^2 f(x) dx$



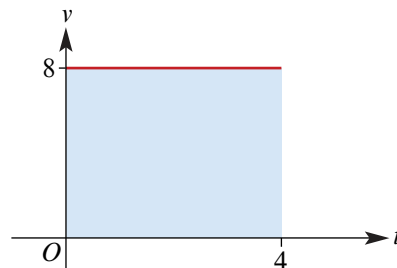
Motion in a straight line

We have applied anti-differentiation to motion in a straight line in Section 8H. We now use the connection between anti-differentiation and the area under a graph.

When a particle is moving with constant velocity, the corresponding velocity–time graph (v against t) is a straight line parallel to the t -axis.

The velocity–time graph for a particle moving at 8 m/s for 4 seconds is shown on the right.

The shaded region is a rectangle of area $8 \times 4 = 32$, which is the product of the velocity and the time taken. Therefore this area is equal to the particle's displacement, 32 m, over the 4 seconds.



In the next example, we look at a situation where the velocity is not constant.



Example 24

A particle starts moving along a straight line. Its velocity, $v(t)$ m/s, after t seconds is given by $v(t) = 2t - 6$.

- a** Determine the particle's displacement after 4 seconds.
- b** Determine the distance travelled by the particle in the first 4 seconds.
- c** Sketch the velocity–time graph and determine:
 - i** the signed area enclosed by the graph and the t -axis between $t = 0$ and $t = 4$
 - ii** the area enclosed by the graph and the t -axis between $t = 0$ and $t = 4$.

Solution

- a** Anti-differentiate $v(t)$ to determine the position, $x(t)$ m, after t seconds:

$$x(t) = t^2 - 6t + c$$

The particle's displacement is its change in position:

$$x(4) - x(0) = (-8 + c) - c = -8$$

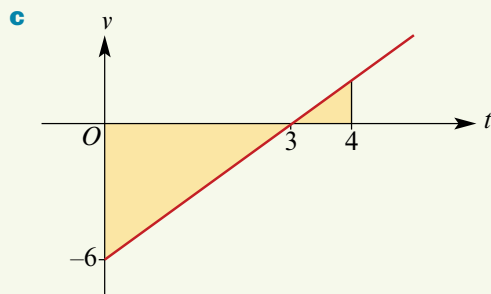
The displacement after 4 seconds is -8 m.

- b** First determine when the particle is at rest: $v(t) = 0$ implies $2t - 6 = 0$, i.e. $t = 3$.

Now consider the displacement over the two time intervals $[0, 3]$ and $[3, 4]$:

- Displacement over $[0, 3]$: $x(3) - x(0) = (-9 + c) - c = -9$ m
- Displacement over $[3, 4]$: $x(4) - x(3) = (-8 + c) - (-9 + c) = 1$ m

The particle travelled 10 m in the first 4 seconds.



$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{i Signed area} &= \int_0^4 v(t) \, dt \\
 &= \int_0^4 2t - 6 \, dt \\
 &= [t^2 - 6t]_0^4 \\
 &= -8 - 0 \\
 &= -8
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{ii Area} &= -\int_0^3 v(t) \, dt + \int_3^4 v(t) \, dt \\
 &= -\int_0^3 2t - 6 \, dt + \int_3^4 2t - 6 \, dt \\
 &= -[t^2 - 6t]_0^3 + [t^2 - 6t]_3^4 \\
 &= -(-9 - 0) + (-8 - (-9)) \\
 &= 9 + 1 \\
 &= 10
 \end{aligned}$$

Note: The displacement is equal to the signed area.

The distance travelled is equal to the area.

Since a particle's position, $x(t)$, is an anti-derivative of its velocity, $v(t)$, the results below follow directly from the fundamental theorem of calculus.

Using definite integrals for motion in a straight line

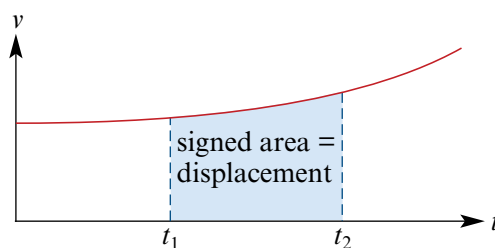
- The displacement of a particle over a time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by

$$\text{displacement} = x(t_2) - x(t_1) = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t) \, dt$$

- The average velocity of a particle over a time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{x(t_2) - x(t_1)}{t_2 - t_1} = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} v(t) \, dt$$

Therefore the signed area of the region(s) between the velocity–time graph and the t -axis corresponds to the displacement of the particle between times t_1 and t_2 .



Example 25

A particle starts from rest and moves in a straight line with acceleration $a = 6t + 8 \text{ m/s}^2$, where t is the time in seconds ($t \geq 0$).

- Determine the displacement (change in position) over the first 4 seconds of motion.
- Determine the average velocity over the first 4 seconds of motion.

Solution

We are given the acceleration:

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = 6t + 8$$

Determine the velocity by anti-differentiating:

$$v = 3t^2 + 8t + c$$

At $t = 0$, $v = 0$, and so $c = 0$.

$$\therefore v = 3t^2 + 8t$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a Displacement} &= \int_0^4 v(t) \, dt \\ &= \int_0^4 3t^2 + 8t \, dt \\ &= \left[t^3 + 4t^2 \right]_0^4 \\ &= 128 \text{ m} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{b Average velocity} &= \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{change in time}} \\ &= \frac{128}{4} \\ &= 32 \text{ m/s} \end{aligned}$$

Rates of change

Given the rate of change of a quantity, we can obtain information about how the quantity varies. For example, we have seen that if the velocity of an object travelling in a straight line is given at time t , then the position of the object at time t can be determined using information about the initial position of the object.



Example 26

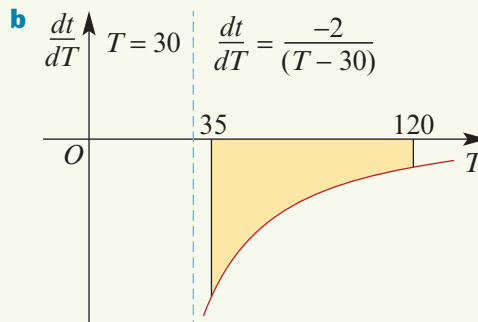
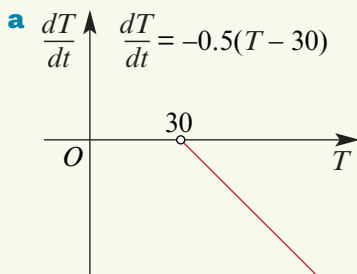
The rate of change of temperature with respect to time of a liquid which has been boiled and then allowed to cool is given by

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = -0.5(T - 30)$$

where T is the temperature ($^{\circ}\text{C}$) at time t (minutes).

- a** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dT}{dt}$ against T for $T > 30$.
- b** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dt}{dT}$ against T for $T > 30$.
- c i** Determine the area of the region enclosed by the graph of part **b**, the T -axis and the lines $T = 35$ and $T = 120$. Give your answer correct to two decimal places.
- ii** What does this area represent?

Solution



c i Area $= - \int_{35}^{120} \frac{-2}{T - 30} dT = 5.78$

- ii** The area represents the time taken for the liquid to cool from 120°C to 35°C .

We can use integration to determine the total change in a quantity from the rate of change of the quantity. The result below follows directly from the fundamental theorem of calculus.

Given the rule for $f'(x)$, the **total change** in the value of $f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$ can be found using

$$f(b) - f(a) = \int_a^b f'(x) dx$$

Note: In Example 25, the definite integral $\int_{120}^{35} \frac{dt}{dT} dT = \int_{120}^{35} \frac{-2}{T - 30} dT = 5.78$ gives the change in t between $T = 120$ and $T = 35$.

Exercise 11G

Example 23

- 1 Determine the average value of each of the following functions for the stated interval.

a $f(x) = x(2 - x)$, $x \in [0, 2]$

b $f(x) = \sin x$, $x \in [0, \pi]$

c $f(x) = \sin x$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$

d $f(x) = \sin(nx)$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{2\pi}{n}\right]$

e $f(x) = e^x + e^{-x}$, $x \in [-2, 2]$

- 2 An object is cooling and its temperature, $T^\circ\text{C}$, after t minutes is given by $T = 50e^{\frac{-t}{2}}$. What is its average temperature over the first 10 minutes of cooling?

- 3 Determine the average speed over the given interval for each of the following speed functions. For each of them, sketch a graph and mark in the average as a horizontal line. Time is in seconds and speed in metres per second.

a $v = 20t$, $t \in [0, 5]$

b $v = 24 \sin\left(\frac{1}{4}\pi t\right)$, $t \in [0, 4]$

c $v = 5(1 - e^{-t})$, $t \in [0, 5]$

- 4 An object falls from rest. Its velocity, v m/s, at time t seconds is given by $v = 9.8t$. Determine the average velocity of the object over the first 3 seconds of its motion.

- 5 Determine the mean value of $x(a - x)$ from $x = 0$ to $x = a$.

- 6 A quantity of gas expands according to the law $pv^{0.9} = 300$, where v m³ is the volume of the gas and p N/m² is the pressure.

a What is the average pressure as the volume changes from $\frac{1}{2}$ m³ to 1 m³?

b If the change in volume in terms of t is given by $v = 3t + 1$, what is the average pressure over the time interval from $t = 0$ to $t = 1$?

Example 24

- 7 A particle moves in a straight line. The velocity of the particle, v m/s, at time t seconds is given by $v = 2t - 3$ for $t \geq 0$.

a Sketch the velocity–time graph for the motion of the particle from $t = 0$ to $t = 4$.

b By calculating a total signed area, determine the particle's displacement after 4 seconds.

c By calculating a total area, determine the distance travelled by the particle in the first 4 seconds.

- 8 A particle is oscillating in a straight line. Its velocity, v m/s, at time t seconds is given by $v = \frac{3\pi}{2} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right)$. Determine the particle's displacement between $t = 1$ and $t = 4$.

- 9 A particle's velocity, v cm/s, at time t seconds is given by a function of the form $v = 3 + at$, where a is a constant. Given that the particle's displacement between $t = 1$ and $t = 2$ is -7 cm, determine the value of a .

Example 25

10 A particle moves along a straight line. Its acceleration, a m/s², at time t seconds ($t \geq 0$) is given by $a = 3t - 5$. Its initial velocity is 3 m/s.

- a** Determine the displacement of the particle in the period from $t = 1$ to $t = 5$.
- b** Determine the average velocity of the particle over this period.

11 After t seconds ($t \geq 0$), a particle has acceleration $a = kt$ m/s², where k is a constant. Given that, after 2 seconds, the particle's displacement is 7 m and its velocity is 4 m/s, determine the value of k .

Example 26

12 Heat escapes from a storage tank such that the rate of heat loss, in kilojoules per day, is given by

$$\frac{dH}{dt} = 1 + \frac{3}{4} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{60}\right), \quad 0 \leq t \leq 200$$

where $H(t)$ is the total accumulated heat loss at time t days after noon on 1 April.

- a** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dH}{dt}$ against t for $0 \leq t \leq 200$.
- b** Determine the values of t for which the rate of heat loss, i.e. $\frac{dH}{dt}$, is greater than 1.375.
- c** Determine the values of t for which the rate of heat loss reaches its maximum.
- d** Determine the heat lost between:
 - i** $t = 0$ and $t = 120$
 - ii** $t = 0$ and $t = 200$

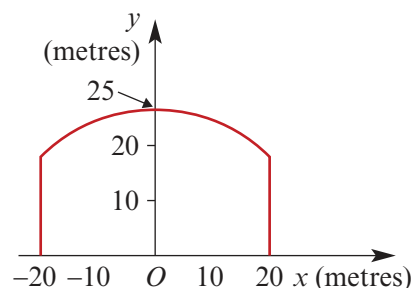
13 The rate of flow of water from a reservoir is given by $\frac{dV}{dt} = 1000 - 30t^2 + 2t^3$ for $0 \leq t \leq 15$, where V is measured in millions of litres and t is the number of hours after the sluice gates are opened.

- a** Determine the rate of flow (in million litres per hour) when $t = 0$ and $t = 2$.
- b**
 - i** Determine the times when the rate of flow is a maximum.
 - ii** Determine the maximum flow.
- c** Sketch the graph of $\frac{dV}{dt}$ against t for $0 \leq t \leq 15$.
- d**
 - i** Determine the area beneath the graph between $t = 0$ and $t = 10$.
 - ii** What does this area represent?

14 The population of penguins on an island off the coast of Tasmania is increasing steadily. The rate of growth is given by the function $R(t) = 10 \ln(t + 1)$ for $t \geq 0$. The rate is measured in number of penguins per year. The date 1 January 1875 coincides with $t = 0$.

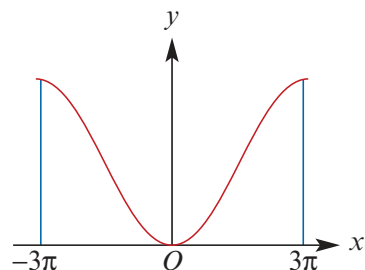
- a** Determine the rate of growth of penguins when $t = 5$, $t = 10$ and $t = 100$.
- b** Sketch the graph of $y = R(t)$.
- c** Using a graphics calculator, determine the area under the graph of $y = R(t)$ between $t = 0$ and $t = 100$. What does this area represent?

- 15** The roof of an exhibition hall has the shape of the function $f(x) = 25 - 0.02x^2$, $x \in [-20, 20]$. The hall is 80 metres long. A cross-section of the hall is shown in the figure. An air-conditioning company wishes to determine the volume of the hall so that a suitable system may be installed. Determine this volume.

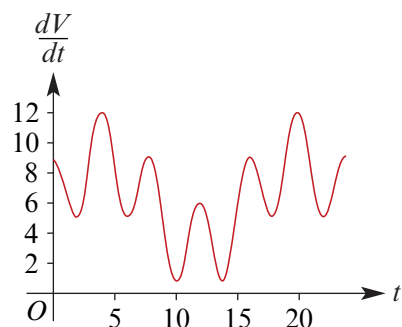


- 16** A long trough with a parabolic cross-section is $1\frac{1}{2}$ metres wide at the top and 2 metres deep. Determine the depth of water when the trough is half full.

- 17** A sculpture has cross-section as shown. The equation of the curve is $y = 3 - 3\cos\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ for $x \in [-3\pi, 3\pi]$. All measurements are in metres.



- Determine the maximum value of the function and hence the height of the sculpture.
 - The sculpture has a flat metal finish on one face, which in the diagram is represented by the region between the curve and the x -axis. Determine the area of this region.
 - There is a strut that meets the right side of the curve at right angles and passes through the point $(9, 0)$.
 - Determine the equation of the normal to the curve where $x = a$.
 - Determine, correct to three decimal places, the value of a if the normal passes through $(9, 0)$.
- 18** The graph shows the number of litres per minute of water flowing through a pipe against the number of minutes since the machine started. The pipe is attached to the machine, which requires the water for cooling. The curve has equation
- $$\frac{dV}{dt} = 3\left[\cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right) + \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{8}\right) + 2\right]$$
- What is the rate of flow of water when:
 - $t = 0$
 - $t = 2$
 - $t = 4$
 - Determine, correct to three decimal places, the maximum and minimum flow through the pipe.
 - Determine the volume of water which flows through the pipe in the first 8 minutes.



11H Additional problems on velocity-time graphs

Learning intentions

- To be able to work with integration and velocity-time graphs.

Information from a velocity-time graph

- **Acceleration** is given by the gradient.
- **Displacement** is given by the signed area bounded by the graph and the t -axis.
- **Distance travelled** is given by the total area bounded by the graph and the t -axis.



Example 27

A person walks east for 8 seconds at 2 m/s and then west for 4 seconds at 1.5 m/s. Sketch the velocity-time graph for this journey and determine the displacement from the start of the walk and the total distance travelled.

Solution

The velocity-time graph is as shown.

Distance travelled to the east

$$= 8 \times 2 = 16 \text{ m}$$

Distance travelled to the west

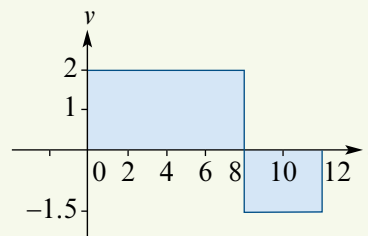
$$= 4 \times 1.5 = 6 \text{ m}$$

Displacement (signed area)

$$= 8 \times 2 + 4 \times (-1.5) = 10 \text{ m}$$

Distance travelled (total area)

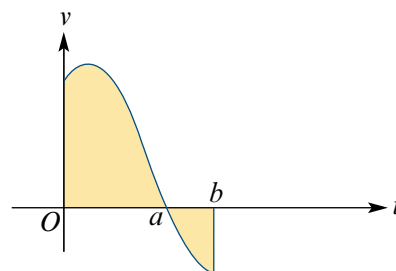
$$= 8 \times 2 + 4 \times 1.5 = 22 \text{ m}$$



Consider a particle moving in a straight line with its motion described by the velocity-time graph shown opposite.

The shaded area represents the total distance travelled by the particle from $t = 0$ to $t = b$.

The signed area represents the displacement (change in position) of the particle for this time interval.



Using integral notation to describe the areas yields the following:

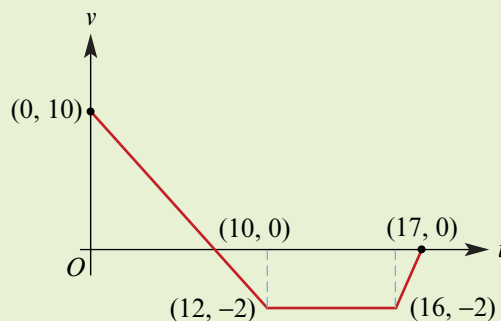
- Distance travelled over the time interval $[0, a]$ $= \int_0^a v(t) \, dt$
- Distance travelled over the time interval $[a, b]$ $= - \int_a^b v(t) \, dt$
- Total distance travelled over the time interval $[0, b]$ $= \int_0^a v(t) \, dt - \int_a^b v(t) \, dt$
- Displacement over the time interval $[0, b]$ $= \int_0^b v(t) \, dt$

**Example 28**

The graph shows the motion of a particle.

- a** Describe the motion.
b Determine the distance travelled.

Velocity is measured in m/s and time in seconds.

**Solution**

a The particle decelerates uniformly from an initial velocity of 10 m/s. After 10 seconds, it is instantaneously at rest before it accelerates uniformly in the opposite direction for 2 seconds, until its velocity reaches -2 m/s. It continues to travel in this direction with a constant velocity of -2 m/s for a further 4 seconds. Finally, it decelerates uniformly until it comes to rest after 17 seconds.

b Distance travelled = $(\frac{1}{2} \times 10 \times 10) + (\frac{1}{2} \times 2 \times 2) + (4 \times 2) + (\frac{1}{2} \times 1 \times 2)$
 $= 61 \text{ m}$

**Example 29**

A car travels from rest for 10 seconds, with uniform acceleration, until it reaches a speed of 90 km/h. It then travels with this constant speed for 15 seconds and finally decelerates at a uniform 5 m/s^2 until it stops. Calculate the distance travelled from start to finish.

Solution

First convert the given speed to standard units:

$$90 \text{ km/h} = 90\,000 \text{ m/h} = \frac{90\,000}{3600} \text{ m/s} = 25 \text{ m/s}$$

Now sketch a velocity-time graph showing the given information.

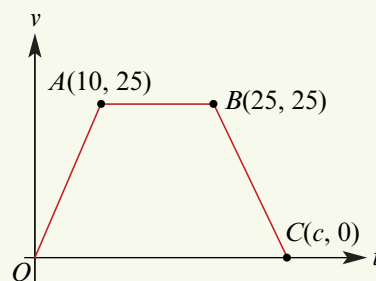
The gradient of BC is -5 (deceleration):

$$\text{gradient} = \frac{25}{25 - c} = -5$$

$$-5(25 - c) = 25$$

$$-125 + 5c = 25$$

$$\therefore c = 30$$



Now calculate the distance travelled using the area of trapezium $OABC$:

$$\text{area} = \frac{1}{2}(15 + 30) \times 25 = 562.5$$

The total distance travelled is 562.5 metres.

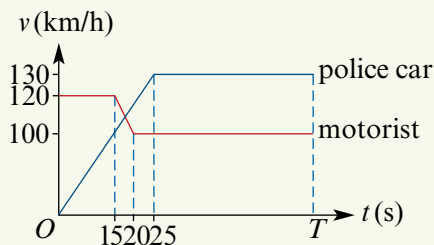
**Example 30**

A motorist is travelling at a constant speed of 120 km/h when he passes a stationary police car. He continues at that speed for another 15 s before uniformly decelerating to 100 km/h in 5 s. The police car takes off after the motorist the instant that he passes. It accelerates uniformly for 25 s, by which time it has reached 130 km/h. It continues at that speed until it catches up to the motorist. After how long does the police car catch up to the motorist and how far has he travelled in that time?

Solution

We start by representing the information on a velocity–time graph.

The distances travelled by the motorist and the police car will be the same, so the areas under the two velocity–time graphs will be equal. This fact can be used to determine T , the time taken for the police car to catch up to the motorist.



Note: The factor $\frac{5}{18}$ changes velocities from km/h to m/s.

The distances travelled (in metres) after T seconds are given by

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Distance for motorist} &= \frac{5}{18} \left(120 \times 15 + \frac{1}{2} (120 + 100) \times 5 + 100(T - 20) \right) \\ &= \frac{5}{18} (1800 + 550 + 100T - 2000) \\ &= \frac{5}{18} (100T + 350)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Distance for police car} &= \frac{5}{18} \left(\frac{1}{2} \times 25 \times 130 + 130(T - 25) \right) \\ &= \frac{5}{18} (130T - 1625)\end{aligned}$$

When the police car catches up to the motorist:

$$100T + 350 = 130T - 1625$$

$$30T = 1975$$

$$T = \frac{395}{6}$$

The police car catches up to the motorist after 65.83 s.

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \text{Distance for motorist} &= \frac{5}{18} (100T + 350) \quad \text{where } T = \frac{395}{6} \\ &= \frac{52\,000}{27} \text{ m} \\ &= 1.926 \text{ km}\end{aligned}$$

The motorist has travelled 1.926 km when the police car catches up.



Example 31

An object travels in a line. Its acceleration decreases uniformly from 0 m/s^2 to -5 m/s^2 in 15 seconds. If the initial velocity was 24 m/s , determine:

- a** the velocity at the end of the 15 seconds
- b** the distance travelled in the 15 seconds.

Solution

- a** The acceleration–time graph shows the uniform change in acceleration from 0 m/s^2 to -5 m/s^2 in 15 seconds.

From the graph, we can write $a = mt + c$.

But $m = \frac{-5}{15} = -\frac{1}{3}$ and $c = 0$, giving

$$a = -\frac{1}{3}t$$

$$\therefore v = -\frac{1}{6}t^2 + d$$

At $t = 0$, $v = 24$, so $d = 24$.

$$\therefore v = -\frac{1}{6}t^2 + 24$$

Now, at $t = 15$,

$$\begin{aligned} v &= -\frac{1}{6} \times 15^2 + 24 \\ &= -13.5 \end{aligned}$$

The velocity at 15 seconds is -13.5 m/s .

- b** To sketch the velocity–time graph, first determine the t -axis intercepts:

$$-\frac{1}{6}t^2 + 24 = 0$$

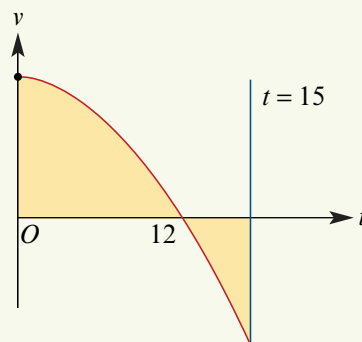
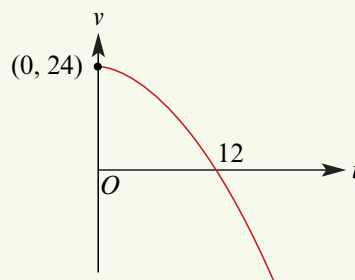
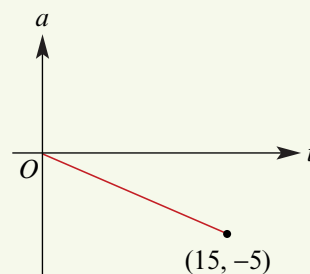
$$\therefore t^2 = 144$$

$$\therefore t = 12 \quad (\text{since } t \geq 0)$$

The distance travelled is given by the area of the shaded region.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area} &= \int_0^{12} \left(-\frac{1}{6}t^2 + 24\right) dt + \left| \int_{12}^{15} \left(-\frac{1}{6}t^2 + 24\right) dt \right| \\ &= 192 + |-19.5| \\ &= 211.5 \end{aligned}$$

The distance travelled in 15 seconds is 211.5 metres.





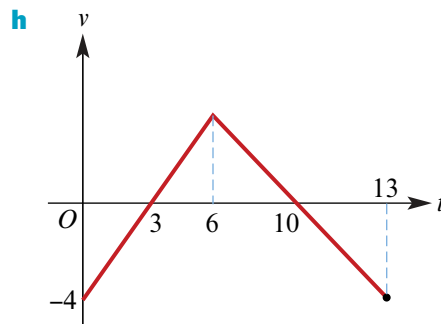
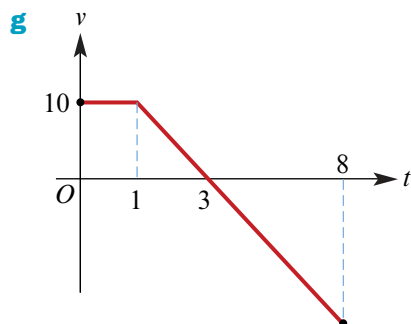
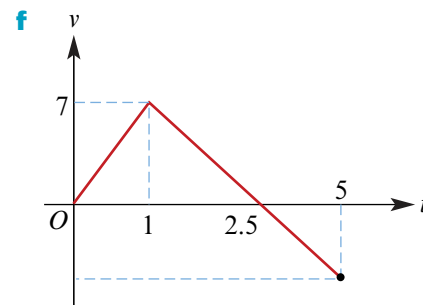
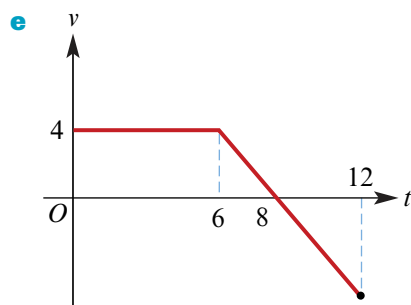
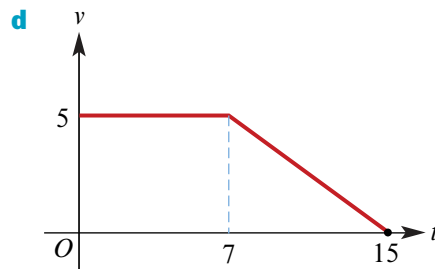
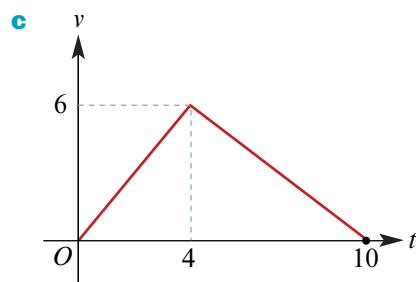
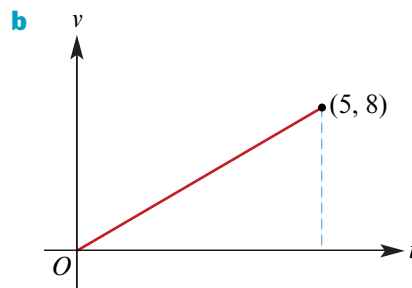
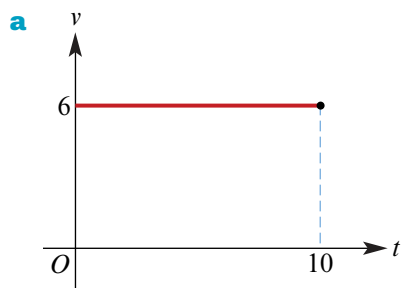
Exercise 11H

Example 27

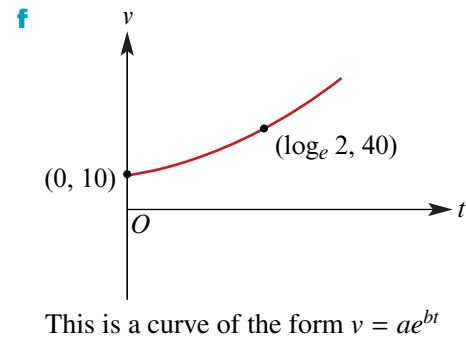
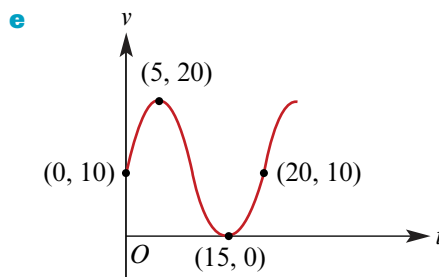
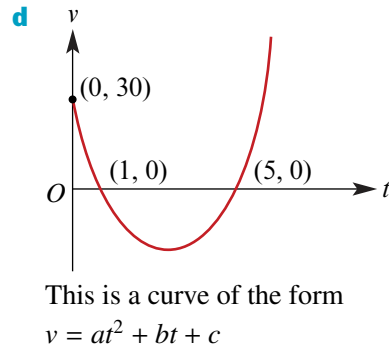
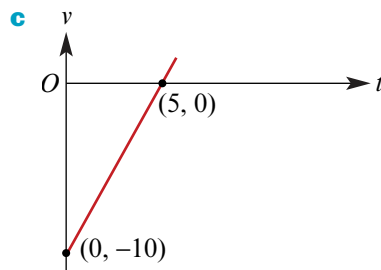
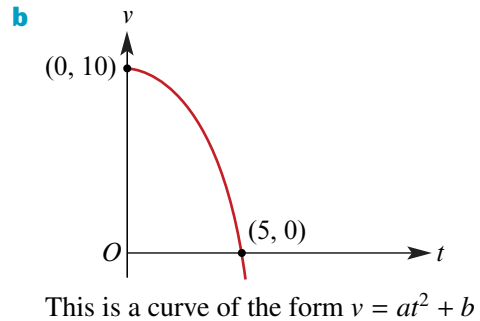
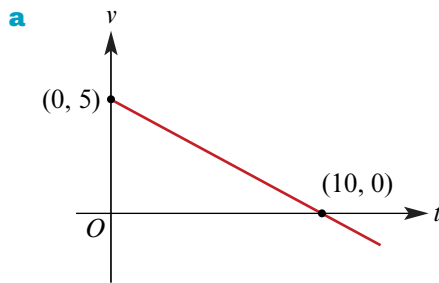
- 1 Each of the following graphs shows the velocity-time graph of a particle. For each graph:

- i describe the motion ii determine the distance travelled.

Velocity is measured in m/s and time in seconds.



- 2** For each of the following velocity–time graphs, the object starts from the origin and moves in a line. In each case, determine the relationship between time and
- i** velocity **ii** acceleration **iii** position.

**Example 28**

- 3** A car travels from rest for 15 seconds, with uniform acceleration, until it reaches a speed of 100 km/h. It then travels with this constant speed for 120 seconds and finally decelerates at a uniform 8 m/s^2 until it stops. Calculate the total distance travelled.
- 4** A particle moves in a straight line with a constant velocity of 20 m/s for 10 seconds. It is then subjected to a constant acceleration of 5 m/s^2 in the opposite direction for T seconds, at which time the particle is back to its original position.
- a** Sketch the velocity–time graph representing the motion.
- b** Determine how long it takes the particle to return to its original position.

- 5** A particle is moving along a straight line. The acceleration of the particle is $8 - 2t \text{ ms}^{-2}$ at time t seconds after passing a fixed point O . When $t = 0$ the velocity of the particle was 7 ms^{-1} .
- Determine the rule for $v(t)$, the velocity of the particle.
 - Sketch the velocity-time graph for this motion.
 - Determine the total distance covered by the particle in the first 7 seconds of motion.
- 6** A particle is moving along a straight line. The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of the particle at time t seconds after passing a fixed point O is

$$v(t) = \begin{cases} 6t - t^2 & 0 \leq t \leq 5 \\ 25 - 4t & t > 5 \end{cases}$$

- Sketch the velocity-time graph for this motion.
 - Determine the total distance covered by the particle in the first 10 seconds of motion.
- 7** An object travels in a line starting from rest. It accelerates uniformly for 3 seconds until it reaches a speed of 14 ms^{-1} . It then travels at this speed for 10 seconds. Finally, it decelerates uniformly to rest in 4 seconds. Sketch a velocity-time graph and determine the total distance travelled.
- 8** Two tram stops, A and B , are 500 metres apart. A tram starts from A and travels with acceleration $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$ to a certain point. It then decelerates at $4a \text{ ms}^{-2}$ until it stops at B . The total time taken is 2 minutes. Sketch a velocity-time graph. Determine the value of a and the maximum speed reached by the tram.
- 9** The maximum rate at which a bus can accelerate or decelerate is 2 ms^{-1} . It has a maximum speed of 60 km/h . Determine the shortest time the bus can take to travel between two bus stops 1 km apart on a straight stretch of road.
- 10** A car being tested on a straight level road starts from rest and accelerates uniformly to 90 km/h . It travels at this speed for a time, then comes to rest with a uniform retardation of 1.25 ms^{-2} . The total distance travelled is 525 metres and the total time is 36 seconds. Determine the time taken in the acceleration phase and how far the car travels at 90 km/h .

Example 29

- 11** Cars A and B are stationary on a straight road, side by side. Car A moves off with acceleration 1 ms^{-2} , which it maintains for 20 seconds, after which it moves at constant speed. Car B starts 20 seconds after car A ; it sets off with acceleration 2 ms^{-2} , until it draws level with A . Determine the time taken and the distance travelled by B to catch A .

Example 30

- 12** An object is travelling in a line with an initial velocity of 6 ms^{-1} . The deceleration changes uniformly from 1 ms^{-2} to 3 ms^{-2} over 1 second. If this deceleration continues until the object comes to rest, determine:

- the time taken
- the distance travelled.

- 13** A stationary police motorcycle is passed by a car travelling at 72 km/h . The motorcycle starts in pursuit 3 seconds later. Moving with constant acceleration for a distance of 300 metres, it reaches a speed of 108 km/h , which it maintains. Determine the time it takes the motorcyclist to catch the car (from when the motorcycle starts pursuit).

11I The area under a graph as the limit of a sum (Optional)

In this final section, we consider a special case of determining the exact area under a graph as the limit of a sum. This discussion gives an indication of how the limiting process can be undertaken in general.

Notation

We first introduce a notation to help us express sums. We do this through examples:

$$\sum_{i=1}^3 i^2 = 1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^5 x_i = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + x_4 + x_5$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_i f(x_i) = x_1 f(x_1) + x_2 f(x_2) + x_3 f(x_3) + \cdots + x_n f(x_n)$$

The symbol $\sum$ is the uppercase Greek letter ‘sigma’, which is used to denote *sum*.

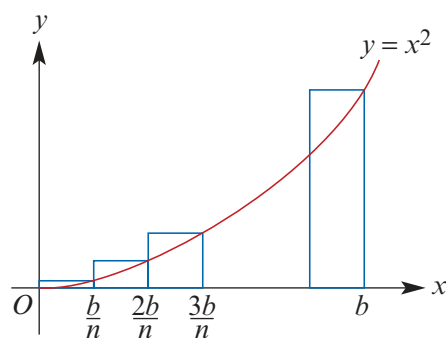
The area under a parabola

Consider the graph of $y = x^2$. We will determine the area under the curve from $x = 0$ to $x = b$ using a technique due to Archimedes.

Divide the interval $[0, b]$ into n equal subintervals:

$$\left[0, \frac{b}{n}\right], \left[\frac{b}{n}, \frac{2b}{n}\right], \left[\frac{2b}{n}, \frac{3b}{n}\right], \dots, \left[\frac{(n-1)b}{n}, b\right]$$

Each subinterval is the base of a rectangle with height determined by the right endpoint of the subinterval.



We obtain:

$$\begin{aligned} \text{area of rectangles} &= \frac{b}{n} \left[\left(\frac{b}{n}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{2b}{n}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{3b}{n}\right)^2 + \cdots + \left(\frac{nb}{n}\right)^2 \right] \\ &= \frac{b}{n} \left(\frac{b^2}{n^2} + \frac{4b^2}{n^2} + \frac{9b^2}{n^2} + \cdots + \frac{n^2 b^2}{n^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{b^3}{n^3} (1 + 4 + 9 + \cdots + n^2) \end{aligned}$$

There is a formula for working out the sum of the first n square numbers:

$$\sum_{i=1}^n i^2 = \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1)$$

Using this formula gives:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{area of rectangles} &= \frac{b^3}{n^3} \sum_{i=1}^n i^2 \\
 &= \frac{b^3}{n^3} \times \frac{n}{6}(n+1)(2n+1) \\
 &= \frac{b^3}{6n^2}(2n^2 + 3n + 1) \\
 &= \frac{b^3}{6} \left(2 + \frac{3}{n} + \frac{1}{n^2} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

As n becomes very large, the terms $\frac{3}{n}$ and $\frac{1}{n^2}$ become very small. We write:

$$\lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \frac{b^3}{6} \left(2 + \frac{3}{n} + \frac{1}{n^2} \right) = \frac{b^3}{3}$$

We read this as: the limit of the sum as n approaches infinity is $\frac{b^3}{3}$.

Using n left-endpoint rectangles, and considering the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$, also gives the area $\frac{b^3}{3}$.

The signed area enclosed by a curve

This technique may be applied in general to a continuous function f on an interval $[a, b]$. For convenience, we will consider an increasing function.

Divide the interval $[a, b]$ into n equal subintervals. Each subinterval is the base of a rectangle with its 'height' determined by the left endpoint of the subinterval.

The contribution of rectangle R_1 is $(x_1 - x_0)f(x_0)$. Since $f(x_0) < 0$, the result is negative and so we have found the *signed area* of R_1 .

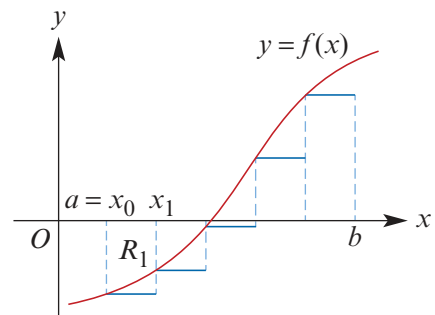
The sum of the signed areas of the rectangles is

$$\frac{b-a}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} f(x_i)$$

If the limit as $n \rightarrow \infty$ exists, then we can make the following definition:

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(\frac{b-a}{n} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} f(x_i) \right)$$

We could also have used the right-endpoint estimate or the trapezoidal estimate. All three estimates will converge to the same limit as n approaches infinity. Definite integrals may be defined as the limit of suitable sums, and the fundamental theorem of calculus holds true under this definition.



Chapter summary

- Numerical methods for approximating the area under a graph:

The interval $[a, b]$ on the x -axis is divided into n equal subintervals $[x_0, x_1]$, $[x_1, x_2]$, $[x_2, x_3]$, $\dots$, $[x_{n-1}, x_n]$.

- Left-endpoint method**

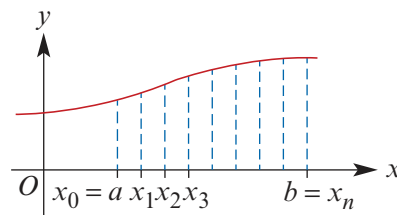
$$L_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_0) + f(x_1) + \dots + f(x_{n-1})]$$

- Right-endpoint method**

$$R_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \dots + f(x_n)]$$

- Trapezoidal rule**

$$T_n = \frac{b-a}{2n} [f(x_0) + 2f(x_1) + 2f(x_2) + \dots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)]$$



- Definite integral** The signed area enclosed by the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$ is denoted by $\int_a^b f(x) dx$.

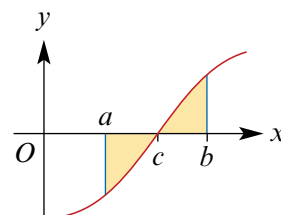
- Fundamental theorem of calculus** If f is a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = [F(x)]_a^b = F(b) - F(a)$$

where F is any anti-derivative of f .

- Determining areas:

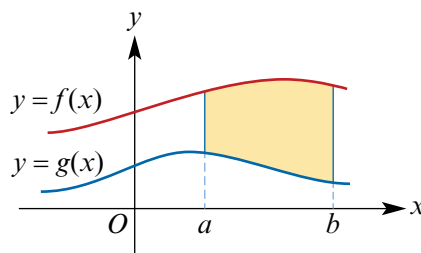
- If $f(x) \geq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $\int_a^b f(x) dx$.
- If $f(x) \leq 0$ for all $x \in [a, b]$, then the area of the region contained between the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$ is given by $-\int_a^b f(x) dx$.
- If $c \in (a, b)$ with $f(c) = 0$ and $f(x) \geq 0$ for $x \in (c, b]$ and $f(x) \leq 0$ for $x \in [a, c)$, then the area of the shaded region is given by $\int_c^b f(x) dx + (-\int_a^c f(x) dx)$.



- To determine the area of the shaded region bounded by the two curves and the lines $x = a$ and $x = b$, use

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx - \int_a^b g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) - g(x) dx$$

where f and g are continuous functions on $[a, b]$ such that $f(x) \geq g(x)$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.



■ Properties of the definite integral:

- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$
- $\int_a^a f(x) dx = 0$
- $\int_a^b k f(x) dx = k \int_a^b f(x) dx$
- $\int_a^b f(x) \pm g(x) dx = \int_a^b f(x) dx \pm \int_a^b g(x) dx$
- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = - \int_b^a f(x) dx$

■ The **average value** of a continuous function f for an interval $[a, b]$ is $\frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b f(x) dx$.

■ The **total change** in the value of f for an interval $[a, b]$ is $f(b) - f(a) = \int_a^b f'(x) dx$.

Skills checklist



Checklist

Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



11A

1 I can use rectangles to estimate the area of a region below a graph.



See Example 1 and Question 1

11A

2 I can use the trapezoidal rule to estimate the area of a region below a graph.



See Example 2 and Question 4

11A

3 I can use geometry to evaluate definite integrals in simple situations.



See Example 3 and Question 9

11B

4 I can evaluate definite integrals.



See Example 4 and Question 2

11B

5 I can determine the area of a region under a graph using definite integration.



See Example 5, Example 6 and Questions 4 and 5

11C

6 I can determine the area of a region under a graph using definite integration and recognising signed areas.



See Example 7, Example 8, Example 9, Example 10, Example 11 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 5

11D

7 I can use integration with many of the functions covered earlier in the course.



See Example 12 Example 13 Example 14 Example 15 Example 16 and Questions 1, 4, 5, 10 and 11

- 11E** **8** I can use other techniques to determine anti-derivatives. ☐
See Example 17, Example 18 and Question 1
- 11F** **9** I can determine the area of the region between two curves. ☐
See Example 19, Example 20, Example 21, Example 22 and Questions 1, 2, 3 and 6
- 11G** **10** I can use integration to determine the average value of a function over an interval. ☐
See Example 23 and Question 1
- 11G** **11** I can apply integration to questions about motion in a straight line. ☐
See Example 24, Example 25 and Questions 7 and 10
- 11G** **12** I can apply integration to investigate questions about rates of change. ☐
See Example 26 and Question 12
- 11H** **13** I can apply integration to motion in a straight line and work with velocity-time graphs. ☐
See Example 27, Example 28, Example 29, Example 30, Example 31 and Questions 1, 3, 11 and 12

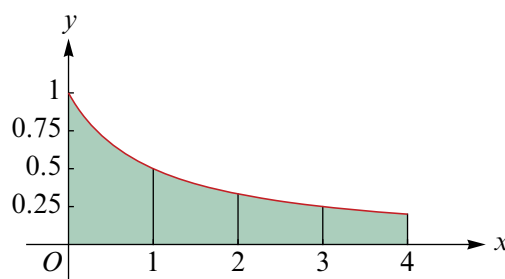
Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1** The graph of $y = \frac{1}{x+1}$ is shown.

Estimate the area under the graph between $x = 0$ and $x = 4$ using:

- a** the left-endpoint method
- b** the right-endpoint method
- c** the trapezoidal rule.



- 2** Evaluate each of the following definite integrals:

a $\int_1^4 \sqrt{x} \, dx$

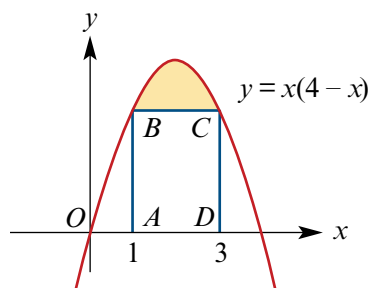
b $\int_1^4 x^3 - 2x \, dx$

c $\int_1^2 \frac{1}{x^2} \, dx$

d $\int_1^4 \frac{2}{x^3} \, dx$

e $\int_0^1 \sqrt{x}(x+1) \, dx$

- 3 a** Determine the coordinates of points B and C .
b Determine the area of rectangle $ABCD$.
c Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 4** Let $f(x) = x(x - 3)(x + 2)$. Calculate the exact area of the region enclosed between the graph of $y = f(x)$ and the x -axis.

- 5** Evaluate each of the following definite integrals:

a $\int_{-\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin \theta \, d\theta$ **b** $\int_a^{4a} (a^{\frac{1}{2}} - x^{\frac{1}{2}}) \, dx$, where a is a positive constant

c $\int_1^4 \frac{3}{\sqrt{x}} - 5\sqrt{x} - x^{-\frac{3}{2}} \, dx$ **d** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{4}} \cos(2\theta) \, d\theta$ **e** $\int_1^e \frac{1}{x} \, dx$

f $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin 2\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \, d\theta$ **g** $\int_0^{\pi} \sin(4\theta) \, d\theta$

- 6** Determine $\int_{-1}^2 x + 2f(x) \, dx$ if $\int_{-1}^2 f(x) \, dx = 5$.

- 7** Determine $\int_1^5 f(x) \, dx$ if $\int_0^1 f(x) \, dx = -2$ and $\int_0^5 f(x) \, dx = 1$.

- 8** Determine $\int_3^{-2} f(x) \, dx$ if $\int_{-2}^1 f(x) \, dx = 2$ and $\int_1^3 f(x) \, dx = -6$.

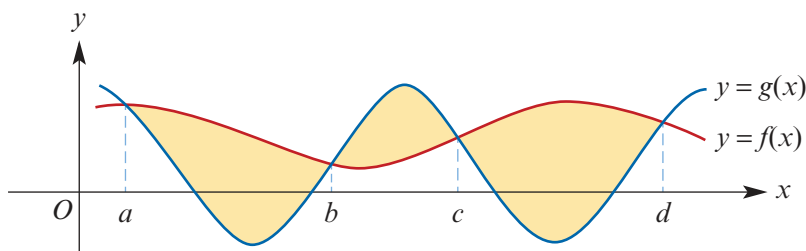
- 9** Evaluate $\int_0^2 (x + 1)^7 \, dx$.

- 10** Evaluate $\int_0^1 (3x + 1)^3 \, dx$.

- 11** Determine $\int_0^3 f(3x) \, dx$ if $\int_0^9 f(x) \, dx = 5$.

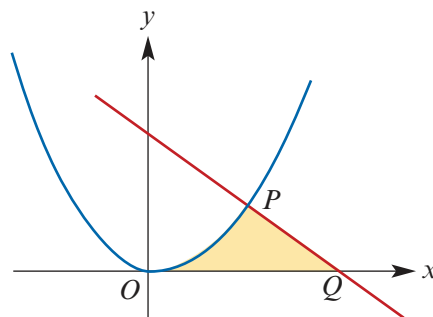
- 12** Determine $\int_0^1 f(3x + 1) \, dx$ if $\int_1^4 f(x) \, dx = 5$.

- 13** Set up a sum of definite integrals that represents the total shaded area between the curves $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$.



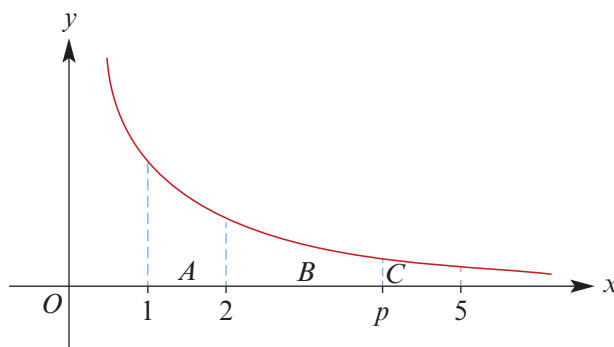
- 14** The figure shows the curve $y = x^2$ and the straight line $2x + y = 15$. Determine:

- a** the coordinates of P and Q
b the area of the shaded region.

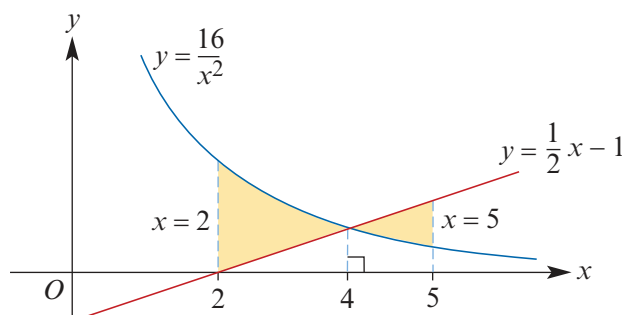


- 15** The figure shows part of the curve $y = \frac{10}{x^2}$. Determine:

- a** the area of region A
b the value of p for which the regions B and C are of equal area.

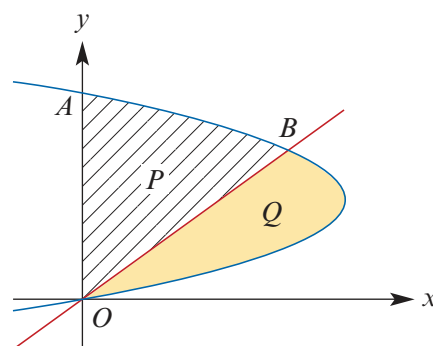


- 16** Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 17** The figure shows part of the curve $x = 6y - y^2$ and part of the line $y = x$.

- a** Determine the coordinates of A and B .
b Determine the area of region P .
c Determine the area of region Q .



- 18 a** Sketch the graph of $y = e^x + 1$ and clearly indicate, by shading the region, the area given by the definite integral $\int_0^2 e^x + 1 \, dx$.
b Evaluate $\int_0^2 e^x + 1 \, dx$.

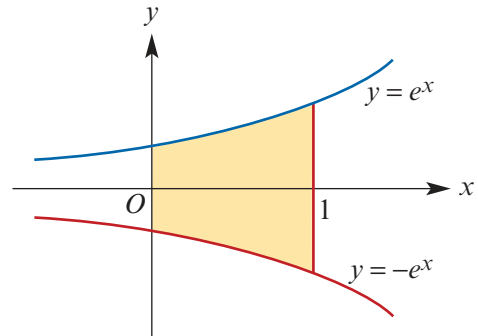
- 19 a** Sketch the graphs of $y = e^{-x}$ and $y = e^x$ on the one set of axes and clearly indicate, by shading the region, the area given by $\int_0^2 e^{-x} dx + \int_{-2}^0 e^x dx$.

b Evaluate $\int_0^2 e^{-x} dx + \int_{-2}^0 e^x dx$.

- 20** What is the average square root of the numbers in the interval $[1, 4]$?

21 a Evaluate $\int_0^1 e^x dx$.

- b** By symmetry, determine the area of the region shaded in the figure.



- 22** Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 2e^{2x} + 3$ and determine the area of the region enclosed between the curve, the axes and the line $x = 1$.

- 23** A particle, starting from rest, falls vertically with acceleration, $\ddot{y} \text{ ms}^{-2}$, at time t seconds given by $\ddot{y} = ke^{-t}$, where $k < 0$.

- a** Determine the velocity–time relationship and sketch the velocity–time graph.
b Briefly describe the motion.

- 24** Evaluate each of the following definite integrals:

a $\int_0^2 e^{-x} + x dx$

b $\int_2^3 x + \frac{1}{x-1} dx$

c $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin x + x dx$

d $\int_{-4}^{-5} e^x + \frac{1}{2-2x} dx$

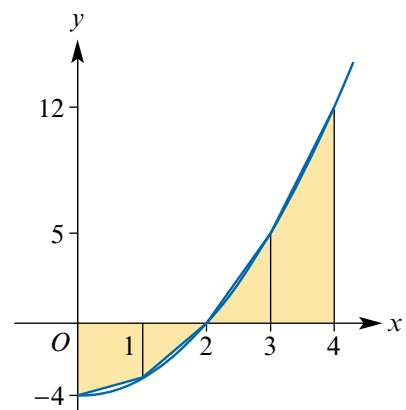
Technology-active short-response questions

- 25 a** Using four intervals use the trapezium rule to approximate $\int_0^4 x^2 - 4 dx$. (Graph shown opposite)

Note: Remember to use signed area for the trapezium and triangle that lie below the x -axis.

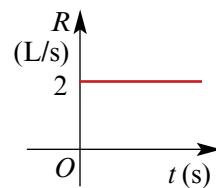
b Calculate the exact value of $\int_0^4 x^2 - 4 dx$.

c Use the trapezium rule to approximate $\int_0^3 x^3 - 8 dx$. Use 6 strips.



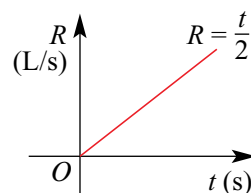
- 26** Sketch the graph of $y = x(x-2)(x+1)$ and determine the area of the region contained between the graph and the x -axis.

- 27 a** Water flows into a container at the constant rate (R) of 2 litres per second. A graph of the rate of flow is as shown.



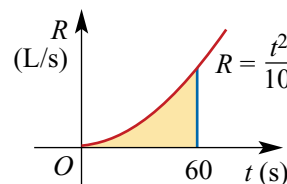
- i** How much water has flowed into the container after 1 minute?
- ii** Illustrate this quantity as an area under the graph of $R = 2$.

- b** Water flows into a container at a rate R L/s, where $R = \frac{t}{2}$ and t is the time measured in seconds. The graph is as shown.



- i** How much water has flowed into the container after 1 minute?
- ii** Illustrate this quantity as an area under the graph of $R = \frac{t}{2}$.
- iii** How much water has flowed into the container after a minutes?

- c** Water flows into a container at a rate R L/s, where $R = \frac{t^2}{10}$ and t is the time measured in seconds.



- i** Determine the area of the shaded region.
- ii** What does the area represent?
- iii** After how many seconds will 10 000 litres have flowed into the container?

- 28 a i** A car travels on a straight road at 60 km/h for 2 hours. Sketch the speed–time graph illustrating this.

- ii** Shade the region which indicates the total distance travelled by the car after 2 hours.

- b i** Sketch the speed–time graph of a car travelling for 5 minutes, if the car starts from rest and accelerates at a rate of 0.3 km/min^2 .

- ii** How far has the car travelled at the end of 5 minutes?

- c** A particle starts from a point O and travels at a velocity V m/s given by $V = 20t - 3t^2$, where t seconds is the time the particle has been travelling.

- i** Determine the acceleration of the particle at time t .

- ii** Sketch the graph of V against t for $0 \leq t \leq \frac{20}{3}$.

- iii** How far has the particle travelled after 6 seconds? Illustrate this quantity by shading a suitable region under the graph.

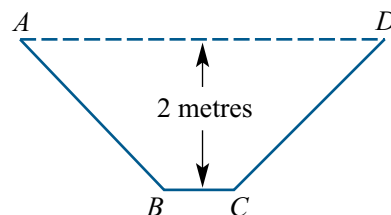
- 29** A motorist is travelling at 25 m/s along a straight road and passes a stationary police officer on a motorcycle. Four seconds after the motorist passes, the police officer starts in pursuit. The police officer's motion for the first 6 seconds is described by

$$v(t) = \frac{-3}{10} \left(t^3 - 21t^2 + \frac{364}{3}t - \frac{1281}{6} \right), \quad 4 \leq t \leq 10$$

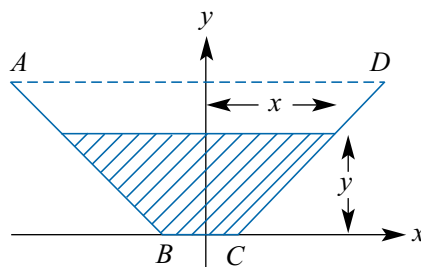
where $v(t)$ m/s is his speed t seconds after the motorist has passed. After 6 seconds, he reaches a speed of v_1 m/s, which he maintains until he overtakes the motorist.

- a Determine the value of v_1 .
- b
 - i Determine $\frac{dv}{dt}$ for $4 \leq t \leq 10$.
 - ii Determine the time when the police officer's acceleration is a maximum.
- c On the same set of axes, sketch the velocity–time graphs for the motorist and the police officer.
- d
 - i How far has the police officer travelled when $t = 10$?
 - ii Write down an expression for the distance travelled by the police officer for $t \in [4, 10]$.
- e For what value of t does the police officer draw level with the motorist? (Give your answer correct to two decimal places.)

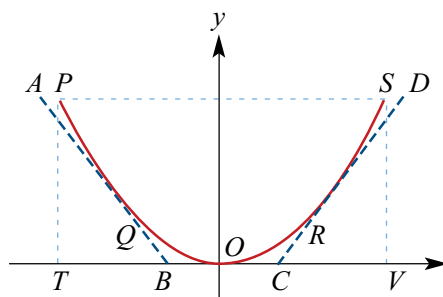
- 30** An irrigation channel 2 metres deep is constructed. Its cross-section, trapezium $ABCD$, is shown in the diagram. The length AD is 5 metres and the length BC is 1 metre.



- a Calculate the area of this cross-section.
- b The cross-section is placed symmetrically on coordinate axes as shown.
 - i Determine the equation of the line CD .
 - ii Calculate the area of the cross-section of the water when its depth is y m. Give your answer in terms of x .



- c In an attempt to improve water flow, a metal chute is added. Its cross-section has the shape of a parabola $PQORS$ and it just touches the original channel at Q , O and R .
 - i Given that the x -coordinate of R is 1, determine the equation of the parabola and determine the coordinates of P and S .
 - ii Calculate the area of the parabolic cross-section $PQORS$.

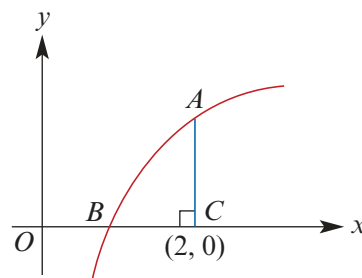


- 31** The diagram shows part of the curve with equation

$$y = x - \frac{1}{x^2}$$

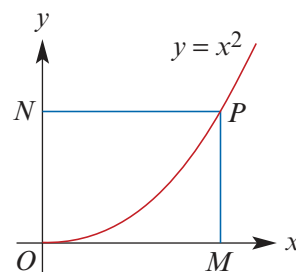
The point C has coordinates $(2, 0)$. Determine:

- the equation of the tangent to the curve at point A
- the coordinates of the point T where this tangent meets the x -axis.
- the coordinates of the point B where the curve meets the x -axis
- the area of the region enclosed by the curve and the lines AT and BT
- the ratio of the area found in part **d** to the area of the triangle ATC .

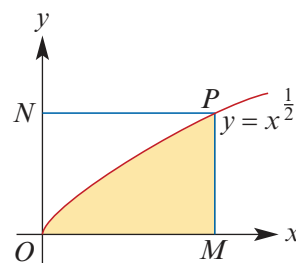


- 32** It is thought that the temperature, θ , of a piece of charcoal in a barbecue will increase at a rate $\frac{d\theta}{dt}$ given by $\frac{d\theta}{dt} = e^{2.6t}$, where θ is in degrees and t is in minutes.
- If the charcoal starts at a temperature of 30°C , determine the expected temperature of the charcoal after 3 minutes.
 - Sketch the graph of θ against t .
 - At what time does the temperature of the charcoal reach 500°C ?
 - Determine the average rate of increase of temperature from $t = 1$ to $t = 2$.

- 33 a** In the figure, the point P is on the curve $y = x^2$. Prove that the curve divides the rectangle $OMPN$ into two regions whose areas are in the ratio $2 : 1$.

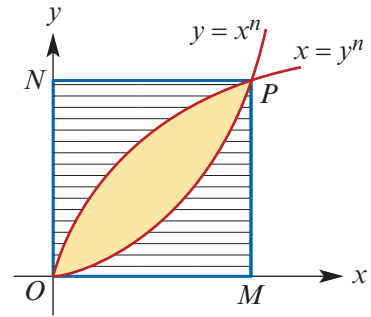


- b** In the figure, the point P is on the curve $y = x^{\frac{1}{2}}$. Prove that the area of the shaded region is two-thirds the area of the rectangle $OMPN$.



- c** Consider a point P on the curve $y = x^n$, for some $n > 0$, with PM and PN the perpendiculars from P to the x -axis and the y -axis respectively. Prove that the area of the region enclosed between PM , the x -axis and the curve is equal to $\frac{1}{n+1}$ of the area of the rectangle $OMPN$.

- 34 a** Determine the area enclosed between the parabolas $y = x^2$ and $y^2 = x$.
- b** Show that the curves with equations $y = x^n$ and $y^n = x$ intersect at $(1, 1)$, where $n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$
- c** Show that the area of the region contained between the curves $y = x^n$ and $y^n = x$ is $\frac{n-1}{n+1}$.
- d** Determine the area of the region indicated by horizontal shading in the diagram.
- e** Use your result from part **c** to determine the area of the region between the curves for $n = 10$, $n = 100$ and $n = 1000$.
- f** Describe the result for n very large.



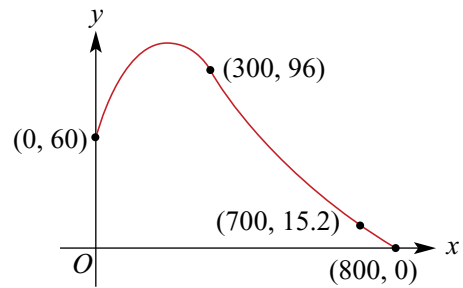
- 35** It is believed that the velocity of a certain subatomic particle t seconds after a collision will be given by the expression

$$\frac{dx}{dt} = ve^{-t}, \quad v = 5 \times 10^4 \text{ m/s}$$

where x is the distance travelled in metres.

- a** What is the initial velocity of the particle?
- b** What happens to the velocity as $t \rightarrow \infty$ (i.e. as t becomes very large)?
- c** How far will the particle travel between $t = 0$ and $t = 20$?
- d** Determine an expression for x in terms of t .
- e** Sketch the graph of x against t .

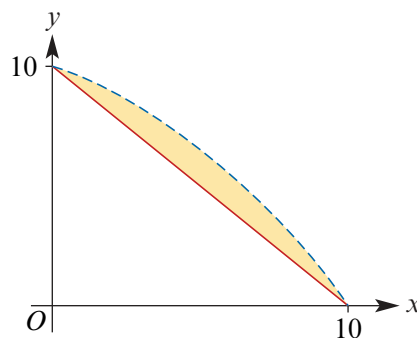
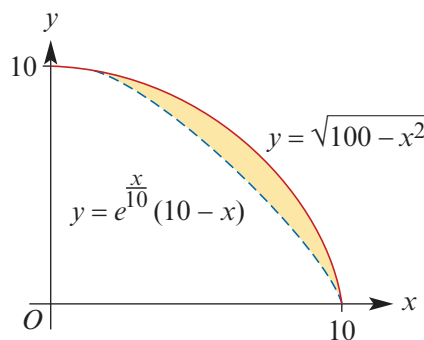
- 36** A small hill has a cross-section as shown, satisfying a cubic equation. The coordinates of four points are given. Measurements are in metres.



- a** Determine the equation of the cubic.
- b** Determine the maximum height of the hill correct to the nearest metre.
- c i** Using a graphics calculator, plot the graph of the gradient function.
- ii** State the coordinates of the point on the curve where the magnitude of the gradient is a maximum.
- d** Use a graphics calculator to determine the cross-sectional area correct to the nearest square metre.

- 37** A teacher attempts to draw a quarter circle of radius 10 on the white board. However, the first attempt results in a curve with equation $y = e^{\frac{x}{10}}(10 - x)$. The quarter circle has equation $y = \sqrt{100 - x^2}$.

- Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$ for both functions.
- Determine the gradient of each of the functions when $x = 0$.
- Determine the gradient of $y = e^{\frac{x}{10}}(10 - x)$ when $x = 10$.
- Determine the area of the shaded region correct to two decimal places using a calculator.
- Determine the percentage error for the calculation of the area of the quarter circle.
- The teacher draws in a chord from $(0, 10)$ to $(10, 0)$. Determine the area of the shaded region using a calculator.
- Use the result that the derivative of $e^{\frac{x}{10}}(10 - x)$ is $-e^{\frac{x}{10}} + \frac{1}{10}e^{\frac{x}{10}}(10 - x)$ to determine $\int_0^{10} e^{\frac{x}{10}}(10 - x) dx$ by analytic techniques.
 - Determine the exact area of the original shaded region and compare it to the answer of **d**.



- 38** Two cars *A* and *B*, each moving with constant acceleration, are travelling in the same direction along the parallel lanes of a divided road. When *A* passes *B*, the speeds are 64 km/h and 48 km/h respectively. Three minutes later, *B* passes *A*, travelling at 96 km/h. Determine:
- the distance travelled by *A* and *B* at this instant (since they first passed) and the speed of *A*
 - the instant at which both are moving with the same speed, and the distance between them at this time.
- 39** An athlete is running along a straight horizontal road. The athlete starts from rest and accelerates at a constant rate of 0.45 ms^{-2} until reaching a velocity of $W \text{ ms}^{-1}$. The athlete then runs at a constant velocity of $W \text{ ms}^{-1}$ before decelerating at a constant rate of 0.075 m^{-2} back to rest. The athlete runs a total distance of 900 m in 260 s. Determine the value of W .

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

1 If $F'(x) = f(x)$, then $\int_3^5 f(x) dx$ is

A $f(5) - f(3)$

B $f(5) + c$

C $f(5) - f(3) + c$

D $F(5) - F(3)$

2 $\int_0^2 3x^2 - 2x dx =$

A 12

B 4

C 8

D 32

3 An equivalent expression for $\int_0^2 3f(x) + 2 dx$ is

A $3 \int_0^2 f(x) dx + 2x$

B $3 \int_0^2 f(x) dx + 2x$

C $3 \int_0^2 f(x) dx + 4$

D $2f'(x) + 3$

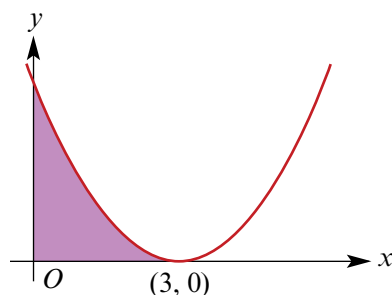
4 The graph with the equation $y = k(x - 3)^2$ is shown. If the area of the shaded region is 36 square units, the value of k is

A 4

B -4

C 9

D $\frac{4}{7}$



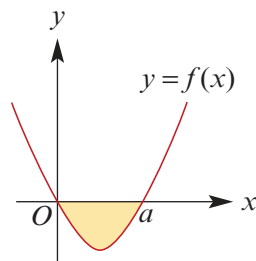
5 The area of the shaded region is given by

A $\int_0^a -f(x) dx$

B $\int_0^a f(x) dx$

C $\int_0^a x - f(x) dx$

D $\int_0^a f(x) - x dx$



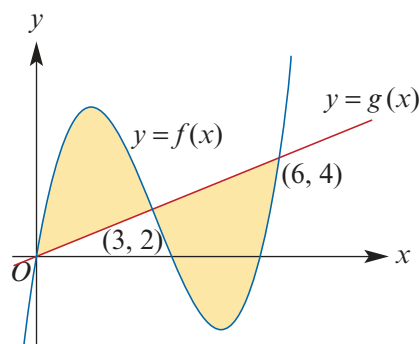
6 An expression using integral notation for the area of the shaded region shown is

A $\int_0^6 f(x) - g(x) dx$

B $\int_0^3 f(x) - g(x) dx + \int_3^6 g(x) - f(x) dx$

C $\int_0^4 f(x) - g(x) dx$

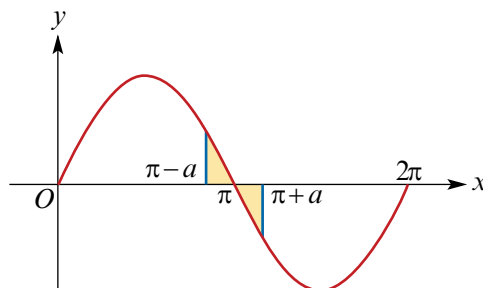
D $\int_0^2 f(x) - g(x) dx + \int_2^4 f(x) - g(x) dx$



- 7 $\int_a^b c \, dx$, where a , b and c are distinct real number constants, is equal to
A ca **B** $cb - ca$ **C** $ca - b$ **D** $cb - a$

- 8 The graph represents the function $y = \sin x$, $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$. The total area of the shaded regions is

- A** $\frac{1}{2} \cos a$
B $2 \cos a$
C $\frac{1}{2}(1 - \cos a)$
D $2(1 - \cos a)$

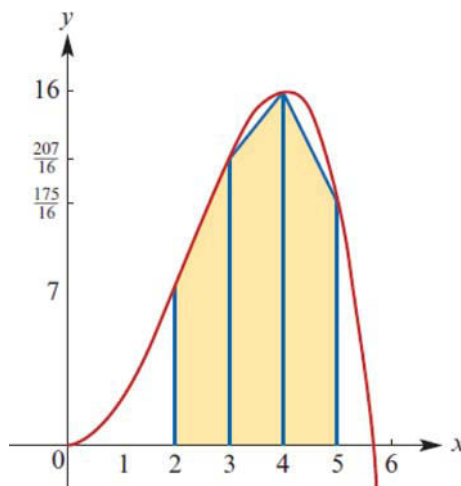


- 9 If $\int_{-5}^4 f(x) \, dx = 2$ and $\int_{11}^4 f(x) \, dx = 6$ then $\int_{-5}^{11} f(x) \, dx$ is equal to
A 0 **B** 2 **C** -4 **D** 8

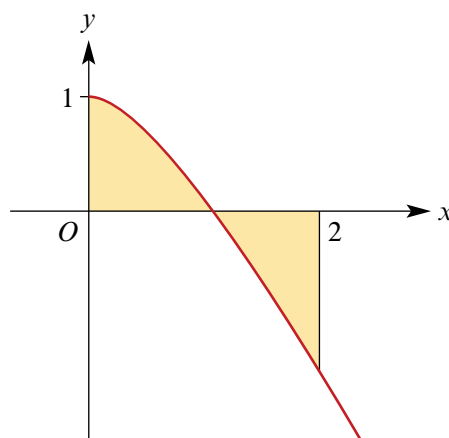
Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 10 A particle moves in a straight line with velocity $v(t) = \frac{200}{t+5} - 20$. It passes through a point O when $t = 0$. The distance from O after ten seconds is closest to
A 19.72 m **B** 57.54 m **C** 34.23 m **D** 10.53 m
- 11 The area of the region enclosed by the curve $y = e^{5x} - 2 \sin(4x)$, the x -axis and the lines $x = -1$ and $x = 1$, correct to two decimal places, is
A 29.55 **B** 29.68 **C** 29.85 **D** 30.02
- 12 The rate of flow of water from a tap follows the rule $R(t) = 5e^{-0.1t}$, where $R(t)$ litres per minute is the rate of flow after t minutes. The number of litres, to the nearest litre, which flowed out in the first 3 minutes is
A 0 **B** 5 **C** 13 **D** 50
- 13 The average value of $f(x) = x^3 - 2x^2$ over the interval $[0, a]$ is $\frac{9}{12}$. The value of a is
A $\frac{1}{4}$ **B** $\frac{7}{12}$ **C** 3 **D** $\frac{1}{3}$
- 14 Gardeners have 200m of fence wire. They want to use all of this wire to enclose a rectangular area. Of all the possible rectangular areas they could enclose, with the length of one side ranging from 0 m to 100 m, what is their average area?(Answer to the nearest integer)
A 1134 m² **B** 1147 m²
C 1667 m² **D** 11845 m²
- 15 An object starting at the origin has a velocity given by $v = 10 \sin(\pi t)$. The distance that the object travels from $t = 0$ to $t = 1.6$, correct to two decimal places, is
A 2.20 **B** 4.17 **C** 6.37 **D** 10.53

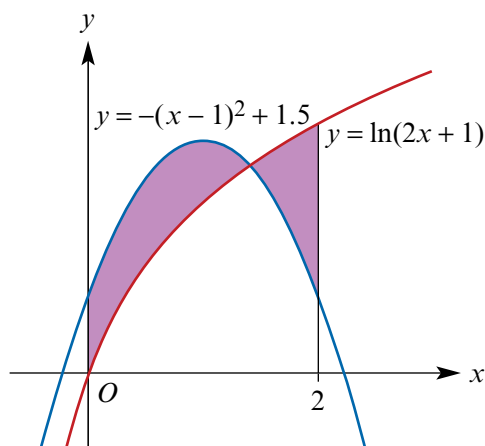
- 16** Let $f(x) = -\frac{1}{16}x^4 + 2x^2$.
 Given that $\int_2^5 f(x) dx = \frac{3147}{80}$ and that A is the trapezium estimate for $\int_2^5 f(x) dx$ using three strips, $\frac{3147}{80} - A$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{230}{220}$ **B** $\frac{240}{219}$ **C** $\frac{220}{218}$ **D** $\frac{229}{160}$



- 17** The graph of $f(x) = \ln(2x + 1) - 2x + 1$ is shown opposite. The total area of the shaded regions correct to four decimal places is
- A** 0.0236 **B** 1.2795
C 0.6279 **D** 1.6432



- 18** The graphs of $y = \ln(2x + 1)$ and $y = -(x - 1)^2 + 1.5$ are shown opposite. The total area of the shaded regions correct to four decimal places is
- A** 0.0236 **B** 0.2991
C 0.6088 **D** 0.9079



- 19** A particle moves along a straight line. The velocity of the particle is $\frac{200}{30 + t}$ ms⁻¹ at time t seconds after passing a fixed point O . The distance travelled in metres by the particle in the first ten seconds after passing O , correct to the nearest metre, is
- A** 19 m **B** 25 m **C** 58 m **D** 59 m

12

Trigonometry using the sine and cosine rules

Chapter contents

- ▶ **12A** Reviewing trigonometry
- ▶ **12B** The sine rule
- ▶ **12C** The cosine rule
- ▶ **12D** The area of a triangle
- ▶ **12E** Angles of elevation, angles of depression and bearings
- ▶ **12F** Problems in three dimensions
- ▶ **12G** Angles between planes and more complex 3D problems

We revise the trigonometric functions in Appendix C, where we consider the symmetry properties and the graphs of these functions. In this chapter, we apply the trigonometric ratios to solve problems.

Trigonometry deals with the side lengths and angles of a triangle: the word *trigonometry* comes from the Greek words for triangle and measurement.

We start this chapter by revising the four standard congruence tests for triangles. If you have the information about a triangle given in one of the congruence tests, then the triangle is uniquely determined (up to congruence). You can determine the unknown side lengths and angles of the triangle using the **sine rule** or the **cosine rule**. In this chapter, we establish these rules, and apply them in two- and three-dimensional problems.

This chapter covers Unit 4 Topic 2: Trigonometry.

12A Reviewing trigonometry

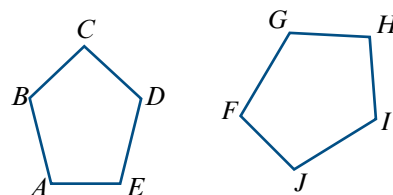
Learning intentions

- To revise congruent triangles and the trigonometric ratios.

Congruent triangles

Two plane figures are called **congruent** if one figure can be moved on top of the other figure, by a sequence of translations, rotations and reflections, so that they coincide exactly. Congruent figures have exactly the same shape and size. For example, the two figures shown are congruent. We can write:

$$\text{pentagon } ABCDE \equiv \text{pentagon } FGHIJ$$



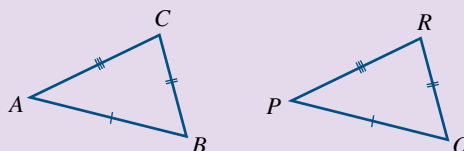
When two figures are congruent, we can determine a transformation that pairs up every part of one figure with the corresponding part of the other, so that:

- paired angles have the same size
- paired line segments have the same length
- paired regions have the same area.

There are four standard tests for two triangles to be congruent.

■ The SSS congruence test

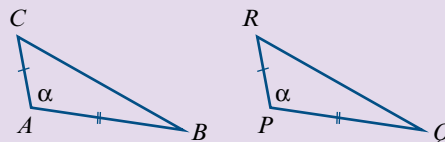
If the three sides of one triangle are respectively equal to the three sides of another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.



$$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle PQR$$

■ The SAS congruence test

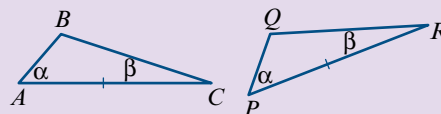
If two sides and the included angle of one triangle are respectively equal to two sides and the included angle of another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.



$$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle PQR$$

■ The AAS congruence test

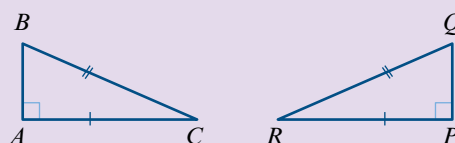
If two angles and one side of one triangle are respectively equal to two angles and the matching side of another triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.



$$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle PQR$$

■ The RHS congruence test

If the hypotenuse and one side of one right-angled triangle are respectively equal to the hypotenuse and one side of another right-angled triangle, then the two triangles are congruent.



$$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle PQR$$

The trigonometric ratios

For acute angles, the unit-circle definition of sine and cosine given in Appendix C is equivalent to the ratio definition.

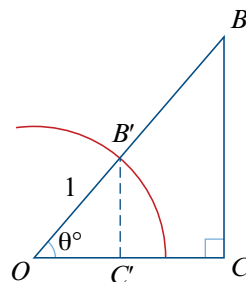
For a right-angled triangle OBC , we can construct a similar triangle $OB'C'$ that lies in the unit circle. From the diagram:

$$B'C' = \sin(\theta^\circ) \quad \text{and} \quad OC' = \cos(\theta^\circ)$$

As triangles OBC and $OB'C'$ are similar, we have

$$\frac{BC}{OB} = \frac{B'C'}{1} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{OC}{OB} = \frac{OC'}{1}$$

$$\therefore \frac{BC}{OB} = \sin(\theta^\circ) \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{OC}{OB} = \cos(\theta^\circ)$$

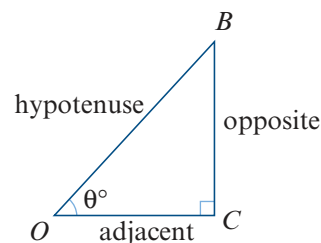


This gives the ratio definition of sine and cosine for a right-angled triangle. The naming of sides with respect to an angle θ° is as shown.

$$\sin(\theta^\circ) = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\cos(\theta^\circ) = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\tan(\theta^\circ) = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}}$$



Obtuse angles

From the unit circle, we see that

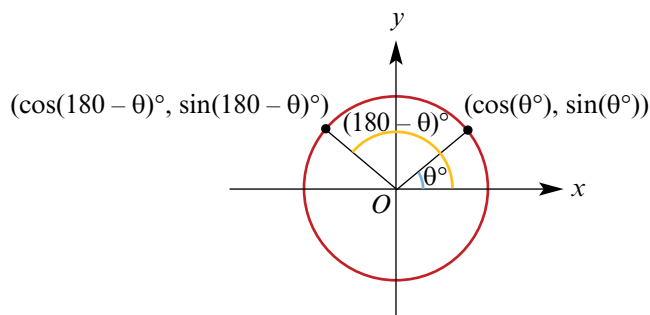
$$\sin(180 - \theta)^\circ = \sin(\theta^\circ)$$

$$\cos(180 - \theta)^\circ = -\cos(\theta^\circ)$$

For example:

$$\sin 135^\circ = \sin 45^\circ$$

$$\cos 135^\circ = -\cos 45^\circ$$



In this chapter, we will generally use the ratio definition of tangent for acute angles. But we can also determine the tangent of an obtuse angle by using

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

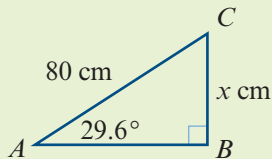
We will not consider angles greater than 180° or less than 0° in this chapter, since we are dealing with triangles.

Solving right-angled triangles

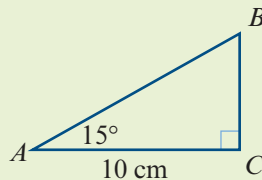
Here we provide some examples of using the trigonometric ratios.

Example 1

- a** Determine the value of x correct to two decimal places.



- b** Determine the length of the hypotenuse correct to two decimal places.



Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \quad \frac{x}{80} &= \sin 29.6^\circ \\ \therefore x &= 80 \sin 29.6^\circ \\ &= 39.5153 \dots\end{aligned}$$

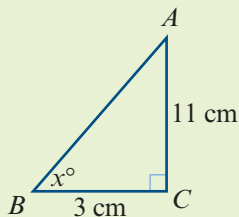
Hence $x = 39.52$, correct to two decimal places.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad \frac{10}{AB} &= \cos 15^\circ \\ 10 &= AB \cos 15^\circ \\ \therefore AB &= \frac{10}{\cos 15^\circ} \\ &= 10.3527 \dots\end{aligned}$$

The length of the hypotenuse is 10.35 cm, correct to two decimal places.

Example 2

Determine the magnitude of $\angle ABC$.



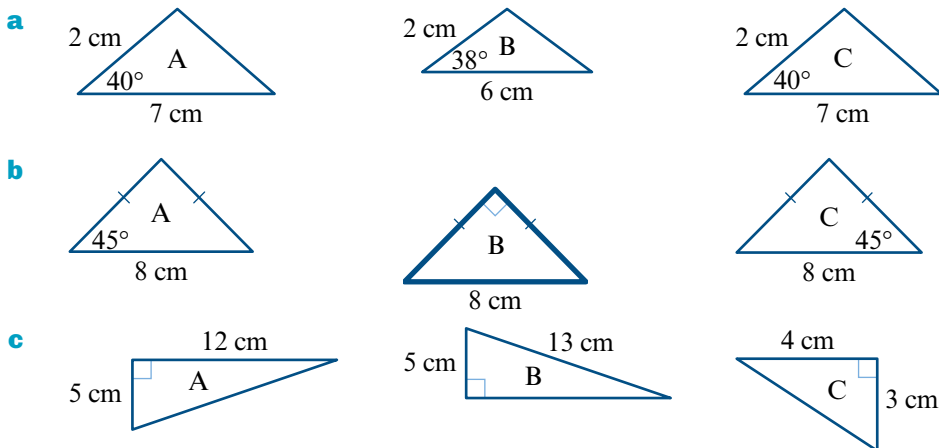
Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\tan x &= \frac{11}{3} \\ \therefore x &= \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{11}{3}\right) \\ &= (74.7448 \dots)^\circ\end{aligned}$$

Hence $x = 74.74^\circ$, correct to two decimal places.

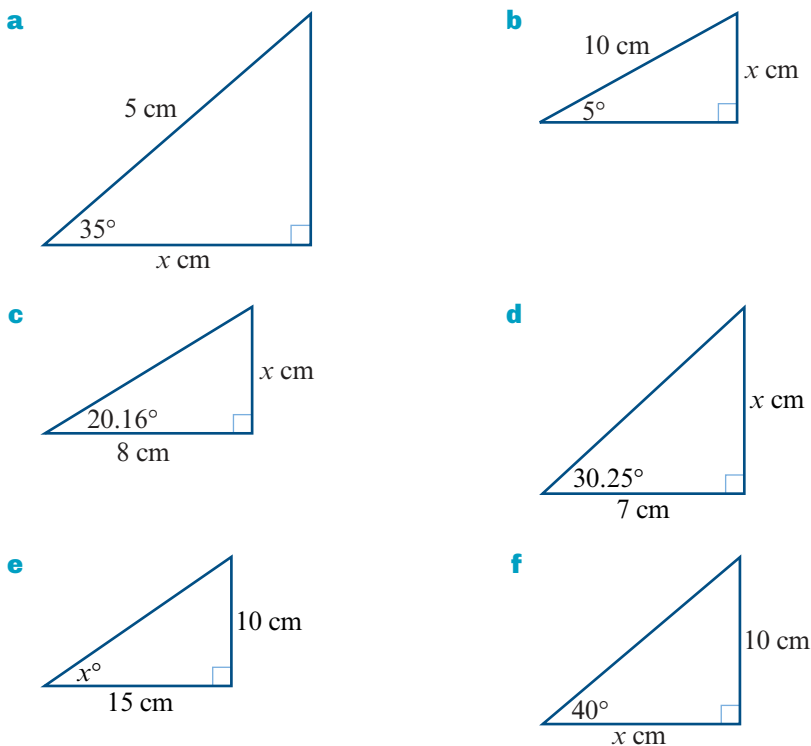
Exercise 12A

- 1 In each part, determine pairs of congruent triangles. State the congruence tests used.



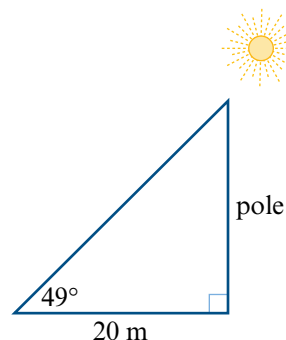
Example 1, 2

- 2 Determine the value of x in each of the following.

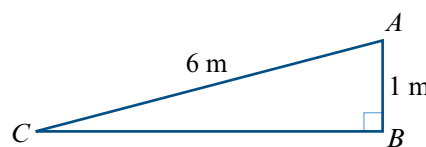


- 3 An equilateral triangle has altitudes of length 20 cm. Determine the length of one side.
- 4 The base of an isosceles triangle is 12 cm long and the equal sides are 15 cm long. Determine the magnitude of each of the three angles of the triangle.

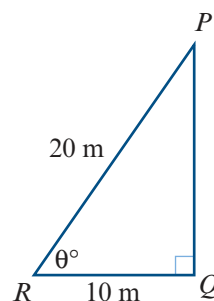
- 5 A pole casts a shadow 20 m long when the altitude of the sun is 49° . Calculate the height of the pole.



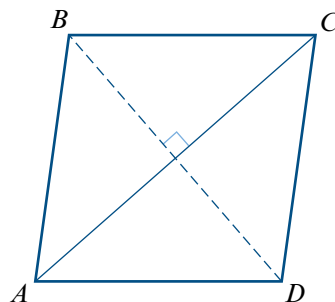
- 6 This figure represents a ramp.
- Determine the magnitude of angle ACB .
 - Determine the distance BC .



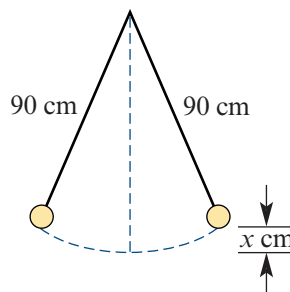
- 7 This figure shows a vertical mast PQ , which stands on horizontal ground. A straight wire 20 m long runs from P at the top of the mast to a point R on the ground, which is 10 m from the foot of the mast.



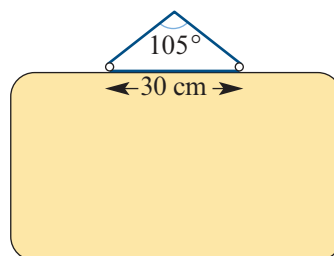
- Calculate the angle of inclination, θ° , of the wire to the ground.
 - Calculate the height of the mast.
- 8 A ladder leaning against a vertical wall makes an angle of 26° with the wall. If the foot of the ladder is 3 m from the wall, calculate:
- the length of the ladder
 - the height it reaches above the ground.
- 9 An engineer is designing a straight concrete entry ramp, 60 m long, for a car park that is 13 m above street level. Calculate the angle of the ramp to the horizontal.
- 10 A vertical mast is secured from its top by straight cables 200 m long fixed at the ground. The cables make angles of 66° with the ground. What is the height of the mast?
- 11 A mountain railway rises 400 m at a uniform slope of 16° with the horizontal. What is the distance travelled by a train for this rise?
- 12 The diagonals of a rhombus bisect each other at right angles. If $BD = AC = 10$ cm, determine:
- the length of the sides of the rhombus
 - the magnitude of angle ABC .



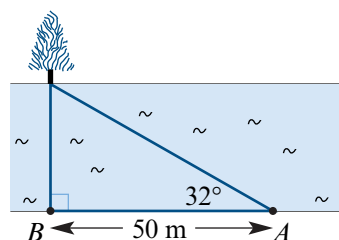
- 13** A pendulum swings from the vertical through an angle of 15° on each side of the vertical. If the pendulum is 90 cm long, what is the distance, x cm, between its highest and lowest points?



- 14** A picture is hung symmetrically by means of a string passing over a nail, with the ends of the string attached to two rings on the upper edge of the picture. The distance between the rings is 30 cm, and the string makes an angle of 105° at the nail. Determine the length of the string.

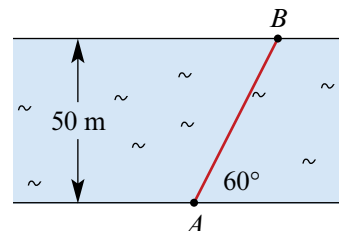


- 15** The distance AB is 50 m. If the line of sight to the tree of a person standing at A makes an angle of 32° with the bank, how wide is the river?



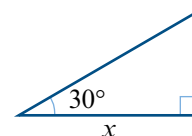
- 16** A ladder 4.7 m long is placed against a wall. The foot of the ladder must not be placed in a flower bed, which extends a distance of 1.7 m out from the base of the wall. How high up the wall can the ladder reach?

- 17** A river is known to be 50 m wide. A swimmer sets off from A to cross the river, and the path of the swimmer AB is as shown. How far does the person swim?



- 18** A rope is tied to the top of a flagpole. When it hangs straight down, it is 2 m longer than the pole. When the rope is pulled tight with the lower end on the ground, it makes an angle of 60° to the horizontal. How tall is the flagpole?

- 19** The triangle shown has perimeter 10. Determine the value of x .



- 20** Consider the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 - 4y = 0$ and the point $P(5, 2)$. Draw a diagram to show the circle and the two lines from P that are tangent to the circle. Determine the angle between the two tangent lines, $\angle APB$, where A and B are the two points of contact.

12B The sine rule

Learning intentions

- To be able to work with the sine rule.

In the previous section, we focused on right-angled triangles. In this section and the next, we consider non-right-angled triangles. The **sine rule** is used to determine unknown side lengths or angles of a triangle in the following two situations:

- 1 one side and two angles are given
- 2 two sides and a non-included angle are given (that is, the given angle is not ‘between’ the two given sides).

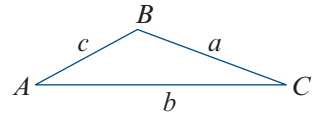
In the first case, the triangle is uniquely defined up to congruence. In the second case, there may be two triangles.

Labelling triangles

The following convention is used in the remainder of this chapter:

- Interior angles are denoted by uppercase letters.
- The length of the side opposite an angle is denoted by the corresponding lowercase letter.

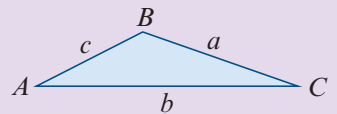
For example, the magnitude of angle BAC is denoted by A , and the length of side BC is denoted by a .



Sine rule

For triangle ABC :

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$



Proof We will give a proof for acute-angled triangles. The proof for obtuse-angled triangles is similar.

In triangle ACD :

$$\sin A = \frac{h}{b}$$

$$\therefore h = b \sin A$$

In triangle BCD :

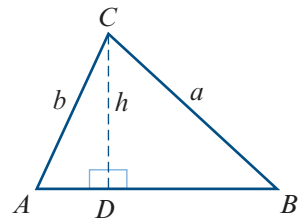
$$\sin B = \frac{h}{a}$$

$$\therefore a \sin B = b \sin A$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B}$$

Similarly, starting with a perpendicular from A to BC would give

$$\frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$

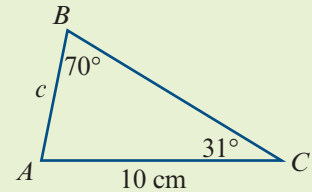


One side and two angles

When one side and two angles are given, this corresponds to the AAS congruence test. The triangle is uniquely defined up to congruence.

Example 3

Use the sine rule to determine the length of AB .



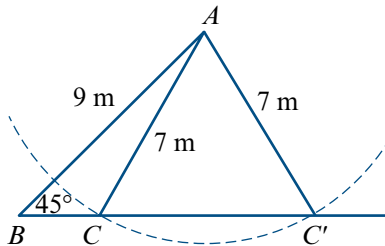
Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{c}{\sin 31^\circ} &= \frac{10}{\sin 70^\circ} \\ \therefore c &= \frac{10 \sin 31^\circ}{\sin 70^\circ} \\ &= 5.4809 \dots\end{aligned}$$

The length of AB is 5.48 cm, correct to two decimal places.

Two sides and a non-included angle

Suppose that we are given the two side lengths 7 m and 9 m and a non-included angle of 45° . There are two triangles that satisfy these conditions, as shown in the diagram.



Warning

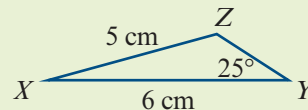
- When you are given two sides and a non-included angle, you must consider the possibility that there are two such triangles.
- An angle found using the sine rule is possible if the sum of the given angle and the found angle is less than 180° .

Note: If the given angle is obtuse or a right angle, then there is only one such triangle.

The following example illustrates the case where there are two possible triangles.

Example 4

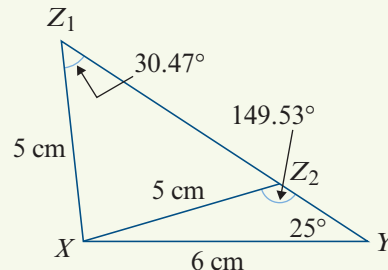
Use the sine rule to determine the magnitude of angle XZY in the triangle, given that $Y = 25^\circ$, $y = 5$ cm and $z = 6$ cm.

**Solution**

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{5}{\sin 25^\circ} &= \frac{6}{\sin Z} \\ \frac{\sin Z}{6} &= \frac{\sin 25^\circ}{5} \\ \sin Z &= \frac{6 \sin 25^\circ}{5} \\ &= 0.5071 \dots\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore Z = (30.473 \dots)^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad Z = (180 - 30.473 \dots)^\circ$$

Hence $Z = 30.47^\circ$ or $Z = 149.53^\circ$, correct to two decimal places.



Note: Remember that $\sin(180 - \theta) = \sin(\theta)$.

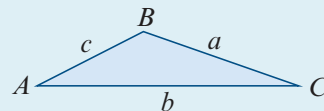
Summary 12B

■ **Sine rule** For triangle ABC :

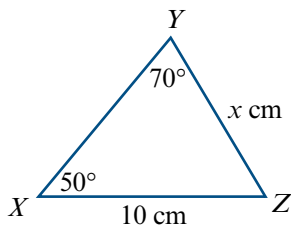
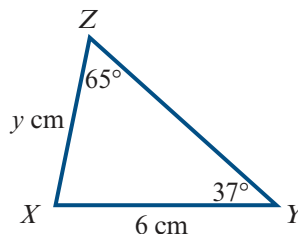
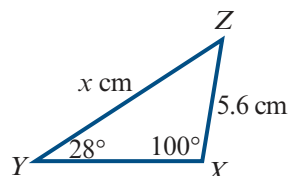
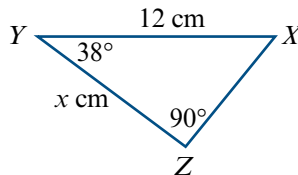
$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$

■ When to use the sine rule:

- one side and two angles are given (AAS)
- two sides and a non-included angle are given.

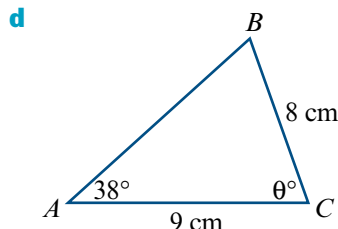
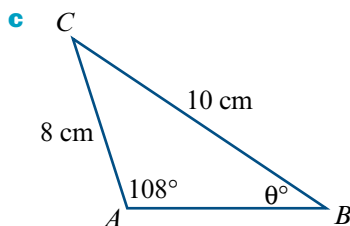
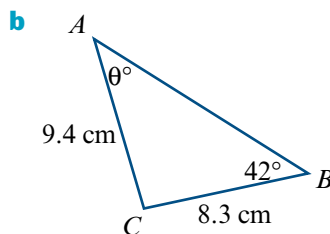
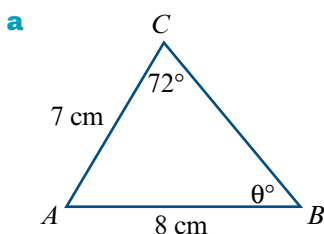
**Exercise 12B****Example 3**

1 Determine the value of the pronumeral for each of the following triangles:

a**b****c****d**

Example 4

2 Determine the value of θ for each of the following triangles:



3 Solve the following triangles (i.e. determine all sides and angles):

a $a = 12$, $B = 59^\circ$, $C = 73^\circ$

b $A = 75.3^\circ$, $b = 5.6$, $B = 48.25^\circ$

c $A = 123.2^\circ$, $a = 11.5$, $C = 37^\circ$

d $A = 23^\circ$, $a = 15$, $B = 40^\circ$

e $B = 140^\circ$, $b = 20$, $A = 10^\circ$

4 Solve the following triangles (i.e. determine all sides and angles):

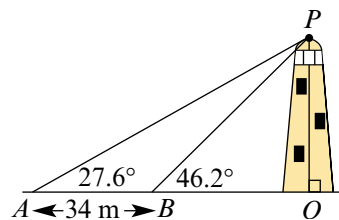
a $b = 17.6$, $C = 48.25^\circ$, $c = 15.3$

b $B = 129^\circ$, $b = 7.89$, $c = 4.56$

c $A = 28.35^\circ$, $a = 8.5$, $b = 14.8$

5 A landmark A is observed from two points B and C , which are 400 m apart. The magnitude of angle ABC is measured as 68° and the magnitude of angle ACB as 70° . Determine the distance of A from C .

6 P is a point at the top of a lighthouse. Measurements of the length AB and angles PBO and PAO are as shown in the diagram. Determine the height of the lighthouse.

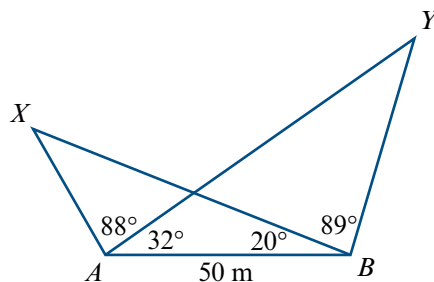


7 A and B are two points on a coastline, and C is a point at sea. The points A and B are 1070 m apart. The angles CAB and CBA have magnitudes of 74° and 69° respectively. Determine the distance of C from A .

8 Determine:

a AX

b AY



9 Use the sine rule to establish the following identities for triangles:

a $\frac{a+b}{c} = \frac{\sin A + \sin B}{\sin C}$

b $\frac{a-b}{c} = \frac{\sin A - \sin B}{\sin C}$

12C The cosine rule

Learning intentions

- To be able to work with the cosine rule.

The **cosine rule** is used to determine unknown side lengths or angles of a triangle in the following two situations:

- 1 two sides and the included angle are given
- 2 three sides are given.

In each case, the triangle is uniquely defined up to congruence.

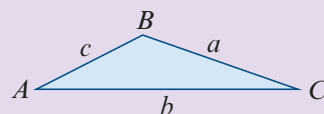
Cosine rule

For triangle ABC :

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

or equivalently

$$\cos C = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2ab}$$



Proof We will give a proof for acute-angled triangles. The proof for obtuse-angled triangles is similar.

In triangle ACD :

$$\cos C = \frac{x}{b}$$

$$\therefore x = b \cos C$$

Using Pythagoras' theorem in triangles ACD and ABD :

$$b^2 = x^2 + h^2$$

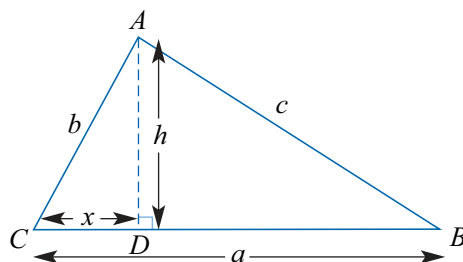
$$c^2 = (a-x)^2 + h^2$$

Expanding gives

$$c^2 = a^2 - 2ax + x^2 + h^2$$

$$= a^2 - 2ax + b^2 \quad (\text{as } b^2 = x^2 + h^2)$$

$$\therefore c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C \quad (\text{as } x = b \cos C)$$



Note: By symmetry, the following results also hold:

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

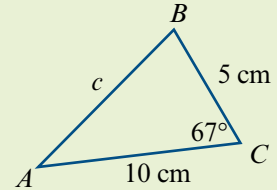
$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$$

Two sides and the included angle

When two sides and the included angle are given, this corresponds to the SAS congruence test. The triangle is uniquely defined up to congruence.

Example 5

For triangle ABC , determine the length of AB in centimetres correct to two decimal places.



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} c^2 &= 5^2 + 10^2 - 2 \times 5 \times 10 \cos 67^\circ \\ &= 85.9268 \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore c = 9.2696 \dots$$

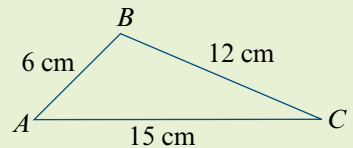
The length of AB is 9.27 cm, correct to two decimal places.

Three sides

When three sides are given, this corresponds to the SSS congruence test. The triangle is uniquely defined up to congruence.

Example 6

Determine the magnitude of angle ABC .



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \cos B &= \frac{a^2 + c^2 - b^2}{2ac} \\ &= \frac{12^2 + 6^2 - 15^2}{2 \times 12 \times 6} \\ &= -0.3125 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore B = (108.2099 \dots)^\circ$$

The magnitude of angle ABC is 108.21° , correct to two decimal places.

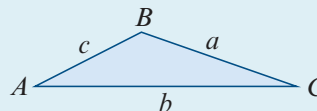
Summary 12C

- **Cosine rule** For triangle ABC :

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C \quad \text{or} \quad \cos C = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2ab}$$

- When to use the cosine rule:

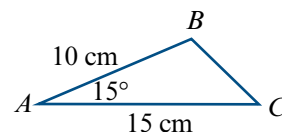
- two sides and the included angle are given (SAS)
- three sides are given (SSS).



Exercise 12C

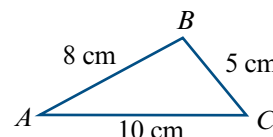
Example 5

- 1 Determine the length of BC .



Example 6

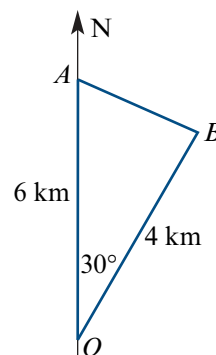
- 2 Determine the magnitudes of angles ABC and ACB .



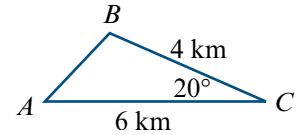
- 3 For triangle ABC with:

- a** $A = 60^\circ$ $b = 16$ $c = 30$, determine a
- b** $a = 14$ $B = 53^\circ$ $c = 12$, determine b
- c** $a = 27$ $b = 35$ $c = 46$, determine the magnitude of angle ABC
- d** $a = 17$ $B = 120^\circ$ $c = 63$, determine b
- e** $a = 31$ $b = 42$ $C = 140^\circ$, determine c
- f** $a = 10$ $b = 12$ $c = 9$, determine the magnitude of angle BCA
- g** $a = 11$ $b = 9$ $C = 43.2^\circ$, determine c
- h** $a = 8$ $b = 10$ $c = 15$, determine the magnitude of angle CBA .

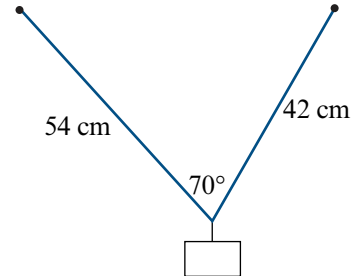
- 4 Two ships sail in different directions from a point O . At a particular time, their positions A and B are as shown. Determine the distance between the ships at this time.



- 5 A section of an orienteering course is as shown. Determine the length of leg AB .

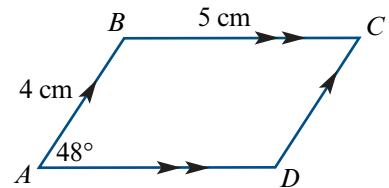


- 6 A weight is hung from two hooks in a ceiling by strings of length 54 cm and 42 cm, which are inclined at 70° to each other. Determine the distance between the hooks.

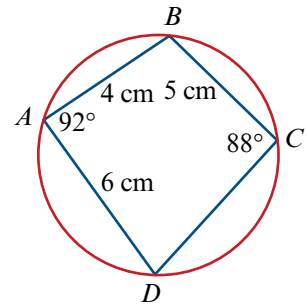


- 7 $ABCD$ is a parallelogram. Determine the lengths of the diagonals:

- a AC
b BD

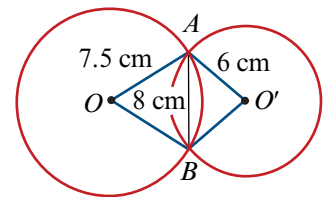


- 8 a Determine the length of diagonal BD .
b Use the sine rule to determine the length of CD .

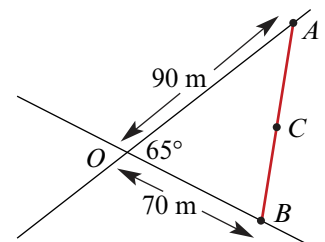


- 9 Two circles of radius 7.5 cm and 6 cm have a common chord of length 8 cm.

- a Determine the magnitude of angle $AO'B$.
b Determine the magnitude of angle AOB .



- 10 Two straight roads intersect at an angle of 65° . A point A on one road is 90 m from the intersection and a point B on the other road is 70 m from the intersection, as shown.
- a Determine the distance of A from B .
b If C is the midpoint of AB , determine the distance of C from the intersection.



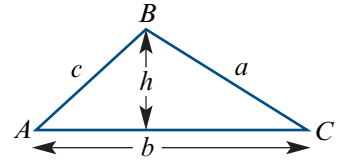
12D The area of a triangle

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the area of a triangle using the sine function.

The area of a triangle is given by

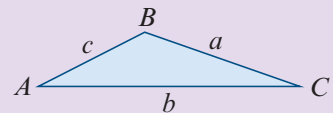
$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2} \times \text{base length} \times \text{height} \\ &= \frac{1}{2}bh\end{aligned}$$



By observing that $h = c \sin A$, we obtain the following useful formula.

For triangle ABC :

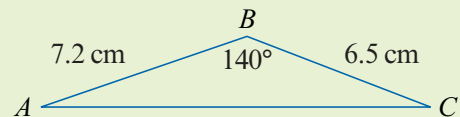
$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$$



That is, the area is half the product of the lengths of two sides and the sine of the angle included between them.

Example 7

Determine the area of triangle ABC shown in the diagram.

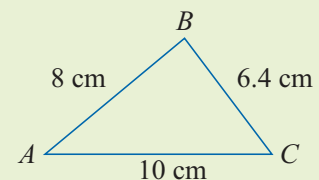


Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area} &= \frac{1}{2} \times 7.2 \times 6.5 \sin 140^\circ \\ &= 15.04 \text{ cm}^2 \quad (\text{correct to two decimal places})\end{aligned}$$

Example 8

Determine the area of the triangle, correct to three decimal places.



Solution

Using the cosine rule:

$$8^2 = 6.4^2 + 10^2 - 2 \times 6.4 \times 10 \cos C$$

$$64 = 140.96 - 128 \cos C$$

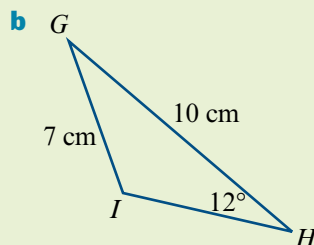
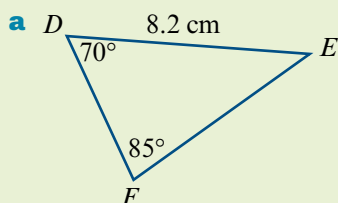
$$\cos C = 0.60125$$

$$\therefore C^\circ = (53.0405 \dots)^\circ \quad (\text{store exact value on your calculator})$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Area } \triangle ABC &= \frac{1}{2} \times 6.4 \times 10 \times \sin C \\ &= 25.570 \text{ cm}^2 \quad (\text{correct to three decimal places})\end{aligned}$$

Example 9

Determine the area of each of the following triangles, correct to three decimal places:



The angle I is obtuse

Solution

a Note that $E^\circ = (180 - (70 + 85))^\circ = 25^\circ$.

Using the sine rule:

$$\begin{aligned} DF &= \sin 25^\circ \times \frac{8.2}{\sin 85^\circ} \\ &= 3.4787 \dots \end{aligned}$$

(store exact value on your calculator)

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area } \triangle DEF &= \frac{1}{2} \times 8.2 \times DF \times \sin 70^\circ \\ &= 13.403 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

(correct to three decimal places)

b Using the sine rule:

$$\begin{aligned} \sin I &= 10 \times \frac{\sin 12^\circ}{7} \\ &= 0.2970 \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore I^\circ = (180 - 17.27 \dots)^\circ \quad (\text{since } I \text{ is an obtuse angle})$$

$$= (162.72 \dots)^\circ \quad (\text{store exact value on your calculator})$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore G^\circ &= (180 - (12 + I))^\circ \\ &= (5.27 \dots)^\circ \quad (\text{store exact value on your calculator}) \end{aligned}$$

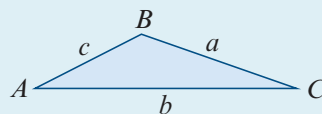
$$\begin{aligned} \text{Area } \triangle GHI &= \frac{1}{2} \times 10 \times 7 \times \sin G \\ &= 3.220 \text{ cm}^2 \end{aligned}$$

(correct to three decimal places)

Summary 12D

For triangle ABC :

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$$



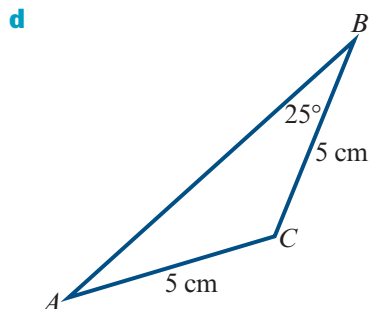
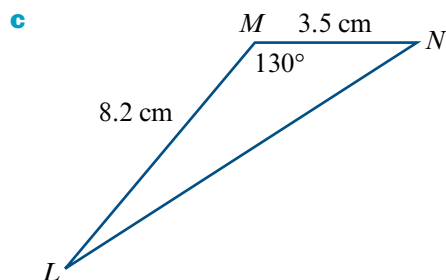
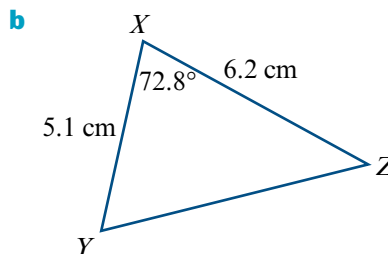
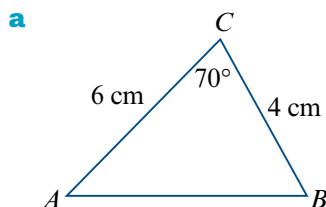
That is, the area is half the product of the lengths of two sides and the sine of the angle included between them.



Exercise 12D

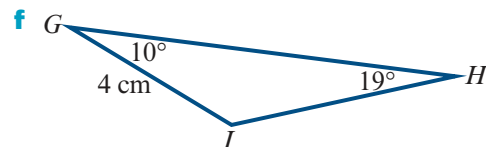
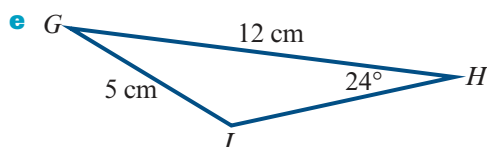
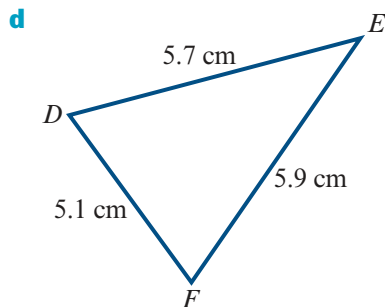
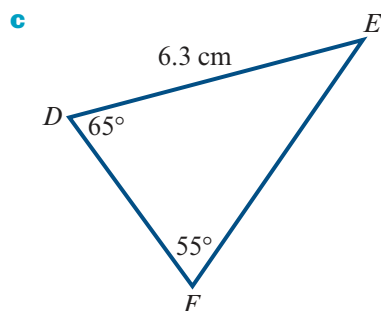
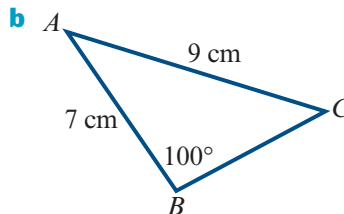
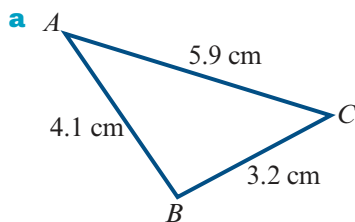
Example 7

1 Determine the area of each of the following triangles:



Example 8, 9

2 Determine the area of each of the following triangles, correct to three decimal places:

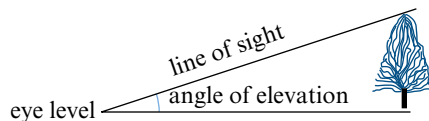


12E Angles of elevation, angles of depression and bearings

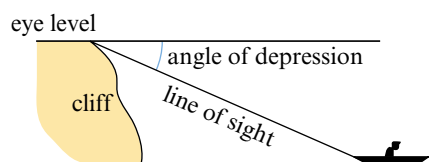
Learning intentions

- To be able to work with angles of elevation, angles of depression and bearings.

The **angle of elevation** is the angle between the horizontal and a direction above the horizontal.



The **angle of depression** is the angle between the horizontal and a direction below the horizontal.



Example 10

The pilot of a helicopter flying at 400 m observes a small boat at an angle of depression of 1.2° . Calculate the horizontal distance of the boat to the helicopter.

Solution

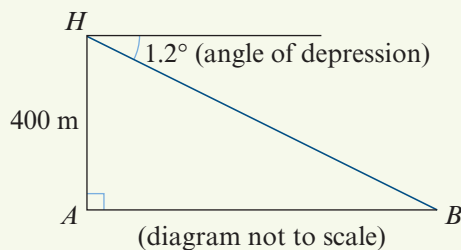
Note that $\angle ABH = 1.2^\circ$, using alternate angles.

Thus

$$\frac{AH}{AB} = \tan 1.2^\circ$$

$$\frac{400}{AB} = \tan 1.2^\circ$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore AB &= \frac{400}{\tan 1.2^\circ} \\ &= 19\,095.800\dots\end{aligned}$$



The horizontal distance is 19 100 m, correct to the nearest 10 m.

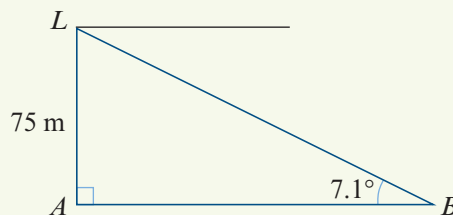
Example 11

The light on a cliff-top lighthouse, known to be 75 m above sea level, is observed from a boat at an angle of elevation of 7.1° . Calculate the distance of the boat from the lighthouse.

Solution

$$\frac{75}{AB} = \tan 7.1^\circ$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore AB &= \frac{75}{\tan 7.1^\circ} \\ &= 602.135\dots\end{aligned}$$



The distance of the boat from the lighthouse is 602 m, correct to the nearest metre.

Example 12

From the point A , a man observes that the angle of elevation of the summit of a hill is 10° . He then walks towards the hill for 500 m along flat ground. The summit of the hill is now at an angle of elevation of 14° . Determine the height of the hill above the level of A .

Solution

Magnitude of $\angle HBA = (180 - 14)^\circ = 166^\circ$

Magnitude of $\angle AHB = (180 - (166 + 10))^\circ = 4^\circ$

Using the sine rule in triangle ABH :

$$\frac{500}{\sin 4^\circ} = \frac{HB}{\sin 10^\circ}$$

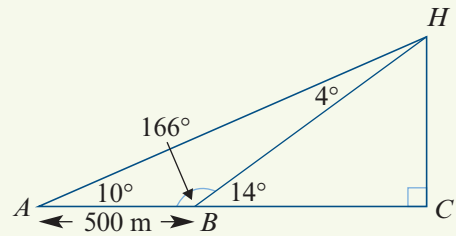
$$\begin{aligned}\therefore HB &= \frac{500 \sin 10^\circ}{\sin 4^\circ} \\ &= 1244.67 \dots\end{aligned}$$

In triangle BCH :

$$\frac{HC}{HB} = \sin 14^\circ$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore HC &= HB \sin 14^\circ \\ &= 301.11 \dots\end{aligned}$$

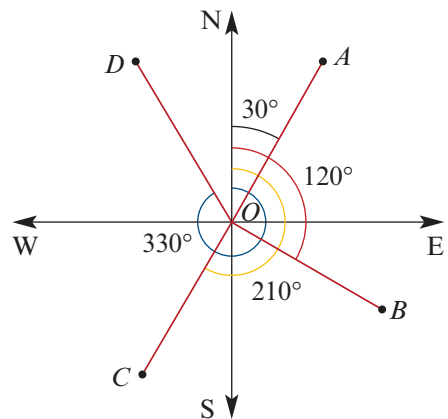
The height of the hill is 301 m, correct to the nearest metre.

**Bearings**

The **bearing** (or compass bearing) is the direction measured from north clockwise.

For example:

- The bearing of A from O is 030° .
- The bearing of B from O is 120° .
- The bearing of C from O is 210° .
- The bearing of D from O is 330° .



Example 13

The road from town A runs due west for 14 km to town B . A television mast is located due south of B at a distance of 23 km. Calculate the distance and bearing of the mast from the centre of town A .

Solution

$$\tan \theta = \frac{23}{14}$$

$$\therefore \theta = 58.67^\circ \quad (\text{to two decimal places})$$

Thus the bearing is

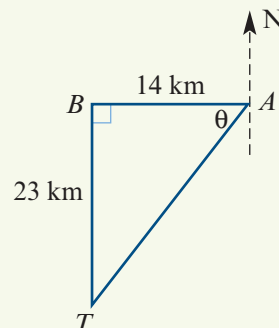
$$180^\circ + (90 - 58.67)^\circ = 211.33^\circ$$

To determine the distance, use Pythagoras' theorem:

$$\begin{aligned} AT^2 &= AB^2 + BT^2 \\ &= 14^2 + 23^2 \\ &= 725 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore AT = 26.925 \dots$$

The mast is 27 km from the centre of town A (to the nearest kilometre) and on a bearing of 211.33° .

**Example 14**

A yacht starts from a point A and sails on a bearing of 038° for 3000 m. It then alters its course to a bearing of 318° and after sailing for a further 3300 m reaches a point B . Determine:

- a** the distance AB
- b** the bearing of B from A .

Solution

- a** The magnitude of angle ACB needs to be found so that the cosine rule can be applied in triangle ABC :

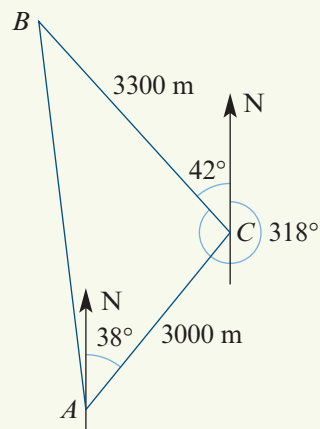
$$\angle ACB = (180 - (38 + 42))^\circ = 100^\circ$$

In triangle ABC :

$$\begin{aligned} AB^2 &= 3000^2 + 3300^2 - 2 \times 3000 \times 3300 \cos 100^\circ \\ &= 23\,328\,233.917 \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore AB = 4829.931 \dots$$

The distance of B from A is 4830 m (to the nearest metre).

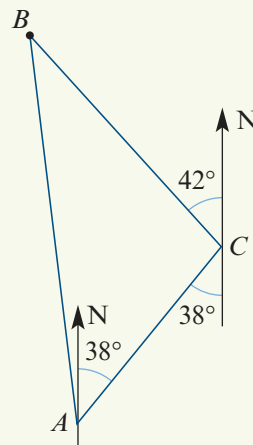


- b** To determine the bearing of B from A , the magnitude of angle BAC must first be found. Using the sine rule:

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{3300}{\sin A} &= \frac{AB}{\sin 100^\circ} \\ \therefore \sin A &= \frac{3300 \sin 100^\circ}{AB} \\ &= 0.6728 \dots \\ \therefore A &= (42.288 \dots)^\circ\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{The bearing of } B \text{ from } A &= 360^\circ - (42.29^\circ - 38^\circ) \\ &= 355.71^\circ\end{aligned}$$

The bearing of B from A is 356° to the nearest degree.



Exercise 12E

Example 10

- 1** From the top of a vertical cliff 130 m high, the angle of depression of a buoy at sea is 18° . What is the distance of the buoy from the foot of the cliff?

Example 11

- 2** The angle of elevation of the top of an old chimney stack at a point 40 m from its base is 41° . Determine the height of the chimney.
- 3** A hiker standing on top of a mountain observes that the angle of depression to the base of a building is 41° . If the height of the hiker above the base of the building is 500 m, determine the horizontal distance from the hiker to the building.
- 4** A person lying down on top of a cliff 40 m high observes the angle of depression to a buoy in the sea below to be 20° . If the person is in line with the buoy, determine the distance between the buoy and the base of the cliff, which may be assumed to be vertical.

Example 12

- 5** A person standing on top of a cliff 50 m high is in line with two buoys whose angles of depression are 18° and 20° . Calculate the distance between the buoys.

Example 13

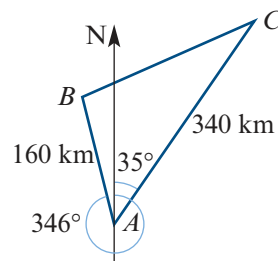
- 6** A ship sails 10 km north and then sails 15 km east. What is its bearing from the starting point?
- 7** A ship leaves port A and travels 15 km due east. It then turns and travels 22 km due north.

- a** What is the bearing of the ship from port A ?
- b** What is the bearing of port A from the ship?

Example 14

- 8** A yacht sails from point A on a bearing of 035° for 2000 m. It then alters course to a direction with a bearing of 320° and after sailing for 2500 m it reaches point B .
- a** Determine the distance AB .
- b** Determine the bearing of B from A .

- 9** The bearing of a point A from a point B is 207° . What is the bearing of B from A ?
- 10** The bearing of a ship S from a lighthouse A is 055° . A second lighthouse B is due east of A . The bearing of S from B is 302° . Determine the magnitude of angle ASB .
- 11** A yacht starts from L and sails 12 km due east to M . It then sails 9 km on a bearing of 142° to K . Determine the magnitude of angle MLK .
- 12** The bearing of C from A is 035° . The bearing of B from A is 346° . The distance of C from A is 340 km. The distance of B from A is 160 km.
- Determine the magnitude of angle BAC .
 - Use the cosine rule to determine the distance from B to C .
- 13** From a ship S , two other ships P and Q are on bearings 320° and 075° respectively. The distance PS is 7.5 km and the distance QS is 5 km. Determine the distance PQ .



12F Problems in three dimensions

Learning intentions

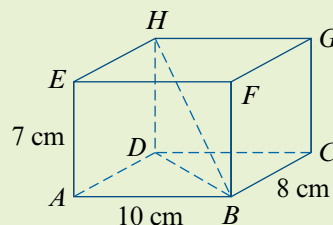
- To be able to solve problems in three dimensions.

Some problems in three dimensions can be solved by picking out triangles from a main figure and determining lengths and angles through these triangles.

Example 15

$ABCDEFGH$ is a cuboid. Determine:

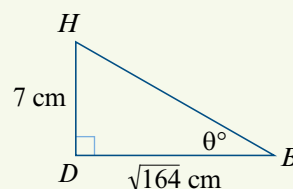
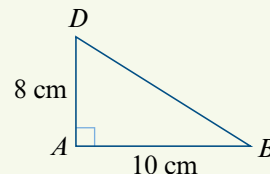
- the distance DB
- the distance HB
- the magnitude of angle HBD
- the magnitude of angle HBA .



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad DB^2 &= 8^2 + 10^2 \\ &= 164 \\ \therefore DB &= \sqrt{164} \\ &= 12.81 \text{ cm} \quad (\text{correct to two decimal places}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad HB^2 &= HD^2 + DB^2 \\ &= 7^2 + 164 \\ &= 213 \\ \therefore HB &= \sqrt{213} \\ &= 14.59 \text{ cm} \quad (\text{correct to two decimal places}) \end{aligned}$$



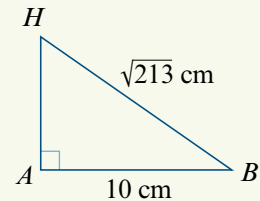
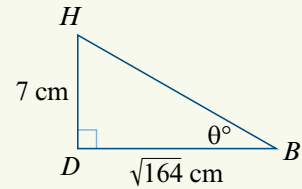
$$\begin{aligned} \text{c } \tan \theta &= \frac{HD}{BD} \\ &= \frac{7}{\sqrt{164}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \theta = 28.66^\circ \quad (\text{correct to two decimal places})$$

d From triangle HBA :

$$\cos B = \frac{10}{\sqrt{213}}$$

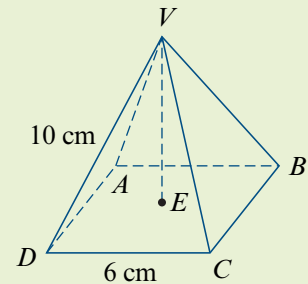
$$\therefore B = 46.75^\circ \quad (\text{correct to two decimal places})$$



Example 16

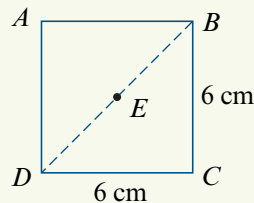
The figure shows a pyramid with a square base. The base has sides 6 cm long and the edges VA , VB , VC and VD are each 10 cm long.

- a** Determine the length of DB .
- b** Determine the length of BE .
- c** Determine the length of VE .
- d** Determine the magnitude of angle VBE .



Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \text{a } DB^2 &= 6^2 + 6^2 \\ &= 72 \\ \therefore DB &= \sqrt{72} \\ &= 6\sqrt{2} \\ &= 8.4852 \dots \end{aligned}$$

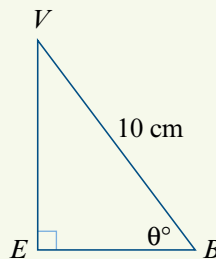


$$\begin{aligned} \text{b } BE &= \frac{1}{2}DB \\ &= 3\sqrt{2} \\ &= 4.2426 \dots \end{aligned}$$

The length of DB is 8.49 cm, correct to two decimal places.

The length of BE is 4.24 cm, correct to two decimal places.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c } VE^2 &= VB^2 - BE^2 \\ &= 10^2 - (3\sqrt{2})^2 \\ &= 100 - 18 \\ &= 82 \\ \therefore VE &= \sqrt{82} \\ &= 9.0553 \dots \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \text{d } \sin \theta &= \frac{VE}{VB} \\ &= \frac{\sqrt{82}}{10} \\ &= 0.9055 \dots \\ \therefore \theta &= (64.8959 \dots)^\circ \end{aligned}$$

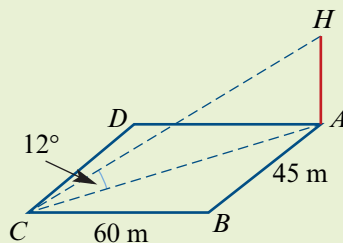
The length of VE is 9.06 cm, correct to two decimal places.

The magnitude of $\angle VBE$ is 64.90° , correct to two decimal places.

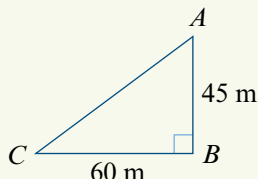
Example 17

A communications mast is erected at corner A of a rectangular courtyard $ABCD$ with side lengths 60 m and 45 m as shown. If the angle of elevation of the top of the mast from C is 12° , determine:

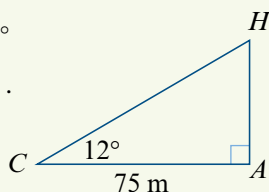
- the height of the mast
- the angle of elevation of the top of the mast from B .

**Solution**

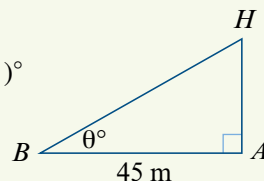
$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad AC^2 &= 45^2 + 60^2 \\ &= 5625 \\ \therefore AC &= 75 \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \frac{HA}{75} &= \tan 12^\circ \\ \therefore HA &= 75 \tan 12^\circ \\ &= 15.941 \dots \end{aligned}$$



$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad \tan \theta &= \frac{HA}{45} \\ &= 0.3542 \dots \\ \therefore \theta &= (19.507 \dots)^\circ \end{aligned}$$



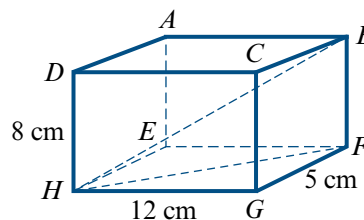
The angle of elevation of the top of the mast, H , from B is 19.51° , correct to two decimal places.

The height of the mast is 15.94 m, correct to two decimal places.

Exercise 12F**Example 15**

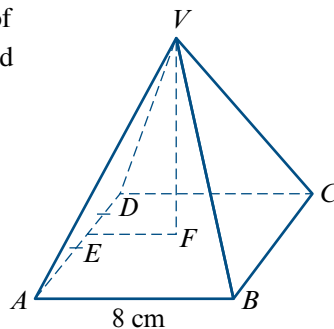
- 1** $ABCDEFGH$ is a cuboid with dimensions as shown. Determine:

- the length of FH
- the length of BH
- the magnitude of angle BHF
- the magnitude of angle BHG .

**Example 16**

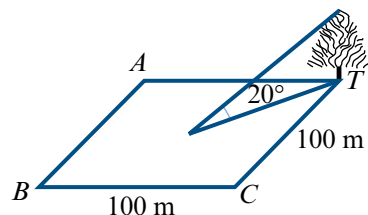
- 2** $VABCD$ is a right pyramid with a square base. The sides of the base are 8 cm in length. The height, VF , of the pyramid is 12 cm. If E is the midpoint of AD , determine:

- the length of EF
- the magnitude of angle VEF
- the length of VE
- the length of a sloping edge
- the magnitude of angle VAD
- the surface area of the pyramid.



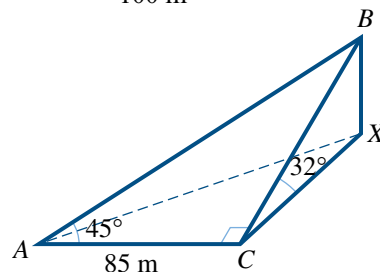
Example 17

- 3** A tree stands at a corner of a square playing field. Each side of the square is 100 m long. At the centre of the field, the tree subtends an angle of 20° . What angle does it subtend at each of the other three corners of the field?



- 4** Suppose that A , C and X are three points in a horizontal plane and that B is a point vertically above X . The length of AC is 85 m and the magnitudes of angles BAC , ACB and BCX are 45° , 90° and 32° respectively. Determine:

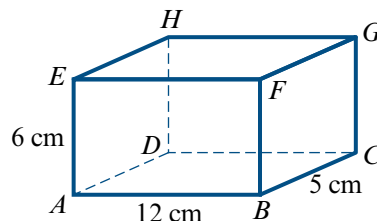
- a** the distance CB **b** the height XB .



- 5** Standing due south of a tower 50 m high, the angle of elevation of the top is 26° . What is the angle of elevation after walking a distance 120 m due east?
- 6** From the top of a cliff 160 m high, two buoys are observed. Their bearings are 337° and 308° . Their respective angles of depression are 3° and 5° . Calculate the distance between the buoys.

- 7** Determine the magnitude of each of the following angles for the cuboid shown:

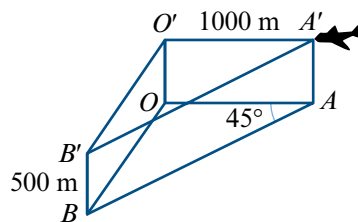
- a** $\angle ACE$ **b** $\angle HDF$ **c** $\angle ECH$



- 8** From a point A due north of a tower, the angle of elevation to the top of the tower is 45° . From point B , which is 100 m from A on a bearing of 120° , the angle of elevation is 26° . Determine the height of the tower.
- 9** A and B are two positions on level ground. From an advertising balloon at a vertical height of 750 m, point A is observed in an easterly direction and point B at a bearing of 160° . The angles of depression of A and B , as viewed from the balloon, are 40° and 20° respectively. Determine the distance between A and B .
- 10** A right pyramid, height 6 cm, stands on a square base of side length 5 cm. Determine:
- a** the length of a sloping edge **b** the area of a triangular face.

- 11** A light aircraft flying at a height of 500 m above the ground is sighted at a point A' due east of an observer at a point O on the ground, measured horizontally to be 1 km from the plane. The aircraft is flying south-west (along $A'B'$) at 300 km/h.

- a** How far will it travel in one minute?
- b** Determine its bearing from O (O') at this time.
- c** What will be its angle of elevation from O at this time?



12G Angles between planes and more complex 3D problems

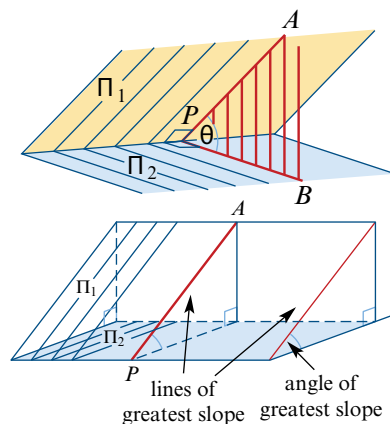
Learning intentions

- To be able to solve problems involving angles between two planes.

Angles between planes

Consider any point P on the common line of two planes Π_1 and Π_2 . If lines PA and PB are drawn at right angles to the common line so that PA is in Π_1 and PB is in Π_2 , then $\angle APB$ is the angle between planes Π_1 and Π_2 .

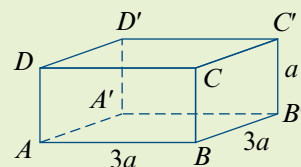
Note: If the plane Π_2 is horizontal, then PA is called a **line of greatest slope** in the plane Π_1 .



Example 18

For the cuboid shown in the diagram, determine:

- the angle between AC' and the plane $ABB'A'$
- the angle between the planes ACD' and DCD' .



Solution

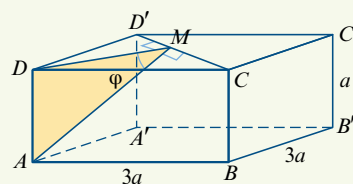
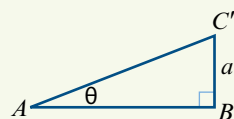
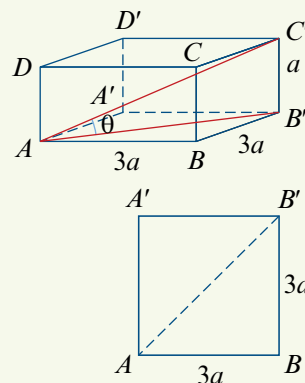
- a** To determine the angle θ between AC' and the plane $ABB'A'$, we need the projection of AC' in the plane. We drop a perpendicular from C' to the plane (line $C'B'$), and join the foot of the perpendicular to A (line $B'A$). The required angle, θ , lies between $C'A$ and $B'A$. Draw separate diagrams showing the base and the section through A , C' and B' . Then we see that

$$AB' = \sqrt{(3a)^2 + (3a)^2} = 3a\sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{and } \tan \theta = \frac{a}{3a\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{3\sqrt{2}}$$

Hence the required angle, θ , is 13.26° .

- b** The line common to the planes ACD' and DCD' is CD' . Let M be the midpoint of the line segment CD' . Then MD is perpendicular to CD' in the plane DCD' , since $\triangle DD'C$ is isosceles, and MA is perpendicular to CD' in the plane ACD' .



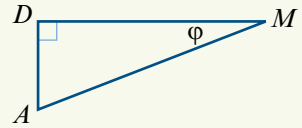
Thus φ is the angle between the planes DCD' and ACD' .

We have

$$DM = \frac{1}{2}DC' = \frac{1}{2}(3a\sqrt{2})$$

$$\therefore \tan \varphi = a \div \left(\frac{3a\sqrt{2}}{2} \right) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3}$$

Hence the required angle is $\varphi = 25.24^\circ$.



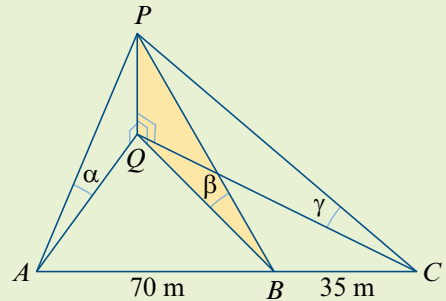
Example 19

Three points A , B and C are on a horizontal line such that $AB = 70$ m and $BC = 35$ m. The angles of elevation of the top of a tower are α , β and γ , where

$$\tan \alpha = \frac{1}{13}, \quad \tan \beta = \frac{1}{15}, \quad \tan \gamma = \frac{1}{20}$$

as shown in the diagram.

The base of the tower is at the same level as A , B and C . Determine the height of the tower.



Solution

Let the height of the tower, PQ , be h m. Then

$$h = QA \tan \alpha = QB \tan \beta = QC \tan \gamma$$

which implies that

$$QA = 13h, \quad QB = 15h, \quad QC = 20h$$

Now consider the base triangle ACQ .

Using the cosine rule in $\triangle AQB$:

$$\cos \theta = \frac{(70)^2 + (15h)^2 - (13h)^2}{2(70)(15h)}$$

Using the cosine rule in $\triangle CQB$:

$$-\cos \theta = \cos(180^\circ - \theta) = \frac{(35)^2 + (15h)^2 - (20h)^2}{2(35)(15h)}$$

Hence

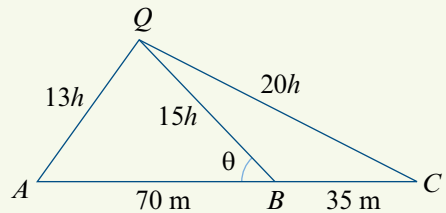
$$\frac{(70)^2 + (15h)^2 - (13h)^2}{2(70)(15h)} = \frac{(20h)^2 - (15h)^2 - (35)^2}{2(35)(15h)}$$

$$4900 + 56h^2 = 2(175h^2 - 1225)$$

$$7350 = 294h^2$$

$$\therefore h = 5$$

The height of the tower is 5 m.



Example 20

A sphere rests on the top of a vertical cylinder which is open at the top. The inside diameter of the cylinder is 8 cm. The sphere projects 8 cm above the top of the cylinder. Determine the radius length of the sphere.

Solution

This 3D problem can be represented by a 2D diagram without loss of information.

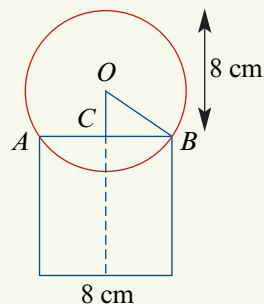
Let the radius length of the sphere be r cm. Then, in $\triangle OBC$, we have

$$OC = (8 - r) \text{ cm}, \quad BC = 4 \text{ cm}, \quad OB = r \text{ cm}$$

Using Pythagoras' theorem:

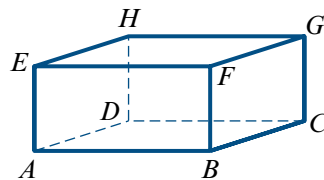
$$\begin{aligned}(8 - r)^2 + 4^2 &= r^2 \\ 64 - 16r + r^2 + 16 &= r^2 \\ -16r + 80 &= 0 \\ \therefore r &= 5\end{aligned}$$

The radius length of the sphere is 5 cm.

**Exercise 12G****Example 18**

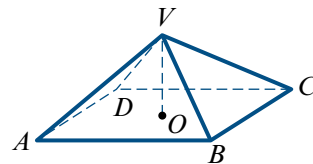
- 1 The diagram shows a rectangular prism. Assume that $AB = 4a$ units, $BC = 3a$ units, $GC = a$ units.

- Calculate the areas of the faces $ABFE$, $BCGF$ and $ABCD$.
- Calculate the magnitude of the angle which plane $GFAD$ makes with the base.
- Calculate the magnitude of the angle which plane $HGBA$ makes with the base.
- Calculate the magnitude of the angle which AG makes with the base.



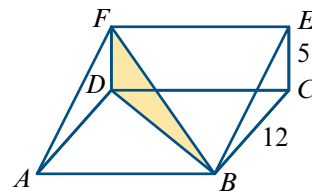
- 2 $VABCD$ is a right pyramid with square base $ABCD$, and with $AB = 2a$ and $OV = a$.

- Determine the slope of the edge VA . That is, determine the magnitude of $\angle VAO$.
- Determine the slope of the face VBC .



- 3 A hill has gradient $\frac{5}{12}$. If BF makes an angle of 45° with the line of greatest slope, determine:

- the gradient of BF
- the magnitude of $\angle FBD$.



- a** the length of AC **b** the length of AE **c** the angle between AE and EC .

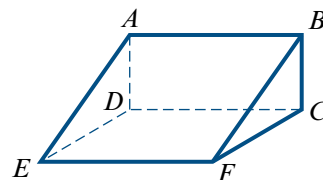
a Giving answers to the nearest metre, calculate the distances:

- b** Calculate the angle of elevation of T from the midpoint, M , of AB .

- a** the length of the slant edge
- b** the inclination of a slant edge to the base
- c** the inclination of a sloping face to the base
- d** the magnitude of the angle between two adjacent sloping faces.

- a** a sloping edge and the base **b** adjacent sloping faces.

- a** the distance that the skier has traversed
- b** the inclination of the skier's path to the horizontal.



- a** the sphere that just contains the cube
- b** the sphere that just fits inside the cube?

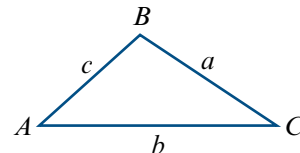
Chapter summary

Triangles

■ Labelling triangles

- Interior angles are denoted by uppercase letters.
- The length of the side opposite an angle is denoted by the corresponding lowercase letter.

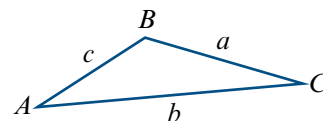
For example, the magnitude of angle BAC is denoted by A , and the length of side BC by a .



■ Sine rule

For triangle ABC :

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$



The sine rule is used to determine unknown quantities in a triangle in the following cases:

- one side and two angles are given
- two sides and a non-included angle are given.

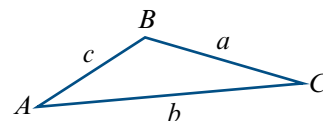
In the first case, the triangle is uniquely defined. But in the second case, there may be two triangles.

■ Cosine rule

For triangle ABC :

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

$$\cos C = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2ab}$$



The symmetrical results also hold:

$$a^2 = b^2 + c^2 - 2bc \cos A$$

$$b^2 = a^2 + c^2 - 2ac \cos B$$

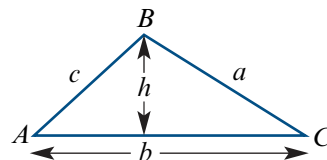
The cosine rule is used to determine unknown quantities in a triangle in the following cases:

- two sides and the included angle are given
- three sides are given.

■ Area of a triangle

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bh$$

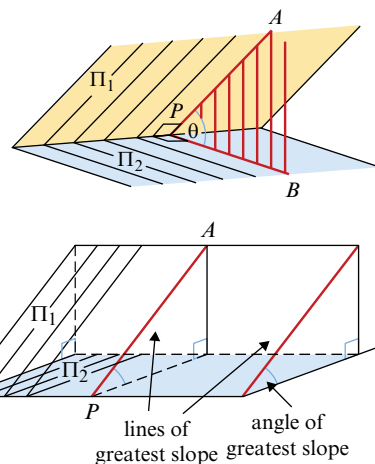
$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$$



That is, the area of a triangle is half the product of the lengths of two sides and the sine of the angle included between them.

Angle between planes

- Consider any point P on the common line of two planes Π_1 and Π_2 . If lines PA and PB are drawn at right angles to the common line so that PA is in Π_1 and PB is in Π_2 , then $\angle APB$ is the angle between Π_1 and Π_2 .
- If plane Π_2 is horizontal, then PA is called a **line of greatest slope** in plane Π_1 .

**Skills checklist**

Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.

**12A****1** I can use the trigonometric ratios to solve triangles.

See Example 1, Example 2 and Question 2

12B**2** I can use the sine rule to solve triangles.

See Example 3, Example 4 and Questions 1 and 2

12C**3** I can use the cosine rule to solve triangles.

See Example 5, Example 6 and Questions 1 and 2

12D**4** I can determine the area of a triangle using the formula $A = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$.

See Example 7, Example 8, Example 9 and Questions 1 and 2

12E**5** I can solve problems involving angles of elevation and depression.

See Example 10, Example 11, Example 12 and Questions 1, 2 and 5

12E**6** I can solve problems involving bearings.

See Example 13, Example 14 and Questions 6 and 8

12F**7** I can solve three-dimensional problems using Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry.

See Example 15, Example 16, Example 17 and Questions 1, 2 and 3

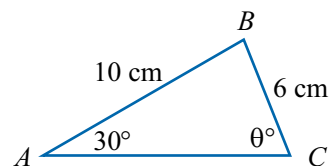
12G**8** I can solve more complex three-dimensional problems including those involving angles between planes.

See Example 18 Example 19, Example 20 and Questions 1, 5 and 11

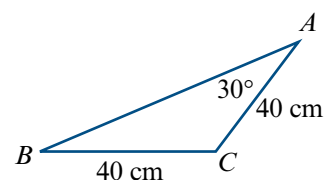
Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1 For the diagram shown, determine the value of $\sin(\theta^\circ)$.

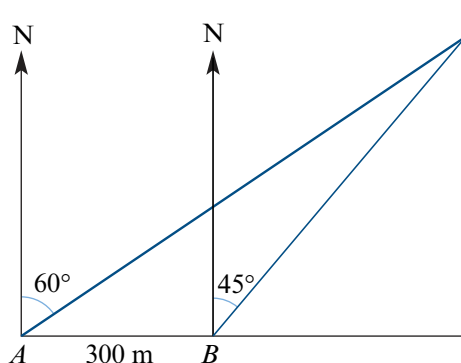


- 2 **a** Determine $\angle ABC$ and $\angle ACB$.
b Determine the length of side AB .
c Determine the distance CM , where M is the midpoint of side AB .



- 3 Triangle ABC has $AB = BC = 10$ cm and $\angle ABC = 120^\circ$. Determine AC .
- 4 From a port P , a ship Q is 20 km away on a bearing of 120° , and a ship R is 12 km away on a bearing of 060° . Determine the distance between the two ships.
- 5 Calculate the cosine of the largest angle in the triangle with sides of length 9 cm, 11 cm and 13 cm.
- 6 In a quadrilateral $ABCD$, $AB = 5$ cm, $BC = 5$ cm, $CD = 7$ cm, $B = 120^\circ$ and $C = 90^\circ$. Determine:
a the length of the diagonal AC **b** the area of triangle ABC
c the area of triangle ADC **d** the area of the quadrilateral.
- 7 If $\sin x = \sin 37^\circ$ and x is obtuse, determine x .
- 8 A point T is 10 km due north of a point S . A point R , which is east of the straight line joining T and S , is 8 km from T and 7 km from S . Calculate the cosine of the bearing of R from S .
- 9 In $\triangle ABC$, $AB = 5$ cm, $\angle BAC = 60^\circ$ and $AC = 6$ cm. Calculate the sine of $\angle ABC$.
- 10 An acute-angled triangle PQR has area 10.8 cm^2 and side lengths $PQ = 6$ cm and $QR = 4$ cm. Determine $\sin(\angle PQR)$.

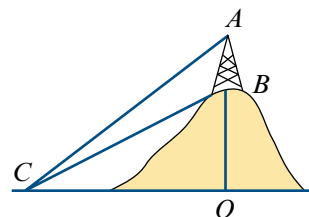
- 11** The diagram shows two survey points, A and B , which are on an east–west line on level ground. From point A , the bearing of a tower T is 060° , while from point B , the bearing of the tower is 045° .



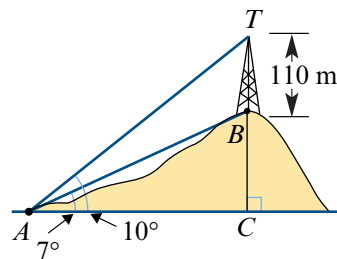
- a** i Determine the magnitude of $\angle TAB$.
 ii Determine the magnitude of $\angle ATB$.
- b** Given that $\sin 15^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{6} - \sqrt{2}}{4}$, determine the distances AT and BT .
- 12** A boat sails 11 km from a harbour on a bearing of 210° . It then sails 15 km on a bearing of 330° . How far is the boat from the harbour?
- 13** A helicopter leaves a heliport A and flies 2.4 km on a bearing of 150° to a checkpoint B . It then flies due east to its base C .
- a** If the bearing of C from A is 120° , determine the distances AC and BC .
- b** The helicopter flies at a constant speed throughout and takes five minutes to fly from A to C . Determine its speed.
- 14** From a cliff top 11 m above sea level, two boats are observed. One has an angle of depression of 45° and is due east, the other an angle of depression of 30° on a bearing of 120° . Calculate the distance between the boats.

Technology-active short-response questions

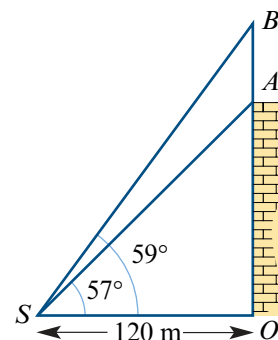
- 15** AB is a tower 60 m high on top of a hill. The magnitude of $\angle ACO$ is 49° and the magnitude of $\angle BCO$ is 37° .
- a** Determine the magnitudes of $\angle ACB$, $\angle CBO$ and $\angle CBA$.
- b** Determine the length of BC .
- c** Determine the height of the hill, i.e. the length of OB .



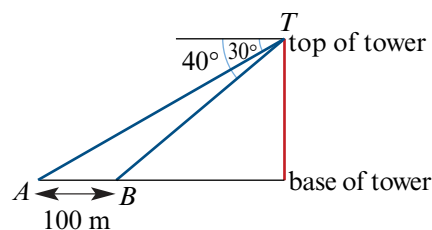
- 16** A tower 110 m high stands on the top of a hill. From a point A at the foot of the hill, the angle of elevation of the bottom of the tower is 7° and that of the top is 10° .
- a** Determine the magnitudes of angles TAB , ABT and ATB .
- b** Use the sine rule to determine the length of AB .
- c** Determine CB , the height of the hill.



- 17** Point S is a distance of 120 m from the base of a building. On the building is an aerial, AB . The angle of elevation from S to A is 57° . The angle of elevation from S to B is 59° . Determine:
- a** the distance OA
 - b** the distance OB
 - c** the distance AB .

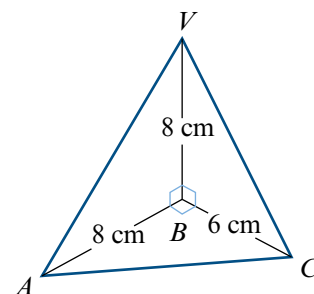


- 18** From the top of a communications tower, T , the angles of depression of two points A and B on a horizontal line through the base of the tower are 30° and 40° . The distance between the points is 100 m. Determine:
- a** the distance AT
 - b** the distance BT
 - c** the height of the tower.



- 19** Point X is 10 km due south of point Y . Point Z , which lies to the east of the line XY , is 5 km from Y and 9 km from X .
- a** Calculate the bearing of Z from X .
 - b** A fourth point, W , is on a bearing of 319° from X and it is 12 km from Y .
 - i** Determine $\angle XWY$.
 - ii** Hence calculate the bearing of Y from W .

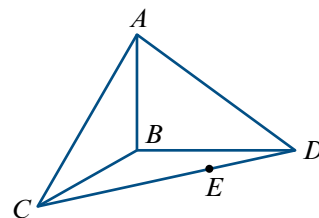
- 20** Angles VBA , VBC and ABC are right angles. Determine:
- a** the distance VA
 - b** the distance VC
 - c** the distance AC
 - d** the magnitude of angle VCA .



- 21** A surveyor measures the angle of elevation of the top of a mountain from a point at sea level as 20° . She then travels 1000 m along a road that slopes uniformly uphill towards the mountain. From this point, which is 100 m above sea level, she measures the angle of elevation as 23° . Determine the height of the mountain above sea level, correct to the nearest metre.

- 22** In the diagram, the edge AB is vertical, $\triangle BCD$ is horizontal, $\angle CBD$ is a right angle and $AB = 20$ m, $BD = 40$ m, $BC = 30$ m. Calculate the inclination to the horizontal of:

- a** AD
b AE , where AE is the line of greatest slope
c AE , where E is the midpoint of CD .



- 23** The perimeter of a triangle ABC is L metres. Determine the area of the triangle in terms of L and the triangle's angles α , β and γ .

Hint: Let $AB = x$. Using the sine rule, first determine the other side lengths in terms of x .

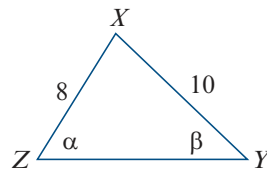
Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1** The area of the triangle ABC , where $b = 5$ cm, $c = 3$ cm, $\angle A = 30^\circ$, is
A 2.75 cm^2 **B** 3.75 cm^2 **C** 6.5 cm^2 **D** 7.5 cm^2

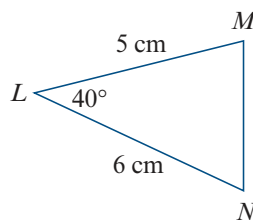
- 2** Given that $XZ = 8$, $XY = 10$ and $\sin \alpha = \frac{2}{3}$, $\sin \beta$ equals:

- A** $\frac{4}{15}$ **B** $\frac{8}{15}$
C $\frac{5}{15}$ **D** $\frac{4}{5}$



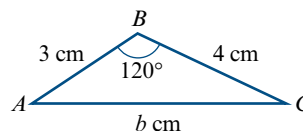
- 3** The area of triangle LMN , in cm^2 , is:

- A** $\frac{6}{5} \sin 40^\circ$ **B** $\frac{6}{5 \cos 40^\circ}$
C $15 \sin 40^\circ$ **D** $30 \cos 40^\circ$



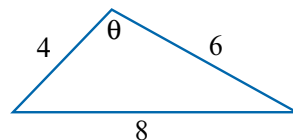
- 4** In the diagram shown, the value of b is:

- A** $\sqrt{13}$ **B** 5
C $\sqrt{37}$ **D** 13



- 5** For the diagram shown, the value of $\cos \theta$ is

- A** $-\frac{1}{4}$ **B** $-\frac{1}{2}$
C $\frac{1}{4}$ **D** $\frac{1}{2}$



- 6** A boat sails at a bearing of 215° from A to B . The bearing it must take from B to return to A is

A 035°

B 0.55°

c 090°

D 215°

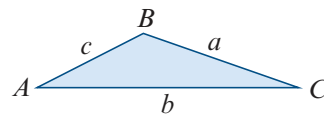
- 7** In triangle ABC , $\frac{\sin(B)}{\sin(A+B)}$ is equal to

A $\frac{c}{b}$

B $\frac{a}{c}$

c $\frac{a}{b}$

D $\frac{b}{c}$



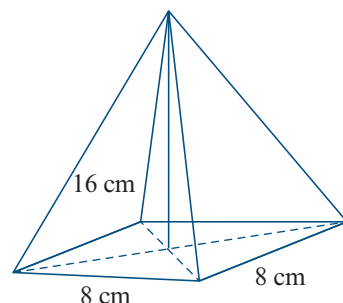
- 8** A right pyramid with a square base is shown in the diagram. Each edge of the square base has length 8 cm and the height of the pyramid is 16 cm. The length of a sloping edge of the pyramid, in centimetres, is:

A $\sqrt{288}$

B $\sqrt{155}$

C $\sqrt{125}$

D $\sqrt{324}$



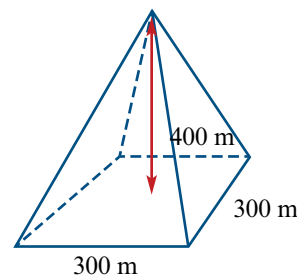
- 9** The diagram shows a right square pyramid of height 400 m with its base a square of side 300 m. If θ is the angle between a sloping face and the base, which *one* of the following equations will give the correct value of θ ?

A $\tan \theta = \frac{400}{300\sqrt{2}}$

B $\tan \theta = \frac{400}{150\sqrt{2}}$

c $\tan \theta = \frac{400}{300}$

D $\tan \theta = \frac{400}{150}$



- 10** In this figure, $PQRS$ is a rectangle inclined at an angle of 45° to the horizontal plane $PQTU$. The magnitude of $\angle PQS = 60^\circ$. Let θ° be the angle of inclination of QS to the horizontal plane. Then $\sin \theta =$

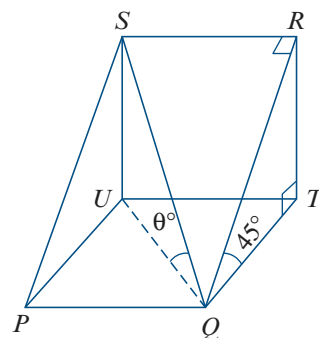
A $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$
C $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

B $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$

D $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{4}$

c $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

D $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{4}$



Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 11** In a triangle XYZ , $x = 21$ cm, $y = 18$ cm and $\angle YXZ = 62^\circ$. The magnitude of $\angle XYZ$, correct to one decimal place, is

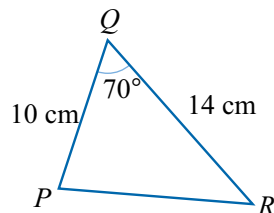
A 0.4°

B 0.8°

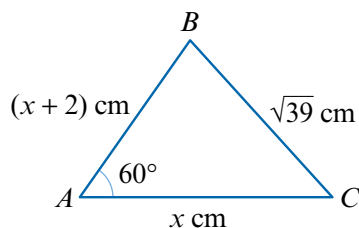
c 1.0°

D 49.2°

- 12** In a triangle ABC , $a = 30$, $b = 21$ and $\cos C = \frac{51}{53}$. The value of c , to the nearest whole number, is
A 9 **B** 10 **C** 11 **D** 81
- 13** In a triangle ABC , $a = 5.2$ cm, $b = 6.8$ cm and $c = 7.3$ cm. The magnitude of $\angle ACB$, correct to the nearest degree, is
A 43° **B** 63° **C** 74° **D** 82°
- 14** From a point on a cliff 500 m above sea level, the angle of depression to a boat is 20° . The distance from the foot of the cliff to the boat, to the nearest metre, is
A 182 m **B** 193 m **C** 210 m **D** 1374 m
- 15** A tower 80 m high is 1.3 km away from a point on the ground. The angle of elevation to the top of the tower from this point, correct to the nearest degree, is
A 1° **B** 4° **C** 53° **D** 86°
- 16** A man walks 5 km due east followed by 7 km due south. The bearing he must take to return to the start is
A 036° **B** 306° **C** 324° **D** 332°
- 17** A hiker starts at a point P . She walks 5 km on a bearing of 030° to point Q , and then walks 10 km on a bearing of 330° to point R . How far west of point P is point R ?
A 2.5 km **B** 5 km **C** 7.5 km **D** 10 km
- 18** The area of triangle PQR is closest to
A 24 cm^2 **B** 54 cm^2
C 66 cm^2 **D** 70 cm^2



- 19** In triangle ABC , $AC = x$ cm, $AB = x + 2$ cm, $BC = \sqrt{39}$ cm and $\angle BAC = 60^\circ$. The value of x is
A 4 **B** 5 **C** 6 **D** 7



- 20** In the triangle PQR , $PQ = 8$ cm, $RQ = 9$ cm and $RP = 7$ cm. The area of triangle PQR correct to two decimal places is
A 24.32 cm^2 **B** 26.83 cm^2 **C** 29.16 cm^2 **D** 31.21 cm^2

13

Continuous random variables and the normal distribution

Chapter contents

- ▶ **13A** Introduction to continuous random variables
- ▶ **13B** Percentiles of a continuous distribution
- ▶ **13C** Expected value and variance
- ▶ **13D** Properties of mean and variance
- ▶ **13E** Cumulative distribution functions
- ▶ **13F** The probability density function of the normal distribution
- ▶ **13G** Standardisation
- ▶ **13H** Determining normal probabilities
- ▶ **13I** Solving problems using the normal distribution

In this chapter we extend our knowledge of probability to include random variables which can take any value in an interval of the real number line. Examples include the time taken to complete a puzzle and the height of an adult.

We also introduce the concept of the probability density function to describe the distribution of these continuous random variables. We shall see that probabilities associated with a continuous random variable are described by areas under the probability density function, and thus integration is an important skill required to determine these probabilities. The most useful continuous distribution, and one that occurs frequently, is the normal distribution. Datasets occurring in nature are often closely approximated by a normal probability distribution.

Chapters 13 covers Unit 4 Topic 3: Continuous random variables and the normal distribution.

13A Introduction to continuous random variables

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to use relative frequencies and histograms obtained from data to estimate probabilities associated with a continuous random variable.
- ▶ To be able to understand the concept of a probability density function.
- ▶ To be able to use integration to determine probabilities associated with a continuous random variable.

A **continuous random variable** is one that can take any value in an interval of the real number line. For example, if X is the random variable which takes its values as ‘time taken to run 1 km’, then X is a continuous random variable, and the values which X may take are the non-negative real numbers.

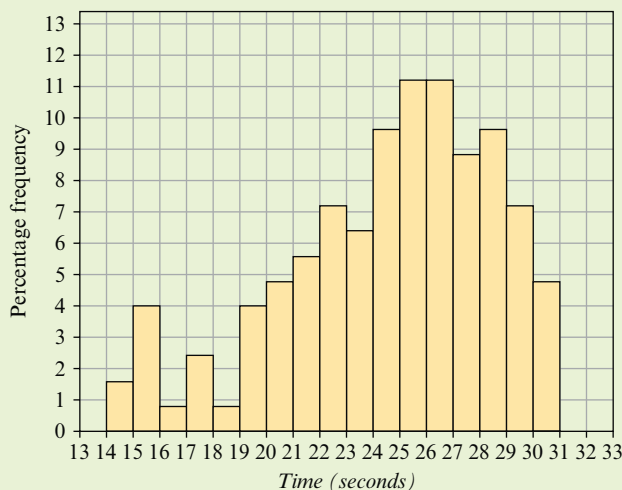
Using data to approximate a continuous random variable

Relative frequencies obtained from data can be used to approximate the probabilities associated with a continuous random variable.



Example 1

Let T represent the time (in seconds) that it takes a student to complete a particular puzzle. The following percentage frequency histogram was obtained by recording the times taken to complete the puzzle by 500 students, with each recorded time rounded to one decimal place.



Use the histogram to estimate:

a $P(19 < T \leq 22)$

b $P(T > 28)$

Solution

a $P(19 < T \leq 22) \approx 4\% + 4.8\% + 5.6\%$

$$= 14.4\%$$

$$= 0.144$$

b $P(T > 28) \approx 9.6\% + 7.2\% + 4.8\%$

$$= 21.6\%$$

$$= 0.216$$

An example of a continuous random variable

A continuous random variable has no limit as to the precision with which it can be measured. For example, let W be the random variable with values ‘a person’s weight in kilograms’ and let W_i be the random variable with values ‘a person’s weight in kilograms measured to the i th decimal place’.

Then $W_0 = 83$ implies $82.5 \leq W < 83.5$

$W_1 = 83.3$ implies $83.25 \leq W < 83.35$

$W_2 = 83.28$ implies $83.275 \leq W < 83.285$

and so on. Thus, the random variable W cannot take an exact value, since it is always rounded to the limits imposed by the method of measurement used. Hence, the probability of W being exactly equal to a particular value is zero, and this is true for all continuous random variables.

That is,

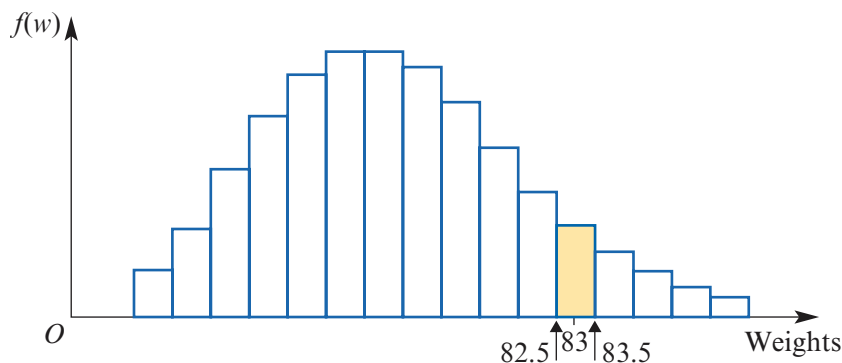
$$P(W = w) = 0 \quad \text{for all } w$$

In practice, considering W_i taking a particular value is equivalent to W taking a value in an appropriate interval.

Thus, from above:

$$P(W_0 = 83) = P(82.5 \leq W < 83.5)$$

To determine the value of this probability, you could begin by measuring the weight of a large number of randomly chosen people, and determine the proportion of the people in the group who have weights in this interval. Suppose after doing this a histogram of weights was obtained as shown.



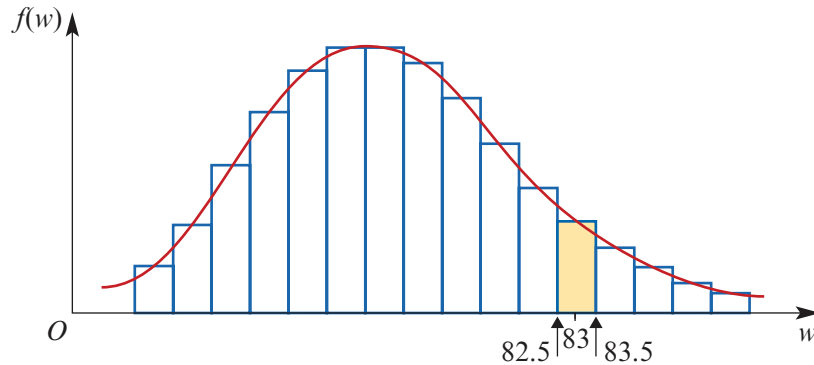
From this histogram:

$$\begin{aligned} P(W_0 = 83) &= P(82.5 \leq W < 83.5) \\ &= \frac{\text{shaded area from 82.5 to 83.5}}{\text{total area}} \end{aligned}$$

If the histogram is scaled so that the total area under the blocks is 1, then

$$\begin{aligned} P(W_0 = 83) &= P(82.5 \leq W < 83.5) \\ &= \text{area under block from 82.5 to 83.5} \end{aligned}$$

Now suppose that the sample size gets larger and that the class interval width gets smaller. If theoretically this process is continued so that the intervals are arbitrarily small, then the histogram can be modelled by a smooth curve, as shown in the following diagram.



The curve obtained here is of great importance for a continuous random variable.

The function f whose graph models the histogram as the number of intervals is increased is called the **probability density function**. The probability density function f is used to describe the probability distribution of a continuous random variable X .

Now, the probability of interest is no longer represented by the area under the histogram, but by the area under the curve. That is,

$$\begin{aligned} P(W_0 = 83) &= P(82.5 \leq W < 83.5) \\ &= \text{area under the graph of the function with rule } f(w) \text{ from } 82.5 \text{ to } 83.5 \\ &= \int_{82.5}^{83.5} f(w) dw \end{aligned}$$

Probability density functions

In general, a **probability density function** f is a function with domain some interval (e.g. domain $[c, d]$ or $\mathbb{R}$) such that:

- 1 $f(x) \geq 0$ for all x in the interval, and
- 2 the area under the graph of the function is equal to 1.

If the domain of f is $[c, d]$, then the second condition corresponds to $\int_c^d f(x) dx = 1$.

In many cases, however, the domain of f will be an ‘unbounded’ interval such as $[1, \infty)$ or $\mathbb{R}$. Therefore, some new notation is necessary.

- If the probability density function f has domain $[1, \infty)$, then $\int_1^\infty f(x) dx = 1$. This integral is computed as $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_1^k f(x) dx$.
- If the probability density function f has domain $\mathbb{R}$, then $\int_{-\infty}^\infty f(x) dx = 1$. This integral is computed as $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-k}^k f(x) dx$.

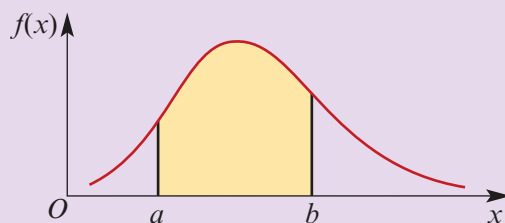
The probability density function of a random variable

Now consider a continuous random variable X with range $[c, d]$. (Alternatively, the range of X may be an unbounded interval such as $(-\infty, d]$, $[c, \infty)$ or $\mathbb{R}$.) Let f be a probability density function with domain $[c, d]$. Then:

We say that f is the **probability density function of X** if

$$P(a < X < b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

for all $a < b$ in the range of X .



Notes:

- The values of a probability density function f are not probabilities, and $f(x)$ may take values greater than 1.
- The probability of any specific value of X is 0. That is, $P(X = a) = 0$. It follows that all of the following expressions have the same numerical value:
 - $P(a < X < b)$
 - $P(a \leq X < b)$
 - $P(a < X \leq b)$
 - $P(a \leq X \leq b)$
- If f has domain $[c, d]$ and $a \in [c, d]$, then $P(X < a) = P(X \leq a) = \int_c^a f(x) dx$.

The natural extension of a probability density function

Any probability density function f with domain $[c, d]$ (or any other interval) may be extended to a function f^* with domain $\mathbb{R}$ by defining

$$f^*(x) = \begin{cases} f(x) & \text{if } x \in [c, d] \\ 0 & \text{if } x \notin [c, d] \end{cases}$$

This leads to the following:

A probability density function f (or its natural extension) must satisfy the following two properties:

- 1 $f(x) \geq 0$ for all x
- 2 $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$



Example 2

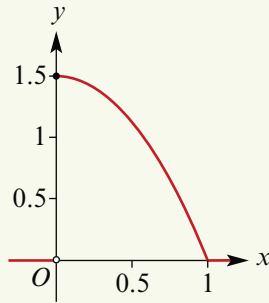
Consider the function f with the rule:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1.5(1 - x^2) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } x > 1 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a Sketch the graph of f .
- b Show that f is a probability density function.
- c Determine $P(X > 0.5)$, where the random variable X has probability density function f .

Solution

- a** For $0 \leq x \leq 1$, the graph of $y = f(x)$ is part of a parabola with intercepts at $(0, 1.5)$ and $(1, 0)$.



- b** From the graph, we can see that $f(x) \geq 0$ for all x , and so the first condition holds.

The second condition to check is that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx &= \int_0^1 1.5(1 - x^2) dx && \text{since } f(x) = 0 \text{ elsewhere} \\ &= 1.5 \left[x - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^1 \\ &= 1 \end{aligned}$$

Thus the second condition holds, and hence f is a probability density function.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{c } P(X > 0.5) &= \int_{0.5}^1 1.5(1 - x^2) dx \\ &= 1.5 \left[x - \frac{x^3}{3} \right]_{0.5}^1 \\ &= 1.5 \left[\left(1 - \frac{1}{3} \right) - \left(0.5 - \frac{0.125}{3} \right) \right] \\ &= 0.3125 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 3**

Suppose that the random variable X has the probability density function with rule:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} cx & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } x > 2 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the value of c that makes f a probability density function.
b Determine $P(X > 1.5)$.
c Determine $P(1 \leq X \leq 1.5)$.

Solution

a Since f is a probability density function, we know that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Now } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx &= \int_0^2 cx dx \quad \text{since } f(x) = 0 \text{ elsewhere} \\ &= \left[\frac{cx^2}{2} \right]_0^2 \\ &= 2c\end{aligned}$$

Therefore $2c = 1$ and so $c = 0.5$.

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad P(X > 1.5) &= \int_{1.5}^2 0.5x dx \\ &= 0.5 \left[\frac{x^2}{2} \right]_{1.5}^2 \\ &= 0.5 \left(\frac{4}{2} - \frac{2.25}{2} \right) \\ &= 0.4375\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{c} \quad P(1 \leq X \leq 1.5) &= \int_1^{1.5} 0.5x dx \\ &= 0.5 \left[\frac{x^2}{2} \right]_1^{1.5} \\ &= 0.5 \left(\frac{2.25}{2} - \frac{1}{2} \right) \\ &= 0.3125\end{aligned}$$

Probability density functions with unbounded domain

As previously noted, some intervals for which definite integrals need to be evaluated are of the form $(-\infty, a]$ or $[a, \infty)$ or $(-\infty, \infty)$. For a function f with non-negative values, such integrals are defined as follows (provided the limits exist):

- To integrate over the interval $(-\infty, a]$, evaluate $\lim_{k \rightarrow -\infty} \int_k^a f(x) dx$.
- To integrate over the interval $[a, \infty)$, evaluate $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^k f(x) dx$.
- To integrate over the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$, evaluate $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-k}^k f(x) dx$.

**Example 4**

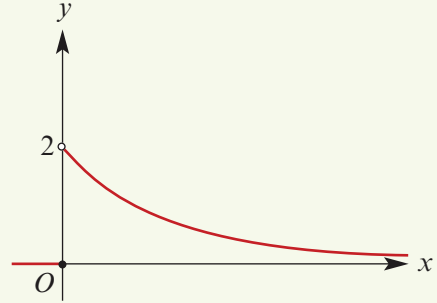
Consider the exponential probability density function f with the rule:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2e^{-2x} & x > 0 \\ 0 & x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of f .
- b** Show that f is a probability density function.
- c** Determine $P(X > 1)$, where the random variable X has probability density function f .

Solution

- a** For $x > 0$, the graph of $y = f(x)$ is part of the graph of an exponential function with y -axis intercept 2. As $x \rightarrow \infty$, $y \rightarrow 0$.



- b** Since $f(x) \geq 0$ for all x , the first condition holds.

The second condition to check is that $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Now } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx &= \int_0^{\infty} 2e^{-2x} dx && \text{since } f(x) = 0 \text{ elsewhere} \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^k 2e^{-2x} dx \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left[\frac{2e^{-2x}}{-2} \right]_0^k \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left[-e^{-2x} \right]_0^k \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left((-e^{-2k}) - (-e^{-0}) \right) \\
 &= 0 + e^0 \\
 &= 1
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus f satisfies the two conditions for a probability density function.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{c } P(X > 1) &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_1^k 2e^{-2x} dx \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left[-e^{-2x} \right]_1^k \\
 &= \lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \left((-e^{-2k}) - (-e^{-2}) \right) \\
 &= 0 + e^{-2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{e^2} \\
 &= 0.1353 \quad \text{correct to four decimal places}
 \end{aligned}$$

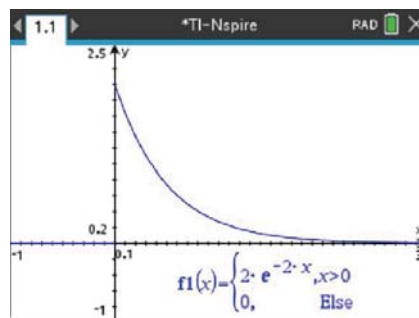
Note: Definite integrals which have one or both limits infinite are called **improper integrals**. There are possible complications with such integrals which we avoid in this course; you will only need the methods of evaluation illustrated in Examples 2 and 4.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

This is an application of integration.

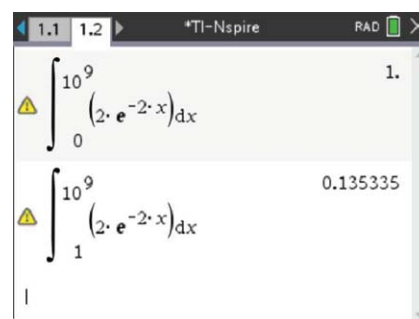
- a** The graph is as shown. The piecewise function template $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{expression} \\ \text{else} \end{array} \right.$ is accessed using t .



- b, c** The two required integrations are shown. Use 10^9 for ∞ as the upper terminal value.

Notes:

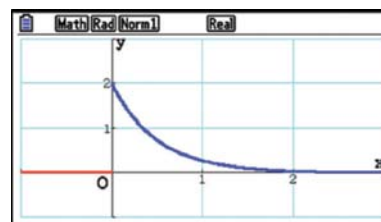
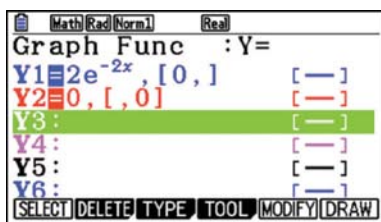
- Leave the domain for the last function piece blank; it will autofill as 'Else'.



Using the Casio

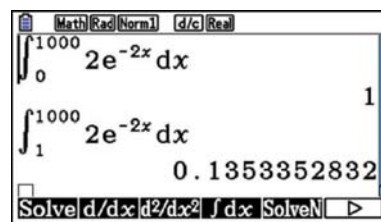
- a** To sketch the graph of f :

- In **Graph** mode, enter the rule for f as shown below.
- Select **Draw** (F6). Adjust the View Window (SHIFT) (F3) if required.



- b** To show that f is a probability density function:

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Calculation** menu (OPTN) (F4) and select the integral template $\int dx$ (F4).
- Complete the integral template as shown. Use $x = 1000$ for the upper terminal value.



- c** To determine $P(X > 1)$, calculate the integral $\int_1^{1000} 2e^{-2x} dx$.

Conditional probability



Example 5

The time (in seconds) that it takes a student to complete a puzzle is a random variable X with a density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{5}{x^2} & x \geq 5 \\ 0 & x < 5 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the probability that a student takes less than 12 seconds to complete the puzzle.
- b** Determine the probability that a student takes between 8 and 10 seconds to complete the puzzle, given that he takes less than 12 seconds.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad P(X < 12) &= \int_5^{12} f(x) \, dx \\ &= \int_5^{12} \frac{5}{x^2} \, dx \\ &= \left[-\frac{5}{x} \right]_5^{12} \\ &= -\frac{5}{12} + 1 \\ &= \frac{7}{12} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad P(8 < X < 10 | X < 12) &= \frac{P(8 < X < 10 \cap X < 12)}{P(X < 12)} \\ &= \frac{P(8 < X < 10)}{P(X < 12)} \\ &= \frac{\int_8^{10} f(x) \, dx}{\int_5^{12} f(x) \, dx} \\ &= \frac{-\frac{1}{2} + \frac{5}{8}}{\frac{7}{12}} = \frac{3}{14} \end{aligned}$$

Summary 13A

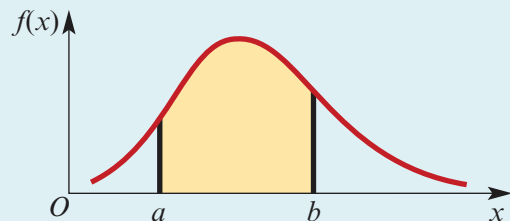
- A probability density function f (or its natural extension) must satisfy the following two properties:

$$\mathbf{1} \quad f(x) \geq 0 \text{ for all } x \qquad \mathbf{2} \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) \, dx = 1$$

- If X is a continuous random variable with density function f , then

$$P(a < X < b) = \int_a^b f(x) \, dx$$

which is the area of the shaded region.

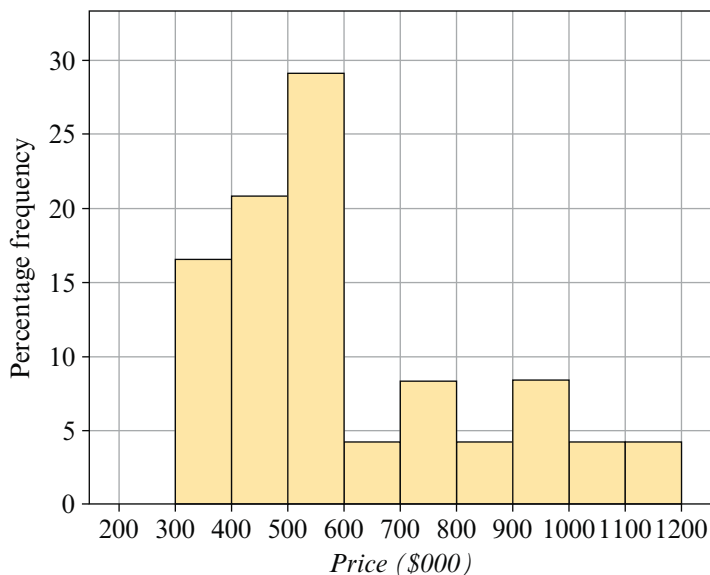


- Definite integrals may need to be evaluated over unbounded intervals:

- To integrate over the interval $(-\infty, a]$, determine $\lim_{k \rightarrow -\infty} \int_k^a f(x) \, dx$.
- To integrate over the interval $[a, \infty)$, determine $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_a^k f(x) \, dx$.
- To integrate over the interval $(-\infty, \infty)$, determine $\lim_{k \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-k}^k f(x) \, dx$.

Exercise 13A

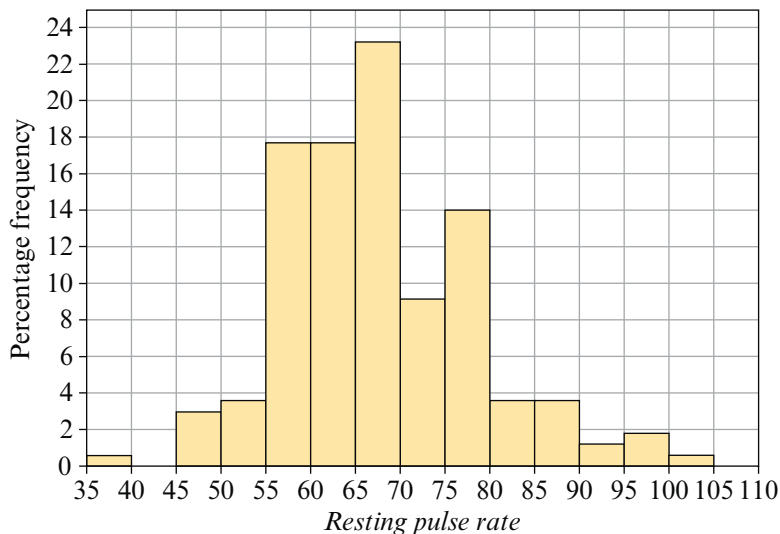
1 The following percentage frequency histogram summarises the prices, \$ X , of apartments in a certain town.



Use the histogram to estimate:

- a** $P(X > 900\,000)$ **b** $P(600\,000 < X \leq 1\,000\,000)$

- 2** Let X be the resting pulse rate (in beats per minute) of a randomly chosen person. The following percentage frequency data was obtained from a random sample of people, with each recorded pulse rate rounded to the nearest 5 beats per minute.



Use the histogram to estimate:

- a** $P(62.5 < X \leq 67.5)$ **b** $P(67.5 < X \leq 87.5)$

Example 2

- 3** Show that the function f with the following rule is a probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{24}{x^3} & 3 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 0 & x < 3 \text{ or } x > 6 \end{cases}$$

Example 3

- 4** Let X be a continuous random variable with the following probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 + kx + 1 & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

Determine the constant k such that f is a valid probability density function.

- 5** Consider the random variable X having the probability density function with the rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 12x^2(1-x) & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- b** Determine $P(X < 0.5)$.
- c** Shade the region which represents this probability on your sketch graph.

Example 4

- 6** Consider the random variable Y with the probability density function

$$f(y) = \begin{cases} ke^{-y} & y \geq 0 \\ 0 & y < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the constant k .
- b** Determine $P(Y \leq 2)$.

Example 5

- 7** The quarantine period for a certain disease is between 5 and 11 days after contact. The probability of showing the first symptoms at various times during the quarantine period is described by the probability density function

$$f(t) = \frac{1}{36}(t-5)(11-t)$$

- a** Sketch the graph of the function.
- b** Determine the probability that the symptoms appear within 7 days.
- c** Determine the probability that the symptoms appear within 7 days, given that they appear after 5.5 days.
- d** Determine the probability that the symptoms appear within 7 days, given that they appear within 10 days.

- 8** A probability model for the mass, X kg, of a 2-year-old child is given by

$$f(x) = k \sin\left(\frac{\pi(x-7)}{10}\right) \quad 7 \leq x \leq 17$$

- a** Show that $k = \frac{\pi}{20}$.
- b** Hence determine the percentage of 2-year-old children whose mass is:
 - i** greater than 16 kg
 - ii** between 12 kg and 13 kg.

- 9** A probability density function for the lifetime, T hours, of Electra light bulbs has rule

$$f(t) = ke^{\left(\frac{-t}{200}\right)}, \quad t > 0$$

- a** Determine the value of the constant k .
b Determine the probability that an Electra light bulb will last more than 1000 hours.

- 10** A random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(1+x) & -1 \leq x \leq 0 \\ k(1-x) & 0 < x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < -1 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

where $k > 0$.

- a** Sketch the graph of the probability density function. **b** Evaluate k .
c Determine the probability that X lies between -0.5 and 0.5 .
11 Let X be a continuous random variable with probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x^2 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
b Determine $P(0.25 < X < 0.75)$ and illustrate this on your graph.

- 12** A random variable X has a probability density function f with the rule:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{100}(10+x) & \text{if } -10 < x \leq 0 \\ \frac{1}{100}(10-x) & \text{if } 0 < x \leq 10 \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq -10 \text{ or } x > 10 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of f . **b** Determine $P(-1 \leq X < 1)$.

- 13** The life, X hours, of a type of light bulb has a probability density function with the rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{k}{x^2} & x > 1000 \\ 0 & x \leq 1000 \end{cases}$$

- a** Evaluate k . **b** Determine the probability that a bulb will last at least 2000 hours.

- 14** The weekly demand for petrol, X (in thousands of litres), at a particular service station is a random variable with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2\left(1 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right) & 1 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x < 1 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the probability that more than 1.5 thousand litres are bought in one week.
b Determine the probability that the demand for petrol in one week is less than 1.8 thousand litres, given that it is more than 1.5 thousand litres.

- 15** The length of time, X minutes, between the arrival of customers at an ATM is a random variable with probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{5}e^{-\frac{x}{5}} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the probability that more than 8 minutes elapses between successive customers.
- b** Determine the probability that more than 12 minutes elapses between successive customers, given that more than 8 minutes has passed.
- 16** A random variable X has density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.2 & -1 < x \leq 0 \\ 0.2 + 1.2x & 0 < x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x \leq -1 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine $P(X \leq 0.5)$.
- b** Hence determine $P(X > 0.5 | X > 0.1)$.
- 17** The continuous random variable X has probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} e^{-x} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of f .
- b** Determine:
- i** $P(X < 0.5)$ **ii** $P(X \geq 1)$ **iii** $P(X \geq 1 | X > 0.5)$

13B Percentiles of a continuous distribution

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine values of a continuous random variable associated with given percentiles.

In the previous section we used the probability density function of a continuous random variable to determine the probabilities associated with that random variable.

Another value of interest is the value of X which bounds a particular area under the probability density function. That is, given the probability, we would like to determine the possible values of the random variable which are associated with that probability.

For example, a teacher may wish to determine the mark, p , below which lie 75% of all students' marks. That is we wish to determine p such that:

$$P(X < p) = 0.75$$

This is called the 75th percentile of the population, and is found by solving

$$\int_{-\infty}^p f(x) dx = 0.75$$

This can be stated more generally:

Percentiles

The q th percentile of a distribution is the value a such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^a f(x) dx = \frac{q}{100}$$

For example, the 75th percentile is the value a found solving:

$$\int_{-\infty}^a f(x) dx = 0.75$$



Example 6

The duration of telephone calls to the order department of a large company is a random variable, X minutes, with probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{3}e^{-\frac{x}{3}} & x > 0 \\ 0 & x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine the value of a such that 90% of phone calls last less than a minutes.

Solution

To determine the value of a , solve the equation:

$$\int_0^a \frac{1}{3}e^{-\frac{x}{3}} dx = 0.9$$

$$\left[-e^{-\frac{x}{3}}\right]_0^a = 0.9$$

$$1 - e^{-\frac{a}{3}} = 0.9$$

$$-\frac{a}{3} = \ln 0.1$$

$$\therefore a = 3 \ln 10$$

$$= 6.908 \quad (\text{correct to three decimal places})$$

So 90% of the calls to this company last less than 6.908 minutes.

A percentile of special interest is the **median**, or 50th percentile. The median is the middle value of the distribution. That is, the probability of X taking a value below the median is 0.5, and the probability of X taking a value above the median is 0.5. Thus, if m is the median value of the distribution, then

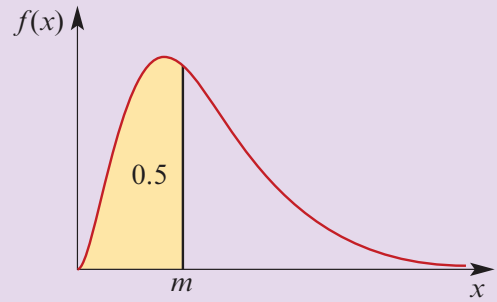
$$P(X \leq m) = P(X > m) = 0.5$$

Graphically, the median is the value of the random variable which divides the area under the probability density function in half.

The median

The median, m , of a continuous random variable X is the value of X such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^m f(x) dx = 0.5$$

**Example 7**

Suppose the probability density function of weekly sales of topsoil, X (in tonnes), is given by the rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2(1-x) & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the median value of X , and interpret.

Solution

The median m is such that

$$\int_0^m 2(1-x) dx = 0.5$$

$$2 \left[x - \frac{x^2}{2} \right]_0^m = 0.5$$

$$2m - m^2 = 0.5$$

$$m^2 - 2m + 0.5 = 0$$

$$\therefore m = 0.293 \text{ or } m = 1.707$$

But since $0 \leq x \leq 1$, the median is $m = 0.293$ tonnes.

This means that, in the long run, 50% of weekly sales will be less than 0.293 tonnes, and 50% will be more.

You may also be familiar with the **interquartile range** as the range of the middle 50% of the distribution; it is the difference between the 75th percentile (also known as Q3) and the 25th percentile (also known as Q1).

**Example 8**

Determine the interquartile range of the random variable X which has the probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Solution

To determine the 25th percentile a , solve:

$$\int_0^a 2x \, dx = 0.25$$

$$[x^2]_0^a = 0.25$$

$$a^2 = 0.25$$

$$\therefore a = \sqrt{0.25} = 0.5$$

To determine the 75th percentile b , solve:

$$\int_0^b 2x \, dx = 0.75$$

$$[x^2]_0^b = 0.75$$

$$b^2 = 0.75$$

$$\therefore b = \sqrt{0.75} \approx 0.866$$

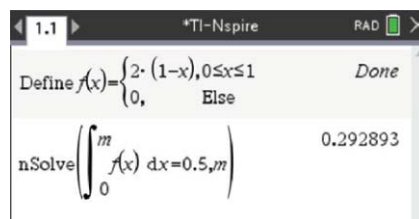
Thus the interquartile range is $0.866 - 0.5 = 0.366$, correct to three decimal places.

Note that the negative solutions to these equations were not appropriate, as $0 \leq x \leq 1$.

**Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS**

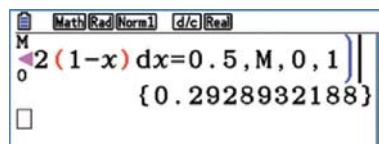
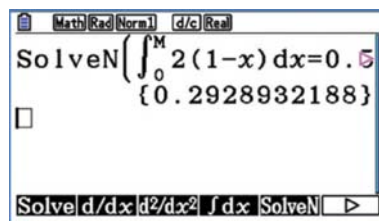
This is an application of integration.

- Solve the definite integral equal to 0.5 as shown to determine m (the median value).
- The median is $m = 0.293$.

**Using the Casio**

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Calculation** menu (OPTN) (F4) and select **SolveN** (F5).
- Then select $\int dx$ (F4) and complete the integral template as $\int_0^M 2(1-x) \, dx$:
 $(2) ((1 - (X,0,T))) \blacktriangleright (0) \blacktriangleright (\text{ALPHA}) (7)$
- Equate the integral to 0.5 and solve for M between 0 and 1:

$\blacktriangleright (\text{SHIFT}) (\cdot) (0) (\cdot) (5) (,) (\text{ALPHA}) (7) (,) (0) (,) (1) () (\text{EXE}) (\text{EXIT})$

**Summary 13B**

- The q th percentile of a distribution is the value a such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^a f(x) \, dx = q$$

- The median, m , is the 50th percentile. To determine the median, determine m such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^m f(x) \, dx = 0.5$$

- The interquartile range is the difference between the 75th percentile and the 25th percentile.

Exercise 13B

Example 6

- 1 The random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a Determine the value of k . b Determine the 28th percentile of X .

- 2 The time, X seconds, between arrivals of particles at a radiation counter has been found to have a probability density function f with the rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ e^{-x} & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

- a Determine $P(X \leq 1)$. b Determine the 80th percentile of X .

- 3 A continuous random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x - 4 & 2 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 0 & x < 2 \text{ or } x > 3 \end{cases}$$

Determine the 64th percentile of X .

- 4 A continuous random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 5(1-x)^4 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the 72nd percentile of X correct to four decimal places.

Example 7

- 5 Suppose that the time (in minutes) between telephone calls received at a pizza restaurant has the probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4}e^{-\frac{x}{4}} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine the median time between calls.

- 6 A probability model for the weight, X kg, of a 2-year-old child is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{\pi}{20} \sin\left(\frac{\pi(x-7)}{10}\right) \quad 7 \leq x \leq 17$$

Determine the median weight of a 2-year-old child.

Example 8

- 7 A continuous random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 3x^2 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** a such that $P(X \leq a) = 0.25$
- b** b such that $P(X \leq b) = 0.75$
- c** the interquartile range of X .

- 8** A random variable X has the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5e^x & x \leq 0 \\ 0.5e^{-x} & x > 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- b** Determine the interquartile range of X , giving your answer correct to three decimal places.

- 9** A random variable X has probability density function f with the rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ 2xe^{-x^2} & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine the interquartile range of X , giving your answer correct to three decimal places.

13C Expected value and variance

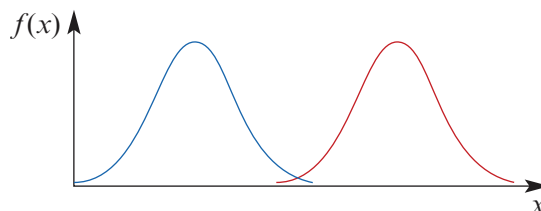
Learning intentions

- To be able to calculate the expected value of a continuous random variable.
- To be able to calculate the variance and standard deviation of a continuous random variable.

Expected value

The centre is an important summary feature of a probability distribution.

The following diagram shows two probability distributions which are identical except for their centres.



More than one measure of centre may be determined for a continuous random variable, and each gives useful information about the random variable under consideration. The most generally useful measure of centre is the expected value, or mean. We defined the expected

value for a discrete random variable in Section 11D. We can also define the expected value for a continuous random variable.

For a continuous random variable X with probability density function f , the **expected value** or **mean** of X is given by

$$E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx$$

provided the integral exists. The mean is denoted by the Greek letter μ (mu).

If $f(x) = 0$ for all $x \notin [c, d]$, then $E(X) = \int_c^d xf(x) dx$.

This definition is consistent with the definition of the expected value for a discrete random variable. As in the case of a discrete random variable, the expected value of a continuous random variable is the long-run average value of the variable. For example, consider the daily demand for petrol at a service station. The mean of this variable tells us the average daily demand for petrol over a very long period of time.



Example 9

Determine the expected value of the random variable X which has probability density function with rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5x & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

Solution

By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx = \int_0^2 x \times 0.5x dx && \text{since } f(x) = 0 \text{ elsewhere} \\ &= 0.5 \int_0^2 x^2 dx \\ &= 0.5 \left[\frac{x^3}{3} \right]_0^2 \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \end{aligned}$$

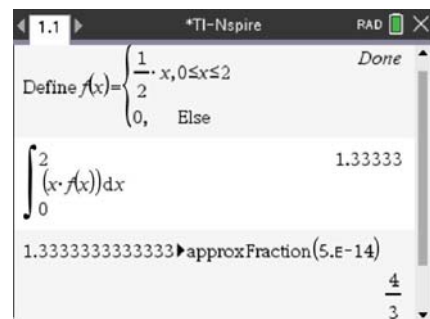


Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

Define the function f as shown; access the piecewise function template using .

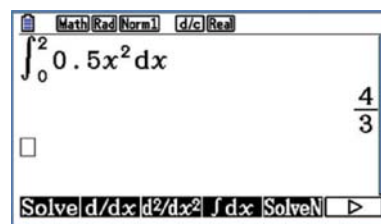
Notes:

- To convert the answer to a fraction, use > **Number** > **Approximate to Fraction**.



Using the Casio

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Calculation** menu (OPTN) (F4) and select $\int dx$ (F4).
- Complete the template as shown to integrate $xf(x)$ over the interval where $f(x)$ is non-zero.



The mean of a function of X is calculated as follows. (In this case, the function of X is denoted by $g(X)$ and is the composition of the random variable X followed by the function g .)

The expected value of $g(X)$ is given by

$$E[g(X)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f(x) dx$$

provided the integral exists.

Generally, as in the case of a discrete random variable, the expected value of a function of X is not equal to that function of the expected value of X . That is,

$$E[g(X)] \neq g[E(X)]$$



Example 10

Let X be a random variable with probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5x & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

a the expected value of X^2

b the expected value of e^X .

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{a} \quad E(X^2) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f(x) dx \\ &= \int_0^2 x^2 \times 0.5x dx \\ &= 0.5 \int_0^2 x^3 dx \\ &= 0.5 \left[\frac{x^4}{4} \right]_0^2 \\ &= 2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad E(e^X) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^x f(x) dx \\ &= \int_0^2 e^x f(x) dx \\ &= \int_0^2 e^x \times 0.5x dx \\ &= 4.195 \end{aligned}$$

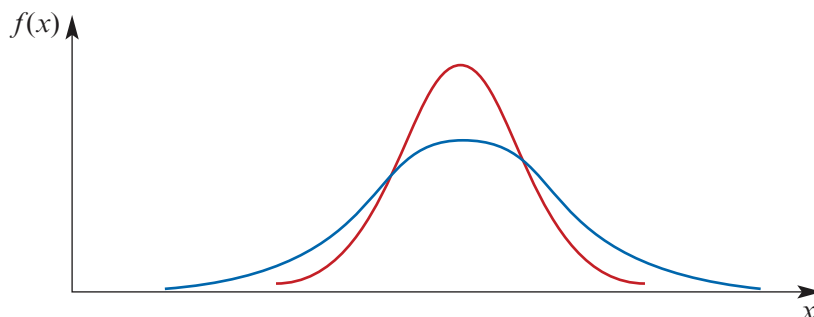
correct to three decimal places.

A case where the equality does hold is where g is a linear function:

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b \quad (\text{for } a, b \text{ constant})$$

Variance and standard deviation

Another important summary feature of a distribution is variation or spread. The following diagram shows two distributions that are identical except for their spreads.



As in the case of centre, there is more than one measure of spread. The most commonly used is the variance, together with its companion measure, the standard deviation. Others that you may be familiar with are the range and the interquartile range.

The **variance** of a random variable X is a measure of the spread of the probability distribution about its mean or expected value μ . It is defined as:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Var}(X) &= E[(X - \mu)^2] \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx\end{aligned}$$

As for discrete random variables, the variance is usually denoted by σ^2 , where σ is the lowercase Greek letter *sigma*.

Variance may be considered as the long-run average value of the square of the distance from X to μ . This means that the variance is not in the same units of measurement as the original random variable X . A measure of spread in the appropriate unit is found by taking the square root of the variance.

The **standard deviation** of X is defined as:

$$\text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$$

The standard deviation is usually denoted by σ .

As in the case of discrete random variables, an alternative (computational) formula for variance is generally used.

To calculate variance, use

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2$$

Proof The computational form of the expression for variance is derived as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Var}(X) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x^2 - 2\mu x + \mu^2) f(x) dx \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f(x) dx - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} 2\mu x f(x) dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \mu^2 f(x) dx \\
 &= E(X^2) - 2\mu \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) dx + \mu^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx
 \end{aligned}$$

Since $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x f(x) dx = \mu$ and $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Var}(X) &= E(X^2) - 2\mu^2 + \mu^2 \\
 &= E(X^2) - \mu^2
 \end{aligned}$$



Example 11

Determine the variance and standard deviation of the random variable X which has the probability density function f with rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5x & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$

Solution

Use the computational formula $\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2$.

Evaluate $E(X^2)$:

$$\begin{aligned}
 E(X^2) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f(x) dx \\
 &= \int_0^2 x^2 \times 0.5x dx \\
 &= 0.5 \int_0^2 x^3 dx \\
 &= 0.5 \left[\frac{x^4}{4} \right]_0^2 \\
 &= 0.5 \times 4 \\
 &= 2
 \end{aligned}$$

Since $E(X) = \frac{4}{3}$ from Example 9, we now have

$$\text{Var}(X) = 2 - \left(\frac{4}{3}\right)^2 = \frac{2}{9}$$

and $\text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\frac{2}{9}} = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{3} = 0.471$ (correct to three decimal places)

Summary 13C

For a continuous random variable X with probability density function f :

- the **mean** or **expected value** of X is given by $\mu = E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx$
- the expected value of $g(X)$ is given by $E[g(X)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f(x) dx$
- the **variance** of X is given by $\sigma^2 = \text{Var}(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx$
- To calculate the **variance** of a continuous random variable X , use

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2$$
- The **standard deviation** of X is defined by $\sigma = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$.

**Exercise 13C****Example 9**

- 1 Determine the mean, $E(X)$, of the continuous random variables with the following probability density functions:
 - a $f(x) = 2x$, $0 < x < 1$
 - b $f(x) = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{x}}$, $0 < x < 1$
 - c $f(x) = 6x(1 - x)$, $0 < x < 1$
 - d $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, $x \geq 1$
- 2 For each of the following, use your calculator to check that f is a probability density function and to determine the mean, $E(X)$, of the corresponding continuous random variable:
 - a $f(x) = \sin x$, $0 < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$
 - b $f(x) = \ln x$, $1 < x < e$
 - c $f(x) = \frac{1}{\sin^2 x}$, $\frac{\pi}{4} < x < \frac{\pi}{2}$
 - d $f(x) = -4x \ln x$, $0 < x < 1$
- 3 A continuous random variable X has the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x^3 - x + 1 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$
 - a Determine μ , the mean value of X .
 - b Determine the probability that X takes a value less than or equal to the mean.
- 4 Consider the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{2\pi}(1 + \cos x), \quad -\pi \leq x \leq \pi$$
 Determine the expected value of X .
- 5 Let the probability density function of X be given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 30x^4(1 - x) & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & x \leq 0 \text{ or } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$
 Determine the expected value, μ , of X .

- 6** A continuous random variable X has the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x & 0 \leq x < 1 \\ 2 - x & 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

Determine μ , the expected value of X .

Example 10

- 7** A random variable X has the probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 12x^2(1-x) & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine $E\left(\frac{1}{X}\right)$. **b** Determine $E(X^3)$.

Example 11

- 8** A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x & 0 < x < 1 \\ 0 & x \leq 0 \text{ or } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the variance of X , and hence the standard deviation of X .

- 9** A continuous random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{k}{x} & 1 \leq x \leq 9 \\ 0 & x < 1 \text{ or } x > 9 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the value of k .
b Determine the mean and variance of X , giving your answer correct to three decimal places.

- 10** A continuous random variable X has density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2 - 2x & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the mean and variance of X .

- 11** A random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x}{2} & 0 \leq x < 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Determine the mean and variance of X .

- 12** The queuing time, X minutes, of a traveller at the ticket office of a large railway station has probability density function f defined by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx(100 - x^2) & 0 \leq x \leq 10 \\ 0 & x > 10 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the value of k . **b** Determine the mean of the distribution.
c Determine the standard deviation of the distribution, correct to two decimal places.

- 13** A random variable Y has the probability density function:

$$f(y) = \begin{cases} Ay & 0 \leq y \leq B \\ 0 & y < 0 \text{ or } y > B \end{cases}$$

Determine A and B if the mean of Y is 2.

- 14** A random variable X has density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.2 & -1 \leq x \leq 0 \\ 0.2 + 1.2x & 0 < x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < -1 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine μ , the expected value of X . **b** Determine m , the median value of X .

- 15** The exponential probability distribution describes the distribution of the time between random events, such as phone calls. The general form of the exponential distribution with parameter λ is

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\lambda} e^{-\frac{x}{\lambda}} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

- a** Differentiate $(kx + 1)e^{-kx}$ and hence determine an anti-derivative of kxe^{-kx} .
b Show that the mean of an exponential random variable is λ .
c On the same axes, sketch the graphs of the distribution for $\lambda = \frac{1}{2}$, $\lambda = 1$ and $\lambda = 2$.
d Describe the effect of varying the value of λ on the graph of the distribution.

- 16** A probability density function is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(a^2 - x^2) & -a \leq x \leq a \\ 0 & x > a \text{ or } x < -a \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine k in terms of a .
b Determine the value of a which gives a standard deviation of 2.

- 17** A continuous random variable X has probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(3 - x) & 0 \leq x \leq 3 \\ k(x - 3) & 3 < x \leq 6 \\ 0 & x > 6 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

where k is a constant.

- a** Sketch the graph of f . **b** Hence, or otherwise, determine the value of k .
c Verify that the mean of X is 3. **d** Determine $\text{Var}(X)$.

13D Properties of mean and variance*

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to determine the probability density function of a linear function of a continuous random variable.
- ▶ To be able to determine the mean and variance of a linear function of a continuous random variable.

It has already been stated that the expected value of a function of X is not necessarily equal to that function of the expected value of X . That is, in general,

$$E[g(X)] \neq g[E(X)]$$

An exception is the case where the function g is linear: the mean of a linear function of X is equal to the linear function of the mean of X .

The mean and variance of $aX + b$

For any continuous random variable X ,

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b$$

Proof The validity of this statement can be readily demonstrated:

$$\begin{aligned} E(aX + b) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (ax + b)f(x) dx \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} axf(x) dx + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} bf(x) dx \\ &= a \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx + b \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx \\ &= aE(X) + b \end{aligned} \quad \left(\text{since } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1 \right)$$

We can also obtain a formula for the variance of a linear function of X .

For any continuous random variable X ,

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$$

Proof Consider the variance of a linear function of X :

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = E[(aX + b)^2] - [E(aX + b)]^2$$

$$\text{Now } [E(aX + b)]^2 = [aE(X) + b]^2 = (a\mu + b)^2 = a^2\mu^2 + 2ab\mu + b^2$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } E[(aX + b)^2] &= E(a^2X^2 + 2abX + b^2) \\ &= a^2E(X^2) + 2ab\mu + b^2 \end{aligned}$$

* This section is not part of the syllabus for Mathematical Methods Units 3 & 4, but is included for completeness as several important concepts in the following two chapters build on this section.

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Thus } \text{Var}(aX + b) &= a^2 E(X^2) + 2ab\mu + b^2 - a^2\mu^2 - 2ab\mu - b^2 \\
&= a^2 E(X^2) - a^2\mu^2 \\
&= a^2 \text{Var}(X)
\end{aligned}$$

Although initially the absence of b in the variance may seem surprising, on reflection it makes sense that adding a constant merely translates the probability density function, and has no effect on its spread.

The probability density function of $aX + b$

We can also describe the probability density function of a linear function of X . This idea will underpin much of our discussion of the normal distribution, which is an important continuous probability distribution that is studied in depth in the next chapter.

The random variable $X + b$

If the probability density function of X has rule $f(x)$, then the probability density function of $X + b$ is obtained by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + b, y)$ and so has rule $f(x - b)$.

The random variable aX

Similarly, multiplying by a is similar to a dilation of factor a from the y -axis. However, there has to be an adjustment to determine the rule for the probability density function of aX , as the transformation must be area-preserving. The rule is $\frac{1}{a}f\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$.

The random variable $aX + b$

Thus, if the probability density function of X has rule $f(x)$, then the probability density function of $aX + b$ has rule $\frac{1}{a}f\left(\frac{x - b}{a}\right)$. The transformation is described by

$$(x, y) \rightarrow \left(ax + b, \frac{y}{a}\right)$$

In the case that a and b are positive, this is a dilation of factor a from the y -axis and factor $\frac{1}{a}$ from the x -axis, followed by a translation of b units in the positive direction of the x -axis.

Example 12

Suppose that X is a continuous random variable with mean $\mu = 10$ and variance $\sigma^2 = 2$.

- a** Determine $E(2X + 1)$.
- b** Determine $\text{Var}(1 - 3X)$.
- c** If X has probability density function f , describe the rule of a probability density function g for $2X + 1$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{a} \quad E(2X + 1) &= 2E(X) + 1 \\ &= 2 \times 10 + 1 \\ &= 21\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{b} \quad \text{Var}(1 - 3X) &= (-3)^2 \text{Var}(X) \\ &= 9 \times 2 \\ &= 18\end{aligned}$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad \text{The rule is } g(x) = \frac{1}{a}f\left(\frac{x-b}{a}\right) \text{ where } a = 2 \text{ and } b = 1. \text{ Therefore } g(x) = \frac{1}{2}f\left(\frac{x-1}{2}\right).$$

Summary 13D

- If the probability density function of X has rule $f(x)$, then the probability density function of $aX + b$ has rule $\frac{1}{a}f\left(\frac{x-b}{a}\right)$.
- If X is a continuous random variable, then the mean and variance $aX + b$ are given by:

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b \qquad \text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$$

Exercise 13D

This exercise is not part of the syllabus, but is included to provide a greater understanding of concepts introduced later in this chapter.

- 1** X is a continuous random variable with a mean of 6 and a variance of 9. Determine the mean and variance of:
 - a** $2X + 3$
 - b** $4 - 2X$
- 2** X is a continuous random variable with a mean of 3 and a standard deviation of 2. Determine the mean and standard deviation of:
 - a** $\frac{X}{2} + 4$
 - b** $\frac{1 - 2X}{2}$
- 3** X is a continuous random variable with a mean of 2.4 and a variance of 1.96. Determine the mean and standard deviation of:
 - a** $0.5X + 1.8$
 - b** $1.7 - 2.2X$
- 4** The amount of flour used each day in a bakery is a continuous random variable X with a mean of 4 tonnes. The cost of the flour is $C = 300X + 100$. Determine $E(C)$.
- 5** For certain glass ornaments, the proportion of impurities per ornament, X , is a random variable with a density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{3x^2}{2} + x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

The value of each ornament (in dollars) is $V = 100 - 1.5X$.

Determine the mean and standard deviation of V .

Example 12

6 Let X be a random variable with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{3x^2}{2} & \text{if } -1 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < -1 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a $E(3X)$ and $\text{Var}(3X)$
- b $E(3 - X)$ and $\text{Var}(3 - X)$
- c $E(3X + 1)$ and $\text{Var}(3X + 1)$
- d the rule of a probability density function for $3X$
- e the rule of a probability density function for $3X + 1$.

7 Let X be a continuous random variable with probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \left(2x + \frac{3}{2} \right) & \text{if } 0 < x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a i Determine $E(X)$.
ii Hence determine $E(V)$, where $V = 2X + 3$.
- b i Determine $E\left(\frac{1}{X}\right)$ and $\text{Var}\left(\frac{1}{X}\right)$.
ii Hence determine $\text{Var}(Y)$, where $Y = \frac{2}{X} + 3$.

13E Cumulative distribution functions

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to understand the concept of a cumulative distribution function.
- ▶ To be able to use a cumulative distribution function to determine probabilities.
- ▶ To be able to use a cumulative distribution function to determine percentiles.

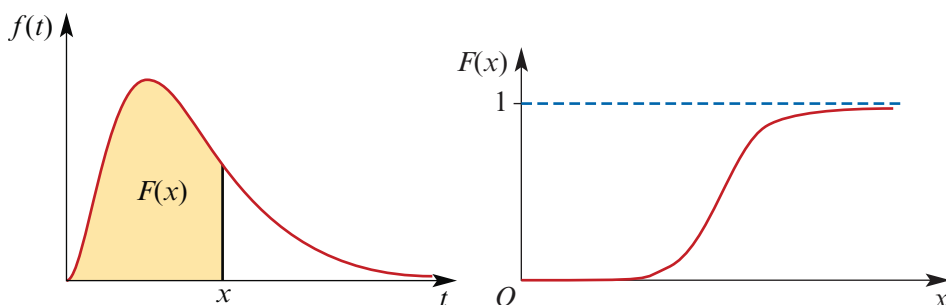
Another function of importance in describing a continuous random variable is the **cumulative distribution function** or **CDF**. For a continuous random variable X , with probability density function f defined on the interval $[c, d]$, the cumulative distribution function F is given by

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= P(X \leq x) \\ &= \int_c^x f(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

where t is the variable of integration. The cumulative distribution function at a particular value x gives the probability that the random variable X takes a value less than or equal to x .

The following diagram shows the relationship between the probability density function f and the cumulative distribution function F .

The function F describes the area under the graph of the probability density function between the lower bound of the domain of f and x . (In the diagram, the lower bound is 0.)



For every continuous random variable X , the cumulative distribution function F is continuous.

Using the general version of the fundamental theorem of calculus, it can be shown that the derivative of the cumulative distribution function is the density function. More precisely, we have $F'(x) = f(x)$, for each value of x at which f is continuous.

There are three important properties of a cumulative distribution function.

For a continuous random variable X with range $[c, d]$:

- 1 The probability that X takes a value less than or equal to c is 0. That is, $F(c) = 0$.
- 2 The probability that X takes a value less than or equal to d is 1. That is, $F(d) = 1$.
- 3 If x_1 and x_2 are values of X with $x_1 \leq x_2$, then $P(X \leq x_1) \leq P(X \leq x_2)$. That is,

$$x_1 \leq x_2 \quad \text{implies} \quad F(x_1) \leq F(x_2)$$

The function F is a **non-decreasing** function.

For a probability density function f defined on $\mathbb{R}$, the cumulative distribution is given by

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= P(X \leq x) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

In this case, we have $F(x) \rightarrow 0$ as $x \rightarrow -\infty$, and $F(x) \rightarrow 1$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$.

The importance of the cumulative distribution function is that probabilities for various intervals can be computed directly from $F(x)$.



Example 13

A random variable X has the cumulative distribution function with rule

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 0 \\ x^2 & 0 < x < 1 \\ 1 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

Use the cumulative distribution function to determine:

a $P(X \leq 0.4)$

b $P(X > 0.3)$

c $P(0.3 < X \leq 0.4)$.

Solution

$$\mathbf{a} \quad P(X \leq 0.4) = F(0.4)$$

$$= 0.4^2 = 0.16$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad P(X > 0.3) = 1 - P(X \leq 0.3)$$

$$= 1 - F(0.3)$$

$$= 1 - 0.3^2 = 0.91$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad P(0.3 < X \leq 0.4) = P(X \leq 0.4) - P(X \leq 0.3)$$

$$= F(0.4) - F(0.3)$$

$$= 0.4^2 - 0.3^2 = 0.16 - 0.09 = 0.07$$

The cumulative density function can also be used to determine the values of continuous probability distribution associated with a given probability. This is equivalent to finding percentiles of the distribution.

**Example 14**

A random variable X has the cumulative distribution function with rule

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 0 \\ x^3 & 0 < x < 1 \\ 1 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the 90th percentile of X , that is the value of X such that $P(X \leq c) = 0.9$.

Solution

$$F(c) = c^3 = 0.9$$

$$c = (0.9)^{\frac{1}{3}} = 0.9655 \quad \text{rounded to three decimal places}$$

**Example 15**

The time, X seconds, that it takes a student to complete a puzzle is a random variable with density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{5}{x^2} & x \geq 5 \\ 0 & x < 5 \end{cases}$$

Determine $F(x)$, the cumulative distribution function of X .

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} F(x) &= \int_5^x f(t) \, dt \\ &= \int_5^x \frac{5}{t^2} \, dt = \left[\frac{-5}{t} \right]_5^x \\ &= \frac{-5}{x} + 1 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus } F(x) = 1 - \frac{5}{x} \text{ for } x \geq 5.$$

**Example 16**

The time to failure (in hundreds of hours) for a certain electronic component is a random variable X with cumulative distribution function F given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - e^{-x^2} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine the rule for a probability density function f for X .

Solution

To determine $f(x)$, differentiate $F(x)$:

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) = F'(x) &= -e^{-x^2} \cdot (-2x) \\ &= 2xe^{-x^2} \quad (\text{for } x \geq 0) \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2xe^{-x^2} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Summary 13E

- The **cumulative distribution function** of a continuous random variable X is defined by

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x)$$

- For a probability density function f defined on $\mathbb{R}$, we have

$$F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$$

- For each value of x at which f is continuous, we have

$$F'(x) = f(x)$$

Exercise 13E**Example 13**

- 1 A random variable X has the cumulative distribution function with rule

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x \leq 0 \\ x^3 & 0 < x < 1 \\ 1 & x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $P(X \leq 0.5)$ **b** $P(X > 0.2)$ **c** $P(0.2 < X \leq 0.5)$.

- 2 A random variable X has the cumulative distribution function with rule

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{1}{x^2} & x \geq 1 \\ 0 & x < 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $P(X \leq 2)$ **b** $P(X > 3)$ **c** $P(2 < X \leq 3)$.

- 3** A random variable X has the cumulative distribution function with rule

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ 1 - e^{-x^2} & x \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $P(X \geq 1)$ **b** $P(X \leq 2)$ **c** $P(X \geq 1 | X \leq 2)$.

- 4** The continuous random variable X has cumulative distribution function F given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ kx^2 & 0 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 1 & x > 6 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** the value of the constant k . **b** $P\left(\frac{1}{2} \leq X \leq 1\right)$.

Example 14

- 5** The cumulative distribution function of a random variable X is given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{10}{x} & x > 10 \\ 0 & x \leq 10 \end{cases}$$

Use the cumulative distribution function to determine:

- a** $P(X \leq 30)$ **b** the value of X such that $P(X \leq x) = 0.6$
c the 50th percentile of X **d** the 36th percentile of X .

Example 15

- 6** The probability density function for a random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{5} & \text{if } 0 < x < 5 \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \text{ or } x \geq 5 \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine $F(x)$, the cumulative distribution function of X .
b Hence determine:
 i $P(X \leq 3)$ **ii** $P(2 \leq X \leq 3)$.
c Determine the value of X such that $P(X \leq x) = 0.95$.

- 7** A continuous random variable X has probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{x^3}{5} & \text{if } 1 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine $F(x)$, the cumulative distribution function of X .
b Determine m , the median value of X .

Example 16

- 8** The cumulative distribution function of a continuous random variable X is given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ 4x^3 - 3x^4 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the rule for $f(x)$, the probability density function of X .

- 9** A continuous random variable X has cumulative distribution function given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ 1 - (1 - x)^5 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine the rule for $f(x)$, the probability density function of X .

- 10** Let X be a random variable with the cumulative distribution function

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5e^x & x \leq 0 \\ 1 - 0.5e^{-x} & x > 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine the rule for $f(x)$, the probability density function of X .

- 11** The maximum daily temperature, $X^\circ\text{C}$, at a ski resort during winter has the cumulative distribution function

$$F(x) = \frac{1}{1 + e^{-0.5x}} \quad \text{for } x \in \mathbb{R}$$

Given that the probability density function f of X is continuous everywhere, determine the rule for $f(x)$ and sketch the graph of f .

13F The probability density function of the normal distribution

Learning intentions

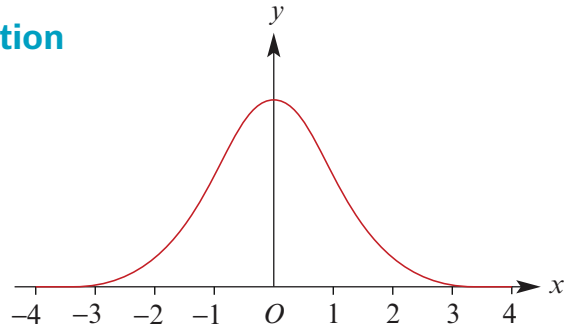
- To be able to recognise the features of the probability density function of the normal distribution.

The standard normal distribution

The simplest form of the normal distribution is a random variable with probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2}$$

The domain of f is $\mathbb{R}$.



Because it is the simplest form of the normal distribution, it is given a special name: the **standard normal distribution**. The graph of the standard normal distribution is as shown.

The graph of the standard normal probability density function f is symmetric about $x = 0$, since $f(-x) = f(x)$. That is, the function f is even.

The line $y = 0$ is an asymptote: as $x \rightarrow \pm\infty$, $y \rightarrow 0$. Almost all of the area under the probability density function lies between $x = -3$ and $x = 3$.

The mean and standard deviation of the standard normal distribution

It can be seen from the graph that the mean and median of this distribution are the same, and are equal to 0. While the probability density function for the standard normal distribution cannot be integrated exactly, the value of the mean can be verified by observing the symmetry of the two integrals formed below. One is just the negative of the other.

$$\begin{aligned} E(X) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xe^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \left(\int_0^{\infty} xe^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2} dx + \int_{-\infty}^0 xe^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2} dx \right) \end{aligned}$$

Thus the mean, $E(X)$, of the standard normal distribution is 0.

What can be said about the standard deviation of this distribution? It can be shown that

$$E(X^2) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 f(x) dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^2 e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2} dx = 1$$

Therefore

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2 = 1 - 0 = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)} = 1$$

Standard normal distribution

A random variable with the standard normal distribution has probability density function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2}$$

The standard normal distribution has mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$.

We will denote the random variable of the standard normal distribution by Z .

The general normal distribution

The normal distribution does not apply just to the special circumstances where the mean is 0 and the standard deviation is 1.

Transformations of the standard normal distribution

The graph of the probability density function for a normal distribution with mean μ and standard deviation σ may be obtained from the graph of the probability density function for the standard normal distribution by the transformation with rule:

$$(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\sigma x + \mu, \frac{y}{\sigma} \right)$$

This is a dilation of factor σ from the y -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\sigma}$ from the x -axis, followed by a translation of μ units in the positive direction of the x -axis, for $\mu > 0$.

Conversely, the transformation which maps the graph of a normal distribution with mean μ and standard deviation σ to the graph of the standard normal distribution is given by

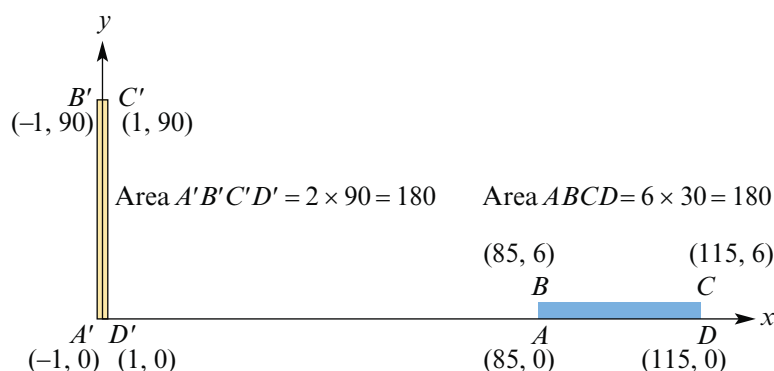
$$(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}, \sigma y \right)$$

This is a translation of μ units in the negative direction of the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\sigma}$ from the y -axis and a dilation of factor σ from the x -axis.

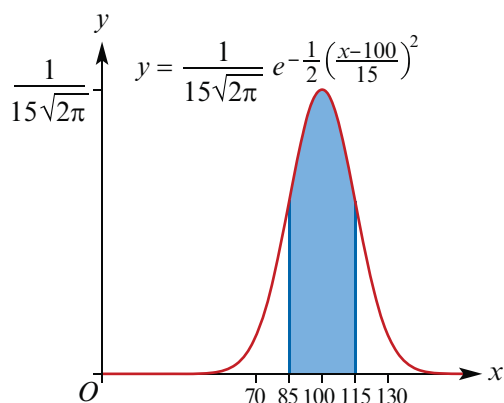
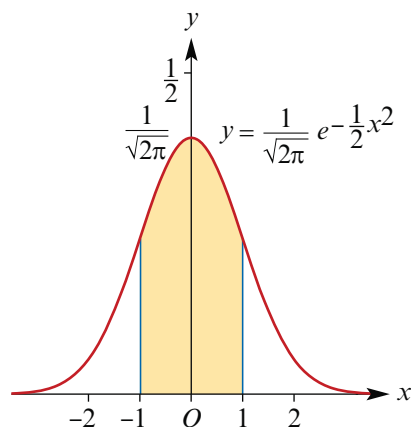
For example, if $\mu = 100$ and $\sigma = 15$, then this transformation is

$$(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x - 100}{15}, 15y \right)$$

This transformation is area-preserving. In the following diagram, the rectangle $ABCD$ is mapped to $A'B'C'D'$. Both rectangles have an area of 180 square units.



This property enables the probabilities of any normal distribution to be determined from the probabilities of the standard normal distribution. The shaded regions are of equal area.



This leads to the general rule for the family of normal probability distributions.

The rule for the general normal distribution

If X is a **normally distributed random variable** with mean μ and standard deviation σ , then the probability density function of X is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$$

and

$$P(X \leq a) = P\left(Z \leq \frac{a - \mu}{\sigma}\right)$$

where Z is the random variable of the standard normal distribution.

The general form of the normal density function involves two parameters, μ and σ , which are the mean (μ) and the standard deviation (σ) of that particular distribution.

When a random variable has a distribution described by a normal density function, the random variable is said to have a **normal distribution**.

As with all probability density functions, the normal density function has the fundamental properties that:

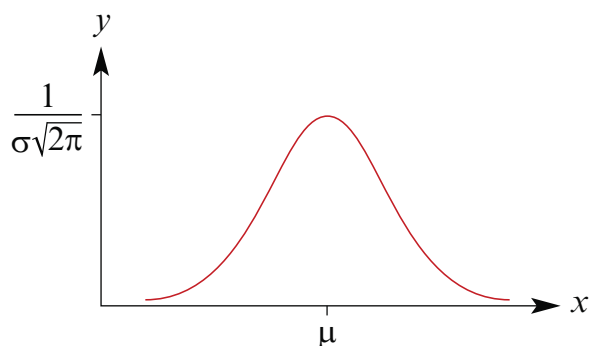
- probability corresponds to an area under the curve
- the total area under the curve is 1.

However, it has some additional special properties.

The graph of a normal density function is symmetric and bell-shaped:

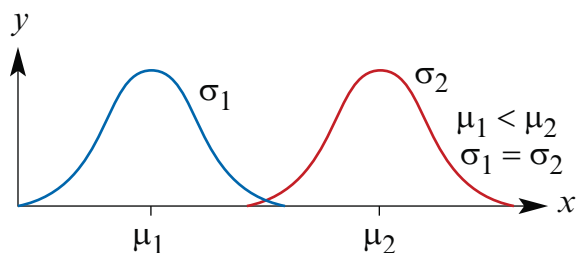
- its **centre** is determined by the **mean** of the distribution
- its **width** is determined by the **standard deviation** of the distribution.

The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown below. The graph is symmetric about the line $x = \mu$, and has a maximum value of $\frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}}$, which occurs when $x = \mu$.

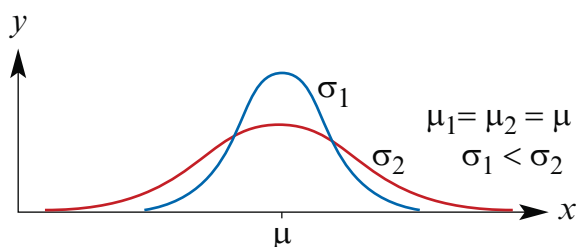


Thus the *location* of the curve is determined by the value of μ , and the *steepness* of the curve by the value of σ .

The following graph shows two normal distributions which differ in mean (the value of μ), but have the same standard deviation (σ):



The next graph shows two normal distributions which have the same mean (the value of μ), but different standard deviation (σ):



Irrespective of the values of the mean and standard deviation of a particular normal density function, the area under the curve within a given number of standard deviations from the mean is always the same.



Example 17

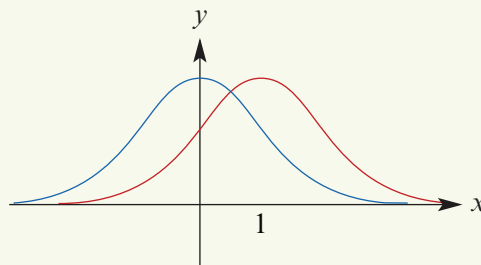
On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of the probability density functions of the standard normal distribution and the normal distribution with:

- a** mean 1 and standard deviation 1
- b** mean 1 and standard deviation 2.

(A calculator can be used to help.)

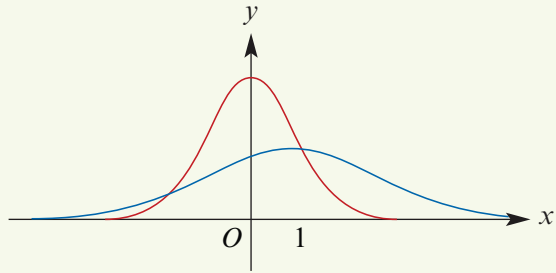
Solution

- a** The graph has been translated 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis.



The rules of the two density functions are $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2}$ and $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}(x-1)^2}$.

- b** The graph has been dilated from the y -axis by factor 2 and from the x -axis by factor $\frac{1}{2}$, and then translated 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis.



The rules of the two density functions are $y = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}x^2}$ and $y = \frac{1}{2\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-1}{2}\right)^2}$.

Summary 13F

- A special continuous random variable X , called a **normal random variable**, has a graph which is a symmetric, bell-shaped curve; its centre is determined by the mean, μ , and its width by the standard deviation, σ .
- A **normal random variable**, has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$$

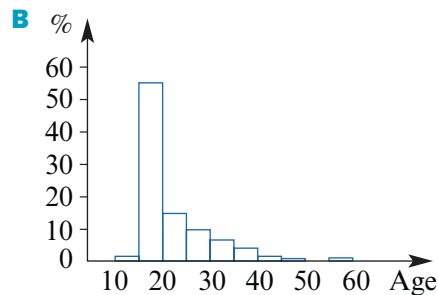
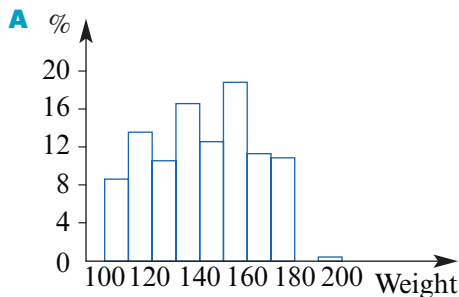
where μ and σ are the mean and standard deviation of X .

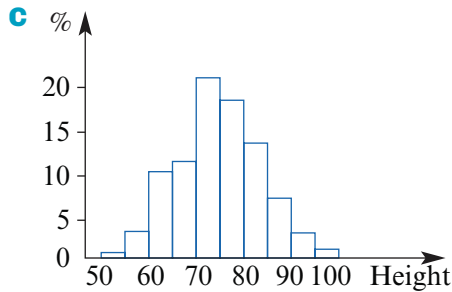
- In the special case that $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$, this probability density function defines the **standard normal distribution**. A random variable with this distribution is usually denoted by Z .

Exercise 13F

Example 17

- 1 The random variables X_1 and X_2 are normally distributed, with means μ_1 and μ_2 and standard deviations σ_1 and σ_2 , respectively. If $\mu_1 < \mu_2$ and $\sigma_1 < \sigma_2$, sketch both distributions on the same diagram.
- 2 Which of the following data distributions are approximately normally distributed?





- 3** The probability density function of a normal random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{10\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-3}{10}\right)^2}$$

- a** Write down the mean and the standard deviation of X .
b Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 4** The probability density function of a normal random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}(x+3)^2}$$

- a** Write down the mean and the standard deviation of X .
b Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 5** The probability density function of a normal random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{18\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)^2}$$

- a** Write down the mean and the standard deviation of X .
b Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.

- 6** Describe the sequence of transformations which takes the graph of the probability density function of the standard normal distribution to the graph of the probability density function of the normal distribution with:

- a** $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = 2$ **b** $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = \frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\mu = -3$ and $\sigma = 2$

- 7** Describe the sequence of transformations which takes the graph of the probability density function of the normal distribution with the given mean and standard deviation to the graph of the probability density function of the standard normal distribution:

- a** $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = 2$ **b** $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = \frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\mu = -3$ and $\sigma = 2$

13G Standardisation

Learning intentions

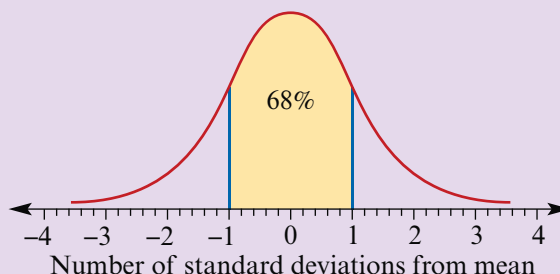
- To be able to understand standardised normal variables (z-values, z-scores) and use these to compare samples.

For a set of data values that are normally distributed, approximately 68% of the values will lie within one standard deviation of the mean, approximately 95% of the values will lie within two standard deviations of the mean, and almost all (99.7%) within three standard deviations. This gives rise to what is known as the **68–95–99.7% rule**.

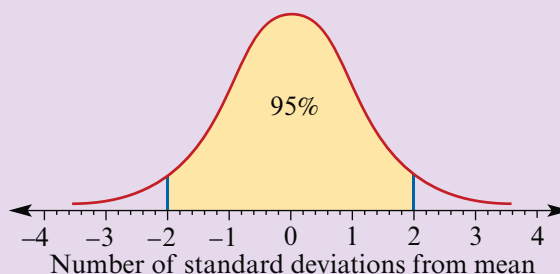
The 68–95–99.7% rule

For a normally distributed random variable, approximately:

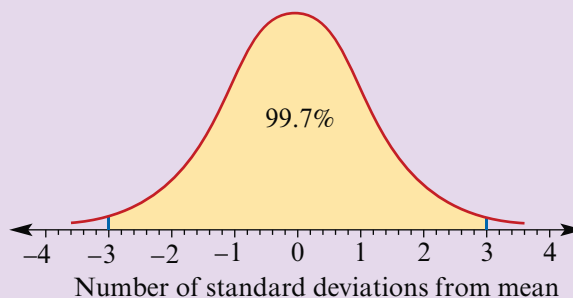
- 68% of the distribution lies within one standard deviation of the mean



- 95% of the distribution lies within two standard deviations of the mean



- 99.7% of the distribution lies within three standard deviations of the mean.



If we know that a random variable is approximately normally distributed, and we know its mean and standard deviation, then we can use the 68–95–99.7% rule to quickly make some important statements about the way in which the data values are distributed.

Example 18

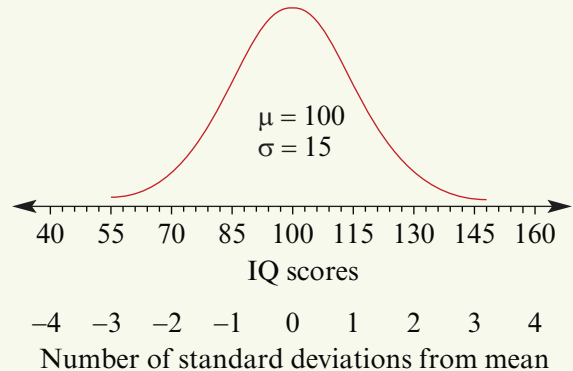
Experience has shown that the scores obtained on a commonly used IQ test can be assumed to be normally distributed with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 15$.

Approximately what percentage of the distribution lies within one, two or three standard deviations of the mean?

Solution

Since the scores are normally distributed with $\mu = 100$ and $\sigma = 15$, the 68–95–99.7% rule means that approximately:

- 68% of the scores will lie between 85 and 115
- 95% of the scores will lie between 70 and 130
- 99.7% of the scores will lie between 55 and 145.



Note: In this example, we are using a continuous distribution to model a discrete situation.

Statements can also be made about the percentage of scores that lie in the tails of the distribution, by using the symmetry of the distribution and noting that the total area under the curve is 100%.

Example 19

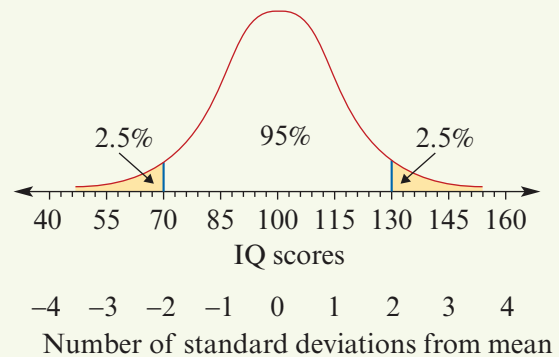
From Example 18, we know that 95% of the scores in the IQ distribution lie between 70 and 130 (that is, within two standard deviations of the mean). What percentage of the scores are *more* than two standard deviations above or below the mean (in this instance, less than 70 or greater than 130)?

Solution

If we focus our attention on the tails of the distribution, we see that 5% of the IQ scores lie outside this region.

Using the symmetry of the distribution, we can say that 2.5% of the scores are below 70, and 2.5% are above 130.

That is, if you obtained a score greater than 130 on this test, you would be in the top 2.5% of the group.



Standardised values

Clearly, the standard deviation is a natural measuring stick for normally distributed data. For example, a person who obtained a score of 112 on an IQ test with a mean of $\mu = 100$ and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 15$ is less than one standard deviation from the mean. Their score is typical of the group as a whole, as it lies well within the middle 68% of scores. In contrast, a person who scored 133 has done exceptionally well; their score is more than two standard deviations from the mean and this puts them in the top 2.5%.

Because of the additional insight provided, it is usual to convert normally distributed data to a new set of units which shows the number of standard deviations each data value lies from the mean of the distribution. These new values are called **standardised values** or **z-values**. To standardise a data value x , we first subtract the mean μ of the normal random variable from the value and then divide the result by the standard deviation σ . That is,

$$\text{standardised value} = \frac{\text{data value} - \text{mean of the normal curve}}{\text{standard deviation of the normal curve}}$$

or symbolically,

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$$

Standardised values can be positive or negative:

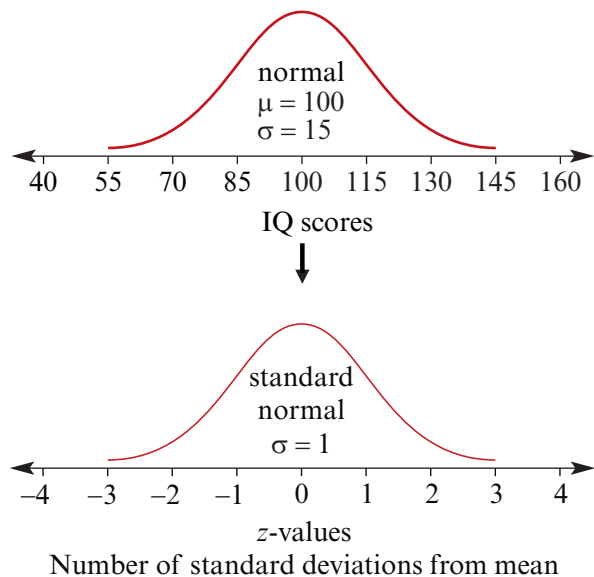
- A **positive z-value** indicates that the data value it represents lies **above** the mean.
- A **negative z-value** indicates that the data value lies **below** the mean.

For example, an IQ score of 90 lies *below* the mean and has a standardised value of

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma} = \frac{90 - 100}{15} = \frac{-10}{15} \approx -0.67$$

There are as many different normal curves as there are values of μ and σ . But if the measurement scale is changed to 'standard deviations from the mean' or z -values, all normal curves reduce to the same normal curve with mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$.

The figures on the right show how standardising IQ scores transforms a normal distribution with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 15$ into the standard normal distribution with mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$.



Summary 13G

- Knowing the mean and the standard deviation of a normal distribution allows us to make predictions about the percentage of values that lie within that interval.
- The 68-95-99.7% rules tells us that approximately:
 - 68% of the distribution lies within one standard deviation of the mean
 - 95% of the distribution lies within two standard deviations of the mean
 - 99.7% of the distribution lies within three standard deviations of the mean
- If X is a normally distributed random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ we can determine the number of standard deviations a particular value x is from the mean using the rule:

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$$

- Applying this rule is known as **standardisation**, and the result value is called a **z-value** or **z-score**.

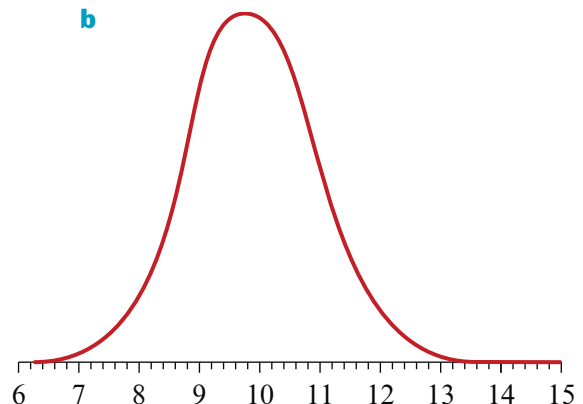
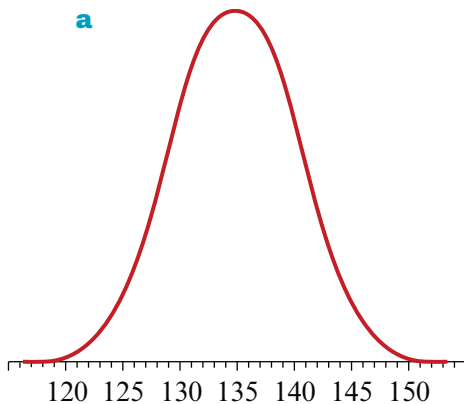
Exercise 13G

Example 18

- 1 The scores obtained on an IQ test can be assumed to be normally distributed with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 15$. Approximately what percentage of scores lie:

a above 115 c above 130	b below 85 d below 70?

- 2 State the values of the mean and standard deviation of the normal distributions shown:



Example 19

- 3 The heights of young women are normally distributed with mean $\mu = 160$ cm and standard deviation $\sigma = 8$ cm. Approximately what percentage of the women would you expect to have heights:

a between 152 cm and 168 cm b greater than 168 cm c less than 136 cm?	

- 4 Fill in the blanks in the following paragraph.

The age at marriage of males in the US in the 1980s was approximately normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 27.3$ years and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 3.1$ years. From this data, we can conclude that in the 1980s approximately 95% of males married between the ages of and .

- 5 Fill in the blanks in the following statement of the 68–95–99.7% rule.

For any normal distribution, approximately:

- 68% of the values lie within standard deviation of the mean
- % of the values lie within two standard deviations of the mean
- % of the values lie within standard deviations of the mean.

- 6 Suppose that in Australian adults, nostril width is approximately normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 2.3$ cm and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 0.3$ cm. Approximately what percentage of people have nostril widths less than 1.7 cm?

- 7 The distribution of IQ scores for a certain population is approximately normal with mean $\mu = 85$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 15$.

- a Determine the percentage of the population with an IQ of 100 or higher.
- b Determine the percentage of the population with an IQ of 70 or less.

- 8 The distribution of the heights of navy officers was found to be normal with a mean of $\mu = 175$ cm and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 5$ cm. Determine:

- a the percentage of navy officers with heights between 170 cm and 180 cm
- b the percentage of navy officers with heights greater than 180 cm
- c the approximate percentage of navy officers with heights greater than 185 cm.

- 9 The distribution of blood pressures (systolic) among women of similar ages is normal with a mean of 120 (mm of mercury) and a standard deviation of 10 (mm of mercury). Determine the percentage of women with a systolic blood pressure:

- a between 100 and 140
- b greater than 130
- c greater than 120
- d between 90 and 150.

- 10 The heights of women are normally distributed with mean $\mu = 160$ cm and standard deviation $\sigma = 8$ cm. Determine the standardised value for the height of a woman who is:

- a 160 cm tall
- b 150 cm tall
- c 172 cm tall.

- 11 The length of pregnancy for a human is approximately normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 270$ days and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 10$ days. Determine how many standard deviations away from the mean is a pregnancy of length:

- a 256 days
- b 281 days
- c 305 days?

- 12** Michael scores 85 on the mathematics section of a scholastic aptitude test, the results of which are known to be normally distributed with a mean of 78 and a standard deviation of 5. Cheryl sits for a different mathematics ability test and scores 27. The scores from this test are normally distributed with a mean of 18 and a standard deviation of 6. Assuming that both tests measure the same kind of ability, determine who has the better score.
- 13** The following table gives a student's results in Biology and History. For each subject, the table gives the student's mark (x) and also the mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ) for the class.

	Mark (x)	Mean (μ)	Standard deviation (σ)	Standardised mark (z)
Biology	77	68.5	4.9	
History	79	75.3	4.1	

Complete the table by calculating the student's standardised mark for each subject, and use this to determine in which subject the student did best *relative* to her peers.

- 14** Three students took different tests in French, English and Mathematics:

Student	Subject	Mark (x)	Mean (μ)	Standard deviation (σ)	Standardised mark (z)
Mary	French	19	15	4	
	English	42	35	8	
	Mathematics	20	20	5	
Steve	French	21	23	4	
	English	39	42	3	
	Mathematics	23	18	4	
Sue	French	15	15	5	
	English	42	35	10	
	Mathematics	19	20	5	

- a** Determine the standardised mark for each student on each test.
- b** Who is the best student in:
- i** French **ii** English **iii** Mathematics?
- c** Who is the best student overall? Give reasons for your answer.

13H Determining normal probabilities

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to calculate probabilities associated with a normal distribution using technology.
- ▶ To be able to calculate percentiles associated with a normal distribution using technology.

A graphics calculator can be used to determine areas under normal curves, allowing us to determine probabilities for ranges of values other than one, two or three standard deviations from the mean. The following example is for the standard normal distribution, but the same procedures can be used for any normal distribution by entering the appropriate values for μ and σ .



Example 20

Suppose that Z is a standard normal random variable (that is, it has mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$). Determine:

- a** $P(-1 < Z < 2.5)$ **b** $P(Z > 1)$

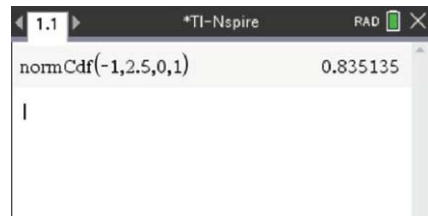
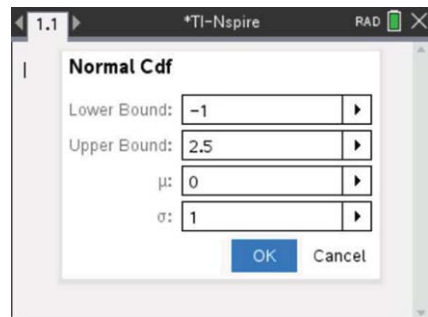


Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

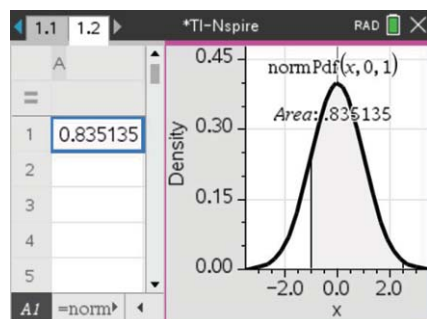
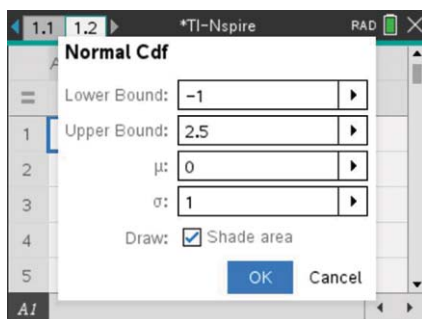
- a** Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Normal Cdf** and complete as shown.
(Use **tab** or **▼** to move between cells.)

The answer is:

$$P(-1 < Z < 2.5) = 0.8351$$



Note: Alternatively, you can solve this problem in a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page and plot the graph. Use **menu** > **Statistics** > **Distributions** > **Normal Cdf** and complete as shown below.

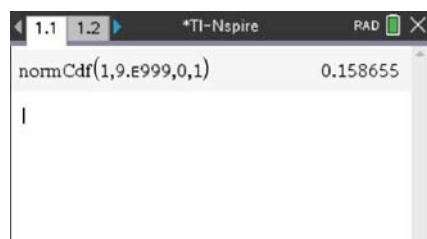
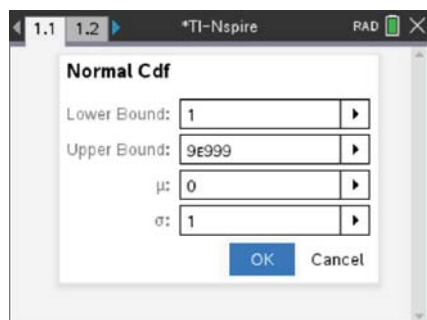


b Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Normal Cdf** and complete as shown.

Note: By default, the calculator uses $-9\text{E}999$ for $-\infty$ and $9\text{E}999$ for ∞ . The symbol E can be accessed from the Symbols palette (**ctrl** **⌨**). For practical purposes, it suffices to use -10^9 for $-\infty$ and 10^9 for ∞ .

The answer is:

$$P(Z > 1) = 0.1587$$



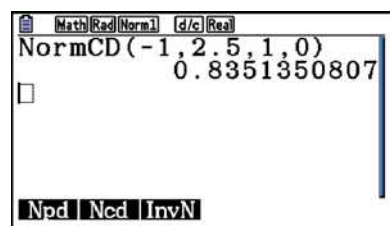
Note: You can enter the commands and parameters directly if preferred. The commands are not case sensitive.

Using the Casio

Method 1: Using Run-Matrix mode

To determine $P(-1 < Z < 2.5)$:

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Statistics** menu (**OPTN** **F5**).
- For the normal cumulative distribution, select **Distributions** (**F3**), **Normal** (**F1**), **Ncd** (**F2**).
- Complete by entering: $-1, 2.5, 1, 0$
- Press (**EXE**).



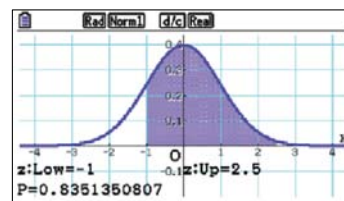
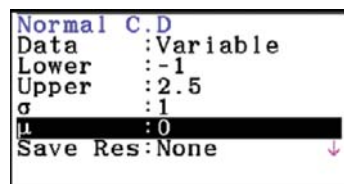
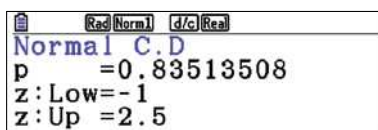
Note: The syntax for the normal cumulative distribution is:

`NormCD(lower bound, upper bound, standard deviation, mean)`

Method 2: Using Statistics mode

a To determine $P(-1 < Z < 2.5)$:

- Press **(MENU)** **(2)** to select **Statistics** mode.
- For the normal cumulative distribution, select **Distributions** **(F5)**, **Normal** **(F1)**, **Ncd** **(F2)**.
- Enter the information as shown.
- Scroll down and select **Calc** or **Draw**.
- Hence $P(-1 < Z < 2.5) = 0.8351$.

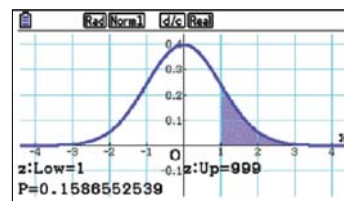
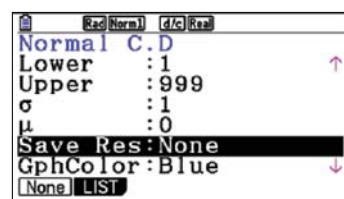
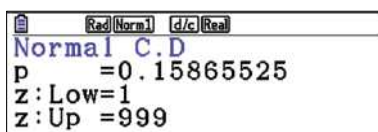


b To determine $P(Z > 1)$:

- In **Statistics** mode, select the normal cumulative distribution again.
- Enter the information as shown.

Note: Use a large value for the upper bound.

- Scroll down and select **Calc** or **Draw**.
- Hence $P(Z > 1) = 0.1587$.



The calculator can also be used to determine **percentiles** of any normal distribution.



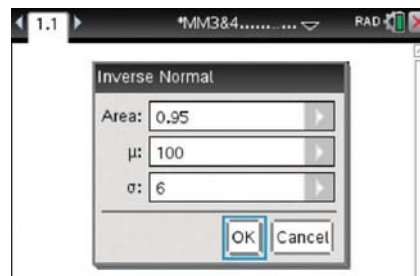
Example 21

Suppose X is normally distributed with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 6$. Determine k such that $P(X \leq k) = 0.95$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

Use **(menu)** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Inverse Normal** and complete as shown.



The value of k is 109.869.

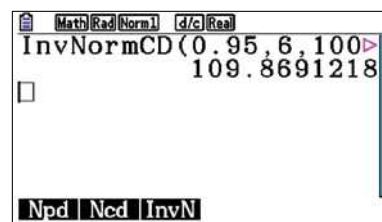


Note: You can enter the command and parameters directly if preferred. The command is not case sensitive.

Using the Casio

Method 1: Using Run-Matrix mode

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to **Statistics** (OPTN) (F5).
- For the inverse normal distribution, select **Distributions** (F3), **Normal** (F1), **InvN** (F3).
- Complete by entering: 0.95, 6, 100)
- Press (EXE).

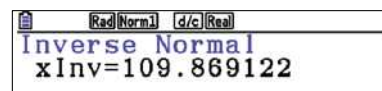
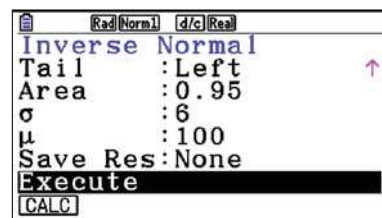


Note: The syntax for the inverse normal distribution is:

$\text{InvNormCD}(\text{area}, \text{standard deviation}, \text{mean})$

Method 2: Using Statistics mode

- In **Statistics** mode, select the inverse normal distribution by going to **Distributions** (F5), **Normal** (F1), **InvN** (F3).
- Enter the information as shown.
- Scroll down and select **Calc**.
- Hence $k = 109.869$.



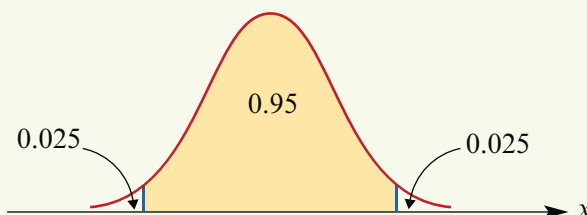
Example 22

Suppose X is normally distributed with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 6$.

Determine values of c_1 and c_2 (symmetric about the mean) such that $P(c_1 < X < c_2) = 0.95$.

Solution

Examining the normal curve, we see that there are (infinitely) many intervals which enclose an area of 0.95. By convention, we choose the interval which leaves equal areas in each tail.



To determine c_1 using the inverse-normal facility of your calculator, enter 0.025 as the area. To determine c_2 , enter 0.975.

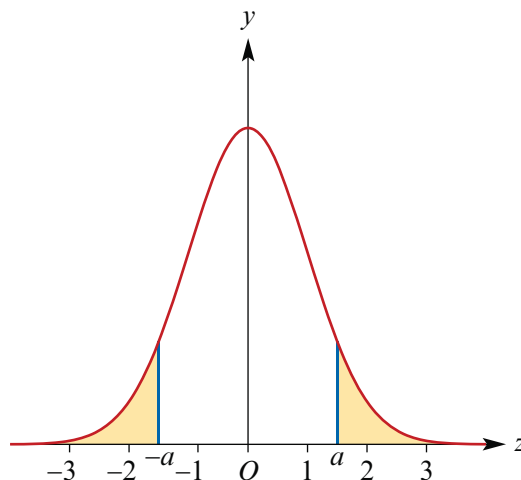
This will give the answer $c_1 = 88.240$ and $c_2 = 111.760$.

Symmetry properties

Probabilities associated with a normal distribution can often be determined by using its symmetry properties.

Here we work with the standard normal distribution, as it is easiest to use the symmetry properties in this situation:

- $P(Z > a) = 1 - P(Z \leq a)$
- $P(Z < -a) = P(Z > a)$
- $P(-a < Z < a) = 1 - 2P(Z \geq a)$
 $= 1 - 2P(Z \leq -a)$



Summary 13H

- A calculator can be used to calculate probabilities associated with a normal distribution.
- A calculator can be used to calculate percentiles associated with a normal distribution.

Exercise 13H

Example 20

- 1 Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable (that is, it has mean $\mu = 0$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 1$). Calculate the following probabilities, drawing an appropriate diagram in each case.

a $P(Z < 2)$	b $P(Z < 2.5)$	c $P(Z \leq 2.5)$	d $P(Z < 2.53)$
e $P(Z \geq 2)$	f $P(Z > 1.5)$	g $P(Z \geq 0.34)$	h $P(Z > 1.01)$
- 2 Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Calculate the following probabilities, drawing an appropriate diagram in each case.

a $P(Z > -2)$	b $P(Z > -0.5)$	c $P(Z > -2.5)$	d $P(Z \geq -1.283)$
e $P(Z < -2)$	f $P(Z < -2.33)$	g $P(Z \leq -1.8)$	h $P(Z \leq -0.95)$
- 3 Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Calculate the following probabilities, drawing an appropriate diagram in each case.

a $P(-1 < Z < 1)$	b $P(-2 < Z < 2)$	c $P(-3 < Z < 3)$

How do these results compare with the 68–95–99.7% rule discussed in Section 13G?
- 4 Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Calculate the following probabilities, drawing an appropriate diagram in each case.

a $P(2 < Z < 3)$	b $P(-1.5 < Z < 2.5)$
c $P(-2 < Z < -1.5)$	d $P(-1.4 < Z < -0.8)$

Example 21

- 5** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \leq c) = 0.9$.
- 6** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \leq c) = 0.75$.
- 7** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \leq c) = 0.975$.
- 8** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \geq c) = 0.95$.
- 9** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \geq c) = 0.8$.
- 10** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \leq c) = 0.10$.
- 11** Suppose Z is a standard normal random variable. Draw an appropriate diagram and then determine the value c such that $P(Z \leq c) = 0.025$.
- 12** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 6$. Determine:
a $P(X < 110)$ **b** $P(X < 105)$ **c** $P(X > 110)$ **d** $P(105 < X < 110)$
- 13** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 40$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 5$. Determine:
a $P(X < 48)$ **b** $P(X < 36)$ **c** $P(X > 32)$ **d** $P(32 < X < 36)$
- 14** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 6$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 2$.
a Determine c such that $P(X < c) = 0.95$.
b Determine k such that $P(X < k) = 0.90$.
- 15** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 10$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 3$.
a Determine c such that $P(X < c) = 0.50$.
b Determine k such that $P(X < k) = 0.975$.

Example 22

- 16** The 68–95–99.7% rule tells us approximately the percentage of a normal distribution which lies within one, two or three standard deviations of the mean. If Z is the standard normal random variable determine, correct to three decimal places.
a a such that $P(-a < Z < a) = 0.68$
b b such that $P(-b < Z < b) = 0.95$
c c such that $P(-c < Z < c) = 0.997$

- 17** Given that X is a normally distributed random variable with a mean of 22 and a standard deviation of 7, determine:

- a** $P(X < 26)$ **b** $P(25 < X < 27)$
c $P(X < 26 | 25 < X < 27)$ **d** c such that $P(X < c) = 0.95$
e k such that $P(X > k) = 0.9$ **f** c_1 and c_2 such that $P(c_1 < X < c_2) = 0.98$

- 18** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 10$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 0.5$. Determine:

- a** $P(X < 11)$ **b** $P(X < 11 | X < 13)$
c c such that $P(X < c) = 0.95$ **d** k such that $P(X < k) = 0.2$
e c_1 and c_2 such that $P(c_1 < X < c_2) = 0.85$

13I Solving problems using the normal distribution

Learning intentions

- To be able to model and solve problems that involve normal distributions.

The normal distribution can be used to solve many practical problems.



Example 23

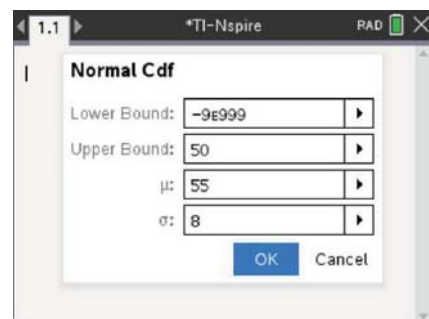
The time taken to complete a logical reasoning task is normally distributed with a mean of 55 seconds and a standard deviation of 8 seconds.

- a** Determine the probability, correct to four decimal places, that a randomly chosen person will take less than 50 seconds to complete the task.
b Determine the probability, correct to four decimal places, that a randomly chosen person will take less than 50 seconds to complete the task, if it is known that this person took less than 60 seconds to complete the task.



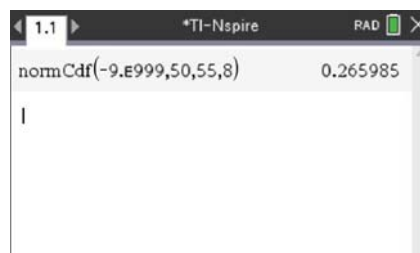
Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- a** Use **menu** > **Probability** > **Distributions** > **Normal Cdf** and complete as shown.

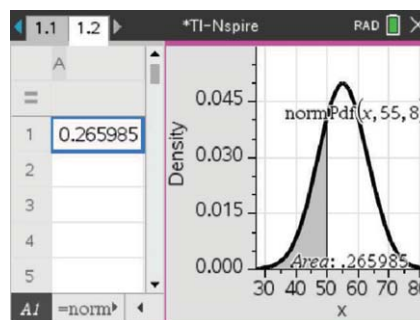
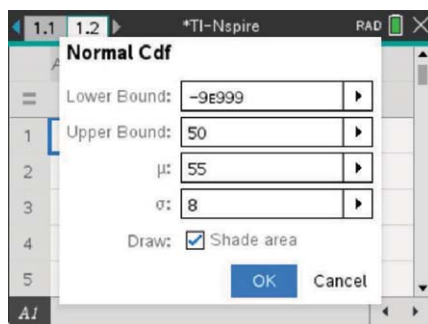


The answer is:

$$P(X < 50) = 0.2660$$



Note: Alternatively, you can solve this problem in a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page and plot the graph. Use **menu** > **Statistics** > **Distributions** > **Normal Cdf** and complete as shown below.

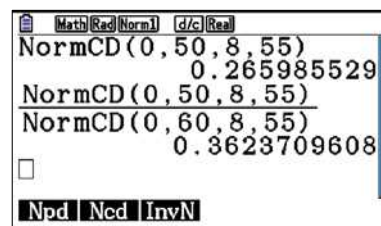


$$\begin{aligned} \mathbf{b} \quad P(X < 50 | X < 60) &= \frac{P(X < 50 \cap X < 60)}{P(X < 60)} \\ &= \frac{P(X < 50)}{P(X < 60)} = \frac{0.2660}{0.7340} = 0.3624 \end{aligned}$$

Using the Casio

a In **Run-Matrix** mode:

- Go to the **Statistics** menu (OPTN) (F5) and select **Distributions** (F3), **Normal** (F1), **Ncd** (F2).
- Complete as shown.
- Hence $P(X < 50) = 0.2660$.



b Use the fraction template as shown to determine:

$$\begin{aligned} P(X < 50 | X < 60) &= \frac{P(X < 50 \cap X < 60)}{P(X < 60)} \\ &= \frac{P(X < 50)}{P(X < 60)} \\ &= 0.3624 \end{aligned}$$

Note: Recall that the syntax for the normal cumulative distribution is:

`NormCD(lower bound, upper bound, standard deviation, mean)`

When the mean and standard deviation of a normal distribution are unknown, it is sometimes necessary to transform to the standard normal distribution. This is demonstrated in the following example.

Example 24

Limits of acceptability imposed on the lengths of a certain batch of metal rods are 1.925 cm and 2.075 cm. It is observed that, on average, 5% are rejected as undersized and 5% are rejected as oversized.

Assuming that the lengths are normally distributed, determine the mean and standard deviation of the distribution.

Solution

It is given that

$$P(X > 2.075) = 0.05$$

$$P(X < 1.925) = 0.05$$

Symmetry tells us that the mean is equal to

$$\mu = \frac{2.075 + 1.925}{2} = 2$$

Transforming to the standard normal gives

$$P\left(Z > \frac{2.075 - \mu}{\sigma}\right) = 0.05 \quad \text{and} \quad P\left(Z < \frac{1.925 - \mu}{\sigma}\right) = 0.05$$

The first equality can be rewritten as

$$P\left(Z < \frac{2.075 - \mu}{\sigma}\right) = 0.95$$

Use the inverse-normal facility of your calculator to obtain

$$\frac{2.075 - \mu}{\sigma} = 1.64485 \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{1.925 - \mu}{\sigma} = -1.64485$$

These equations confirm that $\mu = 2$.

Substitute $\mu = 2$ into the first equation and solve for σ :

$$\frac{2.075 - 2}{\sigma} = 1.64485$$

$$\therefore \sigma = 0.04560$$

Thus $\sigma = 0.0456$, correct to four decimal places.

Summary 13I

- The normal distribution can be used to model many naturally occurring variables and allow us to solve many real world problems.



Exercise 13I

Example 23

- 1 Suppose IQ scores are normally distributed with mean $\mu = 100$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 15$.
 - a What is the probability that a person chosen at random has an IQ:
 - i greater than 110
 - ii less than 75
 - iii greater than 130, given that they have an IQ greater than 110?
 - b To be allowed to join an elite club, a potential member must have an IQ in the top 5% of the population. What IQ score would be necessary to join this club?
- 2 The heights of women are normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 160$ cm and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 8$ cm.
 - a What is the probability that a woman chosen at random would be:
 - i taller than 155 cm
 - ii shorter than 170 cm
 - iii taller than 170 cm, given that her height is between 168 cm and 174 cm?
 - b What height would put a woman among the tallest 10% of the population?
 - c What height would put a woman among the shortest 20% of the population?
- 3 The results of a mathematics exam are normally distributed with mean $\mu = 50$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 7$.
 - a What is the probability that a student chosen at random has an exam mark:
 - i greater than 60
 - ii less than 75
 - iii greater than 60, given that they passed? (Assume a pass mark of 50.)
 - b The top 15% of the class are to be awarded a distinction. What mark would be required to gain a distinction in this exam?

Example 24

- 4 The weights of cats are normally distributed. It is known that 10% of cats weigh more than 1.8 kg, and 15% of cats weigh less than 1.35 kg. Determine the mean and the standard deviation of this distribution.
- 5 The marks of a large number of students in a statistics examination are normally distributed with a mean of 48 marks and a standard deviation of 15 marks.
 - a If the pass mark is 53, determine the percentage of students who passed the examination.
 - b If 8% of students gained an A on the examination by scoring a mark of at least c , determine the value of c .
- 6 The height of a certain population of adult males is normally distributed with mean 176 cm and standard deviation 7 cm.
 - a Determine the probability that the height of a randomly selected male will exceed 190 cm.
 - b If two males are selected at random, determine the probability that both of their heights will exceed 190 cm.
 - c Suppose 10 males are selected at random. Determine the probability that at least two will have heights that exceed 190 cm.

- 7 a** Machine A is packaging bags of mints with a mean weight of 300 grams. The bags are considered underweight if they weigh less than 295 grams. It is observed that, on average, 5% of bags are rejected as underweight. Assuming that the weights of the bags are normally distributed, determine the standard deviation of the distribution.
- b** In the same factory, machine B is packaging bags of liquorice. The bags from this machine are considered underweight if they weigh less than 340 grams. It is observed that, on average, 2% of bags from machine B are rejected as underweight. Assuming that the weights are normally distributed with a standard deviation of 5 grams, determine the mean of the distribution.
- 8** The volume of soft drink in a 1-litre bottle is normally distributed. The soft drink company needs to calibrate its filling machine. They don't want to put too much soft drink into each bottle, as it adds to their expense. However, they know they will be fined if more than 2% of bottles are more than 2 millilitres under volume. The standard deviation of the volume dispensed by the filling machine is 2.5 millilitres. What should they choose as the target volume (i.e. the mean of the distribution)? Give your answer to the nearest millilitre.
- 9** The weights of pumpkins sold to a greengrocer are normally distributed with a mean of 1.2 kg and a standard deviation of 0.4 kg. The pumpkins are sold in three sizes:
- Small:** under 0.8 kg **Medium:** from 0.8 kg to 1.8 kg **Large:** over 1.8 kg
- a** Determine the proportions of pumpkins in each of the three sizes.
- b** The prices of the pumpkins are \$2.80 for a small, \$3.50 for a medium, and \$5.00 for a large. Determine the expected cost of 100 randomly chosen pumpkins.
- 10** Potatoes are delivered to a chip factory in semitrailer loads. A sample of 1 kg of the potatoes is chosen from each load and tested for starch content. From past experience it is known that the starch content is normally distributed with a standard deviation of 2.1.
- a** For a semitrailer load of potatoes with a mean starch content of 22.0:
- i** What is the probability that the test reading is 19.5 or less?
- ii** What reading will be exceeded with a probability of 0.98?
- b** If the starch content is greater than 22.0, the potatoes cannot be used for chips, and so the semitrailer load is rejected. What is the probability that a load with a mean starch content of 18.0 will be rejected?
- 11** The amount of a certain chemical in a type A cell is normally distributed with a mean of 10 and a standard deviation of 1. The amount in a type B cell is normally distributed with a mean of 14 and a standard deviation of 2. To determine whether a cell is type A or type B, the amount of chemical in the cell is measured. The cell is classified as type A if the amount is less than a specified value c , and as type B otherwise.
- a** If $c = 12$, calculate the probability that a type A cell will be misclassified, and the probability that a type B cell will be misclassified.
- b** Determine the value of c for which the two probabilities of misclassification are equal.

Chapter summary

- A **continuous random variable** is one that can take any value in an interval of the real number line.

- A continuous random variable can be described by a **probability density function** f . There are many different probability density functions with different shapes and properties. However, they all have the following two fundamental properties:

- 1 For any value of x , the value of $f(x)$ is non-negative. That is,

$$f(x) \geq 0 \text{ for all } x$$

- 2 The total area enclosed by the graph of f and the x -axis is equal to 1. That is,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(x) dx = 1$$

The probability of X taking a value in the interval (a, b) is found by determining the area under the probability density curve between a and b . That is,

$$P(a < X < b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$$

- The **mean** or **expected value** of a continuous random variable X with probability density function f is given by

$$\mu = E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx$$

provided the integral exists.

- If $g(X)$ is a function of X , then the expected value of $g(X)$ is given by

$$E[g(X)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} g(x)f(x) dx$$

provided the integral exists. In general, $E[g(X)] \neq g[E(X)]$.

- The q th percentile of a distribution is the value a such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^a f(x) dx = q$$

- The **variance** of a continuous random variable X with probability density function f is defined by

$$\begin{aligned} \sigma^2 = \text{Var}(X) &= E[(X - \mu)^2] \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (x - \mu)^2 f(x) dx \end{aligned}$$

provided the integral exists. To calculate the variance, use

$$\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - \mu^2$$

- The **standard deviation** of X is defined by

$$\sigma = \text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$$

- Linear function of a continuous random variable:

$$E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b$$

$$\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$$

- The **cumulative distribution function** of a continuous random variable X is defined by

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x)$$

- For a probability density function f defined on $\mathbb{R}$, we have $F(x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$.
- For each value of x at which f is continuous, we have $F'(x) = f(x)$.
- A special continuous random variable X , called a **normal random variable**, has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{\sigma\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-\mu}{\sigma}\right)^2}$$

where μ and σ are the mean and standard deviation of X .

- In the special case that $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$, this probability density function defines the **standard normal distribution**. A random variable with this distribution is usually denoted by Z .
- The graph of a normal density function is a symmetric, bell-shaped curve; its centre is determined by the mean, μ , and its width by the standard deviation, σ .
- The **68–95–99.7% rule** states that, for any normal distribution:
 - approximately 68% of the values lie within one standard deviation of the mean
 - approximately 95% of the values lie within two standard deviations of the mean
 - approximately 99.7% of the values lie within three standard deviations of the mean.
- If X is a normally distributed random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ , then to **standardise** a value x of X we subtract the mean and divide by the standard deviation:

$$z = \frac{x - \mu}{\sigma}$$

The standardised value z indicates the number of standard deviations that the value x lies above or below the mean.

- A calculator can be used to evaluate the cumulative distribution function of a normal random variable – that is, to determine the area under the normal curve up to a specified value.
- The inverse-normal facility of a calculator can be used to determine the value of a normal random variable corresponding to a specified area under the normal curve.

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



13A

- 1** I can use relative frequencies obtained from data to approximate the probabilities associated with a continuous random variable.



See Example 1 and Question 1

13A

- 2** I can determine probabilities from a probability density function.



See Example 2, Example 3, Example 4 and Questions 3, 4 and 6

13A

- 3** I can determine conditional probabilities from a probability density function.



See Example 5 and Question 7

13B

- 4** I can use a probability density function to determine percentiles of a distribution.



See Example 6, Example 7, Example 8 and Questions 1, 5 and 7

13C

- 5** I can determine the expected value of a continuous random variable from the probability density function.



See Example 9 and Question 1

13C

- 6** I can determine the expected value of a function of a continuous random variable from the probability density function.



See Example 10 and Question 7

13C

- 7** I can determine the variance and standard deviation of a continuous random variable from the probability density function.



See Example 11 and Question 8

13E

- 8** I can determine probabilities from a cumulative distribution function.



See Example 13 and Question 1

13E

- 9** I can determine percentiles from a cumulative distribution function.



See Example 14 and Question 5

13E

- 10** I can determine the cumulative distribution function from a probability density function.



See Example 15 and Question 6

13E

- 11** I can determine the probability density function from a cumulative distribution function.



See Example 16 and Question 8

- 13F** **12** I can sketch the graph of a normal probability density function given the mean and standard deviation. ☐

See Example 17 and Question 1

- 13F** **13** I can relate the probability density function of a normally distributed random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ to that of the standard normal random variable. ☐

See Example 17 and Question 6

- 13G** **14** I can apply the 68-95-99.7% rule to approximate probabilities for a normally distributed random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ . ☐

See Example 18, Example 19 and Questions 1 and 13

- 13G** **15** I can apply the standardisation rule to calculate z-scores for a normally distributed random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ . ☐

See Question 10

- 13H** **16** I can use technology to determine probabilities for a normal distribution. ☐

See Example 20, Example 21 and Questions 1 and 5

- 13H** **17** I can use technology to determine percentiles for a normal distribution. ☐

See Example 22 and Question 16

- 13I** **18** I can solve real world problems using the normal distribution. ☐

See Example 23, Example 24 and Questions 1 and 4

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1** The probability density function of X is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx & \text{if } 1 \leq x \leq \sqrt{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** k **b** $P(1 < X < 1.1)$ **c** $P(1 < X < 1.2)$.

- 2** The probability density function of X is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4} & 1 \leq x < 5 \\ 0 & x < 1 \text{ or } x \geq 5 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $P(1 < X < 3)$ **b** $P(X > 2 | 1 < X < 3)$ **c** $P(X > 4 | X > 2)$.

- 10** Let X be a normal random variable with mean 4 and standard deviation 2. Write each of the following probabilities in terms of Z .

a $P(X < 5)$ **b** $P(X < 3)$ **c** $P(X > 5)$
d $P(3 < X < 5)$ **e** $P(3 < X < 6)$

- 11** A normal random variable X has mean 8 and standard deviation 3. Give the rule for a transformation that maps the graph of the density function of X to the graph of the density function for the standard normal distribution.

- 12** Let X be a normal random variable with mean 4 and standard deviation 1. Let Z be the standard normal random variable.

a If $P(X < 3) = P(Z < a)$, then $a =$.
b If $P(X > 5) = P(Z > b)$, then $b =$.
c $P(X > 4) =$

In Questions 13 to 15 you will use the following:

$$P(Z < 1) = 0.84$$

$$P(Z < 2) = 0.98$$

$$P(Z < 0.5) = 0.69$$

- 13** A machine produces metal rods with mean diameter 2.5 mm and standard deviation 0.05 mm. Let X be the random variable of the normal distribution. Determine:

a $P(X < 2.55)$ **b** $P(X < 2.5)$
c $P(X < 2.45)$ **d** $P(2.45 < X < 2.55)$

- 14** Nuts are packed in tins such that the mean weight of the tins is 500 g and the standard deviation is 5 g. The weights are normally distributed with random variable W . Determine:

a $P(W > 505)$ **b** $P(500 < W < 505)$
c $P(W > 505 | W > 500)$ **d** $P(W > 510)$

- 15** A random variable X has a normal distribution with mean 6 and standard deviation 1. Determine:

a $P(X < 6.5)$ **b** $P(6 < X < 6.5)$
c $P(6.5 < X < 7)$ **d** $P(5 < X < 7)$

- 16** Suppose that three tests were given in your mathematics course. The class means and standard deviations, together with your scores, are listed in the table.

	μ	σ	Your score
Test A	50	11	62
Test B	47	17	64
Test C	63	8	73

Determine on which test did you did best and on which did you did worst.

- 17** Let X be a normally distributed random variable with mean 10 and variance 4, and let Z be a random variable with the standard normal distribution. Determine the value b such that $P(X > 13) = P(Z < b)$.

- 18** A function f is defined by the rule:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} n(1-x)^{n-1} & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

where the constant n is a natural number.

- a** Show that f is a probability density function.
b Determine the rule for the corresponding cumulative distribution function F .
- 19** Let X be a normal random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ . If $\mu < a < b$ with $P(X < b) = p$ and $P(X < a) = q$, determine in terms of p and q :
- a** $P(X < a | X < b)$ **b** $P(X < 2\mu - a)$ **c** $P(X > b | X > a)$

- 20** If the probability density function of X is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} a + bx^2 & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & x > 1 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

and $E(X) = \frac{2}{3}$, determine a and b .

Technology-active short-response questions

- 21** The distribution of X , the life of a certain electronic component in hours, is described by the following probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{a}{100} \left(1 - \frac{x}{100}\right) & 100 < x < 1000 \\ 0 & x \leq 100 \text{ and } x \geq 1000 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** a **b** $P(X < 200)$
c $E(X)$ **d** $\text{Var}(X)$.
- 22** The cumulative distribution function of a continuous random variable X is given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 2x - x^2 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** $P(X > 0.5)$
b a such that $P(X < a) = 0.8$
c $E(X)$.

- 30** Records kept by a manufacturer of car tyres suggest that the distribution of the mileage from their tyres is normal, with mean 60 000 km and standard deviation 5000 km.
- Determine the proportion of the company's tyres that last:
 - less than 55 000 km
 - more than 50 000 km but less than 74 000 km
 - more than 72 000 km, given that they have already lasted more than 60 000 km.
 - The company's advertising manager wishes to claim that '90% of our tyres last longer than c km'. Determine the value of c .
 - Determine the probability that a customer buys five tyres at the same time and finds that they all last longer than 72 000 km.
- 31** The owner of a new van complained to the dealer that he was using, on average, 18 litres of petrol to drive 100 km. The dealer pointed out that the 15 litres per 100 km referred to in an advertisement was 'just a guide and actual consumption will vary'. Suppose that the distribution of fuel consumption for this make of van is normal, with a mean of 15 litres per 100 km and a standard deviation of 0.75 litres per 100 km.
- Determine the probability that such a van uses at least 18 litres per 100 km.
 - What does your answer to part **a** suggest about the manufacturer's claim?
 - Determine c_1 and c_2 such that the van's fuel consumption is more than c_1 but less than c_2 with a probability of 0.95.
- 32** Suppose that L , the useful life (in hours) of a fluorescent tube designed for indoor gardening, is normally distributed with a mean of 600 and a standard deviation of 4. The fluorescent tubes are sold in boxes of 10. Determine the probability that at least three of the tubes in a randomly selected box last longer than 605 hours.
- 33** The amount of anaesthetic required to cause surgical anaesthesia in patients is normally distributed, with a mean of 50 mg and a standard deviation of 10 mg. The lethal dose is also normally distributed, with a mean of 110 mg and a standard deviation of 20 mg. If a dosage that brings 90% of patients to surgical anaesthesia were used, determine the percentage of patients that would be killed by this dose.
- 34** A hardware shop sells a certain size nail either in a small packet at \$1 per packet, or loose at \$4 per kilogram. On any shopping day, the number, X , of packets sold is a binomial random variable with number of trials $n = 8$ and probability of success $p = 0.6$, and the weight, Y kg, of nails sold loose is a continuous random variable with probability density function f given by

$$f(y) = \begin{cases} \frac{2(y-1)}{25} & 1 \leq y \leq 6 \\ 0 & y < 1 \text{ or } y > 6 \end{cases}$$

Determine the expected money received on any shopping day from the sale of this size nail in the shop.

- 35** The continuous random variable X has probability density function f , where

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{k}{12(x+1)^3} & 0 \leq x \leq 4 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 4 \end{cases}$$

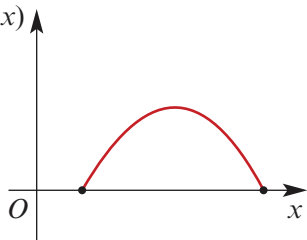
- a** Determine k .
 - b** Evaluate $E(X + 1)$. Hence, determine the mean of X .
 - c** Determine the value of $c > 0$ for which $P(X \leq c) = c$.
- 36** In a given manufacturing process, components are rejected if they have a particular dimension greater than 60.4 mm or less than 59.7 mm. It is found that 3% are rejected as being too large and 5% are rejected as being too small. Assume that the dimension is normally distributed.
- a** Determine the mean and standard deviation of the distribution of the dimension, correct to one decimal place.
 - b** Use the result of part **a** to determine the percentage of rejects if the limits for acceptance are changed to 60.3 mm and 59.6 mm.
- 37** The hardness of a metal may be determined by impressing a hardened point into the surface of the metal and then measuring the depth of penetration of the point. Suppose that the hardness of a particular alloy is normally distributed with mean 70 and standard deviation 3.
- a** If a specimen is acceptable only if its hardness is between 65 and 75, what is the probability that a randomly chosen specimen has an acceptable hardness?
 - b** If the acceptable range of hardness was $(70 - c, 70 + c)$, for what value of c would 95% of all specimens have acceptable hardness?
 - c** If the acceptable range is the same as in part **a**, and the hardness of each of 10 randomly selected specimens is independently determined, what is the expected number of acceptable specimens among the 10?
 - d** What is the probability that at most eight out of 10 randomly selected specimens have a hardness less than 73.84?
 - e** The profit on an acceptable specimen is \$20, while unacceptable specimens result in a loss of \$5. If P is the profit on a randomly selected specimen, determine the mean and variance of P under the acceptance criteria from part **a**.
- 38** The weekly error (in seconds) of a brand of watch is known to be normally distributed. Only those watches with an error of less than 5 seconds are acceptable.
- a** Determine the mean and standard deviation of the distribution of error if 3% of watches are rejected for losing time and 3% are rejected for gaining time.
 - b** Determine the probability that fewer than two watches are rejected in a batch of 10 such watches.

Multiple-choice questions

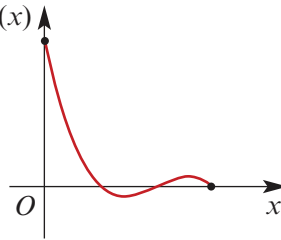
Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 Select which one of the following graphs could *not* represent a probability density function f .

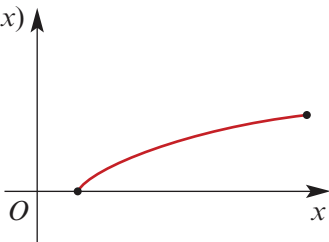
A $f(x)$



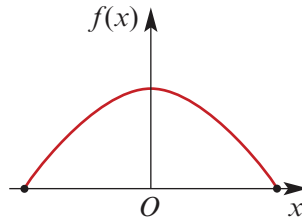
B $f(x)$



C $f(x)$



D $f(x)$



- 2 If the function $f(x) = 4x$ represents a probability density function, then the domain of f could be

A $0 \leq x \leq 0.5$

B $0 \leq x \leq 1$

C $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

D $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \leq x \leq \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}$

- 3 If a random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2} \sin x & 0 < x < k \\ 0 & x \geq k \text{ or } x \leq 0 \end{cases}$$

then k is equal to

A 1

B $\frac{\pi}{2}$

C 2

D π

- 4 The cumulative distribution function gives the probability

A that a random variable takes a particular value

B that a random variable takes a value less than or equal to a particular value

C that a random variable takes a value more than a particular value

D of two or more events occurring at once

- 5 X is a continuous random variable with cumulative distribution function given by

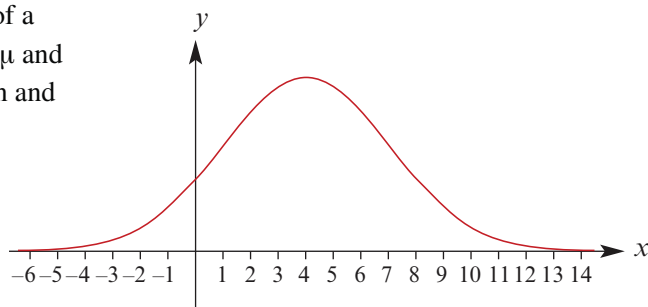
$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \frac{1}{8}x & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{8}(3x - 2) & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ \frac{1}{2}(x - 1) & \text{if } 2 \leq x < 3 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq 3 \end{cases}$$

$P(1 < X \leq 2.5)$ is equal to

- A** $\frac{5}{16}$ **B** $\frac{5}{8}$ **C** $\frac{3}{4}$ **D** $\frac{7}{8}$

- 6 The diagram shows the graph of a normal distribution with mean μ and standard deviation σ . The mean and standard deviation of X are

- A** $\mu = 4$ and $\sigma = 3$
B $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = 4$
C $\mu = 3$ and $\sigma = 2$
D $\mu = 4$ and $\sigma = 4$



- 7 The random variable X has a normal distribution with mean 12 and variance 9. If Z is a standard normal random variable, then the probability that X is more than 15 is equal to
- A** $P(Z < 1)$ **B** $P(Z > 1)$
C $P(Z > \frac{1}{3})$ **D** $1 - P(Z > 1)$
- 8 The marks achieved by Angie in Mathematics, Indonesian and Politics, together with the mean and standard deviation for each subject, are given in the following table:

Subject	Mark	Mean (μ)	Standard deviation (σ)
Mathematics	72	72	5
Indonesian	57	59	2
Politics	68	64	4

Select the correct statement.

- A** Angie's best subject was Politics, followed by Mathematics and then Indonesian.
B Angie's best subject was Mathematics, followed by Politics and then Indonesian.
C Angie's best subject was Politics, followed by Indonesian and then Mathematics.
D Angie's best subject was Mathematics, followed by Indonesian and then Politics.

- 9** If the number of goals that the Suns score in a match is a normally distributed random variable with a mean of 16 and a standard deviation of 2, then the percentage of their matches in which they score from 10 to 22 goals is approximately
- A** 16% **B** 68% **C** 95% **D** 99.7%
- 10** X is a normally distributed random variable with mean $\mu = 6$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 3$. The transformation which maps the graph of the density function f of X to the graph of the standard normal distribution is
- A** $(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x-3}{6}, 6y\right)$ **B** $(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x-6}{3}, \frac{y}{3}\right)$
- C** $(x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x-6}{3}, 3y\right)$ **D** $(x, y) \rightarrow (3(x+6), 3y)$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

The following information relates to Questions 11, 12 and 13.

A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{3}{4}(x^2 - 1) & 1 < x < 2 \\ 0 & x \leq 1 \text{ or } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

- 11** $P(X \leq 1.3)$ is closest to
- A** 0.0743 **B** 0.4258 **C** 0.3 **D** 0.25
- 12** The mean, $E(X)$, of X is equal to
- A** $\frac{3}{2}$ **B** $\frac{9}{4}$ **C** $\frac{27}{32}$ **D** $\frac{27}{16}$
- 13** The variance of X is equal to
- A** $\frac{27}{16}$ **B** $\frac{67}{1280}$ **C** $\frac{81}{16}$ **D** $\frac{81}{256}$
- 14** If a random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^3}{4} & 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & x > 2 \text{ or } x < 0 \end{cases}$$

then the 50th percentile of X is closest to

- A** 1.5 **B** 1.4142 **C** 1.6818 **D** 1
- 15** If a random variable X has a probability density function given by
- $$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{3}{2}(x-1)(x-2)^2 & 1 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 0 & x < 1 \text{ or } x > 3 \end{cases}$$
- then the mean of X is
- A** 1 **B** 1.333 **C** 2 **D** 2.6

- 16** The top 10% of students in an examination will be awarded an 'A'. If the distribution of scores on the examination is a random variable X with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{100} \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{50}\right) & 0 \leq x \leq 50 \\ 0 & x < 0 \text{ or } x > 50 \end{cases}$$

The minimum score required to be awarded an 'A' is closest to

- A** 40 **B** 41 **C** 42 **D** 43
- 17** If Z is a standard normal random variable, then $P(Z > 1.45)$ is closest to
- A** 0.1394 **B** 0.8606 **C** 0.0735 **D** 0.9625
- 18** If Z is a standard normal random variable and $P(Z < c) = 0.25$, then c is closest to
- A** 0.6745 **B** -0.6745 **C** 0.3867 **D** 0.5987
- 19** The length of time taken to complete a board game is normally distributed with a mean of 102 minutes and a standard deviation of 3 minutes. The percentage of games that last more than 110 minutes is approximately
- A** 81.3% **B** 2.7% **C** 18.7% **D** 0.38%
- 20** The amount of water that Steve uses to water the garden is normally distributed with a mean of 100 litres and a standard deviation of 14 litres. On 20% of occasions it takes him more than k litres to water the garden. The value of k is
- A** 88.2 **B** 110.7 **C** 111.8 **D** 114.0
- 21** Suppose that X is normally distributed with mean 11.3 and standard deviation 2.9. Values of c_1 and c_2 such that $P(c_1 < X < c_2) = 0.90$ are closest to
- A** 6.53, 16.07 **B** 6.08, 16.52 **C** 15.02, 7.58 **D** 5.62, 16.98
- 22** The volume of liquid in a 1-litre bottle of soft drink is a normally distributed random variable with a mean of μ litres and a standard deviation of 0.005 litres. To ensure that 99.9% of the bottles contain at least 1 litre of soft drink, the value of μ should be
- A** 0.995 litres **B** 1.015 litres **C** 1.005 litres **D** 1.026 litres
- 23** Suppose that the gestation period for human pregnancies is normally distributed with a mean of 272 days and a standard deviation of σ days. If the probability of a pregnancy lasting less than 260 days is 0.091, then σ is closest to
- A** 3 **B** 5 **C** 9 **D** 12

14

Sampling and proportions

Chapter contents

- ▶ **14A** Populations and samples
- ▶ **14B** Investigating the variability of random samples
- ▶ **14C** The exact distribution of the sample proportion
- ▶ **14D** The normal approximation to the distribution of the sample proportion

There is more to a complete statistical investigation than data analysis. First, we should consider the method used to collect the data. The purpose of selecting a sample and analysing the information collected from the sample is to make some sort of conclusion, or inference, about the population from which the sample was drawn.

For example, consider the question:

- What proportion of Year 12 students in Australia intend to take a gap year?

While we can answer this question for a sample of students, we really want to know about the whole population of Year 12 students. But in order to be able to generalise to the population from a sample, we need to be quite confident that the sample we have chosen is representative of the population. In this chapter, you will learn about different methods of selecting a sample and ways to minimise error when drawing a sample.

This chapter covers Unit 4 Topic 4: Sampling and proportions.

14A Populations and samples

Learning intentions

- ▶ To understand the concepts of **population** and **sample**.
- ▶ To understand the concept of **random sample**.
- ▶ To understand sources of **bias** in samples.
- ▶ To identify and use procedures to ensure randomness.

The set of all eligible members of a group which we intend to study is called a **population**. For example, if we are interested in the IQ scores of the Year 12 students at ABC Secondary College, then this group of students could be considered a population; we could collect and analyse all the IQ scores for these students. However, if we are interested in the IQ scores of all Year 12 students across Australia, then this becomes the population.

Often, dealing with an entire population is not practical:

- The population may be too large – for example, all Year 12 students in Australia.
- The population may be hard to access – for example, all blue whales in the Pacific Ocean.
- The data collection process may be destructive – for example, testing every battery to see how long it lasts would mean that there were no batteries left to sell.

Nevertheless, we often wish to make statements about a property of a population when data about the entire population is unavailable.

The solution is to select a subset of the population – called a **sample** – in the hope that what we find out about the sample is also true about the population it comes from. Dealing with a sample is generally quicker and cheaper than dealing with the whole population, and a well-chosen sample will give much useful information about this population. How to select the sample then becomes a very important issue. There are essentially two different types of sample, **probability sampling** and **non-probability sampling**. Probability sampling involves **random selection**, allowing you to make generalisations about the whole population. Non-probability sampling involves non-random selection methods based on convenience or other criteria, making data collection easier and most likely cheaper.

Probability sampling

Suppose we are interested in investigating the effect of sustained computer use on the eyesight of a group of university students. To do this we go into a lecture theatre containing the students and select all the students sitting in the front two rows as our sample. This sample may be quite inappropriate, as students who already have problems with their eyesight are more likely to be sitting at the front, and so the sample may not be typical of the population. To make valid conclusions about the population from the sample, we would like the sample to have a similar nature to the population.

While there are many sophisticated methods of selecting samples, the general principle of sample selection is that the method of choosing the sample should not favour or disfavour any subgroup of the population. Since it is not always obvious if the method of selection will favour a subgroup or not, we try to choose the sample so that every member of the population

has an equal chance of being in the sample. In this way, all subgroups have a chance of being represented. The way we do this is to choose the sample at random.

A sample is called a **random sample** if it is selected from the population in such a way that every member of the population has an equal chance of being chosen as the sample.

To choose a sample from the group of university students, we could put the name of every student in a hat and then draw out, one at a time, the names of the students who will be in the sample. Choosing the sample in an appropriate manner is critical in order to obtain useable results.



Example 1

A researcher wishes to evaluate how well the local library is catering to the needs of a town's residents. To do this she hands out a questionnaire to each person entering the library over the course of a week. Will this method result in a random sample?

Solution

Since the members of the sample are already using the library, they are possibly satisfied with the service available. Additional valuable information might well be obtained by finding out the opinion of those who do not use the library.

A better sample would be obtained by selecting at random from the town's entire population, so the sample contains both people who use the library and people who do not.

Thus, we have a very important consideration when sampling if we wish to generalise from the results of the sample. In order to make valid conclusions about a population from a sample, we would like the sample chosen to be representative of the population as a whole. This means that all the different subgroups present in the population appear in the sample in similar proportions as they do in the population.

The simplest form of probability sampling is called **simple random sampling**, and involves the following steps:

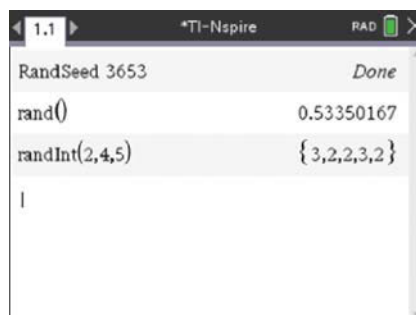
- 1 Define the population and determine its size. In Example 1 this was the population of a town. We will assume a population size of 500.
- 2 Assign a sequential number to each member of the population, which acts as an identification number – e.g. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, and so on to 500.
- 3 Decide the sample size number needed. There are methods for deciding on sample size, which we will discuss in the next chapter. For now, let's use 50 as the sample size.
- 4 Select the sample by using a random number generator to generate 50 random numbers between 1 and 500.

Random numbers can be generated using a calculator or a computer. The following instructions show how to generate random numbers using your calculator.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

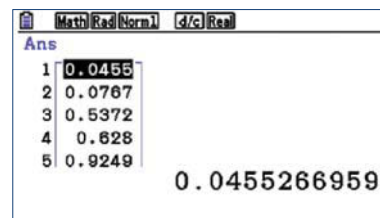
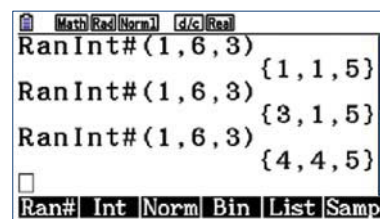
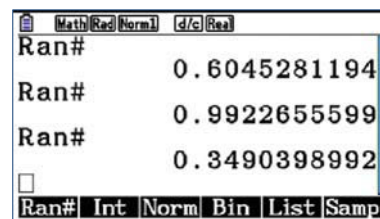
- On a **Calculator** page, go to **menu** > **Probability** > **Random** > **Seed** and enter the last 4 digits of your phone number. This ensures that your random number starting point differs from the calculator default.
- For a random number between 0 and 1, use **menu** > **Probability** > **Random** > **Number**.
- For a random integer, use **menu** > **Probability** > **Random** > **Integer**. To obtain five random integers between 2 and 4 inclusive, use the command `randInt(2,4,5)` as shown.



Using the Casio

In **Run-Matrix** mode, go to the **Probability** menu **OPTN** **F6** **F3**. For random number generation, select **Ran** **F4**.

- To generate a random number between 0 and 1:
 - Select **Ran#** **F1** and press **EXE**.
 - Press **EXE** again to generate another random number.
- To generate three random integers between 1 and 6 inclusive:
 - Select **Int** **F2**.
 - Type: 1, 6, 3)
 - Press **EXE**.
 - Press **EXE** again to generate another three random integers.
- To generate a list of 10 random numbers between 0 and 1:
 - Select **List** **F5**.
 - Type: 10)
 - Press **EXE**.
 - To view the list as a table, select the list and press **EXE**.
 - To exit the table, press **EXIT**.



- To generate a list of 20 random integers between 1 and 30 inclusive:
 - Select **Int** (F2).
 - Type: 1, 30, 20)
 - Press (EXE).
 - To view the list as a table, select the list and press (EXE).
 - To exit the table, press (EXIT).

	Ans
1	10
2	22
3	13
4	5
5	17

10



Example 2

Use a random number generator to select a group of six students from the following class:

■ Denise	■ Sharyn	■ Scott	■ Tom	■ Steven
■ Matt	■ Mark	■ William	■ David	■ Jane
■ Teresa	■ Peter	■ Anne	■ Sally	■ Georgia
■ Sue	■ Nick	■ Darren	■ Janelle	■ Jaimie

Solution

First assign a number to each member of the class:

■ Denise (1)	■ Sharyn (5)	■ Scott (9)	■ Tom (13)	■ Steven (17)
■ Matt (2)	■ Mark (6)	■ William (10)	■ David (14)	■ Jane (18)
■ Teresa (3)	■ Peter (7)	■ Anne (11)	■ Sally (15)	■ Georgia (19)
■ Sue (4)	■ Nick (8)	■ Darren (12)	■ Janelle (16)	■ Jaimie (20)

Generating six random integers from 1 to 20 gives on this occasion: 4, 19, 9, 2, 13, 14.

The sample chosen is thus:

Sue, Georgia, Scott, Matt, Tom, David

Note: In this example, we want a list of six random integers without repeats. We do not add a randomly generated integer to our list if it is already in the list.

We have already noted that we would like all the different subgroups present in the population to appear in the sample in similar proportions as they do in the population. Looking again at the sample selected in Example 1, we can see that of the six students chosen 2 are female and 4 are male, and yet there are equal numbers of male and female students in the class. A commonly used probability sampling method which helps us to ensure the sample more accurately represents the population is **stratified random sampling**. Here, the population is first divided into smaller groups, or strata, based on shared characteristics, and then a random sample is drawn from each strata. The size of the sample drawn from each strata is determined so that the proportions of each strata in the sample are the same as in the population.

**Example 3**

A company has a total of 720 employees in four different age categories:

Age	Under 25	25-44	45-60	Over 60
Number of employees	144	288	180	108

In order to ensure that each age group is represented in the sample in the same proportion as they are in the company, how many from each age category should be included in a stratified random sample of size 40?

Solution

Determine the percentage of employees in each age category:

Age	Under 25	25-44	45-60	Over 60
Number of employees	144	288	180	108
Percentage of employees	20%	40%	25%	15%

The sample of size 40 should then consist of:

$20\% \times 40 = 8$ people randomly selected from the Under 25 age group.

$40\% \times 40 = 16$ people randomly selected from the 25-44 age group.

$25\% \times 40 = 10$ people randomly selected from the 45-60 age group.

$15\% \times 40 = 6$ people randomly selected from the Over 60 age group.

Non-probability sampling

Non-probability sampling methods are particularly useful when we are unable to list each member of the population, or when a random sample is too expensive or difficult to obtain.

A very common type of non-probability sampling is **convenience** sampling, where a sample is chosen because of its ready availability. For instance, a readily available sample of all students of mathematics in Queensland could be found by choosing you and your class, a convenient sample but certainly not a random one. The problem here is of course that it is quite likely that the students in the same class in the same school would have a lot in common, and not necessarily represent all possible students.

Another commonly seen non-probability sample is the **self-selected sample**. Whenever people are asked to volunteer to participate in a study, or phone in with an opinion then the resultant samples are examples of self-selected samples. The problem with this type of sampling is that it is often the case that people who care enough to respond may have particularly strong feelings about the issue in question and may not be representative of the whole population.

Sources of bias

Sampling bias occurs when some members of a population are systematically more likely to be selected in a sample than others. We have seen that both convenience samples, and self-selected samples are likely to be biased. A sample can also be biased when a portion of the population of interest is not accurately represented in the sample, possibly because we are unaware of that group in the population, or unable to reach them. For example, conducting an internet survey would mean that we would be unlikely to reach groups such as the elderly, or the homeless.

Another common source of bias is **non-response bias**. Suppose for example, we mail a randomly chosen sample of 1000 people a questionnaire, and only 200 people complete and return it. Nonresponse bias happens when those who have returned the questionnaire differ from those who have not, and hence do not have views which represent the whole population.

In order to reduce bias we should ensure that a probability based sampling method is used.

Summary 14A

- A **population** is the set of all eligible members of a group which we intend to study.
- A **sample** is a subset of the population which we select in order to make inferences about the population.
- A sample is called a **random sample** if it is selected from the population in such a way that every member of the population has an equal chance of being chosen as the sample.

Exercise 14A

Example 1

- 1 In order to determine the sort of film in which to invest his money, a producer waits outside a theatre and asks people as they leave whether they prefer comedy, drama, horror or science fiction. Assess this method of selecting a random sample of movie goers.
- 2 A market researcher wishes to find out how people spend their leisure time. She positions herself in a shopping mall and asks shoppers as they pass to fill out a short questionnaire.
 - a Do you think this sample will be representative of the general population? Explain.
 - b Suggest a more suitable method of sample selection.
- 3 To investigate people's attitudes to control of gun ownership, a television station conducts a phone-in poll, where people are asked to telephone one number if they are in favour of tighter gun control, and another if they are against. Assess this method of choosing a random sample.

- 4** A researcher wishes to select five guinea pigs at random from a large cage containing 20 guinea pigs. In order to select her sample, she reaches into the cage and (gently) pulls out five guinea pigs.

- a** Do you think this sample will be representative of the general population? Explain.
b How would you suggest the sample could be chosen?

- 5** In order to estimate how much money young people spend on takeaway food, a questionnaire is sent to several schools randomly chosen from a list of all schools in the state, to be given to a random selection of 20 students in each selected school. Is this an appropriate method of choosing a random sample? Give reasons for your answer.

Example 2

- 6** Use a random number generator to select a random sample of size 3 from the following list of people.

■ Karen	■ Alexander	■ Kylie	■ Janet	■ Zoe
■ Kate	■ Juliet	■ Edward	■ Fleur	■ Cara
■ Trinh	■ Craig	■ Kelly	■ Connie	■ Noel
■ Paul	■ Conrad	■ Rani	■ Aden	■ Judy
■ Lina	■ Fairlie	■ Maree	■ Wolfgang	■ Andrew

- 7** In a survey to obtain adults' views on unemployment, people were stopped by interviewers as they came out of:

- a** a travel agency
b a supermarket
c an employment - services centre.

Identify the limitations of each of the methods of sampling listed here. Describe a better method of choosing the sample.

- 8** A marine biologist wishes to estimate the total number of crabs on a rock platform which is 10 metres square. It would be impossible to count them all individually, so she places a 1-metre-square frame at five random locations on the rock platform, and counts the number of crabs in the frame. To estimate the total number, she will multiply the average number in the frame by the total area of the rock platform.

- a** Explain how a random number generator could be used to select the five locations for the frame.
b Will this give a good estimate of the crab population?

- 9** In order to survey the attitude of parents to the current uniform requirements, the principal of a school selected 100 students at random from the school roll, and then interviewed their parents. Comment on whether this group of parents would form a simple random sample.

- 10** A television station carried out a poll to find out if the public felt that mining should be allowed in a particular area. People were asked to ring one number to register a 'yes' vote and another to register a 'no' vote. The results showed that 77% of people were in favour of mining proceeding. Comment on the results.
- 11** A market-research company decided to collect information concerning the way people use their leisure time by phoning a randomly chosen group of 1000 people at home between 7 p.m. and 10 p.m. on weeknights. The final report was based on the responses of only the 550 people of those sampled who could be found at home. Comment on the validity of this report.
- Example 3** **12** A garage manager wants to conduct a customer satisfaction survey. They have 2000 customers, 600 of whom own Hondas and 1400 own Mazdas. Calculate how many Honda and Mazda owners should be included in a stratified random sample of size 100.
- 13** The age distribution of the employees of a very large company is shown in the following table, separately for males and females.

Age (years)	Males (%)	Females (%)
18-24	16.4	14.2
25-34	23.7	20.0
35-44	20.0	18.4
45-54	15.9	16.4
55-64	13.6	18.5
65-74	10.4	12.5
Total	100.0	100.0

Determine the number of males and females of each age category that should be included in a stratified sample of size 500 (give each answer to the nearest whole number):

- a** if there are equal proportions of male and females employed by the company
b if the employees of the company are 60% male and 40% female.

14B Investigating the variability of random samples

Learning intentions

- To simulate and compare graphical displays of random samples from:
 - ▷ the discrete uniform distribution
 - ▷ the Bernoulli distribution
 - ▷ the binomial distribution
 - ▷ the normal distribution.

The purpose of selecting a random sample is to learn more about the population from which it has been drawn. We can use simulation to investigate distributions of random samples from a variety of different populations.

Sampling from a discrete uniform distribution

Consider the outcome when a fair six-sided dice is rolled. This random variable has a uniform discrete random variable X with probability distribution:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(X = x)$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{6}$

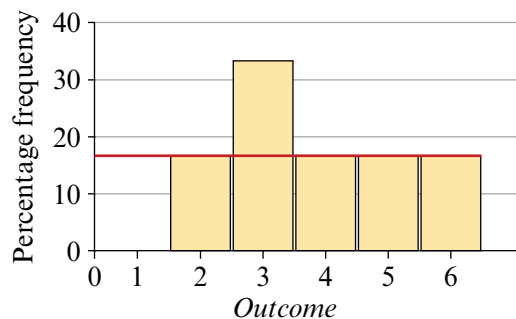
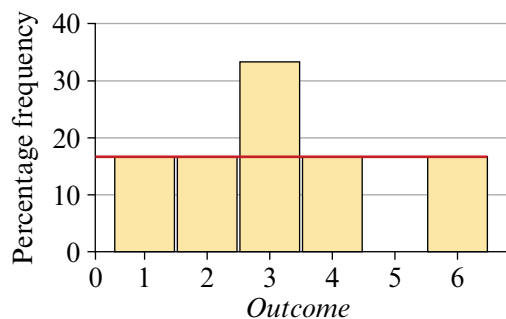
Suppose we roll the dice six times and observe the outcomes $\{2, 1, 3, 4, 6, 3\}$, which can be summarised in the following table of percentage frequencies:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(X = x)$	16.7	16.7	33.3	16.7	0	16.7

Suppose we roll the dice six times again and observe the outcomes $\{2, 3, 6, 4, 5, 3\}$ which can be summarised in the following table of percentage frequencies:

x	1	2	3	4	5	6
$P(X = x)$	0	16.7	33.3	16.7	16.7	16.7

The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the results from these two samples. The red horizontal line at 16.7% indicates the exact probability distribution.

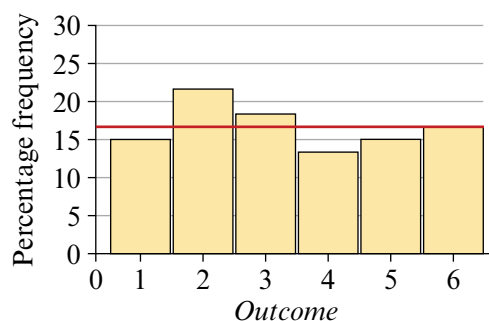
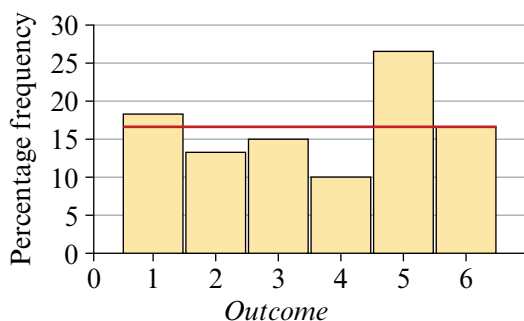


From the histograms we can see:

- the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
- the percentage frequencies obtained from a sample may not be the same as predicted by the probability distribution.

What is the effect of selecting a larger sample?

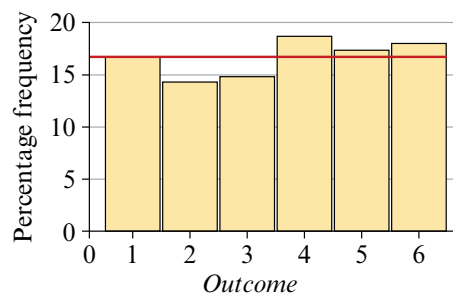
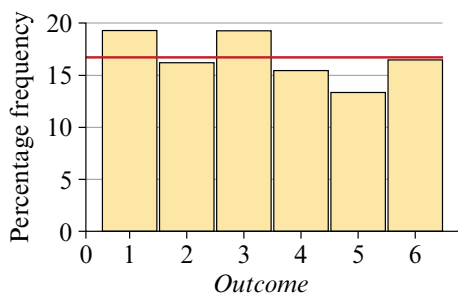
The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the outcomes from two samples each of size 60 obtained from rolling a fair dice:



Once again we can see from the histograms that:

- the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
- the percentage frequencies obtained from the sample may not be same as predicted by the probability distribution, but the differences between the exact probabilities and the relative frequencies are smaller than when the sample size was six.

The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the outcomes from two samples of size 600 obtained from rolling a fair dice:



Here again we can see from the histograms that:

- There is still variation between the two samples.
- The percentage frequencies obtained from the sample may not be same as predicted by the probability distribution, but the differences between the exact probabilities and the relative frequencies are smaller than when the sample size was 60.

We can use a calculator to simulate the drawing of random samples from a discrete uniform distribution.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To generate a random sample of size 20 from the following discrete uniform distribution:

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{6} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 6$$

- On a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page name the list 'uniform' in Column A.
- In the formula cell of Column A, enter the formula using **Menu** > **Data** > **Random** > **Integer** and complete as: = randInt(1, 6, 20)

	A uniform	B	C	D
=	=randint(1,6,20)			
1	6			
2	6			
3	1			
4	4			
5	3			

A uniform:=randint(1,6,20)

Note: The syntax is: randInt(*minimum, maximum, sample size*)

Using the Casio

To generate a random sample of size 20 from the following discrete uniform distribution:

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{6} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 6$$

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- Move the cursor to the top of List1.
- Select **RanInt#**: **OPTN** **F5** **F4** **F2**
- Complete by entering: 1, 6, 20)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1				
2				
3				
4				

RanInt#(1,6,20)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	1			
2	4			
3	6			
4	3			

Ran# Int Norm Bin List Samp

Note: The syntax is: RanInt#(*minimum, maximum, sample size*)

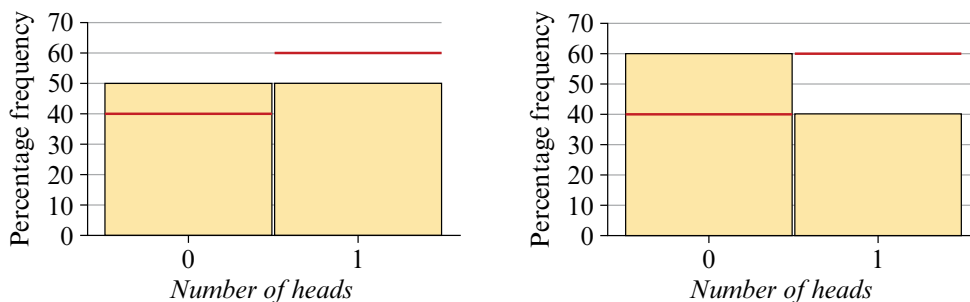
Sampling from a Bernoulli distribution

Suppose that we have coin which is biased towards heads, and that the probability of observing a head on any toss of the coin is 0.6. If the random variable X represents the number of heads observed when the coin is tossed then X is a Bernoulli random variable with probability distribution:

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.4	0.6

The coin was tossed 20 times, and 10 heads and 10 tails were observed. The coin was tossed 20 times again, and this time 8 heads and 12 tails were observed.

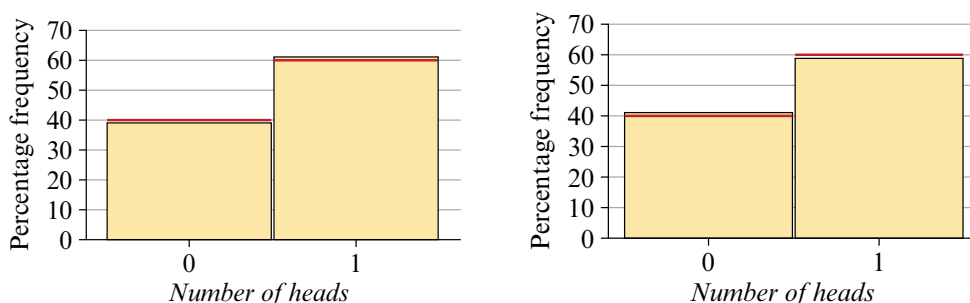
The following percentage frequency histograms summarise these two samples. The red horizontal lines show the exact probability of observing each outcome, that is, the probability of tails for $X = 0$ and of heads for $X = 1$.



We can see from the histograms that the percentage frequencies are quite different from the exact probability distribution, and that there is variation between the two samples.

Once again, it would be helpful to see the effect of sample size.

The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the sample outcomes from tossing the coin 100 times on two separate occasions. The red horizontal lines show the exact probability of observing each outcome, that is, the probability of tails for $X = 0$ and of heads for $X = 1$.



These results confirm our earlier observations. That is:

- the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
- the percentage frequencies obtained from the sample may not be same as predicted by the probability distribution, but the differences between the exact probabilities and the relative frequencies are smaller than when the sample size is larger.

We can use a calculator to simulate the drawing of random samples from a Bernoulli distribution.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To generate a random sample of size 20 from a Bernoulli random variable with the following distribution:

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.4	0.6

- On a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page name the list 'bernoulli' in Column A.
- In the formula cell of Column A, enter the formula using **Menu** > **Data** > **Random** > **Binomial** and complete as:
= randBin(1, 0.6, 20)

1.1	*TI-Nspire	RAD	X
A bernoulli	B	C	D
=	=randbin(1,0.6,20)		
1		1	
2		1	
3		0	
4		0	
5		0	
A	bernoulli:=randbin(1,0.6,20)		

Note: The syntax is: randBin(*number of trials, probability of success, sample size*)

Using the Casio

To generate a random sample of size 20 from a Bernoulli random variable with the following distribution:

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.4	0.6

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- • Move the cursor to the top of List1.
- Select **RanBin#**: **OPTN** **F5** **F4** **F4**
- Complete by entering: 1, 0.6, 20)

Rad	Norm1	d/c	Real
List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB			
1			
2			
3			
4			
RanBin#(1,0.6,20)			
Ran#	Int	Norm	Bin
	List	Samp	

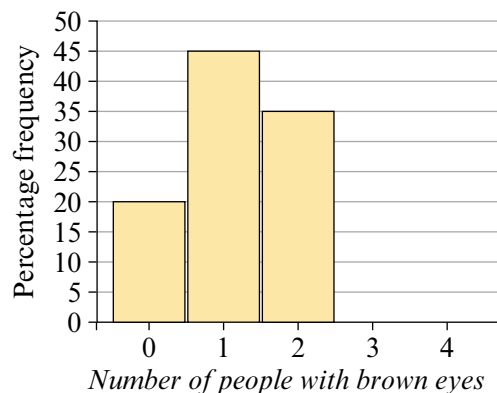
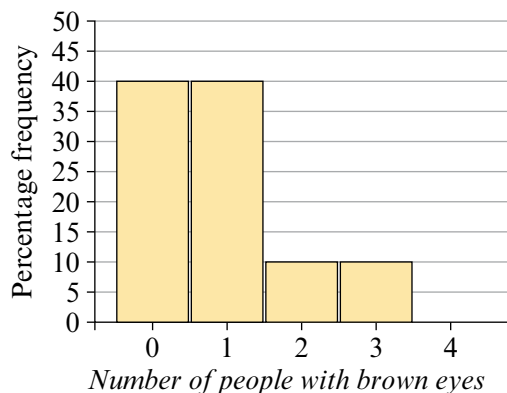
Note: The syntax is: RanBin#(*number of trials, probability of success, sample size*)

Sampling from a binomial distribution

Suppose that in a certain population it is known that 40% of people have brown eyes, and that a group of three people is selected from this population and their eye colour noted. The random variable X is defined as the number of people with brown eyes in the sample, and X is a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 3$ and $p = 0.4$. The exact probability distribution of X is given by the following table:

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.216	0.432	0.288	0.064

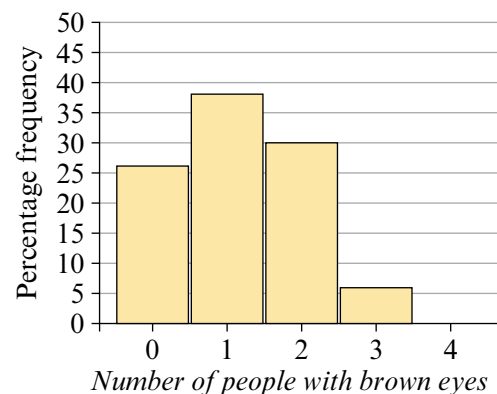
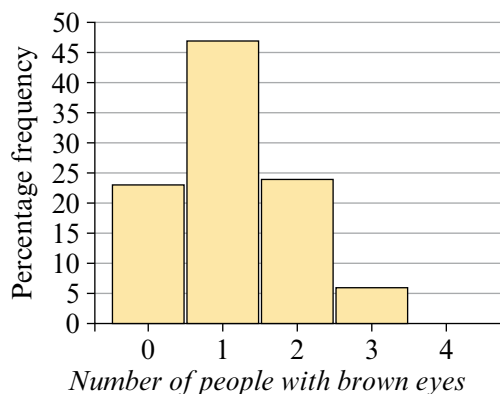
A sample of 20 groups, each of 3 people, was selected at random from this population, and the number of people with brown eyes in each group noted. This sampling was repeated, and the following percentage frequency histograms summarise the two samples.



We can see from the histograms that the percentage frequencies are quite different from the exact probability distribution, and that there is variation between the two samples.

Once again, it would be helpful to see the effect of sample size.

A sample of 100 groups, each of 3 people, was selected at random from this population, and the number of people with brown eyes in each group noted. This sampling was repeated, and the following percentage frequency histograms summarise the two samples.



These results confirm our earlier observations. That is:

- the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
- the percentage frequencies obtained from the sample may not be same as predicted by the probability distribution, but the differences between the exact probabilities and the relative frequencies are smaller when the sample size is larger.

We can use a calculator to simulate the drawing of random samples from a binomial distribution.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To generate a random sample of size 20 from a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 3$ and $p = 0.4$.

- On a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page name the list 'binomial' in Column A.
- In the formula cell of Column A, enter the formula using **Menu** > **Data** > **Random** > **Binomial** and complete as:
= randbin(3, 0.4, 20)

	A binomial	B	C	D
=	=randbin(3,0.4,20)			
1		1		
2		1		
3		0		
4		0		
5		1		

A binomial: =randbin(3,0.4,20)

Note: The syntax is: randbin(*number of trials, probability of success, sample size*)

Using the Casio

To generate a random sample of size 20 from a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 3$ and $p = 0.4$.

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- • Move the cursor to the top of List 1.
- Select **RanBin#**: **OPTN** **F5** **F4** **F4**
- Complete by entering: 3, 0.4, 20)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1				
2				
3				
4				

RanBin#(3,0.4,20)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	3			
2	1			
3	0			
4	3			

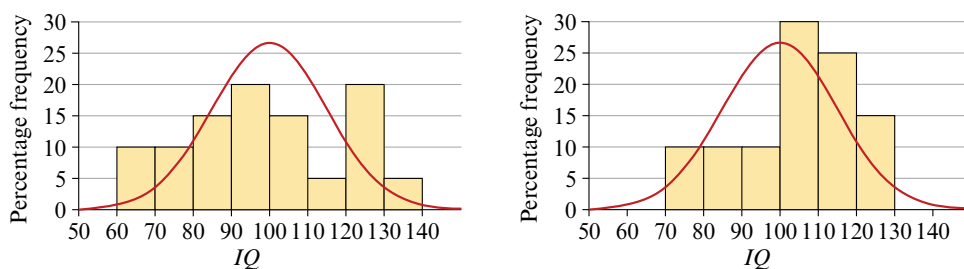
Ran# Int Norm Bin List Samp

Note: The syntax is: RanBin#(*number of trials, probability of success, sample size*)

Sampling from a normal distribution

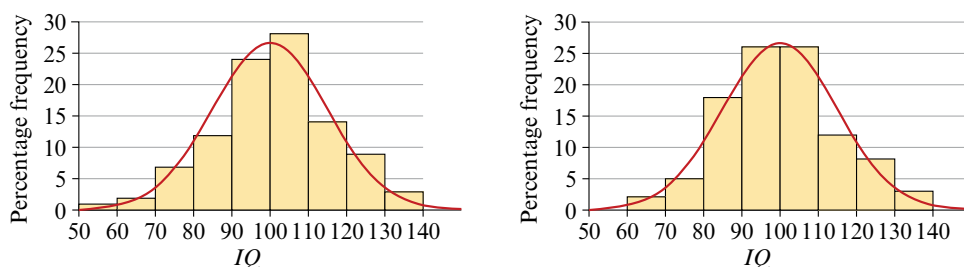
Consider the random variable IQ, which is normally distributed with a mean of 100 and a standard deviation of 15 in a given population.

Suppose a random sample of 20 people was selected from this population, and their IQs measured, and then a second random sample of 20 people was selected from this population, and their IQs measured. The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the data collected in each of the two samples. The normal probability density curve with mean of 100 and standard deviation of 15 is also shown on each graph.



We can see from the plots that the percentage frequency histograms can look quite unlike the probability density function which describes the population from which the samples were selected for a sample of size 20.

Suppose a random sample of 100 people was selected from this population, and their IQ s measured, and then a second random sample of 100 people was selected from this population, and their IQ s measured. The following percentage frequency histograms summarise the data collected in each of these two samples. The normal probability density curve with mean of 100 and standard deviation of 15 is again shown on each graph.



We can see from the plots that the percentage frequency histograms have a symmetric, bell shape, and are quite well described by the probability density function which describes the population from which the samples were selected when the sample of size is 100.

Comparing these histograms again illustrates again two very important ideas:

- the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
- the larger the sample, the more reliable the information obtained from the sample.

Understanding the nature of the variation between samples, and what a random sample can tell us about the population from which it has been drawn, are important ideas which we explore in more detail in the remainder of this chapter, and in Chapter 15.

A calculator can be used to simulate selecting a random sample from a normal population.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

To generate a random sample of size 10 from a normal population with mean 100 and standard deviation 15:

- On a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page name the list 'iq' in Column A.
- In the formula cell of Column A, enter the formula using **Menu** > **Data** > **Random** > **Normal** and complete as: = randnorm(100, 15, 10)

Note: The syntax is: randNorm(*mean, standard deviation, sample size*)

	A iq	B	C
=	=randnorm(100,15,10)		
1	91.0621		
2	76.2353		
3	98.6677		
4	73.636		
5	91.8875		
A	iq:=randnorm(100,15,10)		

Using the Casio

To generate a random sample of size 10 from a normal population with mean 100 and standard deviation 15:

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- • Move the cursor to the top of List1.
- Select **RanNorm#**: **OPTN** **F5** **F4** **F3**
- Complete by entering: 15, 100, 20)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1				
2				
3				
4				

RanNorm# (15, 100, 20)

Ran# Int Norm Bin List Samp

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	102.11			
2	118.81			
3	95.249			
4	125.35			

102.1160166

Ran# Int Norm Bin List Samp

Note: The syntax is: RanNorm#(*standard deviation, mean, number of samples*)

Summary 14B

- For any distribution from which we are selecting a random sample:
 - the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
 - the larger the sample, the closer the distribution of the sample should be to the distribution of the population.

Exercise 14B

- 1** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{8} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 8$$

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 16 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random sample of size 16 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 80.

- 2** A uniform discrete random variable X has a probability distribution

$$p(x) = \frac{1}{5} \quad x = 1, 2, \dots, 5$$

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 100.

- 3** A Bernoulli random variable X has a probability distribution

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.3	0.7

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 100.

- 4** A Bernoulli random variable X has a probability distribution

x	0	1
$P(X = x)$	0.2	0.8

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 30 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random samples of size 30 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 100.
- 5** Let X represent the number of bullseyes scored by a player in a game of darts. The probability distribution of X is given by

$$P(X = x) = \binom{3}{x} (0.2)^x (0.8)^{3-x} \quad x = 0, 1, 2, 3$$

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random samples of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 100.
- 6** Let X represent the number of heads observed when a coin biased towards heads is tossed four times. The probability distribution of X is given by
- $$P(X = x) = \binom{4}{x} (0.55)^x (0.45)^{4-x} \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, 4$$
- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - ii** Simulate another random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability distribution of X .
 - iii** Comment on the variability between the two random samples.
- b** Repeat part **a** with a sample of size 100.

- 7** Consider a continuous random variable $X \sim N(110, 15^2)$.

- a**
- i** Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability density function of X .

- ii Simulate another random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the graph of the probability density function of X .
 - iii Calculate the mean and the standard deviation for each of the two samples, and compare to the population mean and standard deviation.
 - b Repeat part a with a sample of size 100.
- 8 Consider a continuous random variable $X \sim N(50, 6^2)$.
- a
 - i Simulate a random sample of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the probability density function of X .
 - ii Simulate another random samples of size 20 from this random variable. Construct a percentage frequency histogram of the data, and compare with the graph of the probability density function of X .
 - iii Calculate the mean and the standard deviation for each of the two samples, and compare to the population mean and standard deviation.
 - b Repeat part a with a sample of size 100.

14C The distribution of the sample proportion

Learning intentions

- ▶ To understand the sample proportion as a random variable.
- ▶ To be able to determine the exact distribution of the sample proportion when the population is small.
- ▶ To be able to determine the exact distribution of the sample proportion when the population is large.

The sample proportion as a random variable

Earlier in this chapter we considered the question:

- What proportion of Year 12 students in Australia intend to take a gap year?

To answer this question, we could take a random sample of Year 12 students in Australia, and use the proportion of Year 12 students in Australia intending to take a gap year in that sample to help answer the question.

However, we saw in the previous section that the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample, and hence this sample proportion will vary from sample to sample.

In this example, the population of interest Year 12 students in Australia, and the proportion of these students intending to take a gap year is called the **population proportion** and is generally denoted by p . The population proportion p is constant for a particular population.

$$\text{Population proportion } p = \frac{\text{number in population with attribute}}{\text{population size}}$$

The proportion of Year 12 students in Australia intending to take a gap year in the sample may be calculated by dividing the number of Year 12 students in Australia intending to take a gap year in the sample by the sample size. This value is called the **sample proportion** and is denoted by $\hat{p}$. (We say ‘p hat’.)

$$\text{Sample proportion } \hat{p} = \frac{\text{number in sample with attribute}}{\text{sample size}}$$

Note that different symbols are used for the sample proportion and the population proportion, so that we don’t confuse them.

- The population proportion p is a **population parameter**; its value is constant.
- The sample proportion $\hat{p}$ is a **sample statistic**; its value is not constant, but varies from sample to sample.

We have seen that the sample proportion varies from sample to sample. We can use our knowledge of probability to further develop our understanding of the distribution of the sample proportion.

Sampling from a small population

Suppose we have a bag containing six blue balls and four red balls, and from the bag we take a sample of size 4. We are interested in the proportion of blue balls in the sample. We know that the population proportion is equal to $\frac{6}{10} = \frac{3}{5}$. That is,

$$p = 0.6$$

The probabilities associated with the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ can be calculated either by direct consideration of the sample outcomes or by using our knowledge of selections from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2. Recall that

$$\binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$$

is the number of different ways to select x objects from n objects.



Example 4

A bag contains six blue balls and four red balls. If we take a random sample of size 4 (without replacement) determine the probability that there is one blue ball in the sample (that is, that $\hat{p} = \frac{1}{4}$).

Solution**Method 1**

Consider selecting the sample by taking one ball from the bag at a time (without replacement). The favourable outcomes are RRRB, RRBR, RBRR and BRRR, with

$$\begin{aligned} P(\{RRRB, RRBR, RBRR, BRRR\}) \\ &= \left(\frac{4}{10} \times \frac{3}{9} \times \frac{2}{8} \times \frac{6}{7}\right) + \left(\frac{4}{10} \times \frac{3}{9} \times \frac{6}{8} \times \frac{2}{7}\right) + \left(\frac{4}{10} \times \frac{6}{9} \times \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{2}{7}\right) + \left(\frac{6}{10} \times \frac{4}{9} \times \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{2}{7}\right) \\ &= \frac{4}{35} \end{aligned}$$

Method 2

In total, there are $\binom{10}{4} = 210$ ways to select 4 balls from 10 balls.

There are $\binom{4}{3} = 4$ ways of choosing 3 red balls from 4 red balls, and there are $\binom{6}{1} = 6$ ways of choosing one blue ball from 6 blue balls.

Thus the probability of obtaining 3 red balls and one blue ball is equal to

$$\frac{\binom{4}{3} \times \binom{6}{1}}{\binom{10}{4}} = \frac{24}{210} = \frac{4}{35}$$

The following table gives the probability of obtaining each possible sample proportion $\hat{p}$ when selecting a random sample of size 4 without replacement from the bag.

Number of blue balls in the sample	0	1	2	3	4
Proportion of blue balls in the sample, $\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1
Probability	$\frac{1}{210}$	$\frac{24}{210}$	$\frac{90}{210}$	$\frac{80}{210}$	$\frac{15}{210}$

We can see from the table that we can consider the sample proportion as a random variable, $\hat{P}$, and we can write:

$$\begin{aligned} \blacksquare P(\hat{P} = 0) &= \frac{1}{210} & \blacksquare P\left(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{4}\right) &= \frac{24}{210} & \blacksquare P\left(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{2}\right) &= \frac{90}{210} \\ \blacksquare P\left(\hat{P} = \frac{3}{4}\right) &= \frac{80}{210} & \blacksquare P(\hat{P} = 1) &= \frac{15}{210} \end{aligned}$$

The possible values of $\hat{p}$ and their associated probabilities together form a probability distribution for the random variable $\hat{P}$, which can be summarised as follows:

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{210}$	$\frac{24}{210}$	$\frac{90}{210}$	$\frac{80}{210}$	$\frac{15}{210}$

The distribution of a statistic which is calculated from a sample (such as the sample proportion) has a special name – it is called a **sampling distribution**.



Example 5

A bag contains six blue balls and four red balls. Use the sampling distribution in the previous table to determine the probability that the proportion of blue balls in a sample of size 4 is more than $\frac{1}{4}$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 P\left(\hat{P} > \frac{1}{4}\right) &= P\left(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{2}\right) + P\left(\hat{P} = \frac{3}{4}\right) + P(\hat{P} = 1) \\
 &= \frac{90}{210} + \frac{80}{210} + \frac{15}{210} \\
 &= \frac{185}{210} \\
 &= \frac{37}{42}
 \end{aligned}$$

Sampling from a large population

Generally, when we select a sample, it is from a population which is too large or too difficult to enumerate or even count – populations such as all the people in Australia, or all the cows in Texas, or all the people who will ever have asthma. When the population is so large, we assume that the probability of observing the attribute we are interested in remains constant with each selection, irrespective of prior selections for the sample.

Suppose we know that 70% of all 17-year-olds in Australia attend school. That is,

$$p = 0.7$$

We will assume that this probability remains constant for all selections for the sample.

Now consider selecting a random sample of size 4 from the population of all 17-year-olds in Australia. This time we can use our knowledge of binomial distributions to calculate the associated probability for each possible value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$, using the probability function

$$P(X = x) = \binom{4}{x} 0.7^x 0.3^{4-x} \quad x = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$$

The following table gives the probability of obtaining each possible sample proportion $\hat{p}$ when selecting a random sample of four 17-year-olds.

Number at school in the sample	0	1	2	3	4
Proportion at school in the sample, $\hat{p}$	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1
Probability	0.0081	0.0756	0.2646	0.4116	0.2401

Once again, we can summarise the sampling distribution of the sample proportion as follows:

$\hat{p}$	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.0081	0.0756	0.2646	0.4116	0.2401

The population that the sample of size $n = 4$ is being taken from is such that each item selected has a probability $p = 0.7$ of success. Thus we can define the random variable

$$\hat{P} = \frac{X}{4}$$

where X is a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 4$ and $p = 0.7$. To emphasise this we can write:

x	0	1	2	3	4
$\hat{p} = \frac{x}{4}$	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p}) = P(X = x)$	0.0081	0.0756	0.2646	0.4116	0.2401

Note: The probabilities for the sample proportions, $\hat{p}$, correspond to the probabilities for the numbers of successes, x .



Example 6

Use the sampling distribution in the previous table to determine the probability that, in a random sample of four Australian 17-year-olds, the proportion attending school is less than 50%.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 P(\hat{P} < 0.5) &= P(\hat{P} = 0) + P(\hat{P} = 0.25) \\
 &= 0.0081 + 0.0756 \\
 &= 0.0837
 \end{aligned}$$

The mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion

Since the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ is a random variable with a probability distribution, we can determine values for the mean and standard deviation, as illustrated in the following example.

**Example 7**

Use the probability distribution to determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ from Example 6.

$\hat{p}$	0	0.25	0.5	0.75	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.0081	0.0756	0.2646	0.4116	0.2401

Solution

By definition, the mean of $\hat{P}$ is given by

$$\begin{aligned} E(\hat{P}) &= \sum \hat{p} \cdot P(\hat{P} = \hat{p}) \\ &= 0 \times 0.0081 + 0.25 \times 0.0756 + 0.5 \times 0.2646 + 0.75 \times 0.4116 + 1 \times 0.2401 \\ &= 0.7 \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, by definition

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sd}(\hat{P}) &= \sqrt{E(\hat{P}^2) - [E(\hat{P})]^2} \\ E(\hat{P}^2) &= 0^2 \times 0.0081 + 0.25^2 \times 0.0756 + 0.5^2 \times 0.2646 + 0.75^2 \times 0.4116 \\ &\quad + 1^2 \times 0.2401 \\ &= 0.5425 \end{aligned}$$

Thus

$$\text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{0.5425 - 0.7^2} = 0.2291$$

We can see from Example 7 that the expected value of the sampling distribution in this case is actually the same as the value of the population proportion (0.7). Is this always true? Can we determine the expected value and standard deviation of the sample proportion without needing to find the probability distribution?

If we are selecting a random sample of size n from a large population, then the sample proportion is the random variable $\hat{P}$, where

$$\hat{P} = \frac{X}{n}$$

and X is a binomial random variable with parameters n and p . From Chapter 11, the mean and variance of X are given by

$$E(X) = np \quad \text{and} \quad \text{Var}(X) = np(1 - p)$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} E(\hat{P}) &= E\left(\frac{X}{n}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{n} E(X) \quad \text{since } E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b \\ &= \frac{1}{n} \times np \\ &= p \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{and } \text{Var}(\hat{P}) &= \text{Var}\left(\frac{X}{n}\right) \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{n}\right)^2 \text{Var}(X) \quad \text{since } \text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X) \\
&= \frac{1}{n^2} \times np(1-p) \\
&= \frac{p(1-p)}{n}
\end{aligned}$$

If we are selecting a random sample of size n from a large population, then the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ are given by

$$E(\hat{P}) = p \quad \text{and} \quad \text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$$

(The standard deviation of a sample statistic is often the **standard error**.)

Since the value of the standard deviation is inversely proportional to the sample size, we can see that the variation in the sampling distribution decreases as the sample size increases. This means that when the sample size is large we are unlikely to get a value of the sample proportion which is very different from the population proportion.



Example 8

Use the formulae to determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ from Example 6. Compare to as those found in Example 7.

Solution

$$E(\hat{P}) = p = 0.7$$

$$\text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.7(1-0.7)}{4}} = 0.2291$$

These are equal to the values obtained in Example 7.



Example 9

Suppose that 70% of 17-year-olds in Australia attend school. If a random sample of size 20 is chosen from this population, determine:

- a** the probability that the sample proportion is equal to the population proportion (0.7)
- b** the probability that the sample proportion lies within one standard deviation of the population proportion
- c** the probability that the sample proportion lies within two standard deviations of the population proportion.

Solution

- a** If the sample proportion is $\hat{p} = 0.7$ and the sample size is 20, then the number of school students in the sample is $0.7 \times 20 = 14$. Thus

$$\begin{aligned} P(\hat{P} = 0.7) &= P(X = 14) \\ &= \binom{20}{14} 0.7^{14} 0.3^6 = 0.1916 \end{aligned}$$

- b** We have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{sd}(\hat{P}) &= \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{0.7(1-0.7)}{20}} = 0.1025 \end{aligned}$$

Since $0.7 - 0.1025 = 0.5975$ and $0.7 + 0.1025 = 0.8025$, we find

$$\begin{aligned} P(0.5975 \leq \hat{P} \leq 0.8025) &= P(11.95 \leq X \leq 16.05) \\ &= P(12 \leq X \leq 16) \quad \text{since } X \text{ takes integer values} \\ &= 0.7795 \end{aligned}$$

- c** Since $0.7 - 2 \times 0.1025 = 0.495$ and $0.7 + 2 \times 0.1025 = 0.905$, we find

$$\begin{aligned} P(0.495 \leq \hat{P} \leq 0.905) &= P(9.9 \leq X \leq 18.1) \\ &= P(10 \leq X \leq 18) \\ &= 0.9752 \end{aligned}$$

Summary 14C

- The **population proportion** p is the proportion of individuals in the entire population possessing a particular attribute, and is constant.
- The **sample proportion** $\hat{p}$ is the proportion of individuals in a particular sample possessing the attribute, and varies from sample to sample.
- The distribution of a statistic which is calculated from a sample is called a **sampling distribution**.
- The **sample proportion** $\hat{P} = \frac{X}{n}$ is a random variable, where X is the number of favourable outcomes in a sample of size n .
- The distribution of $\hat{P}$ is known as the **sampling distribution** of the sample proportion.
- When the population is *small*, the sampling distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ can be determined using our knowledge of selections.
- When the population is *large*, the sampling distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ can be determined by assuming that X is a binomial random variable with parameters n and p . In this case, the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ are given by

$$E(\hat{P}) = p \quad \text{and} \quad \text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$$



Exercise 14C

Example 4, 5

- 1 Consider a bag containing five blue and five red balls.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of blue balls in the bag.
 - b When samples of size 3 are taken from the bag, without replacement, then a sample could contain 0, 1, 2 or 3 blue balls. Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of blue balls in the samples.
 - c Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of blue balls when samples of size 3 are taken from the bag, without replacement.
 - d Use the sampling distribution from c to determine the probability that the proportion of blue balls in the sample is more than 0.5. That is, $P(\hat{P} > 0.5)$.
- 2 A company employs a sales team of 20 people, consisting of 12 men and 8 women.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of men in the sales team.
 - b Five salespeople are to be selected at random to attend an important conference. Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of men in the sample.
 - c Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of men when samples of size 5 are selected from the sales team.
 - d Use the sampling distribution from c to determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.7)$.
 - e Determine $P(0 < \hat{P} < 0.7)$ and hence $P(\hat{P} < 0.7 | \hat{P} > 0)$.
- 3 A pond contains eight gold and eight black fish.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of gold fish in the pond.
 - b Three fish are to be selected at random. Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of gold fish in the sample.
 - c Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of gold fish when samples of size 3 are selected from the pond.
 - d Use the sampling distribution from c to determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.25)$.
- 4 A random sample of three items is selected from a batch of 10 items which contains four defectives.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of defectives in the batch.
 - b Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of defectives in the sample.
 - c Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of defectives in the sample.
 - d Use the sampling distribution from c to determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.5)$.
 - e Determine $P(0 < \hat{P} < 0.5)$ and hence $P(\hat{P} < 0.5 | \hat{P} > 0)$.

Example 6

- 5 Suppose that a fair coin is tossed four times, and the number of heads observed.
 - a Determine the value of p , the probability that a head is observed when a fair coin is tossed.
 - b Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of heads in the sample.
 - c Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of heads in the sample.
 - d Use the sampling distribution from c to determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.7)$.
- 6 Suppose that the probability of a male child is 0.5, and that a family has five children.
 - a Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of male children in the family.
 - b Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of male children in the family.
 - c Use the sampling distribution from b to determine the probability that the proportion of male children in the family is less than 0.4.
 - d Determine $P(\hat{P} > 0 | \hat{P} < 0.8)$.
- 7 Suppose that, in a certain country, the probability that a person is left-handed is 0.2. If four people are selected at random from that country:
 - a Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of left-handed people in the sample.
 - b Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of left-handed people in the sample.
 - c Determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.5 | \hat{P} > 0)$.

Example 8

- 8 Suppose that the probability of rain on any day is 0.3. Determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion of rainy days over a random sample of 30 days.
- 9 In a certain country, it is known that 40% of people speak more than one language. If a sample of 100 people is selected, determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion of people who speak more than one language.
- 10 An examination consists of 100 multiple-choice questions, each with five possible answers. Determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion of correct answers that will be achieved if a student guesses every answer.

Example 9

- 11 Suppose that 65% of people in Australia support a BBL cricket team. If a random sample of size 20 is chosen from this population, determine:
 - a the probability that the sample proportion is equal to the population proportion
 - b the probability that the sample proportion lies within one standard deviation of the population proportion
 - c the probability that the sample proportion lies within two standard deviations of the population proportion.

14D The normal approximation to the distribution of the sample proportion

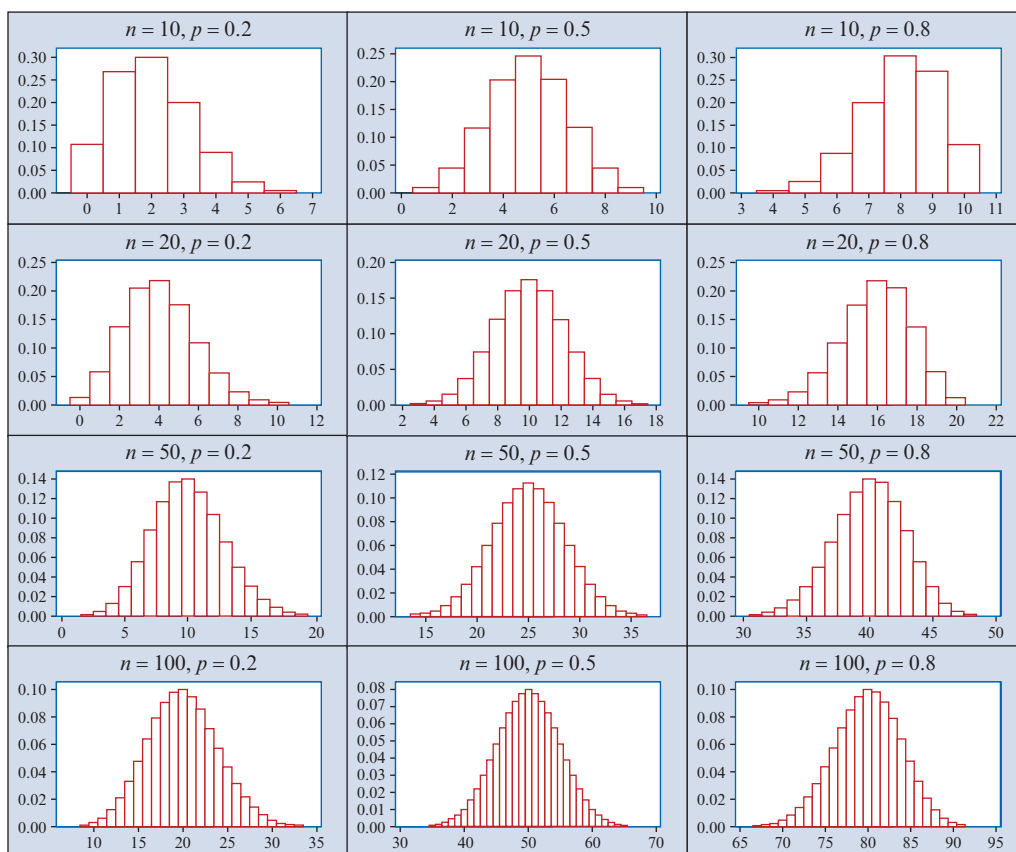
Learning intentions

- To recognise and use the normal approximation to the distribution of the sample proportion.

In the previous section, we used our knowledge of probability to determine the exact distribution of the sample proportion. Working out the exact probabilities associated with a sample proportion is really only practical when the sample size is quite small (say less than 10). In practice, we are rarely working with such small samples. But we can overcome this problem by approximating the distribution of the sample proportion.

In many cases, it is possible to use the normal distribution to approximate the binomial distribution. This approximation is fundamental to our understanding of confidence intervals, which are introduced in Chapter 15.

We saw in Chapter 9 that the shape of the binomial distribution depends on n and p . The following plots show the binomial distribution for $n = 10, 20, 50, 100$ and $p = 0.2, 0.5, 0.8$.



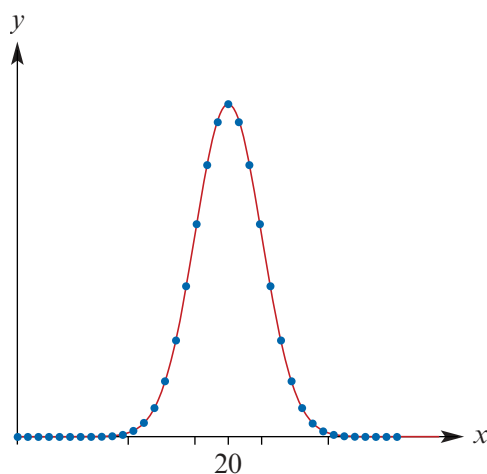
We can see that, if n is small and p is close to 0 or 1, these distributions are skewed.

Otherwise, they look remarkably symmetric. In fact, if n is large enough and p is not too close to 0 or 1, the binomial distribution is approximately normal. Moreover, the mean and standard deviation of this normal distribution agree with those of the binomial distribution.

In the figure opposite, the binomial distribution with $n = 40$ and $p = 0.5$ is plotted (the blue points). This distribution has mean $\mu = 20$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{10}$.

On the same axes, the probability density function of the normal distribution with mean $\mu = 20$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{10}$ is drawn (the red curve).

We will see that this approximation has important uses in statistics.



When is it appropriate to use the normal approximation?

If n is large enough, the skew of the binomial distribution is not too great. In this case, the normal distribution can be used as a reasonable approximation to the binomial distribution. The approximation is generally better for larger n and when p is not too close to 0 or 1.

If n is sufficiently large, the binomial random variable X will be approximately normally distributed, with a mean of $\mu = np$ and a standard deviation of $\sigma = \sqrt{np(1-p)}$.

One rule of thumb is that both np and $n(1-p)$ must be greater than 5 for a satisfactory approximation.

In the example shown in the figure above, we have $np = 20$ and $n(1-p) = 20$.

Consider now the distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ obtained from sampling from a large population.

Now $\hat{P} = \frac{X}{n}$ where X is a binomial random variable, and n is the sample size.

Since the distribution of X is approximately normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = np$ and a standard deviation of $\sigma = \sqrt{np(1-p)}$, it follows that $\hat{P}$ is also approximately normally distributed.

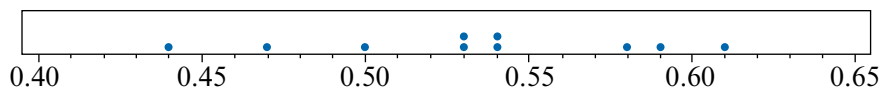
We can demonstrate this result empirically. Suppose, for example, we know that 55% of people in Australia have blue eyes ($p = 0.55$) and that we are interested in the values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ which might be observed when samples of size 100 are drawn at random from the population.

If we select one sample of 100 people and find that 50 people have blue eyes, then the value of the sample proportion is $\hat{p} = \frac{50}{100} = 0.5$.

If a second sample of 100 people is selected and this time 58 people have blue eyes, then the

value of the sample proportion for this second sample is $\hat{p} = \frac{58}{100} = 0.58$.

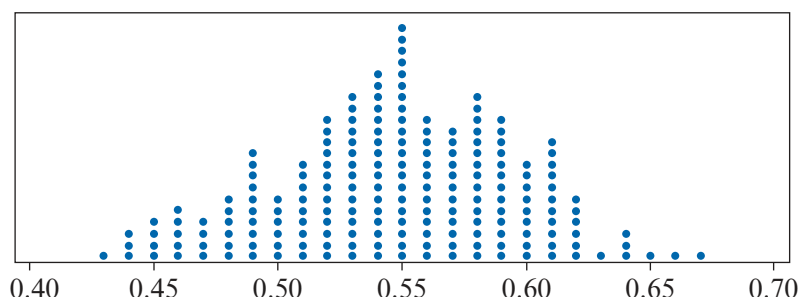
Continuing in this way, after selecting 10 samples, the values of $\hat{p}$ that are observed might look like those in the following dotplot:



It is clear that the proportion of people with blue eyes in the sample, $\hat{p}$, is varying from sample to sample: from as low as 0.44 to as high as 0.61 for these particular 10 samples.

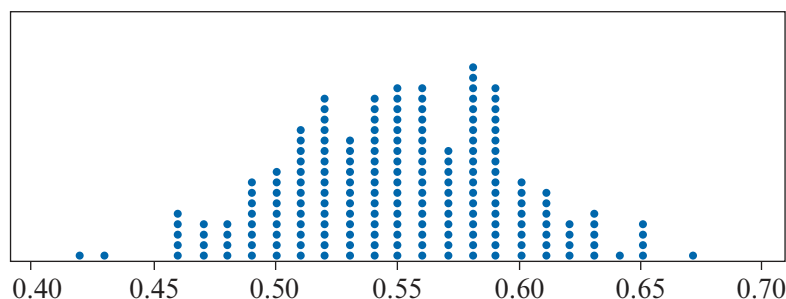
What does the distribution of the sample proportions look like if we continue with this sampling process?

The following dotplot summarises the values of $\hat{p}$ observed when 200 samples (each of size 100) were selected from a population in which the probability of having blue eyes is 0.55. We can see from the dotplot that the distribution is reasonably symmetric, centred at 0.55, and has values ranging from 0.43 to 0.67.



What does the distribution look like when another 200 samples (each of size 100) are selected at random from the same population?

The following dotplot shows the distribution obtained when this experiment was repeated. Again, the distribution is reasonably symmetric, centred at 0.55, and has values ranging from 0.42 to 0.67.



It seems reasonable to infer from these examples that, while there will be variation in the details of the distribution each time we take a collection of samples, the distribution of the values of $\hat{p}$ observed tends to conform to a predictable shape, centre and spread.

The dotplots confirm the reasonableness of the normality assumption with regard to the sample proportion $\hat{P}$, which is a linear function of a binomial random variable.

Repeated sampling can be investigated using a calculator.



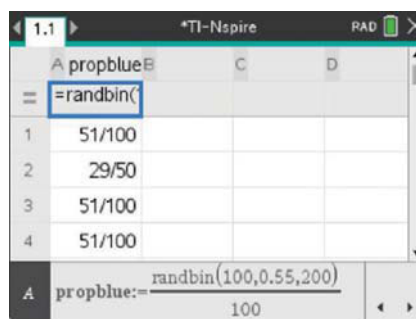
Example 10

Assume that 55% of people in Australia have blue eyes. Use your calculator to illustrate a possible distribution of sample proportions $\hat{p}$ that may be obtained when 200 different samples (each of size 100) are selected from the population.



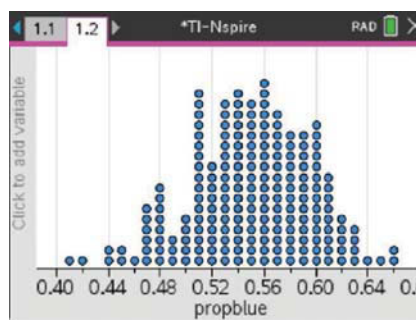
Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- To generate the sample proportions:
 - On a **Lists & Spreadsheet** page name the list 'propblue' in Column A.
 - In the formula cell of Column A, enter the formula using **menu** > **Data** > **Random** > **Binomial** and complete as:
= randBin(100, 0.55, 200)/100



Note: The syntax is: randBin(*sample size*, *population proportion*, *number of samples*)
To calculate as a proportion, divide by the sample size.

- To display the distribution of sample proportions:
 - Insert a **Data & Statistics** page (**ctrl** **I** or **ctrl** **doc**).
 - Click on 'Click to add variable' on the horizontal axis and select 'propblue'. A dotplot is displayed.

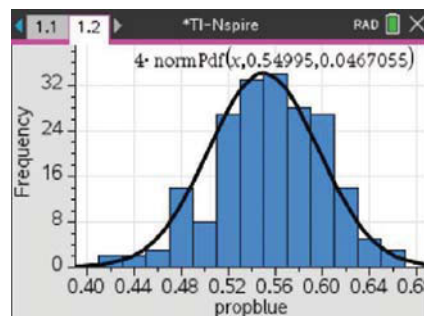


Note: You can recalculate the random sample proportions by using **ctrl** **R** while in the **Lists & Spreadsheet** page.

■ To fit a normal curve to the distribution:

- **menu** > **Plot Type** > **Histogram**
- **menu** > **Analyze** > **Show Normal PDF**

Note: The calculated Normal PDF, based on the data set, is superimposed on the plot, showing the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion.



Using the Casio

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- To generate the sample proportions:
 - Move the cursor to the top of List1.
 - Select **RanBin#**: **OPTN** **F5** **F4** **F4**
 - Complete by entering: 100,0.55,200)/100

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1				
2				
3				
4				

RanBin#(100,0.55,200)

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	0.58			
2	0.48			
3	0.47			
4	0.55			

0.58

GRAPH1 GRAPH2 GRAPH3 SELECT SET

Note: The syntax is: $\text{RanBin\#}(\text{sample size}, \text{population proportion}, \text{number of samples})$
To calculate as a proportion, divide by the sample size.

- To construct a histogram to display the distribution of sample proportions:

- Go to Graph Settings and select **Histogram** for the Graph Type:

EXIT **EXIT** **EXIT** **F1** **F6** ▼ **F6** **F1** **EXE**

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	0.58			
2	0.48			
3	0.47			
4	0.55			

0.58

StatGraph1

Graph Type :Hist

XList :List1

Frequency :1

Color Link :Off

Hist Area :Blue/L

HistBorder :Black

Hist MedBox Bar IN-Dist Broken

- Enter a width of 0.01.

	List 1	List 2	List 3	List 4
SUB				
1	0.58			
2	0.48			
3	0.47			
4	0.55			

0.58

Histogram Setting

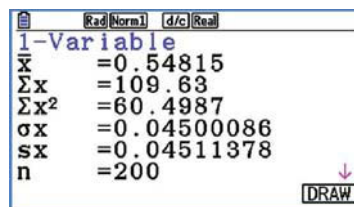
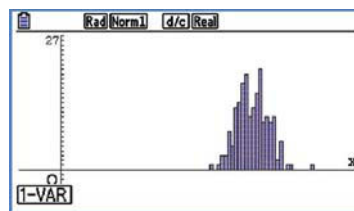
Start:0

Width:0.01

Draw:[EXE]

GRAPH1 GRAPH2 GRAPH3 SELECT SET

- Press **(EXE)** to draw the graph.
- To obtain statistics from the distribution, select **1-Var**.



When the sample size n is large, the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ has an approximately normal distribution, with mean $\mu = p$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$.

Thus, when samples of size $n = 100$ are selected from a population in which the proportion of people with blue eyes is $p = 0.55$, the distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ is approximately normal, with mean and standard deviation given by

$$\mu = E(\hat{P}) = 0.55 \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma = \text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{0.55 \times 0.45}{100}} = 0.0497$$



Example 11

Assume that 60% of people have a driver's licence. Using the normal approximation, determine the approximate probability that, in a randomly selected sample of size 200, more than 65% of people have a driver's licence.

Solution

Here $n = 200$ and $p = 0.6$. Since n is large, the distribution of $\hat{P}$ is approximately normal, with mean $\mu = p = 0.6$ and standard deviation

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{0.6(1-0.6)}{200}} = 0.0346$$

Thus the probability that more than 65% of people in the sample have a driver's licence is

$$P(\hat{P} > 0.65) = 0.0745 \quad (\text{correct to four decimal places})$$

The use of a normal approximation allows us to find approximate solutions to problems which could not be solved exactly using the binomial distribution, as shown in the following example.

**Example 12**

Suppose again that 60% of people have a driver's licence, and that a random sample of size n is selected from the population. If the probability that the proportion of people in the sample with a driver's licence is less than 58% is equal to 0.3446, determine the size of the sample chosen.

Solution

Here n is unknown, $p = 0.6$, and $P(\hat{P} < 0.58) = 0.3446$. We will assume that n is large enough so that the distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ is approximately normal, with mean and standard deviation given by

$$\mu = E(\hat{P}) = 0.60 \quad \text{and} \quad \sigma = \text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{0.6 \times 0.4}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.24}{n}}$$

$$\text{Thus } P(\hat{P} < 0.58) = P\left(Z < \frac{-0.02}{\sqrt{\frac{0.24}{n}}}\right) = 0.3446$$

Using the inverse-normal facility of the calculator, enter 0.3446 and we find

$$\frac{-0.02}{\sqrt{\frac{0.24}{n}}} = -0.400$$

Solving this equation gives us $n = 96$.

Summary 14D

When the sample size n is large, the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ has an approximately normal distribution, with mean $\mu = p$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$.

**Exercise 14D**

In each of the following questions, use the normal approximation to the binomial distribution.

Example 10

- 1 Assume that 40% of people in Australia have brown eyes.
 - a Use your calculator to construct a histogram of sample proportions $\hat{p}$ that may be obtained when 200 different samples (each of size 50) are selected from the population.
 - b Use your calculator to construct a histogram of sample proportions $\hat{p}$ that may be obtained when 200 different samples (each of size 100) are selected from the population.
 - c Compare the histograms from parts a and b in terms of shape, centre and spread.

Example 11

- 2 Determine the approximate probability that, in the next 50 tosses of a fair coin, the proportion of heads observed will be less than or equal to 0.46.

- 3 In a large city, 12% of the workforce are unemployed. If 300 people from the workforce are selected at random, determine the approximate probability that more than 10% of the people surveyed are unemployed.
- 4 It is known that on average 50% of the children born at a particular hospital are female. Determine the approximate probability that more than 60% of the next 25 children born at that hospital will be female.
- 5 A car manufacturer expects 10% of cars produced to require minor adjustments before they are certified as ready for sale. Determine the approximate probability that more than 15% of the next 200 cars inspected will require minor adjustments.
- 6 Past records show that on average 30% of the workers at a particular company have had one or more accidents in the workplace. Determine the approximate probability that less than 20% of a random sample of 50 workers have had one or more accidents.
- 7 Sacha is shooting at a target which she has a probability of 0.6 of hitting. Determine the approximate probability that:
 - a the proportion of times she hits the target in her next 100 attempts is less than 0.8
 - b the proportion of times she hits the target in her next 100 attempts is between 0.6 and 0.8
 - c the proportion of times she hits the target in her next 100 attempts is between 0.7 and 0.8, given that it is more than 0.6.
- 8 Determine the approximate probability that, in the next 100 tosses of a fair coin, the proportion of heads will be between 0.4 and 0.6.
- 9 A machine has a probability of 0.1 of producing a defective item.
 - a Determine the approximate probability that, in the next batch of 1000 items produced, the proportion of defective items will be between 0.08 and 0.12.
 - b Determine the approximate probability that, in the next batch of 1000 items produced, the proportion of defective items will be between 0.08 and 0.12, given that we know that it is greater than 0.10.
- 10 The proportion of voters in the population who favour Candidate A is 52%. Of a random sample of 400 voters, 230 indicated that they would vote for Candidate A at the next election.
 - a Determine the value of the sample proportion, $\hat{p}$.
 - b Determine the approximate probability that, in a random sample of 400 voters, the proportion who favour Candidate A is greater than or equal to the value of $\hat{p}$ observed in this particular sample.

Example 12

- 11 Suppose that in a certain community 35% of people have wavy hair. If in a sample of size n the probability that the proportion of people with wavy hair is less than 32% is equal to 0.2445, determine the size of the sample. Give n to the nearest whole number.

Chapter summary

Sampling

- A **population** is the set of all eligible members of a group which we intend to study.
- A **sample** is a subset of the population which we select in order to make inferences about the population. Generalising from the sample to the population will not be useful unless the sample is representative of the population.
- A sample is called a **random sample** if it is selected from the population in such a way that every member of the population has an equal chance of being chosen as the sample.
- For any distribution from which we are selecting a random sample:
 - the contents of a random sample will vary from sample to sample
 - the larger the sample, the more likely the sample reflects the population from which it was selected.
- The **population proportion** p is the proportion of individuals in the entire population possessing a particular attribute, and is constant.
- The **sample proportion** $\hat{p}$ is the proportion of individuals in a particular sample possessing the attribute, and varies from sample to sample.
- The sample proportion $\hat{P} = \frac{X}{n}$ is a random variable, where X is the number of favourable outcomes in a sample of size n . The distribution of the random variable $\hat{P}$ is known as the **sampling distribution** of the sample proportion.
- When the population is *small*, the sampling distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ can be determined using our knowledge of selections.
- When the population is *large*, the sampling distribution of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ can be determined by assuming that X is a binomial random variable with parameters n and p . In this case, the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ are given by

$$E(\hat{P}) = p \quad \text{and} \quad \text{sd}(\hat{P}) = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$$

- When the sample size n is large, the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ has an approximately normal distribution, with mean $\mu = p$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$.

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



14A

1 I understand the concept of a random sample.



See Example 1 and Question 1

14A

2 I can use procedures to choose a random sample.



See Example 2 and Question 6

- 14A** **3** I can identify sources of bias in a sample. ☐
See Questions 8 -12
- 14B** **4** I can simulate a random sample from a uniform probability distribution. ☐
See Question 1
- 14B** **5** I can simulate a random sample from a Bernoulli probability distribution. ☐
See Question 2
- 14B** **6** I can simulate a random sample from a binomial probability distribution. ☐
See Question 3
- 14B** **7** I can simulate a random sample from a normal probability distribution. ☐
See Question 4
- 14C** **8** I can determine the exact distribution of the sample proportion when sampling from a small population without replacement. ☐
See Examples 4 and 5, and Question 1
- 14C** **9** I can determine the exact distribution of the sample proportion when sampling from a large population. ☐
See Example 6 and Question 5
- 14C** **10** I can determine the mean and the variance of the sample proportion when sampling with replacement or from a large population. ☐
See Example 8 and Question 8
- 14D** **11** I can use a calculator to simulate the distribution of the sample proportion. ☐
See Example 10 and Question 1
- 14D** **12** I can recognise and use the approximate normality of the distribution of the sample proportion for large samples. ☐
See Example 11 and Question 2.

Short - response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1** A company has 2000 employees, 700 of whom are female. A random sample of 100 employees was selected, and 40 of them were female. In this example:
- a** Describe the population.
 - b** Determine the value of the population proportion p .
 - c** Determine the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.

- 2 To study the effectiveness of yoga for reducing stress levels, a researcher measured the stress levels of 50 people who had just enrolled in a 10-week introductory yoga course, and then measured their stress levels at the end of the course.
 - a Do you think that this sample will be representative of the general population? Explain your answer.
 - b Suggest how a sample should be chosen.
- 3 Social researchers suggested that people who spend more time gardening also tend to spend more time on housework. They randomly selected 120 people who lived in houses with a garden and over the course of one month, measured the amount of time they spent gardening and the amount of time they spent on housework. Do you think this sample will be representative of the general population? Explain your answer.
- 4 Consider a bag containing three blue and two red balls.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of blue balls in the bag.
 - b Samples of size 3 are taken from the bag without replacement. If $\hat{P}$ is a random variable describing the possible values for the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of blue balls in the sample, list the possible values that $\hat{P}$ can take.
 - c Determine $P(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{3})$.
- 5 A random sample of four items is selected without replacement from a batch of 8 items which contains 3 defectives.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of defectives in the batch.
 - b Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of defectives in the sample.
 - c Determine $P(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{4})$.
- 6 Suppose that, in a certain country, the probability that a person is over 80 years old is 0.1. If three people are selected at random from that country:
 - a Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of people over 80 years old in the sample.
 - b Determine $P(\hat{P} = \frac{1}{3})$.
- 7 In a certain country, it is known that 20% of 18-24 year olds are unemployed. If a sample of 100 people from this age group is selected, determine the mean and standard deviation of the sample proportion of 18-24 year olds who are unemployed.
- 8 In a large population the proportion of blonde haired people is $\frac{1}{8}$. Let $\hat{P}$ be the random variable that represents that the sample proportion of blonde haired people in a sample of size n . Determine the smallest integer value of n such that the standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ is less than or equal to $\frac{1}{80}$.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 9 A debating team has five members: two who are in Year 11 and three who are in Year 12.
 - a Determine the value of p , the proportion of Year 12's in the debating team.

- b** Three of the five team members are to be selected at random to participate in the next debate. Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of Year 12's in the selected group.
- c** Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of Year 12's when samples of size 3 are selected from the debating team.
- d** Use the sampling distribution from part **c** to determine the probability that the proportion of Year 12's in the selected group is more than 0.5.
- 10** Suppose that the probability that a person owns a dog is 0.5, and a random sample of four people is selected.
- a** Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of people who own a dog.
- b** Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of people who own a dog.
- c** Use the sampling distribution from part **b** to determine the probability that the proportion of people in the sample who own a dog is less than 0.5.
- d** Determine $P(\hat{P} < 0.5 \mid \hat{P} < 0.8)$.
- 11** It is known that 60% of the voters in a particular electorate support the Liberal Party. A sample of 100 voters is taken. Let the random variable $\hat{P}$ represent the proportion of voters who support the Liberal Party in the sample. Use the normal approximation to determine:
- a** $P(\hat{P} > 0.65)$ **b** $P(0.5 < \hat{P} < 0.65)$
- 12** A manufacturer claims that 90% of their batteries will last more than 100 hours. Of a random sample of 250 batteries, 212 lasted more than 100 hours.
- a** Determine the value of the sample proportion, $\hat{p}$.
- b** Determine the approximate probability that, in a random sample of 250 batteries, the proportion lasting more than 100 hours is less than or equal to the value of $\hat{p}$ observed in this particular sample if the manufacturer's claim is correct.
- c** Use your answer to part **b** to comment on the manufacturer's claim.
- 13** It is known that 70% of the students in a particular state study mathematics at Year 12. Let the random variable $\hat{P}$ represent the proportion of Year 12 students in a sample of size n selected from that state who study mathematics.
- a** Suppose $n = 100$. Without using the normal approximation determine:
- i** $P(\hat{P} > 0.75)$
- ii** $P(0.68 \leq \hat{P} < 0.75 \mid \hat{P} > 0.68)$
- b** If the probability that the proportion of Year 12 students in the sample who study mathematics is less than 66% is equal to 0.0228, use a normal approximation to determine the size of the sample chosen.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 In a complete census of the population of a particular community, it is found that 59% of families have two or more children. Here '59%' represents the value of a

A sample statistic	B population parameter
C population	D sample parameter

- 2 The School Council wishes to evaluate students' approval of the school library. Select which of the following methods of collecting the students' opinions would give a random sample.

A The students present in the library one lunchtime were given a questionnaire.	B The top 100 library users were given a questionnaire.
C A list of all the students in the school was obtained, and a random sample of 100 of these students were given a questionnaire.	D Questionnaire were left at the school office, and any interested student was invited to fill out the questionnaire.

- 3 A film club has 150 members. To find out which type of movie the members prefer a questionnaire was given to 50 randomly selected members. 20 members chose drama, 15 chose comedy, 8 chose horror, and 7 chose romance. In this example, the size of the population is

A 15	B 20	C 50	D 150

- 4 Research has shown that 1% of Australians have green eyes. A random sample of 50 Australians was selected and 2% of the sample had green eyes. In this example

A $p = 0.01, \hat{p} = 0.02$	B $p = 0.01, \hat{p} = 0.04$
C $p = 0.02, \hat{p} = 0.01$	D $p = 0.02, \hat{p} = 0.04$

- 5 Consider a bag containing two green and five white balls. The possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of green balls in the sample when samples of size 3 are taken from the bag, without replacement, are

A $\left\{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\right\}$	B $\{0, 1, 2, 3\}$	C $\left\{0, \frac{1}{7}, \frac{2}{7}\right\}$	D $\left\{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\right\}$

- 6 Suppose that in a certain population 90% of people own smart phones. The mean and standard deviation of the proportion of people who own mobile phones in a sample of size 100 are

A $E(\hat{P})=0.9, \text{sd}(\hat{P})= 0.03$	B $E(\hat{P})= 0.1, \text{sd}(\hat{P})= 0.0009$
C $E(\hat{P})=0.9, \text{sd}(\hat{P})=0.3$	D $E(\hat{P})= 90, \text{sd}(\hat{P})= 90$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 7** In a certain country it is known that 15% of golfers play left-handed. A random sample of 20 golfers is to be selected. If $\hat{P}$ is the proportion of golfers in the sample who play left-handed, then $P(\hat{P} \geq \frac{3}{10})$ is closest to
- A** 0.9780 **B** 0.9326 **C** 0.0673 **D** 0.0219
- 8** It is known that 20% of students in a very large school study Chinese. The probability that, in a random sample of 20 students, the proportion of students who study Chinese is less than 10% is closest to
- A** 0.0160 **B** 0.0692 **C** 0.0115 **D** 0.2061
- 9** If a fair coin is tossed 10 times, then the probability that the proportion of heads obtained is less than 20% or more than 80% is closest to
- A** 0.0107 **B** 0.0215 **C** 0.9516 **D** 0.9785

The following information relates to Questions 10, 11 and 12

A coin is biased, so that the probability of showing a head when it is tossed is 0.53. The coin is to be tossed 100 times.

- 10** If $\hat{P}$ is the proportion of heads showing when the coin is tossed 100 times, then the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ are closest to
- A** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.53$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.0499$ **B** $E(\hat{P}) = 53$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 4.99$
C $E(\hat{P}) = 0.53$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.0025$ **D** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.53$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.2491$
- 11** The probability that in the next 100 tosses the proportion of heads observed will be more than 50% is closest to
- A** 0.5398 **B** 0.6178 **C** 0.6922 **D** 0.4602
- 12** Using the normal approximation, the probability that in the next 100 tosses the proportion of heads observed will be at least 50% is closest to
- A** 0.5000 **B** 0.4206 **C** 0.6557 **D** 0.7261
- 13** The distribution of a certain sample proportion has a mean of $\frac{9}{16}$ and a standard deviation of $\frac{3}{160}$. The sample size is closest to
- A** 13 **B** 700 **C** 172 **D** 4900
- 14** There are 10,000 bricks in a large container, some of which are red and the rest are grey. There are more red bricks in the container than grey. Random samples of 100 bricks are selected from the container, with replacement. If $\hat{P}$ is the random variable describing the proportion of red bricks in the sample, and the standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ is 0.04, then the number of red bricks in the container is
- A** 6000 **B** 7000 **C** 8000 **D** 9000

15

Interval estimates for proportions

Chapter contents

- ▶ **15A** Confidence intervals for the population proportion
- ▶ **15B** Varying the level of confidence
- ▶ **15C** Margin of error

In practice, the reason we analyse samples is to further our understanding of the population from which they are drawn. That is, we know what is in the sample, and from that knowledge we would like to infer something about the population. In this chapter we will apply our knowledge of the normal approximation to the binomial distribution to estimate the value of a population proportion, which is unknown, based on what we have observed in a sample.

This chapter covers Unit 4 Topic 5: Interval estimates for proportions.

15A Confidence intervals for the population proportion

Learning intentions

- ▶ To use the sample proportion as a **point estimate** of the population proportion.
- ▶ To understand the concept of an interval estimate for a parameter.
- ▶ To understand and use an approximate 95% confidence interval for the sample proportion.

Point estimates

Suppose, for example, we wish to know the proportion of primary school children in Australia who regularly use social media. The value of the population proportion p is unknown. As already mentioned, collecting information about the whole population is generally not feasible, and so a random sample must suffice. What information can be obtained from a single sample? Certainly, the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ gives some indication of the value of the population proportion p , and can be used when we have no other information.

The value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ can be used to estimate the population proportion p . Since this is a single-valued estimate, it is called a **point estimate** of p .

Thus, if we select a random sample of 100 Australian primary school children and determine that the proportion who use social media is 0.8, then the value $\hat{p} = 0.8$ serves as an estimate of the unknown population proportion p .

Interval estimates

The value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ obtained from a single sample is going to change from sample to sample, and while sometimes the value will be close to the population proportion p , at other times it will not. To use a single value to estimate p can be rather risky. What is required is an interval that we are reasonably sure contains the parameter value p .

We have already seen that, when the sample size n is large, the sample proportion $\hat{P}$, which is a random variable, has an approximately normal distribution with mean $\mu = p$ and standard deviation $\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$. We used this result in Chapter 14 to determine the probability of observing a specific set of values of $\hat{P}$ derived from a sample of size n , as illustrated in the Example 1.



Example 1

If the population proportion $p = 0.3$, use the normal approximation to determine the probability that the sample proportion $\hat{P}$ from a sample of size 50 is more than 0.2 but less than 0.4.

Solution

Here $n = 50$ and $p = 0.3$.

The distribution of $\hat{P}$ is approximately normal, with mean $\mu = p = 0.3$ and standard deviation

$$\sigma = \sqrt{\frac{0.3(1-0.3)}{50}} = 0.0648$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} P(0.2 < \hat{P} < 0.4) &\approx P\left(\frac{0.2 - 0.3}{0.0648} < Z < \frac{0.4 - 0.3}{0.0648}\right) \\ &= P(-1.543 < Z < 1.543) \\ &= 0.8772 \end{aligned}$$

In Chapter 14 we established that we could use the normal approximation to determine intervals within which the values of $\hat{P}$ would lie with a given probability, as illustrated in Example 2.

**Example 2**

If $p = 0.3$, and $\hat{p}$ is the sample proportion calculated from a sample of size 50, determine correct to three decimal places the values of k_1 and k_2 such that $P(k_1 < \hat{P} < k_2) = 0.95$.

Solution

We know from Example 1 that $\mu = 0.3$ and the standard deviation $\sigma = 0.0648$

$$P(k_1 < \hat{P} < k_2) = 0.95$$

$$\text{Thus } P\left(\frac{k_1 - 0.3}{0.0648} < Z < \frac{k_2 - 0.3}{0.0648}\right) = 0.95$$

We know from the inverse normal distribution that:

$$P(-1.9600 < Z < 1.9600) = 0.95$$

$$\text{Thus } \frac{k_1 - 0.3}{0.0648} = -1.9600$$

$$\text{and } \frac{k_2 - 0.3}{0.0648} = 1.9600$$

Solving we determine $k_1 = 0.173$ and $k_2 = 0.427$

Note: We will always assume that the interval required is symmetric.

In Example 1 and Example 2 we knew the value of the population proportion p , and used that knowledge to determine possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{P}$. But for the remainder of this chapter, we are going to assume that we do **not** know the value of the population proportion p .

What we do know is a value of the sample proportion, obtained from a particular sample, and we want to use that to determine an interval estimate of the population proportion.

An **interval estimate** for the population proportion p is called a **confidence interval** for p .

We will start by determining a general expression for the standardised value of $\hat{P}$. That is, we can say that

$$Z \approx \frac{\hat{P} - p}{\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}}$$

where Z is the standard normal random variable.

We know from Example 2 that $P(-1.9600 < Z < 1.9600) = 0.95$, correct to two decimal places, and therefore

$$P\left(-1.9600 < \frac{\hat{P} - p}{\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}} < 1.9600\right) \approx 0.95$$

Multiplying through by $\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}$ gives

$$P\left(-1.9600\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} < \hat{P} - p < 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}\right) \approx 0.95$$

Further simplifying, we obtain an interval which includes p with a probability of 0.95. That is:

$$P\left(\hat{P} - 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}} < p < \hat{P} + 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{p(1-p)}{n}}\right) \approx 0.95$$

Remember that what we want to do is to use the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ obtained from a single sample to calculate an interval that we are 95% certain contains the true population proportion p (which we do not know).

In order to do this, we need to make one further approximation, and substitute $\hat{p}$ for p in our estimate of the standard deviation σ of $\hat{P}$.

An approximate **95% confidence interval** for p is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}\right)$$

where:

- p is the population proportion (unknown)
- $\hat{p}$ is a value of the sample proportion
- n is the size of the sample from which $\hat{p}$ was calculated.

Note: In order to use this rule to calculate a confidence interval, the criteria for the normal approximation to the binomial distribution must apply. Therefore, from Chapter 14, we require both np and $n(1-p)$ to be greater than 5.



Example 3

Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion p of primary school children in Australia who regularly use social media, if we select a random sample of 100 children and determine the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ to be 0.8.

Solution

Since $\hat{p} = 0.8$ and $n = 100$, we have

$$\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.8 \times 0.2}{100}} = 0.04$$

and so a 95% confidence interval for p is

$$(0.8 - 1.9600 \times 0.04, 0.8 + 1.9600 \times 0.04) = (0.7216, 0.8784)$$

Since the value of the population proportion, p , can be considered equivalent to the probability of that event occurring, a confidence interval for a population proportion can also be considered as a confidence interval for the probability that an event will occur.

Interpretation of confidence intervals

The confidence interval found in Example 3 should *not* be interpreted as meaning that $P(0.7216 < p < 0.8784) = 0.95$. In fact, such a statement is meaningless, as p is a constant for a particular population, and either does or does not lie in the stated interval.

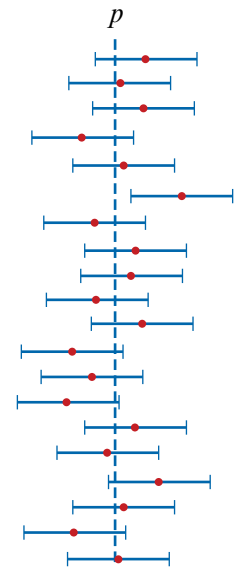
The particular confidence interval found is just one of any number of confidence intervals which could be found for the population proportion p , each one depending on the particular value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.

The correct interpretation of a 95% confidence interval is that we expect approximately 95% of such intervals to contain the population proportion p . Whether or not the particular confidence interval obtained contains the population proportion p is generally not known.

If we were to repeat the process of taking a sample and calculating a confidence interval many times, the result would be something like that indicated in the diagram.

The diagram shows the confidence intervals obtained when 20 different samples were drawn from the same population. The red dot indicates the value of the sample estimate in each case. The intervals vary, because the samples themselves vary. The value of the population proportion p is indicated by the vertical line, and it is of course constant.

It is quite easy to see from the diagram that none of the values of the sample estimate is exactly the same as the population proportion, but that all the intervals except one (19 out of 20, or 95%) have captured the value of the population proportion, as would be expected in the case of a 95% confidence interval.



Using a calculator to determine confidence intervals



Example 4

A survey found that 237 out of 500 undergraduate university students questioned intended to take a postgraduate course in the future. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of undergraduates intending to take a postgraduate course.

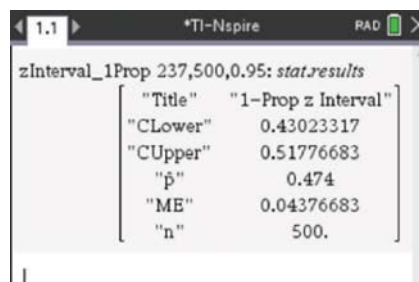
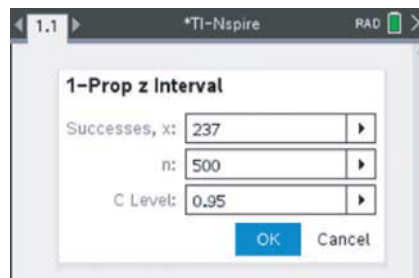


Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

On a **Calculator** page:

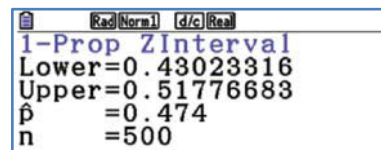
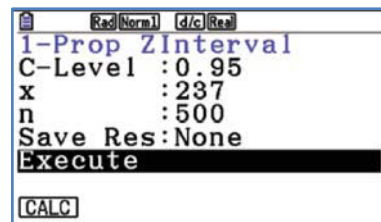
- Use **menu** > **Statistics** > **Confidence Intervals** > **1-Prop z Interval**.
- Enter the values $x = 237$ and $n = 500$ as shown.
- The 'CLower' and 'CUpper' values give the 95% confidence interval (0.43, 0.52).

Note: 'ME' stands for margin of error, which is covered in the next section.



Using the Casio

- Press **MENU** **2** to select **Statistics** mode.
- For the Confidence Interval menu, select **Intr** **F4**.
- Select **Z** **F1** and then **1-Prop** **F3**.
- Enter the values $x = 237$ and $n = 500$ as shown.
- The 'Lower' and 'Upper' values give the 95% confidence interval (0.43, 0.52).



Summary 15A

- The value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ calculated from a sample can be used as a **point estimate** of p , the population proportion.
- An **interval estimate** for the population proportion p is called a **confidence interval**.
- An approximate **95% confidence interval** for the population proportion p is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

where:

- $\hat{p}$ is a value of the sample proportion
- n is the size of the sample from which $\hat{p}$ was calculated

Exercise 15A**Example 1**

- 1 If the population proportion $p = 0.25$, use the normal approximation to determine $P(0.15 < \hat{P} < 0.35)$ in a sample of size 100.
- 2 If the population proportion $p = 0.62$, use the normal approximation to determine $P(0.52 < \hat{P} < 0.72)$ in a sample of size 60.

Example 2

- 3 If $p = 0.3$, and $\hat{p}$ is the sample proportion calculated from a sample of size 50, determine correct to three decimal places the values of k_1 and k_2 such that $P(k_1 < \hat{P} < k_2) = 0.95$.
- 4 If $p = 0.4$, and $\hat{p}$ is the sample proportion calculated from a sample of size 100, determine correct to three decimal places the values of k_1 and k_2 such that $P(k_1 < \hat{P} < k_2) = 0.95$.
- 5 If $p = 0.45$, and $\hat{p}$ is the sample proportion calculated from a sample of size 120, determine correct to three decimal places the values of k_1 and k_2 such that $P(k_1 < \hat{P} < k_2) = 0.95$.

Example 3

- 6 Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion p of black fish in a lake, if we select a random sample of 30 fish and determine the sample proportion of black fish, $\hat{p}$, to be 0.2.
- 7 A quality-control engineer in a factory needs to estimate the proportion of bags of potato chips packed by a certain machine that are underweight. The engineer takes a random sample of 100 bags and notes that eight of them are underweight.
 - a Calculate a point estimate for p , the proportion of bags packed by the machine that are underweight.
 - b Determine a 95% confidence interval for p , the proportion of bags packed by this machine that are underweight.

- 8** A newspaper wants to estimate the proportion of its subscribers who believe that the government should be allowed to tap telephones without a court order. It selects a random sample of 250 subscribers, and determines that 48 of them believe that the government should have this power.
- a** Calculate a point estimate for p , the proportion of subscribers who believe that the government should be allowed to tap telephones without a court order.
- b** Determine a 95% confidence interval for p .
- 9** The lengths of stay in hospital among patients is of interest to health planners. A random sample of 100 patients was investigated, and 20 were found to have stayed longer than 7 days. Determine a 95% confidence interval for p , the proportion who stay longer than 7 days.

Example 4

- 10** Given that 132 out of 400 randomly selected adult males are cigarette smokers, determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of adult males in the population who smoke.
- 11** A coin known to be biased was tossed 200 times and 112 heads observed. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the probability of a head from this coin.
- 12** In survey of 100 randomly selected students, 57 would rather have a shorter lunch hour and finish school earlier. Use this information to determine a 95% confidence interval for the probability that a randomly selected student would rather have a shorter lunch hour and finish school earlier.
- 13** From a sample of 224 people employed by a large company, 38 reported that they are looking for a new job. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the company looking for a new job.
- 14** From a sample of 40 fish caught in a large lake, 25% were found to be juvenile. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the probability that the next fish caught from that lake will be a juvenile.
- 15** From a random sample of 450 voters it was found that 14% said that they had not decided who to vote for at the next election. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of voters who are undecided.
- 16** In a study of consumer preferences, 400 people were asked to indicate whether they preferred tea or coffee. A 95% confidence interval for the number of people who prefer tea over coffee is given by the interval (0.291, 0.384). Determine how many of the 400 people preferred coffee.
- 17** Bobby and Lacey each plan to select a sample of size 30 from their school friends in order to estimate p , the proportion of students at their school who travel by bus. If they each calculate a 95% confidence interval for p based on their respective samples, determine the probability that both of their intervals will capture the value of p .

15B Varying the level of confidence

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to calculate a confidence level for any given level of confidence.
- ▶ To understand the effect on the confidence interval of varying the level of confidence.

So far we have only considered 95% confidence intervals, but in fact we can choose any level of confidence for a confidence interval. In this section we will investigate the effect on the confidence interval of changing the level of confidence.



Example 5

Determine an approximate 99% confidence interval for the proportion p of primary school children in Australia who regularly use social media, if we select a random sample of 100 children and determine the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ to be 0.8.

Solution

From our knowledge of the normal distribution, we know that

$$P(-2.5758 < Z < 2.5758) = 0.99$$

So, we can say that a 99% confidence interval will be given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - 2.5758 \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + 2.5758 \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

Since $\hat{p} = 0.8$ and $n = 100$, we have

$$\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}} = \sqrt{\frac{0.8 \times 0.2}{100}} = 0.04$$

and so a 99% confidence interval for p is

$$(0.8 - 2.5758 \times 0.04, 0.8 + 2.5758 \times 0.04) = (0.6970, 0.9030)$$

In general:

An approximate **$C\%$ confidence interval** for p is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - z \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + z \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

where the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

Note: The values of z (to four decimal places) for commonly used confidence intervals are:

- **90%** $z = 1.6449$
- **95%** $z = 1.9600$
- **99%** $z = 2.5758$

**Example 6**

Consider the proportion p of Year 12 students who have a part-time job.

Calculate and compare 90%, 95% and 99% confidence intervals for p , if we select a random sample of 200 year 12 students and determine the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ to be 0.7.

Solution

The 90% confidence interval is

$$\left(0.7 - 1.6449\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}, 0.7 + 1.6449\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}\right) = (0.647, 0.753)$$

The 95% confidence interval

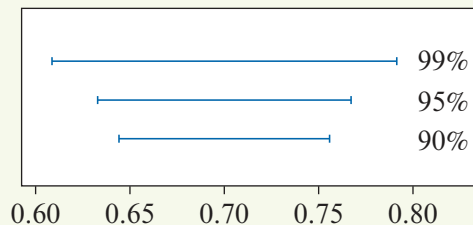
$$\left(0.7 - 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}, 0.7 + 1.9600\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}\right) = (0.636, 0.764)$$

The 99% confidence interval is

$$\left(0.7 - 2.5758\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}, 0.7 + 2.5758\sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}}\right) = (0.617, 0.783)$$

It is helpful to use a diagram to compare these confidence intervals.

From the diagram, it can be clearly seen that being more confident that the confidence interval captures the true value of the population proportion means that a wider interval is required.



In general, the width of the confidence interval will increase as the level of confidence increases. To be more confident that the interval will capture the true value of the population proportion, a wider confidence interval will be required.

A calculator can be used to determine the confidence interval associated with any level of confidence.

**Example 7**

Suppose that we toss a fair coin 20 times, and determine the proportion of heads observed in this sample. Suppose further that this is repeated 10 times.

- a** Use your calculator to generate 10 values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of heads in 20 coin tosses.
- b** Use your calculator to determine a 90% confidence interval for the population proportion p from each of these values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.
- c** How many of these intervals contain the value of the population proportion p ?
- d** How many of these intervals would you expect to contain the value of the population proportion p ?

Solution

a One set of simulations gave the following values for $\hat{p}$:

■ 0.5	■ 0.6	■ 0.4	■ 0.55	■ 0.5
■ 0.6	■ 0.45	■ 0.7	■ 0.55	■ 0.55

b Confidence intervals based on these values of $\hat{p}$ are

■ (0.32, 0.68)	■ (0.42, 0.78)	■ (0.22, 0.58)	■ (0.37, 0.73)	■ (0.32, 0.68)
■ (0.42, 0.78)	■ (0.27, 0.63)	■ (0.53, 0.87)	■ (0.37, 0.73)	■ (0.37, 0.73)

c Here we see that 9 of the 10 intervals contain $p = 0.5$.

d On average, we would expect $0.9 \times 10 = 9$ intervals to contain the value of p .

Summary 15B

■ An approximate **C% confidence interval** for p is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

where:

- p is the population proportion (unknown)
- $\hat{p}$ is a value of the sample proportion
- n is the size of the sample from which $\hat{p}$ was calculated
- z is such that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

■ Values of z (to four decimal places) for commonly used confidence intervals:

- **90%** $z = 1.6449$
- **95%** $z = 1.9600$
- **99%** $z = 2.5758$

**Exercise 15B****Example 5**

- 1 In a random sample of 50 students from a certain school, 13 were found to have travelled to school that day by bus. Determine a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of students from that school who travel to school by bus.
- 2 When gauging the attitude of their customers to the new recipe for a soft drink, a manufacturer found that only 15 of a random sample of 40 of their customers preferred the new recipe. Determine a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of their customers who prefer the new recipe.
- 3 In a survey of 1000 randomly selected people in a certain state it was found that 287 people were not happy in their current job. Determine a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people in that state not happy in their current job.
- 4 A researcher selects 80 fish at random from a river to determine if the fish are healthy. She determines 5 of the fish show signs of disease. Determine a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of healthy fish in the river.

- 5 In a survey of 500 randomly selected households in a large city it was found that 187 households had solar electricity installed. Determine a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of households in that large city with solar electricity installed.
- 6 An insurance company surveyed a sample of 450 of their customers, and found that 302 were driving cars less than five years old. Determine a 85% confidence interval for the proportion of their customers who were driving cars less than five years old.
- 7 In a survey of 2000 randomly selected people in a certain country it was found that 356 are thinking of moving house. Determine a 98% confidence interval for the proportion of people in that country who are thinking of moving house.
- 8 In a blind taste test 25 people were found to prefer Brand A peanut butter, while only 15 preferred Brand B. Determine a 97% confidence interval for the probability that a randomly selected person would prefer Brand A.

Example 6

- 9 When a coin thought to be biased was tossed 100 times, it came up heads 60 times. Calculate and compare 90%, 95% and 99% confidence intervals for the probability of observing a head when that coin is tossed.
- 10 As part of a survey, a total of 537 people from a random sample of 1000 people answered no to the question 'Do you think the government is doing enough to address global warming?' Calculate and compare 90%, 95% and 99% confidence intervals for the proportion of people in Australia who would answer no to that question.

Example 7

- 11 Jelly beans are packed in boxes of 50, and the overall proportion of black jelly beans is set by the manufacturer to be 0.2. Suppose that 10 boxes of jelly beans are selected at random, and the proportion of black jelly beans in each box determined.
 - a Use your calculator to generate 10 values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of black jelly beans in a box.
 - b Use your calculator to determine an approximate 80% confidence interval for the population proportion p from each of these values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.
 - c Determine the number of these intervals containing the value of the population proportion p .
 - d How many of these intervals would you expect to contain the value of the population proportion p ?
 - e Suppose we generate 50 approximate 80% confidence intervals for p . How many of these intervals would you expect to contain the value of the population proportion p ?
- 12 Suppose a random sample of births found that of 30 307 newborn children there were 16 236 boys.
 - a Determine a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of boys born.
 - b Based on this confidence interval can you conclude that the birth of boys is more common than the birth of girls in the entire population? Explain your answer.

15C Margin of error

Learning intentions

- ▶ To understand and use the approximate margin of error.
- ▶ To understand and use the relationship between margin of error, level of confidence and sample size.

The width of a confidence interval is an important consideration when we are designing a research study. If the confidence interval is too wide, then our results may be unhelpful. Suppose, for example, we conduct a survey to see who will win the next election, and determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people who vote Labor to be (0.45, 0.65). Based on this result, we still have little idea who will win the next election.

Often we discuss the confidence interval in terms of its width or, more formally, in terms of the distance between the sample estimate and the endpoints of the confidence interval.

That is, we find it useful to make statements such as ‘we predict the proportion of people who will vote Labor in the next election as $52\% \pm 2\%$ ’. Here the sample estimate is 52%, and the distance between the sample estimate and the endpoints is 2%.

We know that the general rule for a confidence interval is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

where the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

The distance between the sample estimate $\hat{p}$ and the confidence interval endpoints is called the **margin of error**, and denoted E .

The distance between the sample estimate and the endpoints of the confidence interval is called the **margin of error** (E). For a $C\%$ confidence interval the approximate margin of error, E is given by

$$E = z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}$$

where the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.



Example 8

In a survey of 1000 people, 532 indicated that they would vote Liberal in the next election. Determine the margin of error when calculating a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people who will vote Liberal. Express your answer as a percentage rounded to the nearest whole number.

Solution

$$E = z \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}}$$

Substituting $\hat{p} = 0.532$ and $z = 1.9600$ and in the expression for the margin of error gives

$$\begin{aligned} E &= 1.9600 \sqrt{\frac{0.532 \times 0.468}{1000}} \\ &= 0.7 \times 0.3 \times \left(\frac{1.96}{0.02}\right)^2 = 0.0309 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the margin of error of $\approx 3\%$.

In the previous section we noted that changing the level of confidence changes the width of the confidence interval. More specifically, we saw that being more confident that the confidence interval captures the true value of the population proportion meant that a wider interval was required.

**Example 9**

Consider the proportion p of Year 12 students who have a part-time job.

Calculate and compare the margin of error in 90%, 95% and 99% confidence intervals for p , if we select a random sample of 200 year 12 students and determine the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ to be 0.7. Express the margin of error as a percentage, rounded to two decimal places.

Solution

The margin of error in the 90% confidence interval is

$$E = 1.6449 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}} = 0.0533 = 5.33\%$$

The margin of error in the 95% confidence interval is

$$E = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}} = 0.0635 = 6.35\%$$

The margin of error in the 99% confidence interval is

$$E = 2.5758 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{200}} = 0.0835 = 8.35\%$$

Comparing the margins of error we see that, as expected, the margin of error in the 90% confidence interval is less than the margin of error in the 95% confidence interval, which is in turn less than the margin of error in the 99% confidence interval.

Reducing the level of confidence in order to reduce the margin of error is not advisable, as it may mean we are estimating with an unacceptable level of confidence. In practice, we rarely estimate a population parameter with a level of confidence less than 95%.

Looking at the rule for margin of error we can see that E is a function of the sample size n , and that increasing the sample size will also reduce the margin of error.



Example 10

Calculate and compare the margins of error in the 95% confidence intervals for the population proportion if a sample proportion of $\hat{p} = 0.4$ was determined from samples of size $n = 25$, $n = 100$ or $n = 400$.

Solution

The margin of error in the 95% confidence interval when $n = 25$ is

$$E = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.4 \times 0.6}{25}} = 0.1920 = 19.20\%$$

The margin of error in the 95% confidence interval when $n = 100$ is

$$E = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.4 \times 0.6}{100}} = 0.0960 = 9.60\%$$

The margin of error in the 95% confidence interval when $n = 400$ is

$$E = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.4 \times 0.6}{500}} = 0.0480 = 4.80\%$$

Comparing the margins of error we see that the margin of error when $n = 100$ is half the margin of error when $n = 25$, and that the margin of error when $n = 400$ is half the margin of error when $n = 100$.

Thus, we can see that, as expected, the margin of error in the 95% confidence interval decreases as the sample size increases, and that this decrease is proportional to the square root of the increase in the sample size.

The best way to ensure that the margin of error is acceptably small is to determine the size of the sample required for a specified margin of error before the data is collected. This calculation is illustrated in the next example.



Example 11

Determine the sample size required to achieve a margin of error of 2% in an approximate 95% confidence interval for the proportion p of primary school children in Australia who use social media, if the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ is found to be 0.7.

Solution

Substituting $E = 0.02$ and $\hat{p} = 0.7$ in the expression for the margin of error gives

$$0.02 = 1.96 \sqrt{\frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{n}}$$

Solving for n :

$$\left(\frac{0.02}{1.9600}\right)^2 = \frac{0.7 \times 0.3}{n}$$

$$\therefore n = 0.7 \times 0.3 \times \left(\frac{1.9600}{0.02}\right)^2 = 2016.84$$

Thus, to achieve a margin of error of 2%, we need a sample of size 2017.

Of course, it is highly unlikely that we will know the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ before we have selected the sample. Thus it is usual to substitute an estimated value into the equation in order to determine the sample size before we select the sample. This estimate can be based on our prior knowledge of the population or on a pilot study. If we denote this estimated value for the sample proportion by p^* , we can write

$$E = z\sqrt{\frac{p^*(1-p^*)}{n}}$$

Rearranging to make n the subject of the equation, we find

$$E^2 = z^2 \left(\frac{p^*(1-p^*)}{n} \right)$$

$$\therefore n = \left(\frac{z}{E} \right)^2 p^*(1-p^*)$$

A $C\%$ confidence interval for a population proportion p will have margin of error approximately equal to a specified value of E when the sample size is

$$n = \left(\frac{z}{E} \right)^2 p^*(1-p^*)$$

where p^* is an estimated value for the population proportion p and the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

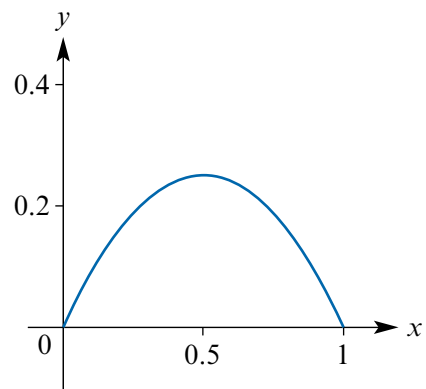
What do we do when we have no prior information which would allow us to estimate p^* ? The most conservative approach is to choose a value for p^* which gives the largest margin of error. Consider again the equation

$$E = z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}$$

From the equation we can see that the largest value of E (when z and n are known) occurs when $\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})$ is maximised.

The graph opposite shows $\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})$ plotted against $\hat{p}$ for $0 \leq \hat{p} \leq 1$. From the graph we can see that the maximum value $\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})$ occurs when $\hat{p} = 0.5$.

Thus, the value $p^* = 0.5$ should be used to determine the sample size when no other information is available.



When calculating sample size it is usual to round the sample size up to the next whole number, thus ensuring that the margin of error is no more than the target value.

Summary 15C

- The distance between the sample estimate and the endpoints of the confidence interval is called the **margin of error** (E). For a $C\%$ confidence interval the approximate margin of error E is given by

$$E = z \sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1 - \hat{p})}{n}}$$

where the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

- A $C\%$ confidence interval for a population proportion p will have margin of error approximately equal to a specified value of E when the sample size is

$$n = \left(\frac{z}{E}\right)^2 p^*(1 - p^*)$$

where p^* is an estimated value for the population proportion p and the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

- When no estimated value of the population proportion is available then $p^* = 0.5$ should be used to determine the sample size.

**Exercise 15C****Example 8**

- 1 In a random sample of 200 people, 145 agreed with the statement “I pay too much income tax”. Calculate the margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion people in the population who would agree with that statement.
- 2 A trout farm will only harvest fish if they are at least 10 cm long. 50 trout are caught and measured, and 7 are found to be at least the minimum length. Calculate the margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of fish which are at least the minimum length. Give your answer as a percentage correct to two decimal places.
- 3 A coin is tossed 100 times and 55 heads are observed. Determine the margin of error in a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of times a head will be observed when the coin is tossed.
- 4 In a random sample of 1200 people, 989 answered No to the question “Have you ever considered becoming a politician?”. Determine the margin of error in a 98% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who have not considered becoming a politician.
- 5 In order to estimate the probability of winning a game of chance, Molly and her friends played the game 243 times, and won a total of 18 times. Determine the margin of error in a 92% confidence interval for the probability of winning the game.
- 6 A 95% confidence interval for a population proportion p is $(0.077, 0.157)$. Calculate the margin of error.

Example 9

- 7** Of a random sample of 500 primary school children, 99 were found to be the only child in their family.
- Determine the margin of error in a confidence interval for the proportion of primary school children who are only children when the level of confidence is:
 - 90%
 - 95%
 - 99%
 - Compare your answers to parts **ai**, **a ii** and **a iii** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and the level of confidence.
- 8** In a random sample of 300 people who are currently employed, 165 indicated that they preferred to work from home.
- Determine the margin of error in a confidence interval for the proportion of people who are currently employed who prefer to work from home when the level of confidence is:
 - 90%
 - 95%
 - 99%
 - Compare your answers to parts **ai**, **a ii** and **a iii** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and the level of confidence.
- 9** In a random sample of 250 medical practitioners, were found to be older than 50 years of age.
- Determine the margin of error in a confidence interval for the proportion of medical practitioners who are older than 50 years of age when the level of confidence is:
 - 90%
 - 95%
 - 99%
 - Compare your answers to parts **ai**, **a ii** and **a iii** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and the level of confidence.

Example 10

- 10** Of a random sample of 400 voters in a particular electorate, 210 indicated that they would vote for the Labor Party at the next election.
- Use this information to calculate the margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of Labor voters in the electorate.
- A random sample of 4000 voters from the same electorate was taken, and this time 2100 indicated that they would vote for Labor at the next election.
- Calculate the margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of Labor voters in the electorate.
 - Compare your answers to parts **a** and **b** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and sample size.
- 11** In a recent survey of 1000 people, 61% said that they support Australia using nuclear power to generate electricity.
- Use this information to calculate the margin of error in a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people who support Australia using nuclear power to generate electricity.

A second survey of 2000 people also found that 61% said that they support Australia using nuclear power to generate electricity.

- b** Calculate the margin of error in a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people who support Australia using nuclear power to generate electricity.
- c** Compare your answers to parts **a** and **b** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and sample size.

- 12** A sample of 50 randomly selected people were asked if they own a tablet. Of the 50, 22 reported owning a tablet.

- a** Use this information to calculate the margin of error in a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of people who own a tablet.

Another random sample of 200 people was selected, and this time 88 indicated that they owned a tablet.

- b** Calculate the margin of error in a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of proportion of people who own a tablet.
- c** Compare your answers to parts **a** and **b** and comment on the relationship between the margin of error and sample size.

Example 11

- 13** Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of 2% in a 95% confidence interval when the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ is estimated to be 0.8.
- 14** Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of 1.5% in a 98% confidence interval when the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ is estimated to be 0.66.
- 15** Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of 5% in a 90% confidence interval if $p^* = 0.2$.
- 16** Samar is conducting a survey to estimate the proportion of people in Australia who would support reducing the driving age to 16. He knows from previous studies that this proportion is about 30%.
- a** Determine the size of sample required for the survey to achieve a margin of error of 3% in a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion.
 - b** Determine the size of sample required for the survey to achieve a margin of error of 2% in a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion.
 - c** Compare your answers to parts **a** and **b**.
- 17** Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of 2% for each of the following levels of confidence (assume $p^* = 0.4$):
- a** 90%
 - b** 95%
 - c** 99%
- 18** Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of no more than 2.5% for each of the following levels of confidence, if p^* is unknown:
- a** 85%
 - b** 92%
 - c** 97%

Chapter summary

- The value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ can be used as an estimate of the population proportion p . It is called a **point estimate** of p .
- An interval estimate for a population parameter is called a **confidence interval**.
- An approximate $C\%$ **confidence interval** for p is given by

$$\left(\hat{p} - z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}, \hat{p} + z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}} \right)$$

where:

- p is the population proportion (unknown)
- $\hat{p}$ is a value of the sample proportion
- n is the size of the sample from which $\hat{p}$ was calculated
- z is such that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.
- The values of z (to four decimal places) for commonly used confidence intervals are:
 - **90%** $z = 1.6449$
 - **95%** $z = 1.9600$
 - **99%** $z = 2.5758$
- The distance between the sample estimate and the endpoints of the confidence interval is called the **margin of error**. For a $C\%$ confidence interval the approximate margin of error E is given by:

$$E = z\sqrt{\frac{\hat{p}(1-\hat{p})}{n}}$$

where the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

- A $C\%$ confidence interval for a population proportion p will have margin of error approximately equal to a specified value of E when the sample size is

$$n = \left(\frac{z}{E} \right)^2 p^*(1-p^*)$$

where p^* is an estimated value for the population proportion p and the value of z is chosen so that $P(-z < Z < z) = C\%$.

- The value $p^* = 0.5$ is to be used to determine the sample size for a given margin of error when no other information is available.

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



15A

- 1** I can calculate probabilities associated with values of a sample proportion when the value of the population proportion is known. ☐

See Example 1 and Question 1

15A

- 2** I can calculate intervals within which values of the sample proportion will lie with a given probability when the value of the population proportion is known. ☐

See Example 2 and Question 3

15A

- 3** I can calculate a 95% confidence interval for a population proportion from the value of a sample proportion using the formula. ☐

See Example 3 and Question 6

15A

- 4** I can calculate a 95% confidence interval for a population proportion from the value of a sample proportion using technology. ☐

See Example 4 and Question 10

15B

- 5** I can calculate a $C\%$ confidence interval for a population proportion from the value of a sample proportion. ☐

See Example 5 and Question 1

15B

- 6** I can understand the effect on a confidence interval of changing the level of confidence (C). ☐

See Example 6, Example 7 and Questions 6 and 11

15C

- 7** I can understand and calculate the margin of error in a confidence interval. ☐

See Example 8 and Question 1

15C

- 8** I can understand the effect on the margin of error of changing the level of confidence (C). ☐

See Example 9 and Question 7

15C

- 9** I can understand the effect on the margin of error of changing the sample size. ☐

See Example 10 and Question 10

15C

- 10** I can determine the sample size required to achieve a specified margin of error in the confidence interval for a population proportion. ☐

See Example 11 and Question 13

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

Where required you can use the following information:

$$P(Z < 1.28) = 0.90 \quad P(Z < 1.65) = 0.95 \quad P(Z < 1.96) = 0.975$$

$$P(Z < 2.33) = 0.99 \quad P(Z < 2.58) = 0.995$$

- 1 A coin is tossed 100 times, and k heads observed.
 - a Give a point estimate for p , the probability of observing a head.
 - b Write down an expression for a 95% confidence interval for p .
- 2 Louise plays a game of chance 100 times, and wins 12 times.
 - a Give a point estimate for p , the probability of winning the game.
 - b Write down an expression for a 99% confidence interval for p .
- 3 A sample of n people were asked whether they thought that income tax in Australia was too high, and 90% said yes.
 - a Write down the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.
 - b Write down an expression for E , the margin of error for this estimate at the 90% confidence level, in terms of n .
 - c Suppose that the number of people in the sample were doubled. Explain the effect this would have on the margin of error E .
- 4 A newspaper determined that an approximate 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in Australia who regularly read the news online was $(0.50, 0.70)$.
 - a Determine the value of $\hat{p}$ that was used to calculate this confidence interval.
 - b Calculate the margin of error.
 - c Explain how the newspaper could reduce the margin of error in their study.
- 5 From a sample of size n , a 95% confidence interval for the p , the population proportion of customers who pay for their shopping with cash was determined to be $\left(\frac{576}{1250}, \frac{674}{1250}\right)$.
 - a Determine the value of $\hat{p}$ which was used to obtain this confidence interval.
 - b Using the fact that $1.96 = \frac{49}{25}$, determine the size of the sample from which this 95% confidence interval was obtained.
- 6 Suppose that 40 independent random samples are taken from a large population, and a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion p is computed from each sample.
 - a How many of the 95% confidence intervals would you expect to contain the population proportion p ?
 - b Write down an expression for the probability that all 40 confidence intervals contain the population proportion p .

- 7** Suppose that 50 independent random samples were taken from a large population, and that a 90% confidence interval for the population proportion p was computed from each of these samples.
- a** How many of the 90% confidence intervals would you expect to contain the population proportion p ?
 - b** Write down an expression for the probability that at least 49 of the 50 confidence intervals contain the population proportion p .

Technology-active short-response questions

- 8** A researcher recorded that 38 out of a randomly selected 60 people had bought at least one take away coffee in the last week.
- a** Determine the sample proportion of people who bought at least one take-away coffee in the last week.
 - b** Determine a 99% confidence interval for the population proportion of people who bought a take-away coffee in the last week.
- 9** A horticulturist noted that 34% of the 50 new type of tulip bulbs she planted had pink flowers, and the rest were red.
- a** Determine the sample proportion of the new type of tulip bulbs which have pink flowers.
 - b** Determine the margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of the new type of tulip bulbs which have pink flowers.
- 10** The following data was obtained from a survey of 2000 randomly chosen people from a certain state.

Number of hours per week spent exercising

	Male	Female
Less than 5	398	494
From 5 to less than 15	271	370
15 or more	217	250

Use the data in the table to determine 99% confidence intervals for

- a** the proportion of females from that state who exercise for less than 5 hours per week
 - b** the proportion of males from that state who exercise for less than 5 hours per week
 - c** the proportion of people from that state who exercise for less than 5 hours per week.
- 11** In a survey of 100 people, 76 people indicated that they knew who they would vote for at the next election, while the remainder were undecided. Researchers are planning to conduct a follow up survey, which will allow them to be 95% confident that their sample proportion is within ± 0.02 of the population proportion. Determine the sample size that should be used.

- 12** A manufacturer claims that 90% of their batteries will last more than 50 hours.
- a** Of a random sample of 250 batteries, 212 lasted more than 50 hours. Use this information to calculate a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of batteries lasting more than 50 hours.
 - b** An inspector requested further information. A random sample of 2500 batteries was selected and this time 2120 lasted more than 50 hours. Use this information to calculate a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of batteries lasting more than 50 hours.
 - c** Use your answers to parts **a** and **b** to comment on the manufacturer's claim.
- 13** **a** Summer is investigating the probability that a drawing pin will land point-up when tossed. She tosses the drawing pin 100 times, and finds that it lands point-up 57 times. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the probability that the drawing pin lands point-up when tossed.
- b** Four of Summer's friends decide to repeat her investigation, each tossing the drawing pin 100 times. They each calculate a 95% confidence interval based on their own data, making four new confidence intervals.
 - i** Calculate the probability that all of these four confidence intervals contain the true value of p , the probability that the drawing pin will land point-up when tossed.
 - ii** Calculate the probability that none of these four confidence intervals contain p .
 - iii** Calculate the probability that at least one of these four confidence intervals does not contain p ?
 - iv** How many of these four confidence intervals would you expect to contain p ?
 - c** Summer's four friends obtained the following results, each based on tossing the drawing pin 100 times and counting the number of times that it lands point-up:

■ Emma 67	■ Chloe 72	■ Maddie 55	■ Regan 60

 Based on all the data collected, determine a 95% confidence interval for p .
- 14** A newspaper determined that a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in Australia who prefer to read a print copy of the newspaper was (a, b) .
- a** Write an expression for the value of $\hat{p}$ which was used to determine this confidence interval in terms of a and b .
 - b** Determine an expression for a 99% confidence interval for p in terms of a and b , based on the same sample data.
- 15** A survey is being planned to estimate the proportion of people in Australia who think that university fees should be abolished. The organisers of the survey want the error in the approximate 95% confidence interval for this proportion to be no more than $\pm 2\%$. They have no prior information about the value of the proportion.
- a** Plot the sample size, $n = \left(\frac{1.96}{E}\right)^2 p^*(1 - p^*)$, against p^* for $0 \leq p^* \leq 1$.
 - b** Determine the value of p^* for which the sample size is a maximum.

- c** What value of n would you recommend be used for the survey? Give a reason for your answer.
- d** Show that the maximum sample size required for the error in an approximate 95% confidence interval to be no more than E is approximately $n = \frac{1}{E^2}$.
- 16** Bob is thinking of expanding his pizza delivery business to include a range of desserts. He would like to know the proportion of his clients who would order dessert from him, and so he intends to ask a number of his clients what they think.
- a** Bob thinks that the proportion of his clients who would order dessert is around 0.3. Determine the size of sample required for Bob to achieve a margin of error of 1.5% in an approximate 95% confidence interval for this proportion.
- b** Bob's business partner Phil thinks that the proportion of clients who would order dessert is around 0.5. Determine the size of sample required to achieve a margin of error of 1.5% in an approximate 95% confidence interval for this proportion.
- c** What is the effect on the margin of error if:
- i** Bob is correct, but they use the sample size from Phil's estimate
 - ii** Phil is correct, but they use the sample size from Bob's estimate?
- d** What sample size would you recommend that Bob and Phil use? Give a reason for your choice.
- 17** A landscape gardener wishes to estimate how many carp live in his very large ornamental lake. He is advised that the best way to do this is through capture–recapture sampling.
- a** Suppose that there are N carp in the lake and he captures 500 of them, tags them and then releases them back into the lake. Write down an expression for the proportion of tagged carp in the lake.
- b** The next day, a sample of 400 carp is captured from the lake, and he finds that there are 60 tagged carp in this sample. What is the proportion of tagged carp in the second sample?
- c** If the second sample is representative of the population, we expect the proportion of tagged carp in the second sample to be the same as the proportion of tagged carp in the lake. That is,
- $$\frac{60}{400} \approx \frac{500}{N}$$
- Use this equation to determine an estimate for the number of carp in the lake.
- d** Show that an expression for a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of tagged carp in the lake can be written as
- $$0.15 - 1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.1275}{400}} < \frac{500}{N} < 0.15 + 1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.1275}{400}}$$
- e** Use this inequality to determine an approximate 95% confidence interval for the number of carp in the lake.

Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 Which of the following statements is true?
 - A We use sample statistics to estimate population parameters.
 - B We use sample parameters to estimate population statistics.
 - C We use population parameters to estimate sample statistics.
 - D We use population statistics to estimate sample parameters.

- 2 From a random sample, a 90% confidence interval for the population proportion p is found to be $(0.7, 0.8)$. Select which of the following statements is correct.
 - A The population proportion $p = 0.75$.
 - B The probability that the population proportion p lies in the interval $(0.7, 0.8)$ is 0.9.
 - C 90% of such intervals contain the population proportion p .
 - D More than one of these statements is correct.

- 3 From a random sample, a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion p is found to be $(0.5, 0.7)$. Select which of the following statements is correct.
 - A The sample proportion $\hat{p} = 0.6$.
 - B The probability that the population proportion p lies in the interval $(0.7, 0.8)$ is 0.95.
 - C There is a probability of $\frac{1}{20}$ that a 95% of confidence intervals will capture the population proportion p .
 - D More than one of these statements is correct.

- 4 In a recent survey 72 people agreed with the statement “The government should be doing more about global warming” while 48 disagreed. The margin of error in a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who agree with this statement is

A $1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.4(1 - 0.4)}{120}}$	B $1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.7(1 - 0.7)}{120}}$
C $1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.4(1 - 0.4)}{110}}$	D $1.96\sqrt{\frac{0.8(1 - 0.8)}{120}}$

- 5 If the sample proportion and sample size remain unchanged, then an increase in the level of confidence will lead to a confidence interval for the population proportion which is

A narrower	B wider	C unchanged
D cannot be determined from the information given		

- 6 Select which of the following statements are true.
- I The centre of a confidence interval is a population parameter.
 - II The bigger the margin of error, the smaller the confidence interval.
 - III A population proportion is an example of a point estimate.
- A I only B II only C III only D none of these

- 7 If a researcher increases her sample size by a factor of 4, then the width of a 95% confidence interval would

- A increase by a factor of 2 B increase by a factor of 4
C decrease by a factor of 2 D decrease by a factor of 4

- 8 A sample of size n was used to estimate a population proportion. A margin of error of 3% was calculated using $z = 2.58$. Given that the sample proportion was 0.3, determine n .

A $n = \frac{\left(\frac{0.03}{2.58}\right)^2}{0.21}$

B $n = \frac{\left(\frac{2.58}{0.03}\right)^2}{0.21}$

C $n = \left(\frac{0.03}{2.58}\right)^2 \times 0.21$

D $n = \left(\frac{2.58}{0.03}\right)^2 \times 0.21$

- 9 A randomly chosen sample of 400 people were classified by age category, and their response to the question “Are you intending to travel overseas in the next 12 months?”.

Travel overseas?	Yes	No	Total
Less than 40	34	260	294
40 or more	78	28	106
Total	112	288	400

A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population aged less than 40 who intend to travel overseas in the next 12 months is given by

$$\left(c - 1.96\sqrt{\frac{c(1-c)}{n}}, c + 1.96\sqrt{\frac{c(1-c)}{n}}\right)$$

The values of c and n are

A $\frac{34}{294}$ and 294

B $\frac{34}{112}$ and 112

C $\frac{112}{400}$ and 400

D $\frac{34}{400}$ and 400

- 10 In order to reduce the margin of error we can

- A increase the sample size B use a lower level of confidence
C use a higher confidence level D both A and B are correct

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 11** A survey showed that 15 out of a random sample of 50 football supporters attend at least one match per season. If this information is used to determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of all football supporters who attend at least one match per season, then the margin of error will be

A 0.3 **B** 0.065 **C** 0.127 **D** 0.254

- 12** A random sample of students from a certain town were asked how they travel to school. The table on the right gives the number of students using each method of transport.

Method of transport	Number of students
Walk	17
Bicycle	22
Bus	38
Car	23

A 99% confidence interval for the proportion of students who travel to school by bus is

A (0.285, 0.475) **B** (0.267, 0.492) **C** (0.220, 0.540) **D** (0.301, 0.543)

- 13** Of a random sample of 50 golfers, four were found to play golf left-handed. A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of golfers in the population who play left-handed is given by

A (0.053, 0.107) **B** (0.026, 0.134) **C** (0.005, 0.155) **D** (0.006, 0.154)

- 14** Fourteen of a random sample of 88 people said they prefer to watch the news on a particular channel. The margin of error in a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who prefer to watch the news on that channel is given by

A 7.6% **B** 6.7% **C** 5.6% **D** 6.4%

- 15** The Education Department in a certain state wishes to determine the percentage of teachers who are considering leaving the profession in the next two years. They believe it to be about 30%. The size of the sample which should be taken to determine the answer to within $\pm 3\%$ at the 95% confidence level is

A 33 **B** 534 **C** 752 **D** 897

- 16** A survey was conducted to determine the proportion of students in Year 12 who intend to go straight to university after they finish secondary school. A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of students in Year 12 who intend to go straight to university based on this survey was determined to be (0.7235, 0.8765). The number of students in the survey who intend to go straight to university is

A 80 **B** 84 **C** 105 **D** 125

- 17** Archie calculates a 95% confidence interval for the probability of winning a game of chance to be (0.236, 0.324), based on n plays of the game. Rob points out that Archie made an error, and has used a value of $2n$ in his calculations. The correct 95% confidence interval is

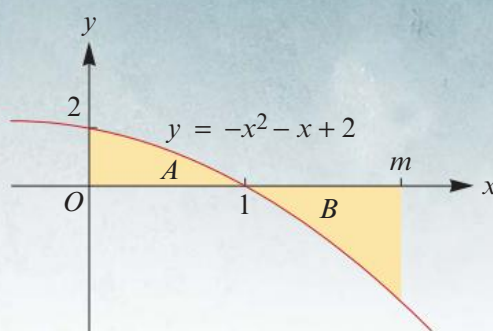
A (0.218, 0.342) **B** (0.167, 0.484) **C** (0.249, 0.311) **D** (0.192, 0.368)

16A Short-response questions

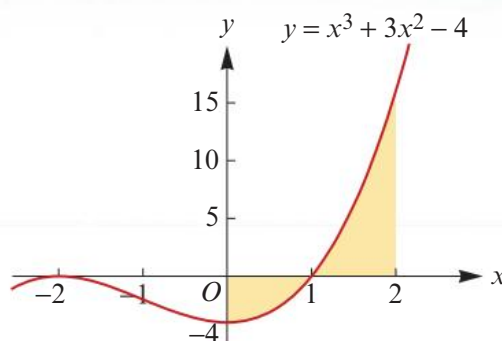
Technology-free short-response questions

Further integration

- 1** The graph of $y = -x^2 - x + 2$ is shown. Determine the value of m such that regions A and B have the same area.



- 2** Let $f(x) = x^3 + 3x^2 - 4$. The graph of $y = f(x)$ is as shown. Determine:
- a** the coordinates of the stationary points
 - b** $\int_{-2}^2 f(x) dx$
 - c** $\int_0^2 f(x) dx$
 - d** the area of the shaded region.



- 3** Evaluate each of the following integrals:

a $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) dx$

b $\int_0^{\frac{3}{2}} e^{\frac{x}{2}} dx$

c $\int_{\frac{1}{2}}^1 \frac{1}{2x} dx$

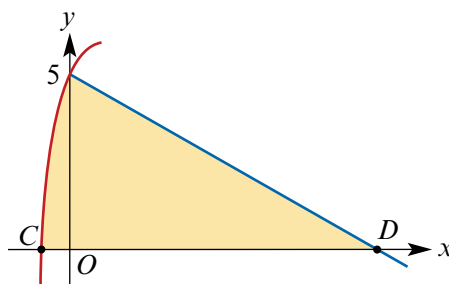
d $\int_{-2}^{-1} \frac{1}{1-x} dx$

e $\int_3^4 \frac{1}{2(x-2)^2} dx$

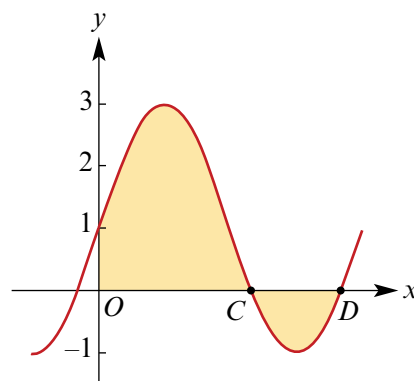
f $\int_2^4 \frac{1}{(3x-2)^2} dx$

- 4** Let $f(x) = 6 - e^{-2x}$. The diagram shows part of the graph of f and also shows the normal to the graph of f at the point $(0, 5)$.

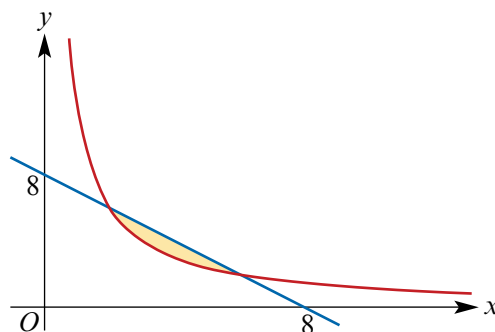
- a** Determine the coordinates of points C and D .
b Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 5** Part of the graph of $y = 2 \sin(\pi x) + 1$ is shown.
- a** Determine the coordinates of points C and D .
b Determine the total area of the shaded regions.



- 6** The diagram shows the graphs of $f(x) = 8 - x$ and $g(x) = \frac{12}{x}$.
- a** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of the two graphs.
b Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 7** Given that $\int_3^7 f(x) dx = 12$, evaluate:

a $\int_7^3 f(x) dx$

b $\int_3^7 5f(x) dx$

c $\int_3^5 (f(x) + 1) dx + \int_5^7 f(x) dx$

- 8** Evaluate:

a $\int_0^1 \frac{2}{5x+5} dx$

b $\int_1^4 2x + \frac{2}{x} dx$

c $\int_{\frac{\pi}{3}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 5 dx$

d $\int_1^4 \frac{3x}{x^2+2} dx$

e $\int_{\frac{\pi}{3}}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \frac{\sin(\frac{x}{2})}{\cos(\frac{x}{2})} dx$

f $\int_1^4 (2x+1)e^{x^2+x} dx$

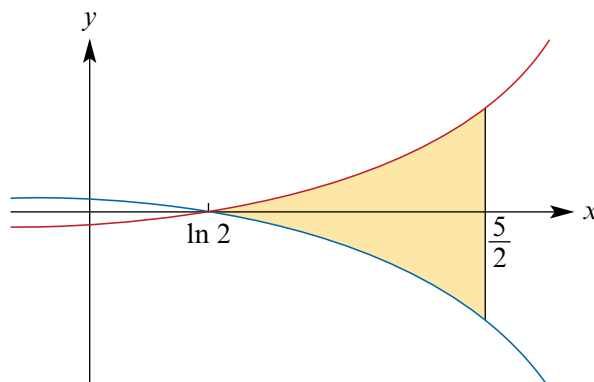
- 9** The graphs of $y = 2x$ and $y = 8x - x^2$ intersect at the origin and at the point B .
- a** Determine the coordinates of B .
- b** Calculate the area of the region bounded by the graphs of $y = 2x$ and $y = 8x - x^2$.

- 10** Consider the functions

$$f(x) = e^x - 2$$

$$g(x) = -e^x + 2$$

Determine the area of the shaded region bounded by the graphs of f and g and the line $x = \frac{5}{2}$.



- 11 a** Show that the derivative of $\frac{x}{3x+1}$ with respect to x is $\frac{1}{(3x+1)^2}$.
- b** Hence evaluate $\int_1^3 \frac{4}{(3x+1)^2} dx$.
- 12 a** Determine the derivative of $2x \sin(4x)$ with respect to x .
- b** Hence evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} 8x \cos(4x) dx$.
- 13** A particle starts at rest and moves in a straight line. At time t seconds after the beginning of its motion, the acceleration of the particle $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$ is given by $a(t) = 3t^2 - 18t + 20$, $t \geq 0$. Determine the distance travelled by the particle in the first 5 seconds of its motion.

Trigonometry using the sine and cosine rules

- 14** A triangle has sides 6 cm, 7 cm and 10 cm. Determine the cosine of the smallest angle of this triangle.
- 15** Triangle ABC has area 20 cm^2 . The length of AB is 10 cm and the length of AC is 12 cm. Determine $\sin(\angle BAC)$.
- 16** The three side lengths of a triangle are $\sqrt{2}$, 2 and $1 + \sqrt{3}$. Determine the cosine of the largest angle of this triangle.
- 17** Consider triangle ABC with $AB = 6 \text{ cm}$, $AC = 4 \text{ cm}$ and $\angle BAC = 60^\circ$.
(For each of the following, give your answer in simplest surd form as $m\sqrt{n}$, where m and n are natural numbers and n has no factors that are perfect squares.)
- a** Determine the length BC . **b** Determine the area of triangle ABC .
- 18** Consider triangle ABC with $AB = 6 \text{ cm}$, $AC = 4 \text{ cm}$ and $\angle BAC = 120^\circ$.
(For each of the following, give your answer in simplest surd form.)
- a** Determine the length BC . **b** Determine the area of triangle ABC .

Continuous random variables and the normal distribution

- 19** Consider the function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{24}{x^3} & \text{if } 3 \leq x \leq 6 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < 3 \text{ or } x > 6 \end{cases}$$

Show that f is a probability density function.

- 20** A continuous random variable X has the probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 12x^2(1-x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Determine $E(X)$.

- 21** The time, X minutes, between calls at a pizza restaurant is a random variable with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{5}e^{-\frac{x}{5}} & x \geq 0 \\ 0 & x < 0 \end{cases}$$

Determine an expression for the median time between calls.

- 22** The cumulative distribution function F of a continuous random variable X is given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 0 \\ \frac{x}{4} & 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{20}(x^4 + 4) & 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 1 & x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

Determine a probability density function for X .

- 23** The probability density function f of a normal random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{3\sqrt{2\pi}} e^{-\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{x-10}{3}\right)^2} \quad \text{for } x \in \mathbb{R}$$

- a** Write down the mean and standard deviation of X .
- b** Sketch the graph of f .
- c** On the graph, shade the region that represents $P(X > 3)$.

- 24** The random variable X is normally distributed with mean 40 and standard deviation 2. If $P(36 < X < 44) = q$, determine $P(X > 44)$ in terms of q .

- 25** The random variable X is normally distributed with mean 50 and standard deviation 5. If $P(X < 60) = q$, determine $P(40 < X < 60)$ in terms of q .

- 26** Let X be a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 92$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 10$. Let Z be the standard normal random variable. Given that $P(Z < 1) = 0.84$, determine:

a $P(X > 82)$ **b** $P(82 < X < 92)$

- 27** Let X be a normally distributed random variable with a mean of 10 and a variance of 9. Let Z be the standard normal random variable. Determine:

- a** $P(X > 10)$.
b the value of a such that $P(X > 4) = P(Z < a)$.

- 28** The random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} (x-a)(2a-x) & \text{if } a \leq x \leq 2a \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Show that $a^3 = 6$. **b** Determine $E(X)$.

- 29** The probability density function of a random variable X is given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2(1-x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine $F(x)$, the cumulative distribution function of X .
b Determine the 75th percentile of X .

- 30** The function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k \cos(\pi x) & \text{if } \frac{3}{2} < x < \frac{5}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

is a probability density function for the continuous random variable X . Determine:

- a** the value of k **b** the median of X **c** $P\left(X < \frac{7}{4} \mid X < 2\right)$.

- 31** A continuous random variable X has probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 0.004x - 0.04 & \text{if } 10 \leq x < 20 \\ -0.001x + 0.06 & \text{if } 20 \leq x \leq 60 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Sketch the graph of f .
b Determine $P(15 \leq X \leq 30)$.

- 32** Let X be a continuous random variable with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2x \cos x^2 & \text{if } 0 < x < \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}} \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

- a** Show by differentiation that $\sin x^2$ is an antiderivative of $2x \cos x^2$.
- b** Calculate $P\left(\sqrt{\frac{\pi}{3}} < X < \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{2}}\right)$.
- c** Determine the median value of X .

Sampling and proportions

- 33** An investigation was carried out to determine the most popular model of car in a particular town. The data was collected by observing the model of each car entering the car park of a supermarket in this town during a 2 hour period. Comment on the validity of this data-collection method.
- 34** A garage manager wants to conduct a customer satisfaction survey. Of their 1600 customers, 800 own Toyotas, 560 own Mazdas, and 240 own Hondas. Calculate how many Toyota, Mazda and Honda owners should be included in a stratified random sample of size 200.
- 35** Consider a bag containing three blue and seven red balls.
- a** Determine p , the proportion of blue balls in the bag.
 - b** Samples of size 3 are taken from the bag without replacement. If $\hat{P}$ is a random variable describing the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of blue balls in the sample, list the possible values that $\hat{P}$ can take.
 - c** Determine $P(\hat{P} = 0)$.
- 36** A committee of four is going to be randomly chosen from a group of five men and four women. Let $\hat{P}$ be the random variable for the proportion of males in the committee.
- a** List the possible values of $\hat{p}$, the proportion of males in the committee.
 - b** Determine:
 - i** $P(\hat{P} = 0)$ **ii** $P(\hat{P} > 0)$ **iii** $P(\hat{P} = 1)$
- 37** A very large number of people are attending a concert, with four in nine of these people under 18 years of age. A simple random sample of 2000 concertgoers is selected. Determine the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$, the proportion of people in the sample under 18 years of age.
- 38** In a large population the proportion of left handed people is $\frac{1}{5}$. Let $\hat{P}$ be the random variable that represents the sample proportion of left handed people in a sample of size n . Determine the smallest integer value of n such that the standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ is less than or equal to $\frac{1}{20}$.

Interval estimates for proportions

Where required you can use the following information:

$$P(Z < 1.28) = 0.90 \quad P(Z < 1.65) = 0.95 \quad P(Z < 1.96) = 0.975$$

$$P(Z < 2.33) = 0.99 \quad P(Z < 2.58) = 0.995$$

- 39** A coin is tossed 100 times, and 47 heads observed.
- a** Give a point estimate for p , the probability of observing a head.
 - b** Write down an expression for a 95% confidence interval for p .
- 40** Suppose that 20 independent random samples were taken from a large population, and that a 90% confidence interval for the population proportion p was computed from each of these samples.
- a** Determine the number of these 90% confidence intervals that would you expect to contain the population proportion p .
 - b** Write down an expression for the probability that all 20 confidence intervals contain the population proportion p .
- 41** A sample of n people were asked thought more government money should be spent on education and 62% said yes.
- a** Write down the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$.
 - b** Write down an expression for E , the margin of error for this estimate in a 90% confidence interval, in terms of n .
 - c** Suppose that the number of people in the sample was halved. Explain the effect this would have on the margin of error E .
- 42** Suppose that a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion is given by the interval (a, b) .
- a** Write down an expression for the sample proportion in terms of a and b .
 - b** Write down an expression for the margin of error for this confidence interval in terms of a and b .
- 43** From a sample of size n a confidence interval for the proportion of people in Australia who spend at least one hour per day on social media was determined to be $(0.62, 0.68)$.
- a** Determine the value of $\hat{p}$ that was used to calculate this confidence interval.
 - b** Calculate the margin of error.
 - c** Suggest two ways in which the margin of error could be reduced.
- 44** A company aims to have 95% confidence in estimating the proportion of people who are planning to buy a new phone in the next 6 months to within ± 0.04 . Previous research has shown this proportion to be about 30%. Based on this, determine the sample size needed, using the approximate value of $z = 2$ for the 95% confidence interval.

- 45** From a sample of size n , a 95% confidence interval for the p , the population proportion of customers who prefer to shop online was determined to be $(\frac{451}{1250}, \frac{549}{1250})$.
- a** Determine the value of $\hat{p}$ which was used to obtain this confidence interval.
 - b** Using the fact that $1.96 = \frac{49}{25}$, determine the size of the sample from which this 95% confidence interval was obtained.

Technology-active short-response questions

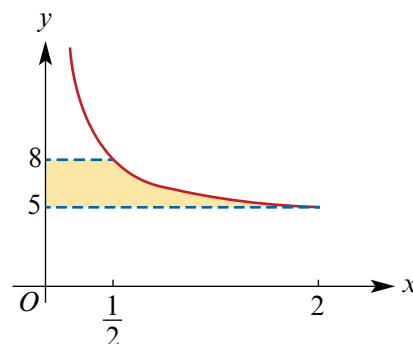
Further integration

- 46** Let $f(x) = 3 \sin(\pi x)$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 2$.
- a** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$ for $-2 \leq x \leq 2$.
 - b** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph where $x = \frac{1}{2}$.
 - c** Evaluate $\int_0^{\frac{1}{2}} f(x) - \frac{x}{4} dx$.

- 47** The diagram shows the graph of the function

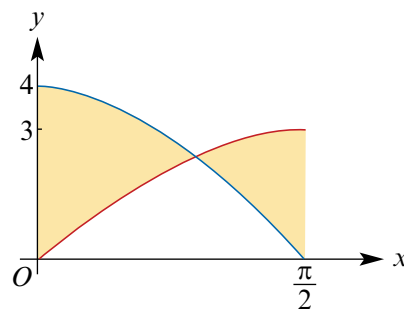
$$f(x) = 4 + \frac{2}{x}, \quad 0 < x \leq 2$$

and the lines $y = 5$ and $y = 8$. determine the area of the shaded region.



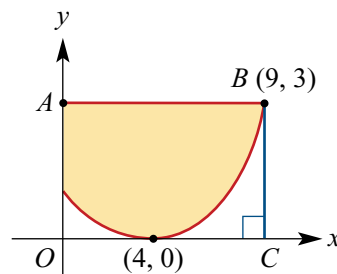
- 48** The diagram shows the graphs of $y = 3 \sin x$ and $y = 4 \cos x$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$.

- a** The graphs intersect at the point $P(a, b)$. Determine the value of:
 - i** $\tan a$ **ii** $\sin a$ **iii** $\cos a$
- b** Determine the total area of the shaded regions.



- 49** A swimming pool has a cross-sectional area as shown.

- a** Determine the area of the rectangle $OABC$.
- b** Determine the equation of the curve given that it is of the form $y = k(x - 4)^2$.
- c** Determine the total area of the region enclosed between the curve and the x -axis for $x \in [0, 9]$.
- d** Determine the area of the cross-section of the pool (i.e. the shaded region).



- 50 a** Calculate $\int_{-3}^1 1 - t^2 dt$ and illustrate the region of the Cartesian plane for which this integral gives the signed area.
- b** Show that $\int_a^1 1 - t^2 dt = 0$ implies $a^3 - 3a + 2 = 0$.
- c** Determine the values of a for which $\int_a^1 1 - t^2 dt = 0$.

- 51** It can be shown that $\int 2^x dx = \frac{2^x}{\ln 2} + c$.

- a** Evaluate the definite integral $\int_0^2 2^x dx$.

- b i** Determine an approximation, A_1 , to the definite integral using one trapezium as shown.

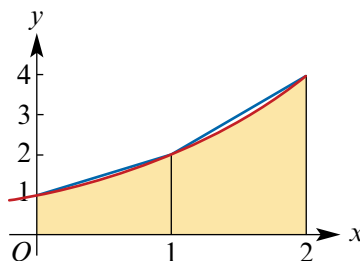
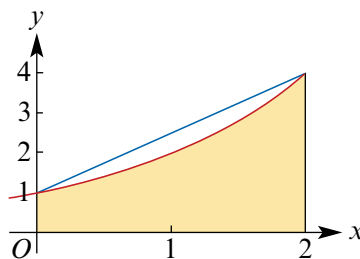
- ii** Determine the error $E_1 = A_1 - \int_0^2 2^x dx$.

- c i** Determine an approximation, A_2 , to the definite integral using two trapeziums as shown.

- ii** Determine the error $E_2 = A_2 - \int_0^2 2^x dx$.

- d** Continuing in this way, determine A_4 and E_4 , then determine A_8 and E_8 . (You will notice that doubling the number of trapeziums decreases the error by about a factor of 4.)

- e** Repeat this procedure for the definite integral $\int_0^2 x^2 dx$. determine the approximations and errors using one, two, four and eight trapeziums. How many trapeziums would be needed for an approximation to be within 10^{-6} of the definite integral?



- 52** The curves $y^2 = ax$ and $x^2 = by$, where a and b are both positive, intersect at the origin and at the point (r, s) . determine r and s in terms of a and b . Prove that the two curves divide the rectangle with corners $(0, 0)$, $(0, s)$, (r, s) , $(r, 0)$ into three regions of equal area.

- 53 a** If $y = x \ln x$, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$. Hence determine the value of $\int_1^e \ln x dx$.

- b** If $y = x(\ln x)^n$, where n is a positive integer, determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

- c** Let $I_n = \int_1^e (\ln x)^n dx$. For $n > 1$, show that $I_n + nI_{n-1} = e$.

- d** Hence determine the value of $\int_1^e (\ln x)^3 dx$.

- 54** Two toy cars, A and B, move from rest away from a point O on a straight track starting at the same time. Car A moves with constant acceleration of 2 ms^{-2} . Car B moves with acceleration $a \text{ ms}^{-2}$ given by $a = 2t + 1$. Determine the time at which the cars are the same distance from O and the distance that they have travelled in that time.

Trigonometry using the sine and cosine rules

- 55** The bearing of A from B is 290° and the bearing of C from B is 040° . Given that $AB = BC$, determine:
- a** the magnitude of $\angle BCA$ **b** the bearing of A from C
- 56** In triangle ABC , $AB = 6$ cm, $AC = 16$ cm and $\angle BAC = 40^\circ$. Determine each of the following correct to three decimal places:
- a** the length of BC **b** the magnitude of $\angle ACB$
c the magnitude of $\angle ABC$ **d** the area of triangle ABC
- 57** In $\triangle ABC$, $\angle BAC = 60^\circ$, $AB = 8$ and $BC = 7$. Given that $AC < 4$, determine AC .
- 58** A yacht starts from a marina and sails in a straight line on a bearing of 245° for 5 km to a nearby island.
- a** How far south has the yacht sailed?
b How far west has the yacht sailed?
c What is the bearing of the marina from the island?
d The yacht now sails from the island on a bearing of 310° and stops at a headland. The marina is on a bearing of 115° from the headland. Determine the distance to the headland from the island.
- 59** A rectangular board has size 10 cm by 6 cm. One side of the board is propped up, so that the 10 cm sides are horizontal and the 6 cm sides are inclined at 30° to the horizontal. Determine the angle of inclination to the horizontal of a diagonal of the board.
- 60** A parallelogram has side lengths 4 cm and 5 cm, and an acute angle of 47.8° . Determine the lengths of the two diagonals of the parallelogram.
- 61** $ABCDPQRS$ is a rectangular prism on a horizontal base $ABCD$. The vertical edges AP , BQ , CR and DS each have length 6 cm. The edge AB has length 8 cm, and the edge BC has length 9 cm. Determine the angle between each of the following pairs of lines:
- a** AR and BS **b** AR and CR **c** AS and DS
- 62** An aeroplane is flying in a horizontal circle of radius 1 km. A person is standing on the ground, within the projection of this circle onto the ground. He measures the angle of elevation to the aeroplane as it flies around him, and observes that the greatest angle is 25° and the least angle is 15° . Determine the height of the aeroplane above the ground.

- 63** For $\triangle ABC$ in the diagram, $A = 30^\circ$, $a = 60$ and $c = 80$.

a Determine the magnitudes of angles:

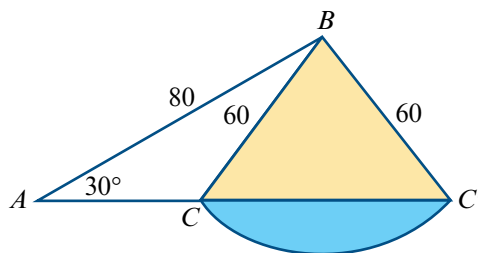
- i** $\angle BCA$ and $\angle ABC$
- ii** $\angle BC'A$ and $\angle ABC'$

b Determine the lengths of line segments:

- i** AC **ii** AC' **iii** CC'

c Show that the magnitude of $\angle CBC'$ is 96.38° (correct to two decimal places). Then using this value:

- i** Determine the area of triangle BCC'
- ii** Determine the area of the shaded sector
- iii** Determine the area of the shaded segment.



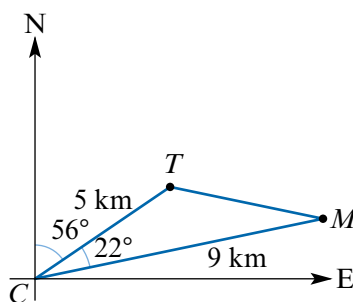
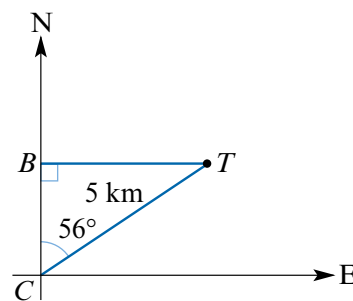
- 64** Adam notices a distinctive tree while orienteering on a flat horizontal plane. From where he is standing, the tree is 200 m away on a bearing of 050° . Two other people, Brian and Colin, who are both standing due east of Adam, each claim that the tree is 150 m away from them. Given that their claims are true and that Brian and Colin are not standing in the same place, how far apart are they? Give your answer to the nearest metre.

- 65** Cora is standing at point C . She can see a beacon due north at point B . She can also see a tower at point T , which is 5 km away on a bearing of 056° . The tower at T is due east of the beacon at B .

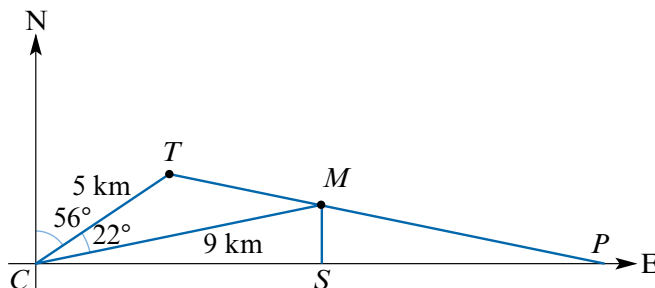
a Determine the distance between the beacon and the tower, correct to three decimal places.

b By looking a further 22° east of the tower at T , Cora can see a radio mast at point M , which is 9 km away.

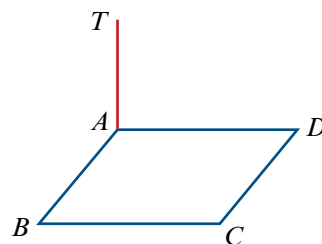
- i** Determine the bearing of the mast at M from C .
- ii** Determine the distance between the tower and the mast, correct to three decimal places.



- c** Cora now walks due east.



- i** How far must she walk until she is at point S due south of the mast? Give your answer correct to three decimal places.
- ii** What is the bearing of the mast at M from the tower at T ?
- 66** A vertical tower of height 10 m stands in one corner of a rectangular courtyard. From the top of the tower, T , the angles of depression to the nearest corners B and D are 32° and 19° respectively. Determine:
- AB , correct to two decimal places
 - AD , correct to two decimal places
 - the angle of depression from T to the corner C diagonally opposite the tower, correct to the nearest degree.
- 67** Tower A is 4 km due west of tower B . There are flagpoles at points C and D .
- The bearing of C from A is 025° , and the bearing of C from B is 350° .
 - The bearing of D from A is 035° , and the bearing of D from B is 345° .
- Determine the distance between the two flagpoles.



Continuous random variables and the normal distribution

- 68** The lengths of a component produced at a factory are normally distributed with a mean of 10 cm and a standard deviation of 0.1 cm. A component is chosen at random. Determine the probability that its length is
- more than 10.2 cm
 - between 9.95 cm and 10.05 cm.
- 69** The annual salaries of employees in a large company are normally distributed, with a mean of \$80 000 and a standard deviation of \$15 000. Determine:
- the salary that would put an employee among the highest paid 5% of the company
 - the salary that would put an employee among the lowest paid 15% of the company.
- 70** This table summarises a student's results in four different subjects. For each subject, the table gives the student's mark and also gives the mean (μ) and standard deviation (σ) for the class.

Subject	Mark	μ	σ
Mathematics	68	60.5	8.5
English	70	65.2	7.2
Chemistry	55	50.9	3.3
Psychology	81	71.9	9.9

- a** Determine the student's standardised mark for each subject.
- b** List the four subjects in order from best result to worst result, based on this student's performance relative to the class.

- 71** The time (in minutes) that it takes a worker to assemble a component is a random variable X with probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{3}{250}(10x - x^2) & 5 \leq x \leq 10 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Determine the mean and variance of the time taken to assemble a component.

- 72** Scores on an examination can be modelled by a random variable X with probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{200} \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{100}\right) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 100 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

If the top 20% of students who sit the examination will receive an 'A', determine:

- a** the minimum score required to receive an 'A' (give your answer rounded to one decimal place)
- b** the expected number of students who receive an 'A' in a class of 25 students.

- 73** The lifetime of a certain brand of light bulb is normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 400$ hours and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 50$ hours.

- a** Determine the probability that a randomly chosen light bulb will last more than 375 hours.
- b** The light bulbs are sold in boxes of 10. Determine the probability that at least nine of the bulbs in a randomly selected box will last more than 375 hours.

- 74** The weight of cereal in boxes packed by a particular machine is normally distributed with a mean of μ g and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 5$ g.

- a** A box is considered underweight if it weighs less than 500 g.
 - i** Determine the proportion of boxes that will be underweight if $\mu = 505$ g.
 - ii** Determine the value of μ required to ensure that only 1% of boxes are underweight.
- b** As a check on the setting of the machine, a random sample of five boxes is chosen and the setting changed if more than one of them is underweight. Determine the probability that the setting of the machine is changed if $\mu = 505$ g.

- 75** The continuous random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx(6 - x) & \text{if } 0 < x < 6 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Determine:

- a** the value of k
- b** $P(X < 4)$
- c** the median (50th percentile) of X
- d** the mean of X .

76 Nails from a manufacturing process are unusable if they are less than 90 mm or more than 105 mm long. It is observed that, on average, 1% are rejected as undersized and 2% are rejected as oversized. Assuming that the nail lengths are normally distributed, determine the mean and standard deviation of the distribution.

77 A factory has two machines that produce widgets. The time taken, X seconds, to produce a widget using machine A is normally distributed, with a mean of 10 seconds and a standard deviation of 2 seconds. The time taken, Y seconds, to produce a widget using machine B has probability density function given by

$$f(y) = \begin{cases} k(y - 8) & \text{if } 8 < y < 12 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a**
 - i** Determine the value of k .
 - ii** Show that machine A has a greater probability of producing a widget in less than 11 seconds than machine B.
 - iii** Determine which machine, on average, is quicker in producing widgets.
- b** Suppose that 60% of the widgets manufactured at the factory are produced by machine A, and 40% by machine B. If a widget selected at random is known to have been produced in less than 10 seconds, determine the probability that it was produced by machine A.

78 The queuing time, X minutes, at the box office of a movie theatre has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx(100 - x^2) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 10 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine:
 - i** the value of k
 - ii** the probability that a moviegoer will have to queue for more than 3 minutes
- b** If 10 moviegoers go independently to the theatre, determine the probability that at least five of them will be required to queue for more than 3 minutes.

79 A random variable X has probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} Ax^2 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq B \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Given that $E(X) = 0.75$, determine the values of A and B .

- 80** Electronic sensors of a certain type fail when they become too hot. The temperature at which a randomly chosen sensor fails is $T^{\circ}\text{C}$, where T is modelled as a normal random variable with mean μ and standard deviation σ .
- a** In a laboratory test, 98% of a random sample of sensors continued working at a temperature of 80°C , but only 4% continued working at 104°C .
 - i** Show the given information on a sketch of the distribution of T .
 - ii** Determine estimates for the values of μ and σ .
 - b** More extensive tests confirmed that T is normally distributed, but with $\mu = 94.5$ and $\sigma = 5.7$. Use these values in the rest of the question.
 - i** Determine the proportion of sensors that will operate in boiling water (i.e. at 100°C).
 - ii** The manufacturers wish to quote a safe operating temperature at which 99% of the sensors will work. Determine the temperature they should quote.

Sampling and proportions

- 81** Suppose that, in a certain country, the probability that a person is left-handed is 0.2. Three people are selected at random from that country.
- a** Determine the possible values of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ of left-handed people in the sample.
 - b** Construct a probability distribution table which summarises the sampling distribution of the sample proportion of left-handed people in the sample.
 - c** Determine $P(\hat{P} > 0.5 \mid \hat{P} > 0)$.
- 82** Use the normal approximation to determine the approximate probability that, in the next 60 tosses of a fair coin, the proportion of heads observed will be less than or equal to 0.48.
- 83** A machine has a probability of 0.05 of producing a defective item. Use the normal approximation to determine the approximate probability that, in the next batch of 1000 items produced
- a** the proportion of defective items will be between 0.04 and 0.06
 - b** the proportion of defective items will be between 0.045 and 0.055, given it is greater than 0.04.
- 84** It is known that 80% of the students in a particular state study English at Year 12.
- a** Using a normal approximation determine the probability that, in a random sample of 80 Year 12 students, less than 75% study English.
 - b** If the probability that less than 76% of Year 12 students who study English in a random sample of size n is equal to 0.2742, use a normal approximation to determine the value of n . Round your answer to the nearest whole number.
- 85** A fish shop catches their trout from two different lakes, lake A and lake B. The weight of the trout caught from lake A is normally distributed with a mean of $\mu = 3.6$ kg and a standard deviation of $\sigma = 0.5$ kg.

- a** Determine the probability that a trout caught from lake A weighs more than 4.25 kg, correct to four decimal places.
- b** The probability that a trout caught from lake A weighs more than k kg is 0.9. Determine the value of k , correct to two decimal places.

The weight of trout from lake B is modelled by the following probability density function

$$b(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{\pi}{6} \cos\left(\frac{\pi(2x-7)}{6}\right) & 2 \leq x \leq 5 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

- c** Determine the mean weight of the fish caught from lake B, correct to two decimal places.
- d** Determine the probability that a randomly selected trout caught from lake B will have a weight greater than 4.25 kg.
- e** The probability that a trout caught from lake B weighs more than c kg is 0.9. Determine the value of c , correct to two decimal places.

The fish shop catches 60% of their trout from lake A, and 40% from lake B.

- f** Determine the probability that a randomly selected trout weighs more than 4.0 kg, giving your answer correct to three decimal places.
- g** Determine the probability that a randomly selected trout which weighs more than 4.0 kg was caught in lake A, giving your answer correct to three decimal places.
- h** If the fish shop packs the combined catch of trout into boxes of 6 for distribution to restaurants, determine the probability that at least one of the trout in a randomly chosen box weighs more than 4 kg, giving your answer correct to two decimal places.
- i** Suppose that the fish are packed in boxes of size n for distribution to restaurants, and that $\hat{P}_n$ is the random variable which represents the proportion of fish in the box that weigh more than 4.0 kg.

Determine the least value of n such that $P(\hat{P}_n < \frac{1}{n}) < 0.1$.

- 86** A factory has two machines that produce widgets. Machine A and Machine B. The time taken, X seconds, to produce a widget using machine A has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(x-8)(12-x)^2 & \text{if } 8 \leq x \leq 12 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the value of k .
- b** Determine the mean time it takes to produce a widget from Machine B, giving your answer correct to one decimal place.
- c** In a sample of 80 widgets selected from the production of Machine B, how many would be expected to have taken more than 10 seconds to produce?
- d** Determine the probability that a widget takes more than 11 seconds to produce, given that it took at least 10 seconds to produce. Give your answer correct to four decimal places.

The time taken, Y seconds to produce a widget using machine B is normally distributed, with a mean of 10 seconds and a standard deviation of 1.2 seconds.

- e Determine the probability, correct to four decimal places, that a randomly selected widget from the production of Machine B has taken between 8.5 and 10.5 seconds to produce.
- f If $P(Y > a) = 0.05$, determine a to one decimal place.
- g A widget which takes more than 12.2 seconds to produce is considered to be unprofitable. For a random sample of 200 widgets from Machine B, $\hat{P}$ is the random variable that represents the proportion of widgets in the sample that are unprofitable.
 - i Determine the expected value and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ correct to four decimal places.
 - ii Use the normal approximation to determine, correct to three decimal places, the probability that more than 4% of the sample are unprofitable.
 - iii If the probability that 5% or more widgets in a sample of size n from Machine B are unprofitable is less than 0.05, determine the smallest value of n , where n is an integer.
- h Suppose that the widgets manufactured by machine A, and those produced by machine B are combined at the end of each day. If the probability that a widget selected at random from the combined production was produced in less than 10 seconds is 0.6125, determine the proportion of the widgets that were produced by Machine A that day.

Interval estimates for proportions

- 87 In a survey of 500 randomly selected people in a certain state it was found that 287 people were happy in their current job. Determine a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people in that state who are happy in their current job.
- 88 A market researcher monitored a random sample of 300 people who entered a shop on a certain day and noted that 178 people made a purchase. Determine:
 - a a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people entering the shop on the following day who will make a purchase.
 - b a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of people entering the shop on the following day who will make a purchase.
- 89 A newspaper wishes to carry out a survey to investigate how people will vote in an upcoming referendum. An estimated value of the proportion of 'yes' voters is 0.3. Determine the sample size that should be used to achieve a margin of error of 1% in:
 - a a 90% confidence interval for the proportion of 'yes' voters
 - b a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of 'yes' voters.

- 90** Sam is reading a report which gives the confidence interval for a population proportion to be $(0.3342, 0.4658)$. He knows that the confidence interval is based on a sample of size 150. Show that the level of confidence used in calculating the confidence interval is 90%.
- 91** Electronic components of a certain type fail when they become too hot. The temperature at which a randomly chosen component fails is $T^{\circ}\text{C}$, where T is modelled as a normal random variable with mean $\mu = 95$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 5$.
- a** The manufacturer of the components has determined that 81.86% of the components fail at temperatures between 90°C and 105°C . A new improved version of the component is being developed, which will have mean fail temperature of $\mu = k$ and a standard deviation $\sigma = 5$. Determine the value of k , correct to one decimal place, so that 81.86% of the new components fail at temperatures between 95°C and 110°C .
- b** In a laboratory test of another type of components, 98% of a random sample of sensors continued working at a temperature of 80°C , and 4% continued working at 110°C . Determine, correct to one decimal place, estimates for the values of μ and σ .
- Another manufacturer of sensors claims that 10% of their components will continue working at 110°C . To test this company's claim, a random sample of m components was tested, and an approximate 95% confidence interval for the proportion of components working at 110°C was found to be $(0.0186, 0.1414)$.
- c** Determine the value of $\hat{p}$ that was used to obtain this 95% confidence interval.
- d** Determine the size of the sample from which this 95% confidence interval was obtained.
- e** Using these results, evaluate the reasonableness of the company's claim.
- 92** A drug company has established that 70% of people report their symptoms improve when using their existing cold medication. In a trial of a new type of cold medication, 75 out of a sample of 100 people reported that their symptoms improved. On the basis of this, the company claimed that the new drug is better than the old drug. Using these results, evaluate the reasonableness of the drug company's claim.
- 93** In a study of the prevalence of red hair in a certain country, researchers collected data from a random sample of 1800 adults.
- a** 10% of the 1000 females in the sample have red hair. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of females in the population who have red hair.
- b** 10% of the 800 males in the sample have red hair. Determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of males in the population who have red hair.
- c** Explain why the margin of error in the confidence interval for males differs from the margin of error in the confidence interval for females.
- d** Assume that there are 1000 females and 800 males in the sample, and that the proportion of females in the sample with red hair is 10%. Determine the sample proportion of males with red hair which would result in the margins of error in the 95% confidence intervals for the females and the 95% confidence intervals for the males being the same.

16B Multiple-choice questions

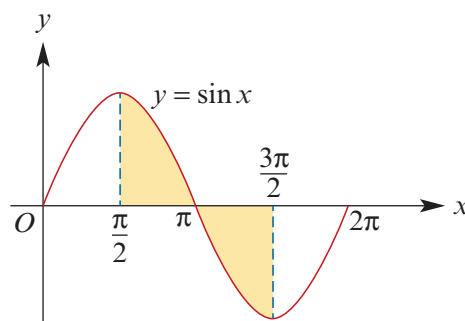
Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 If $y = F(x)$ and $\frac{dy}{dx} = f(x)$, then $\int_2^3 f(x) dx$ is equal to

A $f(3) - f(2)$
B $F'(3) - F'(2)$
C $F(3) - F(2)$
D $f(x) + c$

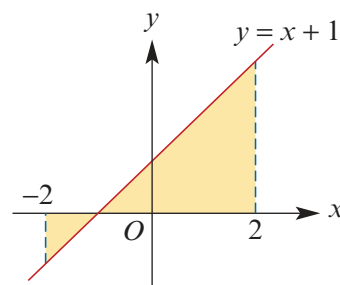
- 2 The area of the shaded region is given by

A $\int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}} \sin x dx$
B $\int_{\pi}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}} \sin x dx + \int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\pi} \sin x dx$
C $\int_{\frac{3\pi}{2}}^{\pi} \sin x dx + \int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\pi} \sin x dx$
D $\int_{\frac{\pi}{2}}^{\frac{3\pi}{2}} \sin x dx + \int_{\pi}^{\frac{\pi}{2}} \sin x dx$



- 3 The area of the shaded region is given by

A $\int_0^2 (x+1) dx - \int_{-2}^0 (x+1) dx$
B $\int_{-2}^2 (x+1) dx$
C $\int_0^2 (x+1) dx + \int_{-2}^0 (x+1) dx$
D $\int_{-1}^2 (x+1) dx - \int_{-2}^{-1} (x+1) dx$

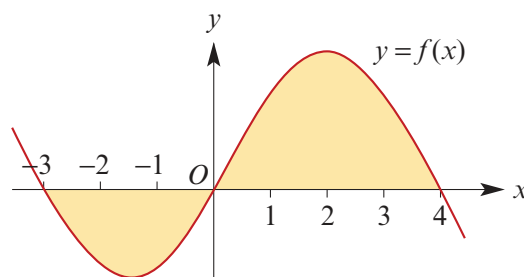


- 4 If $\int_0^{36} \frac{1}{2x+9} dx = \ln k$, then k is

A 3 **B** $\frac{9}{2}$ **C** $6\sqrt{2}$ **D** 9

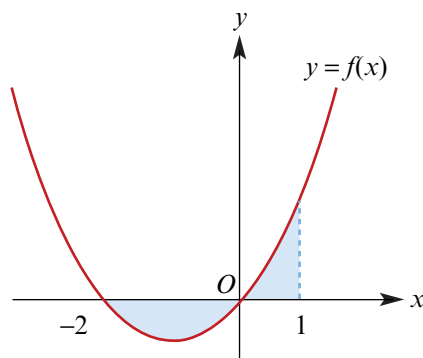
- 5 The area of the shaded region is given by

A none of these
B $\int_{-3}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^4 f(x) dx$
C $\int_{-3}^1 f(x) dx + \int_1^4 f(x) dx$
D $\int_4^0 f(x) dx + \int_{-3}^0 f(x) dx$



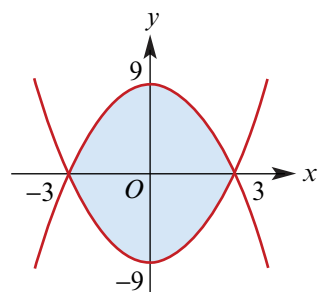
- 6 The area of the shaded region in the graph is

- A $\int_0^1 f(x) dx + \int_0^{-2} f(x) dx$
 B $\int_{-2}^1 f(x) dx$
 C $\int_{-2}^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^1 f(x) dx$
 D $-\int_1^0 f(x) dx + \int_0^{-2} f(x) dx$



- 7 In the diagram on the right, the area of the region enclosed between the graphs with equations $y = x^2 - 9$ and $y = 9 - x^2$ is given by

- A $\int_{-3}^3 2x^2 - 18 dx$ B $\int_{-3}^3 18 - 2x^2 dx$
 C $\int_{-9}^9 2x^2 - 18 dx$ D $\int_{-9}^9 18 - 2x^2 dx$



- 8 The area enclosed between the curves $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ for $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq x \leq \frac{5\pi}{4}$ is

- A $2\sqrt{2}$ B $\sqrt{2}$ C $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ D 2

- 9 The area bounded by the curve $y = \frac{1}{3-x}$, the x-axis, the y-axis and the line $x = 2$ is

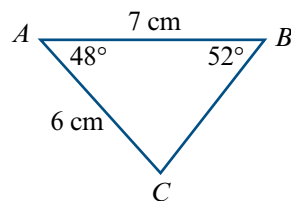
- A $\ln 3$ B $\ln\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)$ C $-\ln(3-x)$ D $\ln 2$

- 10 If $\int_a^b \sin(2x) dx = 0$, then possible values for a and b are

- A $b = \frac{3\pi}{4}, a = \frac{\pi}{4}$ B $b = \frac{\pi}{2}, a = 0$
 C $b = \pi, a = \frac{\pi}{2}$ D $b = \frac{\pi}{6}, a = \frac{\pi}{3}$

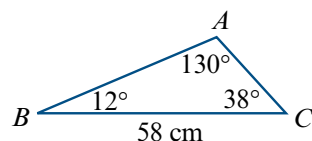
- 11 Which one of the following expressions will give the area of triangle ABC ?

- A $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 7 \sin 48^\circ$ B $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 7 \cos 48^\circ$
 C $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 7 \sin 52^\circ$ D $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 7 \cos 52^\circ$



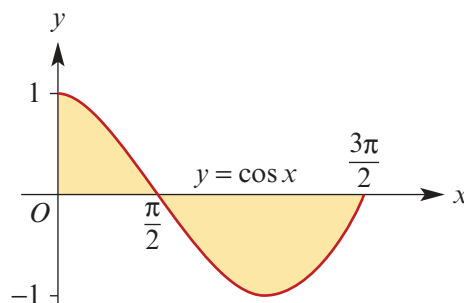
- 12 Which one of the following gives the correct value for c ?

- A $\frac{58 \cos 38^\circ}{\cos 130^\circ}$ B $\frac{58 \sin 38^\circ}{\sin 130^\circ}$
 C $58 \sin 38^\circ$ D $\frac{58 \cos 130^\circ}{\cos 38^\circ}$



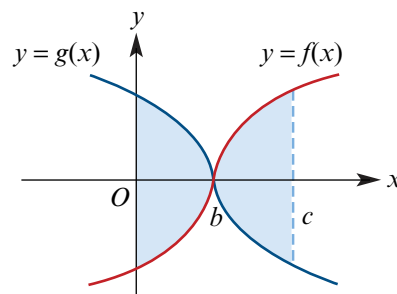
- 13** The total area, in square units, of the shaded regions is

A 3 **B** -1
C 1 **D** 2



- 14** The area of the region shaded in the graph is equal to

A $\int_0^c f(x) - g(x) dx$
B $\int_b^c f(x) - g(x) dx + \int_0^b f(x) - g(x) dx$
C $\int_b^c f(x) - g(x) dx + \int_b^0 f(x) - g(x) dx$
D $\int_b^c f(x) dx + \int_0^b g(x) dx$

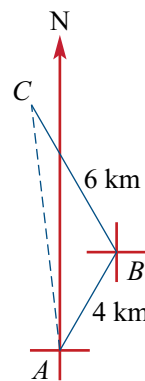


- 15** $\int_0^{\frac{\pi}{2}} (\cos x + \sin x) dx$ equals

A -1 **B** 1 **C** $\frac{\pi}{2}$ **D** 2

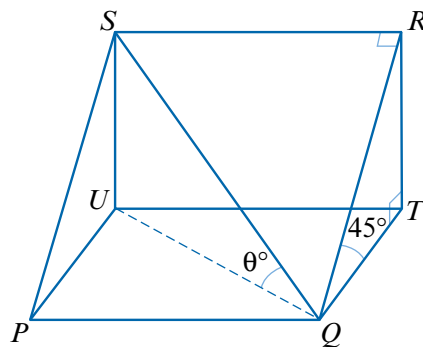
- 16** A hiker walks 4 km from point A on a bearing of 030° to point B, and then walks 6 km on a bearing of 330° to point C. The distance AC, in kilometres, is

A $\frac{4}{\sin 30^\circ}$
B $\sqrt{6^2 + 4^2 - 48 \cos 120^\circ}$
C $\sqrt{6^2 + 4^2 + 48 \cos 120^\circ}$
D $6 \sin 60^\circ$



- 17** In this figure, the rectangle PQRS is inclined at an angle of 45° to the horizontal plane PQTU. The magnitude of $\angle PQS$ is 60° . Let θ° be the angle of inclination of QS to the horizontal plane. The value of $\sin(\theta^\circ)$ is

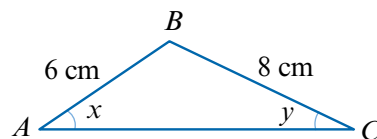
A $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$ **B** $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
C $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **D** $\frac{\sqrt{6}}{4}$



- 18** Consider triangle ABC shown on the right.

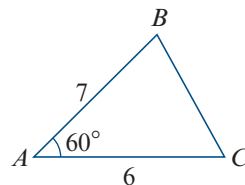
If $\sin x = \frac{3}{7}$, then $\sin y$ is equal to

- A** $\frac{1}{7}$ **B** $\frac{9}{28}$
C $\frac{1}{2}$ **D** $\frac{4}{7}$

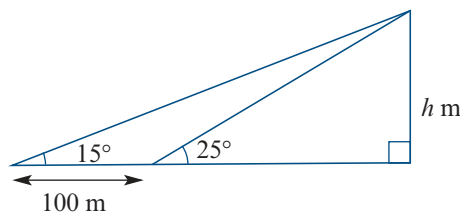


- 19** The square of the length of side BC is:

- A** 36 **B** 85 **C** 43
D 42



- 20** The height, h m, of a television tower can be calculated by measuring the angles of elevation of the top of the tower from two points that are in line with the tower but that are 100 m apart. Which *one* of the following equations gives the correct value of h ?



- A** $h = \frac{100 \sin 15^\circ \tan 25^\circ}{\sin 10^\circ}$ **B** $h = \frac{100 \sin 15^\circ \sin 25^\circ}{\sin 10^\circ}$
C $h = \frac{100 \sin 10^\circ \sin 25^\circ}{\sin 15^\circ}$ **D** $h = \frac{100 \sin 10^\circ \sin 25^\circ}{\sin 15^\circ}$

- 21** If a random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx^3 + \frac{3}{4}x & \text{if } 0 < x < 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

then k is equal to

- A** $-\frac{3}{16}$ **B** $\frac{6}{25}$ **C** $-\frac{9}{16}$ **D** $-\frac{1}{8}$

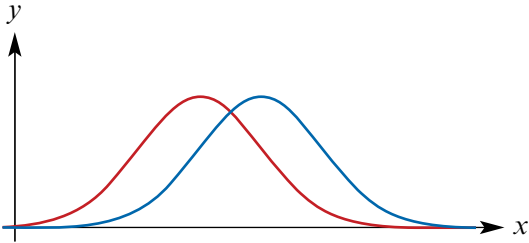
- 22** Determine the mean of the continuous random variable, X with probability density function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{6}x & \text{if } 2 < x < 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- A** $\frac{28}{9}$ **B** 2 **C** 3 **D** $\frac{28}{12}$

- 23** If the function $f(x) = 4x$ represents a probability density function, then the domain of f could be

- A** $0 \leq x \leq 0.5$ **B** $0 \leq x \leq 1$
C $0 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **D** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \leq x \leq \frac{2}{\sqrt{2}}$

- 24** Suppose $F(x)$ is the cumulative distribution function of X . Then, $P(X > c)$ is given by:
A $F(c)$ **B** $1 - F(c)$ **C** $F'(c)$ **D** $\int_0^c F(x) dx$
- 25** The random variable X has a normal distribution with mean 8 and variance 4. If Z is a standard normal random variable, then the probability that X is more than 10 is equal to
A $P(Z < 1)$ **B** $P(Z > 1)$ **C** $P\left(Z > \frac{1}{2}\right)$ **D** $1 - P(Z > 1)$
- 26** The diagram shows the probability density functions of two normally distributed random variables. The one shown in red has mean μ_1 and standard deviation σ_1 , and the one shown in blue has mean μ_2 and standard deviation σ_2 .
 Which of the following statements is true?
- 
- A** $\mu_1 = \mu_2, \sigma_1 < \sigma_2$ **B** $\mu_1 = \mu_2, \sigma_1 > \sigma_2$
C $\mu_1 > \mu_2, \sigma_1 = \sigma_2$ **D** $\mu_1 < \mu_2, \sigma_1 = \sigma_2$
- 27** Research has shown that 1 in 4 people in Australia can't swim. A random sample of 100 Australians was selected and of these 32 could not swim. In this example
A $p = 0.04, \hat{p} = 0.32$ **B** $p = 0.32, \hat{p} = 0.25$
C $p = 0.25, \hat{p} = 0.32$ **D** $p = 0.40, \hat{p} = 0.32$
- 28** Suppose that in a certain population 8% of people own electric cars. The mean and variance of the proportion of people who own electric cars in a sample of size 100 are
A $E(\hat{P}) = 0.08, \text{Var}(\hat{P}) = 0.00074$ **B** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.008, \text{Var}(\hat{P}) = 0.0074$
C $E(\hat{P}) = 8, \text{Var}(\hat{P}) = 7.46$ **D** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.0008, \text{Var}(\hat{P}) = 0.00074$
- 29** From a random sample, a 99% confidence interval for the population proportion p is found to be (0.65, 0.85). Select which of the following statements is correct.
A The probability that the population proportion p lies in the interval (0.65, 0.85) is 0.99.
B The margin of error is 0.20.
C The margin of error is 0.10.
D More than one of these statements is correct.
- 30** For a fixed sample, a decrease in the level of confidence will lead to a confidence interval which is
A narrower **B** wider **C** unchanged
D cannot be determined from the information given

- 31** Select which of the following statements are true.
- I The lower the level of confidence, the smaller the margin of error.
 - II The larger the sample size, the smaller the margin of error.
 - III The smaller the sample size, the smaller the margin of error.
 - IV The higher the level of confidence, the smaller the margin of error.
- A** I and II **B** I and III **C** II only **D** II and IV
- 32** If a researcher decreases her sample size by a factor of 2, then the width of a 95% confidence interval would
- A** increase by a factor of 2 **B** increase by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$
C decrease by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$ **D** decrease by a factor of 4
- 33** In a recent survey 40 people agreed with the statement "School attendance should be only 4 days per week" while 160 disagreed. The margin of error in a 99% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who agree with this statement is
- A** $2.58\sqrt{\frac{0.25(1-0.25)}{200}}$ **B** $2.58\sqrt{\frac{0.2(1-0.2)}{200}}$
C $2.58\sqrt{\frac{0.25(1-0.25)}{160}}$ **D** $2.58\sqrt{\frac{0.2(1-0.2)}{160}}$
- 34** A sample of size n was used to estimate a population proportion. A margin of error of ± 0.04 was calculated using $z = 2.58$. Given that the sample proportion was 0.1, determine n .
- A** $n = \frac{\left(\frac{0.04}{2.58}\right)^2}{0.09}$ **B** $n = \frac{\left(\frac{2.58}{0.04}\right)^2}{0.09}$
C $n = \left(\frac{0.04}{2.58}\right)^2 \times 0.09$ **D** $n = \left(\frac{2.58}{0.04}\right)^2 \times 0.09$

35 Number of hours per week spent exercising

	Male	Female	Total
Less than 5	598	562	1160
From 5 to less than 15	269	271	540
15 or more	133	167	300
Total	1000	1000	2000

A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who exercise for 5 or more hours per weeks is given by

$$\left(c - 1.96\sqrt{\frac{c(1-c)}{n}}, c + 1.96\sqrt{\frac{c(1-c)}{n}}\right)$$

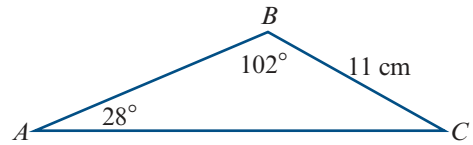
The values of c and n are

- A** $c = 0.27; n = 2000$ **B** $c = 0.438; n = 1000$
C $c = 0.42; n = 2000$ **D** $c = 0.15; n = 2000$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

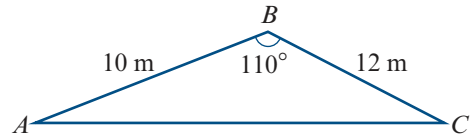
- 36** The length of AC , correct to one decimal place, is:

A 13.2 cm **B** 22.9 cm
C 23.4 cm **D** 40.4 cm



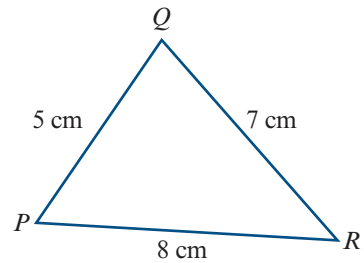
- 37** The length of AC , to the nearest metre, is:

A 16 **B** 18
C 22 **D** 36



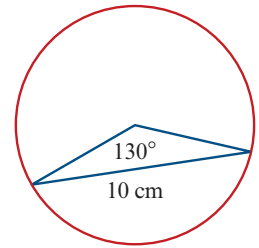
- 38** In the triangle shown, angle PQR , correct to the nearest degree, equals:

A 38° **B** 60° **C** 73° **D** 82°



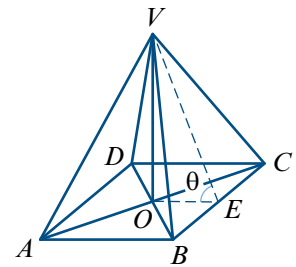
- 39** The length of the radius of the circle shown, correct to two decimal places, is:

A 5.52 cm **B** 8.36 cm **C** 9.01 cm **D** 12.18 cm



- 40** $VABCD$ is a right square pyramid with base length 80 mm and perpendicular height 100 mm . The angle θ between a sloping face and the base $ABCD$, to the nearest degree, is

A 29° **B** 51°
C 61° **D** 68°

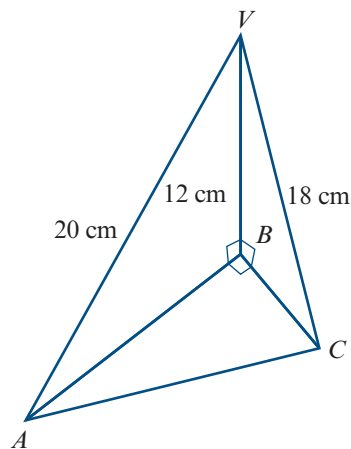


- 41** A boat sails from a harbour on a bearing of 035° for 100 km . It then takes a bearing of 190° for 50 km . The distance from the harbour, correct to the nearest km, is:

A 51 km **B** 58 km
C 59 km **D** 108 km

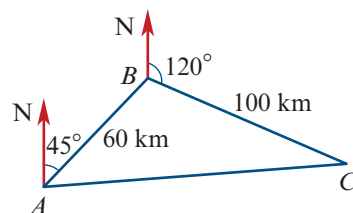
- 42** $VABC$ is a pyramid. V is vertically above B and triangle ABC has a right angle at B . The distance between points A and C is closest to:

A 12 cm **B** 21 cm
C 26 cm **D** 30 cm



- 43** A ship travels from point A to point B on a bearing of 045° for a distance of 60 km. It then travels to point C on a bearing of 120° for a distance of 100 km. The distance of C to A is closest to:

A 123 km **B** 125 km
C 127 km **D** 129 km

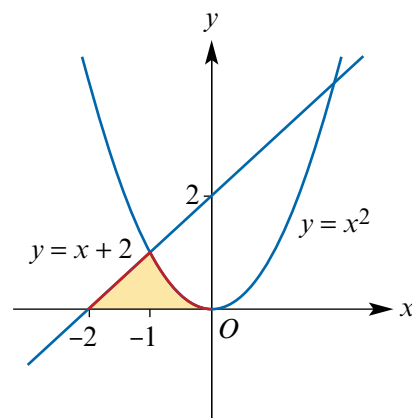


- 44** The area of the region bounded by $y = x^2$ and $y = x + 2$ is

A $\frac{4}{3}$ **B** $\frac{5}{3}$ **C** $\frac{9}{2}$ **D** $\frac{5}{6}$

- 45** The area of the region bounded by $y = x^2$, $y = x + 2$ and the x -axis is

A $\frac{4}{3}$ **B** $\frac{5}{3}$ **C** $\frac{9}{2}$ **D** $\frac{5}{6}$



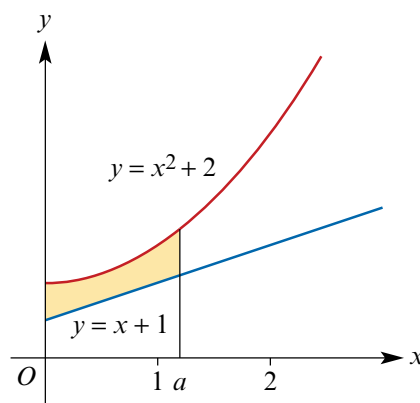
- 46** The function f is continuous on $1 \leq x \leq 13$ and has values as shown in the table below.

x	1	5	9	13
$f(x)$	6	14	17	15

Using intervals of width 4 the approximation of $\int_1^{13} f(x) dx$ found by using the trapezoidal rule is

A 168.25 **B** 183.00 **C** 166.00 **D** 165.25

- A** 1.2 **B** 1.15
C 1.24 **D** 1.11



- 50** If a random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{9}(4x - x^2) & \text{if } 0 < x < 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

A 0.6667 **B** 0.4074 **C** 0.5926 **D** 0.4444

- 51** A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{8}{3}(1-x) & \text{if } 0 < x < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

A 0.222 **B** 0.667 **C** 0.250 **D** 0.209

- 52** A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 2(1 - x^{-2}) & \text{if } 1 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

A 1 **B** 1.614 **C** 2 **D** 1.5

- 53** A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} x^2 \left(2x + \frac{3}{2} \right) & 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The variance of X is closest to

- A** 0.6333 **B** 0.1809 **C** 0.0327 **D** 0.1417
- 54** The probability of obtaining a z -value which falls between $z = -1.0$ and $z = 0$ for a standard normal distribution is approximately
- A** 0.20 **B** 0.34 **C** 0.68 **D** 0.16
- 55** If X is a normally distributed random variable with mean $\mu = 2$ and standard deviation $\sigma = 2$, then the probability that X is less than -2 is
- A** 0.0228 **B** 0.1587 **C** 0.8413 **D** 0.9772
- 56** If X is a normally distributed random variable with mean $\mu = 2$ and variance $\sigma^2 = 4$, then $P(1 < X < 2.5)$ is
- A** 0.5987 **B** 0.2902 **C** 0.6915 **D** 0.4013
- 57** An automatic dispensing machine fills cups with cordial. If the amount of cordial in the cup is a normally distributed random variable with a mean of 50 mL and a standard deviation of 2 mL, then 90% of the cups contain less than
- A** 44.87 mL **B** 53.29 mL **C** 46.71 mL **D** 52.56 mL
- 58** Assume that X is a normally distributed random variable with mean $\mu = 1$ and variance $\sigma^2 = 2.25$. If $P(\mu - k < X < \mu + k) = 0.7$, then $k =$
- A** 1.555 **B** 1.037 **C** 0.787 **D** 2.332
- 59** The weight of a packet of biscuits is known to be normally distributed with a mean of 1 kg. If a packet is more than 0.05 kg underweight, it is unacceptable. If it is found that 3% of packets are unacceptable, then the standard deviation of the weight is
- A** 1.881 **B** 0.027 **C** 10.488 **D** 0.030
- 60** The volume of liquid in a 1.5-litre bottle of soft drink is a normally distributed random variable with a mean of μ litres and a standard deviation of 0.02 litres. To ensure that 99.8% of the bottles contain at least 1.5 litre of soft drink, the value of μ should be
- A** 1.442 litres **B** 1.547 litres **C** 1.502 litres **D** 1.558 litres
- 61** In a certain country it is known that 15% of golfers play left-handed. A random sample of 20 golfers is to be selected. If $\hat{P}$ is the proportion of golfers in the sample who play left-handed, then $P\left(\hat{P} \geq \frac{3}{10}\right)$ is closest to
- A** 0.9780 **B** 0.9326 **C** 0.0673 **D** 0.0219
- 62** If a fair coin is tossed 50 times, then the probability that the proportion of heads obtained is less than 40% or more than 60% is closest to
- A** 0.8811 **B** 0.2026 **C** 0.7974 **D** 0.1189

- 63** A dice is biased, so that the probability of showing a six when it is tossed is 0.15. The dice is rolled 50 times. If $\hat{P}$ is the proportion of sixes showing when the dice is rolled 50 times, then the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$ are closest to
- A** $E(\hat{P}) = 7.5$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 2.5249$ **B** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.15$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.0505$
C $E(\hat{P}) = 0.15$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.3571$ **D** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.1$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.0026$
- 64** The distribution of the sample proportion determined from a sample of size n has a mean of $\frac{3}{8}$ and a standard deviation of $\frac{1}{56}$. The value of n is
- A** 149 **B** 5880 **C** 735 **D** 3136
- 65** Suppose that 23 people from a random sample of 60 support the statement "The speed limit on the freeway should be increased to 120 kph". If this information is used to determine a 98% confidence interval for the proportion of people supporting this statement then the margin of error will be
- A** 0.146 **B** 0.161 **C** 0.129 **D** 0.123
- 66** A random sample of people were asked to name their preferred type of holiday location. Their preferences are shown in the table.

Holiday location	Number of people
Beach	47
Country	22
City	38
Mountains	23

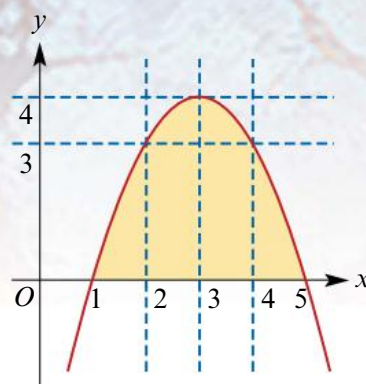
- A 90% confidence interval for the proportion of people who prefer the beach is
- A** (0.318, 0.465) **B** (0.279, 0.444) **C** (0.253, 0.470) **D** (0.292, 0.431)
- 67** In a random sample of 300 people, 38% said they would rather watch tennis on television than attend the match. A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of people in the population who prefer to watch tennis on television is
- A** (0.089, 0.164) **B** (0.325, 0.435) **C** (0.204, 0.303) **D** (0.255, 0.505)
- 68** Determine the size of the sample which should be taken to estimate a population proportion to within ± 0.05 at the 95% confidence level, if a prior study estimated the value to be 0.7.
- A** 39 **B** 196 **C** 323 **D** 1521
- 69** A survey was conducted to determine the proportion of university students who work full time. Based on the survey a 95% confidence interval for this proportion was determined to be (0.2710, 0.4290). The number of students in the survey who work full time is
- A** 35 **B** 49 **C** 140 **D** 170
- 70** Suppose that, in a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion p , the margin of error is equal to 0.216. The margin of error for the 99% confidence interval for p that is determined using the same information is
- A** 0.225 **B** 0.207 **C** 0.164 **D** 0.284

Revision of Units 3 & 4

17A Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1 a Determine the area of the shaded region using the trapezoidal rule with the four strips
- b Evaluate the definite integral $\int_1^5 (5-x)(x-1) dx$



- 2 The rate of change in the number of small insects in a population is represented by $\frac{dx}{dt} = 15\,000e^{\frac{t}{15}}$, where t represents the time (days) since starting the experiment and x represents the number of insects. Initially there are 50 000 small insects.
- a Determine the equation for $x(t)$.
- b Determine how long it will take to double the number of insects in the population.
- 3 Water is being poured into a tank so that the volume V litres at time t minutes is given by $V(t) = 30t^2 - t^3$, $0 \leq t \leq 30$.
- a Determine $\frac{dV}{dt}$.
- b Determine the maximum value of V and the time at which this occurs. Use the second derivative to show that it is a maximum.

- 4** Determine the derivative of each of the following, given that the function g is differentiable for all real numbers.

a $x^3 g(x)$ **b** $(2x + 3)g(x)$ **c** $(g(x))^3$ **d** $\frac{g(x)}{x^2}$

- 5 a** Let $f(x) = (5x^3 - 3x)^7$. Determine $f'(x)$.

b Let $f(x) = 2xe^{4x}$. Evaluate $f'(0)$.

- 6** A small wheel rotates in a vertical plane so that at time t the vertical position y cm of a point on the wheel relative to the ground at time t seconds is described by $y(t) = 20 + 25 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right)$.

a Determine expressions for the vertical velocity (cms^{-1}) and acceleration (cms^{-2}) at time t seconds.

b Determine the maximum (positive) value of the acceleration and give the times at which this occurs in first 10 seconds of motion.

- 7** The amount won in a game of chance, $\$X$, is a random variable with probability distribution given by:

x	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	0.6	0.2	0.15	0.05

a Determine the mean of X .

b Determine the probability that a player who plays the game twice wins the same amount both times.

- 8 a** For $f(x) = \frac{\sin x}{2x + 1}$, determine $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$. **b** For $f(x) = 3x \sin(2x)$, determine $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$.

- 9 a** Determine the second derivative of $x^2 \ln(2x)$ with respect to x .

b Let $f(x) = e^{\sin(2x)}$. Determine $f''(x)$.

- 10** A curve has equation $y = 24\sqrt{x-1} - (x-1)^{\frac{3}{2}}$ where $x > 1$.

a Determine the coordinates of the stationary point of the curve.

b Determine $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$ and state the nature of the stationary point.

- 11** If $f(4) = 6$ and $f'(4) = 2$, determine $g'(4)$ where:

a $g(x) = \sqrt{x} f(x)$ **b** $g(x) = \frac{f(x)}{x}$

- 12** Given that $f'(x) = \sin\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ and $g(x) = 3x$, determine $F'(x)$ if $F(x) = f(g(x))$.

- 13** Suppose that a tennis player has a probability of 0.2 of serving an ace each time they serve. The random variable X represents the outcome from a shot.

a Write down the probability distribution of X .

b Determine the mean and variance of X .

- 14** If $f(x) = 4x^2 - 5x + 6$, determine:
- a** $f'(x)$ **b** $f'(0)$ **c** the value of x for which $f'(x) = 1$.
- 15** Determine the derivative of $\ln(3f(x))$ with respect to x .
- 16** The tangent to the graph of $y = \sqrt{a-x}$ at $x = 1$ has a gradient of -6 . Determine the value of a .
- 17** Let $f(x) = e^x \sin(x)$.
- a** Determine:
- i** $f'(x)$ **ii** $f'(\pi)$ **iii** $f'(0)$
- b** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x)$ at:
- i** $x = 0$ **ii** $x = \pi$
- c** Determine the equation of the tangent to the graph of $y = f(x - \pi)$ at:
- i** $x = 0$ **ii** $x = \pi$
- 18** Solve each of the following equations for x .
- a** $e^{2x} = 1$ **b** $2^{x-1} \times 4^x = 16$
- c** $\log_2(3x + 1) = -1$ **d** $\ln(x) - 2 \ln(2x) = 1$
- 19** A random variable X has a probability density function f with rule:
- $$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 - kx^2 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \text{ or } x > 2 \end{cases}$$
- Determine:
- a** the value of k **b** $P(0 \leq X \leq 1)$ **c** $E(X)$
- 20** Sketch graphs for the following functions, labelling the axis intercepts.
- a** $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{-x} - 1$ **b** $y = 2 \log_3(x + 1) + 1$
- 21** Differentiate each of the following with respect to x :
- a** $e^{2x} \cos(3x)$ **b** $(x - 2)^2 \ln(x - 2)$ **c** $\frac{\ln(x^2)}{x}$ **d** $\cos(2x) \sin(3x)$
- e** $\frac{1}{\sin(2x)}$ **f** $\sin^3(2 - 5x)$ **g** $x^3 \cos^3(3x)$ **h** $x^3 \ln(x^3)$
- 22** Determine the implied domain for the function $f(x) = \sqrt{x - 3} + \sqrt{5 - x}$.
- 23** Determine the gradient of each of the following curves at the stated value of x .
- a** $y = 4 - e^{2x}$, $x = 1$ **b** $y = e^{x^3-1}$, $x = 0$
- c** $y = 4e^{2x} + x^3$, $x = 1$ **d** $y = e^{-x} + 5$, $x = 0$
- 24** A coin is tossed 100 times, and 53 heads observed.
- a** Give a point estimate for p , the probability of observing a head.
- b** Write down an expression for a 95% confidence interval for p , using $z = 1.96$.

- 25** The random variable X is normally distributed with mean 20 and standard deviation 2. If $P(X < 23) = q$, determine $P(17 < X < 23 | X > 17)$ in terms of q .
- 26** For each of the following derivative functions, determine an expression for y in terms of x using the given information.
- a** $\frac{dy}{dx} = \sin x + 1$ given that $y = 2$ when $x = 0$
- b** $\frac{dy}{dx} = 2e^{\frac{x}{3}} - e$ given that $y = 2e$ when $x = 3$
- c** $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{1}{2x - 3}$ given that $y = 4$ when $x = 2$
- 27** Evaluate each of the following definite integrals.
- a** $\int_1^4 \frac{2x + 3}{x^2 + 3x} dx$ **b** $\int_0^{\sqrt{\pi}} 2x \sin x^2 dx$ **c** $\int_1^3 (6x^2 + 6)e^{x^3 + 3x} dx$
- 28** Solve for x :
- a** $2 \times 2^{2x} = 17 \times 2^x - 8$ **b** $\ln(2x + 3) - \ln(x) = 2$
- 29** Let X be a normally distributed random variable with a mean of 84 and a standard deviation of 6. Let Z be the standard normal random variable.
- a** Determine the probability that X takes a value greater than 84.
- b** Use the result that $P(Z < 1) = 0.84$ to determine the probability that $78 < X < 90$.
- c** Determine the probability that $X < 78$ given that $X < 84$.
- 30** Let $f(x) = x^2 + 6$ and $g(x) = 3x + 1$. Determine $f(g(x))$.
- 31** For each of the following, solve for x in terms of y .
- a** $y = 5e^{x-1} - 3$ **b** $y = \ln(\sqrt{3 - x})$
- 32** Determine the average value of $y = e^x$ over the interval $[0, 4]$.
- 33** Suppose that the proportion of people in Australia who were born overseas is 0.3. A simple random sample of 2100 people is selected. Determine the mean and standard deviation of $\hat{P}$, the proportion of people in the sample who were born overseas.
- 34** Suppose that 10 independent random samples were taken from a large population, and that a 90% confidence interval for the population proportion p was computed from each of these samples. Determine:
- a** the number of these 90% confidence intervals that you would expect to contain p
- b** an expression for the probability at least nine of the confidence intervals contain p .
- 35** Triangle ABC has $AB = AC = 10$ cm and $\angle BAC = 150^\circ$. Determine:
- a** the length BC **b** the area of triangle ABC
- 36** Determine the coordinates of the points of inflection on the graph of $f(x) = x^2(4 - x^2)$.
- 37** Determine an anti-derivative of $\frac{1}{1 - 3x}$ with respect to x , for $x < \frac{1}{3}$.

- 38** A particle moves in a straight line such that its acceleration, $a \text{ m/s}^2$, at time t seconds is given by $a = 3t + 2$. The particle starts at rest 10 metres to the right of a fixed point O on the line. Determine the position of the particle relative to O after 5 seconds.
- 39** A biased coin is tossed four times. On each toss, the probability of a head is p . Determine, in terms of p , the probability that from the four tosses there are:
- i** exactly two heads **ii** exactly three heads
- a** Given that the probability of two heads is equal to the probability of three heads, determine the value of p .
- 40** Consider the graph of the function f with rule $f(x) = x^3 - \frac{1}{2}x^4$.
- a** Determine the x -axis intercepts.
 - b** Determine the coordinates of any stationary points.
 - c** Determine the coordinates of any points of inflection.
 - d** Use the second derivative to establish the nature of each stationary point.
 - e** Sketch the graph of f , showing all features.
- 41** A function f has rule $f(x) = \frac{2x-1}{x+2}$.
- a** If the rule of f is written as $f(x) = a + \frac{b}{x+2}$, determine the values of a and b .
 - b** Determine the area between the graph of $y = f(x)$ and the x -axis for $0 \leq x \leq 2$.
 - c** Let $g(x) = \frac{1}{x+2}$. Solve the equation $f(x) = g(x)$ for x .
 - d** Determine the area between the graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 1$.
- 42** The graph of $y = ax^3 + bx + c$ has intercepts $(0, 6)$ and $(-2, 0)$ and has a turning point where $x = -1$.
- a** Determine the value of c .
 - b** Write down two simultaneous equations in a and b from the given information.
 - c** Hence determine the values of a and b .
- 43** A hiker starts at point A . He walks for 10 km on a bearing of 330° and then walks for 10 km on a bearing of 060° to arrive at point B . How far is B from A , and what is the bearing of B from A ?
- 44** The probability density function of a random variable X is given by
- $$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x}{24} & \text{if } 1 \leq x \leq 7 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
- a** Determine $P(X < 3)$.
 - b** If $b \in [1, 7]$ and $P(X \geq b) = \frac{3}{8}$, determine b .

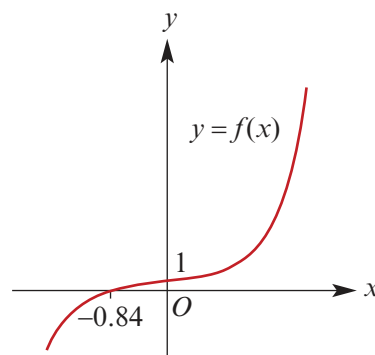
- 45** A binomial distribution with parameters n and p has mean 7 and variance 6. Determine the values of n and p .

- 46** The graph of the piecewise-defined function

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} -2x^4 + 1 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ 2x^4 + 1 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

is shown.

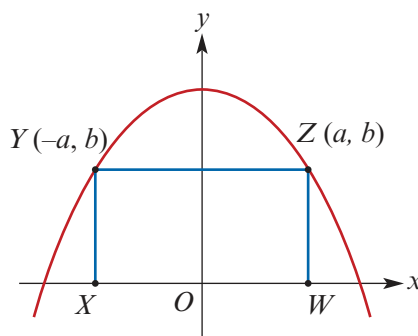
- a** Draw the graph of the derivative function f' .
b Write down a rule for the derivative function.



- 47** Suppose that 20% of camels from a large population have two humps instead of one. A random sample of three camels is selected for inspection.
- a** List the possible values of $\hat{p}$, the proportion of camels in the sample with two humps.
b Construct a probability distribution table for the sample proportion $\hat{P}$.
c Use this table to determine the probability that the proportion of camels in the sample with two humps is at least 0.3.
- 48** In order to measure the effect of alcohol on reaction time, an investigator selects a random sample of subjects from a group of diners in a restaurant.
- a** Do you think this sample will be representative of the general population? Explain your answer.
b How would you suggest that the sample could be chosen?
- 49** Let $f(x) = -3x^2 + 2bx + 9$ with $\int_{-1}^3 f(x) dx = 32$. Determine the value of b .
- 50** Let $\int f(x) dx = \frac{m}{n} e^{nx}$ and $f(0) = 2$ and $f(20) = 20$. Determine the values of m and n .
- 51** A sample of n people were asked whether they thought that Australians had access to adequate hospital care, and 37% said no.
- a** Write down an expression for E_1 , the margin of error in the 95% confidence level, in terms of n .
b Suppose the number of people in the sample is doubled, but $\hat{p}$ remains unchanged. Write down an expression for E_2 , the margin of error in the 95% confidence level, in terms of n .
c Determine an expression for E_2 in terms of E_1 .
- 52** A tangent to the graph of $y = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$ has equation $y = \frac{1}{3}x + a$. Determine the value(s) of a .
- 53** Triangle ABC has $AB = 10$ cm, $BC = 8$ cm and $\angle BAC = 30^\circ$.
- a** Determine the sine of $\angle ACB$.
b Let $x = AC$. Use the cosine rule to write a quadratic equation in x . Explain why there are two solutions to this equation.

- 54** A rectangle $XYZW$ has two vertices on the x -axis and the other two vertices on the graph of $y = 16 - 4x^2$, as shown in the diagram.

- a** Determine the area, A , of rectangle $XYZW$ in terms of a .
- b** Determine the maximum value of A and the value of a for which this occurs.

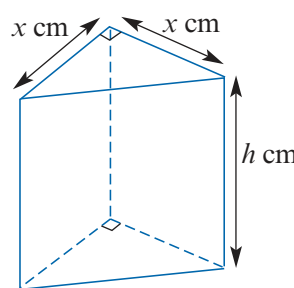


- 55** A brick is made in the shape of a right triangular prism. The triangular end is a right-angled isosceles triangle, with the equal sides of length x cm. The height of the brick is h cm. The volume of the brick is 2000 cm^3 .

- a** Determine an expression for h in terms of x .
- b** Show that the total surface area, $A \text{ cm}^2$, of the brick is given by

$$A = \frac{4000\sqrt{2} + 8000}{x} + x^2$$

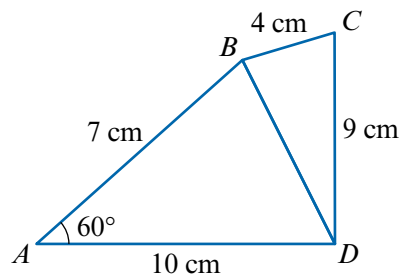
- c** Determine the value of x^3 if the brick has minimum surface area.



Technology-active short-response questions

- 56** A triangular area of land has boundary side lengths of 10 m, 12 m and 17 m.
- a** Determine the largest internal angle in degrees, correct to two decimal places.
- b** Determine the area of the land, correct to the nearest square metre.
- 57** Determine the area bounded by the graph of the function and the x -axis for the given domain:
- a** $y = -3 \sin(2x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$ **b** $y = e^{-x} - \frac{1}{e}$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2$
- 58** In a particular ski resort, the probability of snow on any day in winter is 0.4, independent of any other day. Suppose that there are 13 Saturdays in winter.
- a** Write down a general rule for the probability distribution of the number of Saturdays on which it snows in winter.
- b** Determine:
- the probability that it snows on 7 or more Saturdays one winter.
 - the mean and standard deviation of the number of Saturdays it snows in winter.
- 59** Use the normal approximation to determine the approximate probability that, in the next 120 tosses of a fair coin, the proportion of heads observed will be less than or equal to 0.48.

- 60** Determine the area of quadrilateral $ABCD$. Give your answer correct to two decimal places.



- 61** The probability that Billy will be late to school on Monday is 0.2. If he is late on Monday, then the probability that he will be late on Tuesday is 0.3; otherwise this probability is 0.1.
- Determine the probability that:
 - Billy is late on both Monday and Tuesday
 - Billy is late on Tuesday
 - If Billy was late on Tuesday, determine the probability that he was late on Monday.
- 62** Laura works as a salesperson for an electric-car company. The following table gives the probability distribution for the number, X , of cars that Laura sells in a day.

x	0	1	2	3
$P(X = x)$	0.3	0.4	0.2	k

- State the value of k .
 - Determine the probability that on a given day:
 - Laura sells at least one car
 - Laura sells exactly one car, given that she sells at least one car.
 - Determine the mean, μ , and the standard deviation, σ , for the number of cars that Laura sells in one day.
- 63** The weights of goldfish are normally distributed with a mean of 40 g and a standard deviation of 5 g.
- Determine the probability, correct to three decimal places, that the weight of a randomly selected goldfish is:
 - between 30 g and 50 g
 - more than 45 g, given that it is less than 50 g.
 - What weight, correct to one decimal place, would put a goldfish in:
 - the bottom 20% of the population by weight
 - the top 40% of the population by weight?
- 64** Researchers found that in a sample of 200 households that have the paper delivered on Sunday, 40 did not open it. Based on this information determine a 95% confidence interval for the proportion of households that do not open their Sunday paper.

- 65** Strontium-90 decays at a rate proportional to the amount present. Therefore, if $A(t)$ is the amount of strontium-90 present after t years, then

$$A(t) = A_0 e^{-kt}$$

where A_0 is the initial amount and k is a positive constant. It takes 28.8 years for an amount of strontium-90 to reduce by half.

- a** Determine the value of k .
 - b** How many years does it take for an amount of strontium-90 to reduce by 75%?
- 66** The length of a certain species of worm has a normal distribution with mean 20 cm and standard deviation 1.5 cm.
- a** Determine the probability that a randomly selected worm has a length greater than 22 cm.
 - b** If the lengths of the worms are measured to the nearest centimetre, determine the probability that a randomly selected worm has its length measured as 20 cm.
 - c** If five worms are randomly selected, determine the probability that exactly two will have their lengths measured as 20 cm (to the nearest centimetre).

- 67** The continuous random variable X has probability density function f given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(5 - 2x) & \text{if } 2 < x \leq \frac{5}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- a** Determine the value of k .
 - b**
 - i** Determine $E(X)$.
 - ii** Determine the median of X .
 - iii** Determine σ , the standard deviation of X , correct to two decimal places.
 - c** Determine $P(X < \mu - \sigma)$, where $\mu = E(X)$.
- 68** The lifetime, X days, of a particular type of computer component has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} k(a - x) & \text{if } 0 < x \leq a \\ 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \text{ or } x > a \end{cases}$$

where k and a are positive constants.

- a** Determine k in terms of a .
 - b** Determine the mean, μ , and the variance, σ^2 , of X in terms of a .
 - c** Determine $P(X > \mu + 2\sigma)$.
 - d** Determine the value of a if the median lifetime is 1000 days.
- 69** A particle is moving in a straight line. At time t seconds after passing a point O the velocity $v(t) \text{ ms}^{-1}$ is given by $v(t) = e^{-2t} \sin 3t$. Determine the smallest value of t for which the acceleration of the particle is zero giving your answer correct to two decimal places.

- 70** The length of an engine part must be between 4.81 cm and 5.20 cm. In mass production, it is found that 0.8% are too short and 3% are too long. Assume that the lengths are normally distributed.

- a** Determine the mean and standard deviation of this distribution.
- b** Each part costs \$4 to produce; those that turn out to be too long are shortened at an extra cost of \$2, and those that turn out to be too short are rejected. Determine the expected total cost of producing 100 parts that meet the specifications.

- 71** A particle starts from rest at a fixed point O and moves in a straight line towards a point A . The particle's velocity, v m/s, is given by

$$v = 8 - 8e^{2t}$$

where t is the time in seconds after leaving O .

- a** Determine the particle's acceleration at time t seconds.
- b** Given that the particle reaches point A at time $t = \ln 2$, determine the distance OA .

- 72** A coin is tossed 1000 times, and 527 heads observed.

- a** Give a point estimate for p , the probability of observing a head when the coin is tossed.
- b** Determine an approximate 95% confidence interval for p .
- c** What level of confidence would be given by a confidence interval for p which is half the width of the approximate 95% confidence interval?
- d** What level of confidence would be given by a confidence interval for p which is twice the width of the approximate 95% confidence interval?

- 73** A triangle ABC has $AB = 2$ m, $AC = 3$ m, $\angle ACB = 30^\circ$ and $\angle ABC$ is obtuse.

- a** Determine the two internal angles $\angle ABC$ and $\angle BAC$, correct to one decimal place.
- b** Determine the area of $\triangle ABC$, correct to one decimal place.
- c** Determine the perimeter of $\triangle ABC$, correct to one decimal place.

- 74** The wingspans of a large population of eagles are normally distributed with mean 1.2 m and standard deviation 20 cm.

- a** Determine the probability, correct to three decimal places, that a randomly selected eagle from this population has a wingspan:
 - i** greater than 90 cm
 - ii** greater than 90 cm, given that it is less than 1.1 m.

A random sample of three eagles was selected from this population. For each of the following, give your answer correct to three decimal places.

- b** Determine the probability that at least two eagles in the sample have a wingspan greater than 1 m.
- c** Determine the probability that the proportion of eagles in the sample with a wingspan greater than 1 m is less than 0.4.

In a separate experiment, a random sample of 100 eagles was selected from a different population of eagles, and 80 of them had a wingspan greater than 1 m.

- d** Determine an approximate 95% confidence interval for p , the proportion of eagles in this population with a wingspan greater than 1 m. (Round to two decimal places.)
 - e** Determine the sample size that is required to achieve a margin of error of 2% in a 95% confidence interval for p .
- 75** An exponential function has a rule of the form $y = A \times 3^{bx}$. Given that the graph of the function passes through the points (0, 2) and (1, 6), determine the values of A and b .
- 76** A study is being conducted of the numbers of male and female children in families in a certain population.
- a** A simple model is that each child in any family is equally likely to be male or female, and that the sex of each child is independent of the sex of any previous children in the family. Using this model, calculate the probability that in a randomly chosen family of four children:
 - i** all four will be of the same sex
 - ii** there will be two males and two females.
 - b** An alternative model is that the first child in any family is equally likely to be male or female, but that, for any subsequent children, the probability that they will be of the same sex as the previous child is $\frac{3}{5}$. Using this model, calculate the probability that in a randomly chosen family of four children:
 - i** all four will be of the same sex
 - ii** there will be two males and two females.
- 77** A machine produces ball-bearings with a mean diameter of 3 mm. It is found that 6.3% of the production is being rejected as below the lower tolerance limit of 2.9 mm, and a further 6.3% is being rejected as above the upper tolerance limit of 3.1 mm. Assume that the diameters are normally distributed.
- a** Calculate the standard deviation of the distribution.
 - b** The setting of the machine now ‘wanders’ such that the standard deviation remains the same, but the mean changes to 3.05 mm.
 - i** Calculate the total percentage of the production that will now fall outside the given tolerance limits.
 - ii** Determine the value of c such that the probability that the diameter lies in the interval $(3.05 - c, 3.05 + c)$ is 0.9.
- 78** Two points A and B are on a straight coast. The distance between A and B is 2 km and B is due east of A . A ship is observed on a bearing of 170° from A and a bearing of 210° from B . Determine the distance of the ship to the coast.

- 79** A water-cooling device has a system of water circulation for the first 30 minutes of its operation. The circulation follows the following sequence:

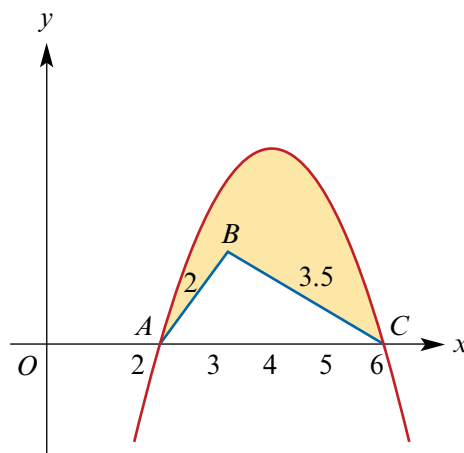
- For the first 3 minutes water is flowing in.
- For the second 3 minutes water is flowing out.
- For the third 3 minutes water is flowing in.

This pattern is continued for the first 30 minutes. The rate of flow of water is given by the function

$$R(t) = 10e^{\frac{-t}{10}} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{3}\right)$$

where $R(t)$ litres per minute is the rate of flow at time t minutes. Initially there are 4 litres of water in the device.

- a** **i** Determine $R(0)$. **ii** Determine $R(3)$.
- b** Determine $R'(t)$.
- c** **i** Solve the equation $R'(t) = 0$ for $t \in [0, 12]$.
ii Determine the coordinates of the stationary points of $y = R(t)$ for $t \in [0, 12]$.
- d** Solve the equation $R(t) = 0$ for $t \in [0, 12]$.
- e** Sketch the graph of $y = R(t)$ for $t \in [0, 12]$.
- f** **i** How many litres of water flowed into the device for $t \in [0, 3]$?
ii How many litres of water flowed out of the device for $t \in [3, 6]$?
iii How many litres of water are in the device when $t = 6$? (Remember there are initially 4 litres of water.)
- g** How many litres of water are there in the device when $t = 30$?
- 80** The parabola shown in the diagram has equation $y = (x - 2)(6 - x)$. In triangle ABC , $AB = 2$, $BC = 3.5$ and $AC = 4$. Determine the area of the shaded region.



- 81** The angle of elevation from a point A to the top of a building is 40° . The point A is due east of the building. From a point B which is due south of the building the angle of elevation to the top of the building is 30° . The distance from A to B is 200 m. Determine the height of the building.

- 82** The cross-section of the curved surface of a skate ramp is modelled by the function

$$f(x) = \frac{2}{(x-1)^2} + 1, \quad 2 \leq x \leq 5$$

where the x -axis represents ground level and units are in metres.

- a** Describe a sequence of transformations that takes the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ to the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- b** Determine the area of the cross-section above the ground.
- c** Determine the gradient of the ramp at its steepest point.

To strengthen the skate ramp, a steel strut will be added within the cross-section. The strut will reach from the ground to the point on the ramp surface where $x = 3$, and will meet the ramp surface at an angle of 90° to the surface.

- d** Determine the equation of a straight line representing the strut.
 - e** Hence, determine the length of the strut.
- 83** The sales revenue, in dollars, that a manufacturer receives for selling x units of a particular product can be approximated by the function

$$R(x) = 90\,000 \ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{100}\right), \quad 10 \leq x \leq 30\,000$$

Each unit costs the manufacturer \$10 to produce, and the initial cost of adjusting the machinery for a production run is \$2000. So the total cost, in dollars, of producing x units is given by

$$C(x) = 2000 + 10x, \quad 10 \leq x \leq 30\,000$$

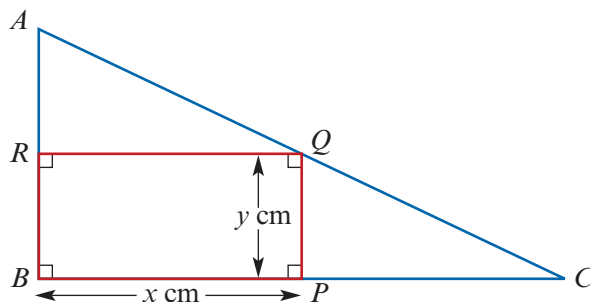
- a** Write down the profit, $P(x)$ in dollars, from the production and sale of x units.
 - b** Determine $P'(x)$.
 - c** Determine the value of x that gives the maximum profit and determine this maximum profit.
 - d** Sketch the graph of $y = P(x)$ for $10 \leq x \leq 30\,000$.
- 84 a i** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point for the curve with equation

$$y = \frac{16x^3 + 4x^2 + 1}{2x^2}$$

- ii** Determine the nature of this stationary point.

- b** The right-angled triangle ABC shown in the diagram has side lengths $AB = 5$ cm and $AC = 13$ cm.

The rectangle $BPQR$ is such that its vertices P , Q and R lie on the line segments BC , CA and AB respectively.



- i** Given that $BP = x$ cm and $PQ = y$ cm, show that $y = \frac{60 - 5x}{12}$.
- ii** Determine the area of the rectangle, A cm², in terms of x .
- iii** Determine the maximum value of this area as x varies.

- 85** A theoretical model of the relationship between two variables, x and y , predicts the values given in the table.

x	0	1	3
y	6	0	0

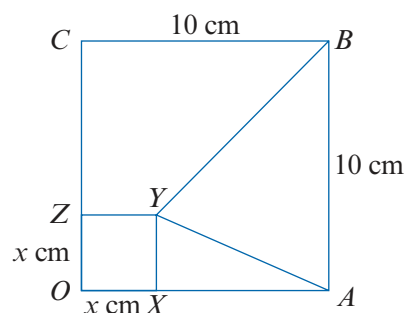
- a** An equation of the form $y = k(x - p)(x - q)$ is suggested, where p , q and k are constants and $p < q$.
Use the information in the table to determine p , q and k .
- b** A series of experiments is carried out to test this model. The values of y when $x = 0, 1, 3$ are found to be as predicted. But when $x = 2$, the value of y is found to be 2. After further discussion, a new model is proposed with an equation of the form

$$y = m(x - p)^2(x - q)$$

where p and q have the values already calculated and m is a constant.

- i** Determine the value of m .
- ii** Obtain the equation of this new model in the form $y = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$.
- iii** Sketch the graph of y against x . State the coordinates of the stationary points and the nature of each of these points.
- 86** The bearing of buoy A from a point X at the foot of a cliff is 133° , and the bearing of buoy B from X is 219° . The cliff is 70 m high. Point Y is at the top of the cliff vertically above X . The angle of depression of A from Y is 9.5° , and the angle of depression of B from Y is 7.4° .
- a** Determine $\angle AXB$.
- b** Determine AX and BX .
- c** Determine AB , the distance between the two buoys.

- 87** A square piece of card $OABC$, of side length 10 cm, is cut into four pieces by removing a square $OXYZ$ of side length x cm as shown, and then cutting out the triangle ABY .



- a**
- i** Determine A cm², the sum of the areas of $OXYZ$ and ABY , in terms of x .
- ii** Determine the domain of the function which determines this area.
- iii** Sketch the graph of the function, with domain determined in part **ii**.
- iv** State the minimum value of this area.
- b**
- i** Determine the rule for the function of x which represents the area of triangle AXY .
- ii** Sketch the graph of this function for a suitable domain.

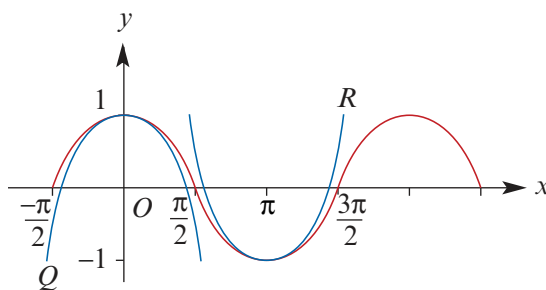
- c** Determine the ratio of the areas of the four pieces when the area of triangle AXY is a maximum.
- 88** A curve C has equation $y = ax - x^2$, where a is a positive constant.
- a** Sketch C , showing clearly the coordinates of the axis intercepts.
- b** Calculate the area of the finite region bounded by C and the x -axis, giving your answer in terms of a .
- c** The lines $x = \frac{1}{3}a$ and $x = \frac{2}{3}a$ intersect C at the points A and B respectively.
- i** Determine, in terms of a , the y -coordinates of A and B .
- ii** Calculate the area of the finite region bounded by C and the straight line AB , giving your answer in terms of a .

- 89** The number of people unemployed in a particular population can be modelled by the function

$$f(t) = 1000(t^2 - 10t + 44)e^{\frac{-t}{10}}$$

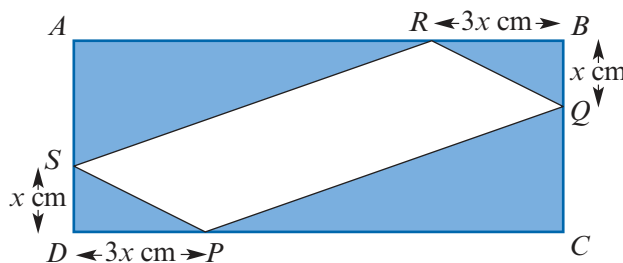
where t is the number of months after January 2025 and $0 \leq t \leq 35$.

- a** Use this function to determine an expression for:
- i** the rate of increase of the number unemployed
- ii** the rate of increase of this rate of increase.
- b** Determine the values of t for which:
- i** the number unemployed was increasing
- ii** the rate of increase of the number unemployed was going down
- iii** the number unemployed was increasing and the rate of increase of the number unemployed was going down.
- 90** The diagram shows part of the graph of $y = \cos x$ and the graphs of two quadratic functions, denoted by Q and R , which approximate to the cosine function around $x = 0$ and $x = \pi$ respectively.

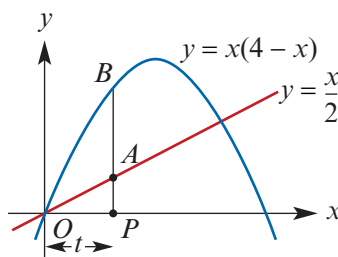
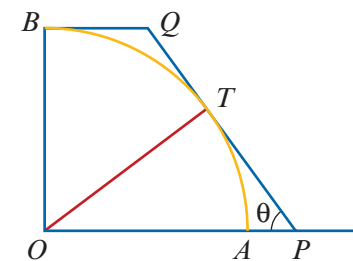


- a i** Determine an estimate of $\cos 0.1$ by using the approximation $y = 1 - \frac{1}{2}x^2$.
- ii** Determine an approximation for the solution to the equation $\cos x = 0.98$ for $-\frac{\pi}{2} \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$, by solving the quadratic equation $1 - \frac{1}{2}x^2 = 0.98$.
- b i** The graph Q can be transformed into R by a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation. Use this fact to determine an equation for the graph R .
- ii** Estimate the value of $\cos 3$ using this approximation.

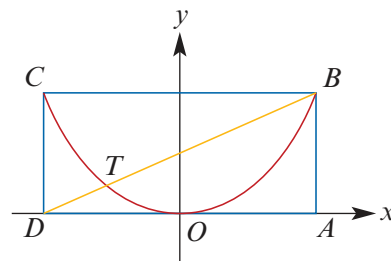
- 91** In the figure, $ABCD$ is a rectangle with $AB = 30$ cm and $AD = 10$ cm. The shaded portions are cut away, leaving the parallelogram $PQRS$, where $BQ = SD = x$ cm and $RB = DP = 3x$ cm.



- Determine the area, S cm², of the parallelogram in terms of x .
 - Determine the allowable values of x .
 - Determine the value of x for which S is a maximum.
 - Sketch the graph of S against x for a suitable domain.
- 92** In the figure, OAB is a quadrant of a circle of radius 1 unit. The line segment OA is extended to a point P . From P , a tangent to the quadrant is drawn, touching it at T and meeting another tangent, BQ , at Q . Let $\angle OPQ = \theta$.
- Determine the length OP as a function of θ .
 - Determine the length BQ as a function of θ .
 - Show that the area, S of trapezium $OPQB$ is given by $\frac{2 - \cos \theta}{2 \sin \theta}$.
 - Show that $\frac{dS}{d\theta} = \frac{2 - 4 \cos \theta}{4 \sin^2 \theta}$.
 - Determine the minimum value of S and the distance AP when S is a minimum.
- 93** The point P has coordinates $(t, 0)$, where $0 < t < \frac{7}{2}$. The line PAB is parallel to the y -axis.
- Let Z be the length of AB . Determine Z in terms of t .
 - Sketch the graph of Z against t .
 - State the maximum value of Z and the value of t for which it occurs.



- 94** In the figure, $ABCD$ is a rectangle with $OA = OD = a$ and $AB = b$. The equation of the parabola BOC is $y = kx^2$.
- Express k in terms of a and b .
 - If BD cuts the parabola at T , determine:
 - the equation of the straight line BD
 - the coordinates of T .

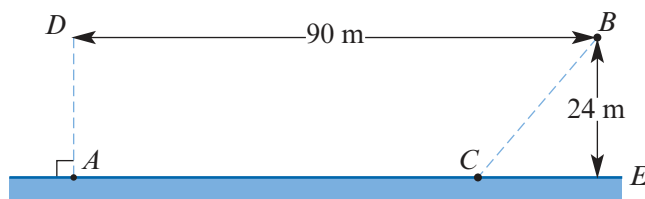


- Show that the area bounded by the parabola and the line BC is $\frac{4}{3}ab$ square units.

- d** Let S_1 be the area of the region bounded by the line segment BT and the curve BOT . Let S_2 be the area of the region bounded by the curve CT and the line segments BC and BT . Determine the ratio $S_1 : S_2$.

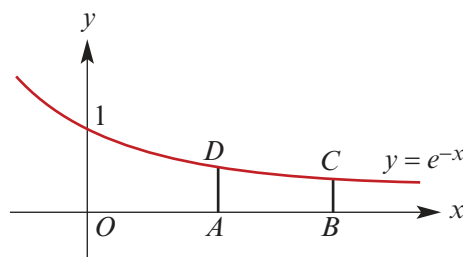
- 95** A certain type of brass washer is manufactured as follows. A length of brass rod is cut cross-sectionally into pieces of mean thickness 0.25 cm, with a standard deviation of 0.002 cm. These brass slices are then put through a machine that punches out a circular hole of mean diameter 0.5 cm through the middle of the slice, with a standard deviation of 0.05 cm. The thickness of the washers and the diameters of the holes are known to be normally distributed, and do not depend on each other.
- a** Determine the probability that a randomly selected washer will:
- have a thickness of less than 0.253 cm
 - have a hole punched with a diameter greater than 0.56 cm
- b** The brass washers are acceptable only if they are between 0.247 cm and 0.253 cm in thickness with a hole of diameter between 0.44 cm and 0.56 cm. Determine:
- the percentage of washers that are rejected
 - the expected number of washers of acceptable thickness in a batch of 1000 washers
 - the expected number of washers of acceptable thickness that will be rejected in a batch of 1000 washers.

- 96** A ditch is to be dug to connect the points A and B in the figure. The earth on the same side of AE as B is hard, and the earth on the other side is soft.



The cost of digging hard earth is \$200 per metre and soft earth is \$100 per metre. Determine the position of point C , where the turn is made, that will minimise the cost.

- 97** The diagram shows the graph of $y = e^{-x}$. The points A and B have coordinates $(n, 0)$ and $(n + 1, 0)$ respectively, and the points C and D on the curve are such that AD and BC are parallel to the y -axis.



- a**
- Determine the equation of the tangent to $y = e^{-x}$ at the point D .
 - Determine the intercept of the tangent with the x -axis.
- b**
- Determine the area of the region $ABCD$.
 - The line BD divides the region into two parts. Determine the ratio of the areas of these two parts.

- 98** A manufacturer sells cylinders whose diameters are normally distributed with mean 3 cm and standard deviation 0.002 cm. The selling price is \$ s per cylinder and the cost of manufacture is \$1 per cylinder. A cylinder is returned and the purchase money is refunded if the diameter of the cylinder is found to differ from 3 cm by more than d cm. A returned cylinder is regarded as a total loss to the manufacturer. The probability that a cylinder is returned is 0.25.

- a** Determine d .
- b** The profit, \$ Q , per cylinder is a random variable. Give the possible values of Q in terms of s , and the probabilities of these values.
- c** Express the mean and standard deviation of Q in terms of s .

- 99** The amount of coal, P tonnes, produced by x miners in one shift is given by the rule:

$$P = \frac{x^2}{90}(56 - x) \quad \text{where } 1 \leq x \leq 40$$

Although in reality x can only be an integer, we will ignore this requirement for this question.

- a** Determine $\frac{dP}{dx}$.
- b**
 - i** Sketch the graph of P against x for $1 \leq x \leq 40$.
 - ii** State the maximum value of P .
- c** Write down an expression in terms of x for the average production per miner in the shift. Denote the average production per miner by A (in tonnes).
 - i** Sketch the graph of A against x for $1 \leq x \leq 40$.
 - ii** State the maximum value of A and the value of x for which it occurs.

- 100** A straight road passes by a hill. The angle of elevation to the top of the hill is measured from three points A , B and C along the road. Point B is between points A and C such that $AB = BC = 1200$ m. The angle of elevation is 12.5° from point A and point B , and 9.5° from point C .

Let h m be the height of the hill. Let Y be the top point of the hill and let X be the point vertically below Y at the same level as the road.

- a** Determine AX , BX and CX in terms of h .
- b** Let M be the midpoint of AB . Determine MX^2 in terms of h .
- c** Use Pythagoras' theorem in triangle CMX to determine h .
- d** Determine the perpendicular distance from the point X to the road.
- e** Determine the distance of each of the points A , B and C from point X .

- 101** Consider the family of quadratic functions with rules of the form

$$f(x) = (k + 2)x^2 + (6k - 4)x + 2$$

where k is an arbitrary constant.

- a** Sketch the graph of f when:
 - i** $k = 0$ **ii** $k = -2$ **iii** $k = -4$

- b** Determine the coordinates of the turning point of the graph of $y = f(x)$ in terms of k .
If the coordinates of the turning point are (a, b) , determine the values of k such that:

i $a > 0$ **ii** $a = 0$ **iii** $b > 0$ **iv** $b < 0$

- c** For what values of k is the turning point a local maximum?

- d** By using the discriminant, state the values of k for which:

i $f(x)$ is a perfect square **ii** there are no solutions to the equation $f(x) = 0$.

- 102 a** Determine the solution to the equation $e^{2-2x} = 2e^{-x}$.

- b** Let $y = e^{2-2x} - 2e^{-x}$.

i Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.

ii Solve the equation $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$.

- iii** State the coordinates of the turning point of $y = e^{2-2x} - 2e^{-x}$.

- iv** Sketch the graph of $y = e^{2-2x} - 2e^{-x}$ for $x \geq 0$.

- c** State the values of k for which the equation $e^{2-2x} - 2e^{-x} = k$ has two distinct positive solutions.

- 103 a** Sketch, on a single clear diagram, the graphs of:

i $y = x^2$ **ii** $y = (x + a)^2$ **iii** $y = b(x + a)^2$ **iv** $y = b(x + a)^2 + c$

where a, b and c are positive constants with $b > 1$.

- b** Show that $\frac{2x^2 + 4x + 5}{x^2 + 2x + 1} = \frac{3}{(x + 1)^2} + 2$, for all values except $x = -1$.

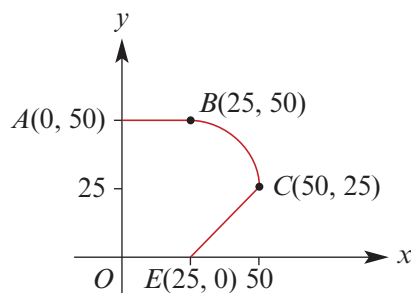
- c** Hence state precisely a sequence of transformations by which the graph of $y = \frac{2x^2 + 4x + 5}{x^2 + 2x + 1}$ may be obtained from the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$.

- d** Evaluate $\int_0^1 \frac{2x^2 + 4x + 5}{x^2 + 2x + 1} dx$.

- e** Sketch the graphs of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ and $y = \frac{3}{(x + 1)^2} + 2$ on the one set of axes, and indicate the region for which the area has been determined in part **d**.

- 104** A real-estate agent has a block of land to sell.

An x - y coordinate grid is placed with the origin at O , as shown in the diagram. The block of land is $OABCE$, where OA, AB, CE and EO are straight line segments and the curve through points B and C is part of a parabola with equation of the form $y = ax^2 + 4x + c$.



- a** Determine the equation of line segments:

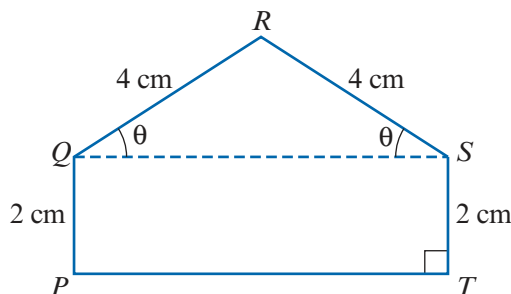
i AB **ii** EC

- b** Determine the values of a and c and hence determine the equation of the parabola through points B and C .

- c** Determine the area of:

i the rectangle $OEBA$ **ii** the region EBC (with boundaries as defined above)
iii the block of land.

- 105** In the diagram, $PQRST$ is a thin metal plate, where $PQST$ is a rectangle with $PQ = 2$ cm and QRS is an isosceles triangle with $QR = RS = 4$ cm.



- a** Show that the area of the metal plate, A cm², is given by

$$A = 16(\cos \theta + \cos \theta \sin \theta)$$

$$\text{for } 0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}.$$

- b** Show that $\frac{dA}{d\theta} = 16(1 - \sin \theta - 2 \sin^2 \theta)$.
- c** Solve the equation $\frac{dA}{d\theta} = 0$ for $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$ by first solving $16(1 - a - 2a^2) = 0$ for a .
- d** Sketch the graph of A against θ for $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$, and state the maximum value of A .

- 106** The temperature, $T^\circ\text{C}$, of water in a kettle at time t minutes is given by the formula

$$T = \theta + Ae^{-kt}$$

where $\theta^\circ\text{C}$ is the temperature of the room in which the kettle sits.

- a** Assume that the room is of constant temperature 21°C . At 2:23 p.m., the water in the kettle boils at 100°C . After 10 minutes, the temperature of the water in the kettle is 84°C . Use this information to determine the values of k and A , giving your answer correct to two decimal places, taking t to equal the time since the kettle boiled.
- b** At what time will the temperature of the water in the kettle be 70°C ?
- c** Sketch the graph of T against t for $t \geq 0$.
- d** Determine the average rate of change of temperature for the time interval $[0, 10]$.
- e** Determine the instantaneous rate of change of temperature when:
- i** $t = 6$ **ii** $T = 60$

- 107** Large batches of similar components are delivered to a company. A sample of five articles is taken at random from each batch and tested. If at least four of the five articles are found to be good, the batch is accepted. Otherwise, the batch is rejected.

- a** If the proportion of defectives in a batch is $\frac{1}{2}$, determine the probability of the batch being accepted.
- b** If the proportion of defectives in a batch is $\hat{p}$, show that the probability of the batch being accepted is given by a function of the form

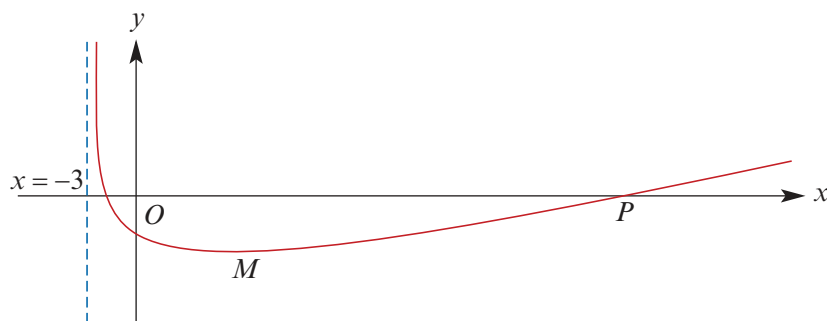
$$A(\hat{p}) = (1 - \hat{p})^4(1 + b\hat{p}), \quad 0 \leq \hat{p} \leq 1$$

and determine the value of b .

- c** Sketch the graph of A against $\hat{p}$ for $0 \leq \hat{p} \leq 1$. (Using a calculator would be appropriate.)

- d** Determine correct to two decimal places:
- i** the value of $\hat{p}$ for which $A(\hat{p}) = 0.95$
 - ii** the value of $\hat{p}$ for which $A(\hat{p}) = 0.05$.
- e**
- i** Determine $A'(\hat{p})$, for $0 \leq \hat{p} \leq 1$.
 - ii** Sketch the graph of $A'(\hat{p})$ against $\hat{p}$.
 - iii** For what value of $\hat{p}$ is $A'(\hat{p})$ a minimum?
 - iv** Describe what the result of part **iii** means.
- 108** A drug company has established that 80% of people report their symptoms improve when using their existing cold medication. In a trial of a new type of cold medication, 88% out of a sample of 50 people reported that their symptoms improved. On the basis of this, the company claimed that the new drug is better than the old drug. Using these results, evaluate the reasonableness of the drug company's claim.
- 109** The length of bolts produced by a certain machine is normally distributed, with a mean of 15 cm and a standard deviation of 0.082 mm. A bolt with a length of more than 15.2 cm or less than 14.7 cm is considered to be unacceptable and must be scrapped. A random sample of 300 bolts is selected and measured. Let $\hat{P}$ is the random variable that represents the proportion of bolts in the sample that are unacceptable.
- a** Use the normal approximation to determine, correct to four decimal places, the probability more than 1% of the sample are unacceptable.
 - b** If the probability that 0.5% or less of the bolts in a sample of size n are unacceptable is less than 0.01, determine the smallest value of n , where n is an integer.
- 110** The diagram shows a sketch graph of

$$y = \frac{x}{10} - \ln(x + 3), \quad x > -3$$



- a** Determine the x -coordinate of the local minimum at M .
- b** Show that the gradient of the curve is always less than $\frac{1}{10}$.
- c** Determine the equation of the straight line through M with a gradient of $\frac{1}{10}$.
- d**

 - i** Hence show that the value of the x -axis intercept at P is greater than $10 \ln 10$.
 - ii** Determine, correct to three decimal places, the value of the intercept at P .

- 111** A ship sails 50 km from a port A to a point B on a bearing of 65° . It then sails 130 km from port B to port C on a bearing of 300° . Determine the distance of port A to port C and the bearing of port A from port C .

- 112** A particle is moving along a path with equation $y = \sqrt{x^2 + 24}$.

- a** Determine $\frac{dy}{dx}$.
- b** Determine the coordinates of the local minimum of the curve.
- c** Does this rule define an even function?
- d** As $x \rightarrow \infty$, $y \rightarrow x$ and as $x \rightarrow -\infty$, $y \rightarrow -x$. Sketch the graph of $y = \sqrt{x^2 + 24}$, showing the asymptotes.
- e** Determine the equation of the normal to the curve at the point with coordinates $(1, 5)$, and sketch the graph of this normal with the graph of part **d**.
- f** Show that

$$\frac{d}{dx} \left(12 \ln(\sqrt{x^2 + 24} + x) + \frac{x\sqrt{x^2 + 24}}{2} \right) = \sqrt{x^2 + 24}$$

for $x > 0$.

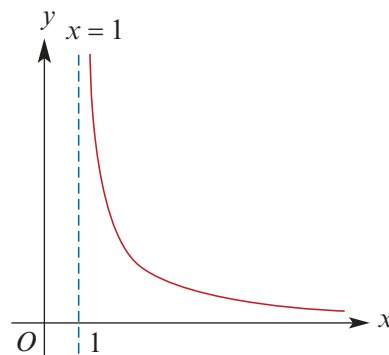
- g** Use this result to determine the area of the region bounded by the curve, the x -axis and the lines $x = 2$ and $x = 5$.

- 113** The diagram shows the graph of the function

$$g(x) = \frac{1}{x-1}, \quad x > 1$$

The line segment AB is drawn from the point $A(2, 1)$ to the point $B(b, g(b))$, where $b > 2$.

- a**
 - i** What is the gradient of AB ?
 - ii** At what value of x between 1 and b does the tangent to the graph of g have the same gradient as AB ?
- b**
 - i** Calculate $\int_2^{e+1} g(x) dx$.
 - ii** Let c be a real number with $1 < c < 2$. Determine the exact value of c such that $\int_c^{e+1} g(x) dx = 8$.
- c**
 - i** What is the area of the trapezium bounded by the line segment AB , the x -axis and the lines $x = 2$ and $x = b$?
 - ii** For what exact value of b does this area equal 8?
- d** Given that $\int_2^{mn+1} g(x) dx + \int_2^{\frac{m}{n}+1} g(x) dx = 2$, where $n > 0$, determine the value of m .

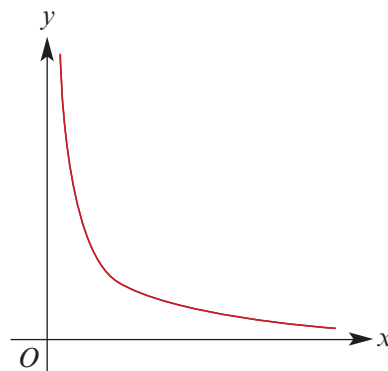


- 114** The diagram shows the graph of the function

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}, \quad x > 0$$

The line segment AB is drawn from the point $A(1, 1)$ to the point $B(b, f(b))$, where $b > 1$.

- a i** What is the gradient of AB ?
- ii** At what value of x between 1 and b does the tangent to the graph of f have the same gradient as AB ?
- b i** What is the area, $S(b)$, of the trapezium bounded by the line segment AB , the x -axis and the lines $x = 1$ and $x = b$?
- ii** For what exact value of b does this area equal $\frac{10}{9}$?
- iii** Show that $\int_1^b f(x) dx < 1$ for $b > 1$.
- c** Show that the function $D(b) = S(b) - \int_1^b f(x) dx$ is strictly increasing for $b > 1$.



- 115** Define the function $f(x) = x^m e^{-nx+n}$, where the constants m and n are positive integers. The graph of $y = f(x)$ is as shown.

- a** Determine the coordinates of the stationary point not at the origin in terms of n , and state its nature.
- b** Determine the coordinates of the point on the graph at which the tangent of f passes through the origin.
- c** Consider the continuous probability density function with rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} kx^2 e^{-2x+2} & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

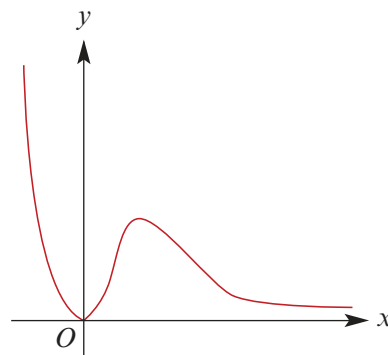
where k is a positive real number.

- i** Determine the value of k .
 - ii** Determine $P(X < 1)$, where X is the associated random variable.
- 116** Let X be a continuous random variable with probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} ke^{-qx} & \text{if } x \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

where q is a positive real number.

- a i** Determine the value of k in terms of q .
- ii** Determine $E(X)$ in terms of q .
- iii** Determine $\text{Var}(X)$ in terms of q .
- iv** Show that the median of the distribution is $m = \frac{1}{q} \ln 2$.



- b** Determine $P\left(X > \frac{1}{q} \ln 3 \mid X > \frac{1}{q} \ln 2\right)$.
- c** The distance, X metres, between flaws in a certain type of yarn is a continuous random variable with probability density function $f(x) = 0.01e^{-0.01x}$ for $x \geq 0$.
- i** Sketch the graph of $y = f(x)$.
 - ii** Determine the probability, correct to two decimal places, that the distance between consecutive flaws is more than 100 m.
 - iii** Determine the median value of this distribution, correct to two decimal places.

17B Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1** If $f(x) = \ln(6 - 2x)$, determine the value of $f'(2)$.
- A** $\ln(2)$ **B** -1 **C** -2 **D** 2
- 2** If the gradient of the function $f(x)$ is given by $\frac{10}{(x-3)^3}$, then $f(x)$ is equal to
- A** $\frac{10}{(3-x)^2} + c$ **B** $\frac{5}{(3-x)^2} + c$ **C** $-\frac{5}{(x-3)^2} + c$ **D** $\frac{10}{3-x} + c$
- 3** Determine $\int_2^3 \frac{1}{2x-1} dx$.
- A** $2\ln\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}\ln(15)$ **C** $\frac{1}{2}\ln\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)$ **D** $\ln\left(\frac{3}{10}\right)$
- 4** Define the function f by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 5x + 1 & \text{if } x \geq -\frac{4}{5} \\ -5x - 7 & \text{if } x < -\frac{4}{5} \end{cases}$$

Which of the following statements is *not true* about this function?

- A** The graph of f is continuous everywhere.
- B** The graph of f' is continuous everywhere.
- C** $f(x) \geq -3$ for all values of x .
- D** $f'(x) = 5$ for all $x > 0$.
- 5** Let $k = \int_2^6 \frac{2}{x} dx$. Then e^k is equal to
- A** $2\ln 3$ **B** 1 **C** $\frac{1}{9}$ **D** 9
- 6** The average value of the function with rule $f(x) = \ln(x+2)$ over the interval $[-1, 3]$ is
- A** $-\frac{1}{5}$ **B** $\ln 6$ **C** $\frac{\ln 5}{4}$ **D** $\frac{5\ln 5 - 4}{4}$

- 7** Let X be a binomial random variable with parameters $n = 400$ and $p = 0.1$. Then the standard deviation of X , is equal to
A 36 **B** 6 **C** 40 **D** 6.32
- 8** The average value of the function $y = \sin(2x)$ over the interval $\left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ is
A $\frac{2}{\pi}$ **B** $\frac{\pi}{2}$ **C** 0.5 **D** 0
- 9** If $f(x) = e^{3x}$, for all real x , and $[f(x)]^3 = f(y)$, then y is equal to
A e^{9x} **B** $9x$ **C** $3x$ **D** $9x^3$
- 10** A jar contains 12 marbles, each of the same size and shape. Six of the marbles are green, four are blue and two are red. If four marbles are drawn at random from the jar, which probability can be calculated using the binomial distribution?
A $P(3 \text{ blue, } 1 \text{ not blue})$ without replacement
B $P(3 \text{ blue, } 1 \text{ not blue})$ with replacement
C $P(3 \text{ green, } 1 \text{ red})$ with replacement
D $P(3 \text{ green, } 1 \text{ blue})$ with replacement
- 11** The function f is a probability density function, with rule

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} 1 + 2e^{\frac{x}{k}} & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 2k \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$
Hence k is equal to
A $\frac{1}{2}e^{-2}$ **B** $1 + e^2$ **C** e^{-2} **D** $1 - e^{-2}$
- 12** The random variable X has a normal distribution with a mean of 8 and a standard deviation of 0.25. If Z has the standard normal distribution, then the probability that X is less than 7.5 is equal to
A $P(Z > 2)$ **B** $P(Z < -1.5)$ **C** $P(Z < 1)$ **D** $P(Z \geq 1.5)$
- 13** The graph of $y = 2kx - 2$ intersects the graph of $y = x^2 + 12x$ at two points for
A $k = 12$ **B** $k > 6 + \sqrt{2}$ or $k < 6 - \sqrt{2}$
C $4 < k < 7$ **D** $5 < k < 7$
- 14** The values of x that satisfy the equation $e^{4x} - 7e^{2x} + 12 = 0$ are
A 3, 4 **B** -4, -3
C -2, $-\sqrt{3}$, $\sqrt{3}$, 2 **D** $\ln\sqrt{3}$, $\ln 2$
- 15** Assume that $f'(x) = g'(x)$ with $f(1) = 2$ and $g(x) = -xf(x)$. Then $f(x)$ is equal to
A $g(x) + 4$ **B** $g'(x) + 4$
C $g(x) + 4x$ **D** $\frac{4 - 4x}{x + 1}$
- 16** The number of points of inflection on the graph of $y = x^4 - 4x^2$ is
A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3

- 17** The graph of $y = 7x^{\frac{1}{2}}$ is reflected in the x -axis and then translated 3 units to the right and 4 units down. The equation of the new graph is
- A** $y = 7(x-3)^{\frac{1}{2}} + 4$ **B** $y = -7(x-3)^{\frac{1}{2}} - 4$
C $y = -7(x+3)^{\frac{1}{2}} - 1$ **D** $y = -7(x-4)^{\frac{1}{2}} + 3$

- 18** If a random variable X has probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{8}x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

then $E(X)$ is equal to

- A** $\frac{1}{2}$ **B** 1 **C** $\frac{8}{3}$ **D** $\frac{16}{3}$

- 19** The random variable X has the following probability distribution.

x	0	1	2
$P(X = x)$	a	b	0.6

If the mean of X is 1.6, then

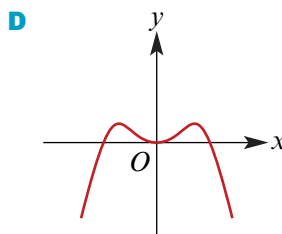
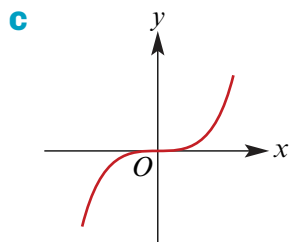
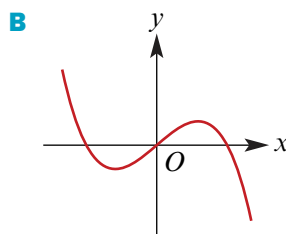
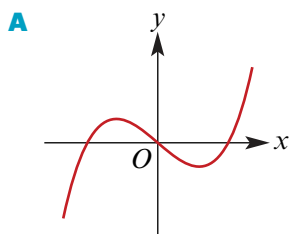
- A** $a = 0$ and $b = 0.4$ **B** $a = 0.2$ and $b = 0.2$
C $a = 0.4$ and $b = 0.4$ **D** $a = 0.1$ and $b = 0.3$
- 20** A hockey player attempts to score a goal in a practice session. The probability of each shot scoring is $\frac{1}{8}$, independently of the outcome of any other shot. The probability that the player hits four goals out of six shots is
- A** $15\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^4\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^2$ **B** $15\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^4\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^2$ **C** $20\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^4\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^2$ **D** $\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)^4\left(\frac{1}{8}\right)^2$
- 21** A continuous random variable X has cumulative distribution function F given by

$$F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ x^2(3-2x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

Which of the following is a possible rule for a probability density function f of X ?

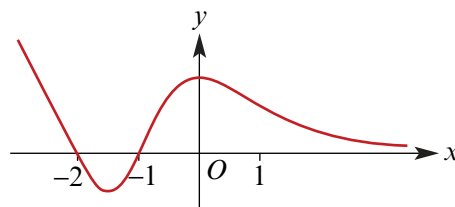
- A** $f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2}x^3(2-x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ **B** $f(x) = \begin{cases} -4x & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$
C $f(x) = \begin{cases} x(3-2x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$ **D** $f(x) = \begin{cases} 6x(1-x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

- 22** A polynomial function f is such that $f''(x) = 0$ for $x = 0$ only. Which of the following *could not* be the graph of f ?



- 23** The graph of a function is shown on the right. On which of the following intervals is the graph concave up?

- A** $(1, \infty)$ **B** $(-\infty, 0)$
C $(-1, \infty)$ **D** $(-1, 1)$



- 24** There is a point between $A(2, 0)$ and $B(2e, 1)$ on the graph of $y = \ln \frac{x}{2}$ such that the tangent to the graph at that point is parallel to the line through points A and B . The x -coordinate of this point is

- A** e **B** $\frac{1}{e}$ **C** $2(e - 1)$ **D** $\frac{e}{2}$

- 25** Suppose that in a certain population 40% of people own hybrid cars. The mean and standard deviation of the proportion of people who own hybrid cars in a sample of size 600 are

- A** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.04$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.0004$ **B** $E(\hat{P}) = 40$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 2$
C $E(\hat{P}) = 0.04$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.02$ **D** $E(\hat{P}) = 0.4$, $sd(\hat{P}) = 0.02$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 26** A random variable X has probability density function:

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{8}{3}(1-x) & \text{if } 0 < x < \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Determine the standard deviation of X .

- A** 0.222 **B** 0.142 **C** 0.020 **D** 0.069

- 27** Suppose that a random variable X is normally distributed with a mean of 42. If $P(X < 43.3) = 2 \times P(X > 43.3)$, determine the standard deviation of X .
- A** 0.29 **B** 0.87 **C** 1.74 **D** 3.02

Questions 28 and 29 are based on the following information:

An exit poll of 1000 randomly selected voters found that 520 favoured candidate A.

- 28** A 95% confidence interval for the proportion of voters in favour of candidate A is
- A** (0.484, 0.546) **B** (0.422, 0.618)
C (0.494, 0.546) **D** (0.489, 0.551)
- 29** On the basis of this confidence interval, what would be your prediction for the result of the election?
- A** predict a win for candidate A
B predict a loss for candidate A
C too close to make any prediction
D cannot tell as we do not know the number of candidates
- 30** A triangle has sides of length 2 m, 5 m and 6 m. The magnitude of the smallest angle of this triangle is approximately
- A** 18° **B** 23° **C** 24° **D** 49°
- 31** A mug of hot coffee is left on a bench. The rate of change of the temperature of the coffee, $T^\circ\text{C}$, with respect to time, t minutes, is given by

$$\frac{dT}{dt} = -9e^{-\frac{1}{8}t} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

Correct to the nearest degree, the change in temperature of the coffee over the first 15 minutes is

- A** -52°C **B** -57°C **C** -60°C **D** -61°C
- 32** A yacht sails for 7 km on a bearing of 107° . Correct to one decimal place, how far south of its starting point does the yacht finish?
- A** 2.0 km **B** 2.1 km **C** 2.3 km **D** 6.7 km
- 33** The continuous random variable X has a probability density function given by

$$f(x) = \begin{cases} \sin(2x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq \frac{\pi}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

The value of a such that $P(X > a) = 0.25$ is closest to

- A** 0.25 **B** 0.75 **C** 1.04 **D** 1.05

- 34** The displacement in metres at time t seconds of a particle moving in a straight line is given by $s = e^{0.25t} + 2t$. The acceleration (correct to four decimal places) of the particle in ms^{-2} when $t = 3$ is

A 2.5293 **B** 2.1564 **C** 1.0478 **D** 0.1323

- 35** $\int_{2a}^{6a} \frac{1}{2x-a} dx$, $a > 0$, correct to 4 decimal places, is equal to

A 0.6496 **B** 0.6843 **C** 0.6256 **D** 0.7812

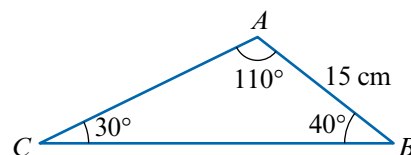
- 36** If $f(x) = (x+1)^3 e^{5x}$ then $f'(x)$ is equal to

A $(x+1)^2(2x-4)e^{5x}$ **B** $(x+1)^2(5x+5)e^{5x}$
C $(x+1)^2(x+1)e^{5x}$ **D** $(x+1)^2(5x+8)e^{5x}$

- 37** The position (in cm) of a particle is given by $x = 10 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{5}\right)$, where t is time (in seconds). The velocity, correct to 4 decimal places, of the particle when $t = 2$ is

A 1.9416 cm s^{-1} **B** 2.2467 cm s^{-1} **C** $-1.1942 \text{ cm s}^{-1}$ **D** $-1.6723 \text{ cm s}^{-1}$

- 38** In triangle ABC , $\angle A = 110^\circ$, $\angle B = 40^\circ$, $\angle C = 30^\circ$ and the side $AB = 15 \text{ cm}$. The length of side AC correct to two decimal places is



A 16.28 cm **B** 18.24 cm **C** 19.28 cm **D** 17.13 cm

- 39** Using the trapezoidal rule with intervals of size 0.5 the approximate value of $\int_1^3 2.5^x dx$ is

A 14.32 **B** 14.57 **C** 14.44 **D** 14.98

- 40** An object travels in a straight line so that its velocity in ms^{-1} at time t seconds is given by $v(t) = 3t^2 + \cos \pi t$. The acceleration of the particle correct to two decimal places at time $t = 5.2$ is

A 32.15 ms^{-2} **B** 34.25 ms^{-2} **C** 33.05 ms^{-2} **D** 36.34 ms^{-2}

- 41** The velocity $v \text{ ms}^{-1}$ of a particle moving along the x -axis is given by $v(t) = 2t \cos(t^2)$. The distance travelled by the particle from $t = 0$ to $t = 2$ correct to two decimal places is

A 1.76 m **B** 2.76 m **C** 0.76 m **D** 2.31 m

- 42** In a certain country it is known that 80% of golfers play right-handed. A random sample of 10 golfers is to be selected. If $\hat{P}$ is the proportion of golfers in the sample who play right-handed, then $P(\hat{P} \geq 0.8)$ is

A 0.3758 **B** 0.3020 **C** 0.6778 **D** 0.1265

- 43** The distribution of the sample proportion determined from a sample of size n has a mean of 0.25 and a standard deviation of 0.025. The value of n is

A 8 **B** 10 **C** 100 **D** 300

The problem-solving and modelling task

Joel Speranza

Chapter contents

- ▶ **A1** About the problem-solving and modelling task
- ▶ **A2** A content guide for a PSMT report

A1

About the problem-solving and modelling task

Mathematisation is the process of taking a real-world problem, translating it to a mathematically purposeful representation, and solving that problem. In Mathematical Methods you will be assessed on your ability to do this through an assessment item called a problem-solving and modelling task (PSMT).

This chapter outlines how to plan, solve and present your PSMT at a high level and provides real examples of high-level student work. Each section of this chapter is accompanied by a video lesson with additional advice, accessible via the included QR codes.

How is the PSMT marked?

Before you begin any assessment, you should consider how teachers will make judgements of your work. Your teacher will use the Instrument-specific Marking Guide (ISMG) from the syllabus to determine your mark. The ISMG is broken into four criteria (Formulate, Solve, Evaluate and Communicate) and each criterion is assessed using three to five descriptors. Throughout this chapter, we will be focusing on the top descriptor in each criterion. These top descriptors will be displayed in this appendix where needed. The full ISMG with all descriptors can be accessed through the Interactive Textbook.



Video A1

A2 A content guide for a PSMT report

A suggested set of headings for writing the PSMT report has been provided in a downloadable Word document in the Interactive Textbook. The rest of this appendix provides notes on what to include under these headings, which are reproduced here in black ('Introduction to the task', 'Formulating a solution', 'Developing a solution', and so on). Extracts from the ISMG display the criteria and descriptors covered by each heading of the report.

You also need to adhere to the required word limit and conventions of the mathematical report genre. You may have seen another report genre, the scientific report, and the two have similarities.

Word length guides of each section of the report are indicative only and will be dependent on your specific PSMT. Setting out your PSMT in this way is not compulsory but does help you to achieve this highlighted descriptor from the ISMG:

Communicate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
- correct use of appropriate mathematical language - logical organisation of the response, which can be read independently of the task sheet - justification of decisions using mathematical reasoning	3–4

1. Introduction to the task

(200 words)

These are the criteria and descriptors to be covered by the introduction:

Formulate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
- justified statements of important assumptions - justified statements of important observations - justified mathematical translation of important aspects of the task	3–4

Communicate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
- correct use of appropriate mathematical language - logical organisation of the response, which can be read independently of the task sheet - justification of decisions using mathematical reasoning	3–4

Note that, as long as you understand the task, and have written down what you need to do, you do not have to finalise the introduction at the beginning of the process. You may find it better to write the introduction alongside writing the conclusion, ensuring that the conclusion addresses the goal of the task which was stated in the introduction.

The purpose of the introduction is twofold:

- 1 To introduce a report which 'can be read independently' of the task sheet. This means that a person who has never seen the task sheet will be able to understand what the task is,



Video A2

simply by reading your introduction. No reference to the task sheet should be made here. You should also begin with providing some context on what the problem is to be solved, and why solving the problem is important.

2 To show ‘justified mathematical translation of important aspects of the task’.

Mathematical translation is the process of taking a real-world problem and moving it into the mathematical world – a process known as **mathematisation**. In this part of an introduction, you should give a brief description of the mathematical techniques you will use to solve the problem. This description can include:

- Applicable mathematical or statistical principles
- Mathematical concepts and techniques
- Technology that you will use throughout the task

The student sample below shows:

- how the task can be read independently of the task sheet
- justified mathematical translation of important aspects of the task.

Introduction

As the population of Australia continues to grow, it is crucial that we plan ahead. Important aspects in life such as resources, housing, and medical products and services need to account for this growing population before the demand for necessary requirements of life have such a demand that cannot be catered for (Sommerfeld, 2018). By knowing predictions for a future population count, we can plan ahead and make choices that will benefit the future now.

The purpose of this task is to determine a prediction for the rate of population growth in Australia for 2061 by exploring multiple mathematical models. A multitude of mathematical techniques will be utilised throughout this task, including; modelling of exponential, logarithmic, logistic, and sinusoidal functions, as well as deriving to find a rate of change, determining percentage error, and using technology such as GeoGebra, a TI-84 Plus CE Graphics Calculator and Excel to model equations and manage data.

Student sample taken from the 2020 Mathematical Methods subject report

Using mathematical language

In the introduction and throughout the PSMT, you must demonstrate correct use of mathematical language.

These are the criteria and descriptors to be covered:

Communicate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
• correct use of appropriate mathematical language • logical organisation of the response, which can be read independently of the task sheet • justification of decisions using mathematical reasoning	3–4



Video A3

The syllabus objectives elaborate on mathematical language as ‘terminology, symbols, conventions and representations’. What follows is a non-exhaustive list of ways to demonstrate each aspect of mathematical language.

Terminology

- Procedural mathematical language (mathematical verbs) e.g. determine, solve, verify, calculate integrate, derive.
- Technical mathematical language (mathematical nouns) e.g. search the unit outline for terminology specific to the content being assessed.

Conventions

- Equations have a left and right hand side
- Equal signs are aligned
- Define variables before using them

Symbols

- Use mathematical symbols correctly
- If typing mathematics, use equation editor

Representations: Graphs

- An appropriate title
- Axes labelled with appropriate units
- An appropriate scale for each axis
- A legend if appropriate

Representations: Diagrams

- An appropriate title
- Labelled
- Drawn to scale or a label indicating otherwise
- Vertices of shapes labelled with capital letters
- Angles labelled with Greek letters

2. Formulating a solution

(400 words)

In the section titled ‘Formulating a solution’, you are aiming to demonstrate the descriptors of the ISMG shown below.

Formulate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
• justified statements of important assumptions • justified statements of important observations • justified mathematical translation of important aspects of the task	3–4

It is vital that your assumptions are both important and expressed as justified statements. This is the most important section of the PSMT, as many sections of the PSMT cannot be completed to a high-standard without them. This is demonstrated in the following flowchart.

Observations are considered and assumptions made in order to ‘mathematise’ the problem.

If the solution does not rely on these, then they are not ‘important’ and therefore do not meet the criteria. If they are not backed by justified statements, then the evidence for your solution being valid is low.

Once a solution is found, ‘justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering observations and assumptions’ must be made. If these observations and assumptions are poorly justified or are not important, then it will be difficult to do this.

At the end of the PMST, ‘justified statements of relevant strengths and limitations of the solution’ are made. These are often found by examining the assumptions and observations that have been made. If assumptions and observations are not important, this section becomes more difficult to complete.

Observations vs assumptions

Students can often be confused about the difference between an observation and an assumption. Both are vital to creating a mathematical model but serve different purposes. The table below outlines the key differences between them.

Aspect	Observations	Assumptions
Definition	Data or information required to solve a mathematical problem and/or develop a mathematical model.	Conditions that are stated to be true when beginning to solve a mathematical problem and/or develop a mathematical model.
Nature and verifiability	Factual, based on actual data or information, and can be empirically verified.	While not directly verifiable, are rational and necessary for solving the problem. They are based on plausible reasoning or existing knowledge.
Role in modelling	Provides data and empirical evidence for creation of the model.	Simplifies complexity and fills data gaps. Dictates the strengths, limitations, and applicability of the model.
Flexibility	Generally rigid; they are facts that can’t be altered. However, the interpretation of observations can evolve with new data.	More flexible and can be adjusted or replaced as new information becomes available or as the model evolves.

Aspect	Observations	Assumptions
Examples	1 Measuring the temperature and humidity levels in various regions over a year. 2 Recording the frequency and intensity of rainfall in a specific area. 3 The observable fact that warm air rises and cool air sinks, affecting weather patterns.	1 Assuming that future weather patterns will reflect past trends due to climate consistency. 2 Assuming a certain level of accuracy in satellite data used for cloud cover analysis. 3 Assuming that ocean currents will remain relatively stable over the short-term forecasting period.
Role in validation	Used for validating the model by comparing its predictions with actual observations.	Validated indirectly through the model's performance and its ability to make accurate predictions within the defined framework of these assumptions.

2.1 Observations

To ensure that your observations reach the level of 'justified statements' they should include:

- a discussion of how the observations affect the mathematical model/solution
- in-text referencing to a reputable source (while it is possible to justify statements without this, consider the inclusion of a reference the 'gold-standard').



Video A4

The following student sample demonstrates justified statements of observations. Each observation contains:

- a statement of what the observation is
- a reference that provides justification for the observation being made
- justification for how this observation impacts the mathematical model/solution.

Structuring your observations in this way provide a high likelihood of them being considered justified statements on the ISMG.

Observations

It was observed that the male-to-female ratio in Western Australia is 102 males for every 100 females (McCrindle, 2014). This observation directly impacts the mathematical model as the initial total population must divide by this ratio only to consider the female Western Australian population. This is relevant as males do not reproduce any offspring and cannot be factored into the Leslie matrix.

It was observed that Western Australia takes 30% of immigrants into Australia each year (Australian Bureau of Statistic, 2021). Further, 12,706 to 18,200 immigrants settled in Australia during 2018 and 2020. (Lawrence, 2018). These observations impacted the mathematical model as an increase in immigrants will impact the projected populations, causing an increase or decrease in total population growth rate.

Humans live to approximately 100 years (Vaupel, 2010); therefore, a 21×21 matrix is reasonable. From this, the age classes for the Leslie matrix were split into 5-year categories. Hence, each new generation produced by the Leslie matrix represents a 5-year gap. This observation is relevant as it impacts the scope mathematical model by investigating only eight new generations.

Student sample taken from the 2022 Specialist Mathematics subject report

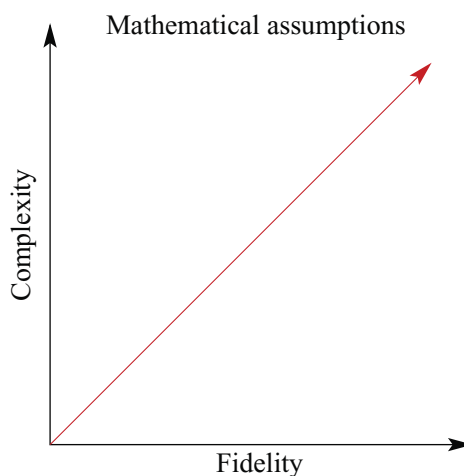
2.2 Assumptions

As with observations, to justify the assumptions you make you should include discussion of how the assumptions affect the mathematical model/solution; and in-text referencing to a reputable source. While it is possible to justify statements without this, it is considered best practice to include one.

Referencing should be used to justify an assumption and it can be done in two different ways:

- use a source that brings your mathematical model closer to representing the real world
- use a source that takes your mathematical model further from representing the real world but is required to reduce the complexity of the model.

To illustrate this further, each assumption can be thought of as existing on the graph shown below, with mathematical complexity increasing as fidelity (how closely the assumption models the real world) increases. Therefore, each assumption can be thought of as a trade-off between complexity and fidelity. Adopting this approach from the beginning makes future sections of the PSMT (evaluating the reasonableness of the solution and strengths and limitations) easier to complete.



The student sample which follows demonstrates justified statements of assumptions. Each assumption contains:

- a statement of what the assumption is
- a reference that provides justification for the assumption being made
- justification for how the assumption impacts the mathematical model/solution.



Video A5

Assumptions

It was assumed that birth rates would only impact women aged 15–44 as in Australia. The average woman's reproductive years are between ages 15 and 44 (Watson, 2018). This assumption restricts birth rates to only six of twenty-one age classes. The assumption was made to reduce the anomalies to develop clean data.

It was assumed that the new immigrant population introduced into Western Australia was equally divided into the age classes from 18 to 34. Most migrants to Australia are young adults, with 61.2% aged between 18 and 34 years (abs.gov.au, 2018). Further, 12 706 to 18 200 immigrants settled in Australia during 2018 and 2020. (Lawrence, 2018). This assumption was made to create a realistic data spread that included the possible impact immigrants' survival and or birth rate would have on the total population.

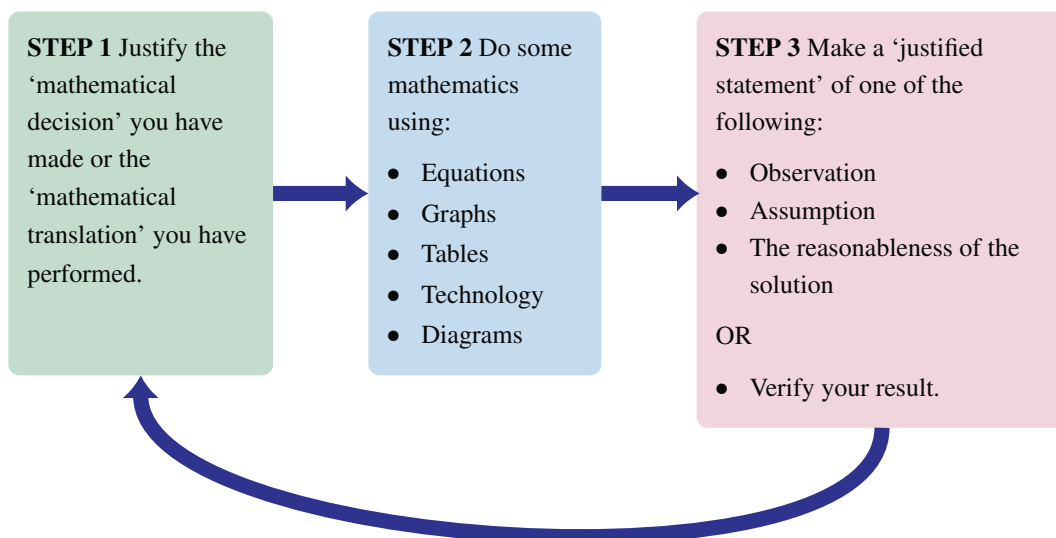
It was assumed that the investigation started during 2016 as the female population data collected was from 2016 (abs.gov.au, 2016); therefore, a 21×21 matrix is reasonable. This assumption impacts the investigation as the potential increasing or decreasing growth rate and total population can be compared to secondary data to determine the model's validity.

Student sample taken from the 2022 Specialist Mathematics subject report.

3. Developing a Solution

(700 words)

In this section of the PSMT, you are attempting to demonstrate almost all the descriptors of the ISMG, as shown in the following example. This is also a section where students can get a little confused about how to set things out. Below is a flowchart you can use throughout this section to ensure that you demonstrate the full range of ISMG descriptors.



The sample following is a simple example of how this flowchart can be put into practice. It is from a PSMT in which the task is to develop a flying fox. The mathematics has been simplified to allow us to focus on the structure of the response, rather than the mathematics. To guide you, the example has been annotated with:

- in the left margin, the numbered steps from the flowchart above
- in the right margin, the matching ISMG descriptors from the syllabus.



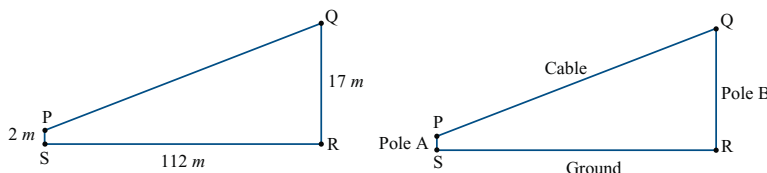
Video A6

Use them to guide your solution, but do not annotate your own report with them.

3.1 Calculating the length of the cable

STEP 1

The flying fox cable, two supporting poles and the ground can be modelled as the quadrilateral, $PQRS$, as shown below.



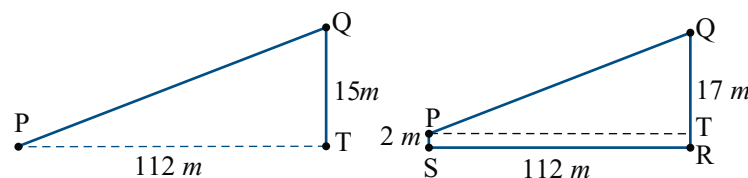
STEP 2

STEP 3

It is assumed that the cable is perfectly taut and has no sag. While the cable in a real flying fox will have a sag (Evans, 2017), this assumption allows the cable's length to be calculated.

STEP 1

A horizontal line drawn through point P creates a right triangle PQT . Creating a right triangle will allow the length of the cable to be calculated using Pythagoras' theorem.



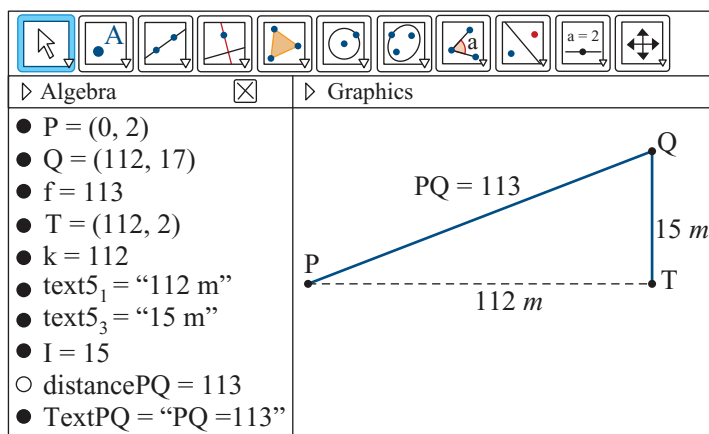
STEP 2

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Length of cable} &= \sqrt{112^2 + 15^2} \\ &= \sqrt{12544 + 225} \\ &= \sqrt{12769} \\ &= 113\end{aligned}$$

STEP 3

The length of the cable is calculated to be 113 metres.

This result can be verified using a scale diagram drawn in Geogebra, as shown in this screenshot.



Formulate

- Justified mathematical translation of important aspects of the task

Communicate

- Correct use of appropriate mathematical language

Formulate

- Justified statements of important assumptions

Communicate

- Justification of decisions using mathematical reasoning

Solve

- Accurate use of mathematical knowledge for important aspects of the task

Solve

- Efficient use of technology

3.2 Calculating the total cost of the cable

STEP 1

The total cost of cable can now be calculated. In construction, it is common to assume that you require an additional 10% of materials to allow for wastage (Jones, 2017). 8 mm aircraft-grade galvanised cable is perfect for ziplines up to 150 metres in length and has a current cost of \$8 per metre. (cable-ride.com, n.d)

STEP 2

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Total cost} &= 113 \times 8 \times 1.1 \\ &= \$994.40\end{aligned}$$

Adding an additional 10% to materials is a reasonable solution when considering the assumption made that there is no sag in the cable. In reality there will be sag, and this will increase the amount of the cable required.

STEP 3

The \$994.40 total cost for the cable can be verified by comparing it to a 90 metre zipline kit available online for \$1387. (cable-ride.com, n.d). While this is \$392.60 more expensive than our cable, it is for a complete kit rather than just a cable. These two prices are close enough to support our result.

Formulate

- Justified statements of important assumptions
- Justified statements of important observations

Solve

- Accurate use of mathematical knowledge for important aspects of the task

Evaluate

- Justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering the assumptions

Evaluate

- Verified results

Efficient use of technology

Throughout your assignment, you should be looking for opportunities to demonstrate the efficient use of technology,

Solve

The student response has the following characteristics:

- Efficient use of technology

as required by the ISMG descriptor shown. The key descriptor here is ‘efficient’, which can be understood as using technology in a way that minimises wasted effort and/or time. An example of efficiency would be using Excel formulas to perform repeated calculations, rather than performing each calculation by hand or on a calculator.

It is often the case that while students use quite a bit of technology throughout their PSMT, they often don’t provide the evidence that they have used it. Here are some types of technology students use and the evidence that they can provide to demonstrate that they have used it.

Types of technology	Evidence provided
Spreadsheet software (e.g. Microsoft Excel)	■ Screenshots of graphs or tables ■ Samples of spreadsheet formulas used
Calculator	■ Photos or screenshots of the calculator screen ■ Descriptions of how the calculator was used
Graphing software (e.g. Desmos or Geogebra)	■ Screenshots ■ Descriptions of how the software was used
Logging software (e.g. data collectors)	■ Sample of the data collected ■ Screenshots



Video A7

The following examples which evidence efficient use of technology are taken from the 2022 Mathematics subject reports.

To verify this a larger Excel spreadsheet was created to solve the parametric equations for a variety of t values (also extending to ten years):

t	Xleft	Xright	Difference	Intersect?	Yleft	Yright	Difference	Intersect?	Zleft	Zright	Difference	Intersect?
0.5	0.999963	1.999997	1.0000337	FALSE	0.0086	0.001805	0.0067944	FALSE	0	-2	1.999997	FALSE
1	0.999852	1.999987	1.0001349	FALSE	0.017199	0.003611	0.0135882	FALSE	0	-1.999999	1.999987	FALSE

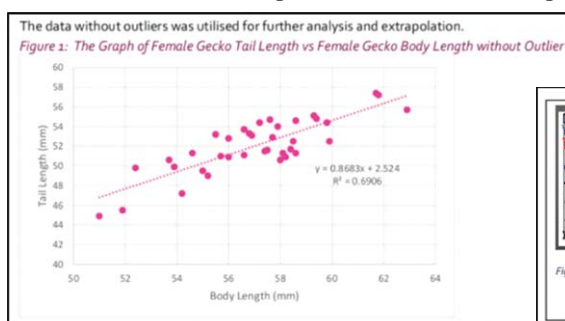
=COS(0.0172t) =2COS(0.003611t) =ABS(D2)

Figure 12: Spreadsheet

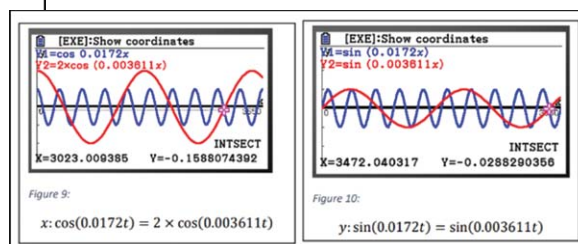
The Excel equation inserted in the 'Intersect?' column (Figure 13), calculated if the difference between the two sides of the parametric equation was less than 4.2587×10^{-5} , the conversion of Earth's radius to AU, to ensure constant units.

=IF(D2<(0.0000425875),"YES")

Student sample taken from the 2022 Specialist Mathematics subject report



Student sample taken from the 2022 General Mathematics subject report



Student sample taken from the 2022 Specialist Mathematics subject report

4. Evaluating and verifying the solution

(600 words)

4.1 Verifying results

In this section you are aiming to demonstrate the descriptor shown here, verifying the overall solution. If you have

been following the advice from the previous section, you will have been verifying some of your results in the process of coming to your solution. Below, we look at four techniques students can use for verifying results.

- 1 Verifying through estimation:** This method simplifies the problem before calculating an approximate solution. For instance, if you have calculated the area of a composite shape, you can verify your solution by simplifying it into a basic rectangle and recalculating the area. If the estimated area is close to your calculated area, it helps confirm the accuracy of your solution.
- 2 Verifying through research:** This method involves comparing results with reliable sources. This method is particularly useful for tasks related to historical data or correlation studies. Findings can be matched against data from textbooks, academic journals, or credible online sources. For example, in a task exploring the correlation between car weight and fuel consumption, you can verify the solution against existing research on this topic.

Evaluate

The student response has the following characteristics:

- Verified results



Video A8

- 3 Verifying through technology:** Using technology to redo algebraic calculations can aid in verifying results. For example, when calculating the area under a curve, employing graphing calculators or software for an approximation and comparing it to manual calculations can serve as a verification method.
- 4 Verifying through an alternative method:** This method is effective in problems with multiple solutions and involves employing various techniques to solve the same issue. For example, you may initially solve an algebraic equation by factoring, then recheck the solution using the quadratic formula. If both methods produce identical results, it strongly suggests that the solution is correct.

4.2 Evaluating reasonableness of the solution

In this section you are aiming to demonstrate the content descriptor below:

Evaluate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
• verified results • justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering the assumptions • justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering the observations • justified statements of relevant strengths of the solution • justified statements of relevant limitations of the solution	4–5



Video A9

When evaluating the reasonableness of your solution by considering assumptions and observations you should:

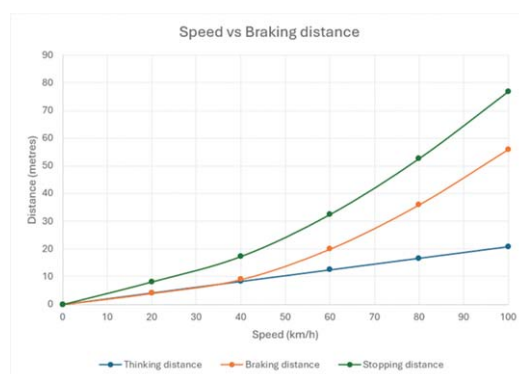
- consider the solution found
- consider how it is affected by the observation or assumption
- consider how the solution might be different if the observation or assumption was altered (often with some mathematical working included).

Below is an example of evaluating the reasonableness of a solution by considering an assumption from a PSMT investigating the braking distance of a car dependent on the speed at which it is travelling.

Example

The distance calculated for a car to come to a complete stop is underestimated because of the assumption that driver's response times were instantaneous. If driver response time were factored in, the braking distance would be greater than the distances calculated in this report.

Assuming average driver response time of 1.5 seconds (Muttart, 2004), we can see how the solution would change if this time was taken into account in the graph pictured. At the top speed of 100 km/h, braking distance is increased from the initial solution of 56 m to 77 m, an increase of 37.5%.



Note: Students often make the mistake of evaluating the reasonableness of their assumption, rather than evaluating the reasonableness of their solution by considering their assumption. The distinction is subtle but important. The justified statements made must refer to the solution and how it is affected by the assumption, not just the assumption itself.

Correct: The solution is reasonable because...

Incorrect: The assumption is reasonable because...

A subtle but important difference.

4.3 Strengths and limitations of the solution

In this section you are aiming to demonstrate the content descriptor below:

Evaluate	Marks
The student response has the following characteristics:	
• verified results • justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering the assumptions • justified statements about the reasonableness of the solution by considering the observations • justified statements of relevant strengths of the solution • justified statements of relevant limitations of the solution	4–5



Video A10

Strengths and limitations of the solution can be thought of in the following way.

- Strengths – aspects of the model that make it useful
- Weaknesses – aspects of the model that limit its usefulness

A series of questions to help identify these strengths and limitations is below. Do not aim to answer all these questions but use them as prompts to generate ideas.

Strengths	Limitations
What assumptions were made that closely align to the real world?	What assumptions were made that do not align closely with the real world?
What aspects of the real world does the solution consider?	What aspects of the real world does the solution not consider?
Could the method used to create this solution be easily adapted and used to solve other, related problems?	Are there other, related problems that the method used could not be easily adapted to solve?
What aspects of the solution can be verified using other observational data?	What aspects of the solution cannot be verified using observational data?
What are the potential, positive consequences of using this solution in the real world?	What are the potential, negative consequences of using this solution in the real world?
What aspects of the solution will continue to be accurate into the future?	What aspects of the solution will cease to be accurate into the future?

To make justified statements of strengths/limitations:

- state the strength/limitation
- justify why it is a strength/limitation.

The student sample of limitations below provides examples of this.

The following limitations were observed

There was a limited amount of data points that were used as a sample. This means the findings were less reliable as it may not be an accurate representation of all rugby games.

Another limitation is that when using extrapolation with regards to the regression line, it may not be accurate to predict further outcomes because the prediction is outside the sample data range.

One final limitation is that the R^2 value found is not considerably strong, therefore a smaller percentage of the points scored per game can be attributed to the line breaks achieved per game, decreasing the reliability of the study.

Student sample taken from the 2022 General Mathematics subject report

5. Conclusion

(100 words)

The conclusion is another opportunity to show logical organisation of your response. In the conclusion you should:

- restate the purpose of the mathematical report
- provide a summary of your solution, stating an appropriate answer to the task.

Conclusion

The purpose of this report was to use functions and derivatives to create a reasonable prediction for the rate of change for the Australian population in 2061. It was found that the most reasonable model was solution three as it produces a reasonable population and somewhat reasonable rates of change. Therefore, using this logistic function, it is predicted that the population will reach approximately 39.6 million in 2061, with a percentage rate of change of 0.95% and an instantaneous rate of change of approximately 370 000 addition people per year.

Student sample taken from the 2022 Mathematical Methods subject report

6. Reference List

(Not included in page or word count)

Use a standard referencing style. Ask your teacher for guidance on this if you need it.

7. Appendix

(Not included in page or word count)

An appendix is for supporting material such as data, diagrams, calculations and screenshots or print-outs from technology, that don't form a direct part of the solution or evaluation. The appendix is not marked so don't include important items that you want a mark for. If you haven't already included your use of technology in the report, you could put a small sample into the body of your assignment to get marks for efficient use of technology.

Glossary

A

Absolute maximum and minimum [p. 292]

For a continuous function f defined on an interval $[a, b]$:

- the *absolute maximum* is the value M of the function f such that $f(x) \leq M$ for all $x \in [a, b]$
- the *absolute minimum* is the value N of the function f such that $f(x) \geq N$ for all $x \in [a, b]$.

Acceleration [p. 248] the rate of change of a particle's velocity with respect to time

Acceleration, average [p. 248] The average acceleration of a particle for the time interval $[t_1, t_2]$ is given by $\frac{v_2 - v_1}{t_2 - t_1}$, where v_2 is the velocity at time t_2 and v_1 is the velocity at time t_1 .

Acceleration, instantaneous [pp. 248, 264]

$$a = \frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{d^2x}{dt^2}$$

Addition rule for choices [MM1&2] To determine the total number of choices from disjoint alternatives, simply add up the number of choices available for each alternative.

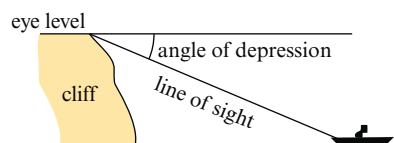
Addition rule for probability [p. 355] The probability of A or B or both occurring is given by $P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B) - P(A \cap B)$

Amplitude of trigonometric functions

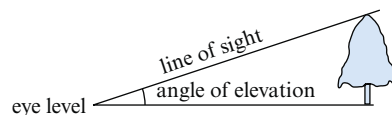
[MM1&2] The distance between the mean position and the maximum position is called the amplitude.

The graph of $y = \sin x$ has an amplitude of 1.

Angle of depression [p. 531] the angle between the horizontal and a direction below the horizontal



Angle of elevation [p. 531] the angle between the horizontal and a direction above the horizontal



Anti-derivative [p. 321] To determine the general anti-derivative of $f(x)$: If $F'(x) = f(x)$, then

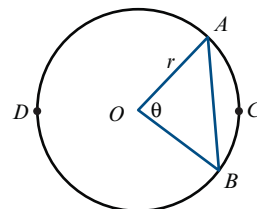
$$\int f(x) dx = F(x) + c$$

where c is an arbitrary real number.

Arc [MM1&2] Two points on a circle divide the circle into arcs; the shorter is the *minor arc*, and the longer is the *major arc*.

Arc length, ℓ [MM1&2]

The length of arc ACB is given by $\ell = r\theta$, where $\theta^\circ = \angle AOB$.

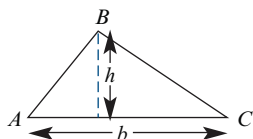


Note: The glossary contains some terms from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2 [MM1&2].

Area of a triangle [p. 528] given by half the product of the lengths of two sides and the sine of the angle included between them.

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bh$$

$$\text{Area} = \frac{1}{2}bc \sin A$$



Arrangements [MM1&2] counted when order is important. The number of ways of selecting and arranging r objects from a total of n objects is

$$\frac{n!}{(n-r)!} = n \times (n-1) \times (n-2) \times \cdots \times (n-r+1)$$

Asymptote [MM1&2] A straight line is an asymptote of the graph of a function $y = f(x)$ if the graph of $y = f(x)$ gets arbitrarily close to the straight line. An asymptote can be horizontal, vertical or oblique.

Average value [p. 483] The average value of a continuous function f for an interval $[a, b]$ is defined as $\frac{1}{b-a} \int_a^b f(x) dx$.

B

Bearing [p. 532] the compass bearing; the direction measured from north clockwise

Bernoulli random variable [p. 394] a random variable that takes only the values 1 (indicating a success) and 0 (indicating a failure)

Bernoulli sequence [p. 402] a sequence of repeated trials with the following properties:

- The outcomes take one of two values, which are usually designated either a success S , or a failure F .
- The probability of success each time is a constant p , and thus the probability of failure is $(1-p)$.

Bias [p. 624] Sampling bias occurs when some members of a population are systematically more likely to be selected in a sample than others.

Binomial distribution [p. 396] The probability of observing x successes in a sequence of n Bernoulli trials.

$$P(X = x) = \binom{n}{x} p^x (1-p)^{n-x}, \quad x = 0, 1, \dots, n$$

$$\text{where } \binom{n}{x} = \frac{n!}{x!(n-x)!}$$

Binomial expansion [MM1&2]

$$\begin{aligned} (x+a)^n &= \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} a^k \\ &= x^n + \binom{n}{1} x^{n-1} a + \binom{n}{2} x^{n-2} a^2 + \cdots + a^n \end{aligned}$$

The $(r+1)$ st term is $\binom{n}{r} x^{n-r} a^r$.

Binomial experiment a Bernoulli sequence of n independent trials, each with probability of success p

C

Chain rule [p. 125] The chain rule can be used to differentiate a complicated function $y = f(x)$ by transforming it into two simpler functions, which are 'chained' together:

$$x \xrightarrow{h} u \xrightarrow{g} y$$

Using Leibniz notation, the chain rule is stated as

$$\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{dy}{du} \cdot \frac{du}{dx}$$

Change of base [p. 212] $\log_a b = \frac{\log_c b}{\log_c a}$

Circle, general equation [p. 7] The general equation for a circle is $(x-h)^2 + (y-k)^2 = r^2$, where the centre is (h, k) and the radius is r .

Coefficient [p. 59] the number that multiplies a power of x in a polynomial. E.g. for $2x^5 - 7x^2 + 4$, the coefficient of x^2 is -7 .

Combinations [MM1&2] see selections

Common difference, d [MM1&2] the difference between two consecutive terms of an arithmetic sequence, i.e. $d = t_n - t_{n-1}$

Common ratio, r [MM1&2] the quotient of two consecutive terms of a geometric sequence, i.e.

$$r = \frac{t_n}{t_{n-1}}$$

Compass bearing [p. 532] the direction measured from north clockwise

Complement, A' [p. 355] the set of outcomes that are in the sample space, ϵ , but not in A . The probability of the event A' is $P(A') = 1 - P(A)$.

Complementary relationships [MM1&2]

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \cos \theta \quad \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = \cos \theta$$

$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \sin \theta \quad \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = -\sin \theta$$

Composition of functions [p. 24]

For two functions f and g , the function with rule $h(x) = f(g(x))$ is the composition of f with g .

We write $h = f \circ g$. For example, if $f(x) = x^4$ and $g(x) = x + 1$, then $(f \circ g)(x) = f(g(x)) = (x + 1)^4$.

Compound interest [MM1&2] is calculated at regular intervals on the total of the amount originally invested and the interest accumulated over the previous years. If \$ P is invested at $R\%$ p.a. compounded annually, then the value of the investment after n years, $\$A_n$, is given by

$$A_n = Pr^n, \text{ where } r = 1 + \frac{R}{100}$$

Concavity [p. 284]

- If $f''(x) > 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is increasing over the interval; the curve is said to be *concave up*.
- If $f''(x) < 0$ for all $x \in (a, b)$, then the gradient of the curve is decreasing over the interval; the curve is said to be *concave down*.

Conditional probability [p. 363] the probability of an event A occurring when it is known that some event B has occurred, given by

$$P(A|B) = \frac{P(A \cap B)}{P(B)}$$

Confidence interval [p. 670] an interval estimate for the population proportion p based on the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$

Congruence tests [p. 513] Two triangles are congruent if one of the following conditions holds:

- **SSS** the three sides of one triangle are equal to the three sides of the other triangle
- **SAS** two sides and the included angle of one triangle are equal to two sides and the included angle of the other triangle
- **AAS** two angles and one side of one triangle are equal to two angles and the matching side of the other triangle
- **RHS** the hypotenuse and one side of a right-angled triangle are equal to the hypotenuse and one side of another right-angled triangle.

Congruent figures [p. 514] have exactly the same shape and size

Constant function [MM1&2] a function with a rule of the form $f(x) = a$; e.g. $f(x) = 7$

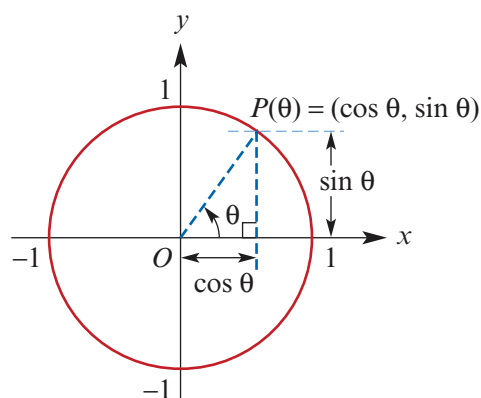
Continuous function [p. 121] A function f is continuous at the point $x = a$ if $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = f(a)$.

Continuous random variable [p. 552] a random variable X that can take any value in an interval of the real number line

Convergent series [MM1&2] An infinite series $t_1 + t_2 + t_3 + \dots$ is convergent if the sum of the first n terms, S_n , approaches a limiting value as $n \rightarrow \infty$. An infinite geometric series is convergent if $-1 < r < 1$, where r is the common ratio.

Coordinates [MM1&2] an ordered pair of numbers that identifies a point in the Cartesian plane; the first number identifies the position with respect to the x -axis, and the second number identifies the position with respect to the y -axis

Cosine function [MM1&2] cosine θ is defined as the x -coordinate of the point P on the unit circle where OP forms an angle of θ radians with the positive direction of the x -axis.

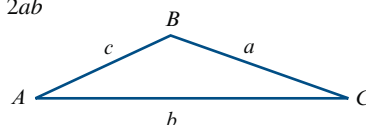


Cosine rule [p. 524] For triangle ABC :

$$c^2 = a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos C$$

or equivalently

$$\cos C = \frac{a^2 + b^2 - c^2}{2ab}$$



The cosine rule is used to determine unknown quantities in a triangle given two sides and the included angle, or given three sides.

Cubic function [p. 64] a polynomial of degree 3. A cubic function f has a rule of the form $f(x) = ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d$, where $a \neq 0$.

Cumulative distribution function [p. 580] gives the probability that the random variable X takes a value less than or equal to x ; that is,

$$F(x) = P(X \leq x) = \int_{-\infty}^x f(t) dt$$

D

Definite integral [pp. 459, 465] $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ denotes the signed area enclosed by the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$.

Degree of a polynomial [p. 59] given by the highest power of x with a non-zero coefficient; e.g. the polynomial $2x^5 - 7x^2 + 4$ has degree 5.

Dependent variable [MM1&2] If one variable, y , can be expressed as a function of another variable, x , then the value of y depends on the value of x . We say that y is the *dependent variable* and that x is the *independent variable*.

Derivative function [p. 120] also called the gradient function. The derivative f' of a function f is given by

$$f'(x) = \lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(x+h) - f(x)}{h}$$

Derivatives, basic [pp. 106, 118, 128–224]

$f(x)$	$f'(x)$
c	0
x^a	ax^{a-1}
e^{kx}	ke^{kx}
$\ln(kx)$	$\frac{1}{x}$
$\sin(kx)$	$k \cos(kx)$
$\cos(kx)$	$-k \sin(kx)$

where c is a constant

where $a \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

Difference of two cubes [p. 86]

$$x^3 - y^3 = (x - y)(x^2 + xy + y^2)$$

Difference of two squares [MM1&2]

$$x^2 - y^2 = (x - y)(x + y)$$

Differentiable [p. 122] A function f is said to be differentiable at the point $x = a$ if

$$\lim_{h \rightarrow 0} \frac{f(a+h) - f(a)}{h} \text{ exists.}$$

Differentiation rules [p. 106]

■ Sum: $f(x) = g(x) + h(x)$, $f'(x) = g'(x) + h'(x)$

■ Multiple: $f(x) = k g(x)$, $f'(x) = k g'(x)$

see also chain rule, product rule, quotient rule

Dilation from the x-axis [p. 45] A dilation of factor b from the x -axis is described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, by)$. The curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is mapped to the curve with equation $y = bf(x)$.

Dilation from the y-axis [MM1&2] A dilation of factor a from the y -axis is described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (ax, y)$. The curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is mapped to the curve with equation $y = f\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$.

Discontinuity [p. 121] A function is said to be discontinuous at a point if it is not continuous at that point.

Discrete random variable [p. 371] a random variable X which can take only a countable number of values, usually whole numbers

Discriminant, Δ , of a quadratic [p. 51]

the expression $b^2 - 4ac$, which is part of the quadratic formula. For the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$:

- If $b^2 - 4ac > 0$, there are two solutions.
- If $b^2 - 4ac = 0$, there is one solution.
- If $b^2 - 4ac < 0$, there are no real solutions.

Disjoint [p. 2] Two sets A and B are disjoint if they have no elements in common, i.e. $A \cap B = \emptyset$.

Displacement [p. 246] The displacement of a particle moving in a straight line is defined as the change in position of the particle.

Distance between two points [MM1&2] The distance between points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ is $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$

Domain [p. 7] the set of all the first coordinates of the ordered pairs in a relation

E

Element [p. 2] a member of a set.

- If x is an element of a set A , we write $x \in A$.
- If x is *not* an element of a set A , we write $x \notin A$.

Empty set, $\emptyset$ [p. 2] the set that has no elements

Equating coefficients [p. 61] Two polynomials P and Q are equal only if their corresponding coefficients are equal. For example, two cubic polynomials $P(x) = a_3x^3 + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0$ and $Q(x) = b_3x^3 + b_2x^2 + b_1x + b_0$ are equal if and only if $a_3 = b_3$, $a_2 = b_2$, $a_1 = b_1$ and $a_0 = b_0$.

Euler's number, e [p. 164] the natural base for exponential and logarithmic functions:

$$e = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} \left(1 + \frac{1}{n}\right)^n = 2.718\,281\ldots$$

Even function [p. 19] A function f is even if $f(-x) = f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f ; the graph is symmetric about the y -axis.

Event [p. 353] a subset of the sample space (that is, a set of outcomes)

Expected value of a random variable, $E(X)$ [pp. 382, 570] also called the mean, μ .

For a discrete random variable X :

$$E(X) = \sum_x x \cdot P(X = x) = \sum_i p_i \cdot x_i$$

where p_i is the probability of outcome x_i occurring.

For a continuous random variable X :

$$E(X) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} xf(x) dx$$

Exponential function [p. 158] a function $f(x) = ka^x$, where k is a non-zero constant and the base a is a positive real number other than 1

F

Factor [MM1&2] a number or expression that divides another number or expression without remainder

Factor theorem [p. 84] If $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of a polynomial $P(x)$, then $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$. Conversely, if $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right) = 0$, then $\beta x + \alpha$ is a factor of $P(x)$.

Factorise [MM1&2] express as a product of factors

Formula [MM1&2] an equation containing symbols that states a relationship between two or more quantities; e.g. $A = \ell w$ (area = length $\times$ width). The value of A , the subject of the formula, can be found by substituting given values of ℓ and w .

Function [p. 8] a relation such that for each x -value there is only one corresponding y -value. This means that, if (a, b) and (a, c) are ordered pairs of a function, then $b = c$.

Function, vertical-line test [p. 9] used to identify whether a relation is a function or not. If a vertical line can be drawn anywhere on the graph and it only ever intersects the graph a maximum of once, then the relation is a *function*.

Fundamental theorem of calculus [p. 460]

If f is a continuous function on an interval $[a, b]$, then

$$\int_a^b f(x) dx = F(b) - F(a)$$

where F is any anti-derivative of f and $\int_a^b f(x) dx$ is the definite integral from a to b .

G

Gradient function *see* derivative function

Gradient of a line [MM1&2] The gradient is

$$m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

where (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2) are the coordinates of two points on the line. The gradient of a vertical line (parallel to the y -axis) is undefined.

I

Implied domain *see* maximal domain

Indefinite integral *see* anti-derivative

Independent events [p. 366] Two events A and

B are independent if and only if

$$P(A \cap B) = P(A) \times P(B)$$

Independent variable [MM1&2] If one variable, y , can be expressed as a function of another variable, x , then the value of y depends on the value of x . We say that y is the *dependent variable* and that x is the *independent variable*.

Index laws [p. 168]

- To multiply two powers with the same base, add the indices: $a^x \times a^y = a^{x+y}$
- To divide two powers with the same base, subtract the indices: $a^x \div a^y = a^{x-y}$
- To raise a power to another power, multiply the indices: $(a^x)^y = a^{xy}$
- Rational indices: $a^{\frac{m}{n}} = (\sqrt[n]{a})^m$
- For base $a \in \mathbb{R}^+ \setminus \{1\}$, if $a^x = a^y$, then $x = y$.

Inequality [MM1&2] a mathematical statement that contains an inequality symbol rather than an equals sign; e.g. $2x + 1 < 4$

Integers [p. 3] $\mathbb{Z} = \{\dots, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, \dots\}$

Integrals, basic [pp. 322–332]

$f(x)$	$\int f(x) dx$	
x^r	$\frac{x^{r+1}}{r+1} + c$	where $r \in \mathbb{Q} \setminus \{-1\}$
$\frac{1}{ax+b}$	$\frac{1}{a} \ln(ax+b) + c$	for $ax+b > 0$
e^{kx}	$\frac{1}{k} e^{kx} + c$	
$\sin(kx)$	$-\frac{1}{k} \cos(kx) + c$	
$\cos(kx)$	$\frac{1}{k} \sin(kx) + c$	

Integration, properties [p. 322]

- $\int f(x) + g(x) dx = \int f(x) dx + \int g(x) dx$
- $\int kf(x) dx = k \int f(x) dx$

Integration (definite), properties [p. 469]

- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = \int_a^c f(x) dx + \int_c^b f(x) dx$
- $\int_a^a f(x) dx = 0$
- $\int_a^b f(x) dx = -\int_b^a f(x) dx$

Intersection of sets [pp. 2, 353] The intersection of two sets A and B , written $A \cap B$, is the set of all elements common to A and B .

Interval [p. 3] a subset of the real numbers of the form $[a, b]$, $[a, b)$, (a, ∞) , etc.

Irrational number [p. 3] a real number that is not rational; e.g. π and $\sqrt{2}$

Iterative rule [MM1&2] *see* recurrence relation

K

Karnaugh map [p. 358] a probability table

L

Law of total probability [p. 364] In the case of two events, A and B :

$$P(A) = P(A|B)P(B) + P(A|B')P(B')$$

Left-endpoint method [p. 452] gives an estimate for the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$:

$$L_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_0) + f(x_1) + \cdots + f(x_{n-1})]$$

Limit [p. 102] The notation $\lim_{x \rightarrow a} f(x) = p$ says that the limit of $f(x)$, as x approaches a , is p . We can also say: 'As x approaches a , $f(x)$ approaches p .'

Linear equation [MM1&2] a polynomial equation of degree 1; e.g. $2x + 1 = 0$

Linear function [MM1&2] a function with a rule of the form $f(x) = mx + c$; e.g. $f(x) = 3x + 1$

Linear function of a random variable [p. 577]

- $E(aX + b) = aE(X) + b$
- $\text{Var}(aX + b) = a^2 \text{Var}(X)$

Literal equation [p. 76] an equation for the variable x in which the coefficients of x , including the constants, are pronumerals; e.g. $ax + b = c$

Logarithm [p. 170] If $a \in \mathbb{R}^+ \setminus \{1\}$ and $x \in \mathbb{R}$, then the statements $a^x = y$ and $\log_a y = x$ are equivalent.

Logarithm, natural [p. 171] The natural logarithm function is given by $\ln x = \log_e x$ where the base e is Euler's number.

Logarithm laws [p. 172]

- $\log_a(xy) = \log_a x + \log_a y$
- $\log_a\left(\frac{x}{y}\right) = \log_a x - \log_a y$
- $\log_a\left(\frac{1}{x}\right) = -\log_a x$
- $\log_a(x^p) = p \log_a x$

Logarithmic scale [p. 206] a measurement scale that uses the logarithm of a quantity; e.g. Richter scale for earthquakes

M

Margin of error, E [p. 679] the distance between the sample estimate and the endpoint of the confidence interval

Maximal domain [p. 17] When the rule for a relation is given and no domain is specified, then the domain taken is the largest for which the rule has meaning.

Maximum and minimum value [p. 292]
see absolute maximum and minimum

Mean of a random variable, μ [pp. 382]
see expected value of a random variable, $E(X)$

Median of a random variable, m [p. 566] the middle value of the distribution. For a continuous random variable, the median is the value m such that $\int_{-\infty}^m f(x) dx = 0.5$.

Midpoint of a line segment [MM1&2]
If $P(x, y)$ is the midpoint of the line segment joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$, then

$$x = \frac{x_1 + x_2}{2} \quad \text{and} \quad y = \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}$$

Model [p. 200] a mathematical representation of a real-world situation. For example, an equation that describes the relationship between two physical quantities is a *mathematical model*.

Multiplication rule for choices [MM1&2]

When sequential choices are involved, the total number of possibilities is found by multiplying the number of options at each successive stage.

Multiplication rule for probability [p. 363] the probability of events A and B both occurring is $P(A \cap B) = P(A|B) \times P(B)$

Multi-stage experiment [p. 364] an experiment that could be considered to take place in more than one stage; e.g. tossing two coins

Mutually exclusive [p. 355] Two events are said to be mutually exclusive if they have no outcomes in common.

N

$n!$ [MM1&2] read as ' n factorial', the product of all the natural numbers from n down to 1:
 $n! = n \times (n-1) \times (n-2) \times (n-3) \times \cdots \times 2 \times 1$

Natural logarithm [p. 171] see logarithm

Natural numbers [p. 3] $\mathbb{N} = \{1, 2, 3, 4, \dots\}$

${}^nC_r$ [MM1&2] the number of combinations of n objects in groups of size r :

$${}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

An alternative notation for ${}^nC_r$ is $\binom{n}{r}$.

Normal distribution [p. 588] a symmetric, bell-shaped distribution that often occurs for a measure in a population (e.g. height, weight, IQ); its centre is determined by the mean, μ , and its width by the standard deviation, σ .

Normal line, equation [p. 235] Let (x_1, y_1) be a point on the curve $y = f(x)$. If f is differentiable at $x = x_1$, the equation of the normal at (x_1, y_1) is

$$y - y_1 = \frac{-1}{f'(x_1)}(x - x_1)$$

O

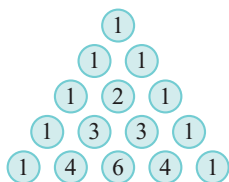
Odd function [p. 19] A function f is odd if $f(-x) = -f(x)$ for all x in the domain of f ; the graph has rotational symmetry about the origin.

Optimisation problem [p. 295] a problem where a quantity is to be maximised or minimised under given constraints; e.g. to maximise the area of land enclosed by a fixed length of fencing

Ordered pair [p. 6] a pair of elements, denoted (x, y) , where x is the first coordinate and y is the second coordinate

P

Pascal's triangle [MM1&2] a triangular pattern of numbers formed by the binomial coefficients ${}^nC_r$



Percentile [p. 565] For a continuous random variable X , the value p such that $P(X \leq p) = q\%$ is called the q th percentile of X , and is found by solving $\int_{-\infty}^p f(x) dx = \frac{q}{100}$.

Period of a function [MM1&2] A function f with domain $\mathbb{R}$ is periodic if there is a positive constant a such that $f(x + a) = f(x)$ for all x . The smallest such a is called the period of f .

- Sine and cosine have period 2π .
- Tangent has period π .
- A function of the form $y = a \cos(nx + \varepsilon) + b$ or $y = a \sin(nx + \varepsilon) + b$ has period $\frac{2\pi}{n}$.

Permutations [MM1&2] see arrangements

Piecewise-defined function [p. 18] a function which has different rules for different subsets of its domain

Point estimate [p. 668] When the value of the sample proportion $\hat{p}$ is used as an estimate of the population proportion p , it is called a point estimate of p .

Point of inflection [p. 284] a point where a curve changes from concave up to concave down or from concave down to concave up. That is, a point of inflection occurs where the sign of the second derivative changes.

Polynomial function [p. 59] A polynomial has a rule of the type

$$y = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1 x + a_0, \quad n \in \mathbb{N} \cup \{0\}$$

where $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n$ are numbers called coefficients.

Population [p. 624] the set of all eligible members of a group which we intend to study

Population parameter [p. 644] a statistical measure that is based on the whole population; the value is constant for a given population

Population proportion, p [p. 644] the proportion of individuals in the entire population possessing a particular attribute

Position [p. 246] For a particle moving in a straight line, the position of the particle relative to a point O on the line is determined by its distance from O and whether it is to the right or left of O . The direction to the right of O is positive.

Power function [p. 27] a function of the form $f(x) = x^r$, where r is a non-zero real number

Probability [p. 553] a numerical value assigned to the likelihood of an event occurring. If the event A is impossible, then $P(A) = 0$; if the event A is certain, then $P(A) = 1$; otherwise $0 < P(A) < 1$.

Probability density function [p. 555] denoted $f(x)$ or $p(x)$; describes the probability distribution of a continuous random variable X such that $P(a < X < b) = \int_a^b f(x) dx$

Probability function (discrete) [p. 372] denoted by $p(x)$ or $P(X = x)$, a function that assigns a probability to each value of a discrete random variable X . It can be represented by a rule, a table or a graph, and must give a probability $p(x)$ or p_i for every value x that X can take.

Probability table [p. 358] a table used for illustrating a probability problem diagrammatically

Product of functions [p. 22] $(fg)(x) = f(x)g(x)$ and $\text{dom}(fg) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$

Product rule [p. 228] If $h(x) = f(x)g(x)$ then $h'(x) = f(x)g'(x) + f'(x)g(x)$
In Leibniz notation:

$$\text{If } y = uv, \text{ then } \frac{dy}{dx} = u \frac{dv}{dx} + v \frac{du}{dx}$$

Pythagorean identity [MM1&2]

$$\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1$$

Q

Q [p. 3] the set of all rational numbers

Quadratic, turning point form [p. 46]

The turning point form of a quadratic function is $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$, where (h, k) is the turning point.

Quadratic formula [p. 50] The solutions of the quadratic equation $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where $a \neq 0$, are given by

$$x = \frac{-b \pm \sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}$$

Quadratic function [p. 45] A quadratic has a rule of the form $y = ax^2 + bx + c$, where a , b and c are constants and $a \neq 0$.

Quartic function [p. 68] a polynomial of degree 4. A quartic function f has a rule of the form $f(x) = ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e$, where $a \neq 0$.

Quotient rule [p. 232] If $h(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)}$ then

$$h'(x) = \frac{f'(x)g(x) - f(x)g'(x)}{(g(x))^2}$$

In Leibniz notation:

$$\text{If } y = \frac{u}{v}, \text{ then } \frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{v \frac{du}{dx} - u \frac{dv}{dx}}{v^2}$$

R

$\mathbb{R}^+$ [p. 3] $\{x : x > 0\}$, positive real numbers

$\mathbb{R}^-$ [p. 3] $\{x : x < 0\}$, negative real numbers

$\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ [p. 3] the set of real numbers excluding 0

$\mathbb{R}^2$ [MM1&2] $\{(x, y) : x, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$; i.e. $\mathbb{R}^2$ is the set of all ordered pairs of real numbers

Radian [MM1&2] One radian (written 1°) is the angle subtended at the centre of the unit circle by an arc of length 1 unit:

$$1^\circ = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \quad \text{and} \quad 1^\circ = \frac{\pi^\circ}{180}$$

Random experiment [p. 353] an experiment, such as the rolling of a die, in which the outcome of a single trial is uncertain but observable

Random sample [p. 624] A sample of size n is called a *simple random sample* if it is selected from the population in such a way that every subset of size n has an equal chance of being chosen as the sample. In particular, every member of the population must have an equal chance of being included in the sample.

Random variable [p. 371] a variable that takes its value from the outcome of a random experiment; e.g. the number of heads observed when a coin is tossed three times

Range [p. 7] the set of all the second coordinates of the ordered pairs in a relation

Rational number [p. 3] a number that can be written as $\frac{p}{q}$, for some integers p and q with $q \neq 0$

Rectangular hyperbola [p. 28] The basic rectangular hyperbola has equation $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

Recurrence relation [MM1&2] a rule which enables each subsequent term of a sequence to be found from previous terms; e.g. $t_1 = 1$, $t_n = t_{n-1} + 2$

Reflection in the x-axis [p. 159] A reflection in the x -axis is described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$. The curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is mapped to the curve with equation $y = -f(x)$.

Reflection in the y-axis [p. 159] A reflection in the y -axis is described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y)$. The curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is mapped to the curve with equation $y = f(-x)$.

Regression [p. 200] the process of fitting a mathematical model to data

Relation [p. 6] a set of ordered pairs; e.g. $\{(x, y) : y = x^2\}$

Relative growth rate [pp. 166, 242] The relative growth rate of a function f is $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$.

For an exponential function $f(x) = Ae^{kx}$, the constant k is the relative growth rate.

Remainder theorem [p. 83]

When a polynomial $P(x)$ is divided by $\beta x + \alpha$, the remainder is $P\left(-\frac{\alpha}{\beta}\right)$.

Right-endpoint method [p. 452] gives an estimate for the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$:

$$R_n = \frac{b-a}{n} [f(x_1) + f(x_2) + \cdots + f(x_n)]$$

S

Sample [p. 624] a subset of the population

Sample proportion, $\hat{p}$ [p. 644] the proportion of individuals in a particular sample possessing a particular attribute. The sample proportions $\hat{p}$ are the values of a random variable $\hat{P}$.

Sample space, ϵ [p. 353] the set of all possible outcomes for a random experiment

Sample statistic [p. 644] a statistical measure that is based on a sample from the population; the value varies from sample to sample

Sampling distribution [p. 646] the distribution of a statistic which is calculated from a sample

Scientific notation [MM1&2] A number is in standard form when written as a product of a number between 1 and 10 and an integer power of 10; e.g. 6.626×10^{-34} .

Secant [p. 101] a straight line that passes through two points $(a, f(a))$ and $(b, f(b))$ on the graph of a function $y = f(x)$

Second derivative [p. 263]

- The second derivative of a function f with rule $f(x)$ is denoted by f'' and has rule $f''(x)$.
- The second derivative of y with respect to x is denoted by $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2}$.

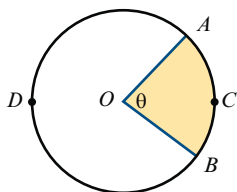
Second derivative test [p. 286]

- If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) > 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local minimum.
- If $f'(a) = 0$ and $f''(a) < 0$, then the point $(a, f(a))$ is a local maximum.
- If $f''(a) = 0$, then further investigation is necessary.

Sector [MM1&2] Two radii and an arc define a region called a sector. In this diagram, the shaded region is a *minor sector* and the unshaded region is a *major sector*.

$$\text{Area of sector} = \frac{1}{2}r^2\theta$$

where $\theta^\circ = \angle AOB$



Selections [MM1&2] counted when order is not important. The number of ways of selecting r objects from a total of n objects is

$${}^nC_r = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

An alternative notation for ${}^nC_r$ is $\binom{n}{r}$.

Sequence [MM1&2] a list of numbers, with the order being important; e.g. 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, ... The numbers of a sequence are called its *terms*, and the n th term is often denoted by t_n .

see also arithmetic sequence, geometric sequence

Series [MM1&2] the sum of the terms in a sequence

see also arithmetic series, geometric series

Set difference [p. 3] The set $A \setminus B$ contains all the elements of A that are not in B . For example, $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ is the set of all real numbers excluding 0.

Set notation [p. 2]

- $\in$ means 'is an element of'
- $\notin$ means 'is not an element of'
- $\subseteq$ means 'is a subset of'
- $\cap$ means 'intersection'
- $\cup$ means 'union'
- $\emptyset$ is the empty set, containing no elements

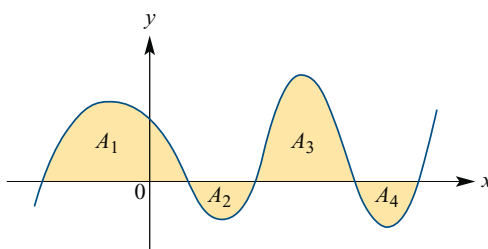
Sets of numbers [p. 3]

- $\mathbb{N}$ is the set of natural numbers
- $\mathbb{Z}$ is the set of integers
- $\mathbb{Q}$ is the set of rational numbers
- $\mathbb{R}$ is the set of real numbers

Signed area [p. 464]

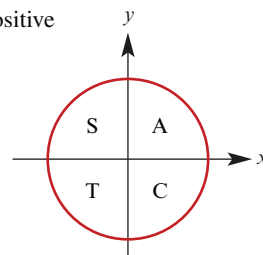
- Regions *above* the x -axis are defined to have *positive* signed area.
- Regions *below* the x -axis are defined to have *negative* signed area.

For example, the signed area of the shaded region in the following graph is $A_1 - A_2 + A_3 - A_4$.



Signs of trigonometric functions [MM1&2]

1st quadrant	all are positive
2nd quadrant	sin is positive
3rd quadrant	tan is positive
4th quadrant	cos is positive



Simple interest [MM1&2] is always calculated on the amount originally invested (the *principal*). If $\$P$ is invested at $R\%$ p.a., then the value of the investment after n years, $\$A_n$, is given by

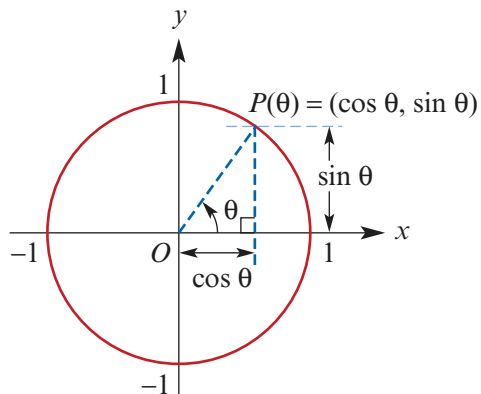
$$A_n = P + nP \frac{R}{100}$$

Simulation [p. 632] using technology (calculators or computers) to repeat a random process many times; e.g. random sampling

Simultaneous equations [p. 78] equations of two or more lines or curves in the Cartesian plane,

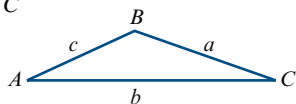
the solutions of which are the points of intersection of the lines or curves

Sine function [p. 528] $\sin \theta$ is defined as the y -coordinate of the point P on the unit circle where OP forms an angle of θ radians with the positive direction of the x -axis.



Sine rule [p. 520] For triangle ABC :

$$\frac{a}{\sin A} = \frac{b}{\sin B} = \frac{c}{\sin C}$$



The sine rule is used to determine unknown quantities in a triangle given one side and two angles, or given two sides and a non-included angle.

Speed [p. 247] the magnitude of velocity

Speed, average [p. 247]

$$\text{average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance travelled}}{\text{total time taken}}$$

Standard deviation of a random variable, σ [pp. 390, 408] a measure of the spread or variability, given by $\text{sd}(X) = \sqrt{\text{Var}(X)}$

Standard form [MM1&2] *see* scientific notation

Standard normal distribution [p. 585] a special case of the normal distribution where $\mu = 0$ and $\sigma = 1$

Stationary point [p. 268] A point $(a, f(a))$ on a curve $y = f(x)$ is a stationary point if $f'(a) = 0$.

Straight line, equation given two points

[MM1&2] $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$, where $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$

Straight line, gradient-intercept form

[MM1&2] $y = mx + c$, where m is the gradient and c is the y -axis intercept

Straight lines, parallel [MM1&2]

Two non-vertical straight lines are parallel to each other if and only if they have the same gradient.

Straight lines, perpendicular [MM1&2]

Two straight lines are perpendicular to each other if and only if the product of their gradients is -1 (or if one is horizontal and the other vertical).

Strictly decreasing [pp. 27, 112] A function f is strictly decreasing on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) < f(x_1)$.

Strictly increasing [pp. 27, 112] A function f is strictly increasing on an interval if $x_2 > x_1$ implies $f(x_2) > f(x_1)$.

Subset [p. 2] A set B is called a subset of set A if every element of B is also an element of A . We write $B \subseteq A$.

Sum of functions [p. 22] $(f + g)(x) = f(x) + g(x)$ and $\text{dom}(f + g) = \text{dom } f \cap \text{dom } g$

Sum of two cubes [p. 86]

$$x^3 + y^3 = (x + y)(x^2 - xy + y^2)$$

Sum to infinity [MM1&2] The sum to infinity of an infinite geometric series exists provided $-1 < r < 1$ and is given by

$$S_{\infty} = \frac{a}{1 - r}$$

where $a = t_1$ and r is the common ratio.

T

Tangent function [MM1&2] The tangent function is given by

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

Tangent line, equation [p. 235] Let (x_1, y_1) be a point on the curve $y = f(x)$. Then, if f is differentiable at $x = x_1$, the equation of the tangent at (x_1, y_1) is given by $y - y_1 = f'(x_1)(x - x_1)$.

Total change [p. 486] Given the rule for $f'(x)$, the total change in the value of $f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$ can be found using

$$f(b) - f(a) = \int_a^b f'(x) dx$$

Translation [MM1&2] A translation of h units in the positive direction of the x -axis and k units in the positive direction of the y -axis is described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$, where $h, k > 0$. The curve with equation $y = f(x)$ is mapped to the curve with equation $y - k = f(x - h)$.

Trapezoidal rule [p. 452] gives an estimate for the area under the graph of $y = f(x)$ between $x = a$ and $x = b$:

$$T_n = \frac{b-a}{2n} [f(x_0) + 2f(x_1) + \cdots + 2f(x_{n-1}) + f(x_n)]$$

Tree diagram [p. 364] a diagram representing the outcomes of a multi-stage experiment

Trigonometric functions [MM1&2] the sine, cosine and tangent functions

Trigonometric functions, exact values [MM1&2]

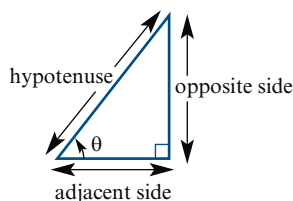
θ^c	θ°	$\sin \theta$	$\cos \theta$	$\tan \theta$
0	0°	0	1	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	30°	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	45°	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	1
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	60°	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	90°	1	0	undefined

Trigonometric ratios [p. 515]

$$\sin \theta = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\cos \theta = \frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}}$$



U

Uniform distribution [pp. 378]

A discrete random variable X with n values $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$ has a uniform distribution if each value of X is equally likely, and therefore

$$P(X = x) = \frac{1}{n}, \text{ for } x = x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$$

Union of sets [pp. 2, 353] The union of two sets A and B , written $A \cup B$, is the set of all elements which are in A or B or both.

V

Variance of a random variable, σ^2 [pp. 386, 572] a measure of the spread or variability, defined by $\text{Var}(X) = E[(X - \mu)^2]$. An alternative (computational) formula is $\text{Var}(X) = E(X^2) - [E(X)]^2$

Velocity [p. 247] the rate of change of a particle's position with respect to time

Velocity, average [p. 246]

$$\text{average velocity} = \frac{\text{change in position}}{\text{change in time}}$$

Velocity, instantaneous [p. 247] $v = \frac{dx}{dt}$

Vertical-line test [p. 9] *see* function

Z

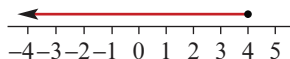
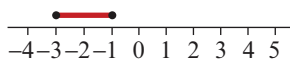
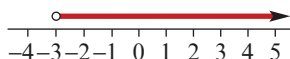
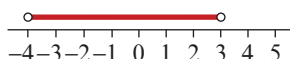
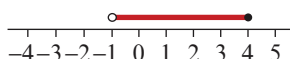
$\mathbb{Z}$ [p. 3] the set of all integers

Zero polynomial [p. 59] The number 0 is called the zero polynomial.

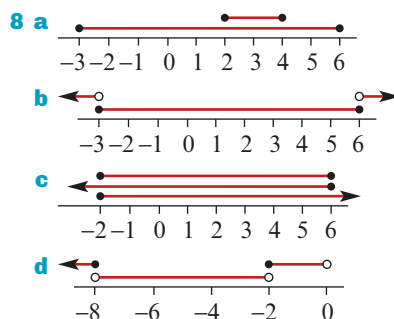
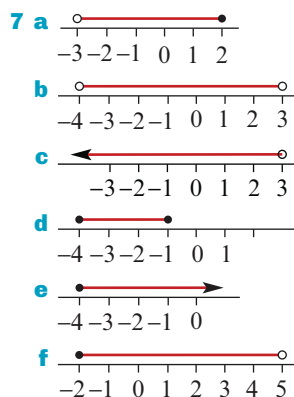
Answers

Chapter 1

Exercise 1A

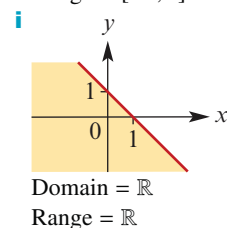
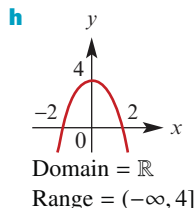
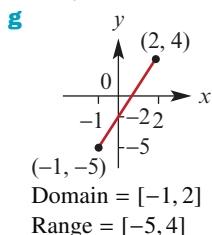
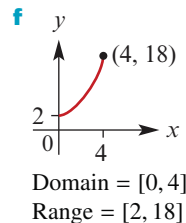
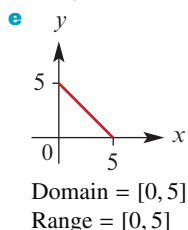
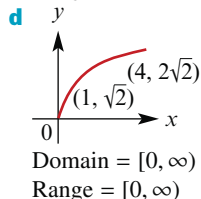
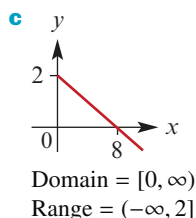
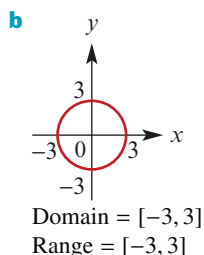
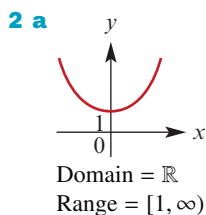
- 1 a** {8, 11} **b** {8, 11}
c {1, 3, 8, 11, 18, 22, 23, 24, 25, 30}
d {3, 8, 11, 18, 22, 23, 24, 25, 30, 32}
e {1, 3, 8, 11, 18, 22, 23, 24, 25, 30, 32}
f {1, 8, 11, 25, 30}
- 2 a** 
b 
c 
d 
e 
f 
- 3 a** {7, 9} **b** {7, 9} **c** {2, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 15, 19, 23} **d** {2, 3, 5, 11}
e {2} **f** {2, 7, 9} **g** {2, 3, 5, 7}
h {7} **i** {7, 9, 15, 19, 23} **j** (3, ∞)
- 4 a** {a, e} **b** {a, b, c, d, e, i, o, u}
c {b, c, d} **d** {i, o, u}
- 5 a** [-3, 1] **b** (-4, 5] **c** (-√2, 0)
d (-1/√2, √3) **e** (-∞, -3) **f** (0, ∞)
g (-∞, 0) **h** [-2, ∞)

- 6 a** (-2, 3)
b [-4, 1)
c [-1, 5]
d (-3, 2]



Exercise 1B

- 1 a** Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $[-2, \infty)$
b Domain = $(-\infty, 2]$ Range = $\mathbb{R}$
c Domain = $(-2, 3)$ Range = $[0, 9)$
d Domain = $(-3, 1)$ Range = $(-6, 2)$
e Domain = $[-4, 0]$ Range = $[0, 4]$
f Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $(-\infty, 2)$



- 3 a** Not a function; Domain = $\{-1, 1, 2, 3\}$; Range = $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$
b A function; Domain = $\{-2, -1, 0, 1, 2\}$; Range = $\{-4, -1, 0, 3, 5\}$
c Not a function; Domain = $\{-2, -1, 2, 4\}$; Range = $\{-2, 1, 2, 4, 6\}$
d A function; Domain = $\{-1, 0, 1, 2, 3\}$; Range = $\{4\}$
- 4** Functions: a, c
- 5 a** A function; Domain = $\mathbb{R}$; Range = $\{4\}$
b Not a function; Domain = $\{2\}$; Range = $\mathbb{Z}$
c A function; Domain = $\mathbb{R}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}$
d Not a function; Domain = $\mathbb{R}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}$
e Not a function; Domain = $[-4, 4]$; Range = $[-4, 4]$

6 $y = \sqrt{x+2}$, $x \geq -2$; Range = $[0, \infty)$
 $y = -\sqrt{x+2}$, $x \geq -2$; Range = $(-\infty, 0]$

7 a $f(-1) = -2$, $f(2) = 16$, $f(-3) = 6$,
 $f(2a) = 8a^2 + 8a$

b $g(-1) = -10$, $g(2) = 14$, $g(3) = 54$,
 $g(a-1) = 2a^3 - 6a^2 + 8a - 10$

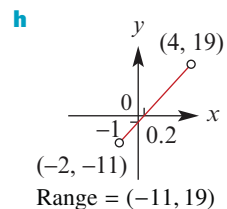
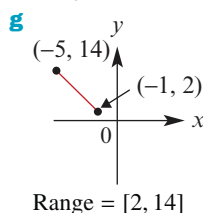
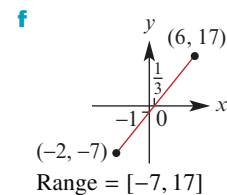
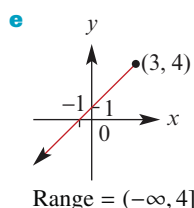
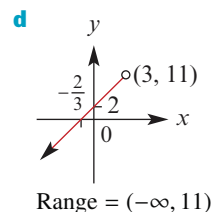
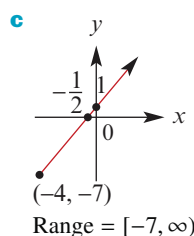
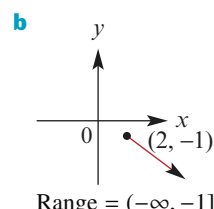
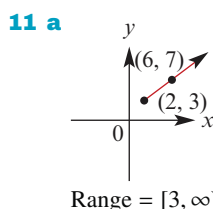
8 a $g(-2) = 10$, $g(4) = 46$

b i $12x^2 - 2$ **ii** $3x^2 - 12x + 10$

iii $3x^2 + 12x + 10$ **iv** $3x^4 - 2$

9 a 3 **b** 7 **c** $x = -\frac{3}{2}$ **d** $x > 3$

10 a $x = -3$ **b** $x > -3$ **c** $x = \frac{2}{3}$



12 a $f(2) = -3$, $f(-3) = 37$, $f(-2) = 21$

b $g(-2) = 7$, $g(1) = 1$, $g(-3) = 9$

c i $f(a) = 2a^2 - 6a + 1$

ii $f(a+2) = 2a^2 + 2a - 3$

iii $g(-a) = 3 + 2a$

iv $g(2a) = 3 - 4a$

v $f(5-a) = 21 - 14a + 2a^2$

vi $f(2a) = 8a^2 - 12a + 1$

vii $g(a) + f(a) = 2a^2 - 8a + 4$

viii $g(a) - f(a) = 2 + 4a - 2a^2$

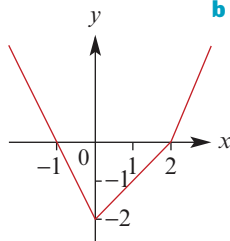
13 a $x = \frac{2}{3}$ or $x = -1$ **b** $x = \pm \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$
c $x = 0$ or $x = -\frac{1}{3}$ **d** $x < -1$ or $x > \frac{2}{3}$
e $x < -\sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ or $x > \sqrt{\frac{2}{3}}$ **f** $-\frac{1}{3} \leq x \leq 0$

- 14 a** $f(-2) = 2$ **b** $f(2) = 6$
c $f(-a) = a^2 - a$ **d** $f(a) + f(-a) = 2a^2$
e $f(a) - f(-a) = 2a$ **f** $f(a^2) = a^4 + a^2$
- 15 a** $x = 2$ **b** $x > 2$ **c** $x = \frac{a+2}{3}$
d $x = -\frac{8}{3}$ **e** $x = 1$ **f** $x = \frac{13}{18}$
- 16 a** $\frac{4}{3}$ **b** 6 **c** $-\frac{7}{3}$ **d** 9 **e** $\frac{1}{3}$ **f** $-\frac{2}{9}$
- 17 a** $\frac{6}{5}$ **b** $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** $\pm\frac{1}{3}$ **d** 1 **e** -1, 2

Exercise 1C

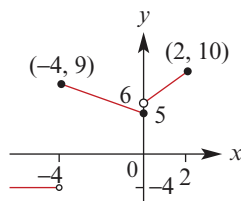
- 1 a** Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $\mathbb{R}$
b Domain = $[0, \infty)$ Range = $[0, \infty)$
c Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $[-2, \infty)$
d Domain = $[-4, 4]$ Range = $[0, 4]$
e Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$
f Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $(-\infty, 4]$
g Domain = $[3, \infty)$ Range = $(0, \infty)$
- 2 a** Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $\mathbb{R}$
b Domain = $\mathbb{R}$ Range = $[-2, \infty)$
c Domain = $[-3, 3]$ Range = $[0, 3]$
d Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$ Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$
- 3 a** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$ **b** $(-\infty, -\sqrt{3}] \cup [\sqrt{3}, \infty)$
c $\mathbb{R}$ **d** $[4, 11]$ **e** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-1\}$
f $(-\infty, -1] \cup [2, \infty)$ **g** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-1, 2\}$
h $(-\infty, -2) \cup [1, \infty)$ **i** $\left[0, \frac{1}{3}\right]$
j $[-5, 5]$ **k** $[3, 12]$

- 4 a** **b** Range = $[-2, \infty)$



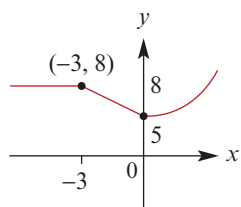
- 5 a** Domain = $(-3, 0] \cup [1, 3)$; Range = $[-2, 3]$
b Domain = $[-5, 4]$; Range = $[-4, 0] \cup [2, 5]$

6 a



- b** Domain = $(-\infty, 2]$; Range = $[5, 10] \cup \{-4\}$

7 a



- b** Range = $[5, \infty)$

- 8 a** $f(-4) = -8$
b $f(0) = 0$
c $f(4) = \frac{1}{4}$
d $f(a+3) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{a+3}, & a > 0 \\ 2(a+3), & a \leq 0 \end{cases}$
e $f(2a) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{2a}, & a > \frac{3}{2} \\ 4a, & a \leq \frac{3}{2} \end{cases}$
f $f(a-3) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{a-3}, & a > 6 \\ 2(a-3), & a \leq 6 \end{cases}$

- 9** $y = \begin{cases} -x-4, & x < -2 \\ \frac{1}{2}x-1, & -2 \leq x \leq 3 \\ -\frac{1}{2}x+2, & x > 3 \end{cases}$

- 10 a** Even **b** Odd **c** Neither
d Even **e** Odd **f** Neither
- 11 a** Even **b** Even **c** Odd
d Odd **e** Neither **f** Even
g Neither **h** Neither **i** Even

Exercise 1D

- 1 a** $(f+g)(x) = 4x+2$
 $(fg)(x) = 3x^2+6x$
 $\text{dom} = \mathbb{R}$
b $(f+g)(x) = 1$
 $(fg)(x) = x^2-x^4$
 $\text{dom} = (0, 2]$
c $(f+g)(x) = \frac{x+1}{\sqrt{x}}$
 $(fg)(x) = 1$
 $\text{dom} = [1, \infty)$
d $(f+g)(x) = x^2 + \sqrt{4-x}$
 $(fg)(x) = x^2\sqrt{4-x}$
 $\text{dom} = [0, 4]$
- 2 a i** $\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{3x}{x+2}$, $\text{dom} = \mathbb{R} \setminus \{-2\}$
ii $\frac{g}{f}(x) = \frac{x+2}{3x}$, $\text{dom} = \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$
b i $\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{1-x^2}{x^2}$, $\text{dom} = (0, 2]$
ii $\frac{g}{f}(x) = \frac{x^2}{1-x^2}$, $\text{dom} = (0, 1) \cup (1, 2]$
c i $\frac{f}{g}(x) = x$, $\text{dom} = [1, \infty)$
ii $\frac{g}{f}(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, $\text{dom} = [1, \infty)$
d i $\frac{f}{g}(x) = \frac{x^2}{\sqrt{4-x}}$, $\text{dom} = [0, 4)$
ii $\frac{g}{f}(x) = \frac{\sqrt{4-x}}{x^2}$, $\text{dom} = (0, 4]$

3 a i Even ii Odd iii Even iv Odd

b $(f+h)(x) = x^2 + 1 + \frac{1}{x^2}$, even;
 $(gk)(x) = 1$, even; $(fh)(x) = 1 + \frac{1}{x^2}$, even;
 $(f+g)(x) = x^2 + x + 1$, neither;
 $(g+k)(x) = x + \frac{1}{x}$, odd;
 $(fg)(x) = x^3 + x$, odd

4 a $f(g(x)) = 4x - 1$, $g(f(x)) = 4x - 2$

b $f(g(x)) = 8x + 5$, $g(f(x)) = 8x + 3$

c $f(g(x)) = 4x - 7$, $g(f(x)) = 4x - 5$

d $f(g(x)) = 2x^2 - 1$, $g(f(x)) = (2x - 1)^2$

e $f(g(x)) = 2(x - 5)^2 + 1$, $g(f(x)) = 2x^2 - 4$

f $f(g(x)) = 2x^2 + 1$, $g(f(x)) = (2x + 1)^2$

5 a $f(h(x)) = 6x + 3$ b $h(f(x)) = 6x - 1$

c 15 d 11 e 21 f -7 g 3

6 a $9x^2 + 12x + 3$ b $3x^2 + 6x + 1$

c 120 d 46 e 3 f 1

7 a $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^2 - 1$, $g(x) = x^4$

b $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^4 + 3$, $g(x) = \sqrt{x}$

c $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$, $g(x) = x^n$

d $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = 2x + 3$, $g(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

e $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^2 - 2x$,

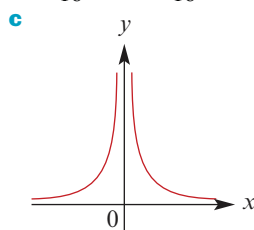
$g(x) = x^3 - 2x$

f $h(x) = f(f(x))$, $f(x) = 2x^2 + 1$

Exercise 1E

1 a Maximal domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$

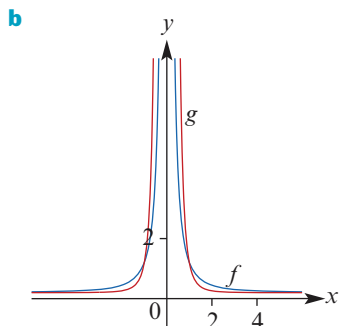
b i $\frac{1}{16}$ ii $\frac{1}{16}$ iii 16 iv 16



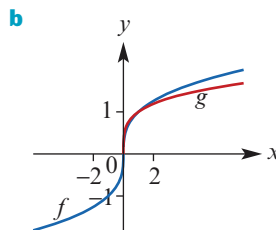
2 a Odd b Even c Odd

d Odd e Even f Odd

3 a $x = 1$ or $x = -1$

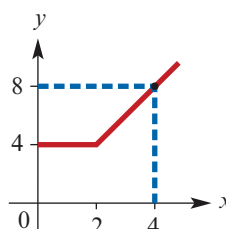


4 a $x = 1$ or $x = 0$



Exercise 1F

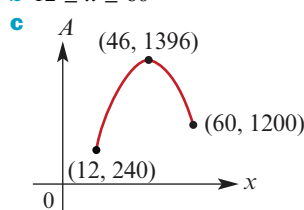
1 $f(x) = \begin{cases} 4 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 2 \\ 2x & \text{if } x > 2 \end{cases}$



2 $V(x) = 4x(10 - x)(18 - x)$, domain = $[0, 10]$

3 a $A(x) = -x^2 + 92x - 720$

b $12 \leq x \leq 60$



d Maximum area 1396 m^2 occurs when $x = 46$ and $y = 34$

4 a i $S = 2x^2 + 6xh$ ii $S = 2x^2 + \frac{3V}{x}$

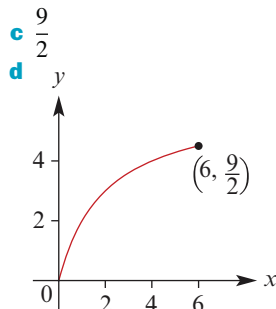
b Maximal domain = $(0, \infty)$

c Maximum value of $S = 1508 \text{ m}^2$

5 Area = $x\sqrt{4a^2 - x^2}$, domain = $[0, 2a]$

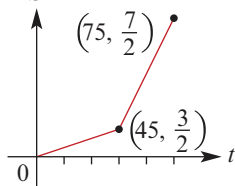
6 a $A = \frac{6a}{a+2}$

b Domain = $[0, 6]$; Range = $\left[0, \frac{9}{2}\right]$



7 a $a = \frac{1}{30}$, $b = \frac{1}{15}$, $c = 45$, $d = -\frac{3}{2}$, $e = 75$

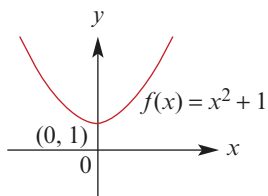
b S **c** Range = $\left[0, \frac{7}{2}\right]$



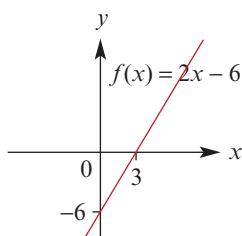
Chapter 1 review

Short-response questions

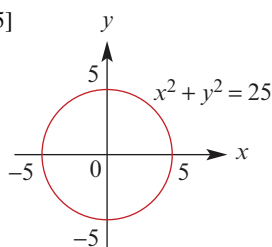
1 a Domain = $\mathbb{R}$
Range = $[1, \infty)$



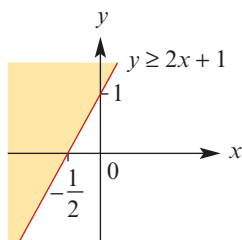
b Domain = $\mathbb{R}$
Range = $\mathbb{R}$



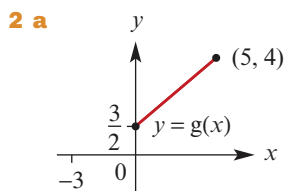
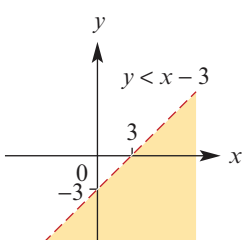
c Domain = $[-5, 5]$
Range = $[-5, 5]$



d Domain = $\mathbb{R}$
Range = $\mathbb{R}$

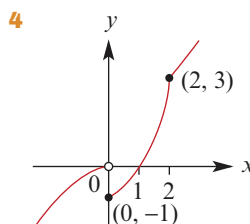


e Domain = $\mathbb{R}$
Range = $\mathbb{R}$



b $\text{ran } g = \left[\frac{3}{2}, 4\right]$ **c** $x = 5$

3 a $x = \frac{1}{5}$ **b** $x \leq \frac{1}{5}$ **c** $x = -\frac{1}{10}$



5 a $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$ **b** $\mathbb{R} \setminus [-\sqrt{5}, \sqrt{5}]$ **c** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1, -2\}$
d $[-5, 5]$ **e** $[5, 15]$ **f** $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$

6 $(f+g)(x) = x^2 + 5x + 1$,
 $(fg)(x) = (x-3)(x+2)^2$

7 $(f+g)(x) = x^2 + 1$, $x \in [1, 5]$
 $(fg)(x) = 2x(x-1)^2$, $x \in [1, 5]$

8 a $(f+g)(x) = -x^2 + 2x + 3$
b $(fg)(x) = -x^2(2x+3)$
c $x = -1$ or $x = 3$

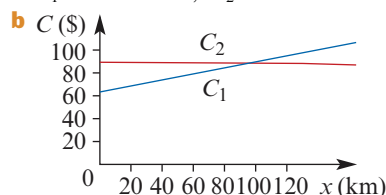
9 a $f(g(x)) = -2x^3 + 3$ **b** $g(f(x)) = -(2x+3)^3$
c $g(g(x)) = x^9$ **d** $f(f(x)) = 4x + 9$

10 a $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^3 - 1$, $g(x) = x^{\frac{1}{3}}$

b $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^2 + 1$, $g(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

c $h(x) = g(f(x))$, $f(x) = x^2 - 1$, $g(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

11 a $C_1 = 64 + 0.25x$, $C_2 = 89$

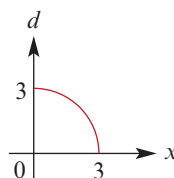


c $x > 100$ km

12 a $S = 6x^2$ **b** $S = 6V^{\frac{2}{3}}$

13 a $A = \frac{\sqrt{3}s^2}{4}$ **b** $A = \frac{\sqrt{3}h^2}{3}$

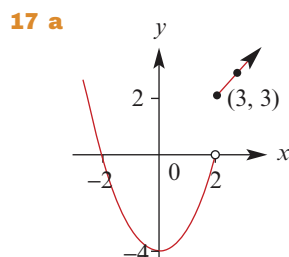
14 a $d(x) = \sqrt{9-x^2}$ **b** $\text{dom} = [0, 3]$
 $\text{ran} = [0, 3]$



$$15 \ S(x) = \frac{160x}{x+80}$$

$$16 \ a \ V_1(h) = \pi h \left(36 - \frac{h^2}{4} \right), \ h \in (0, 12)$$

$$b \ V_2(r) = 2\pi r^2 \sqrt{36 - r^2}, \ r \in (0, 6)$$



$$b \ f(-1) = -3, \ f(3) = 3$$

$$c \ f(h(x)) = \begin{cases} 4x^2 - 4 & \text{if } x < 1 \\ 2x & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases}$$

$$h(f(x)) = \begin{cases} 2x^2 - 8 & \text{if } x < 2 \\ 2x & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

$$18 \ A(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{3t^2}{2}, & 0 < t \leq 1 \\ 3t - \frac{3}{2}, & t > 1 \end{cases}$$

Domain = $(0, \infty)$; Range = $(0, \infty)$

$$19 \ a \ i \ YB = r \quad ii \ ZB = r$$

$$iii \ AZ = x - r \quad iv \ CY = 3 - r$$

$$b \ r = \frac{x + 3 - \sqrt{x^2 + 9}}{2}$$

$$c \ i \ r = 1 \quad ii \ x = 1.25$$

$$20 \ b \ f(x) = \frac{q}{x} \quad c \ x = 3 \pm \sqrt{17}$$

$$21 \ a \ i \ f(2) = 3, \ f(f(2)) = 2, \ f(f(f(2))) = 3$$

$$ii \ f(f(x)) = x$$

$$b \ f(f(x)) = \frac{-x-3}{x-1}, \ f(f(f(x))) = x$$

Multiple-choice questions

$$1 \ A \quad 2 \ B \quad 3 \ D \quad 4 \ B \quad 5 \ C$$

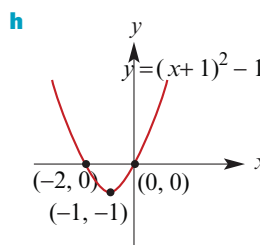
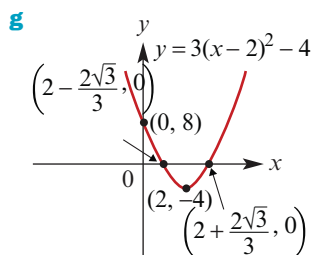
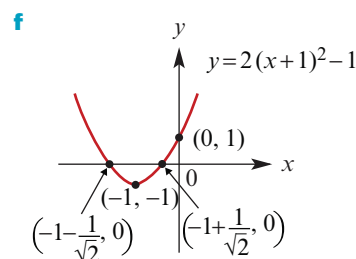
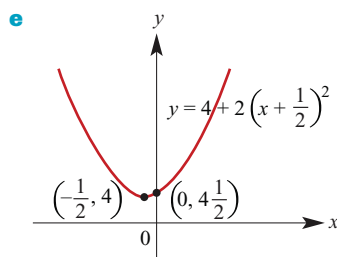
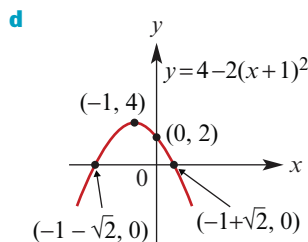
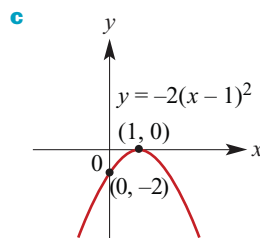
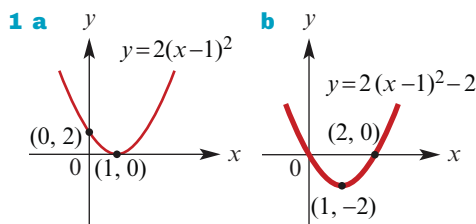
$$6 \ D \quad 7 \ C \quad 8 \ B \quad 9 \ C \quad 10 \ B$$

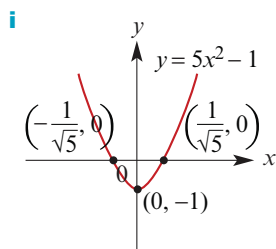
$$11 \ B \quad 12 \ C \quad 13 \ C \quad 14 \ D \quad 15 \ B$$

$$16 \ D \quad 17 \ B \quad 18 \ A \quad 19 \ A$$

Chapter 2

Exercise 2A





2 a $f(x) = (x + \frac{3}{2})^2 - 4\frac{1}{4}$
Minimum = $-4\frac{1}{4}$; Range: $f(x) \geq -4\frac{1}{4}$

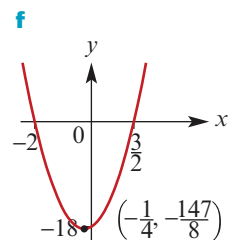
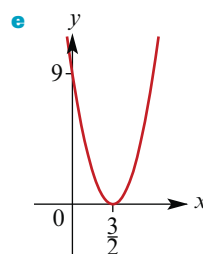
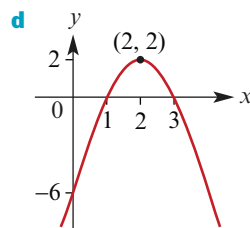
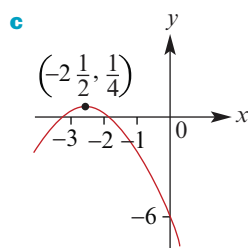
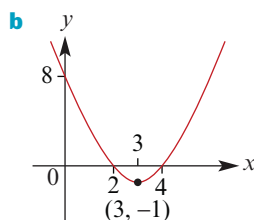
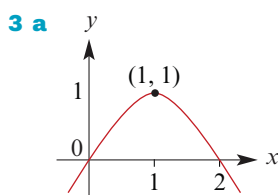
b $f(x) = (x - 3)^2 - 1$
Minimum = -1 ; Range: $f(x) \geq -1$

c $f(x) = 2(x + 2)^2 - 14$
Minimum = -14 ; Range: $f(x) \geq -14$

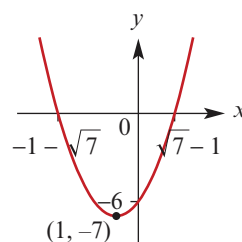
d $f(x) = 2(x - \frac{5}{4})^2 - \frac{25}{8}$
Minimum = $-\frac{25}{8}$; Range: $f(x) \geq -\frac{25}{8}$

e $f(x) = -3(x + \frac{1}{3})^2 + \frac{22}{3}$
Maximum = $\frac{22}{3}$; Range: $f(x) \leq \frac{22}{3}$

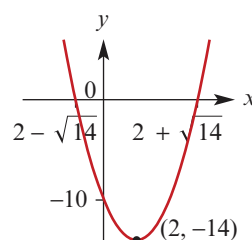
f $f(x) = -2(x - \frac{9}{4})^2 + \frac{169}{8}$
Maximum = $\frac{169}{8}$; Range: $f(x) \leq \frac{169}{8}$



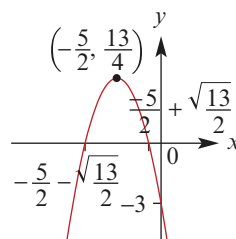
4 a $y = (x + 1)^2 - 7$



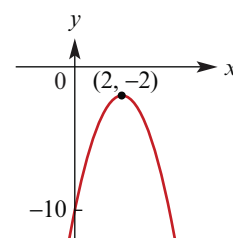
b $y = (x - 2)^2 - 14$



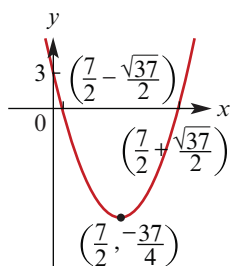
c $y = \frac{13}{4} - (x + \frac{5}{2})^2$



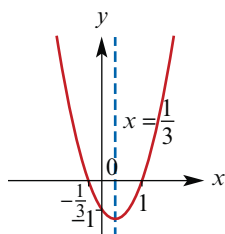
d $y = -2(x - 2)^2 - 2$



$$e \ y = \left(x - \frac{7}{2}\right)^2 - \frac{37}{4}$$



5



6 a C b B c D d A

7 a Crosses the x-axis

b Does not cross the x-axis

c Just touches the x-axis

d Crosses the x-axis

e Does not cross the x-axis

f Does not cross the x-axis

 8 a $m > 3$ or $m < 0$ b $m = 3$

 9 $m = 2$ or $m = -\frac{2}{9}$

 10 $a < -6$

 11 Show that $\Delta > 0$ for all a

 12 Show that $\Delta \geq 0$ for all k

 13 a $k < -5$ or $k > 0$ b $k = -5$

 14 a $k > -6$ b $k = -6$ or $k = 3$

 15 Show that $\Delta \geq 0$ for all a, b

Exercise 2B

1 $y = -2(x+3)(x+2)$ 2 $y = (x+3)(2x+3)$

3 $y = \frac{3}{2}(x+2)^2 + 4$ 4 $y = -2(x+2)^2 - 3$

5 $y = -5x^2 + 6x + 18$ 6 $y = -2x^2 - 8x + 10$

7 a $y = 4 - \frac{4}{25}x^2$ b $y = -x^2$

c $y = x^2 + 2x$ d $y = 2x - x^2$

e $y = x^2 - 5x + 4$ f $y = x^2 - 4x - 5$

g $y = x^2 - 2x - 1$ h $y = x^2 - 4x + 6$

8 $y = -\frac{1}{8}x^2 + x + 1$, $y = \frac{1}{8}x^2 + x - 5$

9 $A = 1$, $b = 2$, $B = 4$

Exercise 2C

1 a 3 b -5 c 7 d -21 e $\frac{17}{8}$ f $-\frac{9}{8}$

2 a 6 b 6 c 18 d 12
 e $a^3 + 3a^2 - 4a + 6$ f $8a^3 + 12a^2 - 8a + 6$

3 a $a = -5$ b $a = \frac{40}{9}$ c $c = 8$

d $a = -23$, $b = -4$ e $a = -17$, $b = 42$

4 a $2x^3 - x^2 + 2x + 2$ b $2x^3 + 5x$

c $2x^3 - x^2 + 4x - 2$ d $6x^3 - 3x^2 + 9x$

e $-2x^4 + 5x^3 - 5x^2 + 6x$ f $4x - x^3$

g $2x^3 + 4x + 2$ h $2x^5 + 3x^4 + x^3 + 6x^2$

5 a $x^3 - 5x^2 + 10x - 8$ b $x^3 - 7x^2 + 13x - 15$

c $2x^3 - x^2 - 7x - 4$

d $x^2 + (b+2)x^2 + (2b+c)x + 2c$

e $2x^3 - 9x^2 - 2x + 3$

6 a $x^3 + (b+1)x^2 + (c+b)x + c$

b $b = -2$ and $c = -4$

c $(x+1)(x+\sqrt{5}-1)(x-\sqrt{5}-1)$

7 a $a = 2$ and $b = 5$

b $a = -2$, $b = -2$ and $c = -3$

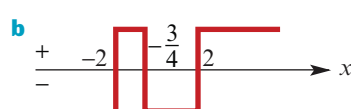
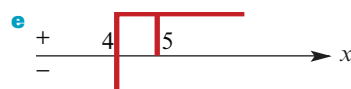
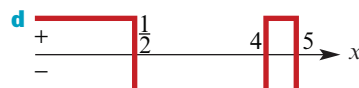
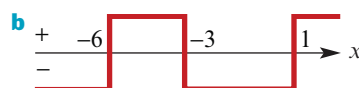
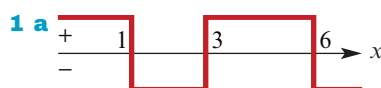
8 $A = 1$, $B = 3$

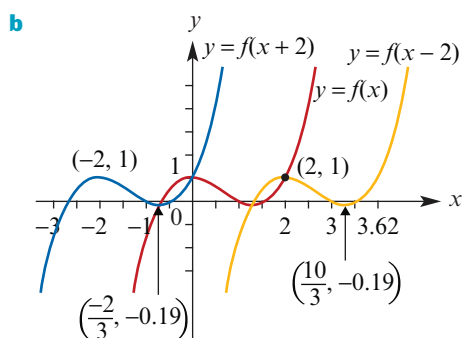
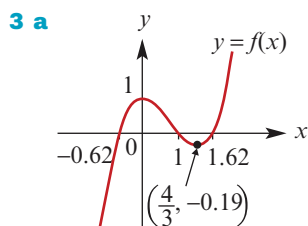
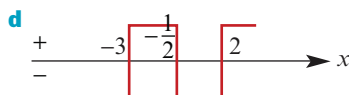
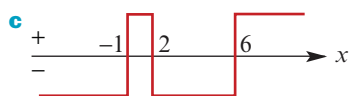
9 a $A = 1$, $B = -2$, $C = 6$

b $A = 4$, $B = -\frac{3}{2}$, $C = 5$

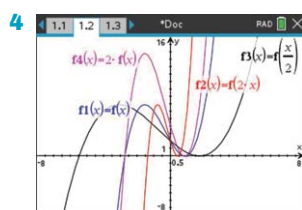
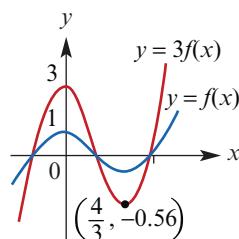
c $A = 1$, $B = -3$, $C = 5$

Exercise 2D

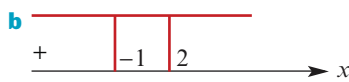




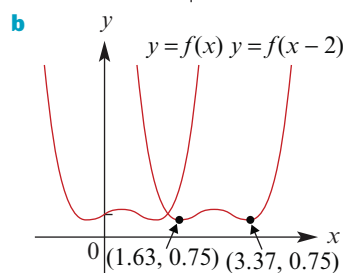
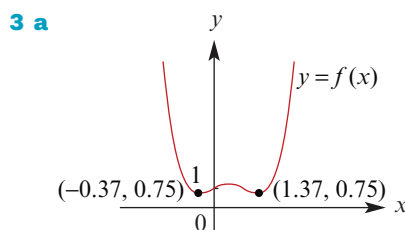
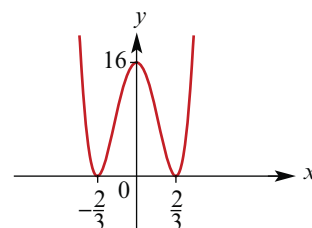
For clarity the graph of $y = 3f(x)$ is shown on separate axes:



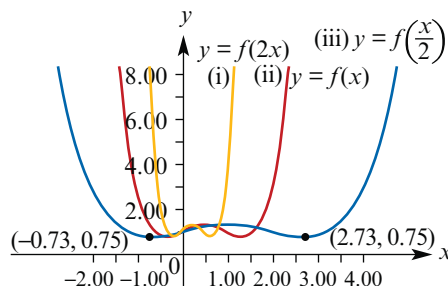
Exercise 2E



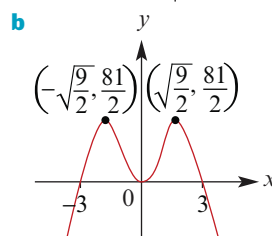
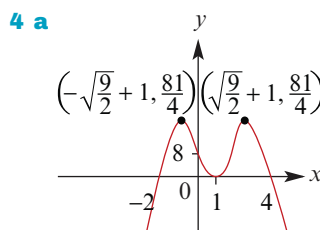
2 $(0, 16)$
 $(\frac{2}{3}, 0)$
 $(-\frac{2}{3}, 0)$

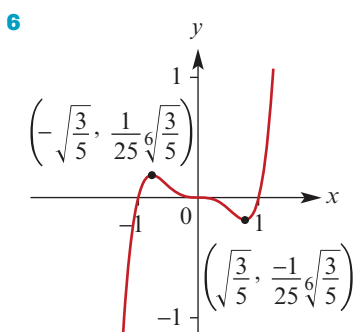
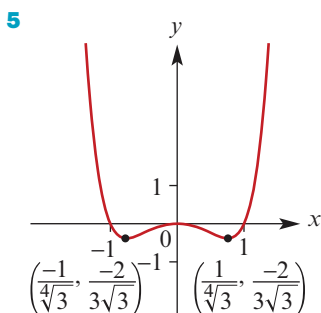
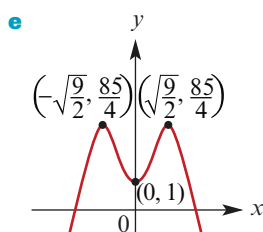
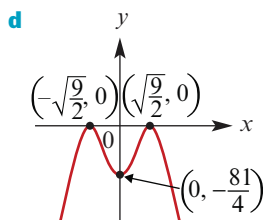
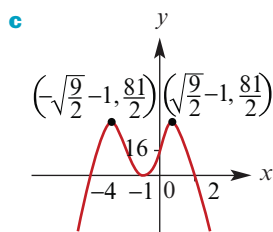


For clarity the graphs of the dilations are shown on separate axes:



Turning points for $y = f(2x)$ are at $(-0.18, 0.75)$ and $(0.68, 0.75)$





Exercise 2F

- 1 a** $a = -2$ **b** $a = 3$ **c** $a = \frac{10}{3}$, $b = -\frac{70}{3}$
2 $a = -3$, $b = 2$, $c = -4$, $d = 5$
3 $y = \frac{11}{60}(x+5)(x+2)(x-6)$
4 $y = \frac{5}{9}(x+1)(x-3)^2$

- 5 a** $y = x^3 + x + 1$ **b** $y = x^3 - x + 1$
c $y = 2x^3 - x^2 + x - 2$
6 a $y = (2x+1)(x-1)(x-2)$
b $y = x^2(x+1)$ **c** $y = x^3 + 2x^2 - x - 2$
d $y = (x+2)(x-3)^2$
7 a $y = -2x^3 - 25x^2 + 48x + 135$
b $y = 2x^3 - 30x^2 + 40x + 13$
8 a $y = -2x^4 + 22x^3 - 10x^2 - 37x + 40$
b $y = x^4 - x^3 + x^2 + 2x + 8$
c $y = \frac{31}{36}x^4 + \frac{5}{4}x^3 - \frac{157}{36}x^2 - \frac{5}{4}x + \frac{11}{2}$

Exercise 2G

- 1 a** $x = \frac{6}{q-p}$ **b** $x = \frac{m+n}{m-n}$ **c** $x = \frac{a^2}{a-1}$
d $x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1-4k^2}}{2k}$, for $k \in [-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}] \setminus \{0\}$
e $x = 0$, $x = 3a$ or $x = 4a$
f $x = 0$ or $x = a^{\frac{1}{3}}$
g $x = \frac{k \pm \sqrt{k^2 - 4k}}{2}$, for $k \geq 4$ or $k \leq 0$
h $x = 0$ or $x = \pm\sqrt{a}$ if $a \geq 0$ **i** $x = \pm a$
j $x = a$ or $x = b$
k $x = a$ or $x = a^{\frac{1}{3}}$ or $x = \pm\sqrt{a}$ if $a \geq 0$
2 a $x = \sqrt[3]{\frac{2c-b}{a}}$ **b** $x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{c+b}{a}}$
c $x = \pm\sqrt{\frac{a-c}{b}}$ **d** $x = a^3$
e $x = (a-c)^n$ **f** $x = 2b + \sqrt[3]{\frac{c}{a}}$
g $x = \left(\frac{b}{a}\right)^3$ **h** $x = (c+d)^{\frac{1}{3}}$
3 a $(0, 0)$, $(1, 1)$ **b** $(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$, $(0, 0)$
c $\left(\frac{3+\sqrt{13}}{2}, \sqrt{13}+4\right)$, $\left(\frac{3-\sqrt{13}}{2}, 4-\sqrt{13}\right)$
4 a $(13, 3)$, $(3, 13)$ **b** $(10, 5)$, $(5, 10)$
c $(11, 8)$, $(-8, -11)$ **d** $(9, 4)$, $(4, 9)$
e $(9, 5)$, $(-5, -9)$
5 a $(17, 11)$, $(11, 17)$ **b** $(37, 14)$, $(14, 37)$
c $(14, 9)$, $(-9, -14)$
6 $(2, 4)$, $(0, 0)$
7 $\left(\frac{\sqrt{5}+5}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{5}+5}{2}\right)$, $\left(\frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{2}, \frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{2}\right)$
8 $\left(\frac{-130-80\sqrt{2}}{41}, \frac{60-64\sqrt{2}}{41}\right)$,
 $\left(\frac{80\sqrt{2}-130}{41}, \frac{64\sqrt{2}+60}{41}\right)$
9 $\left(\frac{1+\sqrt{21}}{2}, \frac{-1-\sqrt{21}}{2}\right)$, $\left(\frac{1-\sqrt{21}}{2}, \frac{-1+\sqrt{21}}{2}\right)$
10 $\left(\frac{4}{9}, 2\right)$
11 $(3, 2)$, $(0, -1)$

12 a $(3, 2), \left(\frac{-8}{5}, \frac{-15}{4}\right)$ **b** $\left(\frac{27}{2}, \frac{10}{3}\right), (5, 9)$

c $(6, 4), \left(\frac{-12}{5}, -10\right)$

13 $c^2 - ac + b = 0$

14 $y = -7x + 14, y = 5x + 2$

15 $m < -7$ or $m > 1$

16 $c = -8$ or $c = 4$

17 a $x = \frac{5 \pm \sqrt{4m + 25}}{2m}$ **b** $m = \frac{-25}{4}, \left(-\frac{2}{5}, \frac{5}{2}\right)$

c $m < \frac{-25}{4}$

18 $y = 3x + 3, y = -x + 3$

Exercise 2H

1 a $x^2 - 5x + 6$ **b** $2x^2 + 7x - 4$

2 a $x^2 - 4x - 3 + \frac{34}{x+3}$

b $2x^2 + 6x + 14 + \frac{54}{x-3}$

3 a $x^2 - \frac{5}{2}x - \frac{15}{4} + \frac{145}{4(2x+3)}$

b $2x^2 + 6x + 7 + \frac{33}{2x-3}$

4 a $2x^2 - x + 12 + \frac{33}{x-3}$

b $5x^4 + 8x^3 - 8x^2 + 6x - 6$

5 a $x^2 - 9x + 27 - \frac{26(x-2)}{x^2-2}$ **b** $x^2 + x + 2$

6 a -16 **b** $a = 4$

7 a 28 **b** 0 **c** $(x+2)(3x+1)(2x-3)$

8 b $k = \frac{11}{2}$

9 a $a = 3, b = 8$ **b** $2x - 1, x - 1$

10 $a = \frac{-92}{9}, b = 9$

11 81

12 b $6x - 4$

13 $x - 3, 2x - 1$

14 b $x^2 - 3, x^2 + x + 2$

15 a $(2a + 3b)(4a^2 - 6ab + 9b^2)$

b $(4 - a)(a^2 + 4a + 16)$

c $(5x + 4y)(25x^2 - 20xy + 16y^2)$

d $2a(a^2 + 3b^2)$

16 a $-4, 2, 3$ **b** $0, 2$ **c** $\frac{1}{2}, 2$ **d** $-2, 2$

e $0, -2, 2$ **f** $0, -3, 3$

g $1, -2, -\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{3}$ **h** $1, -2$ **i** $1, -2, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{3}{2}$

17 a $(-1, 0), (0, 0), (2, 0)$

b $(-2, 0), (0, 6), (1, 0), (3, 0)$

c $(-1, 0), (0, 6), (2, 0), (3, 0)$

d $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, 0\right), (0, 2), (1, 0), (2, 0)$

e $(-2, 0), (-1, 0), (0, -2), (1, 0)$

f $(-1, 0), \left(-\frac{2}{3}, 0\right), (0, -6), (3, 0)$

g $(-4, 0), (0, -16), \left(-\frac{2}{5}, 0\right), (2, 0)$

h $\left(-\frac{1}{2}, 0\right), (0, 1), \left(\frac{1}{3}, 0\right), (1, 0)$

i $(-2, 0), \left(-\frac{3}{2}, 0\right), (0, -30), (5, 0)$

18 $p = 1, q = -6$

19 -33

20 a $(x-9)(x-13)(x+11)$

b $(x+11)(x-9)(x-11)$

c $(x+11)(2x-9)(x-11)$

d $(x+11)(2x-13)(2x-9)$

21 a $(x-1)(x+1)(x-7)(x+6)$

b $(x-3)(x+4)(x^2 + 3x + 9)$

22 a $(x-9)(x-5)(2x^2 + 3x + 9)$

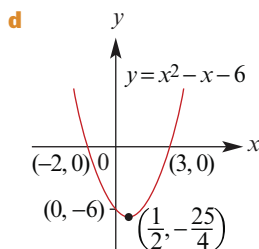
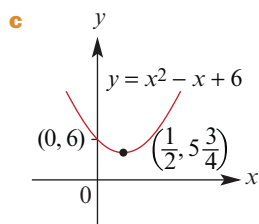
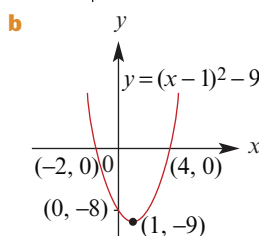
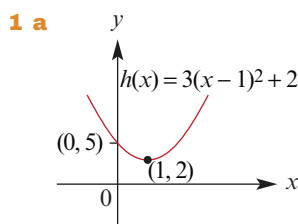
b $(x+5)(x+9)(x^2 - x + 9)$

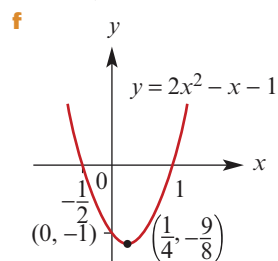
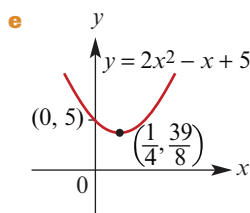
c $(x-3)(x+5)(x^2 + x + 9)$

d $(x-4)(x-3)(x+5)(x+6)$

Chapter 2 review

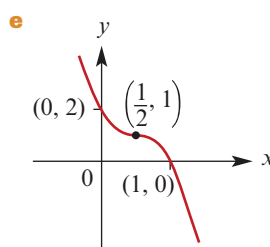
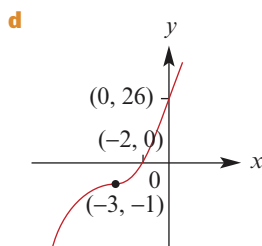
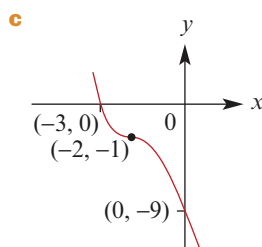
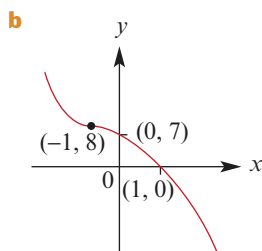
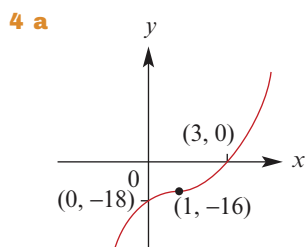
Short-response questions





2 $y = \frac{4}{3}x^2 - \frac{1}{3}$; $a = \frac{4}{3}$, $b = -\frac{1}{3}$

3 $\frac{1}{3}(1 \pm \sqrt{31})$



5 a $(x+2)^2 - 4$

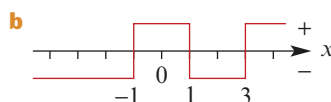
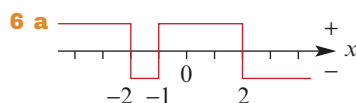
b $3(x+1)^2 - 3$

c $(x-2)^2 + 2$

d $2(x - \frac{3}{2})^2 - \frac{17}{2}$

e $2(x - \frac{7}{4})^2 - \frac{81}{8}$

f $-(x - \frac{3}{2})^2 - \frac{7}{4}$



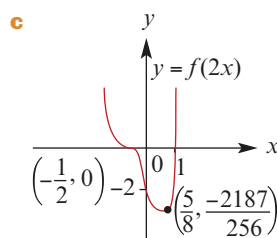
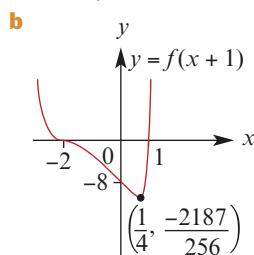
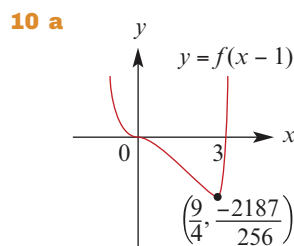
7 a 8

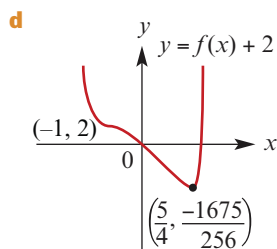
b 0

c 0

8 $y = (x-7)(x+3)(x+2)$

9 $a = -6$





11 $k = \pm 8$

12 $(-4, -5)$, $(3, 9)$

13 $a = 3$, $b = -\frac{5}{6}$, $c = -\frac{13}{12}$

14 $64x^3 + 144x^2 + 108x + 27$

15 $a = 1$, $b = -1$, $c = 4$

16 $-2 < p < 6$

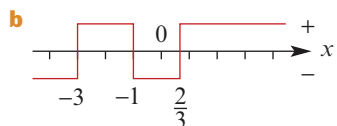
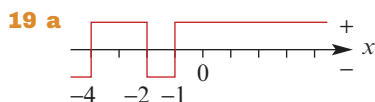
17 $y = -x^3 + 7x^2 - 11x + 6$

18 a $(x-2)(x+1)(x+3)$

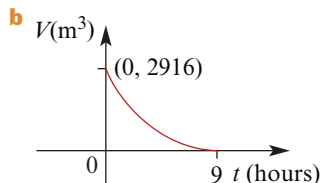
b $(x-1)(x+1)(x-3)$

c $(x-1)(x+1)(x-3)(x+2)$

d $\frac{1}{4}(x-1)(2x+3+\sqrt{13})(2x+3-\sqrt{13})$



20 a i 2916 m^3 **ii** 0 m^3

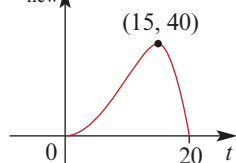


c 3.96 hours

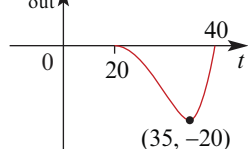
21 a $k = \frac{4}{3375}$

b 11.852 mL/min

c i R_{new} **ii** 23.704 mL/min

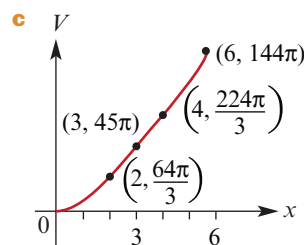


d i R_{out} **ii** $11.852 \text{ mL/min out}$



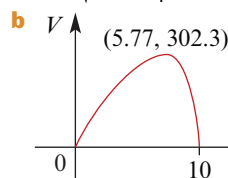
22 a i $\frac{64\pi}{3} \text{ cm}^3$ **ii** $45\pi \text{ cm}^3$ **iii** $\frac{224\pi}{3} \text{ cm}^3$

b $144\pi \text{ cm}^3$



d $x = 5$; depth is 5 cm

23 a $r = \sqrt{25 - \frac{h^2}{4}}$

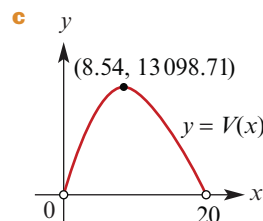


c $V = 96\pi \text{ cm}^3$

d $h = 2$, $r = 2\sqrt{6}$, i.e. height = 2 cm and radius = $2\sqrt{6} \text{ cm}$, or $h = 8.85$ and $r = 2.33$

24 a $V = (84 - 2x)(40 - 2x)x$

b $(0, 20)$



d i $x = 2$, $V = 5760$

ii $x = 6$, $V = 12096$

iii $x = 8$, $V = 13056$

iv $x = 10$, $V = 12800$

e $x = 13.50$ or $x = 4.18$

f 13098.71 cm^3

25 a i $A = 2x(16 - x^2)$ **ii** $(0, 4)$

b i 42

ii $x = 0.82$ or $x = 3.53$

c i $V = 2x^2(16 - x^2)$ **ii** $x = 2.06$ or $x = 3.43$

26 a $A = \frac{\pi}{2}x^2 + yx$

b i $y = 100 - \pi x$

ii $A = 100x - \frac{\pi}{2}x^2$

iii $(0, \frac{100}{\pi})$

c $x = 12.43$

d i $V = \frac{x^2}{50}(100 - \frac{\pi}{2}x)$, $x \in (0, \frac{100}{\pi})$

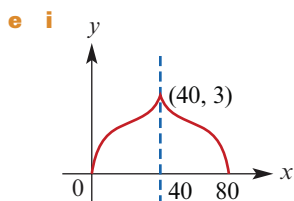
ii 248.5 m^3

iii $x = 18.84$

27 a $y = \frac{1}{12000}x^3 - \frac{1}{200}x^2 + \frac{17}{120}x$

b $x = 20$

d $y = -\frac{1}{6000}x^3 + \frac{29}{3000}x^2 - \frac{1}{20}x$



- ii** Second section of graph is formed reflecting the graph of $y = f(x)$, $x \in [0, 40]$, in the line $x = 40$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** C **2** D **3** D **4** C **5** D **6** A
7 C **8** D **9** C **10** C **11** C **12** B
13 A **14** B **15** D **16** D **17** B **18** C
19 C **20** D

Chapter 3

Exercise 3A

- 1** -1
2 -1
3 a $h + 9$ **b** 9
4 a $x + 1$ **b** $2x^3 + 1$ **c** 40 **d** 0
e 5 **f** 1 **g** $2x + 1$ **h** $3x$
i $3x^3 + x$ **j** $6x$
5 a $2 + 3h + h^2$ **b** 2
6 $2x + h, 2x$
7 $h + 6, 6$
8 a $10x$ **b** 3 **c** 0 **d** $6x + 4$
e $15x^2$ **f** $10x - 6$

Exercise 3B

- 1 a** $5x^4$ **b** $28x^6$ **c** 6 **d** $10x - 4$
e $12x^2 + 12x + 2$ **f** $20x^3 + 9x^2$
g $-4x + 4$ **h** $18x^2 - 4x + 4$
2 a -4 **b** -8 **c** -2 **d** -4
3 a -4 **b** -36
4 a $3t^2$ **b** $3t^2 - 2t$ **c** $x^3 + 9x^2$
5 a -2 **b** 0 **c** $15x^2 - 6x + 2$
d $\frac{6x^2 - 8}{5}$ **e** $4x - 5$ **f** $12x - 12$
g $50x^4$ **h** $27x^2 + 3$
6 a $4x - 15x^2$ **b** $-4z - 6$ **c** $18z^2 - 8z$
d $-2 - 15x^2$ **e** $-4z - 6$ **f** $-3z^2 - 8z$
7 a $(-\frac{1}{2}, 3\frac{1}{2})$ **b** $(2, 32), (-2, -32)$
c $(2, 6)$ **d** $(0, 0), (2, -4)$
8 a $(1, 7)$ **b** $(\frac{5}{4}, \frac{59}{8})$
9 a $x = 1$ **b** $x = 0$ **c** $x = \frac{1 + \sqrt{3}}{2}$
d $x = \frac{3 + \sqrt{3}}{6}$ **e** $x = \frac{1 - \sqrt{3}}{2}$
10 a 78.69° **b** 0° **c** 45° **d** 135°
e 63.43° **f** 116.57°

- 11 a** $8x - 4$ **b** $2x + 2$ **c** $6x^2 - 12x + 18$
d $x^2 - 2x + 1$

- 12 a** $(3, 16)$, gradient = 8
b $(0, -1)$, gradient = -1
c $(-1, 6)$, gradient = -8
d $(4, 594)$, gradient = 393
e $(1, -28)$, gradient = -92
f $(2\frac{1}{2}, 0)$, gradient = 0

- 13 a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = 1$ **c** $x > 1$ **d** $x < 1$
e $x = 2\frac{2}{3}$ **f** $x = 4$ or $x = -2$

- 14 a** $x < -1$ or $x > 1$ **b** $-1 < x < 1$
c $x = -1$ or $x = 1$

- 15 a** $-1 < x < 0.5$ or $x > 2$
b $x < -1$ or $0.5 < x < 2$
c $x = -1$ or $x = 0.5$ or $x = 2$

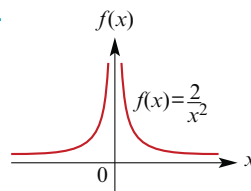
- 16 a** $-\frac{1}{4} < x < 2$ or $x > 2$ **b** $x < -\frac{1}{4}$
c $x = -\frac{1}{4}$ or $x = 2$

- 17 a** $(2, -12)$ **b** $(3, -11)$ **c** $(\frac{5}{4}, -\frac{183}{16})$

- 21 a** $(-\infty, -1]$ **b** $[2, \infty)$ **c** $(-\infty, 0]$
d $[\frac{3}{2}, \infty)$

Exercise 3C

1 a



b $\frac{-2(2 + h)}{(1 + h)^2}$

c -4

2 a $\frac{-1}{(x - 3)^2}$ **b** $\frac{-1}{(x + 2)^2}$

3 $-4x^{-5}$

4 a $-6x^{-3} - 5x^{-2}$ **b** $12x - \frac{15}{x^4}$

c $\frac{15}{x^4} - \frac{8}{x^3}$ **d** $-18x^{-4} - 6x^{-3}$ **e** $-\frac{2}{x^2}$

5 a $\frac{4}{z^2}$ **b** $\frac{-18 - 2z}{z^4}$ **c** $3z^{-4}$

d $\frac{-2z^3 + z^2 - 4}{z^2}$ **e** $\frac{6 - 12z}{z^4}$

f $-6x - \frac{6}{x^2}$

6 a $11\frac{3}{4}$ **b** $\frac{1}{32}$ **c** -1 **d** 5

7 $f'(x) = 10x^{-6} > 0$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

8 $\pm \frac{1}{2}$

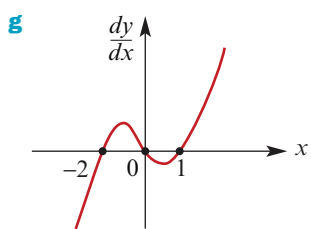
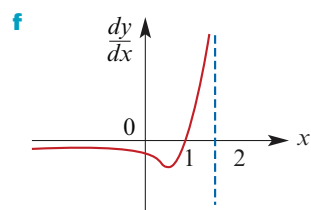
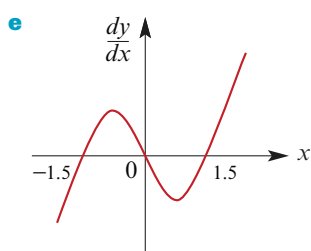
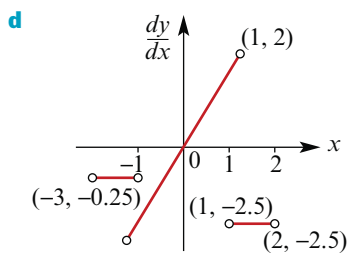
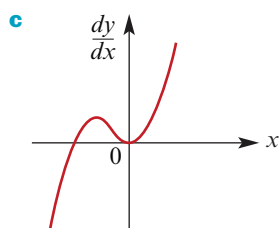
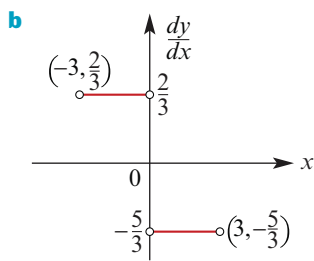
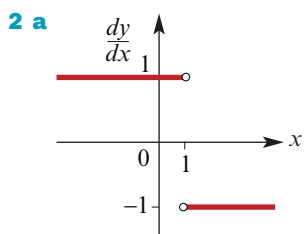
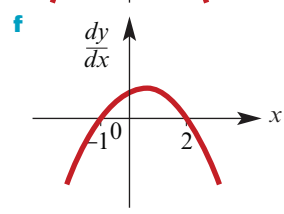
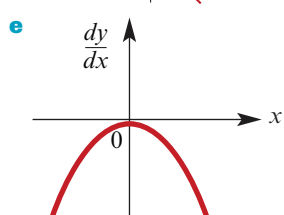
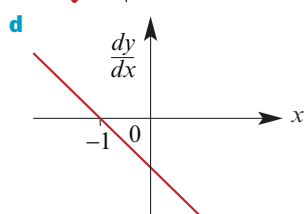
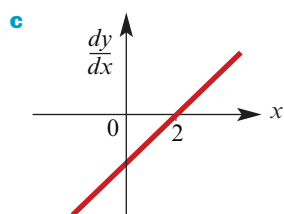
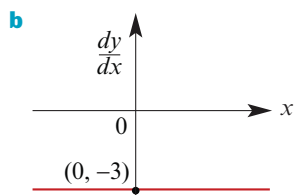
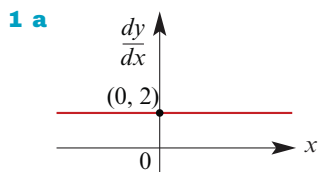
9 $a = -1, b = 4$

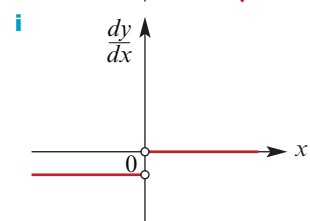
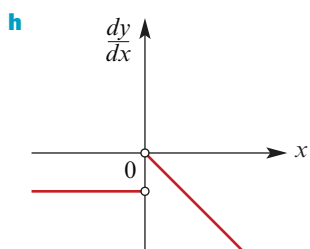
10 $\frac{1}{2}$

11 $a = -9, b = 1$

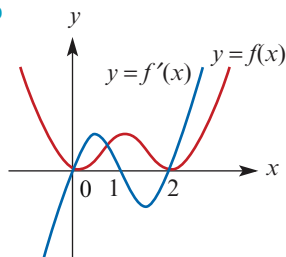
12 $k = 0$ or $k = \frac{3}{2}$

Exercise 3D

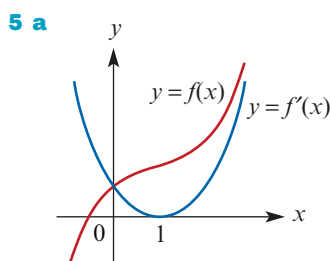




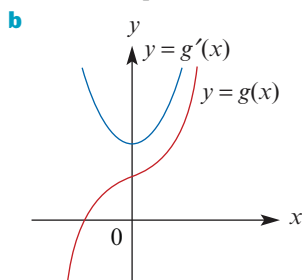
3 a D **b** F **c** B **d** C **e** A **f** E
4 a b



c i 0 **ii** 0 **iii** 0 **iv** 96
d i 1 **ii** 0.423



Gradient is 0 at $(1, \frac{4}{3})$;
 Gradient is positive for $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$



Gradient is always positive;
 Minimum gradient where $x = 0$

Exercise 3E

- 1 a** $8x(x^2 + 1)^3$ **b** $20x(2x^2 - 3)^4$
c $24(6x + 1)^3$ **d** $an(ax + b)^{n-1}$

e $2anx(ax^2 + b)^{n-1}$ **f** $\frac{6x}{(1 - x^2)^4}$

g $-3\left(x^2 - \frac{1}{x^2}\right)^{-4}\left(2x + \frac{2}{x^3}\right)$

h $(1 - x)^{-2}$

2 a $6(x + 1)^5$ **b** $4x^3(3x + 1)(x + 1)^7$

c $4\left(6x^3 + \frac{2}{x}\right)^3\left(18x^2 - \frac{2}{x^3}\right)$

d $-4(x + 1)^{-5}$

3 -10

4 $-\frac{1}{2}$ and $\frac{1}{2}$

5 $2x\sqrt{3x^2 + 1}$

6 a $n[f(x)]^{n-1}f'(x)$ **b** $\frac{-f'(x)}{[f(x)]^2}$

Exercise 3F

1 $x^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

2 a $\frac{x^{-\frac{5}{2}}}{5}$

c $\frac{5}{2}x^{\frac{3}{2}} - \frac{3}{2}x^{\frac{1}{2}}$

e $-\frac{6}{7}x^{-\frac{13}{7}}$

3 a $\frac{1}{27}$ **b** $\frac{1}{12}$

4 a $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2x+1}}$

c $\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+2}}$

e $\frac{3}{2}\sqrt{x} - \frac{1}{\sqrt{x^3}}$

7 a $\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+2}}$

c $\frac{2x+2}{5\sqrt{(x^2+2x)^4}}$

b $\frac{5}{2}x^{\frac{3}{2}}$

d $\frac{3}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}} - \frac{20}{3}x^{\frac{2}{3}}$

f $-\frac{1}{4}x^{-\frac{5}{4}} + 2x^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

c $\frac{2}{9}$ **d** $\frac{5}{2}$

b $\frac{-3}{2\sqrt{4-3x}}$

d $\frac{-1}{\sqrt[3]{(4-3x)^2}}$

f $3\sqrt{x}\left(\frac{5x+6}{2}\right)$

b $\frac{2x-5}{3\sqrt{(x^2-5x)^2}}$

Chapter 3 review

Short-response questions

1 a $h^2 + 6h + 12$ **b** 12

2 a 8 **b** -8

3 a -3 **b** $8x - 2$ **c** $x + \frac{3}{2}$

d $-\frac{10}{x^3} + \frac{3}{x^2} + 2x$ **e** $2x - \frac{4}{x^2}$

f $\frac{12}{x^3} - \frac{20}{x^5}$

4 a $4x - 3$ **b** -3 **c** $x = 1$

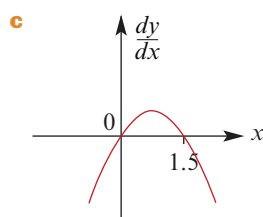
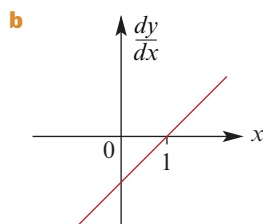
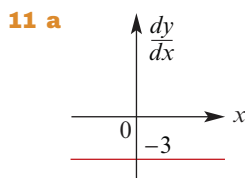
5 a $x = 0$ or $x = -2$ **b** $x > 0$ or $x < -2$

c $-2 < x < 0$

7 24π

8 $\left(\frac{5}{18}, \frac{5}{36}\right)$

9 $\frac{2}{3}$



12 $0 < x < 2$

13 $x = -\frac{1}{2}$

14 a $1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$

c $-\frac{\sqrt{x}+4}{2x^2}$

e $\frac{10x}{3(5x^2+2)^{\frac{2}{3}}}$

g $-48x(2x^2-3)^2$

b $\frac{3}{2\sqrt{3x+1}}$

d $\frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2+1}}$

f $\frac{1}{2(3x^2+2)^{\frac{1}{3}}}$

h $-\frac{12x}{(2x^2-1)^4}$

15 a -6

b 5

c $\frac{1}{6}$

16 $b = \frac{1}{4}, c = 1$

17 a 15

b 0.40

c 2.02

d 5.61

18 a $(-0.71, -2.54)$ or $(0.71, 4.54)$

b $(0, 1)$

19 $a = \frac{9}{8}, b = -9, c = \frac{33}{2}$

20 $a = \sqrt{6}, h = \frac{10}{3}, k = 4$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1 B 2 D 3 A 4 C 5 D
6 A 7 D 8 B 9 D 10 C
11 A 12 A 13 B 14 D 15 C
16 D 17 C 18 B 19 C 20 D
21 B 22 D 23 C

Chapter 4

Short-response questions

Technology-free

Functions and relations

1 a Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$; Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$

b Domain = $\left[\frac{2}{3}, \infty\right)$; Range = $(-\infty, 3]$

c Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$; Range = $(3, \infty)$

d Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{2\}$; Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{4\}$

e Domain = $[2, \infty)$; Range = $[-5, \infty)$

2 $a = -2$ and $b = 1$

3 a i 4 ii $\sqrt{5}$ iii $2 - 2a$ iv $\sqrt{2a-5}$

b i $x = -8$ ii $x = \frac{103}{2}$ iii $x < 1$

4 $\left(-\infty, \frac{1}{5}\right]$

5 $h(x) = f(5x-7) + 3$

6 a $f(x) = 2(x-3)^2 - 11$ b -11

c $[-11, \infty)$

7 a 0 b 1 c $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ d $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ e $\frac{1}{2}$

8 $x = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{5}}{2}$ 9 $[0, 9]$

Coordinate geometry

10 a i $a = -3$ ii $a = 5$ or $a = 1$ iii $a = -3$

b $5y - 3x + 4 = 0, \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)$

11 a i $f(g(x)) = 4x^2 + 8x - 3$

ii $g(f(x)) = 16x^2 - 16x + 3$

b Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{4}$ from the y-axis, then translation $\frac{3}{4}$ units to the right

c Translation 1 unit to the left and 1 unit down

Polynomial functions

12 a $m = \pm 2\sqrt{2}$ b $m > 2\sqrt{2}$ or $m < -2\sqrt{2}$

c $-2\sqrt{2} < m < 2\sqrt{2}$

13 a $-2 \leq x \leq \frac{1}{2}$ or $x \geq 3$ b $x < 0$

14 $\frac{1}{27}(3x-y)(9x^2+3xy+y^2)$

15 $p = -2, x = -3$

Trigonometric functions

16 $x = -\frac{7\pi}{9}$ or $x = \frac{\pi}{9}$ or $x = \frac{5\pi}{9}$

17 a Range = $[2, 8]$; Period = 6

b $x = \frac{\pi}{12}$ or $x = \frac{3\pi}{4}$

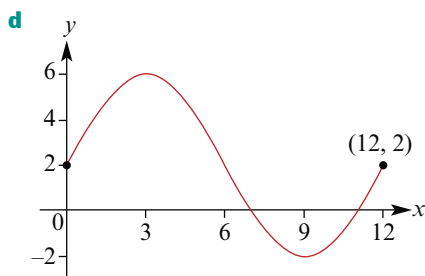
18 $x = \frac{3\pi}{2}$ or $x = \frac{11\pi}{6}$

19 a $\frac{2\pi}{5}$ b 8

c i ■ Dilation of factor 8 from the x-axis
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the y-axis

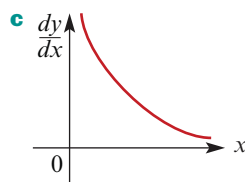
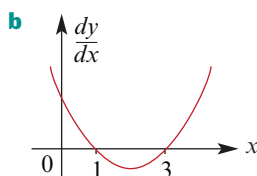
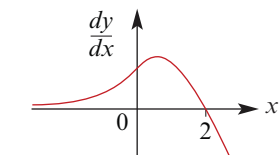
ii ■ Dilation of factor 8 from the x-axis
■ Translation $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units to the right
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the y-axis

- 20 a** $\frac{2\sqrt{2}}{3}$ **b** $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{4}$
21 $20^\circ, 100^\circ, 140^\circ, 220^\circ, 260^\circ, 340^\circ$
22 $-10, -2, 2, 10$
23 a Period = 12; Amplitude = 4
b Maximum = 6; Minimum = -2
c $t = 0, 6$ or 12



Refresher on differentiation

- 24 a** $12x^2 - 2$ **b** $2x + 1$ **c** $2x$
25 a 11 **b** 27
26 a $x = 0$ or $x = 2$ **b** $x = 1$ **c** $x < 1$
d $x > 1$ **e** $x = \frac{7}{2}$
27 a $y = -4x - 1$
b $y = \frac{x}{4} - \frac{21}{4}$
28 a $2x^{-3} - 8x^{-5}$
b $\frac{2z - 8}{z^3}$
29 a $2x^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}x^{-\frac{3}{4}}$ **c** $\frac{14}{3}x^{-\frac{10}{3}}$ **d** $6x^{\frac{1}{2}}$
e $-\frac{1}{4}x^{-\frac{5}{4}}$ **f** $-5x^{\frac{3}{2}} - \frac{2}{5}x^{-\frac{7}{5}}$
30 a $4(2x + 7)$ **b** $-12(3x + 2)^3$
c $6x^2(x^2 + 4)^2(3x^2 + 4)$
d $\frac{4}{3}x(2x^2 - 5)^{-\frac{4}{3}}$ **e** $-\frac{20}{(5x + 6)^2}$
f $-\frac{3}{2}(x - 1)^{-\frac{5}{2}}$ **g** $-35x(7x^2 + 2)^{-\frac{3}{2}}$
h $\frac{2^{\frac{4}{3}}x^4 + 2^{\frac{1}{3}}}{x^{\frac{4}{3}}(2x^4 - 3)^{\frac{2}{3}}}$
31 $4(6x - 4)(3x^2 - 4x)^3$
32 a

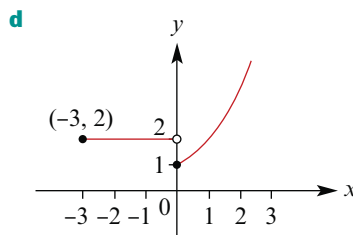
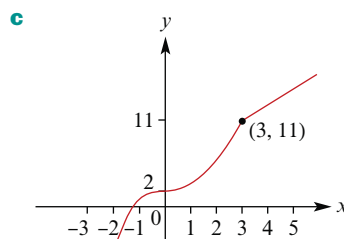
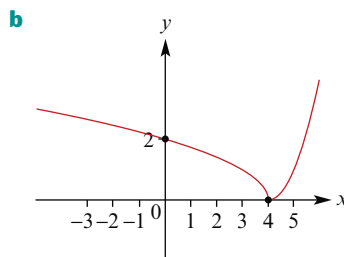
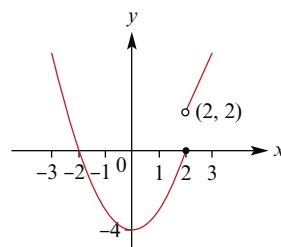


33 $2\left(4 - \frac{9}{x^2}\right)\left(4x + \frac{9}{x}\right), x = \pm \frac{3}{2}$

Technology-active

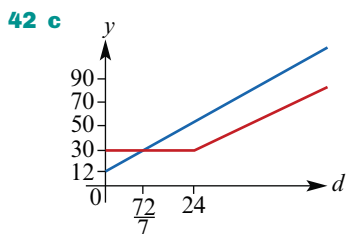
Functions and relations

- 34 a** 2.236 **b** 1.530 **c** 2.466 **d** 10.564
35 a 2.802 **b** 2.330 **c** 6.029 **d** 1.985
36 $(-\infty, -4] \cup [2, \infty)$
37 -1.260
38 a



Coordinate geometry

- 39 a** $M\left(3, \frac{\lambda - 2}{2}\right)$ **b** $\lambda = 4$ or $\lambda = 6$
40 a $a = 2, b = -\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $2\sqrt{5}$
41 a $\left(\frac{3 + \alpha}{2}, \frac{10 + \beta}{2}\right)$ **b** $\alpha = 5, \beta = 8$



- d i** \$41.75 **ii** \$30
e Thrifty Taxi
f Greater than $\frac{72}{7}$ km

Polynomials

- 43** $(x-1)(x+2)(x^2+x+3)$
44 a $a=20$, $b=29$ **b** -14
45 $n=3$
46 $a=-3$ or $a=2$ or $a=-1$
47 a $a=-6$, $b=13$
b $P(x)=(x-1)^2(x-2)^2$
48 $a=-6$, $b=4$, $c=3$
49 $a=-18$, $b=30$
50 $a=1$ or $a=2$
51 a $a=-0.09$, $b=9$
b $DE=2.79$ m
c Length $=2\sqrt{30} \approx 10.95$ m
52 a $a=-3$ **b** $x=-1$, $x=-\frac{1}{2}$, $x=2$
c ii $b=\frac{7}{2}$, $c=\frac{3}{2}$
53 a $D=0.05t^2-0.25t+1.8$ **b** \$3 000 000
54 a $a=\frac{-7}{48}$, $b=\frac{23}{24}$, $c=7.5$
 Rainfall at noon was $\frac{35}{6}$ mm per hour
 Rainfall greatest at $\frac{23}{7}$ hours after 4 a.m.
 (approx 7:17 a.m.)
55 a $a=5$ **b** $b=-6$
56 a $(a-b)^2$
58 a $h=(a-1)x-x^2$ **b** $\frac{a-1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{(a-1)^2}{4}$
d i 2 **ii** 3 **iii** $1+2\sqrt{5}$ **iv** 7 **v** $1+2\sqrt{10}$
59 a $(0,0)$, $(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{b^2-a^2}{4})$
b
-
- c** $(a+b)x-2x^2$ **d** $\frac{(a+b)^2}{8}$

- 60 b** Min area $=\frac{147}{2}$ when $x=\frac{7}{2}$, $y=\frac{7}{2}$
c Min area $=\frac{3a^2}{2}$ when $x=\frac{a}{2}$, $y=\frac{a}{2}$
61 a $a=\frac{v^2}{10}$
b i $a=\frac{125}{2}$ **ii** $(\frac{125}{4}, \frac{125}{8})$ **iii** $\frac{25}{2}, 50$
c i $(38.97, 33.75)$ **ii** $a=77.94$

Trigonometric functions

- 62 a**
-
- b i** $x=0$ **ii** $x=-4$ **iii** $x=0$
c $t=\frac{7}{6}$
d Period $=\frac{2\pi}{\pi}=2$ seconds
63 a i 0 **ii** 2.5 **iii** 0
b 1 second
c
-
- d** $t=0.35$ seconds
64 a 62.5 metres **b** $x(m)$
-
- c** 24.3° or 65.7°
65 a i 12 units **ii** $OQ=h-k$, $OR=h+k$
b
-
- c** $h=12$, $k=4.5$

Refresher on differentiation

- 66 a** 5.782 **b** -0.066
67 a $f'(3)=6$, $f'(2.1)=4.2$, $f'(-3)=-6$
i $f(3)=9$, $g(3)=6.1$, $h(3)=6$
ii $f(2.1)=4.41$, $g(2.1)=4.3$, $h(2.1)=4.2$
iii $f(-3)=9$, $g(-3)=-5.9$, $h(-3)=-6$

- b** $f'(3) = 27$, $f'(2.1) = 13.23$, $f'(-3) = 13.23$
i $f(3) = 27$, $g(3) = 27.0901$, $h(3) = 27.0001$
ii $f(2.1) = 9.261$, $g(2.1) = 13.87$,
 $h(2.1) = 13.2301$
iii $f(-3) = -27$, $g(-3) = 26.11$, $h(3) = 27.0001$

68 $a = -3$, $b = 2$, $c = -5$

69 $a = 3$, $b = -2$

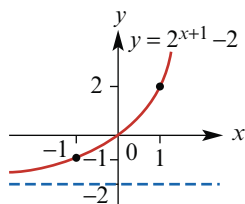
Multiple-choice questions

- 1** D **2** B **3** D **4** A **5** C **6** C
7 A **8** B **9** B **10** A **11** B **12** C
13 C **14** D **15** D **16** A **17** D **18** A
19 D **20** A **21** A **22** D **23** D **24** A
25 A **26** A **27** C **28** D **29** C **30** B
31 B **32** C **33** D **34** D **35** D **36** A
37 A **38** D **39** D **40** B **41** D **42** B
43 B **44** A **45** C **46** D **47** B **48** D
49 D **50** D **51** D **52** D **53** A **54** C
55 B **56** B **57** C **58** C **59** D

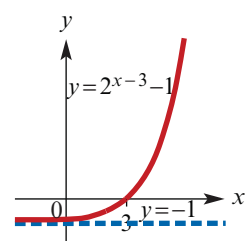
Chapter 5

Exercise 5A

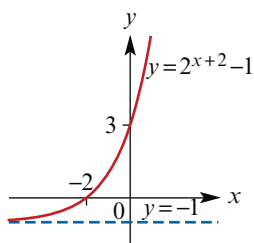
- 1 a** Range = $(-2, \infty)$



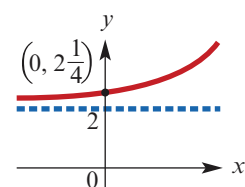
- b** Range = $(-1, \infty)$



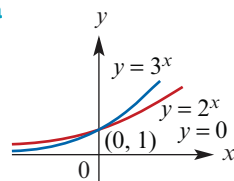
- c** Range = $(-1, \infty)$



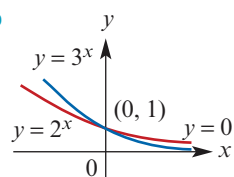
- d** Range = $(2, \infty)$



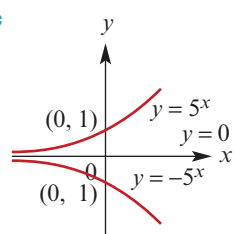
- 2 a**



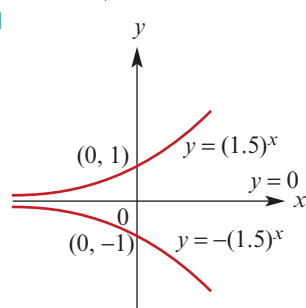
- b**



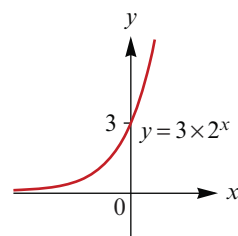
- c**



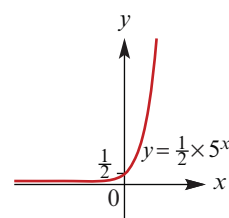
- d**



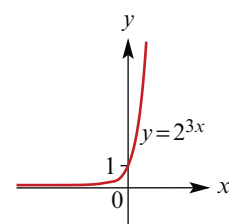
- 3 a** Range = $(0, \infty)$



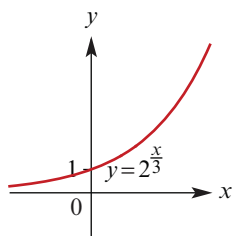
- b** Range = $(0, \infty)$



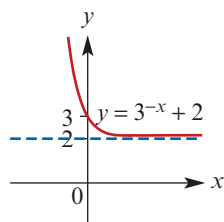
- c** Range = $(0, \infty)$



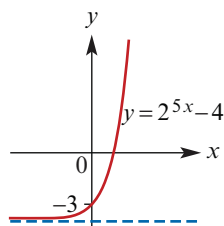
d Range = $(0, \infty)$



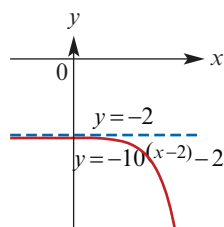
4 a Range = $(2, \infty)$



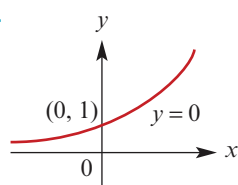
b Range = $(-4, \infty)$



c Range = $(-\infty, -2)$

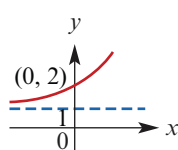


5 a



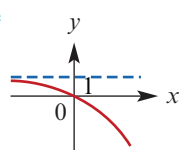
Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$

b



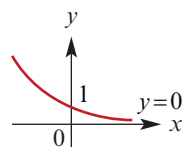
Range = $(1, \infty)$

c



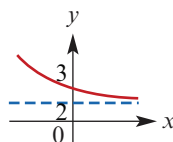
Range = $(-\infty, 1)$

d



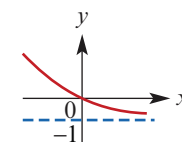
Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$

e



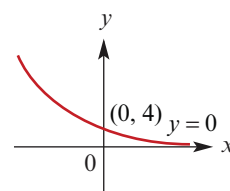
Range = $(2, \infty)$

f

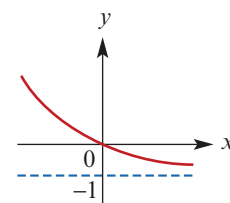


Range = $(-1, \infty)$

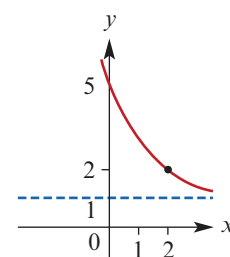
6 a Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$



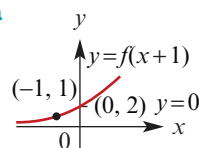
b Range = $(-1, \infty)$



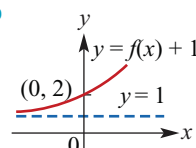
c Range = $(1, \infty)$



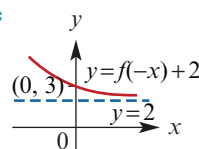
7 a



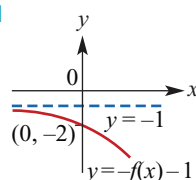
b

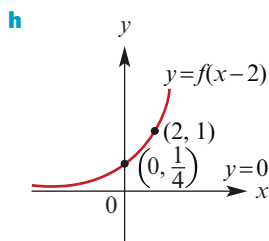
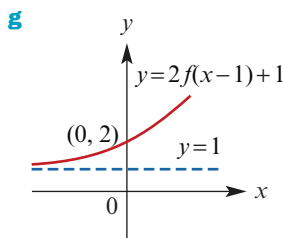
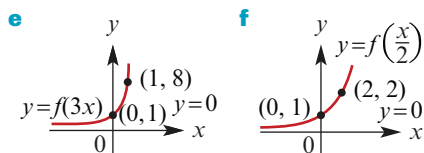


c

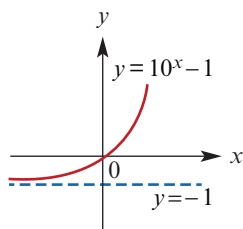


d

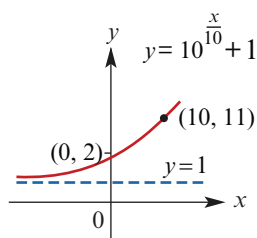




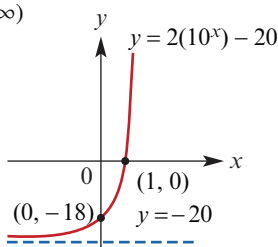
8 a Range = $(-1, \infty)$



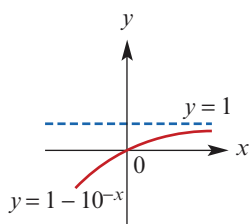
b Range = $(1, \infty)$



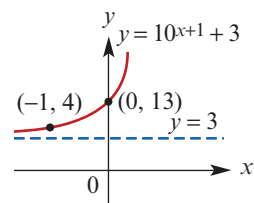
c Range = $(-20, \infty)$



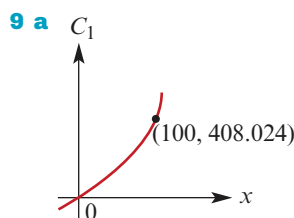
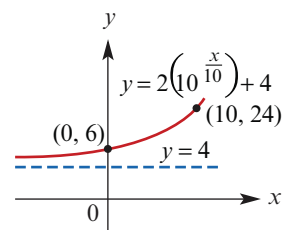
d Range = $(-\infty, 1)$



e Range = $(3, \infty)$



f Range = $(4, \infty)$



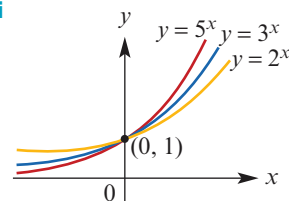
b i \$408.02 **ii** \$1274.70

c 239 days

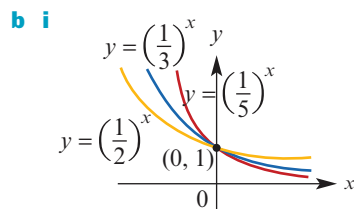
d ii 302 days

10 36 days

11 a i

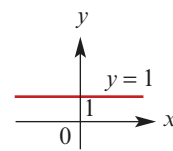
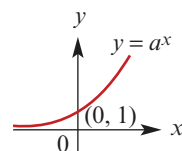


ii $x < 0$ **iii** $x > 0$ **iv** $x = 0$

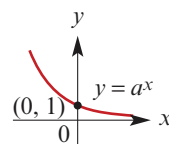


ii $x > 0$ **iii** $x < 0$ **iv** $x = 0$

c i $a > 1$ **ii** $a = 1$

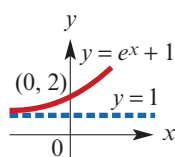


iii $0 < a < 1$



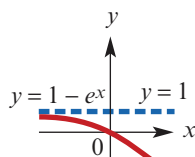
Exercise 5B

1 a



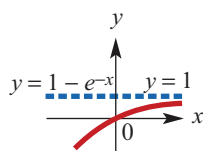
Range = $(1, \infty)$

b



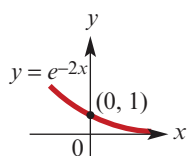
Range = $(-\infty, 1)$

c



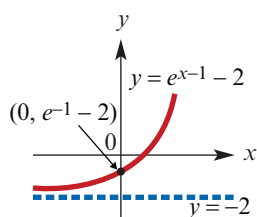
Range = $(-\infty, 1)$

d



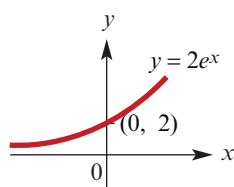
Range = $(0, \infty)$

e



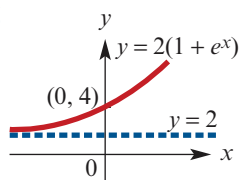
Range = $(-2, \infty)$

f



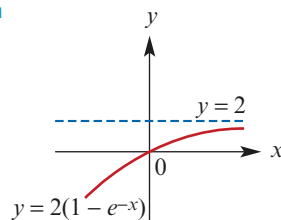
Range = $(0, \infty)$

g



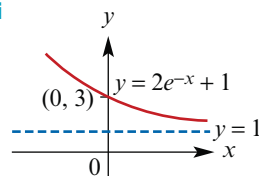
Range = $(2, \infty)$

h



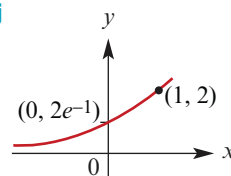
Range = $(-\infty, 2)$

i



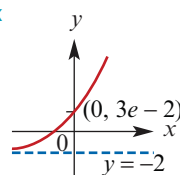
Range = $(1, \infty)$

j



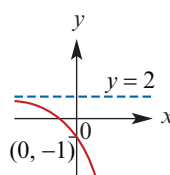
Range = $(0, \infty)$

k



Range = $(-2, \infty)$

l



Range = $(-\infty, 2)$

2 a Translation 2 units to the left and 3 units down

b Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the left and 4 units down

c Dilation of factor 5 from the x -axis and factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis, then translation $\frac{1}{2}$ unit to the left

d Reflection in the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the right and 2 units up

e Dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, reflection in the x -axis, then translation 2 units to the left and 3 units up

f Dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis and factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis, then translation 1 unit down

3 a $y = -2e^{x-3} - 4$ b $y = 4 - 2e^{x-3}$
 c $y = -2e^{x-3} - 4$ d $y = -2e^{x-3} - 8$
 e $y = 8 - 2e^{x-3}$ f $y = -2e^{x-3} + 8$

4 a Translation 2 units to the right and 3 units up

b Translation 1 unit to the right and 4 units up, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the x -axis

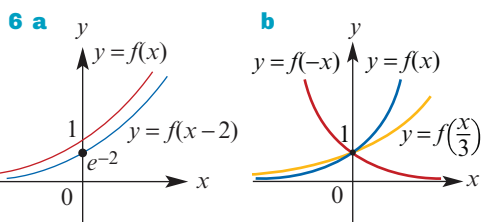
- c** Translation $\frac{1}{2}$ unit to the right, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the x -axis and factor 2 from the y -axis
d Translation 1 unit to the left and 2 units down, then reflection in the x -axis
e Translation 2 units to the right and 3 units down, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis and reflection in the x -axis
f Translation 1 unit up, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{4}$ from the x -axis and factor 2 from the y -axis

5 a $x = 1.146$ or $x = -1.841$

b $x = -0.443$

c $x = -0.703$

d $x = 1.857$ or $x = 4.536$



Exercise 5C

- 1 a** $6x^6y^9$ **b** $3x^6$ **c** $\frac{6y^2}{x^2}$ **d** 8
e 16 **f** $\frac{5x^{28}}{y^6}$ **g** $24x^5y^{10}$ **h** $2xy^2$
i x^2y^2
2 a 4 **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** 8 **d** $\frac{1}{4}$ **e** $\frac{3}{5}$ **f** 3
g $\frac{5}{2}$ **h** 6 **i** 4
3 a 1 **b** 1 **c** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **d** 3 **e** -2 **f** 4
g $-\frac{10}{3}$ **h** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **i** 6 **j** $\frac{3}{5}$ **k** $\pm\frac{1}{2}$
4 a 1 **b** 2 **c** 1 **d** 1, 2 **e** 0, 1
f 2, 4 **g** 0, 1 **h** -1, 2 **i** -1, 0

Exercise 5D

- 1 a** 3 **b** -4 **c** -3 **d** 6
e 6 **f** -7
2 a $\log_{10} 6$ **b** $\log_{10} 4$ **c** $\ln(10^6) = 6 \ln 10$
d $\ln 7$ **e** $\ln \frac{1}{60} = -\ln 60$
f $\ln(u^3v^6) = 3 \ln(uv^2)$ **g** $\ln(x^7) = 7 \ln x$
h $\ln 1 = 0$
3 a $x = 100$ **b** $x = 16$ **c** $x = 6$ **d** $x = 64$
e $x = e^3 - 5 \approx 15.086$ **f** $x = \frac{1}{2}$ **g** $x = -1$
h $x = e^{-3}$ **i** $x = 4 + e^5$
4 a $x = 15$ **b** $x = 5$ **c** $x = 4$
d $x = 1$ ($x = -\frac{1}{2}$ is not an allowable solution)
e $x = \frac{3}{2}$

5 a $\log_{10} 27$ **b** $\log_2 4 = 2$

c $\frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{a}{b}\right) = \ln \sqrt{\frac{a}{b}}$ **d** $\ln\left(\frac{ea}{b^{\frac{1}{3}}}\right)$

e $\ln\left(\frac{1}{8}\right) = -3 \ln 2$

6 a 1 **b** 1 **c** $2\frac{1}{2}$ **d** 3 **e** 0

7 a $-x$ **b** $2 \log_2 x$ **c** 0

8 a $x = 4$ **b** $x = \frac{3e}{5+2e} \approx 0.7814$

9 a $x = \frac{-1 + \sqrt{1+12e}}{6}$, i.e. $x \approx 0.7997$

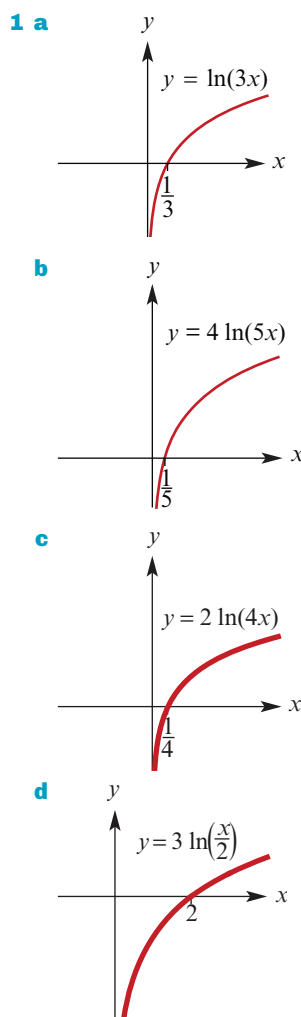
b $x = \ln 2 \approx 0.6931$

10 a $x = 3$ **b** $x = \frac{1}{2}$

11 $\frac{1}{4}, 2$

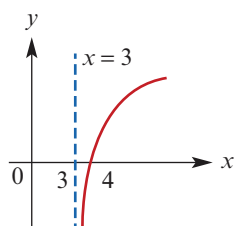
12 $N = \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^3 = \frac{8}{27}$

Exercise 5E



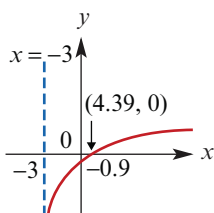
2 a Domain = $(3, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



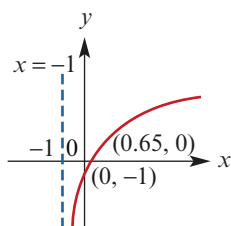
b Domain = $(-3, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



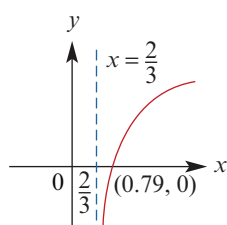
c Domain = $(-1, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



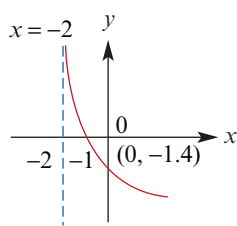
d Domain = $(\frac{2}{3}, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



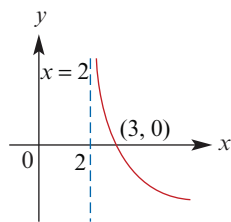
e Domain = $(-2, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



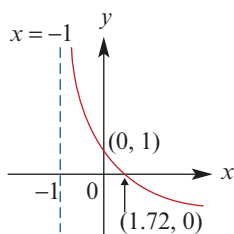
f Domain = $(2, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



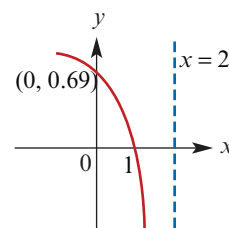
g Domain = $(-1, \infty)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$



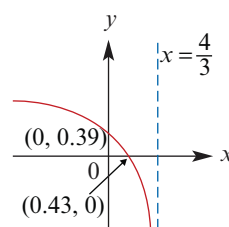
h Domain = $(-\infty, 2)$

Range = $\mathbb{R}$

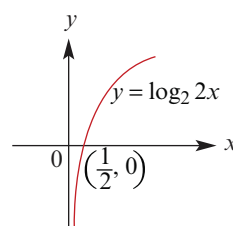


i Domain = $(-\infty, \frac{4}{3})$

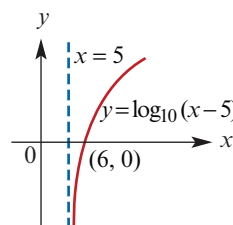
Range = $\mathbb{R}$



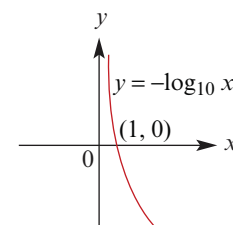
3 a Domain = $\mathbb{R}^+$



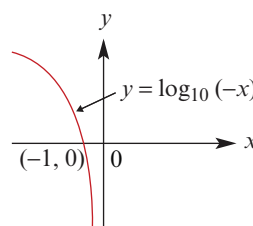
b Domain = $(5, \infty)$



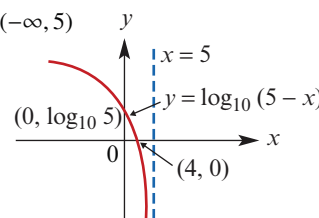
c Domain = $\mathbb{R}^+$



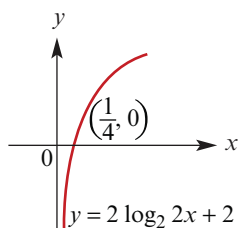
d Domain = $\mathbb{R}^-$



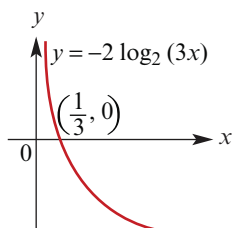
e Domain = $(-\infty, 5)$



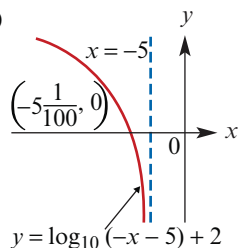
f Domain = $\mathbb{R}^+$



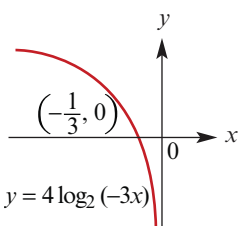
g Domain = $\mathbb{R}^+$



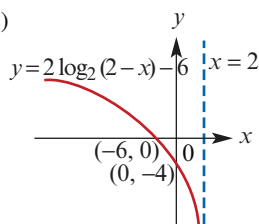
h Domain = $(-\infty, -5)$



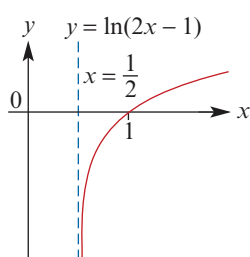
i Domain = $\mathbb{R}^-$



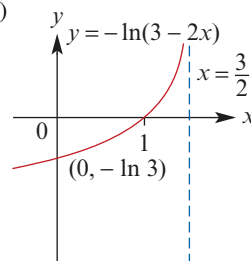
j Domain = $(-\infty, 2)$



k Domain = $(\frac{1}{2}, \infty)$



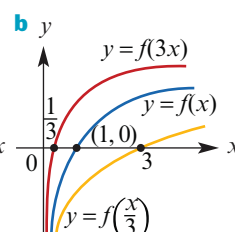
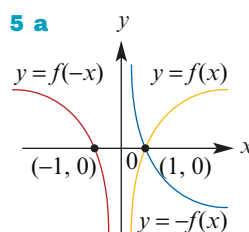
l Domain = $(-\infty, \frac{3}{2})$



4 a $x = 1.557$

b $x = 1.189$

5 a



6 A dilation of factor $\ln 3$ from the y -axis

7 A dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\ln 2}$ from the y -axis

Exercise 5F

1 a 2.58 **b** -0.36 **c** 2.18 **d** 1.61

e -2.32 **f** -0.68 **g** -2.15 **h** -1.38

i 3.08 **j** -1.70 **k** -4.42 **l** 5.76

m -6.21 **n** 2.38 **o** 2.80

2 a $x < 2.81$ **b** $x > 1.79$

c $x < -0.68$ **d** $x \geq 0.57$

3 a $\ln 5$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}(\ln(8) + 1)$

c $\frac{1}{3}(\ln(20) - 1)$ **d** $\ln 7$ **e** $\ln 6$

f $\log_5 6$ **g** $x = \log_3 8$ or $x = 0$ **h** $x = 1$

4 a $x > \ln 52$ **b** $x < \frac{1}{2}(\ln(40) + 1)$

c $x \geq \frac{1}{3}(\ln(5) - 1)$ **d** $x \leq \log_3 7290$

e $x < \log_3 106$ **f** $x < \log_5\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)$

5 a $x = \frac{e^4 + 3}{2}$

b $x = 5e^{-2} + 3$

6 a $x = \frac{2}{e^2 - 1}$

b $x = \frac{25}{11}$

7 a $x = \frac{9}{5}$ **b** $x = \frac{2}{9}$

c $x = \frac{7}{2}$

8 a $k = \frac{1}{\log_2 7}$

b $x = \frac{\log_2 7 - 4}{\log_2 7}$

c $x = \frac{\ln 7 - 1}{\ln 14}$

9 $x = e^{\frac{y+4}{3}}$

10 a $x = \frac{1}{2}e^y$

c $x = \ln(y-2)$

e $x = \frac{1}{2}(e^y - 1)$

g $x = 10^y - 1$

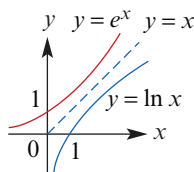
b $x = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{y-1}{3}}$

d $x = \ln(y) - 2$

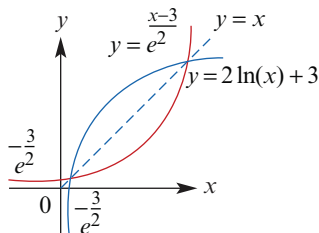
f $x = \frac{1}{3}(e^{\frac{y}{4}} - 2)$

h $x = \ln\left(\frac{y}{2}\right) + 1$

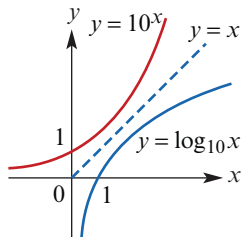
11 a i



ii



iii



b The graphs of $y = f(x)$ and $y = g(x)$ are reflections of each other in the line $y = x$

12 $t = \frac{-1}{k} \ln\left(\frac{P-b}{A}\right)$

13 a $x = e^{\frac{y-5}{2}}$

c $n = \frac{\ln\left(\frac{y}{a}\right)}{\ln x}$

e $x = \frac{1}{2}e^{\frac{5-y}{3}}$

g $x = \frac{1}{2}(e^y + 1)$

14 a $a \approx 0.185$

15 a e^{2u}

b $u + \frac{1}{2}$

c $\frac{2}{u}$

16 e^4, e^{-4}

Exercise 5G

1 a $5e^{5x}$

c $-12e^{-4x} + e^x - 2x$

e $e^{-2x}(e^x - 1)$

b $-21e^{-3x}$

d $e^x - e^{-x}$

f $2e^{2x} - 2e^{-2x}$

2 a $-6x^2e^{-2x^3}$

c $(2x-4)e^{x^2-4x} + 3$

e $-\frac{1}{x^2}e^{\frac{1}{x}}$

3 a $\frac{9}{2}$

4 a 5

5 a $8e^{2x}(e^{2x} - 1)^3$

d $\frac{2}{3}e^{x^{\frac{2}{3}}}x^{-\frac{1}{3}}$

f e^{e^x+x}

6 a $2f'(x)e^{2f(x)}$

7 a $\lambda = 0.1373, P_0 = 30$

b 9.625 hours

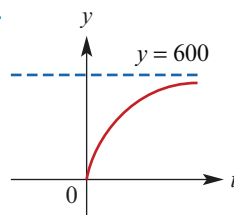
c i 4.120 units/hour ii 1.373 units/hour

8 a $-0.3(T - 15)$

b i $-22.5^\circ\text{C/minute}$ ii $-13.5^\circ\text{C/minute}$

iii $-4.5^\circ\text{C/minute}$

9 a



a $A = 1000, k = \frac{1}{5} \ln 10 \approx 0.46$

b $\frac{dN}{dt} = kAe^{kt}$

d i $\frac{dN}{dt} \approx 2905.7$

10 a $A = 1000, k = \frac{1}{10} \ln 10 \approx 0.46$

b $\frac{dN}{dt} = kAe^{kt}$, where $A = 1000$ and $k = \frac{1}{5} \ln 10$

d i 2905.7 bacteria/hour

ii 4.61×10^{12} bacteria/hour

11 a $-2y$ b ky

12 a 0.18 kg

b 3.47 hours

c i 6.93 hours ii 10.4 hours

d 0.2m

13 a $A = 20, k = 0.1$

c After 39.12 days

Exercise 5H

1 a $\frac{2}{x}$

d $\frac{3x-1}{x^2}$

g $\frac{1}{x+2}$

b $\frac{2}{x}$

e $\frac{3+x}{x}$

h $\frac{3}{3x-1}$

c $2x + \frac{3}{x}$

f $\frac{1}{x+1}$

i $\frac{6}{6x-1}$

$$2 \text{ a } \frac{3}{x} \quad \text{b } \frac{3(\ln x)^2}{x} \quad \text{c } \frac{2x+1}{x^2+x-1}$$

$$\text{d } \frac{3x^2+2x}{x^3+x^2} \quad \text{e } \frac{4}{2x+3} \quad \text{f } \frac{4}{2x-3}$$

$$3 \text{ a } \frac{2x}{x^2+1} \quad \text{b } 1$$

$$4 \text{ a } (e, 1), m = \frac{1}{e} \quad \text{b } (e, \ln(e^2+1)), m = \frac{2e}{e^2+1}$$

$$\text{c } (-e, 1), m = -\frac{1}{e} \quad \text{d } (1, 1), m = 2$$

$$\text{e } (1, 0), m = 0 \quad \text{f } (\frac{3}{2}, \ln 2), m = 1$$

$$5 \frac{1}{2} \quad 6 \frac{1+2x}{1+x+x^2} \quad 7 \frac{3}{5}$$

$$8 \text{ a } y = \ln(4) - 1, m = -\frac{3}{2}$$

$$\text{b } y = 25 - 3 \ln 2, m = \frac{23}{4}$$

$$\text{c } y = \ln 2 + e^{\frac{1}{5}}, m = \frac{1}{5}e^{\frac{1}{5}} - 1$$

$$\text{d } y = \ln 3 + e^{\frac{1}{3}}, m = \frac{1}{3}e^{\frac{1}{3}} - 1$$

$$9 \text{ a } f'(t) = \frac{12}{t+2} + 2$$

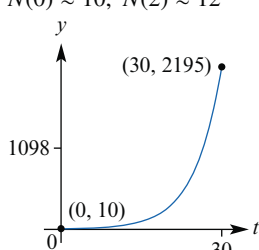
$$\text{b } f'(0) = 8, f'(3) = \frac{22}{5} \quad \text{c } t = 0$$

$$10 \text{ a } a = 1 \quad \text{b } c = 15 \ln(3) - 5$$

$$11 \frac{-1}{x^2+5x+6} \quad 12 \ 2$$

$$13 \text{ a } N(0) \approx 10, N(2) \approx 12$$

$$\text{b } \quad \text{c } 15 \text{ days}$$



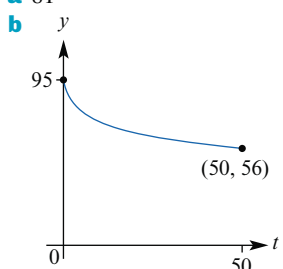
$$\text{d } N'(t) = \frac{2}{5}e^{\frac{t+5}{5}} - \frac{1}{t+1}$$

$$\text{e } R'(t) = \frac{2}{25}e^{\frac{t+5}{5}} + \frac{1}{(1+t)^2}$$

Both terms of the expression are positive for all x

$$\text{f } 23 \text{ days}$$

$$14 \text{ a } 81$$



$$\text{c } \text{i } -1 \text{ per day} \quad \text{ii } -0.5 \text{ per day}$$

$$\text{iii } -0.32 \text{ per day}$$

Exercise 5I

$$1 \text{ a } \frac{6}{e^4-1}, b = \frac{5e^4-11}{e^4-1}$$

$$2 \text{ a } \frac{2}{\ln 6}, b = -4 \quad 3 \text{ a } = 2, b = 4$$

$$4 \text{ a } \frac{14}{e-1}, b = \frac{14}{1-e} \quad (a \approx 8.148, b \approx -8.148)$$

$$5 \text{ a } = 250, b = \frac{1}{3} \ln 5 \quad 6 \text{ a } = 200, b = 500$$

$$7 \text{ a } = 2, b = 4 \quad 8 \text{ a } = 3, b = 5$$

$$9 \text{ a } = 2, b = \frac{1}{3} \ln 5 \quad 10 \text{ a } = 2, b = 3$$

$$11 \text{ b } = 1, a = \frac{2}{\ln 2}, c = 8 \quad (a \approx 2.885)$$

$$12 \text{ a } = \frac{2}{\ln 2}, b = 4$$

Exercise 5J

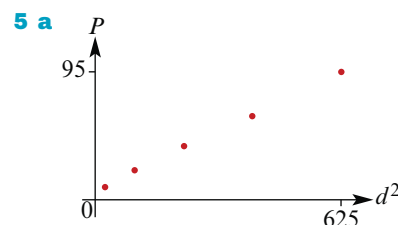
$$1 \text{ a } = 4.77, b = 0.976$$

$$2 \text{ y } = 0.145x^2 + 2.065x + 6.011$$

$$3 \text{ a } y = 1.04 \times 1.25^x \quad \text{b } y = 1.1 \times 1.05^x$$

$$4 \text{ a } y = 3 + \ln x \quad \text{b } y = 5.23 + 8.5 \ln x$$

$$\text{c } y = 6.28 + 9.49 \ln x$$

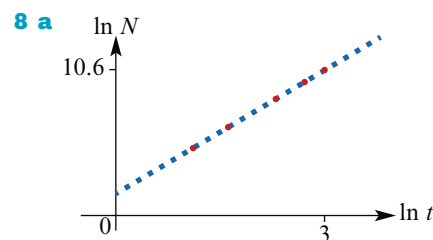


$$\text{b } P = 0.140d^2 + 7.388$$

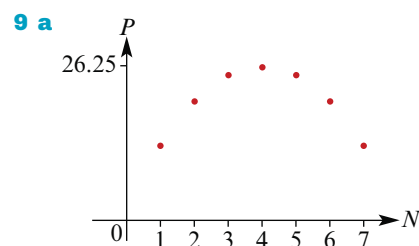
$$6 \text{ a } y = 3.14 \sin(3.05x + 0.04) - 0.14$$

$$\text{b } y = 4.97 \sin(3.01x + 3.14) + 4.97$$

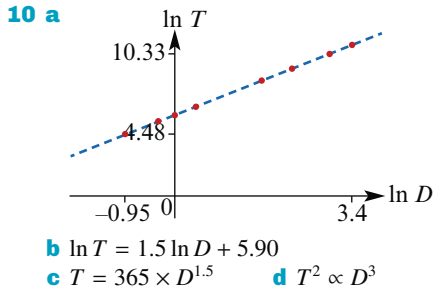
$$7 \text{ a } = 751.733, k = 0.35$$



$$\text{b } a = 2.98, b = 1.65 \quad \text{c } A = 2.98, B = 5.21$$

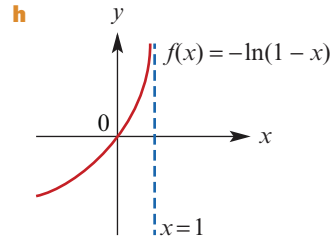
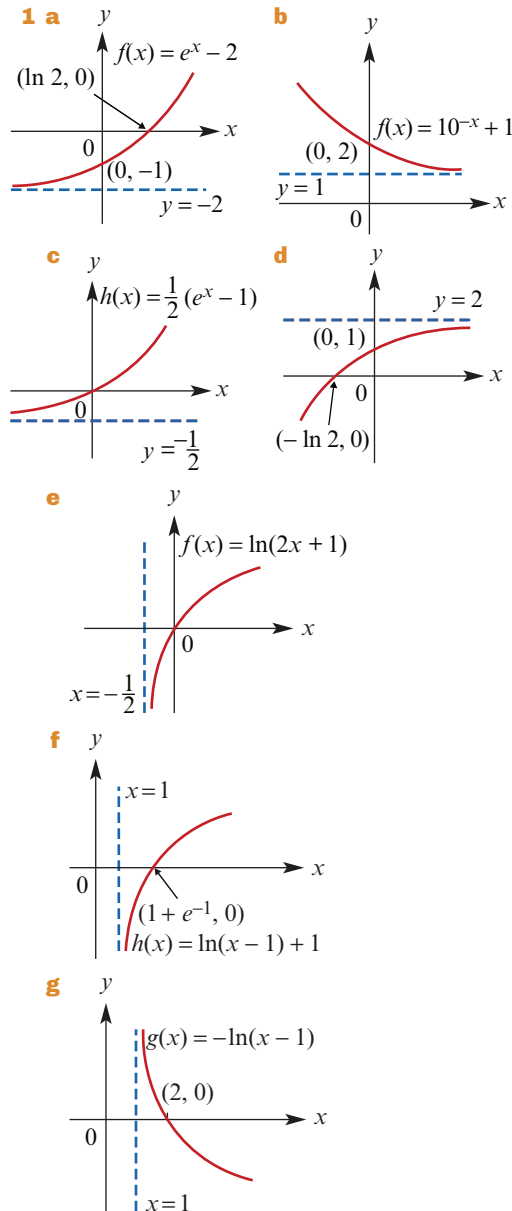


$$\text{b } a = -1.5, b = 12, c = 2.25$$



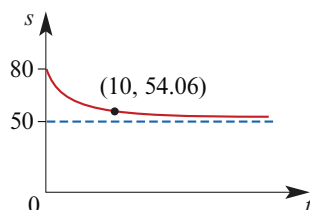
Chapter 5 review

Short-response questions



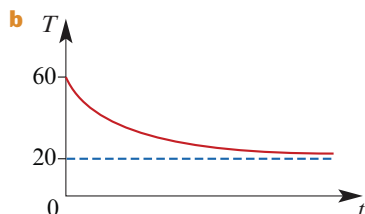
- 2 a** $y = e^2 x$ **b** $y = 10x$ **c** $y = 16x^3$
d $y = \frac{x^5}{10}$ **e** $y = \frac{e^3}{x}$ **f** $y = e^{2x-3}$
- 3 a** $x = \frac{\ln 11}{\ln 3}$ **b** $x = \frac{\ln 0.8}{\ln 2}$ **c** $x = \frac{\ln 3}{\ln(\frac{2}{3})}$
- 4 a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = \frac{2}{3}$ **c** $x = \frac{1}{20}$
d $x = \ln 3$ or $x = \ln 4$
- 5 a** $x = \ln 2$ or $x = \frac{1}{2} \ln 2$
b $x = \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{6}{5}\right)$ or $x = \frac{1}{2} \ln 2$
c $x = \frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)$ or $x = \frac{1}{2} \ln 2$
d $x = e^{\frac{4}{3}}$ or $x = e^2$
- 6** $b = 2$, $a = 2^{-\frac{2}{3}} - 1$ **7** $10^{\frac{6}{5}} - 1$
8 $\frac{1}{3} \ln\left(\frac{287}{4}\right)$ **9** $2a$
- 10** $x = 3^y + 4$ **11** $x = \frac{1}{3} \ln(y + 4)$
- 12** $y = x^b e^a$ **13** $a = \ln 5$, $b = 5$, $k = 2$ **14** 3
- 15 a** $k = \frac{1}{7}$ **b** $q = \frac{3}{2}$
- 18 a** $2e^2$ **b** $2e^2$ **c** $15e^3 + 2$ **d** 1
- 19 a** $(2x - 4)e^{x^2 - 4x}$ **b** $4e^{2x}(e^{2x} + 1)$
c $\frac{2e^{2x} - 3}{2\sqrt{e^{2x} - 3x}}$ **d** $4xe^{2x^2 - 4}$
- 20 a** ae^{ax} **b** ae^{ax+b} **c** $-be^{a-bx}$
d $abe^{ax} - abe^{bx}$ **e** $(a - b)e^{(a-b)x}$
- 21 a** $\frac{4}{x}$ **b** $\frac{4(\ln(x))^3}{x}$
c $\frac{3x^2 + 2x - 1}{x^3 + x^2 - x}$ **d** $\frac{6}{2x - 5}$ **e** $\frac{6x + 1}{3x^2 + x}$
f 2
- 22** $x = e^{-1}$ or $x = e^3$
- 23 a** $2, e^{-2}$ **b** $\ln(e^2 + 1), \frac{2e}{e^2 + 1}$ **c** $2, -\frac{1}{e^2}$
d $4, \frac{5}{2}$
- 24 a** $(25e^{100t})^\circ \text{C/s}$
b $(25e^5)^\circ \text{C/s}$
- 25 b** 20 cm/year
- 26 a** $\ln(18)$ **b** $(3 \ln(2), -100)$
c $x > 3 \ln(2)$ **d** $\frac{50}{\ln(\frac{3}{2})}$

- 27 a** $f(-x) = f(x)$ **b** $2(e^u + e^{-u})$
c 0 **d** $e^{2u} + e^{-2u}$
e $g(-x) = -g(x)$ **f** $2e^x, 2e^{-x}, e^{2x} - e^{-2x}$
28 a 73.5366°C **b** 59.5946
29 a 75 **b** 2.37 **c** 0.646
30 a $k = 22\,497$, $\lambda = 0.22$ **b** \$11 523
31 $k = -0.5$, $A_0 = 100$
32 a 54.06 g **b**



- c** $\frac{ds}{dt} = -6e^{-\frac{1}{5}t}$ **d** $\frac{ds}{dt} = -\frac{1}{5}(s - 50)$
e 0.8 g/L **f** 17 minutes

- 33 a** 60°C

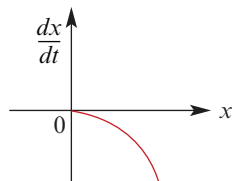


- c** $\frac{dT}{dt} = -14.4e^{-0.36t}$ **d** $\frac{dT}{dt} = -0.36(T - 20)$

- 34 a i** 30 g **ii** 12.28 g

b $\frac{dx}{dt} = \frac{-300\lambda e^{\lambda t}}{(5e^{\lambda t} - 3)^2}$

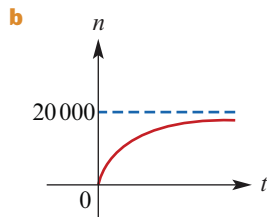
- c ii**



- 35 a iii** $a = \frac{1}{2}$ or $a = 1$

- iv** If $a = \frac{1}{2}$, then $B = \frac{1}{2} \ln 2$

- v** $A = 20\,000$



c $\frac{\ln 0.1}{\frac{1}{2} \ln(\frac{1}{2})} = \frac{2 \ln 10}{\ln 2} \approx 6.644$

After 6.65 hours, the population is 18 000

- 36 a** $k = 0.235$ **b** 22.7°C **c** 7.17 minutes

- 37 a i** $5 \ln\left(\frac{4}{3}\right) \approx 1.44$ minutes

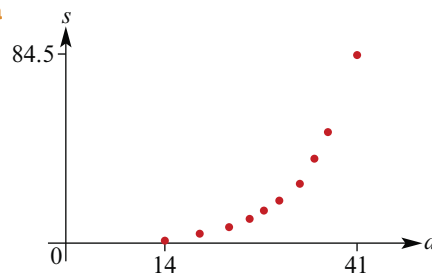
- ii** $5 \ln 2 \approx 3.47$ minutes

- iii** $5 \ln 4 \approx 6.93$ minutes

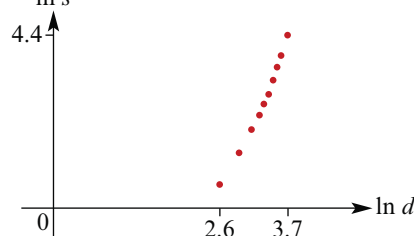
- b** $8(1 - e^{-\frac{7}{5}}) \approx 6.03$ grams

- c** $x = 8(1 - e^{-\frac{t}{5}})$

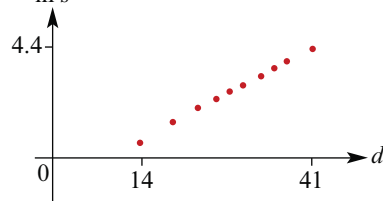
- 38 a**



- b** $\ln s$



- c** $\ln s$



- d** $\ln s = 0.139d - 1.243$, $s = 0.289e^{0.139d}$

- 39 a i** 140 minutes **ii** 114 minutes

- iii** 102 minutes

- b** $T'(t) = -\frac{25}{t+1}$

- i** -136 seconds/day

- ii** -48 seconds/day

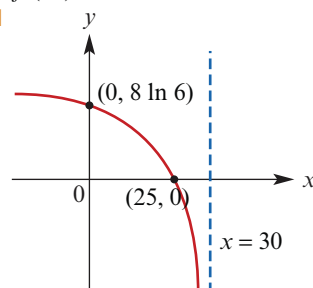
- iii** -29 seconds/day

- c** 25 days

- 40 a** $a = 30$ **b** $(0, 8 \ln 6)$, $(25, 0)$

- c** $f'(20) = -0.8$

- d**



- 41 a** $t \approx 34.66$ years

- b** $t \approx 9.12$ years

Multiple-choice questions

- 1 A 2 B 3 D 4 C 5 D
 6 B 7 A 8 C 9 A 10 C
 11 D 12 A 13 C 14 C 15 B
 16 B 17 D 18 D 19 B 20 B
 21 A 22 D 23 D 24 C 25 A
 26 C 27 A 28 C

Chapter 6

Exercise 6A

- 1 a $5 \cos(5x)$ b $-5 \sin(5x)$
 c $2 \sin x \cos x$ d $-2x \sin(x^2 + 1)$
 e $2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
 f $-2 \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
 g $6 \sin^2\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) \cos\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$
 h $-6 \sin\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \cos^2\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
 2 a $-2x \sin(x^2)$ b $2e^{2x+3} \cos(e^{2x+3})$
 c $-5(3x^2 + 2x + 2) \sin(x^3 + x^2 + 2x + 1)$
 d $x(3x - 4) \sin(x^3 - 2x^2)$
 e $-2xe^{x^2} \sin(e^{x^2})$ f $-\frac{1}{5}e^{-\frac{x}{5}} \cos(e^{-\frac{x}{5}})$
 3 a $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \sqrt{2}$ b 1, 0 c 2, 0
 d 0, 0 e 1, 0 f 0, -4
 4 a $-5 \sin(x) - 6 \cos(3x)$
 b $-\sin x + \cos x$
 5 a $-\frac{\pi}{90} \sin x^\circ$ b $\frac{\pi}{60} \cos x^\circ$ c $\frac{\pi}{60} \cos(3x)^\circ$
 6 a $\tan x$ b $-\frac{\cos x}{\sin x}$
 c $2 \cos(x) e^{2 \sin x}$ d $-2 \sin(2x) e^{\cos(2x)}$
 7 $\frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$
 8 $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$
 9 1.848, 2.466, 3.096

Exercise 6B

- 1 a $20x^4 + 36x^2 + 4x$ b $9x^{\frac{1}{2}} + \frac{3}{2}x^{-\frac{1}{2}}$
 c $3(2x - 1)^2(8x - 1)$ d $8x(2x^2 + 1)(6x^2 + 1)$
 e $5(3x + 1)^{\frac{1}{2}}(3x + 4)$ f $\frac{5x^2 - 8x + 1}{\sqrt{2x - 4}}$
 g $x^2(3x^2 + 4x + 3)(3x^2 + 2x + 1)^{-2}$
 h $2x^3(5x^2 - 2)(2x^2 - 1)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$
 i $2x\sqrt[3]{x^2 + 2x} + \frac{2x^2(x + 1)}{3\sqrt[3]{(x^2 + 2x)^2}}$
 j $\frac{4(5x^2 - 4)^2(5x^2 + 2)}{x^3}$

$$\text{k } \frac{3(x^6 - 16)}{x^4} \quad \text{l } \frac{2x^3(9x^2 - 8)}{5\sqrt[5]{(x^3 - x)^4}}$$

- 2 a $e^x(x^2 + 2x + 1)$
 b $e^{2x}(2x^3 + 3x^2 + 6x + 5)$
 c $2e^{4x+1}(x + 1)(2x + 3)$
 d $\frac{-8x - 7}{2e^{4x}\sqrt{x + 1}}$
 3 a $1 + \ln x$ b $2x + 4x \ln x$ c $e^x \ln x + \frac{e^x}{x}$
 d $1 + \ln(-x)$
 4 a $\frac{2x^3(2 - x)}{e^{2x}}$ b $2e^{2x+3}$
 c $\frac{3}{2}(2e^{2x} + 1)(e^{2x} + x)^{\frac{1}{2}}$ d $\frac{e^x(x - 1)}{x^2}$
 e $xe^{\frac{1}{2}x^2}$ f $-x^2e^{-x}$
 5 a $e^x(f'(x) + f(x))$ b $\frac{e^x(f(x) - f'(x))}{[f(x)]^2}$
 c $f'(x)e^{f(x)}$ d $2e^x f'(x)f(x) + [f(x)]^2 e^x$
 6 a $3x^2 \cos(x) - x^3 \sin(x)$
 b $2x \cos x - (1 + x^2) \sin x$
 c $-e^{-x} \sin x + e^{-x} \cos x$
 d $6 \cos x - 6x \sin x$
 e $3 \cos(3x) \cos(4x) - 4 \sin(4x) \sin(3x)$
 f $12 \sin x + 12x \cos x$
 g $2xe^{\sin x} + x^2 \cos x e^{\sin x}$
 h $2x \cos^2 x - 2x^2 \cos x \sin x$
 7 a $-e^\pi$ b 0
 8 2

Exercise 6C

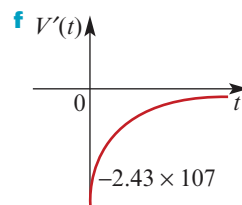
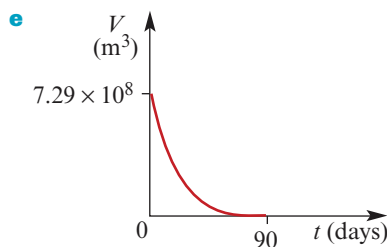
- 1 a $\frac{4}{(x + 4)^2}$ b $\frac{4x}{(x^2 + 1)^2}$ c $\frac{x^{-\frac{1}{2}} - x^{\frac{1}{2}}}{2(1 + x)^2}$
 d $\frac{(x + 2)^2(x - 3)(x - 1)}{(x^2 + 1)^2}$ e $\frac{2 + 2x - x^2}{(x^2 + 2)^2}$
 f $\frac{-4x}{(x^2 - 1)^2}$ g $\frac{x^2 + 4x + 1}{(x^2 + x + 1)^2}$
 h $\frac{-2(4x^3 + 3x^2 + 1)}{(2x^3 + 2x)^2}$
 2 a 81, 378 b 0, 0 c 0, 0
 d $\frac{1}{2}, 0$ e $\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}$
 3 a $\frac{2x^2 + x + 1}{\sqrt{x^2 + 1}}$ b $\frac{x(7x^3 + 3x + 4)}{2\sqrt{x^3 + 1}}$
 c $\frac{5}{(x + 3)^2}$
 4 a $\frac{3e^x - 2e^{4x}}{(3 + e^{3x})^2}$ b $-\left(\frac{(x + 1) \sin(x) + \cos(x)}{(x + 1)^2}\right)$
 c $\frac{x - x \ln(x) + 1}{x(x + 1)^2}$
 5 a $\frac{1 - \ln x}{x^2}$ b $\frac{1 + x^2 - 2x^2 \ln x}{x(1 + x^2)^2}$
 6 a $\frac{9e^{3x}}{(3 + e^{3x})^2}$ b $\frac{-2e^x}{(e^x - 1)^2}$ c $\frac{-8e^{2x}}{(e^{2x} - 2)^2}$
 7 a -2 b -6π c $-e^\pi$ d $-\frac{1}{\pi}$

Exercise 6D

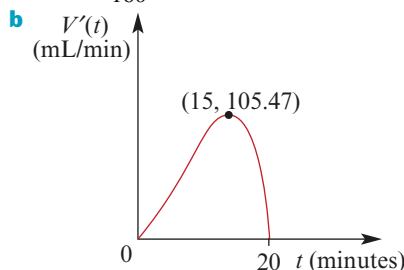
- 1** $y = 4x - 5$
2 $y = -\frac{1}{3}x - 1$
3 $y = x - 2$ and $y = -x + 3$
4 $y = 18x + 1$, $y = -\frac{1}{18}x + 1$
5 $\left(\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{11}{4}\right)$, $c = -\frac{29}{4}$
6 a i $y = 2x - 3$ **ii** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{1}{2}$
b i $y = -3x - 1$ **ii** $y = \frac{1}{3}x - 1$
c i $y = -x - 2$ **ii** $y = x$
d i $y = 8x + 2$ **ii** $y = -\frac{1}{8}x - \frac{49}{8}$
e i $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 1$ **ii** $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 1$
f i $y = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $y = -2x + 3$
g i $y = \frac{2}{3}x + \frac{4}{3}$ **ii** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + \frac{7}{2}$
h i $y = 4x - 16$ **ii** $y = -\frac{1}{4}x - \frac{15}{2}$
i i $y = -2$ **ii** $x = 2$
j i $y = 4x - 4$ **ii** $y = -\frac{1}{4}x + \frac{1}{4}$
7 $y = 56x - 160$
8 a $y = -1$ **b** $y = \frac{3}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}$
c $y = -2x - 1$ **d** $y = -4x + 5$
9 a $y = 2x$ **b** $y = -1$
c $y = -x + \pi + 1$ **d** $y = x$
10 a $y = 2$ **b** $y = x$
c $y = 4e^2x - 3e^2$ **d** $y = \frac{e}{2}(x + 1)$
e $y = 3ex - 2e$ **f** $y = 4e^{-2}$
11 a $y = x - 1$ **b** $y = 2x - 1$ **c** $y = kx - 1$
12 a $x = 0$ **b** $x = 0$ **c** $x = 4$
d $x = -5$ **e** $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ **f** $x = -5$
13 $a = 1$
14 $a = e$
15 $a = 0$
16 $a = 0$ or $a = \frac{3}{2}$
17 $OA = \frac{\pi - 2}{2}$

Exercise 6E

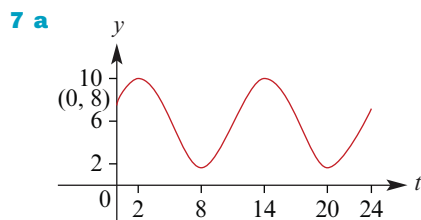
- 1 a** 21 **b** $3h + 18$ **c** 18
2 a $\frac{dV}{dt}$ **b** $\frac{dS}{dr}$ **c** $\frac{dV}{dx}$
3 Wanes by 0.006 units per day
4 a $-3 \times 10^3(90 - t)^2$ **b** 90 days
c $7.29 \times 10^8 \text{ m}^3$ **d** 80 days



5 a $V'(t) = \frac{t^3}{160}(20 - t)$

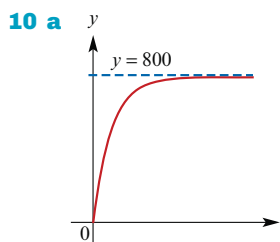


- c** $t = 15$
6 a $t \approx 100$, $t \approx 250$, $t \approx 500$
b $\approx 430\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$ **c** $\approx 270\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$
d $100 < t < 250$, $500 < t < 600$



- b** 2 a.m. **c** $-\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}$ metres per hour
d $d'(t) = -\frac{2\pi}{3} \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
e 5 a.m., 11 a.m., 5 p.m., 11 p.m.
 Maximum magnitude = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ metres per hour
8 $\frac{dy}{dx} = 3 - 2 \sin x$, gradient always positive

- 9 a** 4.197 **b** -0.4



- b i** 143 **ii** 15
c 38
- 11 a** 3.012 kg **b** 6.93 hours
c i 16.094 hours **ii** 46.052 hours
d $\frac{dm}{dt} = -0.1m$
- 12 a** $A = 50, k = 0.15$ **b** 7.5 people per day
c 21.89 days
- 13 a** minimum: 3.5 tonnes maximum: 6.5 tonnes
b $\frac{dQ}{dt} = \frac{\pi}{4} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$
c $t = 0, t = 6, t = 12, t = 18, t = 24$
- 14 a** $\frac{dx}{dt} = \left(\frac{1}{4} - \frac{23t}{80}\right)e^{-\frac{23t}{20}}$
b 52 minutes; 0.080 **c** $x < \frac{20}{23}$ and $x > \frac{20}{23}$

Exercise 6F

- 1 a** -6 cm/s **b** $t = 3, x = -1$
c -2 cm/s **d** $\frac{5}{2}$ cm/s
- 2 a** -3 cm, 24 cm/s **b** $v = 3t^2 - 22t + 24$
c $t = \frac{4}{3}, t = 6$ **d** $x = \frac{319}{27}, x = -39$
e $\frac{476}{27}$ cm **f** $\frac{1988}{27}$ cm
- 3 a i** 50 m **ii** 10 m
b $t = 9, t = 21$
c $v = \frac{10\pi}{3} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right), a = -\frac{5\pi^2}{9} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$
d $\frac{10\pi}{3}$ m/s; $t = 0, 6, 12, 18, 24; x = 30$
e $\frac{5\pi^2}{9}$ m/s²; $t = 3, 9, 15, 21; x = 50, 10$
f 160 m
- 4 a** $v = 6t^2 - 18t + 12$ **b** $a = 12t - 18$
c $t = 1, x = 5; t = 2, x = 4$
d $t = \frac{3}{2}, x = \frac{9}{2}$
- 5 a** 8 cm **b** 2 cm/s **c** $t = 1, x = 9$
d -2 cm/s²
- 6 a** $v = \frac{\sqrt{2}t}{\sqrt{t^2 + 1}}$ **b** 1 cm/s
c $a = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{\sqrt{(t^2 + 1)^3}}$ **d** $\frac{1}{2}$ cm/s²
- 7** When $t = 0: v = 0.4$ m/s, $a = 0.4$ m/s²;
 When $t = 1: v = 0.4e$ m/s, $a = 0.4e$ m/s²;
 When $t = 2: v = 0.4e^2$ m/s, $a = 0.4e^2$ m/s²
- 8 a** $2e + 3 \approx 8.44$ cm/second
b $v = 1 - \frac{5}{t}$ and $a = \frac{5}{t^2}$ **c** $t > 5$
- 9 a** $t = 0, t = \frac{\pi}{3}, t = \frac{2\pi}{3}$
b $a = e^{-2t}(3 \cos(3t) - 2 \sin(3t))$
c $t = 0.328$

- 10 a** $a = -\frac{1}{t+d}$ **b** $d = 10$ **c** $t = e^c - 10$
- 11 a** $v = 5e^{-0.5t}$ **b** $a = -2.5e^{-0.5t}$
c $t = 2 \ln 2, v = 2.5$ metres per minute
- 12 a** $v(t) = -\frac{17\pi}{8} \sin\left(\frac{5\pi t}{4}\right)$
b Maximum horizontal distance is 3.8 m and this occurs when $t = 0, 1.6, 3.2, 4.8$.
 Minimum horizontal distance is 0.4 m and this occurs when $t = 0.8, 2.4, 4$.
c Maximum speed is $\frac{17\pi}{8}$ m/s and this occurs when $t = 0.4, 1.2, 2, 2.8, 3.6, 4.4$.
 Minimum speed is 0 m/s and this occurs when $t = 0, 0.8, 1.6, 2.4, 3.2, 4.8$
- 13 a** $a = -5, b = \frac{\pi}{5}$
b $v(t) = \pi \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{5}\right)$ and $a(t) = \frac{\pi^2}{5} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{5}\right)$
c acceleration = $-\frac{\pi^2 y}{25}$
d $t = \frac{5}{2}, t = \frac{15}{2}$

Chapter 6 review

Short-response questions

- 1 a** $1 - \frac{x}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ **b** $\frac{-4x^2 - 2x + 12}{(x^2 + 3)^2}$
c $\frac{3}{2\sqrt{1+3x}}$ **d** $\frac{-2}{x^2} - \frac{1}{2}x^{-\frac{3}{2}}$
e $\frac{3x-15}{2\sqrt{x-3}}$ **f** $\frac{1+2x^2}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}$ **g** $\frac{4x}{(x^2+1)^2}$
h $\frac{-x^2+1}{(x^2+1)^2}$ **i** $\frac{10x}{3}(2+5x^2)^{-\frac{2}{3}}$
j $\frac{-2x^2-2x+4}{(x^2+2)^2}$ **k** $4x(3x^2+2)^{-\frac{1}{3}}$
- 2 a** -6 **b** 1 **c** 5 **d** $\frac{1}{6}$
- 3 a** $\frac{1}{x+2}$ **b** $3 \cos(3x+2)$
c $-\frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **d** $(2x-2)e^{x^2-2x}$ **e** $\frac{1}{x-3}$
f $2\pi \cos(2\pi x)$
g $6 \sin(3x+1) \cos(3x+1)$ **h** $\frac{1}{2x\sqrt{\ln x}}$
i $\frac{2-2 \ln(2x)}{x^2}$
j $2x \sin(2\pi x) + 2\pi x^2 \cos(2\pi x)$
- 4 a** $e^x \sin(2x) + 2e^x \cos(2x)$
b $4x \ln x + 2x$ **c** $\frac{1-3 \ln x}{x^4}$
d $2 \cos(2x) \cos(3x) - 3 \sin(2x) \sin(3x)$
e $\frac{2}{\cos^2(2x)}$
f $-9 \cos^2(3x+2) \sin(3x+2)$
g $2x \sin^2(3x) + 6x^2 \cos(3x) \sin(3x)$

5 b $\frac{3}{2} < x < 4$

6 a $xf'(x) + f(x)$ b $\frac{-f'(x)}{[f(x)]^2}$
 c $\frac{f(x) - xf'(x)}{[f(x)]^2}$ d $\frac{2xf(x) - 2x^2f'(x)}{[f(x)]^3}$

7 a $y = -x$ b $(0, 0)$

8 $y = 6ax - 3a^2$, $P(0, -3a^2)$

9 a $y = 3x - 3$ b $x = \frac{11}{3}$

10 a 5π square units/unit

b 6π square units/unit

11 a $x \neq 1$; $f'(x) = \frac{4}{5}(x-1)^{-\frac{1}{5}}$

b $y = \frac{4}{5}x - \frac{3}{5}$ and $y = -\frac{4}{5}x + 1$ c $(1, \frac{1}{5})$

12 When $t = 0$: $v = 0.25$ m/s, $a = 0.25$ m/s²
 When $t = 1$: $v = 0.25e$ m/s, $a = 0.25e$ m/s²
 When $t = 4$: $v = 0.25e^4$ m/s, $a = 0.25e^4$ m/s²

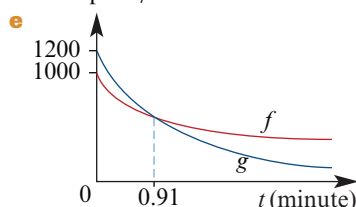
13 $t = 1.107$

14 $y = ex$

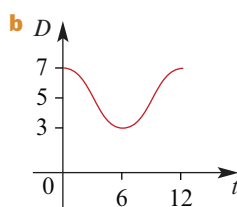
15 a $y = \frac{1}{e}x$ b $y = \frac{x}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{\pi}{2\sqrt{2}} + \sqrt{2}$

c $y = x - \frac{3\pi}{2}$ d $y = \frac{-2}{\sqrt{e}}x - 1$

16 a 1.386 minutes b 2200, 5.38%
 c 66.4 spores/minute d 0.9116 minutes



17 a $p = 5$
 $q = 2$
 $r = 30$



c $-\frac{2}{3}$ metres per hour

d $\frac{dD}{dt} = -\frac{\pi}{3} \sin(30t)^\circ$

e A ship can enter 2 hours after low tide

18 a $(1, -6)$

b $3(x-1)^2 + 3$

c $3(x-1)^2 + 3 > 3$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$

19 a $f'(x) = \frac{3\,000\,000e^{-0.3x}}{(1 + 100e^{-0.3x})^2}$

b i 294 kangaroos per year

ii 933 kangaroos per year

21 a Max height 0.7 m first occurs at $t = \frac{1}{6}$ s

b $\frac{2}{3}$ s c 0.6π m/s, 0.6π m/s, 0 m/s

22 a $A = 23$, $k = \frac{1}{15} \ln \frac{23}{8}$ b 8.48°C

c $\frac{dT}{dt} = -23ke^{-kt}$ where $k = \frac{1}{15} \ln \frac{23}{8}$

d $\frac{dT}{dt} = k(2 - T)$

23 a i $r = \frac{1}{6}$ ii $p = 12$, $q = 8$

b $T'(3) = -\frac{4\pi}{3}$, i.e. length of night is decreasing by $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ hours/month

$T'(9) = \frac{4\pi}{3}$, i.e. length of night is increasing by $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ hours/month

c $-\frac{8}{3}$ hours/month

d $t = 9$, i.e. after 9 months

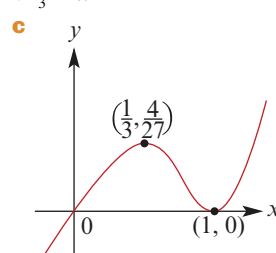
24 a 4500

b 28.53 years

c i 0 ii 111.16 iii 213.19

25 a $a = 1$, $c = 1$, $b = -2$, $d = 0$

b $\frac{1}{3} < x < 1$



26 a $y = ex$

b $y = 2ex$

c $y = kex$

e i $k = \frac{1}{e}$ or $k \leq 0$

ii $k > \frac{1}{e}$

Multiple-choice questions

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 D 5 B

6 A 7 D 8 B 9 D 10 C

11 A 12 D 13 A 14 D 15 D

16 D 17 A 18 C 19 C 20 D

21 C 22 B 23 C 24 A 25 C

Chapter 7

Exercise 7A

1 a 0

b $56x^6$

c $\frac{-1}{4\sqrt{x^3}}$

d $48(2x+1)^2$ e $-\sin x$

f $-\cos x$

g e^x h $\frac{-1}{x^2}$

i $\frac{2}{(x+1)^3}$

j $-4 \sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

- 2 a** $\frac{15\sqrt{x}}{4}$ **b** $8(x^2 + 3)^2(7x^2 + 3)$
c $-\frac{1}{4}\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **d** $-48\cos(4x + 1)$
e $2e^{2x+1}$ **f** $\frac{-4}{(2x+1)^2}$ **g** $12x^2 + 6$
h $(x^3 + 6x^2 + 6x)e^x$ **i** $\frac{1}{x}$
- 3 a** $f''(x) = 24e^{3-2x}$
b $f''(x) = 8e^{-0.5x^2}(1 - x^2)$ **c** $f''(x) = 0$
d $f''(x) = \frac{-2(x^2 + 2x + 2)}{(x^2 + 2x)^2}$
e $f''(x) = 360(1 - 3x)^3$
f $f''(x) = (4x^2 + 2)e^{x^2}$
g $f''(x) = \frac{-4}{(x+1)^3}$ **h** $f''(x) = \frac{3}{4\sqrt{(1-x)^5}}$
i $f''(x) = -5\sin(3-x)$
j $f''(x) = -9\cos(1-3x)$
k $f''(x) = -\frac{1}{9}\sin\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ **l** $f''(x) = -\frac{1}{16}\cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$
- 4 a** 1 **b** -1 **c** -1 **d** 0
- 5 a** $x = -\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $x = \frac{1}{15}$ **c** $x = \pm\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
- 6 a** $x = -2$ **b** $x = 0$ or $x = -3$
c $x = 0$, $x = -3 + \sqrt{3}$ or $x = -3 - \sqrt{3}$
d $x = e^2$ **e** $x = e^{\frac{3}{2}}$
- 7 a i** $\frac{\sin x - 1}{\cos^2 x}$ **ii** $\frac{(\sin(x) - 1)^2}{\cos^3 x}$
b i $\sqrt{2} - 1$ **ii** $\sqrt{2} - 2$ **iii** $3\sqrt{2} - 4$
c i $\sqrt{2} + 1$ **ii** $-\sqrt{2} - 2$
iii $3\sqrt{2} + 4$
- 8 a** $t = 0$, $x = 9$; $t = 4$, $x = 5$; $t = 8$, $x = 9$
b $-\frac{\pi^2}{8} \text{ m/s}^2$, $\frac{\pi^2}{8} \text{ m/s}^2$, $-\frac{\pi^2}{8} \text{ m/s}^2$
- 9 a** $v = 2e^{-2t} - e^{-t}$, $a = e^{-t} - 4e^{-2t}$
b $\frac{1}{4} \text{ m}$, $t = \ln 2$ **c** $-\frac{1}{2} \text{ m/s}^2$
d $\frac{1}{8} \text{ m/s}$
- 10 a** $2 < t < \frac{7}{2}$ **b** $t > 5$
- 11 a** $v(t) = -\frac{20}{t+1}$, $a(t) = \frac{20}{(t+1)^2}$
b $a(v) = \frac{(v(t))^2}{20}$ **c** $a(4) = \frac{4}{5} \text{ ms}^{-2}$
d $e^{\frac{5}{2}} - 1 \approx 11.18$ seconds
- 12 a** $v(t) = \frac{4}{t-1}$ **b** $a(t) = -\frac{4}{(t-1)^2}$
- 13 a i** $e^{-\frac{\pi}{2}}$ **ii** $-e^{-\frac{3\pi}{2}}$ **iii** $e^{-\frac{5\pi}{2}}$
 $\frac{s(\frac{3}{2})}{s(\frac{1}{2})} = \frac{s(\frac{5}{2})}{s(\frac{3}{2})} = -e^{-\pi}$
b $v(t) = \pi e^{-\pi t}(\cos \pi t - \sin \pi t)$,
 $a(t) = -2\pi^2 e^{-\pi t} \cos(\pi t)$
c i $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{5}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{2}$

- 14 a** $a(t) = -\frac{b}{(bt+c)^2}$
b $a(v) = -bv^2$
c $b = \frac{1}{6400}$, $c = \frac{1}{80}$

Exercise 7B

- 1 a** $(2, -16)$, $(-2, 16)$ **b** $(1, -2)$
c $(0, 0)$, $(1, 1)$ **d** $(4, 48)$
e $(0, 0)$, $\left(\frac{2}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{16}{3}\right)$, $\left(\frac{-2}{\sqrt{3}}, \frac{16}{3}\right)$ **f** $\left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{14}{3}\right)$
g $(3, 2)$ **h** $(0, -10)$, $(2, 6)$
- 2 a** $(0, 1)$
b $\left(\frac{1}{3e}, -\frac{1}{3e}\right)$
c $(0, 1)$, $(-\pi, 1)$, $\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}, -1\right)$, $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, -1\right)$, $(\pi, 1)$
d $(-1, -e^{-1})$
e $(0, 0)$, $(2, 4e^{-2})$
f $(e^{-1}, -2e^{-1})$
- 3** $\left(\frac{1}{4}, -2\ln 2 - 1\right)$
4 $(2, \ln 2 + 1)$
5 $(0, 0)$, $\left(\frac{2}{a}, \frac{4}{e^2 a^2}\right)$
6 a $a = 6$ **b** $b = 3$
7 $b = -2$, $c = 1$, $d = 3$
8 $a = 2$, $b = -4$, $c = -1$
9 $a = \frac{2}{3}$, $b = -2\frac{1}{2}$, $c = -3$, $d = 7\frac{1}{2}$
- 10 a** $a = 2$ and $b = 9$ **b** $(-1, -5)$
- 11** $x = \frac{1}{2}$ or $x = \frac{1-4n}{2n+2}$
12 $x = \pm 1$ or $x = 0$
13 $(1, \frac{1}{2})$, $(-1, -\frac{1}{2})$
14 $a = 9e$

Exercise 7C

- 1 a** $x = 0$

	0	
+	0	+
inflexion		

- b** $x = 2$, $x = -5$

	-5		2	
+	0	-	0	+
max.		min.		

- c** $x = -1$, $x = \frac{1}{2}$

	-1		$\frac{1}{2}$	
+	0	-	0	+
max.		min.		

d $x = -3, x = 4$

	-3		4	
-	0	+	0	-
min.		max.		

e $x = -3, x = 4$

	-3		4	
+	0	-	0	+
max.		min.		

f $x = 0, x = \frac{27}{5}$

	0		$\frac{27}{5}$	
+	0	-	0	+
max.		min.		

g $x = 1, x = 3$

	1		3	
+	0	-	0	+
max.		min.		

h $x = 1, x = 3$

	1		3	
-	0	+	0	-
min.		max.		

2 a $x = -2$ (max), $x = 2$ (min)

b $x = 0$ (min), $x = 2$ (max)

c $x = \frac{1}{3}$ (max), $x = 3$ (min)

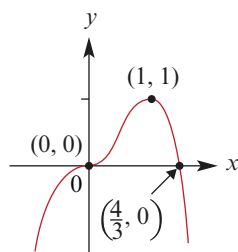
d $x = 0$ (inflection)

e $x = -2$ (inflection), $x = 0$ (min)

f $x = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ (max), $x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ (min)

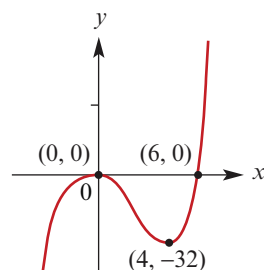
3 a i $(0, 0), (\frac{4}{3}, 0)$

ii $(0, 0)$ inflection, $(1, 1)$ max



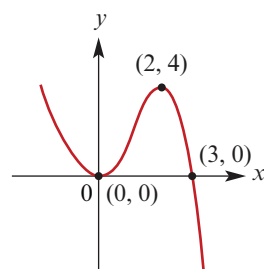
b i $(0, 0), (6, 0)$

ii $(0, 0)$ max, $(4, -32)$ min



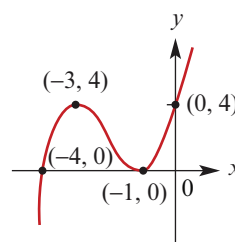
c i $(0, 0), (3, 0)$

ii $(0, 0)$ min, $(2, 4)$ max



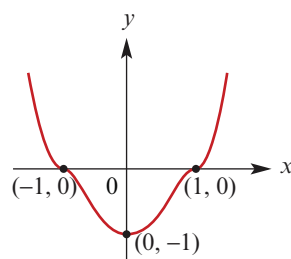
d i $(-4, 0), (-1, 0), (0, 4)$

ii $(-3, 4)$ max, $(-1, 0)$ min



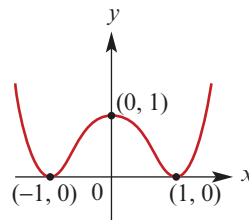
e i $(-1, 0), (0, -1), (1, 0)$

ii $(-1, 0)$ infl, $(0, -1)$ min, $(1, 0)$ infl



f i $(-1, 0), (0, 1), (1, 0)$

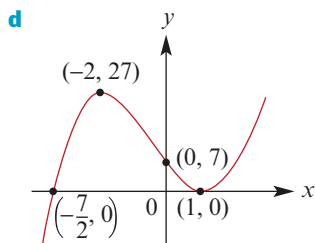
ii $(-1, 0)$ min, $(0, 1)$ max, $(1, 0)$ min



4 a $(-2, 27)$ max, $(1, 0)$ min

b $(1, 0)$ is a turning point

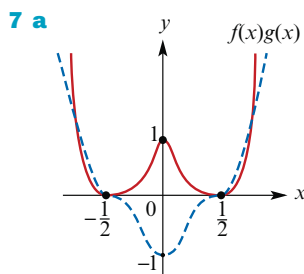
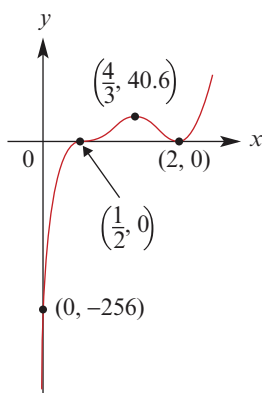
c $(-\frac{7}{2}, 0)$, $(0, 7)$



5 b $a = 3$, $b = 2$, $(0, 2)$ min, $(-2, 6)$ max

6 a $(0, -256)$, $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$, $(2, 0)$

b $(\frac{1}{2}, 0)$ inflection, $(\frac{4}{3}, 40.6)$ max, $(2, 0)$ min



b i $x < -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ or $-\frac{1}{2} < x < \frac{1}{2}$ or $x > \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

ii $-\frac{\sqrt{66}}{12} < x < -\frac{1}{2}$ or $-\frac{1}{2} < x < 0$ or $x > \frac{\sqrt{66}}{12}$

8 a $(-2, 0)$ max, $(\frac{4}{3}, -18\frac{14}{27})$ min

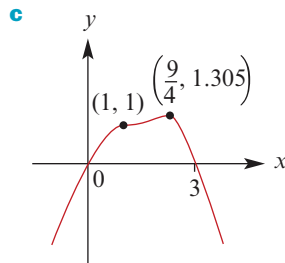
b No stationary points

9 a $(0, -1)$ stationary point of inflection, $(-1, -1)$ minimum

b $(0, -1)$ stationary point of inflection, $(-1.5, -2.6875)$ minimum

c No stationary points, gradient is always positive

10 b $x \leq \frac{9}{4}$



11 a $x = -1$ (infl), $x = 1$ (min), $x = 5$ (max)

b $x = 0$ (max), $x = 2$ (min)

c $x = -4$ (min), $x = 0$ (max)

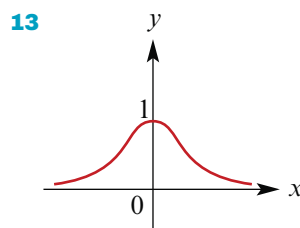
d $x = -3$ (min), $x = 2$ (infl)

12 a $(0, 0)$ local max;

$(2\sqrt{2}, -64)$ and $(-2\sqrt{2}, -64)$ local min

b $(0, 0)$ local max;

$(\pm 4\sqrt{\frac{m-1}{m}}, -\frac{16^m(m-1)^{m-1}}{m^m})$ local min



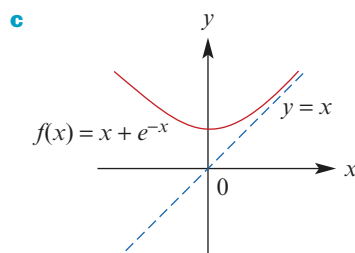
14 $-2 < x < 0$

15 $x < 1$; Max value = $\frac{100}{e^4} \approx 1.83$

16 a Min value = $f(0) = 0$

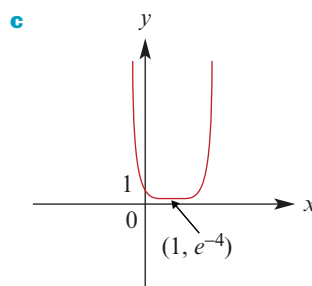
17 a $(0, 1)$ min

b $y = x$



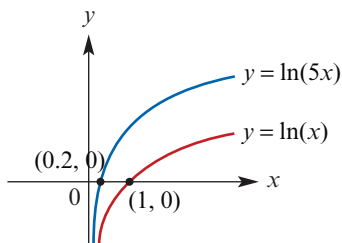
18 $p = 1$, $q = -6$, $r = 9$

19 a $(8x - 8)e^{4x^2 - 8x}$ **b** $(1, e^{-4})$ min

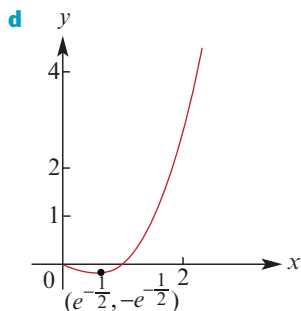


d $y = -\frac{1}{8}x + \frac{5}{4}$

- 20** Tangents are parallel for any given value of x .

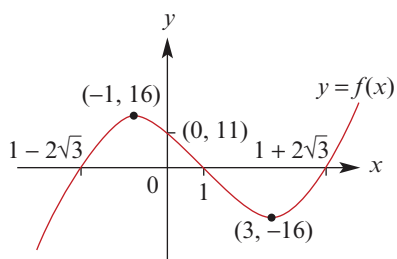


- 21 a** $2x \ln(x) + x$ **b** $x = 1$ **c** $x = e^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

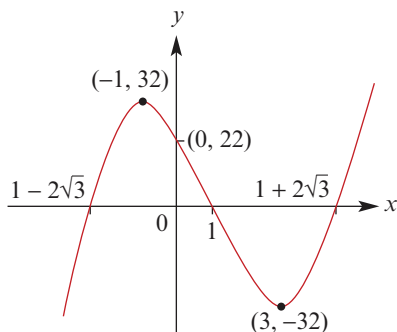


- 22** (e, e) , local minimum

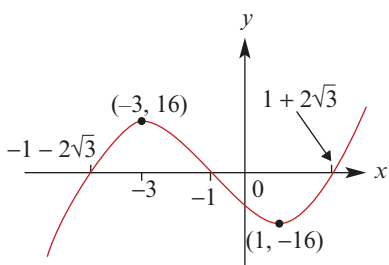
23 a



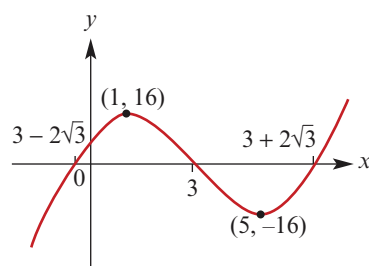
- b** Dilated by a factor of 2 from the x -axis:



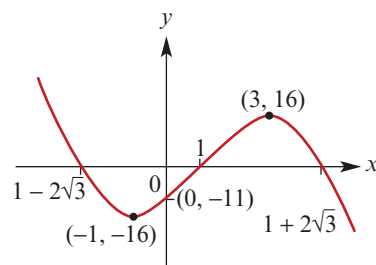
- c** Translated 2 units to the left:



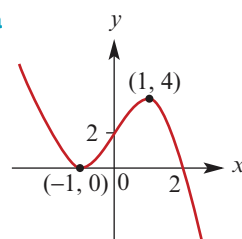
- d** Translated 2 units to the right:



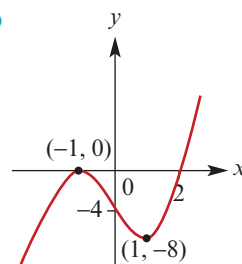
- e** Reflected in the x -axis:



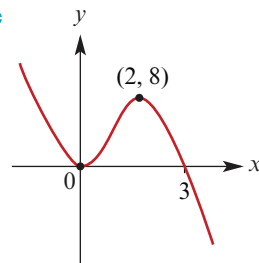
24 a



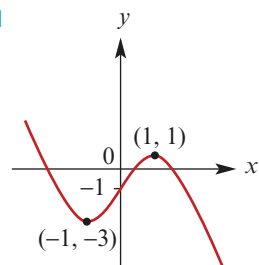
b

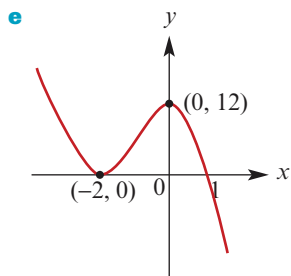


c



d





25 a $(a + \ell, 0)$, $(b + \ell, 0)$ **b** $(h + \ell, kp)$

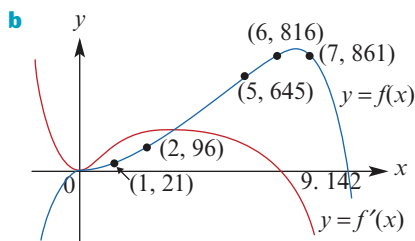
26 a Max $x = \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$; Min $x = 0, \pi, 2\pi$

b Max $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$; Min $x = \frac{5\pi}{6}$; Infl $x = \frac{3\pi}{2}$

c Max $x = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$; Min $x = \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$

d Max $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$; Infl $x = \pi$; Min $x = \frac{5\pi}{3}$

27 a $y = -x^4 + 8x^3 + 10x^2 + 4x$



Local max at (6.761, 867.07); No stationary

point of inflection: $\frac{dy}{dx} = 4$ when $x = 0$

c -960

d $x = 4.317$ or $x = 8.404$

Exercise 7D



2 a Point of inflection (0, 0);
Concave up on $(0, \infty)$

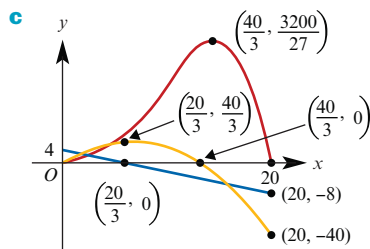
b Point of inflection $(\frac{1}{3}, -\frac{2}{27})$;
Concave up on $(\frac{1}{3}, \infty)$

c Point of inflection $(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{27})$;
Concave up on $(-\infty, \frac{1}{3})$

d Points of inflection (0, 0), $(\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{1}{16})$;
Concave up on $(-\infty, 0) \cup (\frac{1}{2}, \infty)$

3 a Local min (0, 0); local max $(\frac{40}{3}, \frac{3200}{27})$

b $(\frac{20}{3}, \frac{1600}{27})$; gradient = $\frac{40}{3}$



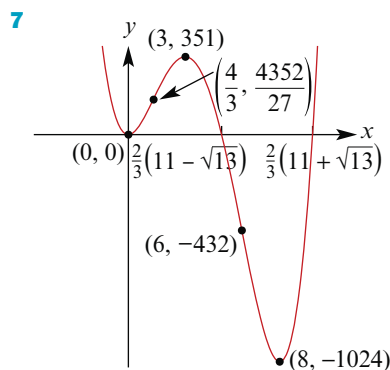
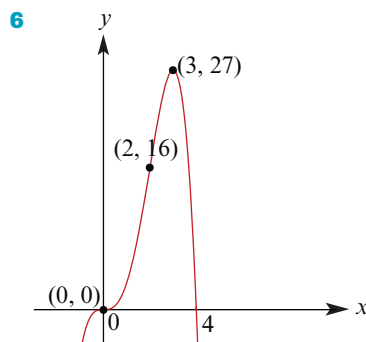
4 a i $6x^2 + 12x$ **ii** $12x + 12$

b Local min (0, -12); local max (-2, -4)

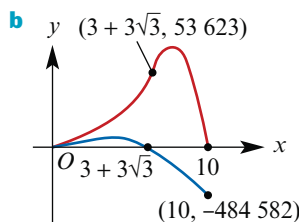
c (-1, -8)

5 a $f'(x) = \cos x$; $f''(x) = -\sin x$;
Local max $(\frac{\pi}{2}, 1)$; Local min $(\frac{3\pi}{2}, -1)$;
Point of inflection $(\pi, 0)$

b $f'(x) = e^x(x + 1)$; $f''(x) = e^x(x + 2)$;
Local min (-1, $-e^{-1}$);
Point of inflection $(-2, -2e^{-2})$

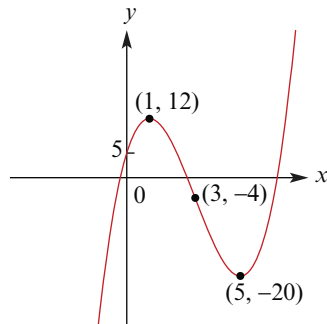


8 a $f'(x) = e^x(10 + 8x - x^2)$,
 $f''(x) = e^x(18 + 6x - x^2)$

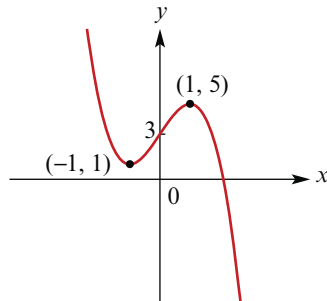


c $3 + 3\sqrt{3}$, $(3 + 3\sqrt{3}, 53\ 623)$

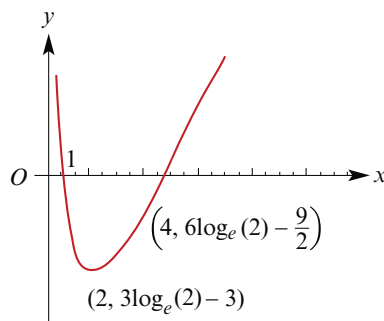
- 9** $(0, 0), (\pi, \pi), (2\pi, 2\pi), (3\pi, 3\pi), (4\pi, 4\pi)$
10 a $0, \pi, 2\pi$
b $0, \pi, 2\pi$
c $0, \frac{\pi}{2}, \pi, \frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi$
11 $\frac{d^2y}{dx^2} = 2a \neq 0$
12 a $\frac{3}{2} < x < 2$
b $1 < x < \frac{3}{2}$
13 a $(0, 0), -6$
b $(-1, -1), 8; (1, -1), -8$
c $(0, 3), 0$
d No points of inflection
e No points of inflection
f $(-\sqrt{3}, \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2}), \frac{-1}{4}; (0, 0), 2; (\sqrt{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}), \frac{-1}{4}$
14 a $\frac{-7\pi}{4}, \frac{-3\pi}{4}, \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}$
b $\frac{-3\pi}{2}, \frac{-\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$
16 a $f'(x) = 2x(1 + 2 \ln x)$
b $f''(x) = 2(3 + 2 \ln x)$
c Stationary point at $(e^{-\frac{1}{2}}, -e^{-1})$;
 point of inflection at $(e^{-\frac{3}{2}}, -3e^{-3})$
17 a $a = -9, b = 15, c = 5$
b



- 18 a** $a = -1, b = 3, c = 3$ **b** $x = -1$
c

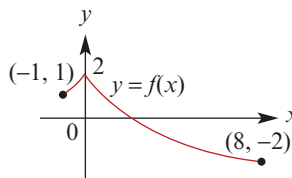


- 19** Local minimum at the point with coordinates $(2, 3 \log_e 2 - 3)$.
 Point of inflection at $(4, 6 \log_e 2 - \frac{9}{2})$.
 The x -axis intercepts of the graph occur at $x = 1$ and $x \approx 4.92$.



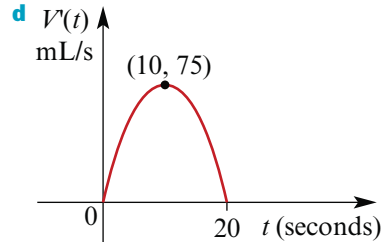
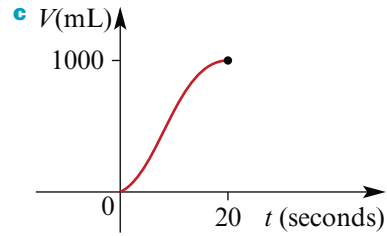
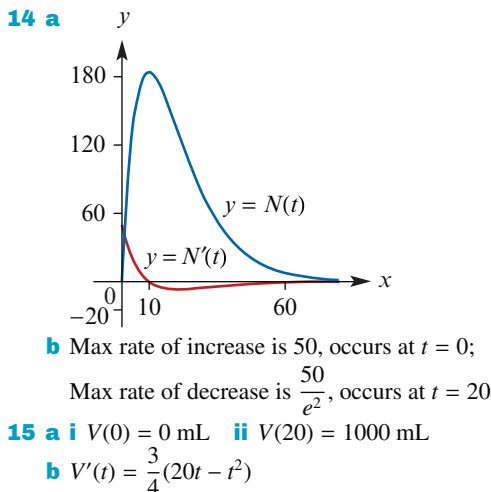
Exercise 7E

- 1** Absolute max = 2; Absolute min = -70
2 Absolute max = 15; Absolute min = -30
3 Absolute max = 0; Absolute min = -20.25
4 Absolute max = 2304; Absolute min = -8
5 b $\frac{dV}{dx} = 30x - 36x^2$
c Local max at $(\frac{5}{6}, \frac{125}{36})$
d Absolute max value is 3.456 when $x = 0.8$
e Absolute max value is $\frac{125}{36}$ when $x = \frac{5}{6}$
6 a $25 \leq y \leq 28$
b Absolute max = 125; Absolute min = 56
7 a $\frac{1}{(x-4)^2} - \frac{1}{(x-1)^2}$ **b** $(\frac{5}{2}, \frac{4}{3})$
c Absolute max = $\frac{3}{2}$; Absolute min = $\frac{4}{3}$
8 Absolute min = 2; Absolute max = $\frac{4\sqrt{3}}{3}$
9 b $\frac{dA}{dx} = \frac{1}{4}(x-5)$ **c** $x = 5$ **d** $\frac{61}{8} \text{ m}^2$
10 Absolute max = 12.1; Absolute min = 4
11 a $\frac{1}{(x-4)^2} - \frac{1}{(x+1)^2}$ **b** $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{4}{5})$
c Absolute max = $\frac{5}{4}$; Absolute min = $\frac{4}{5}$
12 Absolute max = $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$; Absolute min = -1
13 Absolute max = 1; Absolute min = $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$
14 Absolute max = 2; Absolute min = -2
15 Absolute max = $\frac{1}{e^2} + 2e^2$;
 Absolute min = $2\sqrt{2}$
16 Absolute max = $-\ln 10$;
 Absolute min = $-\frac{10}{e}$

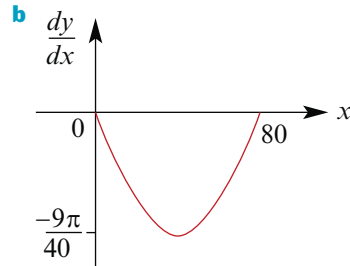


Exercise 7F

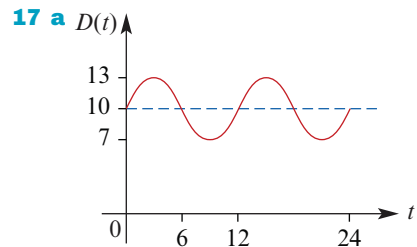
- 1 625 m^2
- 2 First = $\frac{4}{3}$; Second = $\frac{8}{3}$
- 3 Max value of P is 2500
- 4 Max area is $2 \text{ km} \times 1 \text{ km} = 2 \text{ km}^2$
- 5 $p = \frac{3}{2}$, $q = \frac{8}{3}$
- 6 b $V = \frac{75x - x^3}{2}$ c 125 cm^3
- 7 a i $n = 125$
ii Maximum daily profit is \$6090
- 8 12°C
- 9 8 mm for maximum; $\frac{4}{3}$ mm for minimum
- 10 a $8 \cos \theta$
b Area = $16(1 + \cos \theta) \sin \theta$;
Max area = $12\sqrt{3}$ square units
- 11 (1, 1)
- 12 a $\frac{75}{\cos \theta}$ seconds
b $220 - 60 \tan \theta$ seconds
c $\frac{dT}{d\theta} = \frac{75 \sin \theta - 60}{\cos^2 \theta}$
d $\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{5}\right) \approx 53.13^\circ$
e Min time $T = 265$ seconds occurs when distance BP is 400 metres
- 13 Max population $\frac{500}{e}$ occurs when $t = 10$



- e $t = 10 \text{ s}$, 75 mL/s
- 16 a $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{-9\pi}{40} \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{80}\right)$



- c $\left(40, \frac{-9\pi}{40}\right)$



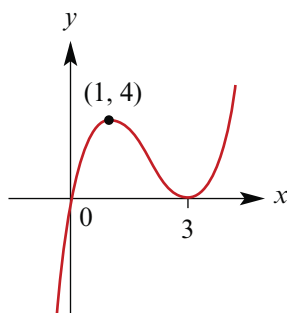
- b $t \in [0, 7] \cup [11, 19] \cup [23, 24]$
- c i 0 m/h ii $-\frac{\pi}{2} \text{ m/h}$ iii $\frac{\pi}{2} \text{ m/h}$
- d i $t = 0, 12, 24$ ii $t = 6, 18$

Chapter 7 review

Short-response questions

- 1 a $224(2x + 5)^6$ b $-4 \sin(2x)$
- c $-\frac{1}{9} \cos\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$ d $16e^{-4x}$
- e $-\frac{1}{x^2}$ f $-\frac{1}{\sin^2 x}$
- 2 a (1, 1) max; (0, 0) inflection
b $(-1, 0)$ max; $(1, -4)$ min
c $(-\sqrt{3}, 6\sqrt{3} + 1)$ max; $(\sqrt{3}, -6\sqrt{3} + 1)$ min

3


 4 $x = 1$ (inflection); $x = 2$ (minimum)

5 2

 6 a $\left(\frac{8}{3}, -\frac{1024}{27}\right)$ b $\left(\frac{\pi}{6}, 0\right), \left(\frac{7\pi}{6}, 0\right)$

 c $\left(2, \ln 2 + \frac{1}{2}\right)$ d $\left(e^2, \frac{e^2}{2}\right)$

 7 a $x = e^{-\frac{1}{2}}$ b $x = e^{-\frac{3}{2}}$

 8 a $x = -3$ b $x = 0$

 9 a $f'(x) = -2ckxe^{-kx^2}$,
 $f''(x) = 2ck(2kx^2 - 1)e^{-kx^2}$

 b $\left(\frac{1}{2}, e^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right), \left(-\frac{1}{2}, e^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)$

 c $k = 8$

 10 a $t = 2$ and $t = \sqrt{5}$

 b $v(t) = -\frac{9 - 2t^2}{\sqrt{9 - t^2}}$ $a(t) = -\frac{2x^3 - 27x}{(9 - x)^{\frac{3}{2}}}$

c 4.5 m

 d $t = \frac{3\sqrt{2}}{2}$

 11 a $v = te^{-3t}$

 b $a = (1 - 3t)e^{-3t}$

 c $\frac{1}{3e}$ m/s, $t = \frac{1}{3}$ s, $x = \frac{e - 2}{9e}$ m

 12 a $W = xe^{-x^2}$

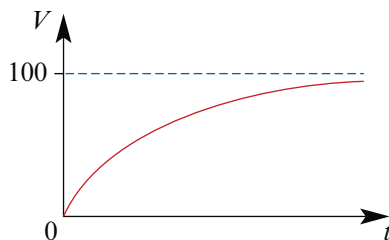
 b $\frac{dW}{dx} = (1 - 2x^2)e^{-x^2}$, $\frac{d^2W}{dx^2} = 2x(2x^2 - 3)e^{-x^2}$

 c $\left(\frac{\sqrt{6}}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{6}}{2}e^{-\frac{3}{2}}\right)$

 d Max area $W = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}e}$ occurs when $x = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$

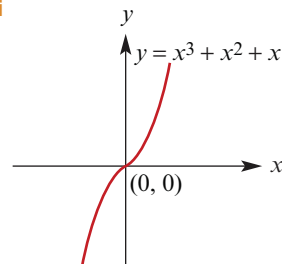
 13 $t = 5.25$

14 a


 b i $20e^{-0.2t}$ m/s² ii $20 - \frac{V}{5}$ m/s²

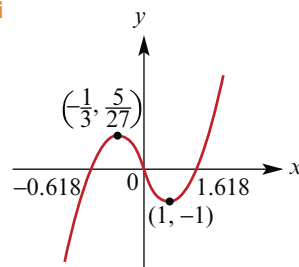
c 8.05 seconds

15 a i

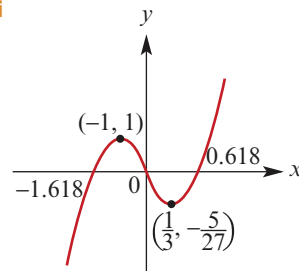


No stationary points

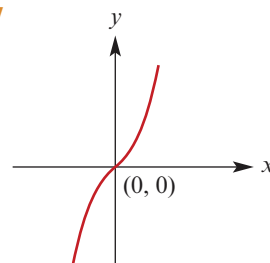
ii



iii



iv



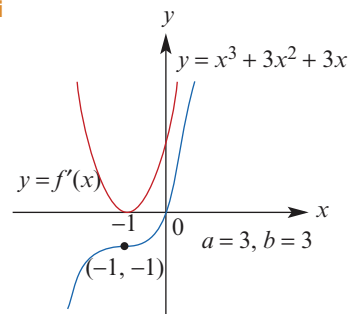
No stationary points

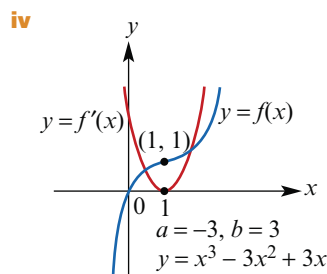
 b i $f'(x) = 3x^2 + 2ax + b$

 ii $x = \frac{-a \pm \sqrt{a^2 - 3b}}{3}$

 c ii $a = -3$ or $a = 3$; $(-1, -1)$, $(1, 1)$
 stationary points of inflection

iii





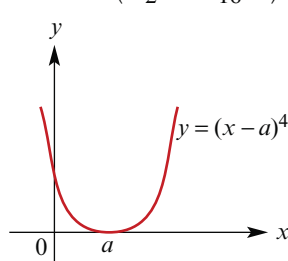
d $a^2 < 3b$

16 $x = e$

17 b i $a, b, \frac{a+b}{2}$ **ii** a, b

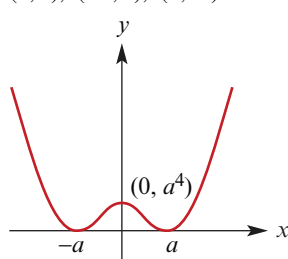
c $(a, 0), (b, 0), \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, \frac{(a-b)^4}{16}\right)$

e i



ii $(a, 0), (-a, 0), (0, a^4)$

iii



18 b i $a, \frac{3b+a}{4}$ **ii** a, b

c Local min at $\left(\frac{3b+a}{4}, \frac{-27}{256}(b-a)^4\right)$;
 Stationary point of inflection at $(a, 0)$

e $\left(-\frac{a}{2}, \frac{-27a^4}{16}\right)$ and $(a, 0)$

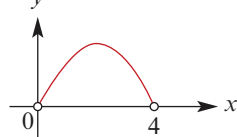
f i $b = -\frac{a}{3}$

19 a $y = 4x - x^2$ **b** $0 < x < 4$ **c** $y = 4, x = 2$

d Gradient is positive to the left of $x = 2$, and negative to the right of $x = 2$

e

f $0 < y < 4$



20 a $A = 4xy$

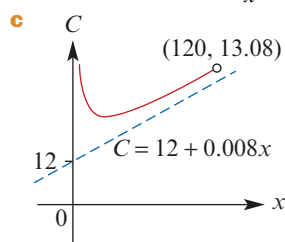
b $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 8$

c $A = 32x - \frac{8}{3}x^2$

d $x = 6, y = 4$

e 96 m^2

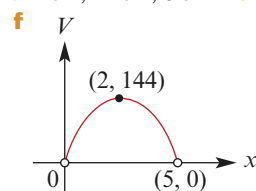
21 a i \$12.68 **ii** \$12.74
b $C = 12 + 0.008x + \frac{14.40}{x}$



d 42.43 km/h

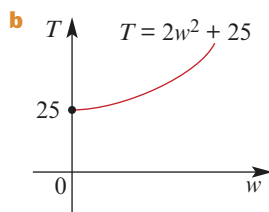
22 b $0 < x < 5$ **c** $x = 2$

d 2 cm, 12 cm, 6 cm **e** 144 cm^3



23 32 square units

24 a $k = 25$

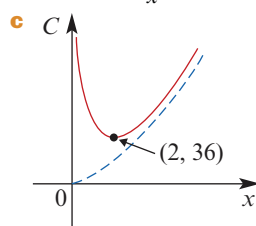


c $A = \frac{25}{w} + 2w$

d i $\frac{5\sqrt{2}}{2} \approx 3.54 \text{ kg}$ **ii** $10\sqrt{2} \approx 14.14 \text{ s}$

25 10 m, 10 m, 5 m; Area 300 m^2

26 b $C = 3x^2 + \frac{48}{x}$



d i $x = 2, h = 3$; i.e. 2 m, 2 m, 3 m **ii** 36 m^2

27 a $A = \frac{1}{2}a^2\theta$ **b** $A = \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{100}{\theta+2}\right)^2\theta$

c $\theta = 2$ **d** 625 cm^2

28 b i $r = \frac{L}{4}$ **ii** $\theta = 2$ **iii** Maximum

29 $t = 5, N(5) = \frac{120}{e}$

30 $t = 1.16, 1.2 \text{ km apart}$

$$31 \text{ b } T = \frac{20 + 16\sqrt{2}}{15} \approx 2.84 \text{ hours}$$

$$32 \text{ b } 0 < x < 1$$

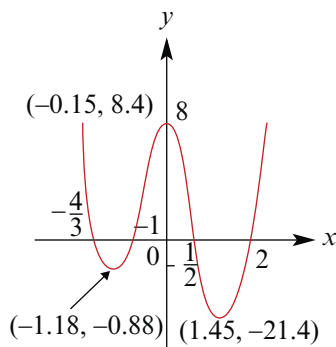
$$\text{c } x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, y = \pm 1$$

$$\text{d } A = 2\sqrt{2}$$

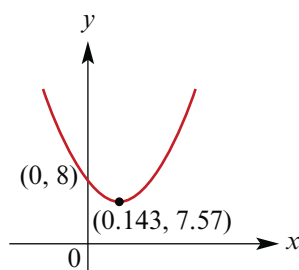
$$33 \text{ c } \text{ii } \frac{dA}{dx} = -3x^2 - 2ax + a^2$$

$$34 \text{ a } \text{i } a = -21$$

ii



b i



ii Min at (0.143, 7.57)

$$\text{iii } g'(x) = 24x^3 - 3x^2 + 42x - 6$$

$$\text{iv } x = 0.1427$$

$$\text{v } g'(0) = -6, g'(10) = 24114$$

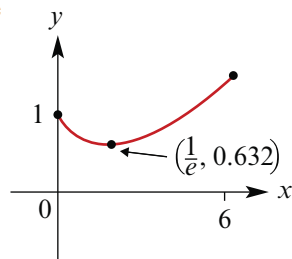
$$\text{vi } g''(x) = 72x^2 - 6x + 42$$

vii $g''(x) > 0$ for all x ; thus $y = g'(x)$ has no turning points and crosses the x -axis only once

$$35 \text{ a } f'(x) = \ln x + 1$$

$$\text{b } x = \frac{1}{e} \approx 0.37, \text{ i.e. during the first month}$$

c

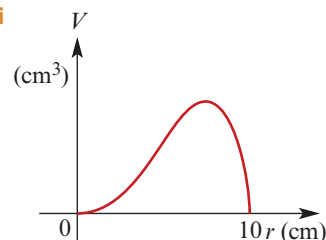


d When $x = 6$

$$36 \text{ a } \text{i } y = \sqrt{100 - r^2}, h = 2\sqrt{100 - r^2}$$

$$\text{ii } V = 2\pi r^2 \sqrt{100 - r^2}$$

b i



$$\text{ii } V = 2418.4, r = 8.165, h = 11.55$$

$$\text{iii } r = 6.456 \text{ or } r = 9.297$$

$$\text{c } \text{i } \frac{dV}{dr} = \frac{400\pi r - 6\pi r^3}{\sqrt{100 - r^2}}$$

$$\text{ii } V_{\max} = \frac{4000\pi\sqrt{3}}{9} \text{ when } r = \frac{10\sqrt{6}}{3}$$

$$\text{d } \text{ii } \frac{dV}{dr} > 0 \text{ for } r \in \left(0, \frac{20\sqrt{6}}{6}\right)$$

$$\text{iii } \frac{dV}{dr} \text{ is increasing for } r \in (0, 5.21)$$

$$37 \text{ a } x = 0 \text{ and } x = 2$$

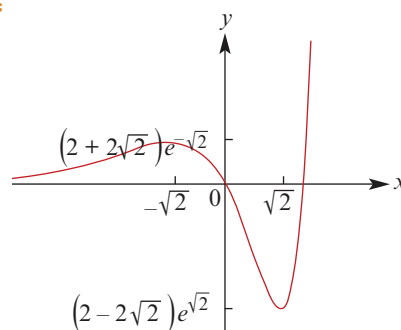
$$\text{b } y = -ex$$

$$\text{c } y = 2e^2x - 4e^2$$

$$\text{d } x = \pm\sqrt{2}$$

$$\text{e } x = -1 \pm \sqrt{3}$$

f



$$38 \text{ a } x = 0 \text{ and } x = \frac{5}{2}$$

$$\text{b } x = \frac{5a - 4 \pm \sqrt{25a^2 + 16}}{4a}$$

$$\text{c } x = \frac{5a - 8 \pm \sqrt{25a^2 + 32}}{4a}$$

$$\text{d } a = \frac{1}{3} \ln\left(\frac{10}{3}\right)$$

$$39 \text{ b } MP = \frac{2}{\tan \theta}$$

$$\text{c } NQ = 8 \tan \theta$$

$$\text{d } x = \frac{2}{\tan \theta} + 8 \tan \theta + 10$$

$$\text{e } \frac{dx}{d\theta} = \frac{8}{\cos^2 \theta} - \frac{2}{\sin^2 \theta}$$

$$\text{f } x = 18, \theta = 26.6^\circ$$

$$40 \text{ a } h = a(1 + \cos \theta) \quad \text{b } r = a \sin \theta$$

$$\text{d } \frac{dV}{d\theta} = \frac{\pi a^3}{3} [2 \sin \theta \cos \theta (1 + \cos \theta) - \sin^3 \theta]$$

$$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \approx 70.53^\circ$$

$$\text{e } V = \frac{32\pi a^3}{81} \text{ cm}^3$$

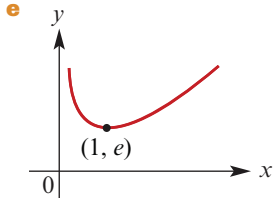
41 b $\frac{dy}{dt} = \frac{bAe^{bt}}{(1 + Ae^{bt})^2}$
 e After 7 hours (to the nearest hour)

42 a $f'(x) = \frac{xe^x - e^x}{x^2}$ b $x = 1$

c (1, e), local minimum

d i $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = \frac{x-1}{x}$

ii $\lim_{x \rightarrow \infty} \frac{f'(x)}{f(x)} = 1$
 i.e. $f'(x) \rightarrow f(x)$ as $x \rightarrow \infty$

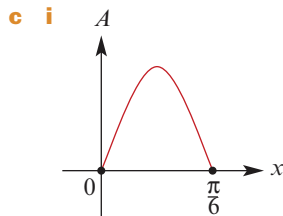


f $t = \frac{1}{k} \approx 45.27$ years, i.e. during 1945

43 b i $\frac{dA}{dx} = 2 \cos(3x) - 6x \sin(3x)$

ii When $x = 0$, $\frac{dA}{dx} = 2$;

When $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$, $\frac{dA}{dx} = -\pi$



ii $x = 0.105$ or $x = 0.449$

iii Max area 0.374, occurs when $x = 0.287$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1 D 2 D 3 B 4 D 5 C
 6 B 7 D 8 B 9 C 10 D
 11 B 12 D 13 A 14 C 15 B
 16 B 17 D 18 C 19 B 20 A
 21 A 22 C 23 C 24 D 25 B

Chapter 8

Exercise 8A

1 a $\frac{x^4}{8} + c$ b $x^3 - 2x + c$ c $\frac{5x^4}{4} - x^2 + c$

d $\frac{x^4}{5} - \frac{2x^3}{3} + c$ e $\frac{x^3}{3} - x^2 + x + c$

f $\frac{x^3}{3} + x + c$ g $\frac{z^4}{2} - \frac{2z^3}{3} + c$

h $\frac{4t^3}{3} - 6t^2 + 9t + c$ i $\frac{t^4}{4} - t^3 + \frac{3t^2}{2} - t + c$

2 $f(x) = x^4 + 2x^3 + 2x$

3 $y = 2x^3 + 12$

4 a $y = x^2 - x$ b $y = 3x - \frac{x^2}{2} + 1$

c $y = \frac{x^3}{3} + x^2 + 2$ d $y = 3x - \frac{x^3}{3} + 2$

e $y = \frac{2x^5}{5} + \frac{x^2}{2}$

5 a $V = \frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{t^2}{2} + \frac{9}{2}$ b $\frac{1727}{6} \approx 287.83$

6 $f(x) = x^3 - x + 2$

7 a B b $w = 2000t - 10t^2 + 100\,000$

8 $f(x) = 5x - \frac{x^2}{2} + 4$

9 $f(x) = \frac{x^4}{4} - x^3 - 2$

10 a $k = 8$ b (0, 7)

11 $8\frac{2}{3}$

12 a $k = -4$ b $y = x^2 - 4x + 9$

13 a $k = -32$ b $f(7) = 201$

14 $y = \frac{1}{3}(x^3 - 5)$

Exercise 8B

1 a $y = -\frac{1}{2x^2} + c$ b $y = 3x^{\frac{4}{3}} + c$

c $y = \frac{4}{5}x^{\frac{5}{4}} + \frac{5}{2}x^{\frac{2}{5}} + c$

2 a $-\frac{3}{x} + c$ b $-\frac{2}{3x^3} + 3x^2 + c$

c $-\frac{2}{x} - \frac{3}{x^2} + c$ d $\frac{9}{4}x^{\frac{4}{3}} - \frac{20}{9}x^{\frac{9}{4}} + c$

e $\frac{12}{7}x^{\frac{7}{4}} - \frac{14}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$ f $\frac{5}{2}x^{\frac{8}{5}} + \frac{9}{2}x^{\frac{8}{3}} + c$

3 a $f(x) = \frac{2}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}} + \frac{5}{7}$ b $f(x) = \frac{3}{4}x^{\frac{4}{3}} + 5$

c $f(x) = \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{1}{2}x^2 - \frac{22}{3}$

4 a $\frac{4}{3}x^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{2}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + c$ b $\frac{3z^3 - 4}{2z} + c$

c $\frac{5}{3}x^3 + x^2 + c$ d $\frac{4}{5}x^{\frac{5}{2}} + \frac{2}{7}x^{\frac{7}{2}} + c$

e $\frac{2x^3}{3} + \frac{3x^5}{5} + c$ f $\frac{3}{7}x^{\frac{7}{3}} + \frac{3}{16}x^{\frac{16}{3}} + c$

5 $f(x) = x^3 + \frac{1}{x} - \frac{17}{2}$

6 $s = \frac{3}{2}t^2 + \frac{8}{t} - 8$

7 a $k = 1$ b $f(4) = 4$

Exercise 8C

1 a $\frac{1}{6}(2x - 1)^3 + c$ b $-\frac{1}{4}(t - 2)^4 + c$

c $\frac{1}{20}(5x - 2)^4 + c$ d $\frac{1}{24 - 16x} + c$

e $\frac{1}{8(6 - 4x)^2} + c$ f $\frac{-1}{8(3 + 4x)^2} + c$

- g** $\frac{2}{9}(3x+6)^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$ **h** $\frac{2}{3}(3x+6)^{\frac{1}{2}} + c$
i $\frac{1}{9}(2x-4)^{\frac{9}{2}} + c$ **j** $\frac{1}{7}(3x+11)^{\frac{7}{3}} + c$
k $-\frac{2}{9}(2-3x)^{\frac{3}{2}} + c$ **l** $-\frac{1}{10}(5-2x)^5 + c$
2 $f(x) = -\frac{2}{3}(1-x)^{\frac{3}{2}} + \frac{5}{3}$
3 a $\frac{1}{2}\ln(x) + c$ **b** $\frac{1}{3}\ln(3x+2) + c$
c $\ln(1+4x) + c$ **d** $\frac{5}{3}\ln(3x-2) + c$
e $-\frac{3}{4}\ln(1-4x) + c$ **f** $-6\ln(4-x) + c$
4 a $5\ln(x) + c$ **b** $3\ln(x-4) + c$
c $5\ln(2x+1) + c$ **d** $-3\ln(5-2x) + c$
e $-3\ln(1-2x) + c$ **f** $-\frac{1}{3}\ln(4-3x) + c$
5 a $3x + \ln(x) + c$ **b** $x + \ln(x) + c$
c $-\frac{1}{x+1} + c$ **d** $2x + \frac{x^2}{2} + \ln(x) + c$
e $-\frac{3}{2(x-1)^2} + c$ **f** $-2x + \ln(x) + c$
6 a $y = \frac{1}{2}\ln(x) + 1$ **b** $y = 10 - \ln(5-2x)$
7 $y = 10\ln(x-5)$
8 a $x - \ln(x+1) + c$
b $-2(x+1) + 3\ln(x+1) + c$
c $2(x+1) - \ln(x+1) + c$
9 $y = \frac{3}{2-x} - \frac{5}{2}$
10 $y = \frac{5}{4}\ln\left(\frac{5}{1-2x}\right) + 10$

Exercise 8D

- 1 a** $\frac{1}{6}e^{6x} + c$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + \frac{3}{2}x^2 + c$
c $-\frac{1}{3}e^{-3x} + x^2 + c$ **d** $-\frac{1}{2}e^{-2x} + \frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + c$
2 a $\frac{1}{2}e^{2x} - 2e^{\frac{x}{2}} + c$ **b** $e^x - e^{-x} + c$
c $\frac{2}{3}e^{3x} + e^{-x} + c$ **d** $15e^{\frac{x}{3}} - 10e^{\frac{x}{5}} + c$
e $\frac{9}{2}e^{\frac{2x}{3}} - \frac{15}{7}e^{\frac{7x}{5}} + c$ **f** $\frac{15}{4}e^{\frac{4x}{3}} - \frac{9}{2}e^{\frac{2x}{3}} + c$
3 a $y = \frac{1}{2}(e^{2x} - x^2 + 9)$ **b** $y = -\frac{3}{e^x} - e^x + 8$
4 $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + 4 - \frac{1}{2}e^2$
5 $y = 9 - 2e^{-2}$
6 a $k = 2$
b $y = \frac{1}{2}e^{2x} + \frac{1}{2}e^2$
7 a $k = 3$
b $y = -\frac{1}{3}e^{3x} - \frac{2}{3}e^3$

Exercise 8E

- 1 a** $\frac{1}{3}\sin(3x)$ **b** $-\cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$ **c** $\sin(3x)$
d $-4\cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)$ **e** $-\frac{1}{2}\cos\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
f $\frac{1}{3}\sin(3x) - \frac{1}{2}\cos(2x)$
g $\frac{1}{4}\sin(4x) + \frac{1}{4}\cos(4x)$
h $\frac{1}{4}\cos(2x) + \frac{1}{3}\sin(3x)$
i $-\frac{1}{4}\sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ **j** $-\frac{1}{\pi}\cos(\pi x)$
k $\sin(2\pi x)$ **l** $\sin(2x)$
2 a $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}\sin(2x) + \frac{1}{2}$
b $f(x) = -2\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) + 1$
3 $y = \frac{1}{2}(x^2 - \cos(2x) + 3)$
4 $g(x) = -2\cos(2x) + 2$
5 a $y = \frac{1}{2}\sin(2x) - \frac{1}{3}\cos(3x)$
b $y = -2x + \pi$
6 $f(x) = \sin x - \frac{1}{2}\sin(2x) + 8$
7 a $f(x) = x + \cos(3x) + 1 - \pi$
b $y = x - \pi$

Exercise 8F

- 1** $\frac{6x}{3x^2+7}, \frac{1}{6}\ln(3x^2+7) + c$
2 a $\frac{1}{3}\ln(x^3+3)$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}\ln(x^2+4x)$
c $\frac{1}{2}\ln(3+e^{2x})$ **d** $\frac{1}{3}\ln(x^3+3x)$
e $\frac{5}{3}\ln(3x-2)$
3 a $\sin(x^3+4x)$ **b** $\frac{1}{3}e^{x^3+3x}$ **c** $e^{\sin x}$
4 a $\frac{1}{\cos^2 x}, \tan x$ **b** $-\frac{2}{\sin^2(2x)}, -\frac{\cos(2x)}{2\sin(2x)}$
5 $\frac{e^{2\sqrt{x}}}{\sqrt{x}}, e^{2\sqrt{x}} + c$
6 $-3\sin x \cdot \cos^2 x, -\frac{1}{3}\cos^3 x$
7 a $\ln(2x) + 1, x\ln(2x) - x + c$
b $2x\ln(2x) + x, \frac{x^2}{2}\ln(2x) - \frac{x^2}{4} + c$
8 $\sin x + x\cos x, \cos x + x\sin x + c$
9 $(2x+1)e^{2x}, \frac{1}{4}(2x-1)e^{2x} + c$
10 a $\frac{12x}{\sqrt{4x-a}}$ **b** $\frac{1}{12}(2x+a)\sqrt{4x-a}$
11 $\frac{4x}{\sqrt{1+4x^2}}, \frac{1}{4}\sqrt{1+4x^2}$

12 $\frac{1}{4} \ln\left(\frac{x-2}{x+2}\right)$ for $x > 2$

13 a $(x^2 + 1)^3 + c$ **b** $\sin(x^2) + c$
c $(x^2 + 1)^3 + \sin(x^2) + c$
d $-(x^2 + 1)^3 + c$ **e** $(x^2 + 1)^3 - 4x + c$
f $3 \sin(x^2) + c$

Exercise 8G

- 1** 109 minutes
2 a $m = \frac{96}{\pi} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{12}\right) - 8t + 500$ **b** 61 hours
3 $t = \frac{40}{9}(\sqrt{70} - 5) \approx 14.96$
4 1326 litres
5 $200 \sin(3\pi t) + 3600$
6 a $4(e^{-\frac{t}{4}} - e^{-2t})$
b $\frac{12}{7} \ln(2) \approx 1.89$ hours
7 5288 litres
8 a 3500 cubic metres per month
b $V = 1.5t - \sin 2t + c$

Exercise 8H

- 1 a** $x = t^2 - 3t$ **b** $x = 0$ **c** 0 m/s
d $\frac{9}{2}$ m **e** $\frac{3}{2}$ m/s
2 a $v(t) = -t$, $s(t) = -\frac{t^2}{2}$
b $v(t) = 3e^{\frac{t}{3}} - 3$, $s(t) = 9e^{\frac{t}{3}} - 3t - 9$
c $v(t) = \frac{1}{4} \sin 4t$, $s(t) = -\frac{1}{16} \cos 4t + \frac{1}{16}$
d $v(t) = -\frac{1}{2\pi} \cos(2\pi t) + \frac{1}{2\pi}$,
 $s(t) = -\frac{1}{4\pi^2} \sin(2\pi t) + \frac{t}{2\pi}$
e $v(t) = \frac{-2}{t+1} + 2$, $s(t) = 2t - 2 \ln(t+1)$
f $v(t) = -4e^{-\frac{t}{2}} + 4$, $s(t) = 8e^{-\frac{t}{2}} + 4t - 8$
g $v(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sin(2\pi t + 2) - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2$,
 $s(t) = -\frac{1}{4\pi^2} \cos(2\pi t + 2) - \frac{t}{2} \sin 2 + \frac{\cos 2}{4\pi^2}$
h $v(t) = -\frac{2}{3}(3t+1) + \frac{2}{3}$,
 $s(t) = -\frac{2}{9} \ln(3t+1) + \frac{2t}{3}$
i $v(t) = -e^t + 2t + 1$, $s(t) = -e^t + t^2 + t + 1$
3 a $a(t) = 0$, $s(t) = 4t - 1$
b $a(t) = -\frac{2}{3}e^{-\frac{2t}{3}}$, $s(t) = -\frac{3}{2}e^{-\frac{2t}{3}} + \frac{1}{2}$
c $a(t) = 16 \cos 4t$, $s(t) = -\cos(4t)$
d $a(t) = -2\pi \sin(2\pi t)$, $s(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \sin(2\pi t) - 1$
e $a(t) = -\frac{6}{(3t+4)^2}$, $s(t) = \frac{2}{3} \ln\left(\frac{3t+4}{4}\right) - 1$
f $a(t) = -2 \sin 2t + 2 \cos 2t$,
 $s(t) = \frac{1}{2} \sin 2t - \frac{1}{2} \cos 2t - \frac{1}{2}$
4 $x = t^3 - 2t + 5$

5 a $x = \frac{2t^3}{3} - 4t^2 + 6t + 4$, $a = 4t - 8$

b When $t = 1$, $x = \frac{20}{3}$ m;

When $t = 3$, $x = 4$ m

c When $t = 1$, $a = -4$ m/s²;

When $t = 3$, $a = 4$ m/s²

6 Velocity = 73 m/s; Position = $\frac{646}{3}$ m

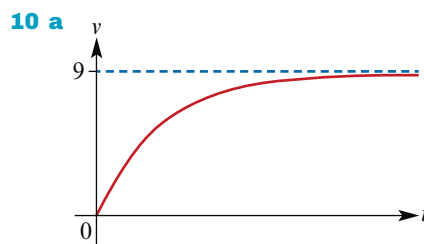
7 Initial position is 3 m to the left of O

8 64.7 m

9 a Velocity = $-10t + 25$ ms⁻¹

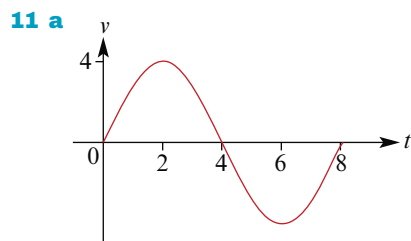
b Height = $-5t^2 + 25t$ m **c** $\frac{5}{2}$ s

d $\frac{125}{4}$ m **e** 5 s

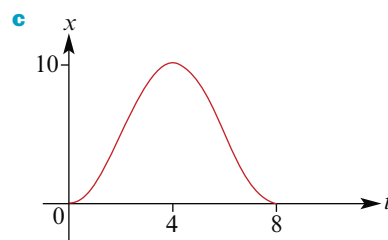


b $x = 9(t + 3e^{-\frac{t}{3}} - 3)$

c $27e^{-1} \approx 9.93$ m



b $x = \frac{16}{\pi} \left(1 - \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{4}\right)\right)$



d Max speed = 4 m/s; Position = $\frac{16}{\pi}$ m

12 The 29th floor

13 17.3 m

14 a $p = -16$, $q = 12$ **b** 160 m **c** $\frac{8}{3}$ ms⁻¹

15 a 0.49 seconds **b** $t = \frac{\pi}{3}$

c $s(t) = 10 - 10 \cos\left(\frac{3t}{2}\right)$

16 45 m

Chapter 8 review

Short-response questions

1 a $\frac{x}{2} + c$ **b** $\frac{x^3}{6} + c$ **c** $\frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{3x^2}{2} + c$
d $\frac{4x^3}{3} + 6x^2 + 9x + c$ **e** $\frac{at^2}{2} + c$ **f** $\frac{t^4}{12} + c$
g $\frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{t^2}{2} - 2t + c$ **h** $\frac{-t^3}{3} + \frac{t^2}{2} + 2t + c$

2 $y = 4x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2$

3 $y = -\frac{24}{x} + 18$

4 $y = x^2 + 5x - 25$

5 a $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \sin(2x) + 1$

b $f(x) = 3 \ln x + 6$ **c** $f(x) = 2e^{\frac{x}{2}} - 1$

6 a $y = x^3 - 4x^2 + 3x$ **b** 0, 1, 3

7 $1 + \frac{x}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{1+x^2}}, \ln(x + \sqrt{1+x^2}) + c$

8 a $y = x^3 - 6x^2 + 8x$ **b** 0, 2, 4

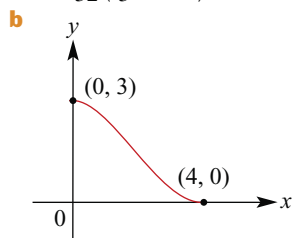
9 a $k = \sqrt{17}$

b $y = 4x - \frac{\sqrt{17}}{2}x^2 + 18\sqrt{17} - 24$

10 $18 + e^{-2}$ m/s

11 a $\frac{15}{2}$ m/s **b** $\frac{128}{3}$ m **c** 0 m **d** $\frac{64}{9}$ m/s

12 a $y = \frac{9}{32} \left(\frac{x^3}{3} - 2x^2 \right) + 3$



c Yes, for $\frac{4}{3} < x < \frac{8}{3}$

13 a $\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-3x} \sin(2x)) = -3e^{-3x} \sin(2x) + 2e^{-3x} \cos(2x)$

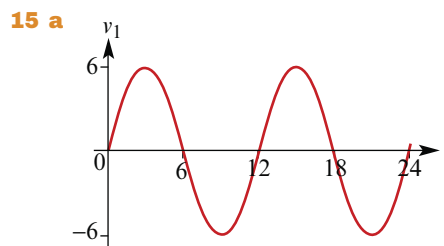
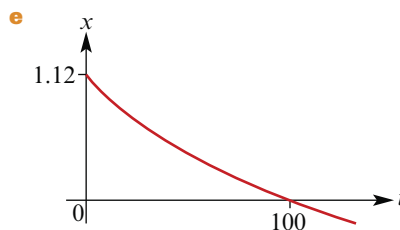
$\frac{d}{dx}(e^{-3x} \cos(2x)) = -3e^{-3x} \cos(2x) - 2e^{-3x} \sin(2x)$

c $\int e^{-3x} \sin(2x) dx = \frac{-1}{13} (3e^{-3x} \sin(2x) + 2e^{-3x} \cos(2x)) + c$

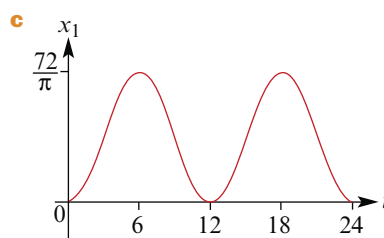
14 a $\ln(t+k) + 1, (t+k) \ln(t+k) - t + c$

b $x = 6t - (t+k) \ln(t+k) + k \ln k$

c $k = 48.41$ **d** 45.77 m

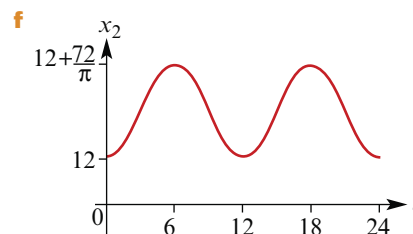


b $x_1 = -\frac{36}{\pi} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right) + \frac{36}{\pi}$



d Max speed = 6 m/s; Position = $\frac{36}{\pi}$ m

e $x_2 = -\frac{36}{\pi} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right) + \frac{36}{\pi} + 12$



g $\frac{72}{\pi}$ m

Multiple-choice questions

1 C	2 D	3 A	4 D
5 B	6 B	7 A	8 C
9 A	10 D	11 C	12 B
13 A	14 A	15 B	16 A
17 D	18 D	19 D	20 A
21 C	22 B	23 D	24 A
25 C	26 C	27 D	

Chapter 9

Exercise 9A

- 1 1H, 1T, 2H, 2T, 3H, 3T, 4H, 4T, 5H, 5T, 6H, 6T
- 2 HH1, HH2, HH3, HH4, HH5, HH6,
HT1, HT2, HT3, HT4, HT5, HT6,
TH1, TH2, TH3, TH4, TH5, TH6,
TT1, TT2, TT3, TT4, TT5, TT6
- 3 a $\frac{1}{13}$ b $\frac{3}{4}$ c $\frac{4}{13}$ d $\frac{2}{13}$
- 4 a $\frac{1}{2}$ b $\frac{2}{3}$
- 5 0.8
- 6 0.65
- 7 a 0.067 b 0.047
- 8 5%
- 9 a $\frac{17}{500}$ b $\frac{9}{250}$ c $\frac{41}{125}$ d $\frac{41}{500}$
- 10 a $\frac{13}{20}$ b $\frac{7}{20}$
- 11 a $\frac{57}{100}$ b $\frac{2}{19}$ c $\frac{27}{100}$ d $\frac{1}{250}$
- 12 $\frac{9}{25}$
- 13 a $\frac{1}{2}$ b $\frac{1}{6}$ c $\frac{5}{6}$
- 14 a 0.13 b 0.32
- 15 a 0.40 b 0.67 c 0.18
- 16 a 0.35 b 0.18 c 0.12 d 0.17

Exercise 9B

- 1 a 0.2 b 0.675 c 0.275
- 2 a $\frac{1}{6}$ b $\frac{1}{3}$
- 3 a 0.06 b $\frac{1}{5}$
- 4 $\frac{3}{5}$
- 5 $\frac{24}{59}$
- 6 a $\frac{1}{2}$ b $\frac{77}{200}$ c $\frac{40}{77}$ d $\frac{2}{5}$
- 7 a $\frac{65}{224}$ b $\frac{115}{448}$ c $\frac{21}{65}$ d $\frac{61}{246}$
- 8 a 0.24 b 0.86
- 9 a Yes b No c No
- 10 a 0.5 b 0.2 c 0.7
- 11 0.39
- 12 $\frac{1}{7}$
- 13 0.0479
- 14 a 0.486 b 0.012 c 0.138
- 15 a $\frac{2}{5}$ b $\frac{1}{15}$ c $\frac{8}{15}$

- 16 a $\frac{2}{5}$ b $\frac{7}{40}$ c $\frac{7}{16}$ d $\frac{7}{15}$
- 17 a $\frac{5}{14}$ b $\frac{3}{5}$
- 18 a 0.735 b 0.453
- 19 $\frac{41}{44}$

Exercise 9C

- 1 a Discrete b Not discrete
c Discrete d Discrete
- 2 a {HHH, THH, HTH, HHT,
HTT, THT, TTH, TTT} c $\frac{1}{2}$
- 3 a Yes, as the sum of the probabilities is 1 and $p(x) \geq 0$ for all x
b 0.8
- 4 a Yes, as the sum of the probabilities is 1 and $p(x) \geq 0$ for all x
b 0.5
- 5 a, c
- 6 a {BB, BR, RB, RR} b 0, 1, 2
- 7

x	0	1	2
$p(x)$	$\frac{25}{81}$	$\frac{40}{81}$	$\frac{16}{81}$
- 8 a {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), ..., (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)}
b

y	0	1	2
$p(y)$	$\frac{11}{18}$	$\frac{5}{18}$	$\frac{1}{9}$
- 9 a {(1, 1), (1, 2), (1, 3), ..., (6, 4), (6, 5), (6, 6)}
b $Y = 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12$

- 2nd die
- | | | | | | | | |
|---------|---|---|---|---|----|----|----|
| | | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 |
| 1st die | 1 | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 |
| | 2 | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 |
| | 3 | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 |
| | 4 | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 |
| | 5 | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 |
| | 6 | 7 | 8 | 9 | 10 | 11 | 12 |
- c i $\frac{1}{6}$ ii $\frac{1}{3}$ iii $\frac{1}{5}$ iv $\frac{7}{10}$ v $\frac{1}{5}$ vi $\frac{2}{7}$
- 10 a

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	0.216	0.432	0.288	0.064

 b i 0.352 ii 0.182

11 a

x	1	2	3	4	5
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{1}{5}$

b $\frac{3}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{3}$

12 a $\frac{1}{10}$ **b** $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{2}$

13 a $\frac{1}{8}$ **b** $\frac{3}{3}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}$

14 a $p(x) = \frac{1}{100}$ $x = 1, 2, \dots, 100$

b $\frac{1}{10}$

15 a $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{1}{3}$

16

x	0	1	2
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{7}$	$\frac{4}{7}$	$\frac{2}{7}$

17 $p(x) = (0.7)^{x-1}(0.3)$ $x = 1, 2, \dots$

18 a

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	$\frac{27}{125}$	$\frac{54}{125}$	$\frac{36}{125}$	$\frac{8}{125}$

b

x	0	1	2	3
$p(x)$	$\frac{5}{30}$	$\frac{15}{30}$	$\frac{9}{30}$	$\frac{1}{30}$

19 a

x	0	1	2
$p(x)$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{8}{15}$	$\frac{2}{15}$

b $\frac{7}{15}$

20 a

x	10	20	100
$p(x)$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{6}{25}$	$\frac{1}{100}$

b

y	20	30	40	110	120	200
$p(y)$	$\frac{9}{16}$	$\frac{9}{25}$	$\frac{36}{625}$	$\frac{3}{200}$	$\frac{3}{625}$	$\frac{1}{10\,000}$

21 a

		2nd die					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
1st die	1	1	1	1	1	1	1
	2	1	2	2	2	2	2
	3	1	2	3	3	3	3
	4	1	2	3	4	4	4
	5	1	2	3	4	5	5
	6	1	2	3	4	5	6

b 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6

c

y	1	2	3	4	5	6
$p(y)$	0.19	0.32	0.24	0.16	0.08	0.01

22 a $\frac{1}{4}$

b {EENE, ENEE, ENNN, NEEE, NENN, NNN}, $P(X=4) = \frac{3}{8}$

c $P(X=5) = \frac{3}{8}$

Exercise 9D

- 1** \$60
- 2 a** $E(X) = 4.6$ **b** $E(X) = 0.5$
c $E(X) = 2.38$ **d** $E(X) = 7$
e $E(X) = 0$
- 3** Expected profit = \$3000
- 4 a** $E(X) = 1.9$ **b** $E(X^2) = 4.7$ **c** $E(X^3) = 12.7$
- 5 a** $E(3X + 2) = 8$ **b** $E(2X - 1) = 3$
c $E(1 - 2X) = -3$ **d** $E(X/2 + 3) = 4$
- 6 a** $E(X) = 4.11$ **b** $E(5X - 4) = 16.55$
- 7 a** $E(X) = 2.97$
b i \$2970 **ii** \$2782
- 8 a** $\text{Var}(X) = 3.84$, $\text{sd}(X) = 1.96$
b $\text{Var}(X) = 1.25$, $\text{sd}(X) = 1.12$
c $\text{Var}(X) = 2.3$, $\text{sd}(X) = 1.73$
- 9 a** $E(X) = 2$ **b** $\text{Var}(X) = 3.5$
c $\text{sd}(X) = 1.87$
- 10 a** $E(X) = 2.22$ **b** $\text{Var}(X) = 2.952$
c $\text{sd}(X) = 1.718$
- 11 a** $\text{Var}(3X + 2) = 144$ **b** $\text{Var}(2X - 1) = 64$
c $\text{Var}(1 - 2X) = 64$ **d** $\text{Var}(X/2 + 3) = 4$
- 12 a** $\text{Var}(2 - 3X) = 81$ **b** $\text{Var}(1.5X) = 20.25$
c $\text{sd}(1 - 3X) = 9$ **d** $\text{sd}(X/3 + 1) = 1$
- 13 a** $E(X) = 10.5$ **b** $\text{Var}(X) = 33.25$
c $P(X < \mu) = 0.5$
- 14 a** $P(X = 4) = \frac{1}{10}$ **b** $P(X \leq 4) = \frac{4}{10}$
c $E(X) = 5.5$ **d** $\text{Var}(X) = 8.25$
- 15 a** $E(Y) = 10$ **b** $\text{Var}(Y) = 21$
- 16** 13
- 17** 23
- 18** \$377.78
- 19** $\mu = \$39.28$, $\sigma = \$6.00$
- 20** $E(Y) = 9.5$, $\text{Var}(Y) = 2.9167$
- 21** $a = 5$, $b = -6$, or $a = -5$, $b = 24$
- 22** 15

Exercise 9E

- 1 a and b**
- 2 a** X is a random variable which can only take the values 0 (failure) and 1 (success), and the probability of success is the same for each trial.
- b**
- | | | |
|--------|-----------------|----------------|
| x | 0 | 1 |
| $p(x)$ | $\frac{49}{50}$ | $\frac{1}{50}$ |
- 3** 0.2734
- 4 a** 0.0256 **b** 0.0016
- 5 a** 0.0778 **b** 0.2304 **c** 0.01024
- 6 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{3}{x}(0.5)^x(0.5)^{3-x}$, $x = 0, 1, 2, 3$
b 0.375

- 7 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{6}{x}(0.48)^x(0.52)^{6-x}$,
 $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 6$
b 0.2527
- 8 a** 0.0536 **b** 0.0087 **c** 0.0623
- 9 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{10}{x}(0.1)^x(0.9)^{10-x}$,
 $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 10$
b i 0.3487 **ii** 0.6513
- 10 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{11}{x}(0.2)^x(0.8)^{11-x}$,
 $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 11$
b i 0.2953 **ii** 0.0859 **iii** 0.9141
- 11 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{7}{x}(0.2)^x(0.8)^{7-x}$,
 $x = 0, 1, 2, 3, \dots, 7$
b i 0.000013 **ii** 0.2097 **iii** 0.3899
- 12** 0.624
- 13 a** $\left(\frac{x}{100}\right)^6$ **b** $\frac{6x^5(100-x)}{100^6}$
c $\frac{x^6}{100^6} + \frac{6x^5(100-x)}{100^6} + \frac{15x^4(100-x)^2}{100^6}$
- 14** 0.6836
- 15 a** 0.1156 **b** 0.7986 **c** 0.3170
- 16** 0.6791
- 17 a** 0.1123 **b** 0.5561 **c** 0.000 01
d 0.000 01
- 18** 0.544
- 19 a** $\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^6 \approx 0.000\ 24$
b 0.1694
- 20 a** $\mu = 0.2$; $\sigma^2 = 0.16$
b $\mu = 0.3$; $\sigma^2 = 0.21$
c $\mu = 0.4$; $\sigma^2 = 0.24$
- 21 a** $\mu = 5$; $\sigma^2 = 4$
b $\mu = 6$; $\sigma^2 = 2.4$
c $\mu = \frac{500}{3}$; $\sigma^2 = \frac{1000}{9}$
d $\mu = 8$; $\sigma^2 = 6.4$
- 22 a** 1 **b** 0.2632
- 23** 37.5
- 24** $\mu = 120$; $\sigma = 6.928$
- 25** 0.367
- 26 a** $\mu = 7$; $\sigma = 1.449$ **b** 0.2001 **c** 0.2355
- 27 a** $\mu = 2$; $\sigma = 1.225$ **b** 0.0042 **c** 0.0036
- 28** $n = 48$, $p = \frac{1}{4}$, $P(X = 7) = 0.0339$
- 29** $n = 100$, $p = \frac{3}{10}$, $P(X = 20) = 0.0076$
- 30 a i** 0.3277 **ii** 0.6723
b 14
c 22
- 31 a i** 0.1937 **ii** 0.6513
b 12
- 32** 7 **33** 7 **34** 10
- 35** $n = 3$; $p = 0.2$
- 36** $n = 6$

Chapter 9 review

Short-response questions

- 1 a** 0.47 **b** $\frac{47}{70}$
- 2 a** Yes, as all probabilities are between 0 and 1, and they add to 1.
b 0.4
- 3 a** {RR, RB, BR, BB}
b 0, 1, 2
c

x	0	1	2
$p(x)$	$\frac{4}{25}$	$\frac{12}{25}$	$\frac{9}{25}$
- 4 a** $\frac{1}{5}$ **b** $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}$
- 5 a** $\frac{1}{8}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$ **c** $\frac{15}{16}$
- 6 a** $\frac{1}{12}$ **b** $\frac{1}{6}$ **c** 6.5
- 7 a** 0.1 **b** 0.09 **c** 0.3
- 8 a** 0.2 **b** 7
- 9 a** Each trial can result in only one of two outcomes, success (the person makes a purchase) or failure (they do not). The probability of success is the same for each trial (person).
b $\frac{1}{27}$
- 10** $\frac{12}{125}$
- 11 a** $\frac{16}{81}$ **b** $\frac{32}{81}$ **c** $\frac{11}{27}$
- 12 a** $(1-p)^4$ **b** $4p(1-p)^3$
c $1 - (1-p)^4$
- 13** $\frac{5p(1-p)^4}{1 - (1-p)^5}$
- 14** Solve $\Sigma p = 1$
- 15 a**

p	-2	$x-2$
$p(p)$	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{4}{5}$

b $E(P) = \frac{4x}{5} - 2$
c $> \$2.50$
- 16 a** 0.8 **b** $P(X = 2) = 6p^2(1-p)^2$
- 17 a** $\frac{117}{125}$ **b** 5
- 18 a** 0.61 **b** 2.2 **c** 1.36 **d** 1.166
- 19 a** $\frac{1}{21}$ **b** $\frac{13}{3}$ **c** $\frac{20}{9}$
- 20 a** 0.2304 **b** 0.9130
- 21 a** 0.2639 **b** 0.9872
- 22 a** 5.82% **b** $\mu = 0.4$, $\sigma = 0.6197$
- 23 a** $\frac{1}{27}$ **b** 0.1070
- 24 a** 0.1 **b** 0.2 **c** 4
- 25 a i** 0.1478 **ii** 0.5656
b 20

- 26 a** $\mu = 1.21$
b $\sigma^2 = 1.6659$; $\sigma = 1.2907$
c 0.8626

- 27 a** 0.0173 **b** 0.2131

- 28 a** 0.0735
b 0.5015
c 27

- 29 a** 2 **b** $n = 6$; $p = \frac{1}{3}$

c

x	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
freq	18	53	66	44	16	3	0

- 30 a i** 0.3874 **ii** 0.4052

- b** 0.18
c $0 \leq p \leq 0.005$

- 31 a i** 0.0819 **ii** 0.9011

- b i** $15p^2(1-p)^4$ **ii** $p = \frac{1}{3}$

- 32 a** 0.9139 **b** 0.04145 **c** 10.7

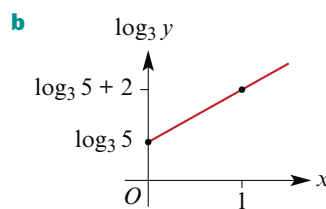
Multiple-choice questions

- 1 A** **2 D** **3 C** **4 C** **5 B**
6 C **7 A** **8 C** **9 A** **10 D**
11 A **12 A** **13 C** **14 D** **15 B**
16 D **17 A** **18 D** **19 B** **20 C**
21 C

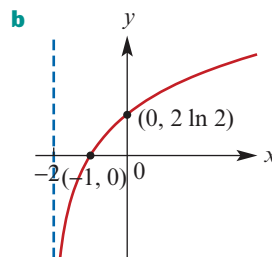
Chapter 10

Short-response questions

- 1 a i** $f(g(x)) = \ln(3x^2)$;
 Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}$
ii $g(f(x)) = (\ln(3x))^2$;
 Domain = $\mathbb{R}^+$; Range = $[0, \infty)$
b i $f(g(x)) = \ln(2 - x^2)$;
 Domain = $(-\sqrt{2}, \sqrt{2})$;
 Range = $(-\infty, \ln 2]$
ii $g(f(x)) = (\ln(2 - x))^2$;
 Domain = $(-\infty, 2)$; Range = $[0, \infty)$
c i $f(g(x)) = -\ln(2x^2)$;
 Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$; Range = $\mathbb{R}$
ii $g(f(x)) = (\ln(2x))^2$;
 Domain = $(0, \infty)$; Range = $[0, \infty)$
- 2 a** $x = 5$
b $x = \log_3\left(\frac{5}{3}\right)$
c $x = \frac{2}{3}$
- 3** 1 **4** $x = \sqrt[3]{12a}$
5 $x = -9$ **6** $x = \ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$
7 $x = \frac{2e - 12}{e + 1}$ **8** $\frac{1}{2}$
9 a $m = 2$, $c = \log_3 5$



- 10 a** $a = -1$ and $b = 2 \ln 2$



- 11 a** $(3x^2 - 8x)e^{x^3 - 4x^2}$ **b** $4(x - e^{-2x})(e^{-2x} + x^2)$

c $(2e^{4x} - 1)(e^{4x} - 2x)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

d $20(x - 1)e^{2x^2 - 4x}$

- 12 a** $7e$ **b** $16e^{12}$ **c** $2 - 18e^{-3}$

d $2e^{-1} + 5$

- 13 a** $\frac{3}{x}$ **b** $\frac{5(\ln(x))^4}{x}$

c $\frac{2x(4x^2 + 3)}{2x^4 + 3x^2 + 2}$ **d** $\frac{4x}{2x^2 + 3}$

e $\frac{3x^2 + 1}{x^3 + x}$ **f** -3

- 14 a** $3 \ln(2) + 9, 3e^{-3}$ **b** $3 \ln(e^2 + 4), \frac{6e}{e^2 + 4}$

c $12, 4e^{-3}$ **d** $6 - \ln(2), \frac{7}{2}$

- 15** $x = 0$ or $x = 1$

- 16** $A = \frac{8}{5}$ and $k = \ln\left(\frac{5}{2}\right)$

- 17** $A = e^2$, $b = -0.25$

- 18** $x = -1$ or $x = -\frac{3}{5}$

- 19 a** $\frac{dT}{dt} = \frac{25 - T}{5}$ **b** $-15e^{-3} \text{ }^\circ\text{C/minute}$

c $-7 \text{ }^\circ\text{C/minute}$

- 20 a** $\frac{dN}{dt} = 4e^{\frac{t}{25}}$ **b** $100e^{0.2}$ grams

c $4e^{0.2}$ **d** $25 \ln(2)$ days

- 21 a** $1000e^{-\frac{1}{4}}$ grams **b** $\frac{dA}{dt} = -25e^{-\frac{t}{40}}$

c $t = 40 \ln(2), \frac{dA}{dt} = -\frac{25}{2}$

- 22 a** pH 4.1 **b** pH 1

- 23 a** $-\frac{\cos(2x) + 2x \sin(2x)}{x^2}$

b $2x(2x + 1)e^{4x}$ **c** $6x \cos(3x^2)$

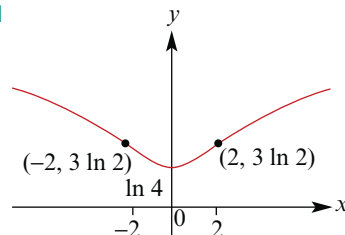
d $\frac{\cos x}{\sin x}$ **e** $x^2(3 \ln x + 1)$

f $\frac{(2x + 3)e^{2x}}{(x + 2)^2}$

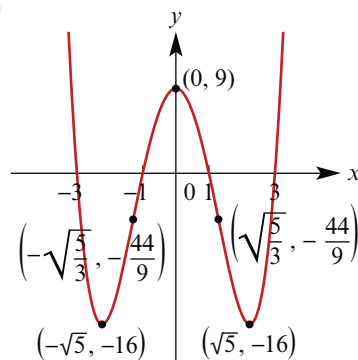
- 24 a** $\frac{-2x}{(x^2+1)^2}$ **b** $x=0$
- 25** $2x \ln(2x) + x$
- 26 a** $b = \frac{1}{2}$ **b** $k = (2b-1)e^{2b+1}$
- 27** $m = \frac{1}{12}$, $a = -\frac{22}{3}$, $c = -\frac{28}{3}$
- 28 a** -7 **b** -14 **c** -20
- 29** $y = \frac{x}{2} + \ln 2 + 8$
- 30** $y = x$
- 31 a** $\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), (0, 0), \left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$
b $(-\pi, -\pi), \left(-\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), (0, 0), \left(\frac{\pi}{2}, -\frac{\pi}{2}\right), (\pi, \pi)$
- 32 a** $y = \frac{x}{2} - \frac{\pi - 3\sqrt{3}}{6}$
b $\left(\frac{\pi - 3\sqrt{3}}{6}, \frac{3\sqrt{3} - \pi}{12}\right)$
- 33** $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \ln 2 + \frac{1}{2}\right)$, local minimum
- 34** $(0, 1), (-3, e^{-81}), (3, e^{-81})$
- 35 a** $6x + 4$ **b** $\frac{1}{16}e^{-\frac{x}{4}}$
c $(25x - 10)e^{-5x}$ **d** $-\frac{1}{25}\sin\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)$
e $-\frac{\pi^2}{4}\cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{2}\right)$ **f** $4e^{2x} - 4e^{-2x}$
- 36 a** $\cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right) - \frac{x}{4}\sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **b** $2\ln(2x) + 3$
c $8e^{-2x}\sin(2x)$
- 37 a** $(0, 0), (2, -16)$ **b** $\left(e^{-\frac{5}{6}}, \frac{5}{6}e^{-\frac{5}{2}}\right)$
c $\left(\frac{\pi}{24}, \frac{\pi^2}{144} + \frac{1}{2}\right), \left(\frac{5\pi}{24}, \frac{25\pi^2}{144} + \frac{1}{2}\right),$
 $\left(\frac{13\pi}{24}, \frac{169\pi^2}{144} + \frac{1}{2}\right), \left(\frac{17\pi}{24}, \frac{289\pi^2}{144} + \frac{1}{2}\right)$
- 38**
- 39 a** $v = 3e^{-0.5t}$ **b** $a = -1.5e^{-0.5t}$
c 1.5 m/s
- 40 a** $f'(x) = (4x^2 - 4x + 1)e^{2x^2 - 4x}$
- 41 a i** $(-\infty, -2), (2, \infty)$ **ii** $(-2, 2)$
iii $(0, \infty)$ **iv** $(-\infty, 0)$
b i $(-\infty, 0), (8, \infty)$ **ii** $(0, 8)$
iii $(4, \infty)$ **iv** $(-\infty, 4)$
c i $(\pi, 2\pi)$ **ii** $(0, \pi)$
iii $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ **iv** $\left(0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right), \left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 2\pi\right)$
d i $\left(0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ **ii** $\left(\frac{\pi}{2}, \pi\right)$
iii $\left(0, \frac{\pi}{4}\right), \left(\frac{3\pi}{4}, \pi\right)$ **iv** $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$
e i $(1, \infty)$ **ii** $(-\infty, 1)$
iii $(-\infty, 0), \left(\frac{2}{3}, \infty\right)$ **iv** $\left(0, \frac{2}{3}\right)$

- f i** $\left(\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}}, \infty\right)$ **ii** $\left(0, \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{1}{2}}\right)$
iii $\left(\frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{3}{2}}, \infty\right)$ **iv** $\left(0, \frac{1}{2}e^{-\frac{3}{2}}\right)$

- 42 a** $f'(x) = (x-a)^2(4x-a-3b)$,
 $f''(x) = 6(x-a)(2x-a-b)$
b $(a, 0), \left(\frac{a+b}{2}, -\frac{(a-b)^4}{16}\right)$
c $y = \frac{(a-b)^3}{4}\left(x - \frac{3a+b}{4}\right), \left(\frac{3a+b}{4}, 0\right)$
- 43 a** $(-2, 0)$ **b** $(1, 27)$ **c** $(-1, 11)$
- 44 a** $f'(x) = \frac{2x}{x^2+4}$, $f''(x) = \frac{-2(x^2-4)}{(x^2+4)^2}$
b $(0, \ln 4)$ **c** $(2, 3 \ln 2), (-2, 3 \ln 2)$
d

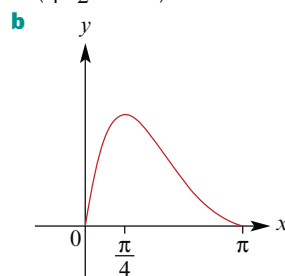


- 45** $x > 1$
- 46** $(0, 0), \left(\frac{\pi}{2}, 2\pi\right), (\pi, 4\pi), \left(\frac{3\pi}{2}, 6\pi\right), (2\pi, 8\pi)$
- 47 a** $x = 1, x = -1$ or $x = 3$
b Stationary point of inflection at $x = 1$;
 Local max at $x = -1$; Local min at $x = 3$
c $x = 1, x = 1 \pm \sqrt{2}$
- 48** $a = 2, b = -4, c = -2$
- 49**



- 50** $t = \frac{7}{3}$; maximum velocity $6e^{-\frac{7}{6}} + 2 \text{ ms}^{-1}$

- 51 a** $\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{1}{2}\sqrt{2}e^{-\frac{\pi}{4}}\right)$



$$52 \text{ a } -\frac{1}{3} \cos(3x+5) + c \quad \text{b } -\frac{1}{4} e^{-4x} + c$$

$$\text{c } \frac{1}{2} \sin(2x-4) + c$$

$$53 \text{ a } \frac{1}{3} x^3 - 2x^2 + 6x \quad \text{b } 3 \ln x + \frac{x^3}{3} - \frac{3x^2}{2}$$

$$\text{c } x^4 - x^2 + \frac{4}{x} \quad \text{d } \frac{2}{3} x^{\frac{3}{2}} + 2\sqrt{x}$$

$$\text{e } \frac{1}{4} \sin(4x) - \frac{1}{3} \cos(3x) \quad \text{f } \frac{1}{2} e^{2x-3}$$

$$54 \text{ f}(x) = \frac{4x^3}{3} - 2x^2 - 24x + 12$$

$$55 \text{ a } \frac{3}{5} \ln(5x-2) \quad \text{b } \frac{3}{10-25x}$$

$$56 \text{ y} = \frac{1}{2} e^{2x} - \frac{1}{2} \cos(2x) - \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{2} e^{\pi}$$

$$57 \text{ a } 6 \sin^2(2x) \cos(2x)$$

$$\text{b } \frac{1}{6} \sin(2x) (3 - \sin^2(2x))$$

$$58 \text{ y} = -\frac{2}{x} + \frac{1}{2} \sin(2x) + \frac{4}{\pi}$$

$$59 \text{ a } v = -6 \cos(3t) + 6 \quad \text{b } x = -2 \sin(3t) + 6t$$

$$\text{c } 6 \text{ m/s}, 2 + 3\pi \text{ m}$$

$$60 \text{ f}(x) = 5e^x - 4$$

$$61 \text{ a } \frac{1}{5} \quad \text{b } \frac{4}{9} \quad \text{c } 1.7$$

$$62 \text{ a } 0.75 \quad \text{b } 0.28$$

$$63 \text{ a } \frac{17}{750} \quad \text{b } \frac{7}{17}$$

$$64 \text{ a } \frac{3}{28} \quad \text{b } \frac{3}{14} \quad \text{c } \frac{5}{7} \quad \text{d } \frac{5}{14} \quad \text{e } \frac{5}{28}$$

$$65 \text{ a } \frac{1}{216} \quad \text{b } \frac{2}{27}$$

$$66 \text{ a } \frac{1}{5} \quad \text{b } \frac{4}{25} \quad \text{c } \frac{2}{5}$$

$$67 \text{ a } p^8 \quad \text{b } (1-p)^8 \quad \text{c } 1 - (1-p)^8$$

$$68 \mu = 2; \sigma^2 = \frac{7}{4}$$

$$69 \frac{8}{27}$$

$$70 \text{ a } (1-p)^3 \quad \text{b } p = \frac{1}{3}$$

$$71 \text{ n} = 15; p = 0.4$$

$$72 \text{ P}(X=1) = \frac{2^8}{3^7}$$

$$73 \text{ a} = 0.36; \text{ b} = 0.06$$

$$74 \text{ a } \frac{1}{7} \quad \text{b } \frac{1}{3}$$

$$75 \text{ a } \frac{8-5p}{20} \quad \text{b } \frac{3}{8-5p}$$

$$76 \text{ a i } P(\text{Black}) = \frac{4n-3}{n(n+1)}$$

$$\text{ii } P(\text{White}) = \frac{n^2-3n+3}{n(n+1)}$$

$$\text{b } \frac{(n-3)^2}{n^2-3n+3}$$

$$77 \text{ a } 0.8 \quad \text{b } 0.6$$

$$78 \text{ a } \binom{20}{k} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^k \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{20-k}; \left(\frac{20}{k+1}\right) \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^{k+1} \left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^{19-k}$$

$$\text{c } k = 4$$

$$79 \text{ a } 0, 1.33 \text{ f}(0) = 1, \text{ f}\left(\frac{4}{3}\right) \approx 0.306$$

$$\text{b } 4.896$$

$$80 \text{ a } a = 1600, b = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{b } x > \frac{\ln(100)}{\ln(2)} = \log_2(800)$$

$$81 \text{ a } k = 0.0292$$

$$\text{b } 150 \times 10^6$$

$$\text{c } 6.4494 \times 10^8$$

$$\text{d } 23.738 \text{ years}$$

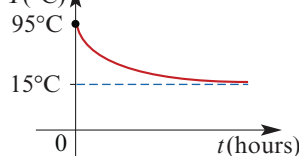
$$82 \text{ a } A = 80, k = 0.3466$$

$$\text{b } 17.5^\circ\text{C}$$

$$\text{c } -19.6^\circ\text{C/h}$$

$$\text{d } 6 \text{ hours } 18 \text{ minutes and } 14 \text{ seconds after } 2 \text{ p.m., i.e. } 20:18:14$$

$$\text{e } T(^\circ\text{C})$$



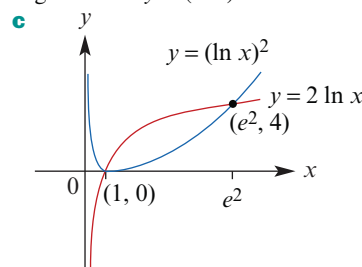
$$83 \text{ a } a = 45, b = 10$$

$$\text{b } 104 \text{ dB}$$

$$\text{c } \text{Power setting } 4$$

$$84 \text{ a } x = 1 \text{ or } x = e^2$$

$$\text{b } \text{When } x = 1, \text{ gradient of } y = 2 \ln x \text{ is } 2 \text{ and gradient of } y = (\ln x)^2 \text{ is } 0$$



$$\text{d } 1 < x < e^2$$

$$85 \text{ b } k = 0.028 \quad \text{c } 0.846^\circ\text{C/min}$$

$$86 \text{ P}(0.762, 0.723) \text{ and } \text{Q}(-2.246, -0.781)$$

$$87 \text{ a i } 50e^{-1} \text{ litres/minute}$$

$$\text{ii } t = 5$$

$$\text{iii } 2 \text{ minutes } 18 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{iv } 3 \text{ minutes } 48 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{b } 14.74 \text{ litres}$$

$$\text{c } 53 \text{ seconds}$$

$$88 \text{ a } h = 250 + 25 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{30}\right)$$

$$\text{b } 275 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{c } 237.5 \text{ cm}$$

$$\text{d } \text{After } 5 \text{ seconds}$$

$$\text{e } \frac{5}{3} \text{ cm/s}$$

$$\text{f } \frac{5\pi\sqrt{3}}{12} \text{ cm/s}$$

$$89 \text{ a } \frac{dt}{dN} = \frac{5000}{N(500-N)}$$

$$\text{b i } 1.21$$

$$\text{ii } 2.34$$

$$\text{iii } 13.86$$

$$\text{iv } 35.84$$

$$\text{c i } 0.12$$

$$\text{ii } 0.11$$

$$\text{iii } 0.08$$

$$\text{iv } 0.22$$

$$\text{d i } t = \frac{2}{25} N + 20(\ln 2 - 1)$$

$$\text{ii } t = \frac{1}{8} N - \frac{25}{2}$$

$$\text{e } N = \frac{500}{1 + 4e^{-\frac{t}{10}}}$$

- 90 a** (3, 1)
b $\frac{1}{e} + 2 < x < \frac{1}{\sqrt{e}} + 2$
c i $y = -x + e + 2$ **ii** $y = x + e^{-1} - 2$
d $\left(\frac{1}{2}(e - e^{-1}) + 2, \frac{1}{2}(e + e^{-1})\right)$
e $b = 2 + \frac{a-2}{\ln(a-2)}$; Min value = $e + 2$
- 91 b** $\frac{dT}{dx} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 900}} - \frac{3}{5}$
c i $x = 22.5$ **ii** 71 seconds
d 63 seconds
- 92 a** $f'(x) = 1 + \cos x$, $f''(x) = -\sin x$
c $-4\pi, -3\pi, -2\pi, -\pi, 0, \pi, 2\pi, 3\pi, 4\pi$
d $(-3\pi, -3\pi), (-\pi, -\pi), (\pi, \pi), (3\pi, 3\pi)$
e $-\frac{4\pi}{3}, -\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}$
f $\left(-\frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{2\pi}{3}\right), \left(-\frac{2\pi}{3}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} - \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \left(\frac{4\pi}{3}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$
- 93** $4 - \sqrt{\frac{12}{7}} \approx 2.7$ m
- 94** $\frac{24}{5}$ cm, 10 cm
- 95 a i** $r = \frac{2\pi - \theta}{2\pi}$
ii $h = \sqrt{1 - \left(\frac{2\pi - \theta}{2\pi}\right)^2}$
b $\frac{49\sqrt{15}\pi}{1536}$
c 0.3281, 2.5271
d i $\theta = 1.153$ **ii** $V_{\max} = 0.403$ m³
e 0.403 m³
- 96 a** 32.44 days **b** $P = 11.85$
- 97** $L_{\max} = 5.4055 \dots$ m when $\theta = 0.9645 \dots$
- 98 a** 2 : 1 **b** 7 : 2
- 99 a** $k = 6$ **b** $f(x) = x^3 - \frac{9x^2}{2} + 6x - \frac{13}{2}$
c $f''(x) = 6x - 9$ **d** $\left(\frac{3}{2}, -\frac{17}{4}\right)$
- 100** $f(x) = \ln\left(\frac{2x+3}{15}\right) + 2$; $f(0) \approx 0.391$
- 101 a** 0 m/s **b** $a = 9.6e^{-0.2t}$
c 48 ms⁻¹ **d** 0 ms⁻²
e As t becomes very large, the object approaches a terminal velocity of 48 m/s
f $s(t) = 240e^{-\frac{t}{5}} + 48t - 240$
g 9.21 s
- 102 a** $s(t) = 2e^{6t} - 2e^{4t}$ **b** 697.661 m
- 103 a** $-\frac{400}{3}\cos(3\pi t) + \frac{12400}{3}$
b 4039.052

- 104 a** $p = -\frac{179}{25}$, $q = \frac{429}{250}$ **b** $\frac{1653}{125}$ m
c 10 ms⁻¹
- 105** 0.2965
- 106 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{4}{x}(0.55)^x(0.45)^{4-x}$
 $X = 0, \dots, 4$
b 0.2005
- 107 a i** 0.000015 **ii** 0.1001
iii 0.1238
b 2
- 108 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{7}{x}(0.2)^x(0.8)^{7-x}$ $X = 0, \dots, 7$
b i 0.1146 **ii** 0.3899 **iii** 0.2709
- 109 a** 0.0016 **b** 0.9984 **c** 0.0047
- 110 a** 0.2592 **b** 10
- 111 b** $\frac{9}{16}$
- 112 a** 0.3487 **b** 0.3231 **c** 40 **d** 29
- 113 a i** 0.2 **ii** 0.7 **iii** 0.125
iv 0.0188
b i 0.3602 **ii** 0.2014
c 0.1631
- 114 a** Binomial, $n = 20$; $p = 0.9$ **b** 18
c 1.342 **d** 0.3917
- 115** $p = 0.2$ or $p = 0.8$
- 116** $n = 8$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** D **2** B **3** C **4** C **5** D **6** B
7 C **8** A **9** B **10** A **11** B **12** D
13 C **14** D **15** B **16** C **17** D **18** A
19 B **20** D **21** D **22** C **23** B **24** C
25 B **26** D **27** D **28** B **29** B **30** A
31 D **32** D **33** A **34** B **35** D **36** B
37 B **38** B **39** C **40** D **41** B **42** D
43 C **44** B **45** D **46** C **47** D **48** C
49 B **50** B **51** D **52** D **53** B **54** C
55 B **56** C **57** D **58** D **59** C **60** B
61 A **62** A **63** D **64** C **65** B **66** C
67 A **68** C **69** B **70** D **71** A **72** A
73 B **74** B **75** D **76** C **77** C **78** A
79 B **80** C **81** B **82** D **83** A **84** A
85 D **86** B **87** C **88** B **89** C **90** A
91 B **92** B **93** D **94** A **95** D **96** B
97 B **98** D **99** A **100** B

Chapter 11

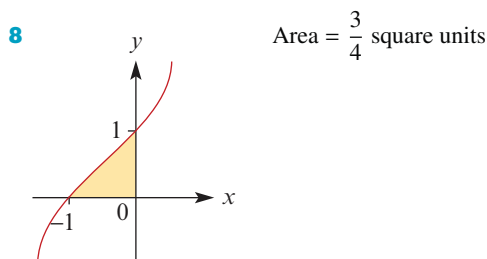
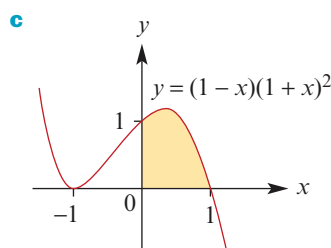
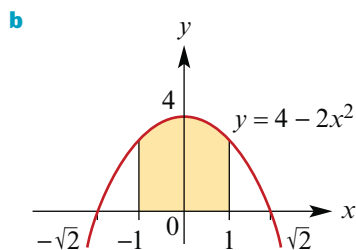
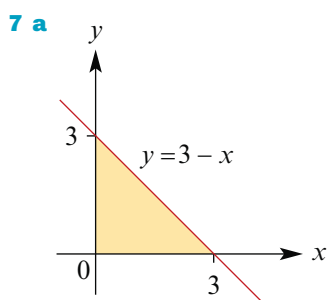
Exercise 11A

- 1** 62 **2** 60 square units
3 60.9063 square units **4** 68 square units
5 $\frac{101}{60}$
6 11.7

- 7 a** $\frac{35}{8}$ **b** $\frac{112}{25}$
8 36.75
9 $\pi \approx 3.13$
10 a 4.371 **b** 1.128
11 109.5 m²
12 a $\frac{9}{2}$ **b** 9 **c** 4

Exercise 11B

- 1 a** $\frac{9}{2}$ **b** 9 **c** 4
2 a $\frac{7}{3}$ **b** $16\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{9}{4}$ **d** 9
e $\frac{15}{4}$ **f** $49\frac{1}{2}$ **g** $15\frac{1}{3}$ **h** 30
3 4 **4** 9 **5** $\frac{4}{3}$ **6** 4



Exercise 11C

- 1** $-\frac{32}{3}$

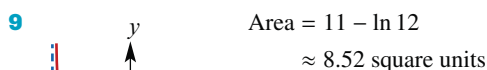
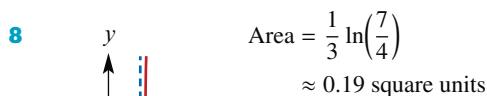
2 -36

3 $\frac{37}{12}$ square units
4 a $\frac{5}{6}$ **b** $8\frac{1}{6}$ square units
5 a 8 **b** 16 **c** -4 **d** -8
6 a -12 **b** 36 **c** 20
7 a 24, 21, 45 **b** 4, -1, 3
8 4.5 square units
9 $166\frac{2}{3}$ square units
10 $\frac{37}{12}$ square units
11 a $\frac{4}{3}$ **b** $\frac{1}{6}$ **c** $121\frac{1}{2}$ **d** $\frac{1}{6}$ **e** $4\sqrt{3}$ **f** 108

Exercise 11D

- 1 a** $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{140}{3}$ **c** $343\frac{11}{20}$
2 a 1 **b** 1 **c** 14 **d** 31 **e** $2\frac{1}{4}$ **f** 0
3 a 10 **b** 1 **c** $\frac{13}{3}$ **d** $\frac{1}{3}$ **e** $\frac{10}{441}$
f 34 **g** $\frac{2}{3}(2^{\frac{3}{2}} - 1)$ **h** $2 - 2^{\frac{1}{2}}$ **i** $\frac{1}{15}$
4 a $\frac{1}{2}(e^2 - 1)$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}(3 - e^{-2})$
c $6e^{\frac{1}{3}} - 4$ **d** $e^2 - e^{-2}$
5 a $\ln 2$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}\ln 5$ **c** $\frac{3}{2}\ln\left(\frac{19}{17}\right)$
d $3\ln\left(\frac{8}{5}\right)$ **e** $3\ln\left(\frac{7}{4}\right)$ **f** $\frac{3}{2}\ln 3$
6 $\frac{321}{10}$ square units
7

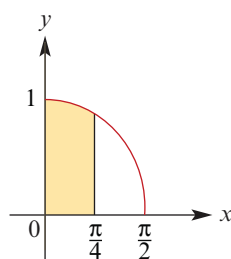
 Area = $2e^2 + 1$
 ≈ 15.78 square units



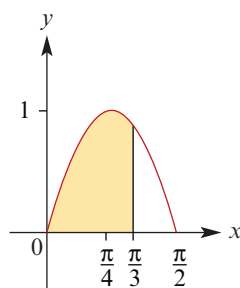
10 a $1 - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $1 + \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **d** 2 **e** 1
f $\frac{2}{3}$ **g** 4 **h** $\frac{1 - \sqrt{3}}{4}$ **i** -2

11 $-\sqrt{2} + 2$ square units

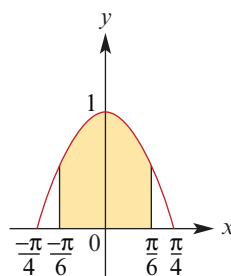
12 a $\int_0^{\pi/4} \cos x \, dx = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$



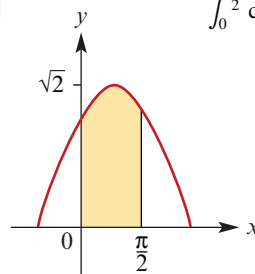
b $\int_0^{\pi/3} \sin(2x) \, dx = \frac{3}{4}$



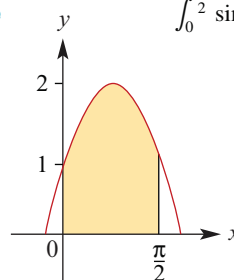
c $\int_{-\pi/6}^{\pi/6} \cos(2x) \, dx = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$



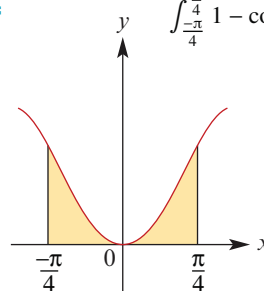
d $\int_0^{\pi/2} \cos \theta + \sin \theta \, d\theta = 2$



e $\int_0^{\pi/2} \sin(2\theta) + 1 \, d\theta = 1 + \frac{\pi}{2}$

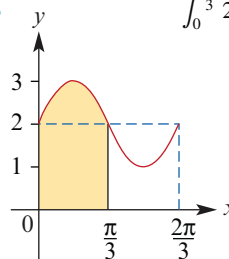


f $\int_{-\pi/4}^{\pi/4} 1 - \cos(2\theta) \, d\theta = \frac{\pi}{2} - 1$



13 a $\frac{\sqrt{2}}{2}$ **b** $-\frac{1}{3}$ **c** $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{3}$ **d** $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

14 $\int_0^{\pi/3} 2 + \sin(3x) \, dx = \frac{2\pi}{3} + \frac{2}{3}$



15 a $4\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $2\frac{2}{3}$ **c** 12

d $\frac{5\sqrt{3}}{4} - 2$ **e** $\frac{e^4}{2} + 4 \ln 2 - \frac{e^2}{2}$

f 4 **g** $\frac{5\pi^2}{8} + 1$ **h** $8 \ln 2 + \frac{51}{4}$

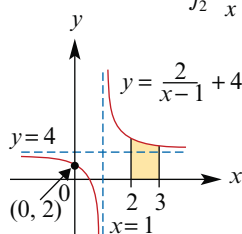
i $\frac{1}{12}$

Exercise 11E

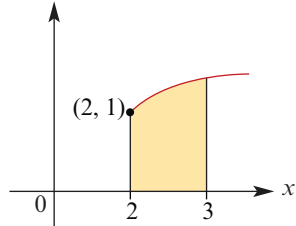
1 a $\frac{1}{2} \ln 2$ **b** 0 **c** $\ln\left(\frac{7}{6}\right)$

d $\ln\left(\frac{17}{7}\right)$ **e** 0 **f** $\ln 6$

- g** $\frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{31}{16}\right)$ **h** $\ln\left(\frac{e^e + 1}{e + 1}\right)$ **i** $-\ln(\ln 2)$
2 $\frac{e^{\sqrt{x}}}{2\sqrt{x}}, 2e^{\sqrt{2}} - 2e$
3 $6 \sin^2(2x) \cos(2x), \frac{1}{6}$
4 a 139.68 **b** 18.50 **c** -0.66
5 $5 \ln 3 + 4$
6 $5 + 6 \ln 2$
7 a $(x+1)e^x, 1$
 b $\sin(3x) + 3x \cos(3x), \frac{\pi}{18} - \frac{1}{9}$
8 $a = 1, b = -2$; Area = $\frac{12\sqrt{3} - \pi - 12}{3\pi}$
9 a 1.450 square units
 b 1.716 square units
10 0.1345
11 $\int_2^3 \frac{2}{x-1} + 4 dx = 2 \ln 2 + 4$



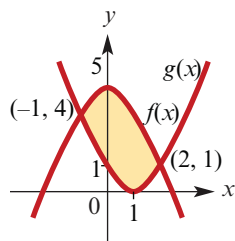
- 12** $\int_2^3 \sqrt{2x-4} + 1 dx = \frac{1}{3} \times 2^{\frac{3}{2}} + 1$



- 13 a** $A(0, 3), B(1, 0)$ **b** 2 square units
14 b Derivative: $(\ln a)e^{x \ln a} = (\ln a) \cdot a^x$
 Anti-derivative: $\frac{e^{x \ln a}}{\ln a} = \frac{a^x}{\ln a}$

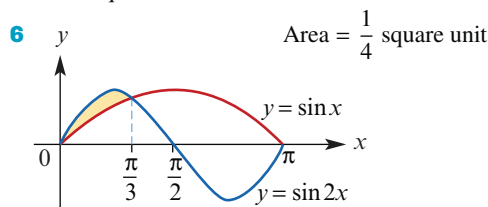
Exercise 11F

- 1** 36 square units
2 Area = 9 square units

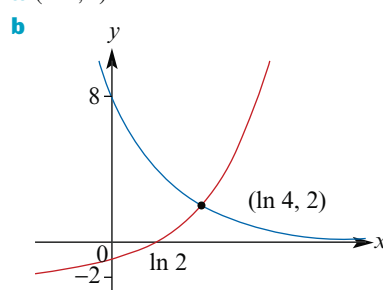


- 3 a** 36 square units **b** $20\frac{5}{6}$ square units
 c 4 square units **d** $4\frac{1}{2}$ square units
 e $4\frac{1}{2}$ square units

- 4 a** 2 square units
 b $e + e^{-1} - 2 \approx 1.086$ square units
5 3.699 square units



- 7** $P(\ln 3, 3)$; Area ≈ 2.197 square units
8 a $(\ln 4, 2)$



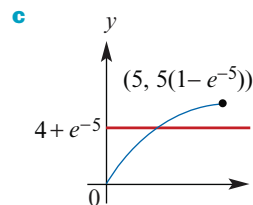
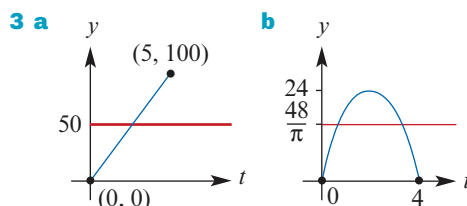
Area = $4 \ln 2 + 3 \approx 5.77$ square units

- 9** $4 - 3 \ln 3 \approx 0.704$ square units
10 $\frac{1}{3}$ square unit

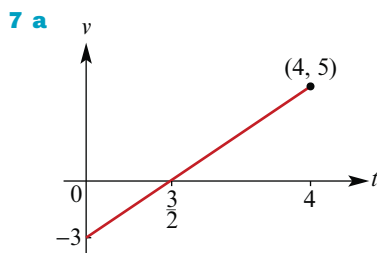
Exercise 11G

- 1 a** $\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{2}{\pi}$ **c** $\frac{2}{\pi}$ **d** 0 **e** $\frac{1}{2}(e^2 - e^{-2})$

- 2** $10(e^5 - 1)e^{-5} \approx 9.93^\circ\text{C}$



- 4** $\frac{147}{10}$ m/s
5 $\frac{a^2}{6}$
6 a $3000(2 - 2^{0.9})$ N/m²
 b $1000(4^{0.1} - 1)$ N/m²

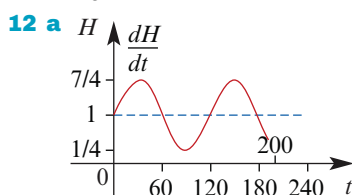


- b** 4 m **c** $\frac{17}{2}$ m

8 -3 m
9 a $-\frac{20}{3}$

10 a 14 m **b** $\frac{7}{2}$ m/s

11 $k = \frac{3}{8}$



b $t \in (10, 50) \cup (130, 170)$

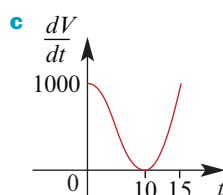
c $t = 30$ or $t = 150$

d i 120 kilojoules
ii 221.48 kilojoules

13 a When $t = 0$, 1000 million litres per hour;
 When $t = 2$, 896 million litres per hour

b i $t = 0$ and $t = 15$

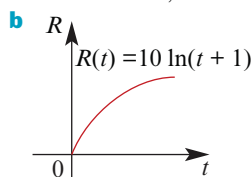
ii 1000 million litres per hour



d i 5000

ii 5000 million litres flowed out in the first 10 hours

14 a When $t = 5$, ≈ 17.92 penguins per year;
 When $t = 10$, ≈ 23.97 penguins per year;
 When $t = 100$, ≈ 46.15 penguins per year



c 3661; the growth in the penguin population over 100 years

15 $71\,466\frac{2}{3}$ m³

16 1.26 m

17 a 6 metres

b 18π m²

c i $y - 3 + 3 \cos\left(\frac{a}{3}\right) = \frac{-1}{\sin\left(\frac{a}{3}\right)}(x - a)$

ii 5.409

18 a i 9 **ii** $\frac{3(\sqrt{2} + 2)}{2}$ **iii** 12

b Max value is 12; Min value is 0.834

c $\frac{48(\pi + 1)}{\pi}$ litres

Exercise 11H

1 a 60 m **b** 20 m **c** 30 m **d** 55 m

e 44 m **f** $\frac{70}{3}$ m **g** $\frac{165}{2}$ m **h** $\frac{49}{2}$ m

2 a $v = -\frac{1}{2}t + 5$; $a = -\frac{1}{2}$; $x = -\frac{t^2}{4} + 5t$

b $v = -\frac{2}{5}t^2 + 10$; $a = -\frac{4}{5}t$; $x = -\frac{2}{15}t^3 + 10t$

c $v = 2t - 10$; $a = 2$; $x = t^2 - 10t$

d $v = 6(t - 1)(t - 5)$; $a = 12(t - 3)$;
 $x = 2(t^3 - 9t^2 + 15t)$

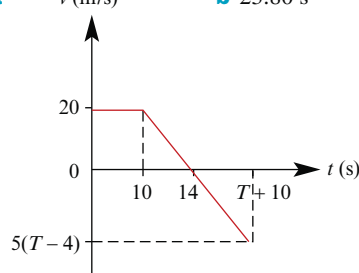
e $v = 10 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{10}t\right) + 10$; $a = \pi \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{10}t\right)$;

$x = 10\left(t + \frac{10}{\pi} - \frac{10}{\pi} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{10}t\right)\right)$

f $v = 10e^{2t}$; $a = 20e^{2t}$; $x = 5e^{2t} - 5$

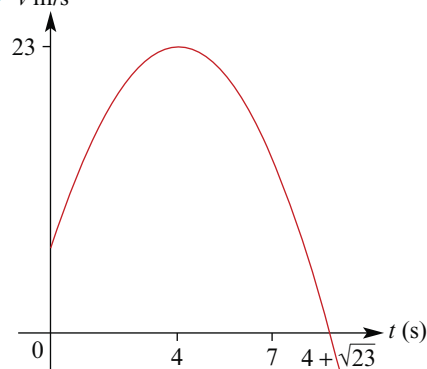
3 3589.89 m

4 a v (m/s) **b** 23.80 s

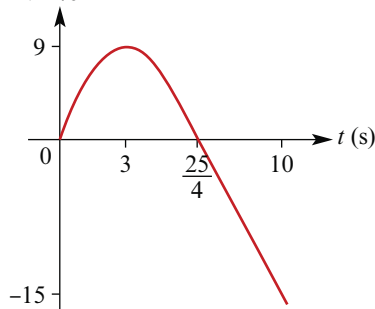


5 a $v = -t^2 + 8t + 7$

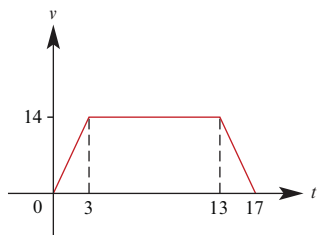
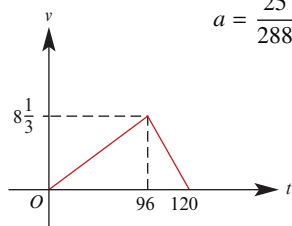
b v m/s⁻¹



c $\frac{392}{3}$ m

6 a $v \text{ m/s}^{-1}$

 b $\frac{775}{12}$

7 189 m


 8 $a = \frac{25}{288}, \dot{x}_{\max} = 8\frac{1}{3} \text{ m/s}$

 9 $68\frac{1}{3} \text{ s}$

10 10 s, 150 m

 11 $10(3 + \sqrt{3}) \text{ s}, 200(2 + \sqrt{3}) \text{ m}$

 12 a 2 s b $7\frac{1}{3} \text{ m}$

13 36 s

Chapter 11 review

Short-response questions

 1 a $\frac{25}{12}$ b $\frac{77}{60}$ c $\frac{101}{60}$

 2 a $\frac{14}{3}$ b $48\frac{3}{4}$ c $\frac{1}{2}$ d $\frac{15}{16}$ e $\frac{16}{15}$

 3 a $B(1, 3), C(3, 3)$ b 6 c $\frac{4}{3}$

 4 $21\frac{1}{12}$ square units

 5 a 0 b $-\frac{5}{3}a^{\frac{3}{2}}$ c $-\frac{55}{3}$ d $\frac{1}{2}$

e 1 f 0 g 0

 6 $\frac{23}{2}$ 7 3 8 4 9 820

 10 $\frac{85}{4}$ 11 $\frac{5}{3}$ 12 $\frac{5}{3}$

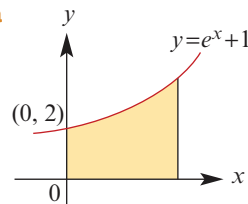
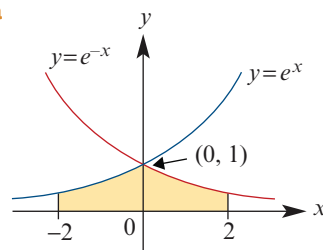
 13 $\int_a^b f(x) - g(x) dx + \int_b^c g(x) - f(x) dx + \int_c^d f(x) - g(x) dx$

 14 a $P(3, 9), Q(7.5, 0)$ b 29.25 square units

 15 a 5 b $p = \frac{20}{7}$

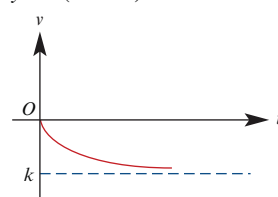
16 3.45 square units

 17 a $A(0, 6), B(5, 5)$ b $15\frac{1}{6}$ c $20\frac{5}{6}$

 18 a b $e^2 + 1$

 19 a b $2 - 2e^{-2}$

 20 $\frac{14}{9}$

 21 a $e - 1$ b $2(e - 1)$ square units

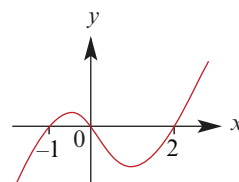
 22 $2 + e^2$ square units

 23 a $\dot{y} = k(1 - e^{-t})$

 b Limiting velocity of $k \text{ m/s}$

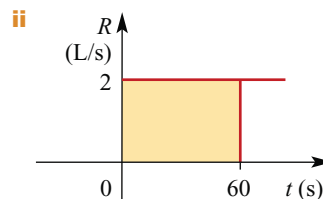
 24 a $3 - e^{-2}$ b $\ln 2 + \frac{5}{2}$ c $\frac{\pi^2}{8} + 1$

 d $\frac{1}{2} \ln\left(\frac{5}{6}\right) - \frac{1}{e^4} + \frac{1}{e^5}$

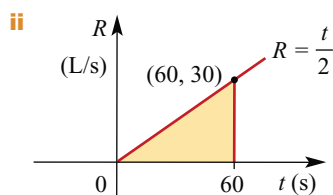
 25 a 6 b $\frac{16}{3}$ c $-\frac{51}{16}$

 26 $3\frac{1}{12}$ square units


27 a i 120 L



b i 900 L



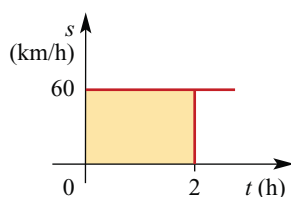
iii $900a^2$ L

c i 7200 square units

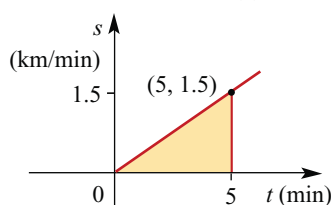
ii Volume of water which has flowed in

iii 66.94 s

28 a



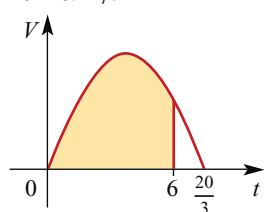
b i



ii 3.75 km

c i $20 - 6t$ m/s²

ii



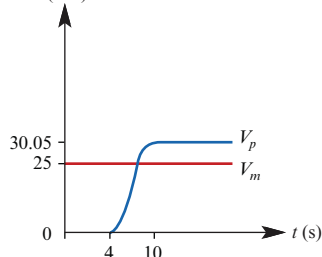
iii 144 metres

29 a $v_1 = 30.05$

b i $\frac{dv}{dt} = \frac{-3}{10}(3t^2 - 42t + \frac{364}{3})$, $4 \leq t \leq 10$

ii $t = 7$ (Chasing for 3 s)

c v (m/s)



d i 90.3 m

ii $x_p = -\frac{3}{40}t^4 + \frac{21}{10}t^3 - \frac{91}{5}t^2 - \frac{1281}{20}t - \frac{401}{5}$, for $t \in [4, 10]$

e 41.62 s

30 a 6 m^2

b i $y = x - \frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $(x^2 - \frac{1}{4}) \text{ m}^2$

c i $y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$, $P(-2, 2)$, $S(2, 2)$ **ii** $\frac{16}{3} \text{ m}^2$

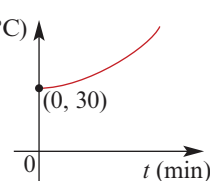
31 a $4y - 5x = -3$

b $(\frac{3}{5}, 0)$ **c** $(1, 0)$

d $\frac{9}{40}$ **e** $9 : 49$

32 a 968.3°

b $\theta(^\circ\text{C})$



c 2.7 minutes

d 64.5°C/min

34 a $\frac{1}{3}$ square units

d $1 - \frac{n-1}{n+1} = \frac{2}{n+1}$ square units

e $\frac{9}{11}, \frac{99}{101}, \frac{999}{1001}$

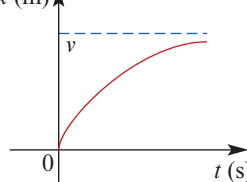
f Area between the curves approaches 1

35 a 5×10^4 m/s

b Magnitude of velocity becomes very small

c $5 \times 10^4(1 - e^{-20})$ m **d** $x = v(1 - e^{-t})$

e x (m)

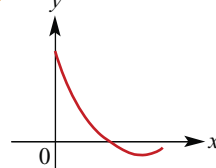


36 a $y = 7 \times 10^{-7}x^3 - 0.00116x^2 + 0.405x + 60$

b 100 m

c i

ii $(0, 60)$



d $51\,307 \text{ m}^2$

37 a $\frac{dy}{dx} = -\frac{x}{10}e^{\frac{x}{10}}$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = -x(100 - x^2)^{-\frac{1}{2}}$

b When $x = 0$, $\frac{dy}{dx} = 0$ for both functions

c $-e$

d 6.71 square units

e 8.55%

f $100e - 250 \approx 21.828$ square units

g i $100(e - 2)$

ii $(25\pi - 100e + 200)$ square units

38 a 3600 m, 80 km/h

b 90 s after A passed B, 200 m

39 3.92 ms^{-1}

Multiple-choice questions

1 D **2** B **3** C **4** A **5** A

6 B **7** B **8** D **9** C **10** A

11 D **12** C **13** C **14** C **15** D

16 D **17** B **18** D **19** C

Chapter 12

Exercise 12A

- 1 a** A and C (SAS) **b** All of them (AAS)
 c A and B (SSS)
2 a 4.10 **b** 0.87 **c** 2.94
 d 4.08 **e** 33.69° **f** 11.92
3 $\frac{40\sqrt{3}}{3}$ cm
4 66.42°, 66.42°, 47.16°
5 23 m
6 a 9.59° **b** $\sqrt{35}$ m
7 a 60° **b** 17.32 m
8 a 6.84 m **b** 6.15 m
9 12.51°
10 182.7 m
11 1451 m
12 a $5\sqrt{2}$ cm **b** 90°
13 3.07 cm **14** 37.8 cm
15 31.24 m **16** 4.38 m
17 57.74 m **18** $\frac{2\sqrt{3}}{2 - \sqrt{3}} \approx 12.93$ m
19 $\frac{10}{1 + \sqrt{3}} \approx 3.66$ **20** $\angle APB = 47.16^\circ$

Exercise 12B

- 1 a** 8.15 **b** 3.98 **c** 11.75 **d** 9.46
2 a 56.32° **b** 36.22° **c** 49.54°
 d 98.16° or 5.84°
3 a $A = 48^\circ$, $b = 13.84$, $c = 15.44$
 b $a = 7.26$, $C = 56.45^\circ$, $c = 6.26$
 c $B = 19.8^\circ$, $b = 4.66$, $c = 8.27$
 d $C = 117^\circ$, $b = 24.68$, $c = 34.21$
 e $C = 30^\circ$, $a = 5.40$, $c = 15.56$
4 a $B = 59.12^\circ$, $A = 72.63^\circ$, $a = 19.57$ or
 $B = 120.88^\circ$, $A = 10.87^\circ$, $a = 3.87$
 b $C = 26.69^\circ$, $A = 24.31^\circ$, $a = 4.18$
 c $B = 55.77^\circ$, $C = 95.88^\circ$, $c = 17.81$ or
 $B = 124.23^\circ$, $C = 27.42^\circ$, $c = 8.24$
5 554.26 m
6 35.64 m
7 1659.86 m
8 a 26.60 m **b** 75.12 m

Exercise 12C

- 1** 5.93 cm
2 $\angle ABC = 97.90^\circ$, $\angle ACB = 52.41^\circ$
3 a 26 **b** 11.74 **c** 49.29° **d** 73
 e 68.70 **f** 47.22° **g** 7.59 **h** 38.05°
4 3.23 km **5** 2.626 km **6** 55.93 cm
7 a 8.23 cm **b** 3.77 cm
8 a 7.326 cm **b** 5.53 cm

- 9 a** 83.62° **b** 64.46°
10 a 87.61 m **b** 67.7 m

Exercise 12D

- 1 a** 11.28 cm² **b** 15.10 cm²
 c 10.99 cm² **d** 9.58 cm²
2 a 6.267 cm² **b** 15.754 cm²
 c 19.015 cm² **d** 13.274 cm²
 e 24.105 cm² or 29.401 cm²
 f 2.069 cm²

Exercise 12E

- 1** 400.10 m **2** 34.77 m **3** 575.18 m
4 109.90 m **5** 16.51 m **6** 056°
7 a 034° **b** 214°
8 a 3583.04 m **b** 353°
9 027° **10** 113° **11** 22.01°
12 a $\angle BAC = 49^\circ$ **b** 264.24 km
13 10.63 km

Exercise 12F

- 1 a** 13 cm **b** 15.26 cm
 c 31.61° **d** 38.17°
2 a 4 cm **b** 71.57° **c** 12.65 cm
 d 13.27 cm **e** 72.45° **f** 266.39 cm²
3 10.31° at B; 14.43° at A and C
4 a 85 m **b** 45.04 m
5 17.58°
6 1702.55 m
7 a 24.78° **b** 65.22° **c** 20.44°
8 42.40 m
9 1945.54 m
10 a 6.96 cm **b** 16.25 cm²
11 a 5 km **b** 215.65° **c** 6.56°

Exercise 12G

- 1 a** $4a^2$, $3a^2$ and $12a^2$ square units respectively
 b 14.04° **c** 18.43° **d** 11.31°
2 a 35.26° **b** 45°
3 a 0.28 **b** 15.78°
4 a 15.51 cm **b** 20 cm **c** 45.64°
5 a i 107 m **ii** 87 m **iii** 138 m
 b 43.00°
6 a $5\sqrt{11}$ cm **b** 64.76° **c** 71.57° **d** 95.74°
7 26.57°
8 a 54.74° **b** 70.53°
9 1.67 km
10 a 141.42 m **b** 20.70°
11 16 cm
12 a $\frac{a\sqrt{3}}{2}$ cm **b** $\frac{a}{2}$ cm

Chapter 12 review

Short-response questions

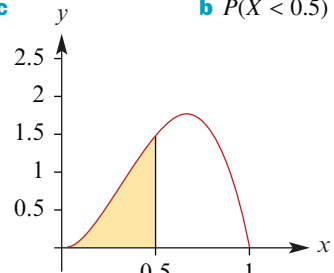
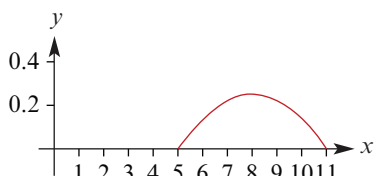
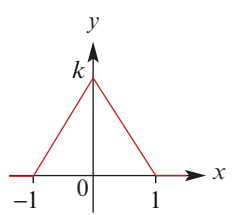
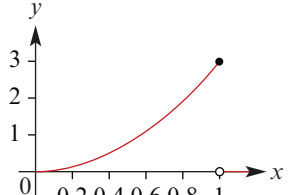
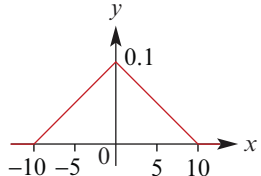
- 1 $\sin(\theta^\circ) = \frac{5}{6}$
- 2 a $\angle ABC = 30^\circ$, $\angle ACB = 120^\circ$
b $40\sqrt{3}$ cm
c 20 cm
- 3 $10\sqrt{3}$ cm
- 4 $4\sqrt{19}$ km
- 5 $\frac{1}{6}$
- 6 a $5\sqrt{3}$ cm
b $\frac{25\sqrt{3}}{4}$ cm²
c $\frac{105}{4}$ cm²
d $\frac{5(21 + 5\sqrt{3})}{4}$ cm²
- 7 143° 8 $\frac{17}{28}$ 9 $\frac{3\sqrt{93}}{31}$
- 10 $\sin(\angle PQR) = 0.9$
- 11 a i 30° ii 15°
b $AT = 300(1 + \sqrt{3})$ m, $BT = 150(\sqrt{6} + \sqrt{2})$ m
- 12 $\sqrt{181}$ km
- 13 a $AC = \frac{12\sqrt{3}}{5}$ km, $BC = 2.4$ km
b 57.6 km/h
- 14 11 m
- 15 a $\angle ACB = 12^\circ$, $\angle CBO = 53^\circ$, $\angle CBA = 127^\circ$
b 189.33 m
c 113.94 m
- 16 a $\angle TAB = 3^\circ$, $\angle ABT = 97^\circ$, $\angle ATB = 80^\circ$
b 2069.87 m c 252.25 m
- 17 a 184.78 m b 199.71 m c 14.93 m
- 18 a 370.17 m b 287.94 m c 185.08 m
- 19 a 029.9°
b i $\angle XWY = 33.14^\circ$ ii 105.86°
- 20 a $8\sqrt{2}$ cm
b 10 cm
c 10 cm
d 68.90°
- 21 1939 m
- 22 a 26.57°
b 39.81°
c 38.66°
- 23 Area = $\frac{L^2 \sin \alpha \sin \beta \sin \gamma}{2(\sin \alpha + \sin \beta + \sin \gamma)^2}$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1 B 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 A
7 D 8 A 9 D 10 D 11 D 12 C
13 C 14 D 15 B 16 C 17 A 18 C
19 B 20 B

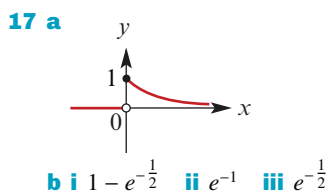
Chapter 13

Exercise 13A

- 1 a 0.16 b 0.24
 - 2 a 0.18 b 0.5
 - 4 $k = -\frac{11}{6}$
 - 5 a c b $P(X < 0.5) = \frac{5}{16}$
- 
- 6 a $k = 1$ b 0.865
 - 7 a 
b 0.259 c 0.244 d 0.28
 - 8 b i $0.024 = 2.4\%$ ii $0.155 = 15.5\%$
 - 9 a $k = 0.005$ b 0.007
 - 10 a 
b $k = 1$
 - 11 a 
b 0.406
 - 12 a 
b 0.190
 - 13 a $k = 1000$ b 0.5
 - 14 a $\frac{2}{3}$ b $\frac{17}{30}$

15 a 0.202 b 0.449

16 a 0.45 b 0.711



Exercise 13B

1 a 1 b 0.28

2 a 0.632 b 1.609

3 2.8

4 0.2248

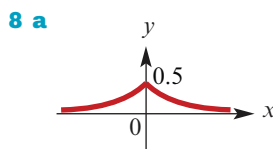
5 2.773 minutes

6 12 kg

7 a 0.630

b 0.909

c 0.279



b 1.386

9 0.641

Exercise 13C

1 a $\frac{2}{3}$ b $\frac{1}{3}$ c $\frac{1}{2}$ d Does not exist

2 a 1 b 2.097 c 1.132
d 0.4444

3 a 0.567 b 0.458

4 0

5 0.714

6 1

7 a 2

b 0.286

8 $\text{Var}(X) = \frac{1}{18}$, $\text{sd}(X) = \frac{\sqrt{2}}{6}$

9 a $\frac{1}{\ln 9}$ b $E(X) = 3.641$, $\text{Var}(X) = 4.948$

10 $E(X) = 0.333$, $\text{Var}(X) = 0.056$

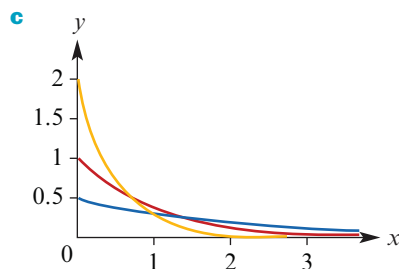
11 $E(X) = \frac{4}{3}$, $\text{Var}(X) = \frac{2}{9}$

12 a 0.0004 b $\frac{16}{3}$ c 2.21

13 $A = \frac{2}{9}$, $B = 3$

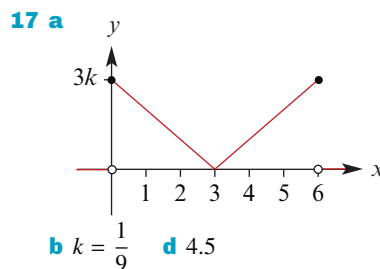
14 a 0.4 b $\frac{\sqrt{19} - 1}{6}$

15 a $-k^2 x e^{-kx}$, $\frac{-(kx + 1)}{k} e^{-kx}$



d $y = e^{-x}$ is dilated by factor $\frac{1}{\lambda}$ from the x -axis and by factor λ from the y -axis

16 a $\frac{3}{4a^3}$ b $2\sqrt{5}$



Exercise 13D

1 a mean = 15, var = 36

b mean = -8, var = 36

2 a mean = 5.5, sd = 1

b mean = -2.5, var = 2

3 a mean = 3, sd = 0.7

b mean = -3.58, var = 3.08

4 1300

5 \$98.94, \$0.33

6 a 0, 5.4 b 3, 0.6 c 1, 5.4

d $g(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{x^2}{18} & \text{if } -3 \leq x \leq 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

e $h(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{(x-1)^2}{18} & \text{if } -2 \leq x \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

7 a i $\frac{31}{40}$ ii $\frac{91}{20}$

b i $\frac{17}{12}$, $\frac{71}{144}$ ii $\frac{71}{36}$

Exercise 13E

1 a 0.125 b 0.992 c 0.117

2 a $\frac{3}{4}$ b $\frac{1}{9}$ c $\frac{5}{36}$

3 a 0.3679 b 0.9817 c 0.3561

4 a $k = \frac{1}{36}$ b $\frac{1}{48}$

5 a $\frac{2}{3}$ b 25 c 20 d 15.625

$$6 \text{ a } f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ \frac{1}{5}x & \text{if } 0 < x < 5 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq 5 \end{cases}$$

$$b \text{ i } \frac{3}{5} \quad \text{ii } \frac{1}{5}$$

$$c \ 4.75$$

$$7 \text{ a } f(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ \frac{1}{4}x & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{20}(x^4 + 4) & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

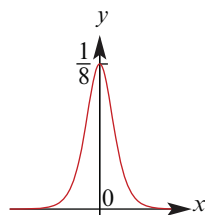
$$b \ \sqrt[4]{6}$$

$$8 \text{ f}(x) = \begin{cases} 12x^2 - 12x^3 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$9 \text{ f}(x) = \begin{cases} 5(1-x)^4 & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

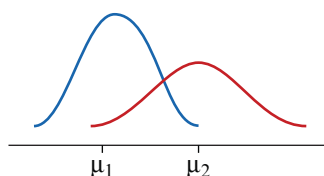
$$10 \text{ f}(x) = \begin{cases} 0.5e^x & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ 0.5e^{-x} & \text{if } x > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$11 \text{ f}(x) = \frac{0.5e^{-0.5x}}{(1 + e^{-0.5x})^2}$$



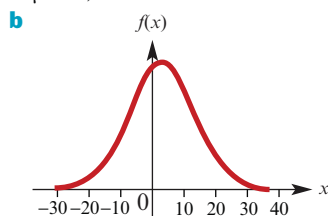
Exercise 13F

1

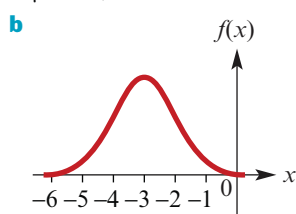


2 C

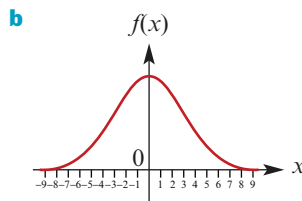
$$3 \text{ a } \mu = 3, \sigma = 10$$



$$4 \text{ a } \mu = -3, \sigma = 1$$



$$5 \text{ a } \mu = 0, \sigma = 3$$



6 a Dilation of factor 2 from the y-axis and dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x-axis, then translation 3 units to the right

b Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y-axis and dilation of factor 2 from the x-axis, then translation 3 units to the right

c Dilation of factor 2 from the y-axis and dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x-axis, then translation 3 units to the left

7 a Translation 3 units to the left, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y-axis and dilation of factor 2 from the x-axis

b Translation 3 units to the left, then dilation of factor 2 from the y-axis and dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x-axis

c Translation 3 units to the right, then dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y-axis and dilation of factor 2 from the x-axis

Exercise 13G

$$1 \text{ a } 16\%$$

$$b \ 16\%$$

$$c \ 2.5\%$$

$$d \ 2.5\%$$

$$2 \text{ a } \mu = 135, \sigma = 5$$

$$b \ \mu = 10, \sigma \approx \frac{4}{3}$$

$$3 \text{ a } 68\% \quad b \ 16\% \quad c \ 0.15\%$$

$$4 \ 21.1, 33.5$$

$$5 \text{ one, 95, 99.7, three}$$

$$6 \ 2.5\%$$

$$7 \text{ a } 16\% \quad b \ 16\%$$

$$8 \text{ a } 68\% \quad b \ 16\% \quad c \ 2.5\%$$

$$9 \text{ a } 95\% \quad b \ 16\% \quad c \ 50\% \quad d \ 99.7\%$$

$$10 \text{ a } 0 \quad b \ -\frac{5}{4} \quad c \ 1.5$$

$$11 \text{ a } -1.4 \quad b \ 1.1 \quad c \ 3.5$$

$$12 \text{ Michael } 1.4, \text{ Cheryl } 1.5; \text{ Cheryl}$$

$$13 \text{ Biology } 1.73, \text{ History } 0.90; \text{ Biology}$$

14 a

Student	French	English	Maths
Mary	1	0.875	0
Steve	-0.5	-1	1.25
Sue	0	0.7	-0.2

$$b \text{ i } \text{Mary} \quad \text{ii } \text{Mary} \quad \text{iii } \text{Steve}$$

$$c \ \text{Mary}$$

Exercise 13H

- 1 a** 0.9772 **b** 0.9938 **c** 0.9938 **d** 0.9943
e 0.0228 **f** 0.0668 **g** 0.3669 **h** 0.1562
2 a 0.9772 **b** 0.6915 **c** 0.9938 **d** 0.9003
e 0.0228 **f** 0.0099 **g** 0.0359 **h** 0.1711
3 a 0.6827 **b** 0.9545 **c** 0.9973
4 a 0.0214 **b** 0.9270 **c** 0.0441 **d** 0.1311
5 $c = 1.2816$ **6** $c = 0.6745$
7 $c = 1.9600$ **8** $c = -1.6449$
9 $c = -0.8416$ **10** $c = -1.2816$
11 $c = -1.9600$
12 a 0.9522 **b** 0.7977 **c** 0.0478 **d** 0.1545
13 a 0.9452 **b** 0.2119 **c** 0.9452 **d** 0.1571
14 a $c = 9.2897$ **b** $k = 8.5631$
15 a $c = 10$ **b** $k = 15.88$
16 a $a = 0.994$ **b** $b = 1.960$ **c** $c = 2.968$
17 a 0.7161 **b** 0.0966 **c** 0.5204
d $c = 33.5143$ **e** $k = 13.0291$
f $c_1 = 5.72$, $c_2 = 38.28$
18 a 0.9772 **b** 0.9772 **c** $c = 10.822$
d $k = 9.5792$ **e** $c_1 = 28$, $c_2 = 72$

Exercise 13I

- 1 a i** 0.2525 **ii** 0.0478 **iii** 0.0901
b 124.7
2 a i 0.7340 **ii** 0.8944 **iii** 0.5530
b 170.25 cm
c 153.267 cm
3 a i 0.0766 **ii** 0.9998 **iii** 0.153
b 57.3
4 Mean = 1.55 kg; sd = 0.194 kg
5 a 36.9% **b** $c = 69$
6 a 0.0228 **b** 0.0005 **c** 0.0206
7 a 3.04 grams **b** 350.27
8 1003 mL
9 a Small 0.1587; Med 0.7745; Large 0.0668
b \$348.92
10 a i 0.1169 **ii** 17.7
b 0.0284
11 a A: 0.0228; B: 0.1587 **b** $c = \frac{34}{3}$

Chapter 13 review

Short-response questions

- 1 a** 2 **b** 0.21 **c** 0.44
2 a $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{1}{3}$
3 a $k = 12$ **b** $P(X < \frac{2}{3}) = \frac{16}{27}$
c $P(X < \frac{1}{3} | X < \frac{2}{3}) = \frac{3}{16}$
4 a 0.008 **b** $\frac{8}{27}$

$$5 \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$6 F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ x^3(4-3x) & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

$$7 \frac{2}{3}$$

$$8 a \frac{7}{3} \quad b \frac{11}{9} \quad c a = 1$$

$$9 a 1-p \quad b 1-p \quad c 2p-1$$

$$10 a P(Z < \frac{1}{2}) \quad b P(Z < -\frac{1}{2}) \quad c P(Z > \frac{1}{2})$$

$$d P(-\frac{1}{2} < Z < \frac{1}{2}) \quad e P(-\frac{1}{2} < Z < 1)$$

$$11 (x, y) \rightarrow \left(\frac{x-8}{3}, 3y \right)$$

$$12 a a = -1 \quad b b = 1 \quad c 0.5$$

$$13 a 0.84 \quad b 0.5 \quad c 0.16 \quad d 0.68$$

$$14 a 0.16 \quad b 0.34 \quad c 0.32 \quad d 0.02$$

$$15 a 0.69 \quad b 0.19 \quad c 0.15 \quad d 0.68$$

$$16 \text{ Best C, worst B}$$

$$17 b = -1.5$$

$$18 b F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x < 0 \\ 1 - (1-x)^n & \text{if } 0 \leq x \leq 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x > 1 \end{cases}$$

$$19 a \frac{q}{p} \quad b 1-q \quad c \frac{1-p}{1-q}$$

$$20 a = \frac{1}{3}, b = 2$$

$$21 a a = \frac{-2}{81} \quad b \frac{1}{81} \quad c 700 \text{ hours}$$

$$d 45\,000$$

$$22 a \frac{1}{4} \quad b \frac{5-\sqrt{5}}{5} \quad c \frac{1}{3}$$

$$23 a F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{\pi(x-6)}{10}\right) + \frac{1}{2} & 1 \leq x \leq 11 \\ 1 & x > 11 \end{cases}$$

$$b \text{ Median} = 6, \text{ IQR} = \frac{10}{3}$$

$$24 a k = \frac{1}{4} \quad b \mu = 2, \text{ Var}(X) = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$c \frac{4\sqrt{5}}{5} \approx 1.8$$

$$25 a 0.1057 \quad b 0.7851$$

$$26 a 0.2483 \quad b 12.495 \text{ secs}$$

$$27 0.941$$

$$28 k = 3.92$$

Category	Range
High	> 62
Moderate	[56, 62]
Average	[45, 55]
Little	[37, 44]
Low	< 37

- 30 a i** 0.1587 **ii** 0.9747 **iii** 0.0164
b $c = 53\,592$
c 3.7×10^{-11}
- 31 a** 3.17×10^{-5} **b** False
c $c_1 = 13.53$, $c_2 = 16.47$
- 32** 0.0803
- 33** 0.92%
- 34** \$22.13
- 35 a** $k = 25$ **b** $\frac{2}{3}$ **c** $\frac{2}{3}$
- 36 a** $\mu = 60.027$, $\sigma = 0.2$ **b** 10%
- 37 a** 0.9044 **b** 5.88 **c** 9.044
d 0.2650 **e** \$17.61, 54.0281
- 38 a** $\mu = 0$, $\sigma = 2.658$ **b** 0.882

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** B **2** C **3** D **4** B **5** B **6** A
7 B **8** A **9** C **10** C **11** A **12** D
13 B **14** C **15** D **16** A **17** C **18** B
19 D **20** C **21** A **22** B **23** C

Chapter 14

Exercise 14A

- No; sample will be biased towards the type of movie being shown.
- a** No; biased towards shoppers.
b Randomly select a sample from telephone lists or an electoral roll.
- No; only interested people will call, and they may call more than once.
- a** No; biased towards older, friendly or sick guinea pigs which may be easier to catch.
b Number guinea pigs and then generate random numbers to select a sample.
- No; a student from a large school has less chance of being selected than a student from a small school.
- a** Unemployed will be under represented.
b Unemployed or employed may be under represented, depending on time of day.
c Unemployed will be over represented. Use random sampling based on the whole population (e.g. electoral roll).
- a** Divide platform into a grid of 1 m^2 squares. Select squares using a random number generator to give two digits, one a vertical reference and one a horizontal reference.
b Yes, if crabs are fairly evenly distributed; otherwise, five squares may not be enough.
- No; a parent's chance of selection depends on how many children they have at the school.

- Not a random sample; only interested people will call, and they may call more than once.
- People who go out in the evenings will not be included in the sample.
- 30 Honda owners, 70 Mazda owners

13 a

Age (years)	Males	Females
18-24	41	36
25-34	59	50
35-44	50	46
45-54	40	41
55-64	34	46
65-74	26	31
Total	250	250

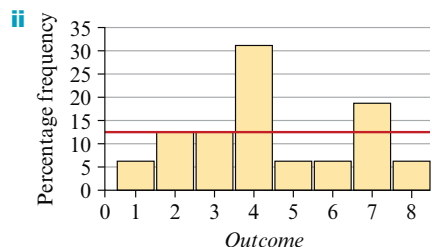
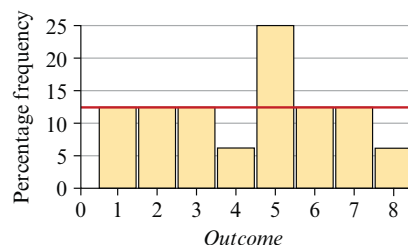
b

Age (years)	Males	Females
18-24	49	28
25-34	71	40
35-44	60	37
45-54	48	33
55-64	41	37
65-74	31	25
Total	300	200

Exercise 14B

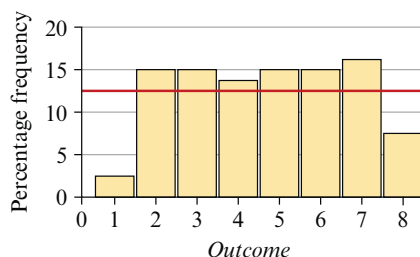
The following answers show the results of one set of simulations for each question. Answers will vary.

1 a i

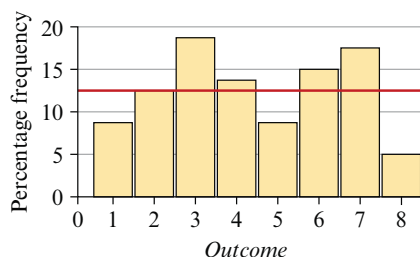


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

b i

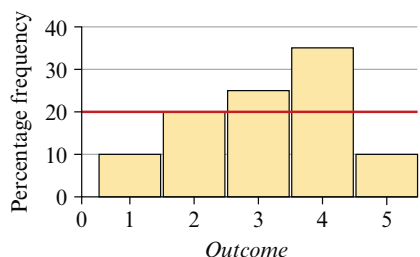


ii

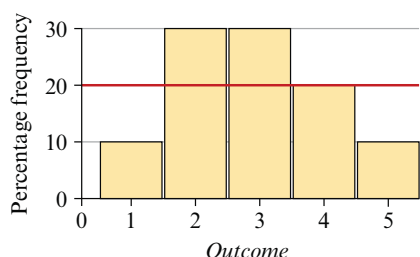


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

2 a i

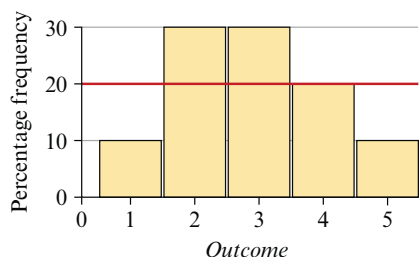


ii

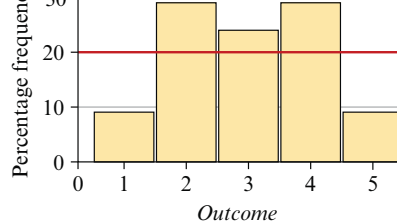


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

b i

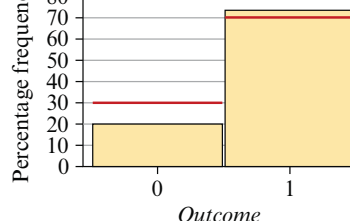


ii

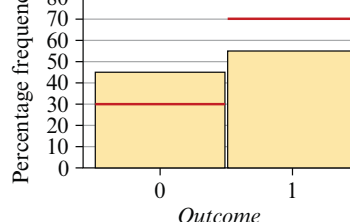


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

3 a i

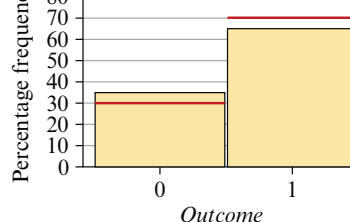


ii

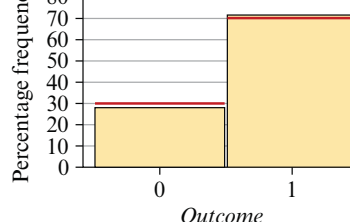


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

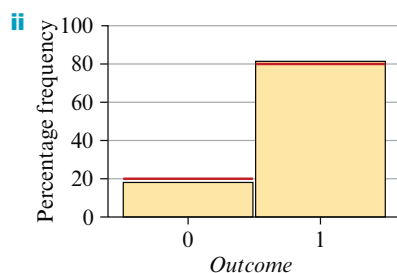
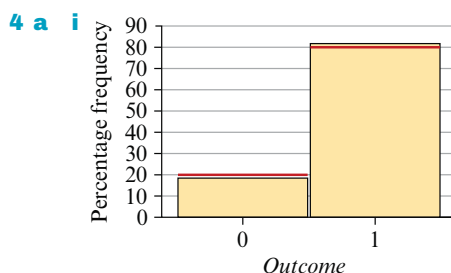
b i



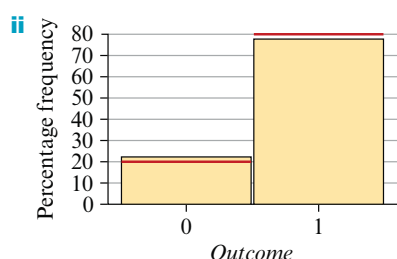
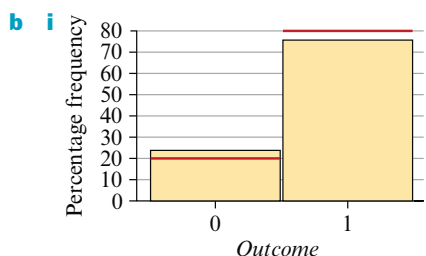
ii



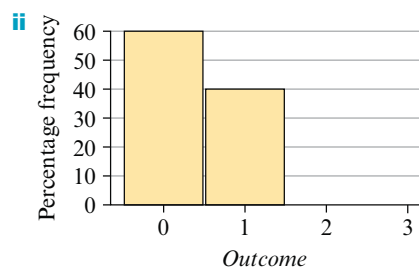
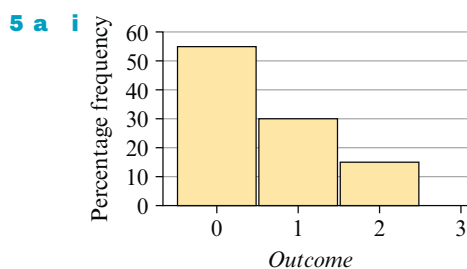
- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.



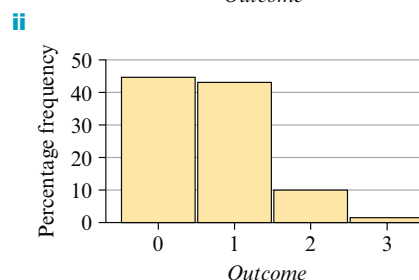
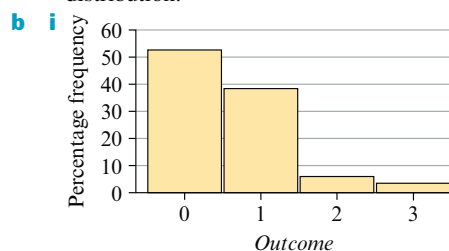
- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.



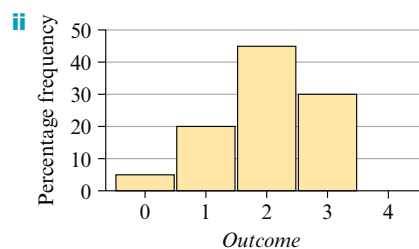
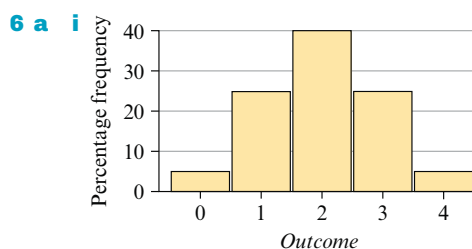
- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.



- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

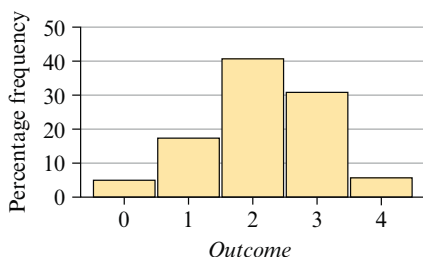


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

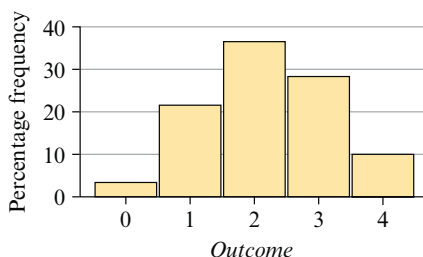


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

b i

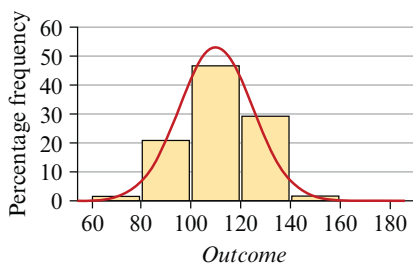


ii

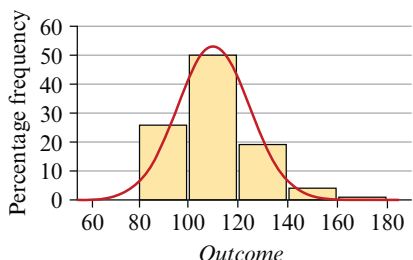


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

7 a i

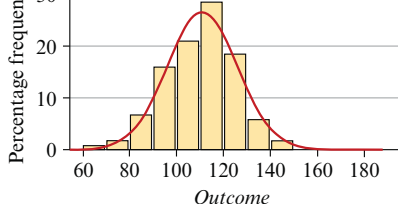


ii

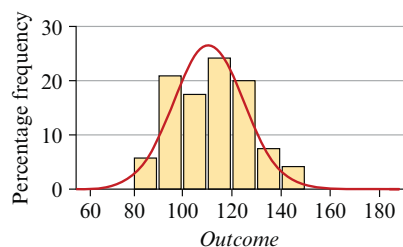


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

b i

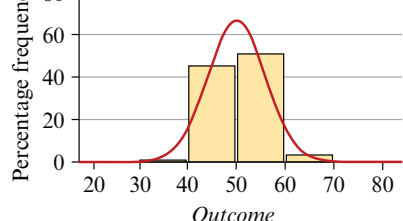


ii

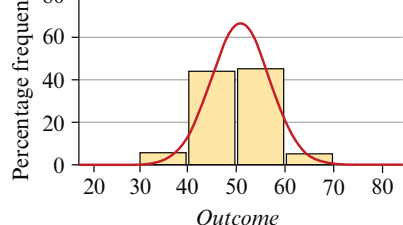


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

8 a i

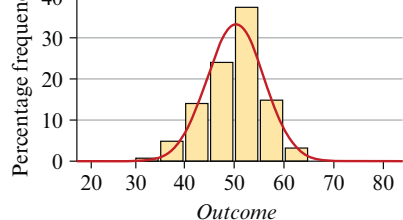


ii

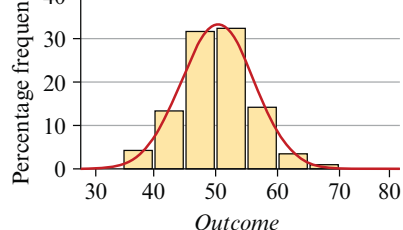


- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

b i



ii



- iii** The random samples vary from each other, and from the percentage frequencies predicted by the probability distribution.

Exercise 14C

1 a 0.5 b $0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{12}$	$\frac{5}{12}$	$\frac{5}{12}$	$\frac{1}{12}$

d $\frac{1}{2}$

2 a $\frac{3}{5}$ b $0, \frac{1}{5}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{2}{5}$
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.0036	0.0542	0.2384
$\hat{p}$	$\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{4}{5}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.3973	0.2554	0.0511

d 0.3065 e 0.6924

3 a 0.5 b $0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.1	0.4	0.4	0.1

d 0.9

4 a 0.4 b $0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{6}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{10}$	$\frac{1}{30}$

d $\frac{1}{3}$

e $\frac{3}{5}$

5 a 0.5 b $0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{16}$

d $\frac{5}{16}$

6 a $0, \frac{1}{5}, \frac{2}{5}, \frac{3}{5}, \frac{4}{5}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{5}$	$\frac{2}{5}$	$\frac{3}{5}$	$\frac{4}{5}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{32}$	$\frac{5}{32}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{5}{16}$	$\frac{5}{32}$	$\frac{1}{32}$

c $\frac{3}{16}$ d $\frac{25}{26}$

7 a $0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{256}{625}$	$\frac{256}{625}$	$\frac{96}{625}$	$\frac{16}{625}$	$\frac{1}{625}$

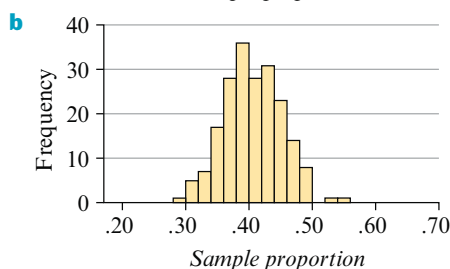
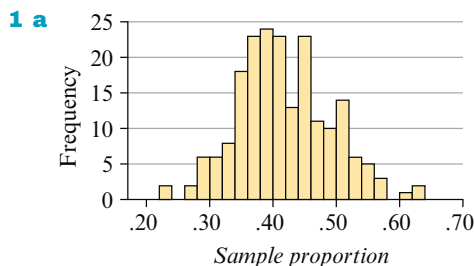
c $\frac{17}{369}$

8 $\mu = 0.3, \sigma = 0.084$ 9 $\mu = 0.4, \sigma = 0.049$

10 $\mu = 0.2, \sigma = 0.04$

11 a 0.1844 b 0.7600 c 0.9683

Exercise 14D



c Both distributions are symmetric and centred at the population proportion (0.4). The spread when the sample size is 100 is less than when the sample size is 50.

2 0.2858 3 0.8568 4 0.1587

5 0.0092 6 0.0614

7 a 1 b 0.5000 c 0.0412

8 0.9545

9 a 0.9650 b 0.9647

10 a 0.575 b 0.0139

11 a 0.848

b 0.0031

c Yes, finding only 212 of the batteries last longer than 100 hours is extremely unlikely if the manufacturer's claim is correct.

12 121

Chapter 14 review

Short-response questions

1 a All employees of the company b $p = 0.35$
c $\hat{p} = 0.40$

2 a No; only people already interested in yoga
b Use electoral roll

3 This sample will represent the population from which it was chosen, that is people who live in houses with gardens, not necessarily the general population.

4 a $\frac{3}{5}$ b $\{\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\}$ c $\frac{3}{10}$

5 a $\frac{3}{8}$ b $\{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}\}$ c $\frac{3}{7}$

6 a $\{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\}$ b 0.243

7 mean = 0.2, sd = 0.4

8 700

9 a 0.6

 b $\{\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\}$

$\hat{p}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.3	0.6	0.1

d 0.7

 10 a $0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{3}{4}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{3}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{16}$

 c $\frac{5}{16}$

 d $\frac{1}{3}$

11 a 0.1537 b 0.8257

12 a 0.848 b 0.0031

c Claim seems unlikely to be true

13 a i 0.1136 ii 0.7423

b 524

Multiple-choice questions

1 B 2 C 3 D 4 A 5 D

6 A 7 C 8 B 9 B 10 A

11 C 12 D 13 B 14 C

Chapter 15

Exercise 15A

1 0.9791

2 0.8893

 3 $k_1 = 0.173$; $k_2 = 0.427$

 4 $k_1 = 0.304$; $k_2 = 0.496$

 5 $k_1 = 0.361$; $k_2 = 0.539$

6 (0.0569, 0.3431)

7 a 0.08 b (0.0268, 0.1332)

8 a 0.192 b (0.1432, 0.2408)

9 a 0.2 b (0.1216, 0.2784)

10 (0.2839, 0.3761) 11 (0.4912, 0.6288)

12 (0.4730, 0.6670) 13 (0.1205, 0.2188)

14 (0.1158, 0.3842) 15 (0.1079, 0.1721)

16 135 17 0.9025

Exercise 15B

1 (0.1002, 0.4198) 2 (0.1778, 0.5722)

3 (0.2635, 0.3105) 4 (0.8930, 0.9820)

5 (0.3384, 0.4096) 6 (0.6392, 0.7030)

7 (0.1581, 0.1979) 8 (0.4589, 0.7911)

9 90%: (0.5194, 0.6806), 95%: (0.5040, 0.6960),

99%: (0.4738, 0.7262); Interval width increases as confidence level increases.

10 90%: (0.5111, 0.5629), 95%: (0.5061, 0.5679), 99%: (0.4964, 0.5776); Interval width increases as confidence level increases.

11 d 8 e 40

12 a (0.5283, 0.5431)

b Yes. If the birth rate of boys is more common than the birth of girls then the proportion of boys born will be more than 50%. The confidence interval tells us that we can be 99% confident that the birth rate for boys is more than 50%, somewhere between 52.83% and 54.31%.

Exercise 15C

1 0.0619 2 9.62% 3 0.1281 4 0.0256

5 0.0294 6 0.04

7 a i 0.0293 ii 0.0349 iii 0.0459

b The margin of error increases as the level of confidence increases.

8 a i 0.0472 ii 0.0563 iii 0.0740

b The margin of error increases as the level of confidence increases.

9 a i 0.0502 ii 0.0598 iii 0.0786

b The margin of error increases as the level of confidence increases.

10 a 0.0489 b 0.0155

c The value of the sample proportion is the same for both parts a and b ($\hat{p} = 0.525$), but the margin of error is smaller in part b. Increasing the sample size has resulted in a smaller margin of error.

11 a 0.0254 b 0.0179

c The value of the sample proportion is the same for both parts a and b ($\hat{p} = 0.61$), but the margin of error is smaller in part b. Increasing the sample size has resulted in a smaller margin of error.

12 a 0.1808 b 0.0904

c The value of the sample proportion is the same for both parts a and b ($\hat{p} = 0.44$), but the margin of error is smaller in part b. Increasing the sample size has resulted in a smaller margin of error.

13 1537

14 5398

15 174

16 a 897 b 2017

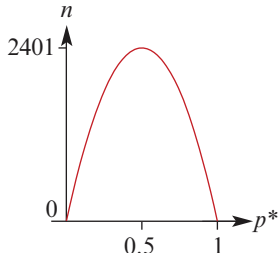
c Reducing margin of error by 1% requires the sample size to be more than doubled.

17 a 1624 b 2305 c 3981

18 a 829 b 1226 c 1884

Chapter 15 review

Short-response questions

- 1 a** $\frac{k}{100}$ **b** $\frac{k}{100} \pm \frac{1.96\sqrt{k(100-k)}}{1000}$
- 2 a** 0.12 **b** $0.12 \pm \frac{2.58\sqrt{0.12 \times 0.88}}{10}$
- 3 a** $\hat{p} = 0.9$ **b** $E = \frac{0.495}{\sqrt{n}}$
c Margin of error would decrease by a factor of $\sqrt{2}$
- 4 a** 0.60 **b** 0.10 **c** Increase sample size
- 5 a** 0.5 **b** 625
- 6 a** 38 **b** $(0.95)^{40}$
- 7 a** 45 **b** $5.9(0.9)^{49}$
- 8 a** $\frac{19}{30}$ **b** (0.4731, 0.7936)
- 9 a** 0.34 **b** 0.1313
- 10 a** (0.4051, 0.4818) **b** (0.4062, 0.4923)
c (0.4174, 0.4746)
- 11** 1752
- 12 a** (0.7895, 0.9065) **b** (0.8295, 0.8665)
c The confidence interval in part a estimates the population proportion to be in the interval 78.95% to 90.65%. This supports the manufacturer's claim that the population proportion is 90%. However, in part b where the sample is larger, the interval is narrower. This confidence interval estimates the population proportion to be in the interval 82.95% to 86.65%, which is less than that claimed by the manufacturer. Thus the manufacturer's claim is not supported.
- 13 a** (0.4730, 0.6670)
b i 0.8145 **ii** 0.000006
iii 0.1855 **iv** 3.80
c (0.5795, 0.6645)
- 14 a** $\hat{p} = \frac{(a+b)}{2}$
b $(1.157a - 0.157b, 1.157b - 0.157a)$
- 15 a**
- 
- b** 0.5 **c** 2401
- 16 a** 3586 **b** 4269
c i $E = 1.8\%$ **ii** $E = 2.2\%$
d 2401, as this ensures that E is 2% or less,

whoever is correct

- 17 a** $p = \frac{500}{N}$ **b** $\hat{p} = 0.15$
c $N = 3333.33 \approx 3333$
e (2703, 4348)

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** A **2** C **3** A **4** A **5** B
6 D **7** C **8** D **9** A **10** D
11 C **12** B **13** C **14** D **15** D
16 B **17** A

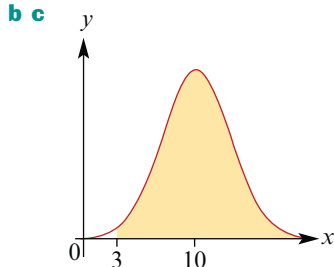
Chapter 16

Short-response questions

- 1** $m = \frac{1}{4}(-3 + \sqrt{105})$
- 2 a** (0, -4) and (-2, 0) **b** 0 **c** 4 **d** $9\frac{1}{2}$
- 3 a** $4 - 2\sqrt{2}$ **b** $2(e^{\frac{3}{4}} - 1)$ **c** $\frac{1}{2} \ln 2$
d $\ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$ **e** $\frac{1}{4}$ **f** $\frac{1}{20}$
- 4 a** $C(-\frac{1}{2} \ln 6, 0)$, $D(10, 0)$
b $3 \ln 6 + \frac{45}{2}$
- 5 a** $C\left(\frac{7}{6}, 0\right)$, $D\left(\frac{11}{6}, 0\right)$ **b** $\frac{1}{2} + \frac{3\sqrt{3}+2}{\pi}$
- 6 a** (6, 2), (2, 6) **b** $16 - 12 \ln 3$
- 7 a** -12 **b** 60 **c** 14
- 8 a** $\frac{2}{5} \ln 2$ **b** $4 \ln 2 + 15$ **c** $\frac{5\pi}{6}$
d $\frac{3}{2} \ln(6)$ **e** $\ln\left(\frac{3}{2}\right)$ **f** $e^{20} - e^2$
- 9 a** $B(6, 12)$ **b** 36 square units
- 10** $(2e^{\frac{5}{2}} + 4 \ln 2 - 14)$ square units
- 11 b** $\frac{1}{5}$
- 12 a** $8x \cos(4x) + 2 \sin(4x)$ **b** 0
- 13** $\frac{131}{4}$ m
- 14** $\frac{113}{140}$
- 15** $\frac{1}{3}$
- 16** $\frac{\sqrt{2} - \sqrt{6}}{4}$
- 17 a** $2\sqrt{7}$ cm **b** $6\sqrt{3}$ cm²
- 18 a** $2\sqrt{19}$ cm **b** $6\sqrt{3}$ cm²
- 19** Yes, as $f \geq 0$ for $3 \leq x \leq 6$, and
 $\int_3^6 f(x) dx = 1$
- 20** 0.6
- 21** $5 \ln 2$ minutes

$$22 \quad f(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{4} & \text{if } 0 \leq x < 1 \\ \frac{1}{5}x^3 & \text{if } 1 \leq x < 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$23 \quad \text{a } \mu = 10, \sigma = 3$$



$$24 \quad P(X > 44) = \frac{1-q}{2}$$

$$25 \quad P(40 < X < 60) = 2q - 1$$

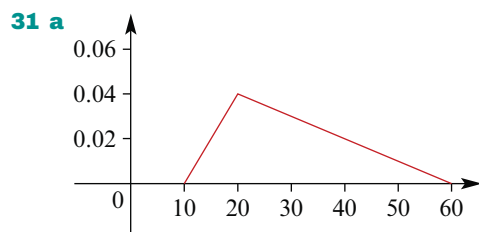
$$26 \quad \text{a } 0.84 \quad \text{b } 0.34$$

$$27 \quad \text{a } 0.5 \quad \text{b } a = 2$$

$$28 \quad \text{b } E(X) = \frac{3a}{2}$$

$$29 \quad \text{a } F(x) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ x(2-x) & \text{if } 0 < x < 1 \\ 1 & \text{if } x \geq 1 \end{cases} \quad \text{b } a = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$30 \quad \text{a } k = \frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{b } 2 \quad \text{c } \frac{2-\sqrt{2}}{2}$$



$$\text{b } 0.5$$

$$32 \quad \text{b } 1 - \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \text{c } \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{6}}$$

$$34 \quad 100 \text{ Toyotas, } 70 \text{ Mazdas, } 30 \text{ Hondas.}$$

$$35 \quad \text{a } 0.3 \quad \text{b } \{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\} \quad \text{c } \frac{7}{24}$$

$$36 \quad \text{a } \{0, \frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, 1\}$$

$$\text{b i } \frac{1}{126} \quad \text{ii } \frac{125}{126} \quad \text{iii } \frac{5}{126}$$

$$37 \quad \frac{4}{9}, \frac{1}{90}$$

$$38 \quad n \geq 64$$

$$39 \quad \text{a } 0.47$$

$$\text{b } 0.47 \pm 1.96 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.47 \times 0.53}{100}}$$

$$40 \quad \text{a } 18 \quad \text{b } (0.9)^{20}$$

$$41 \quad \text{a } 0.62 \quad \text{b } 1.65 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.62 \times 0.38}{n}}$$

$$\text{c } E \text{ is increased by a factor of } \sqrt{2}$$

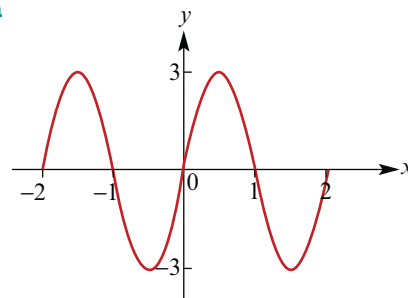
$$42 \quad \text{a } \frac{a+b}{2} \quad \text{b } \frac{b-a}{2}$$

$$43 \quad \text{a } 0.65 \quad \text{b } 0.3 \quad \text{c } \text{Increase the sample size or decrease the level of confidence.}$$

$$44 \quad 525$$

$$45 \quad \text{a } 0.4 \quad \text{b } 600$$

$$46 \quad \text{a}$$



$$\text{b } y = 3 \quad \text{c } \frac{3}{\pi} - \frac{1}{32}$$

$$47 \quad 4 \ln 2 \text{ square units}$$

$$48 \quad \text{a i } \frac{4}{3} \quad \text{ii } \frac{4}{5} \quad \text{iii } \frac{3}{5}$$

$$\text{b } 3 \text{ square units}$$

$$49 \quad \text{a } 27 \text{ square units} \quad \text{b } y = \frac{3}{25}(x-4)^2$$

$$\text{c } \frac{189}{25} \text{ square units} \quad \text{d } \frac{486}{25} \text{ square units}$$

$$50 \quad \text{a } -5\frac{1}{3} \quad \text{c } a = 1 \text{ or } a = -2$$

$$51 \quad \text{a } \frac{3}{\ln 2}$$

$$\text{b i } A_1 = 5 \quad \text{ii } E_1 = 0.67$$

$$\text{c i } A_2 = 4.5 \quad \text{ii } E_2 = 0.17$$

$$\text{d } A_4 = 4.37, E_4 = 0.043;$$

$$A_8 = 4.34, E_8 = 0.011$$

$$\text{e } A_1 = 4, E_1 = 1.33$$

$$A_2 = 3, E_2 = 0.33$$

$$A_4 = 2.75, E_4 = 0.083$$

$$A_8 = 2.6875, E_8 = 0.021$$

$$1155 \text{ trapeziums are needed.}$$

$$52 \quad s = \sqrt[3]{a^2b}, r = \sqrt[3]{ab^2}$$

$$53 \quad \text{a } \frac{dy}{dx} = \ln x + 1, \int_1^e \ln x \, dx = 1$$

$$\text{b } \frac{dy}{dx} = (\ln x)^n + n(\ln x)^{n-1}$$

$$\text{d } \int_1^e (\ln x)^3 \, dx = 6 - 2e$$

$$54 \quad t = \frac{3}{2} \text{ seconds and } s = \frac{9}{4} \text{ metres}$$

$$55 \quad \text{a } 35^\circ \quad \text{b } 255^\circ$$

$$56 \quad \text{a } 12.038 \text{ cm} \quad \text{b } 18.685^\circ \quad \text{c } 121.315^\circ$$

$$\text{d } 30.854 \text{ cm}^2$$

$$57 \quad AC = 3$$

$$58 \quad \text{a } 2.11 \text{ km} \quad \text{b } 4.53 \text{ km}$$

$$\text{c } 065^\circ$$

$$\text{d } 14.80 \text{ km}$$

$$59 \quad 14.9^\circ$$

$$60 \quad 3.76 \text{ cm, } 8.24 \text{ cm}$$

$$61 \quad \text{a } 72.97^\circ \quad \text{b } 63.51^\circ \quad \text{c } 56.31^\circ$$

$$62 \quad 340 \text{ metres}$$

- 63 a i** $\angle BCA = 138.19^\circ$, $\angle ABC = 11.81^\circ$
ii $\angle BC'A = 41.81^\circ$, $\angle ABC' = 108.19^\circ$
b i 24.56 **ii** 114.00 **iii** 89.44
c i 1788.85 **ii** 3027.87 **iii** 1239.01

64 155 m

- 65 a** 4.145 km
b i 078° **ii** 4.749 km
c i 8.803 km **ii** 101.229°

66 a 16.00 m **b** 29.04 m **c** 17°

67 2.09 km

68 a 0.0228 **b** 0.3829

69 a \$104 673 **b** \$64 453.50

70 a Maths 0.88, English 0.67, Chemistry 1.24, Psychology 0.92
b Chemistry, Psychology, Maths, English

71 6.875, 1.484

72 a 70.5 **b** 5

73 a 0.6915 **b** 0.1365

74 a i 0.1587 **ii** 511.63
b 0.1809

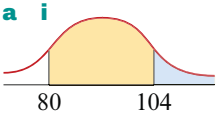
75 a $\frac{1}{36}$ **b** $\frac{20}{27}$ **c** 3 **d** 3 **e** $\frac{14}{27}$ **f** $\frac{13}{20}$

76 $\mu = 97.87$ mm; $\sigma = 3.42$ mm

77 a i $\frac{1}{8}$
ii A: 0.6915, B: 0.5625
iii $E(X) = 10$, $E(Y) = 10.67$; Machine A
b $\frac{3}{4}$

78 a i $\frac{1}{2500}$ **ii** 0.8281
b 0.9971

79 $A = 3$, $B = 1$

80 a i 
 $\Pr(X \geq 80) = 0.98$
 $\Pr(X \geq 104) = 0.04$

ii $\mu = 92.956$, $\sigma = 6.3084$
b i 16.73% of sensors **ii** 81°C

81 a $\{0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1\}$

b	$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
	$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.512	0.384	0.096	0.008

c 0.2131

82 0.3783

83 a 0.8532 **b** 0.5740

84 a 0.1318 **b** 144

85 a 0.0968 **b** 2.96 kg **c** 3.5 kg **d** 0.1464
e 2.61 kg **f** 0.227 **g** 0.56 **h** 0.79
i 9

86 a $\frac{3}{64}$

b 9.6 sec

c 25

d 0.1625

e 0.5559

f 12.0

g i 0.0334, 0.0127 **ii** 0.302 **iii** $n \geq 124$

h 60%

87 (0.5376, 0.6104)

88 a (0.5377, 0.6489) **b** (0.5203, 0.6664)

89 a 5682 **b** 8068

91 a 100° or 105° **b** $\mu = 96.2$, $\sigma = 7.9$

c 0.08 **d** 75

e The confidence interval estimates the proportion of sensors that will continue to work at 110° as from 2% to 14%. Since this confidence interval includes 10% as a possible value of the population proportion, there is no evidence to dispute the manufacturers claim.

92 95% confidence interval = (0.6651, 0.8349). Since this confidence interval includes 70% as a possible value of the population proportion, we cannot say that the new medication is better based on this data.

93 a (0.0814, 0.1186) **b** (0.0792, 0.1208)

c Larger sample of females

d 0.078 or 0.922

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** C **2** C **3** D **4** A **5** A
6 A **7** B **8** A **9** A **10** A
11 A **12** B **13** A **14** C **15** D
16 B **17** D **18** B **19** C **20** B
21 D **22** A **23** C **24** B **25** B
26 D **27** C **28** A **29** C **30** A
31 A **32** B **33** B **34** D **35** C
36 B **37** B **38** D **39** A **40** D
41 C **42** B **43** D **44** C **45** D
46 C **47** B **48** D **49** B **50** C
51 D **52** B **53** C **54** B **55** A
56 B **57** D **58** A **59** B **60** D
61 C **62** D **63** B **64** C **65** A
66 D **67** B **68** C **69** B **70** D

Chapter 17

Short-response questions

1 a 10 **b** $\frac{32}{3}$

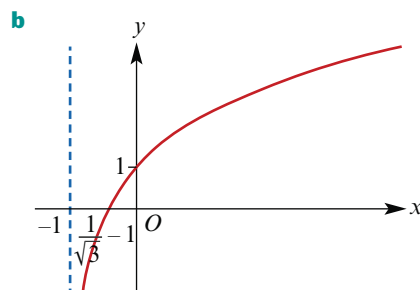
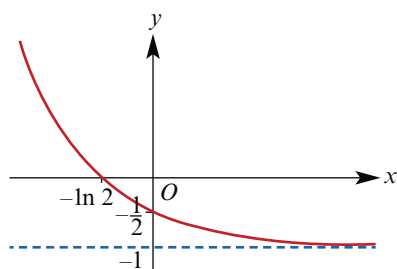
2 a $x(t) = 225\,000e^{\frac{t}{15}} - 175\,000$
b $15 \ln\left(\frac{11}{9}\right)$ days

3 a $\frac{dV}{dt} = 60t - 3t^2$

- b** 4000 litres when $t = 20$
4 a $x^3 g'(x) + 3x^2 g(x)$
b $(2x + 3)g'(x) + 2g(x)$
c $3(g(x))^2 g'(x)$ **d** $\frac{xg'(x) - 2g(x)}{x^3}$
5 a $f'(x) = 21x^6(5x^2 - 3)^6(5x^2 - 1)$ **b** $f'(0) = 2$
6 a $v(t) = \frac{25\pi}{2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right)$
 $a(t) = -\frac{25\pi^2}{4} \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right)$
b $\frac{25\pi^2}{4} \text{ cms}^{-2}, t = 3, t = 7$
7 a \$0.65 **b** 0.425
8 a $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = \frac{-2}{(\pi + 1)^2}$ **b** $f'\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{3\sqrt{3}}{2} - \pi$
9 a $2 \ln(2x) + 3$
b $f''(x) = 4e^{\sin(2x)}(\cos^2(2x) - \sin(2x))$
10 a $(9, 32\sqrt{2})$
b $-\frac{3}{4}(x + 7)(x - 1)^{\frac{3}{2}}$, A local maximum.
11 a $\frac{11}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{8}$
12 $F'(x) = 3 \sin\left(6x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
13 a

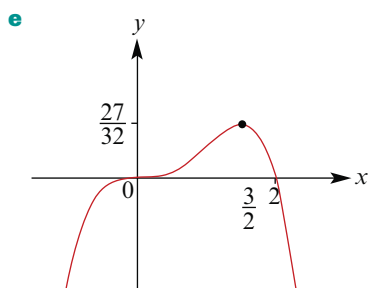
x	0	1
$p(x)$	0.2	0.8

b $\mu = 0.2; \sigma^2 = 0.16$
14 a $f'(x) = 8x - 5$ **b** -5
c $x = \frac{3}{4}$
15 $\frac{f'(x)}{f(x)}$
16 a $\frac{145}{144}$
17 a i $e^x(\cos x + \sin x)$ **ii** $-e^\pi$ **iii** 1
b i $y = x$ **ii** $y = -e^\pi x + \pi e^\pi$
c i $y = -e^{-\pi} x$ **ii** $y = x - \pi$
18 a $x = 0$ **b** $x = \frac{5}{3}$
c $x = -\frac{1}{6}$ **d** $x = \frac{1}{4e}$
19 a $\frac{3}{8}$ **b** $\frac{7}{8}$ **c** $\frac{1}{2}$
20 a



- 21 a** $e^{2x}(2 \cos(3x) - 3 \sin(3x))$
b $(x - 2)(2 \ln(x - 2) + 1)$
c $\frac{2 - \ln(x^2)}{x^2}$
d $3 \cos(2x) \cos(3x) - 2 \sin(2x) \sin(3x)$
e $\frac{-2 \cos(2x)}{\sin^2(2x)}$
f $-15 \sin^2(2 - 5x) \cos(2 - 5x)$
g $3x^2 \cos^2(3x) (\cos(3x) - 3x \sin(3x))$
h $3x^2(\ln(x^3) + 1)$
22 $3 \leq x \leq 5$
23 a $-2e^2$ **b** 0
c $8e^2 + 3$ **d** -1
24 a 0.53 **b** $0.53 \pm 0.196\sqrt{0.53 \times 0.47}$
25 $\frac{2q - 1}{q}$
26 a $y = -\cos x + x + 3$ **b** $y = 6e^{\frac{x}{3}} - ex - e$
c $y = \frac{1}{2} \ln(2x - 3) + 4, x > \frac{3}{2}$
27 a $\ln(7)$ **b** 2 **c** $2(e^{36} - e^4)$
28 a $x = -1$ or $x = 3$ **b** $x = \frac{3}{e^2 - 2}$
29 a 0.5 **b** 0.68 **c** 0.32
30 $f(g(x)) = (3x + 1)^2 + 6 = 9x^2 + 6x + 7$
31 a $x = \ln\left(\frac{y + 3}{5}\right) + 1$ **b** $x = 3 - e^{2y}$
32 $\frac{1}{4}(e^4 - 1)$
33 0.3; 0.01
34 a 9 **b** 1.9×0.9^9
35 a $10\sqrt{2 + \sqrt{3}} = 5(\sqrt{2} + \sqrt{6}) \text{ cm}$ **b** 25 cm^2
36 $\left(\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}, \frac{20}{9}\right), \left(-\frac{\sqrt{6}}{3}, \frac{20}{9}\right)$
37 $-\frac{1}{3} \ln(1 - 3x)c$
38 97.5 m to the right of O
39 a i $6p^2(1 - p)^2$
ii $4p^3(1 - p)$
b $p = \frac{3}{5}$
40 a 0, 2 **b** $(0, 0), \left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{27}{32}\right)$ **c** $(0, 0), \left(1, \frac{1}{2}\right)$
d Stationary point of inflection at $(0, 0)$;

Local max at $\left(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{27}{32}\right)$



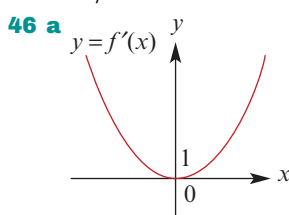
- 41 a** $a = 2, b = -5$ **b** $5 \ln\left(\frac{25}{32}\right) + 2$
c $x = 1$ **d** $2 \ln\left(\frac{27}{8}\right) - 2$

- 42 a** $c = 6$
b $4a + b - 3 = 0, 3a + b = 0$
c $a = 3, b = -9$

- 43** $10\sqrt{2}$ km, 15°

- 44 a** $\frac{1}{6}$ **b** $\sqrt{31}$

- 45** $p = \frac{1}{7}; n = 49$



$$\mathbf{b} \quad f'(x) = \begin{cases} -8x^3 & \text{if } x \leq 0 \\ 8x^3 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

- 47 a** $0, \frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}, 1$

$\hat{p}$	0	$\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{2}{3}$	1
$P(\hat{P} = \hat{p})$	0.512	0.384	0.096	0.008

- c** 0.488

- 48 a** This is not a random sample. It is possible that the group of diners may be all in the same age group for example, and this might bias the results.

- b** A random sampling method, such as choosing at random from the electoral roll, should be used.

- 49** $b = 3$

- 50** $m = 2, n = \frac{\ln 10}{20}$

- 51 a** $E_1 = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.37 \times 0.63}{n}}$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad E_2 = 1.9600 \times \sqrt{\frac{0.37 \times 0.63}{2n}}$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad E_2 = \frac{E_1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

- 52** $a = \pm \frac{2}{3}$

- 53 a** $\frac{5}{8}$

- b** $x^2 - 10\sqrt{3}x + 36 = 0$; There are two solutions as there are two such triangles.

- 54 a** $A = 32a - 8a^3$

- b** Max value $A = \frac{128\sqrt{3}}{9}$ when $a = \frac{2\sqrt{3}}{3}$

- 55 a** $h = \frac{4000}{x^2}$

- c** $2000(2 + \sqrt{2})$

- 56 a** 100.81° **b** 59 m^2

- 57 a** 3 square units

- b** $(1 - 2e^{-1} + e^{-2})$ square units

- 58 a** $P(X = x) = \binom{13}{x}(0.4)^x(0.6)^{13-x}, x = 0, \dots, 13$

- b i** 0.2288 **ii** $\mu = 5.2; \sigma = 1.766$

- 59** 0.3305

- 60** 47.74 cm^2

- 61 a i** 0.06 **ii** 0.14

- b** $\frac{3}{7}$

- 62 a** $k = 0.1$

- b i** 0.7 **ii** $\frac{4}{7}$

- c** $\mu = 1.1, \sigma = 0.9434$

- 63 a i** 0.954 **ii** 0.139

- b i** 35.8 g **ii** 41.3 g

- 64** (0.1446, 0.2554)

- 65 a** $k = \frac{5 \ln 2}{144}$

- b** 57.6 years

- 66 a** 0.091 21 **b** 0.2611 **c** 0.275

- 67 a** $k = 4$

- b i** $E(X) = \frac{13}{6}$ **ii** 2.146 **iii** 0.12

- c** 0.1857

- 68 a** $k = \frac{2}{a^2}$

- b** $\mu = \frac{a}{3}, \sigma^2 = \frac{a^2}{18}$

- c** $\frac{6 - 4\sqrt{2}}{9}$

- d** $a = 1000(\sqrt{2} + 2)$

- 69** $t = 0.3276$

- 70 a** $\mu = 5.0290, \sigma = 0.0909$

- b** \$409.27

- 71 a** $a = -16e^{2t}$ **b** $12 - 8 \ln 2 \approx 6.45 \text{ m}$

- 72 a** $\frac{527}{1000}$

- b** (0.4961, 0.5580)

- c** 67%

- d** 99.9955%

- 73 a** $\angle ABC = 131.4^\circ, \angle BAC = 18.6^\circ$

- b** 1.0 m^2 **c** 6.3 m

- 74 a i** 0.933 **ii** 0.783

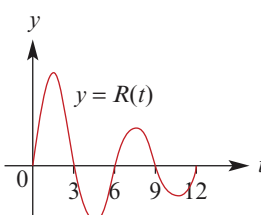
- b** 0.932 **c** 0.068

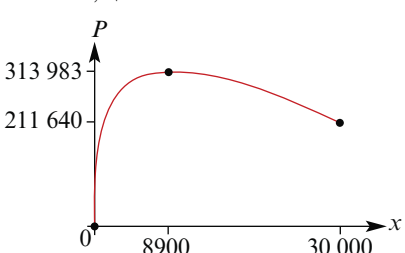
- d** (0.72, 0.88)

- e** 1537

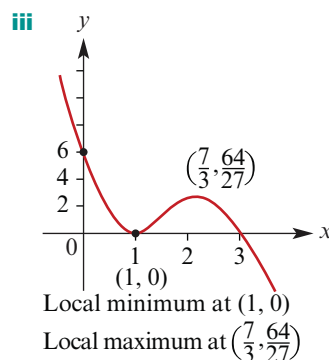
- 75** $A = 2, b = 1$

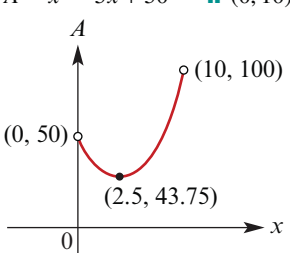
- 76 a i** $\frac{1}{8}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{8}$

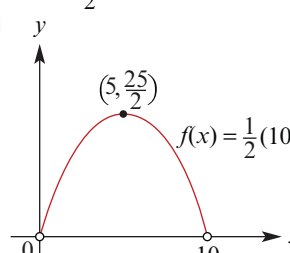
- b i** $\frac{27}{125}$ **ii** $\frac{38}{125}$
77 a 0.0654
b i 23.3% **ii** $c = 0.1075$
78 2.65 km
79 a i $R(0) = 0$ **ii** $R(3) = 0$
b $R'(t) = e^{-\frac{t}{10}} \left(\frac{10\pi}{3} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{3}\right) - \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{3}\right) \right)$
c i 1.41, 4.41, 7.41, 10.41
ii Local max: (1.41, 8.65), (7.41, 4.75);
 Local min: (4.41, -6.41) (10.41, -3.52)
d $t = 0, 3, 6, 9$ or 12
e


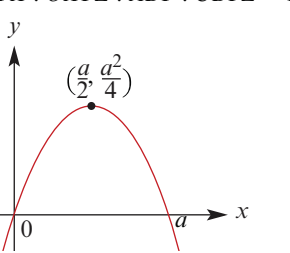
f i 16.47 litres **ii** 12.20 litres **iii** 8.27 litres
g 12.99 litres
80 7.167
81 95.127 m
82 a Dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the right and 1 unit up
b 4.5 m²
c -4
d $y = 2x - \frac{9}{2}$
e $\frac{3\sqrt{5}}{4} \approx 1.68$ m
83 a $P(x) = 90\,000 \ln\left(1 + \frac{x}{100}\right) - 10x - 2000$
b $P'(x) = \frac{89\,000 - 10x}{x + 100}$
c $x = 8900$, \$313 983
d


84 a i $\left(\frac{1}{2}, 8\right)$
ii Minimum
b ii $A = \frac{x}{12}(60 - 5x)$
iii Max area 15 cm²
85 a $p = 1$, $q = 3$, $k = 2$
b i $m = -2$
ii $y = -2x^3 + 10x^2 - 14x + 6$



- 86 a** 86°
b $AX = 418.304$ m, $BX = 538.970$ m
c 658.797 m
87 a i $A = x^2 - 5x + 50$ **ii** (0, 10)
iii


iv Minimum area = 43.75 cm²
b i $f(x) = \frac{1}{2}(10 - x)x$
ii


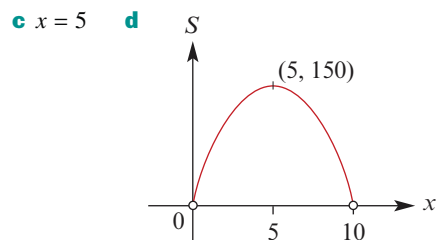
c $AYX : OXYZ : ABY : CBYZ = 1 : 2 : 2 : 3$
88 a


b $\frac{a^3}{6}$ square units
c i $y = \frac{2a^2}{9}$, $y = \frac{2a^2}{9}$ **ii** $\frac{a^3}{162}$ square units
89 a i $f'(t) = -100e^{-\frac{t}{10}}(t^2 - 30t + 144)$
ii $f''(t) = 10e^{-\frac{t}{10}}(t^2 - 50t + 444)$
b i $6 < t < 24$
ii $11.546 < t \leq 35$
 (exact: $25 - \sqrt{181} < t \leq 35$)
iii $11.546 < t < 24$

90 a i 0.995 ii $x = \pm 0.2$

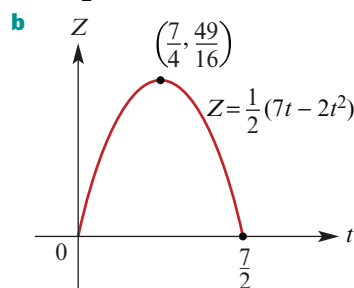
b i $h(x) = \frac{1}{2}(x - \pi)^2 - 1$ ii $-0.989\ 99$

91 a $S = 60x - 6x^2$ b $0 < x < 10$



92 a i $OP = \frac{1}{\sin \theta}$ ii $BQ = \frac{1 - \cos \theta}{\sin \theta}$
d Min value $S = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ when $AP = \frac{2\sqrt{3} - 3}{3}$

93 a $Z = \frac{1}{2}(7t - 2t^2)$



c Max value $Z = \frac{49}{16}$ when $t = \frac{7}{4}$

94 a $k = \frac{b}{a^2}$

b i $y = \frac{b}{2a}x + \frac{b}{2}$

ii $\left(\frac{-a}{2}, \frac{b}{4}\right)$

d $S_1 : S_2 = 27 : 37$

95 a i 0.9332 ii 0.1151

b i 33.3% ii 866.4

iii 199.4

96 $90 - 8\sqrt{3}$ metres from A towards E

97 a i $y = -e^{-n}x + e^{-n}(n + 1)$

ii $x = n + 1$

b i $\frac{1}{e^n}\left(1 - \frac{1}{e}\right)$

ii $e : e - 2$

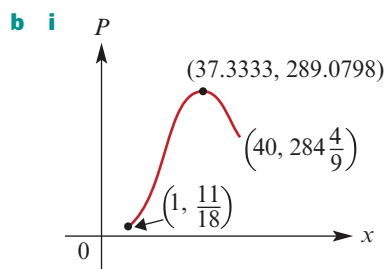
98 a 0.0023

b

Q	$s - 1$	-1
$Pr(Q = q)$	$\frac{3}{4}$	$\frac{1}{4}$

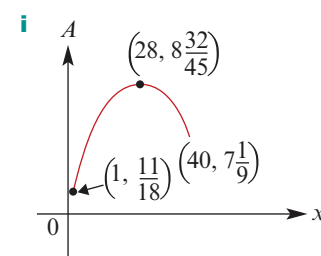
c $E(Q) = \frac{3}{4}s - 1$, $sd(Q) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}s$

99 a $\frac{dP}{dx} = \frac{1}{90}(112x - 3x^2)$



ii Max value of P is 289.0798 tonnes

c $A = \frac{x}{90}(56 - x)$



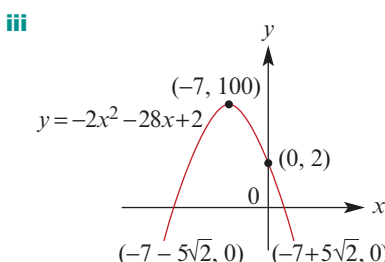
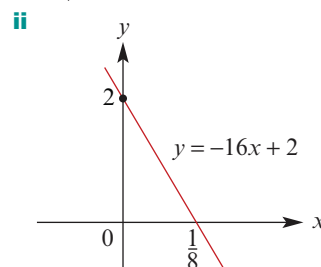
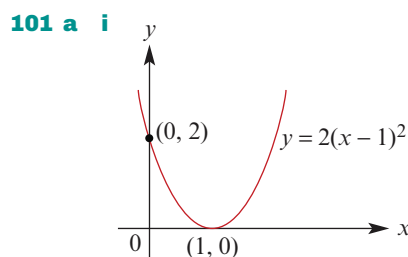
ii Max value of A is $8\frac{32}{45}$ tonnes per miner, occurs when $x = 28$

100 a $AX = BX = \frac{h}{\tan 12.5^\circ}$, $CX = \frac{h}{\tan 9.5^\circ}$

b $MX^2 = \left(\frac{h}{\tan 12.5^\circ}\right)^2 - 600^2$

c 432.967 m d 1858.5 m

e $AX = BX = 1953$ m, $CX = 2587$ m



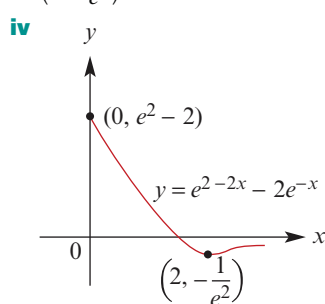
- b** $\left(\frac{2-3k}{k+2}, \frac{14k-9k^2}{k+2}\right)$
i $-2 < k < \frac{2}{3}$ **ii** $k = \frac{2}{3}$
iii $k < -2$ or $0 < k < \frac{14}{9}$
iv $-2 < k < 0$ or $k > \frac{14}{9}$
c $k < -2$
d **i** $k = 0$ or $k = \frac{14}{9}$ **ii** $0 < k < \frac{14}{9}$

102 a $x = 2 - \ln 2$

b i $\frac{dy}{dx} = -2e^{2-2x} + 2e^{-x}$

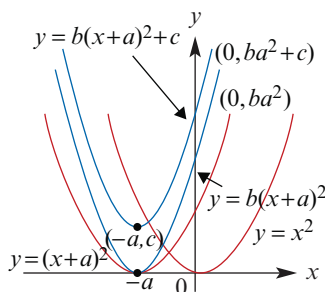
ii $x = 2$

iii $\left(2, -\frac{1}{e^2}\right)$



c $-\frac{1}{e^2} < k < 0$

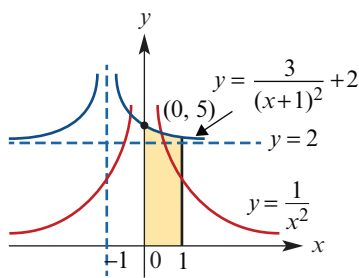
103 a



- c** Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the left and 2 units up

d $\frac{7}{2}$

e



- 104 a i** $y = 50$
ii $y = x - 25$

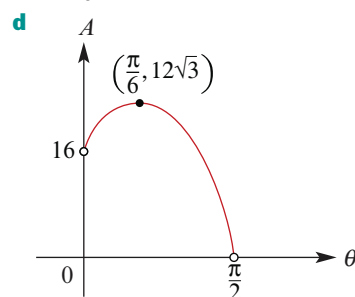
b $a = -\frac{1}{15}$, $c = -\frac{25}{3}$

c i 1250 square units

ii $\frac{14\,375}{18}$ square units

iii $\frac{36\,875}{18}$ square units

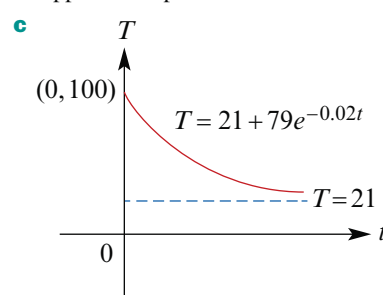
105 c $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$



Maximum value of A is $12\sqrt{3}$

106 a $k = \frac{1}{10} \ln\left(\frac{79}{63}\right) \approx 0.02$, $A = 79$

b Approx 2:44 p.m.



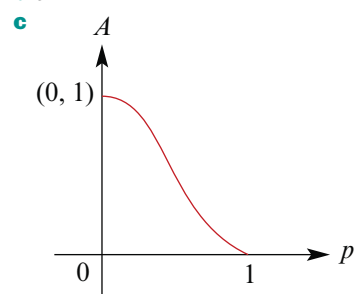
d Average rate of change = $-1.6^\circ\text{C/minute}$

e i $-1.5609^\circ\text{C/minute}$

ii $-0.8826^\circ\text{C/minute}$

107 a $\frac{3}{16}$

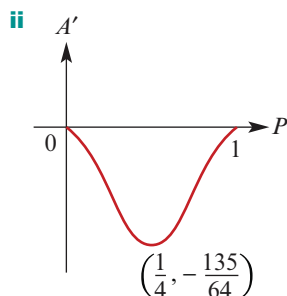
b $b = 4$



d i $p = 0.08$

ii $p = 0.66$

e i $A'(p) = -20p(1-p)^3$



iii $p = \frac{1}{4}$

iv Most rapid rate of change of probability occurs when $p = \frac{1}{4}$

108 Based on this sample a 95% confidence interval for the population proportion p is (0.7899, 0.9701). Since this interval includes 0.8, it is not reasonable to conclude that p is more than 0.8. ie that the new drug is better than the old drug.

109 a 0.2173 **b** 6449

110 a 7

c $y = \frac{1}{10}x - \ln 10$

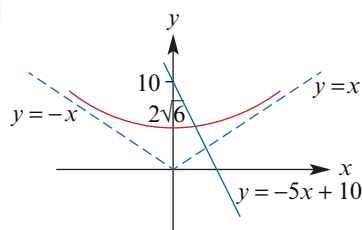
d ii 36.852

111 109.29 km, 142.01°

112 a $\frac{dy}{dx} = \frac{x}{\sqrt{x^2 + 24}}$ **b** (0, $2\sqrt{6}$)

c Even

d



e $y = -5x + 10$

g $12 \ln(\sqrt{7} - 1) - 2\sqrt{7} + \frac{35}{2}$

113 a i $\frac{1}{1-b}$

ii $1 + \sqrt{b-1}$

b i 1

ii $1 + e^{-7}$

c i $\frac{b(b-2)}{2(b-1)}$

ii $9 + \sqrt{65}$

d e

114 a i $\frac{-(b+1)}{b^2}$

ii $\left(\frac{2b^2}{b+1}\right)^{\frac{1}{3}}$

b i $\frac{(b^2+1)(b-1)}{2b^2}$

ii $b = 3$

115 a Local maximum $\left(\frac{m}{n}, \left(\frac{m}{n}\right)^m e^{n-m}\right)$

b $\left(\frac{m-1}{n}, \left(\frac{m-1}{n}\right)^m e^{n-m+1}\right)$

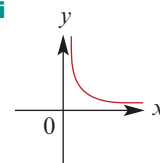
c i $\frac{4}{e^2}$

ii $1 - \frac{5}{e^2}$

116 a i q **ii** $\frac{1}{q}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{q^2}$

b $\frac{2}{3}$

c i



ii 0.37

iii 69.31

Multiple-choice questions

1 B **2** C **3** C **4** B **5** D

6 D **7** B **8** A **9** C **10** B

11 A **12** A **13** B **14** D **15** A

16 C **17** B **18** C **19** A **20** A

21 D **22** D **23** A **24** C **25** D

26 B **27** D **28** D **29** C **30** A

31 D **32** A **33** D **34** D **35** A

36 D **37** A **38** C **39** B **40** C

41 B **42** C **43** D

Appendix **B**

Coordinate geometry and transformations

Chapter contents

- ▶ **B1** Linear coordinate geometry
- ▶ **B2** Translations
- ▶ **B3** Dilations and reflections
- ▶ **B4** Combinations of transformations
- ▶ **B5** Using transformations to sketch graphs
- ▶ **B6** transformations of power functions
- ▶ **B7** Determining the rule for a function from its graph

Much of the material presented in this chapter has been covered in Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2. The chapter provides a framework for revision with worked examples and exercises.

Many graphs of functions can be described as transformations of graphs of other functions, or ‘movements’ of graphs about the Cartesian plane. For example, the graph of the function $y = -x^2$ can be considered as a reflection in the x -axis of the graph of the function $y = x^2$.

A good understanding of transformations, combined with knowledge of the ‘simplest’ function and its graph in each family, provides an important tool with which to sketch graphs and identify rules of more complicated functions.

B1 Linear coordinate geometry

Learning intentions

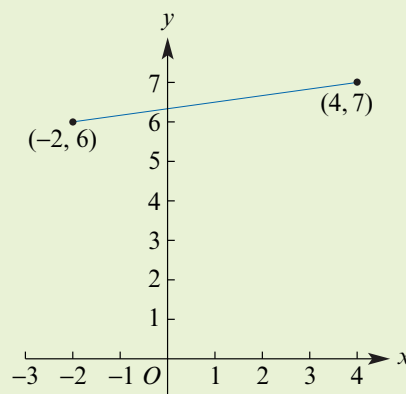
- To revise linear coordinate geometry.



Example 1

A straight line passes through the points $A(-2, 6)$ and $B(4, 7)$. Determine:

- the distance AB
- the midpoint of line segment AB
- the gradient of line AB
- the equation of line AB
- the equation of the line parallel to AB which passes through the point $(1, 5)$
- the equation of the line perpendicular to AB which passes through the midpoint of AB .



Solution

- a** The distance AB is

$$\sqrt{(4 - (-2))^2 + (7 - 6)^2} = \sqrt{37}$$

- b** The midpoint of AB is

$$\left(\frac{-2 + 4}{2}, \frac{6 + 7}{2} \right) = \left(1, \frac{13}{2} \right)$$

- c** The gradient of line AB is

$$\frac{7 - 6}{4 - (-2)} = \frac{1}{6}$$

- d** The equation of line AB is

$$y - 6 = \frac{1}{6}(x - (-2))$$

which simplifies to $6y - x - 38 = 0$.

- e** Gradient $m = \frac{1}{6}$ and $(x_1, y_1) = (1, 5)$.

The line has equation

$$y - 5 = \frac{1}{6}(x - 1)$$

which simplifies to $6y - x - 29 = 0$.

- f** A perpendicular line has gradient -6 .

Thus the equation is

$$y - \frac{13}{2} = -6(x - 1)$$

which simplifies to $2y + 12x - 25 = 0$.

Explanation

The distance between two points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ is $\sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$.

The line segment joining $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$ has midpoint $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2} \right)$.

Gradient

$$m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

Equation of a straight line passing through a given point (x_1, y_1) and having gradient m is $y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$.

Parallel lines have the same gradient.

If two straight lines are perpendicular to each other, then the product of their gradients is -1 .

**Example 2**

A fruit and vegetable wholesaler sells 30 kg of hydroponic tomatoes for \$148.50 and sells 55 kg of hydroponic tomatoes for \$247.50. Determine a linear model for the cost, \$ C , of x kg of hydroponic tomatoes. How much would 20 kg of tomatoes cost?

Solution

Let $(x_1, C_1) = (30, 148.5)$ and $(x_2, C_2) = (55, 247.5)$.

The equation of the straight line is given by

$$C - C_1 = m(x - x_1) \quad \text{where } m = \frac{C_2 - C_1}{x_2 - x_1}$$

Now $m = \frac{247.5 - 148.5}{55 - 30} = 3.96$ and so

$$C - 148.5 = 3.96(x - 30)$$

Therefore the straight line has equation $C = 3.96x + 29.7$.

Substitute $x = 20$:

$$C = 3.96 \times 20 + 29.7 = 108.9$$

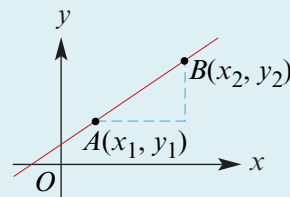
Hence it would cost \$108.90 to buy 20 kg of tomatoes.

The following is a summary of the material that is assumed to have been covered in earlier years and revised in Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2.

Summary B1

- For two points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$:

- The **distance** between points A and B is given by $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$.
- The **midpoint** of the line segment AB is the point with coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$.
- The **gradient** of the line AB is given by $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$.



- Different forms for the equation of a straight line:

$y = mx + c$	where m is the gradient and c is the y -axis intercept
$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1)$	where m is the gradient and (x_1, y_1) is a point on the line
$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$	where $(a, 0)$ and $(0, b)$ are the axis intercepts

- The **angle of slope** of a straight line is found using $m = \tan \theta$, where m is the gradient and θ is the angle that the line makes with the positive direction of the x -axis.
- Two straight lines are **perpendicular** to each other if and only if the product of their gradients is -1 , i.e. $m_1 m_2 = -1$. (Unless one line is vertical and the other horizontal.)



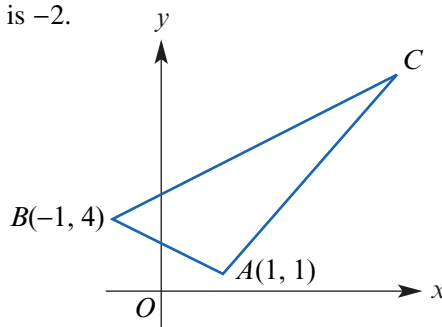
Exercise B1

Example 1

- 1 A straight line passes through the points $A(-2, 6)$ and $B(4, -7)$. Determine:
 - a the distance AB
 - b the midpoint of line segment AB
 - c the gradient of line AB
 - d the equation of line AB
 - e the equation of the line parallel to AB which passes through the point $(1, 5)$
 - f the equation of the line perpendicular to AB which passes through the midpoint of AB .
- 2 Determine the coordinates of M , the midpoint of AB , where A and B have the following coordinates:
 - a $A(1, 4)$, $B(5, 11)$
 - b $A(-6, 4)$, $B(1, -8)$
 - c $A(-1, -6)$, $B(4, 7)$
- 3 If M is the midpoint of XY , determine the coordinates of Y when X and M have the following coordinates:
 - a $X(-4, 5)$, $M(0, 6)$
 - b $X(-1, -4)$, $M(2, -3)$
 - c $X(6, -3)$, $M(4, 8)$
- 4 Use $y = mx + c$ to sketch the graph of each of the following:
 - a $y = 3x - 3$
 - b $y = -3x + 4$
 - c $3y + 2x = 12$
 - d $4x + 6y = 12$
 - e $3y - 6x = 18$
 - f $8x - 4y = 16$
- 5 Determine the equations of the following straight lines:
 - a gradient $+2$, passing through $(4, 2)$
 - b gradient -3 , passing through $(-3, 4)$
 - c passing through $(1, 3)$ and $(4, 7)$
 - d passing through $(-2, -3)$ and $(2, 5)$
- 6 Use the intercept form $\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1$ to determine the equation of the straight line passing through:
 - a $(-3, 0)$ and $(0, 2)$
 - b $(4, 0)$ and $(0, 6)$
 - c $(0, -2)$ and $(6, 0)$
- 7 Write the following in intercept form and hence draw their graphs:
 - a $3x + 6y = 12$
 - b $4y - 3x = 12$
 - c $\frac{3}{2}x - 3y = 9$
- 8 A printing firm charges \$35 for printing 600 sheets of headed notepaper and \$46 for printing 800 sheets. Determine a linear model for the charge, \$ C , for printing n sheets. How much would they charge for printing 1000 sheets?
- 9 An electronic bank teller registered \$775 after it had counted 120 notes and \$975 after it had counted 160 notes.
 - a Determine a formula for the sum registered (\$ C) in terms of the number of notes (n) counted.
 - b Was there a sum already on the register when counting began?
 - c If so, how much?
- 10 Determine the distance between each of the following pairs of points:
 - a $(2, 6)$, $(3, 4)$
 - b $(-2, -6)$, $(2, -8)$
 - c $(0, 4)$, $(3, 0)$

Example 2

- 11 a** Find the equation of the straight line which passes through the point $(1, 6)$ and is:
- parallel to the line with equation $y = 2x + 3$
 - perpendicular to the line with equation $y = 2x + 3$.
- b** Find the equation of the straight line which passes through the point $(2, 3)$ and is:
- parallel to the line with equation $4x + 2y = 10$
 - perpendicular to the line with equation $4x + 2y = 10$.
- 12** Determine the equation of the line which passes through the point of intersection of the lines $y = x$ and $x + y = 6$ and which is perpendicular to the line with equation $3x + 6y = 12$.
- 13** The length of the line segment joining $A(2, -1)$ and $B(5, y)$ is 5 units. Determine y .
- 14** For each of the following, determine the angle that the line joining the given points makes with the positive direction of the x -axis:
- a** $(-4, 1), (4, 6)$ **b** $(2, 3), (-4, 6)$ **c** $(5, 1), (-1, -8)$ **d** $(-4, 2), (2, -8)$
- 15** Determine the acute angle between the lines $y = 2x + 4$ and $y = -3x + 6$.
- 16** Given the points $A(a, 3)$, $B(-2, 1)$ and $C(3, 2)$, determine the possible values of a if the length of AB is twice the length of BC .
- 17** Three points have coordinates $A(1, 7)$, $B(7, 5)$ and $C(0, -2)$. Determine:
- the equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB
 - the point of intersection of this perpendicular bisector and BC .
- 18** The point (h, k) lies on the line $y = x + 1$ and is 5 units from the point $(0, 2)$. Write down two equations connecting h and k and hence determine the possible values of h and k .
- 19** P and Q are the points of intersection of the line $\frac{y}{2} + \frac{x}{3} = 1$ with the x - and y -axes respectively. The gradient of QR is $\frac{1}{2}$ and the point R has x -coordinate $2a$, where $a > 0$.
- Determine the y -coordinate of R in terms of a .
 - Determine the value of a if the gradient of PR is -2 .
- 20** The figure shows a triangle ABC with $A(1, 1)$ and $B(-1, 4)$. The gradients of AB , AC and BC are $-3m$, $3m$ and m respectively.
- Determine the value of m .
 - Determine the coordinates of C .
 - Show that $AC = 2AB$.
- 21** $ABCD$ is a parallelogram, with vertices labelled anticlockwise, such that A and C are the points $(-1, 5)$ and $(5, 1)$ respectively.
- Determine the coordinates of the midpoint of AC .
 - Given that BD is parallel to the line $y + 5x = 2$, determine the equation of BD .
 - Given that BC is perpendicular to AC , determine:
 - the equation of BC
 - the coordinates of B
 - the coordinates of D .



B2 Translations

Learning intentions

- To be able to apply translations in the sketching of graphs.

The **Cartesian plane** is represented by the set $\mathbb{R}^2$ of all ordered pairs of real numbers. That is, $\mathbb{R}^2 = \{(x, y) : x, y \in \mathbb{R}\}$. The transformations considered in this book associate each ordered pair of $\mathbb{R}^2$ with a unique ordered pair. We can refer to them as examples of **transformations of the plane**.

Notation

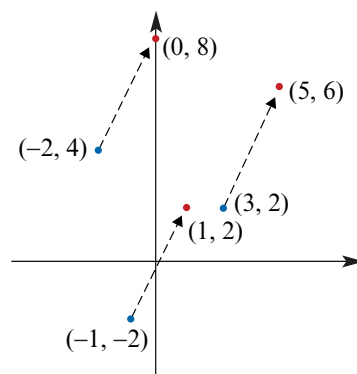
Consider the translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis (to the right) and 4 units in the positive direction of the y -axis (up).

This can be described by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y + 4)$.

This reads as ‘ (x, y) maps to $(x + 2, y + 4)$ ’. For example, $(3, 2) \rightarrow (3 + 2, 2 + 4)$.

In applying this translation, it is useful to think of every point (x, y) in the plane as being mapped to a new point (x', y') . We can write:

$$x' = x + 2 \quad \text{and} \quad y' = y + 4$$



For positive numbers h and k :

- A translation of h units in the positive direction of the x -axis and k units in the positive direction of the y -axis is described by the rule

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$$

$$\text{or} \quad x' = x + h \quad \text{and} \quad y' = y + k$$

- A translation of h units in the negative direction of the x -axis and k units in the negative direction of the y -axis is described by the rule

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x - h, y - k)$$

$$\text{or} \quad x' = x - h \quad \text{and} \quad y' = y - k$$

Notes:

- Under a translation, if $(a', b') = (c', d')$, then $(a, b) = (c, d)$.
- For a translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$, for each point $(a, b) \in \mathbb{R}^2$ there is a point (p, q) such that $(p, q) \rightarrow (a, b)$. (It is clear that $(a - h, b - k) \rightarrow (a, b)$ under this translation.)

Applying translations to sketch graphs

A translation moves every point on the graph the same distance in the same direction.

Every translation of the plane can be described by giving two components:

- a translation parallel to the x -axis and
- a translation parallel to the y -axis.

For example, consider a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the positive direction of the y -axis applied to the graph of $y = x^2$.

The set of points $\{(x, y) : y = x^2\}$ is translated according to the rule

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y + 4)$$

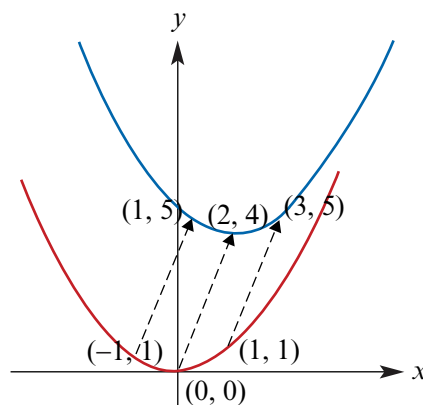
$$x' = x + 2 \quad \text{and} \quad y' = y + 4$$

For each point (x, y) there is a unique point (x', y') and vice versa.

We have $x = x' - 2$ and $y = y' - 4$.

This means the points on the curve with equation $y = x^2$ are mapped to the curve with equation $y' - 4 = (x' - 2)^2$.

Hence $\{(x, y) : y = x^2\}$ maps to $\{(x', y') : y' - 4 = (x' - 2)^2\}$.



For the graph of $y = f(x)$, the following two processes yield the same result:

- Applying the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + h, y + k)$ to the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- Replacing x with $x - h$ and y with $y - k$ in the equation to obtain $y - k = f(x - h)$ and graphing the result.

Proof A point (a, b) is on the graph of $y = f(x)$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(a) = b$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(a + h - h) = b$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(a + h - h) = b + k - k$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (a + h, b + k) \text{ is a point on the graph of } y - k = f(x - h)$$

Note: The double arrows indicate that the steps are reversible.



Example 3

Determine the image of the curve with equation $y = \frac{1}{x}$ under a translation of 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 2 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

Solution

Let (x', y') be the image of the point (x, y) .

Then $x' = x + 3$ and $y' = y - 2$.

Hence $x = x' - 3$ and $y = y' + 2$.

The graph of $y = \frac{1}{x}$ is mapped to $y' + 2 = \frac{1}{x' - 3}$.

The equation of the image can be written as

$$y = \frac{1}{x - 3} - 2$$

Explanation

The rule is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 3, y - 2)$.

Substitute $x = x' - 3$ and $y = y' + 2$ into the equation $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

Recognising that a transformation has been applied makes it easy to sketch many graphs.

For example, to sketch the graph of $y = \sqrt{x-2}$, note that it is of the form $y = f(x-2)$, where $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$. The graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is translated 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis.

Examples of two other functions to which this translation is applied are:

$$f(x) = x^2 \quad f(x-2) = (x-2)^2$$

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{x} \quad f(x-2) = \frac{1}{x-2}$$

Summary B2

For the graph of $y = f(x)$, the following two processes yield the same result:

- Applying the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x+h, y+k)$ to the graph of $y = f(x)$.
- Replacing x with $x-h$ and y with $y-k$ in the equation to obtain $y-k = f(x-h)$ and graphing the result.

Exercise B2

- 1 Determine the image of the point $(-2, 5)$ after a mapping of a translation:
 - a of 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis and 2 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - b of 3 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 5 units in the positive direction of the y -axis
 - c defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x-3, y+2)$
 - d defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x-1, y+1)$.

Example 3

- 2 Determine the image of the curve with equation $y = \frac{1}{x}$ under:
 - a a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - b a translation of 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the positive direction of the y -axis
 - c a translation of $\frac{1}{2}$ unit in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.
- 3 Sketch the graph of each of the following. Label asymptotes and axis intercepts, and state the domain and range.

a $y = \frac{1}{x} + 3$	b $y = \frac{1}{x^2} - 3$	c $y = \frac{1}{(x+2)^2}$
d $y = \sqrt{x-2}$	e $y = \frac{1}{x-1}$	f $y = \frac{1}{x} - 4$
g $y = \frac{1}{x+2}$	h $f(x) = \frac{1}{(x-3)^2}$	i $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-1} + 1$

- 4 For $y = f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, sketch the graph of each of the following. Label asymptotes and axis intercepts.

a $y = f(x - 1)$

b $y = f(x) + 1$

c $y = f(x + 3)$

d $y = f(x) - 3$

e $y = f(x + 1)$

f $y = f(x) - 1$

- 5 For each of the following, state a transformation which maps the graph of $y = f(x)$ to the graph of $y = f_1(x)$:

a $f(x) = x^2$, $f_1(x) = (x + 5)^2$

b $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x} + 2$

c $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x^2} + 4$

d $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2} - 3$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$

e $f(x) = \frac{1}{x - 3}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x}$

- 6 Write down the equation of the image when the graph of each of the functions below is transformed by:

i a translation of 7 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the positive direction of the y -axis

ii a translation of 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 6 units in the negative direction of the y -axis

iii a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis

iv a translation of 1 unit in the negative direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

a $y = x^{\frac{1}{4}}$

b $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$

c $y = \frac{1}{x^3}$

d $y = \frac{1}{x^4}$

- 7 Determine the equation for the image of the graph of each of the following under the stated translation:

a $y = (x - 2)^2 + 3$ Translation: $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 3, y + 2)$

b $y = 2(x + 3)^2 + 3$ Translation: $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 3, y - 3)$

c $y = \frac{1}{(x - 2)^2} + 3$ Translation: $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 4, y - 2)$

- 8 For each of the following, state a transformation which maps the graph of $y = f(x)$ to the graph of $y = f_1(x)$:

a $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{(x - 2)^2} + 3$

b $f(x) = \frac{1}{x}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x + 2} - 3$

c $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, $f_1(x) = \sqrt{x + 4} + 2$

B3 Dilations and reflections

Learning intentions

- To be able to apply dilations and reflections in the sketching of graphs.

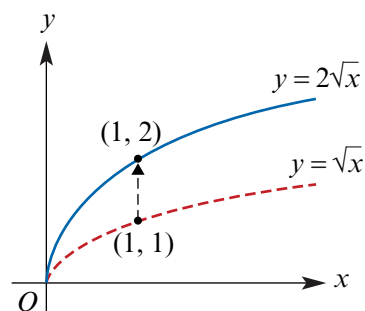
We can determine the equation of the image of a curve under a dilation or a reflection by following the same approach used for translations.

Dilation from the x -axis

A dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis is defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 2y)$. Hence the point with coordinates $(1, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2)$.

Consider the curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ and the dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis.

- Let (x', y') be the image of the point with coordinates (x, y) on the curve.
- Hence $x' = x$ and $y' = 2y$, and thus $x = x'$ and $y = \frac{y'}{2}$.
- Substituting for x and y , we see that the curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ maps to the curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ maps to the curve with equation $\frac{y'}{2} = \sqrt{x'}$, i.e. the curve with equation $y = 2\sqrt{x}$.

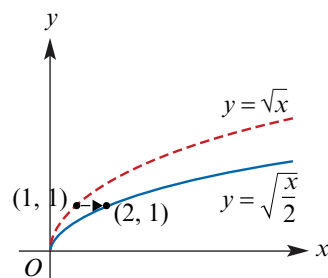


Dilation from the y -axis

A dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis is defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (2x, y)$. Hence the point with coordinates $(1, 1) \rightarrow (2, 1)$.

Again, consider the curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$.

- Let (x', y') be the image of the point (x, y) .
- Hence $x' = 2x$ and $y' = y$, and thus $x = \frac{x'}{2}$ and $y = y'$.
- The curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ maps to the curve with equation $y' = \sqrt{\frac{x'}{2}}$.



Example 4

Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ is dilated by a factor of 4:

- a** from the x -axis **b** from the y -axis.

Solution

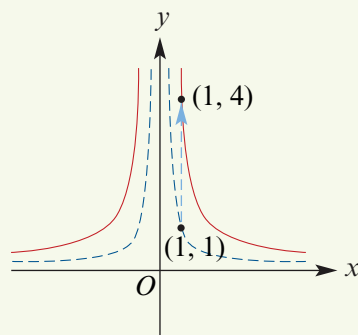
a $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 4y)$

Let (x', y') be the coordinates of the image of (x, y) ,
so $x' = x$, $y' = 4y$.

Rearranging gives $x = x'$, $y = \frac{y'}{4}$.

Therefore $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ becomes $\frac{y'}{4} = \frac{1}{(x')^2}$.

The rule of the transformed function is $y = \frac{4}{x^2}$.



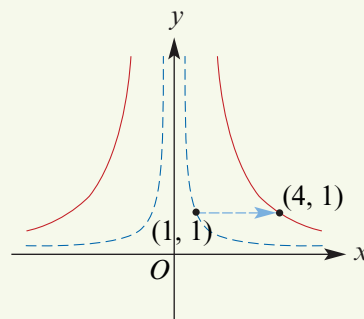
b $(x, y) \rightarrow (4x, y)$

Let (x', y') be the coordinates of the image of (x, y) ,
so $x' = 4x$, $y' = y$.

Rearranging gives $x = \frac{x'}{4}$, $y = y'$.

Therefore $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ becomes $y' = \frac{1}{(\frac{x'}{4})^2}$.

The rule of the transformed function is $y = \frac{16}{x^2}$.



Example 5

Determine the factor of dilation when the graph of $y = \sqrt{3x}$ is obtained by dilating the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$:

a from the y -axis **b** from the x -axis.

Solution

a Note that a dilation from the y -axis ‘changes’ the x -values. So write the transformed function as

$$y' = \sqrt{3x'}$$

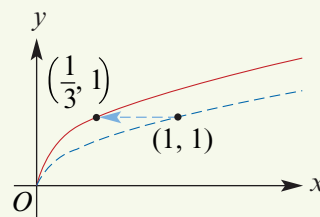
where (x', y') are the coordinates of the image of (x, y) .

Therefore $x = 3x'$ and $y = y'$ (‘changed’ x).

Rearranging gives $x' = \frac{x}{3}$ and $y' = y$.

So the mapping is given by $(x, y) \rightarrow (\frac{x}{3}, y)$.

The graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is dilated by a factor of $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis to produce the graph of $y = \sqrt{3x}$.



b Note that a dilation from the x -axis ‘changes’ the y -values. So write the transformed function as

$$\frac{y'}{\sqrt{3}} = \sqrt{x'}$$

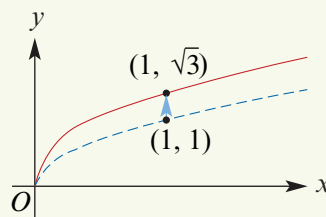
where (x', y') are the coordinates of the image of (x, y) .

Therefore $x = x'$ and $y = \frac{y'}{\sqrt{3}}$ (‘changed’ y).

Rearranging gives $x' = x$ and $y' = \sqrt{3}y$.

So the mapping is given by $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, \sqrt{3}y)$.

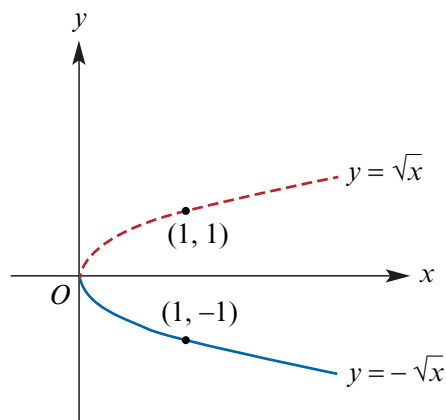
The graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is dilated by a factor of $\sqrt{3}$ from the x -axis to produce the graph of $y = \sqrt{3x}$.



Reflection in the x -axis

A reflection in the x -axis can be defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$. Hence the point with coordinates $(1, 1) \rightarrow (1, -1)$.

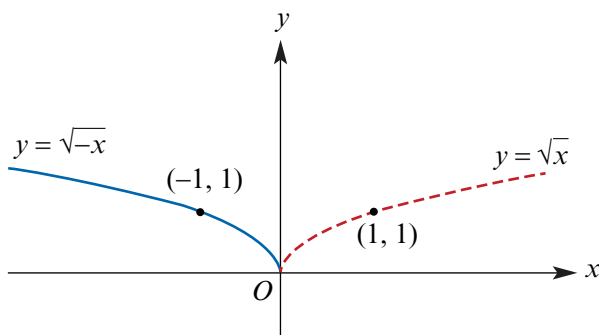
- Let (x', y') be the image of the point (x, y) .
- Hence $x' = x$ and $y' = -y$, which gives $x = x'$ and $y = -y'$.
- The curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ maps to the curve with equation $-y' = \sqrt{x'}$, i.e. the curve with equation $y = -\sqrt{x}$.



Reflection in the y -axis

A reflection in the y -axis can be defined by the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y)$. Hence the point with coordinates $(1, 1) \rightarrow (-1, 1)$.

- Let (x', y') be the image of the point (x, y) .
- Hence $x' = -x$ and $y' = y$, which gives $x = -x'$ and $y = y'$.
- The curve with equation $y = \sqrt{x}$ maps to the curve with equation $y' = \sqrt{-x'}$, i.e. the curve with equation $y = \sqrt{-x}$.



Summary B3

Transformations of the graphs of functions

Mapping	Rule	Image of $y = f(x)$
Reflection in the x -axis	$x' = x, y' = -y$	$y = -f(x)$
Reflection in the y -axis	$x' = -x, y' = y$	$y = f(-x)$
Dilation of factor a from the y -axis	$x' = ax, y' = y$	$y = f\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$
Dilation of factor b from the x -axis	$x' = x, y' = by$	$y = bf(x)$

Exercise B3

Example 4

- Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x}$ is dilated by a factor of 3:
 - from the x -axis
 - from the y -axis.
- Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is dilated by a factor of 2:
 - from the x -axis
 - from the y -axis.

- 3** Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $y = x^3$ is dilated by a factor of 2:
a from the x -axis **b** from the y -axis.

- 4** Sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = \frac{4}{x}$ **b** $y = \frac{1}{2x}$ **c** $y = \sqrt{3x}$ **d** $y = \frac{2}{x^2}$

- 5** For $y = f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = f(2x)$ **b** $y = 2f(x)$ **c** $y = f\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **d** $y = 3f(x)$

- 6** Sketch the graphs of each of the following on the one set of axes:

a $y = \frac{1}{x}$ **b** $y = \frac{3}{x}$ **c** $y = \frac{3}{2x}$

- 7** Sketch the graph of the function $f(x) = 3\sqrt{x}$ for $x \in \mathbb{R}^+$.

Example 5

- 8** Determine the factor of dilation when the graph of $y = \sqrt{5x}$ is obtained by dilating the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$:

- a** from the y -axis **b** from the x -axis.

- 9** For each of the following, state a transformation which maps the graph of $y = f(x)$ to the graph of $y = f_1(x)$:

a $f(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{5}{x^2}$ **b** $f(x) = \sqrt{x}$, $f_1(x) = \sqrt{5x}$

c $f(x) = \sqrt{\frac{x}{3}}$, $f_1(x) = \sqrt{x}$ **d** $f(x) = \frac{1}{4x^2}$, $f_1(x) = \frac{1}{x^2}$

- 10** Write down the equation of the image when the graph of each of the functions below is transformed by:

i a dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis

ii a dilation of factor $\frac{2}{3}$ from the x -axis

iii a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis

iv a dilation of factor 5 from the y -axis.

a $y = x^2$ **b** $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ **c** $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ **d** $y = \frac{1}{x^4}$ **e** $y = x^{\frac{1}{5}}$

- 11** Determine the equation of the image when the graph of $y = (x - 1)^2$ is reflected:

- a** in the x -axis **b** in the y -axis.

- 12** State a transformation which maps the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ to the graph of $y = \sqrt{-x}$.

- 13** Determine the equation of the image when the graph of each of the functions below is transformed by:

i a reflection in the x -axis

ii a reflection in the y -axis.

a $y = x^3$ **b** $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ **c** $y = \frac{1}{x^3}$ **d** $y = \frac{1}{x^4}$ **e** $y = x^{\frac{1}{4}}$

B4 Combinations of transformations

Learning intentions

- To be able to apply combinations of transformations in the sketching of graphs.

In the previous two sections, we considered three types of transformations separately. In the remainder of this chapter we look at situations where a graph may have been transformed by any combination of dilations, reflections and translations. For example, first consider:

- a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
- followed by a reflection in the x -axis.

The rule becomes

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 2y) \rightarrow (x, -2y)$$

First the dilation is applied and then the reflection. For example, $(1, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2) \rightarrow (1, -2)$.

Another example is:

- a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
- followed by a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

The rule becomes

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 2y) \rightarrow (x + 2, 2y - 3)$$

First the dilation is applied and then the translation. For example, $(1, 1) \rightarrow (1, 2) \rightarrow (3, -1)$.



Example 6

Determine the equation of the image of $y = \sqrt{x}$ under:

- a** a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by a reflection in the x -axis
- b** a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

Solution

- a** From the discussion above, the rule is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 2y) \rightarrow (x, -2y)$.

If (x, y) maps to (x', y') , then $x' = x$ and $y' = -2y$. Thus $x = x'$ and $y = \frac{y'}{-2}$.

So the image of $y = \sqrt{x}$ has equation

$$\frac{y'}{-2} = \sqrt{x'}$$

and hence $y' = -2\sqrt{x'}$. The equation can be written as $y = -2\sqrt{x}$.

- b** From the discussion above, the rule is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, 2y) \rightarrow (x + 2, 2y - 3)$.

If (x, y) maps to (x', y') , then $x' = x + 2$ and $y' = 2y - 3$. Thus $x = x' - 2$ and $y = \frac{y' + 3}{2}$.

So the image of $y = \sqrt{x}$ has equation

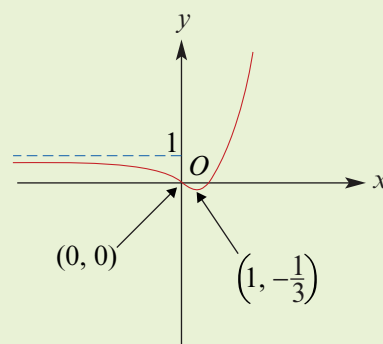
$$\frac{y' + 3}{2} = \sqrt{x' - 2}$$

and hence $y' = 2\sqrt{x' - 2} - 3$. The equation can be written as $y = 2\sqrt{x - 2} - 3$.

**Example 7**

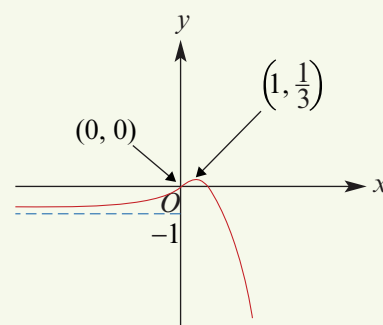
Sketch the image of the graph shown under the following sequence of transformations:

- a reflection in the x -axis
- a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
- a translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the positive direction of the y -axis.

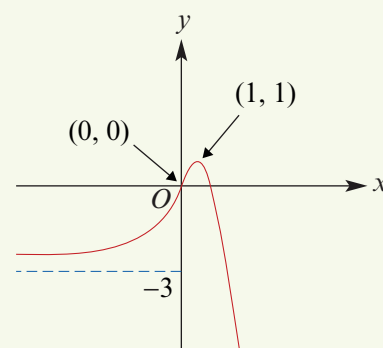
**Solution**

Consider each transformation in turn and sketch the graph at each stage.

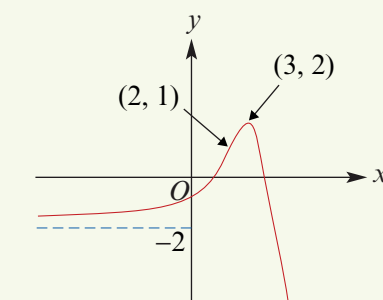
A reflection in the x -axis produces the graph shown on the right.



Next apply the dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis.



Finally, apply the translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the positive direction of the y -axis.





Example 8

For the graph of $y = x^2$:

a Sketch the graph of the image under the sequence of transformations:

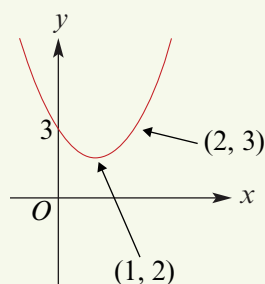
- a translation of 1 unit in the positive direction of the x -axis and 2 units in the positive direction of the y -axis
- a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis
- a reflection in the x -axis.

b State the rule of the image.

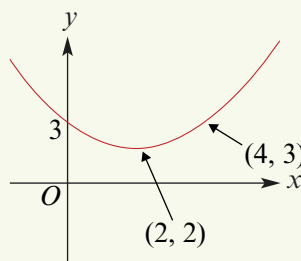
Solution

a Apply each transformation in turn and sketch the graph at each stage.

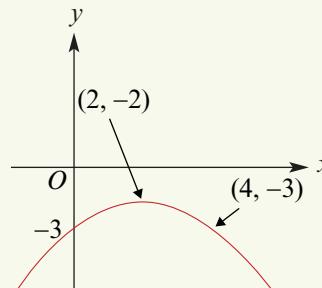
1 The translation:



2 The dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis:



3 The reflection in the x -axis:



b The mapping representing the sequence of transformations is

$$(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, y + 2) \rightarrow (2(x + 1), y + 2) \rightarrow (2(x + 1), -(y + 2))$$

Let (x', y') be the image of (x, y) . Then $x' = 2(x + 1)$ and $y' = -(y + 2)$.

Rearranging gives $x = \frac{1}{2}(x' - 2)$ and $y = -y' - 2$.

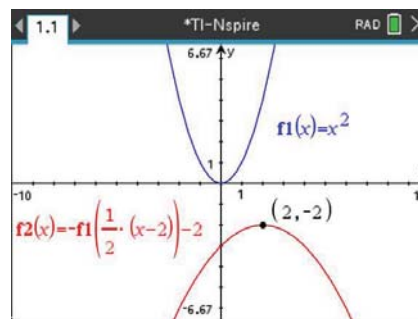
Therefore $y = x^2$ becomes $-y' - 2 = \left(\frac{1}{2}(x' - 2)\right)^2$.

The rule of the image is $y = -\frac{1}{4}(x - 2)^2 - 2$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

- In a **Graphs** application, enter $f1(x) = x^2$.
- The rule for the transformed function can be entered as $f2(x) = -f1\left(\frac{1}{2}(x - 2)\right) - 2$.



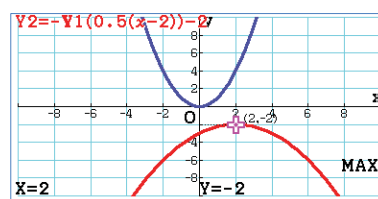
Using the Casio

- Press **MENU** **(5)** to select **Graph** mode.
- Enter the rule $y = x^2$ in $Y1$.
- Enter the rule for the transformed function in $Y2$ as shown.

Note: To obtain the function name $Y1$ in the rule for $Y2$, go to the Variable Data menu **(VARS)**. Select **Graph** **(F4)**, **Y** **(F1)**; then press **(1)**.

- Select **Draw** **(F6)** to view the graphs.

Math Rad Norm1 Real
Graph Func : Y=
Y1 = x^2
Y2 = $-Y1(0.5(x-2)) - 2$
Y3 :
Y4 :
Y5 :
Y6 :
Y r Xt Yt X



Summary B4

The following method can be used to determine the image of the graph of $y = f(x)$ under a sequence of transformations:

- Step 1** Determine the rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x', y')$ for the sequence of transformations.
- Step 2** Write down formulas for x' and y' in terms of x and y .
- Step 3** Transpose these formulas to express x and y in terms of x' and y' .
- Step 4** Substitute these expressions for x and y into the equation $y = f(x)$.



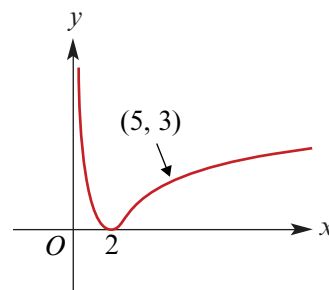
Exercise B4

Example 6

- 1** Determine the rule of the image when the graph of each of the functions listed below undergoes each of the following sequences of transformations:
- i a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - ii a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis, followed by a translation 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - iii a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the y -axis.
- a** $y = x^2$ **b** $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ **c** $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$

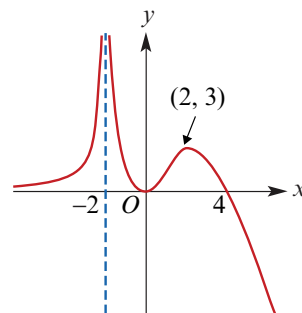
Example 7

- 2** Sketch the image of the graph shown under the following sequence of transformations:
- a reflection in the x -axis
 - a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
 - a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.



- 3** Sketch the image of the graph shown under the following sequence of transformations:

- a reflection in the y -axis
- a translation 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
- a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis.



- 4** Determine the rule of the image when the graph of each of the functions listed below undergoes each of the following sequences of transformations:
- i** a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - ii** a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis
 - iii** a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - iv** a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
 - v** a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis
 - vi** a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 4 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis.

a $y = x^2$ **b** $y = \sqrt[3]{x}$ **c** $y = \frac{1}{x}$ **d** $y = \frac{1}{x^3}$ **e** $y = x^{-2}$

- 5** Determine the rule of the image when the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ is translated 4 units in the negative direction of the x -axis, reflected in the x -axis and dilated by factor 3 from the y -axis.

Example 8

- 6** For the graph of $y = \frac{3}{x^2}$:

- a** Sketch the graph of the image under the sequence of transformations:
 - a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
 - a translation of 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the negative direction of the y -axis
 - a reflection in the x -axis.
- b** State the rule of the image.

B5 Using transformations to sketch graphs

Learning intentions

- To be able to consider a rule for a graph as a combination of transformations of a more 'simple' rule



Example 9

Identify a sequence of transformations that maps the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x}$ onto the graph of $y = \frac{4}{x+5} - 3$. Use this to sketch the graph of $y = \frac{4}{x+5} - 3$, stating the equations of asymptotes and the coordinates of axis intercepts.

Solution

Rearrange the equation of the transformed graph to have the same 'shape' as $y = \frac{1}{x}$:

$$\frac{y' + 3}{4} = \frac{1}{x' + 5}$$

where (x', y') are the coordinates of the image of (x, y) .

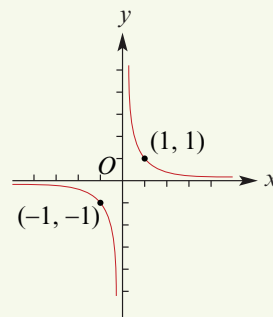
Therefore $x = x' + 5$ and $y = \frac{y' + 3}{4}$. Rearranging gives $x' = x - 5$ and $y' = 4y - 3$.

The mapping is $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 5, 4y - 3)$, and so a sequence of transformations is:

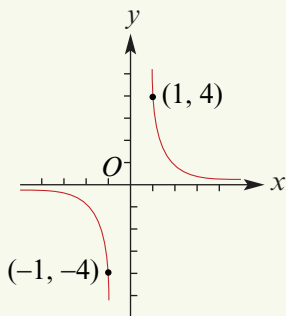
- 1 a dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis
- 2 a translation of 5 units in the negative direction of the x -axis
- 3 a translation of 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis.

The original graph $y = \frac{1}{x}$ is shown on the right.

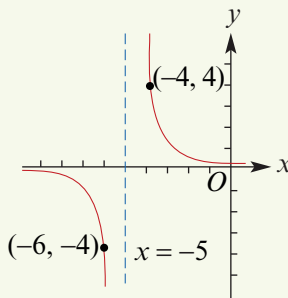
The effect of the transformations is shown below.



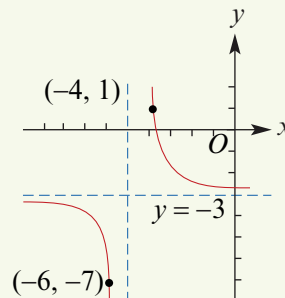
- 1 Dilation from x -axis:



- 2 Translation in negative direction of x -axis:



- 3 Translation in negative direction of y -axis:



Determine the axis intercepts in the usual way, as below. The transformed graph, with asymptotes and intercepts marked, is shown on the right.

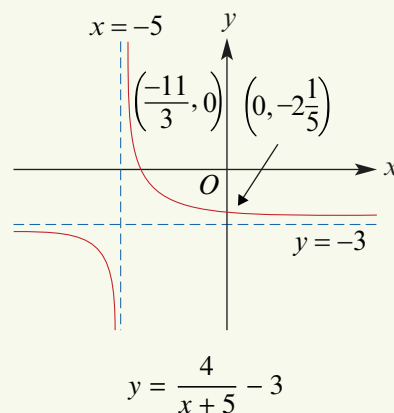
When $x = 0$, $y = \frac{4}{5} - 3 = -2\frac{1}{5}$

When $y = 0$, $\frac{4}{x+5} - 3 = 0$

$$4 = 3x + 15$$

$$3x = -11$$

$$\therefore x = -\frac{11}{3}$$



Once you have done a few of these types of exercises, you can identify the transformations more quickly by carefully observing the rule of the transformed graph and relating it to the 'shape' of the simplest function in its family. Consider the following examples.



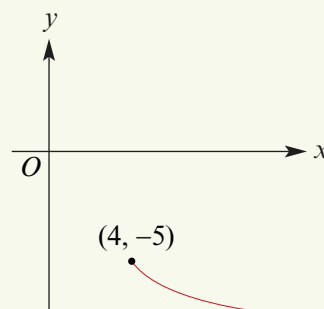
Example 10

Sketch the graph of $y = -\sqrt{x-4} - 5$.

Solution

The graph is obtained from the graph of $y = \sqrt{x}$ by:

- a reflection in the x -axis, followed by a translation of 5 units in the negative direction of the y -axis, and
- a translation of 4 units in the positive direction of the x -axis.



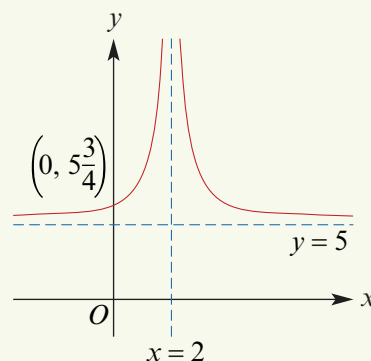
Example 11

Sketch the graph of $y = \frac{3}{(x-2)^2} + 5$.

Solution

This is obtained from the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ by:

- a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, followed by a translation of 5 units in the positive direction of the y -axis, and
- a translation of 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis.



Summary B5

In general, the function given by the equation

$$y = Af(n(x + c)) + b$$

where $b, c \in \mathbb{R}^+$ and $A, n \in \mathbb{R}^+$, represents a transformation of the graph of $y = f(x)$ by:

- a dilation of factor A from the x -axis, followed by a translation of b units in the positive direction of the y -axis, and
- a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{n}$ from the y -axis, followed by a translation of c units in the negative direction of the x -axis.

Similar statements can be made for $b, c \in \mathbb{R}^-$. The case where $A \in \mathbb{R}^-$ corresponds to a reflection in the x -axis and a dilation from the x -axis. The case where $n \in \mathbb{R}^-$ corresponds to a reflection in the y -axis and a dilation from the y -axis.

**Exercise B5****Example 9**

- 1** Sketch the graph of each of the following. State the equations of asymptotes and the axis intercepts. State the range of each function.

a $f(x) = \frac{3}{x-1}$

b $g(x) = \frac{2}{x+1} - 1$

c $h(x) = \frac{3}{(x-2)^2}$

d $f(x) = \frac{2}{(x-1)^2} - 1$

e $h(x) = \frac{-1}{x-3}$

f $f(x) = \frac{-1}{x+2} + 3$

Example 10, 11

- 2** Sketch the graph of each of the following without using your calculator. State the range of each.

a $y = -\sqrt{x-3}$

b $y = -\sqrt{x-3} + 2$

c $y = \sqrt{2(x+3)}$

d $y = \frac{1}{2x-3}$

e $y = 5\sqrt{x+2}$

f $y = -5\sqrt{x+2} - 2$

g $y = \frac{-3}{x-2}$

h $y = \frac{-2}{(x+2)^2} - 4$

i $y = \frac{3}{2x} - 5$

j $y = \frac{5}{2x} + 5$

k $y = 2(x-3)^2 + 5$

l $y = \frac{4}{3-x} + 4$

- 3** Without using your calculator, sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{3x+2}{x+1}$.

Hint: Show that $f(x) = 3 - \frac{1}{x+1}$.

- 4** Without using your calculator, sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{4x-5}{2x+1}$.

Hint: Show that $f(x) = 2 - \frac{7}{2(x+\frac{1}{2})}$.

B6 Transformations of power functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to use transformations with power functions.

We recall that every quadratic polynomial function can be written in the turning point form $y = a(x - h)^2 + k$. This is not true for polynomials of higher degree. However, there are many polynomials that can be written as $y = a(x - h)^n + k$.

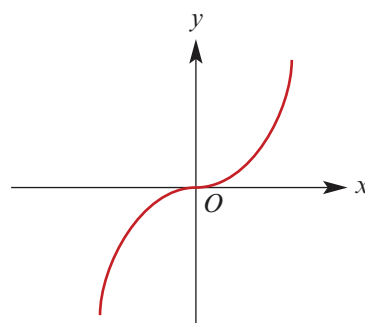
In Section ?? we introduced power functions, which include the functions $f(x) = x^n$, where n is a positive integer. In this section we look at transformations of these functions.

The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an odd positive integer

Assume that n is an odd integer with $n \geq 3$. You will recall from Mathematical Methods Units 1 & 2 that the derivative function of $f(x) = x^n$ has rule

$$f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$$

Hence the gradient is zero when $x = 0$. Since n is odd and therefore $n - 1$ is even, we have $f'(x) = nx^{n-1} > 0$ for all $x \neq 0$. That is, the gradient of the graph of $y = f(x)$ is positive when $x \neq 0$ and is zero when $x = 0$. Recall that, for functions of this form, the stationary point at $(0, 0)$ is called a stationary point of inflection.



Transformations of $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an odd positive integer

Transformations of these functions result in graphs with rules of the form $y = a(x - h)^n + k$ where a , h and k are real constants.



Example 12

Sketch the graph of:

a $y = (x - 2)^3 + 1$

b $y = -(x - 1)^3 + 2$

c $y = 2(x + 1)^3 + 2$

Solution

a The translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y + 1)$ maps the graph of $y = x^3$ onto the graph of $y = (x - 2)^3 + 1$.

So $(2, 1)$ is a point of zero gradient.

Determine the axis intercepts:

■ When $x = 0$, $y = (-2)^3 + 1 = -7$

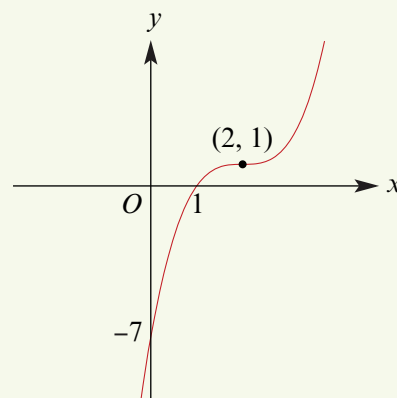
■ When $y = 0$,

$$0 = (x - 2)^3 + 1$$

$$-1 = (x - 2)^3$$

$$-1 = x - 2$$

$$\therefore x = 1$$



- b** A reflection in the x -axis followed by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 1, y + 2)$ maps the graph of $y = x^3$ onto the graph of $y = -(x - 1)^3 + 2$.

So $(1, 2)$ is a point of zero gradient.

Determine the axis intercepts:

■ When $x = 0$, $y = -(-1)^3 + 2 = 3$

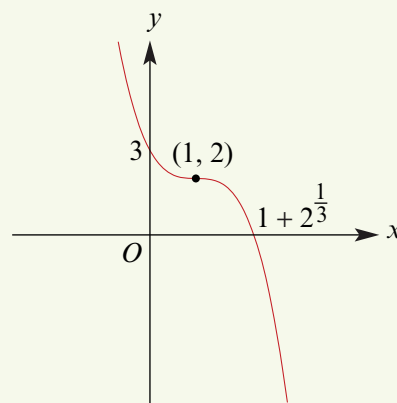
■ When $y = 0$,

$$0 = -(x - 1)^3 + 2$$

$$(x - 1)^3 = 2$$

$$x - 1 = 2^{\frac{1}{3}}$$

$$\therefore x = 1 + 2^{\frac{1}{3}} \approx 2.26$$



- c** A dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 1, y + 2)$ maps the graph of $y = x^3$ onto the graph of $y = 2(x + 1)^3 + 2$.

So $(-1, 2)$ is a point of zero gradient.

Determine the axis intercepts:

■ When $x = 0$, $y = 2 + 2 = 4$

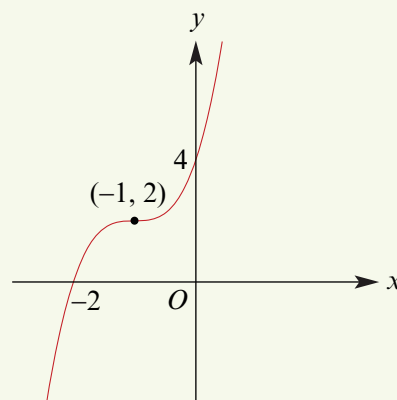
■ When $y = 0$,

$$0 = 2(x + 1)^3 + 2$$

$$-1 = (x + 1)^3$$

$$-1 = x + 1$$

$$\therefore x = -2$$



Example 13

The graph of $y = a(x - h)^3 + k$ has a point of zero gradient at $(1, 1)$ and passes through the point $(0, 4)$. Determine the values of a , h and k .

Solution

Since $(1, 1)$ is the point of zero gradient,

$$h = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad k = 1$$

So $y = a(x - 1)^3 + 1$ and, since the graph passes through $(0, 4)$,

$$4 = -a + 1$$

$$\therefore a = -3$$

**Example 14**

- a** Determine the rule for the image of the graph of $y = x^5$ under the following sequence of transformations:
- reflection in the y -axis
 - dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis
 - translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.
- b** Determine a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = x^5$ to the graph of $y = 6 - 2(x + 5)^5$.

Solution

a $(x, y) \rightarrow (-x, y) \rightarrow (-2x, y) \rightarrow (-2x + 2, y + 3)$

Let (x', y') be the image of (x, y) under this transformation.

Then $x' = -2x + 2$ and $y' = y + 3$. Hence $x = \frac{x' - 2}{-2}$ and $y = y' - 3$.

Therefore the graph of $y = x^5$ maps to the graph of

$$y' - 3 = \left(\frac{x' - 2}{-2} \right)^5$$

i.e. to the graph of

$$y = -\frac{1}{32}(x - 2)^5 + 3$$

b Rearrange $y' = 6 - 2(x' + 5)^5$ to $\frac{y' - 6}{-2} = (x' + 5)^5$.

Therefore $y = \frac{y' - 6}{-2}$ and $x = x' + 5$, which gives $y' = -2y + 6$ and $x' = x - 5$.

The sequence of transformations is:

- reflection in the x -axis
- dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
- translation 5 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 6 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

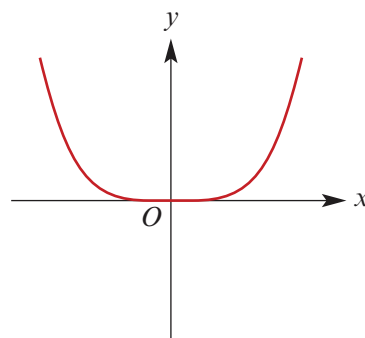
The function $f(x) = x^n$ where n is an even positive integer

Now assume that n is an even integer with $n \geq 2$. The derivative function of $f(x) = x^n$ has rule

$$f'(x) = nx^{n-1}$$

Hence the gradient is zero when $x = 0$. Since n is even and therefore $n - 1$ is odd, we have $f'(x) = nx^{n-1} > 0$ for all $x > 0$, and $f'(x) = nx^{n-1} < 0$ for all $x < 0$.

Thus the graph of $y = f(x)$ has a turning point at $(0, 0)$; this point is a local minimum.



Summary B6

A graph with rule of the form $y = a(x - h)^n + k$ can be obtained as a transformation of the graph of $y = x^n$.

Exercise B6**Example 12**

- 1** Sketch the graph of each of the following. State the coordinates of the point of zero gradient and the axis intercepts.

a $f(x) = 2x^3$

b $g(x) = -2x^3$

c $h(x) = x^5 + 1$

d $f(x) = x^3 - 4$

e $f(x) = (x + 1)^3 - 8$

f $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^3 - 2$

g $g(x) = -2(x - 1)^3 + 2$

h $h(x) = 3(x - 2)^3 - 4$

i $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^3 + 2$

j $h(x) = -2(x - 1)^3 - 4$

k $f(x) = (x + 1)^5 - 32$

l $f(x) = 2(x - 1)^5 - 2$

Example 13

- 2** The graph of $y = a(x - h)^3 + k$ has a point of zero gradient at $(0, 4)$ and passes through the point $(1, 1)$. Determine the values of a , h and k .

- 3** Determine the equation of the image of $y = x^3$ under each of the following transformations:

a a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis**b** a translation with rule $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 1, y + 1)$ **c** a reflection in the x -axis followed by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y - 3)$ **d** a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by the translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 1, y - 2)$ **e** a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis.**Example 14**

- 4 a** Determine the rule for the image of the graph of $y = x^3$ under a reflection in the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis and then a translation 3 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the positive direction of the y -axis.

b Determine a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = x^3$ to the graph of $y = 4 - 3(x + 1)^3$.

- 5 a** Determine the rule for the image of the graph of $y = x^4$ under a reflection in the y -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis and then a translation 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 1 unit in the negative direction of the y -axis.

b Determine a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = x^4$ to the graph of $y = 5 - 3(x + 1)^4$.

- 6** Sketch the graph of each of the following:

a $y = 3(x - 1)^4 - 2$

b $y = -2(x + 2)^4$

c $y = (x - 2)^4 - 6$

d $y = 2(x - 3)^4 - 1$

e $y = 1 - (x + 4)^4$

f $y = -3(x - 2)^4 - 3$

- 7** The graph of $y = a(x - h)^4 + k$ has a turning point at $(-2, 3)$ and passes through the point $(0, -6)$. Determine the values of a , h and k .

- 8** The graph of $y = a(x - h)^4 + k$ has a turning point at $(1, 7)$ and passes through the point $(0, 23)$. Determine the values of a , h and k .

B7 Determining the rule for a function from its graph

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the rule of a function from its graph.

Given sufficient information about a curve, we can determine its rule. For example, if we know the coordinates of two points on a hyperbola of the form

$$y = \frac{a}{x} + b$$

then we can determine the rule for the hyperbola, i.e. we can determine the values of a and b .

Sometimes the rule has a more specific form. For example, the curve may be a dilation of $y = \sqrt{x}$. Then we know its rule is of the form $y = a\sqrt{x}$, and the coordinates of one point on the curve (with the exception of the origin) will be enough to determine the value of a .



Example 15

- a** The points (1, 5) and (4, 2) lie on a curve with equation $y = \frac{a}{x} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .
- b** The points (2, 1) and (10, 6) lie on a curve with equation $y = a\sqrt{x-1} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .

Solution

- a** When $x = 1$, $y = 5$ and so

$$5 = a + b \quad (1)$$

When $x = 4$, $y = 2$ and so

$$2 = \frac{a}{4} + b \quad (2)$$

Subtract (2) from (1):

$$3 = \frac{3a}{4}$$

$$\therefore a = 4$$

Substitute in (1) to determine b :

$$5 = 4 + b$$

$$\therefore b = 1$$

The equation of the curve is

$$y = \frac{4}{x} + 1$$

- b** When $x = 2$, $y = 1$ and so

$$1 = a\sqrt{1} + b$$

$$\text{i.e. } 1 = a + b \quad (1)$$

When $x = 10$, $y = 6$ and so

$$6 = a\sqrt{9} + b$$

$$\text{i.e. } 6 = 3a + b \quad (2)$$

Subtract (1) from (2):

$$5 = 2a$$

$$\therefore a = \frac{5}{2}$$

Substitute in (1) to determine b :

$$1 = \frac{5}{2} + b$$

$$\therefore b = -\frac{3}{2}$$

The equation of the curve is

$$y = \frac{5}{2}\sqrt{x-1} - \frac{3}{2}$$



Exercise B7

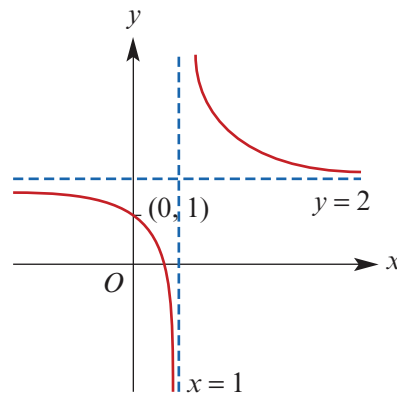
Example 15a

- 1 The points (1, 4) and (3, 1) lie on a curve with equation $y = \frac{a}{x} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .

- 2 The graph shown has the rule

$$y = \frac{A}{x+b} + B$$

Determine the values of A , b and B .



Example 15b

- 3 The points (3, 1) and (11, 6) lie on a curve with equation $y = a\sqrt{x-2} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .

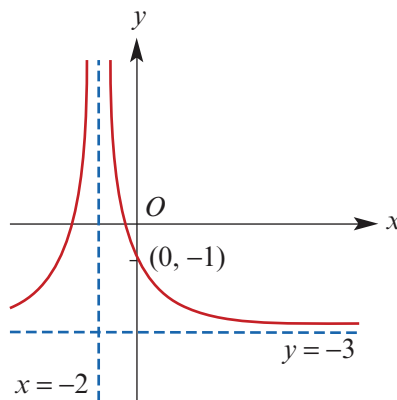
- 4 The points with coordinates (1, 5) and (16, 11) lie on a curve which has a rule of the form $y = A\sqrt{x} + B$. Determine A and B .

- 5 The points with coordinates (1, 1) and (0.5, 7) lie on a curve which has a rule of the form $y = \frac{A}{x^2} + B$. Determine the values of A and B .

- 6 The graph shown has the rule

$$y = \frac{A}{(x+b)^2} + B$$

Determine the values of A , b and B .



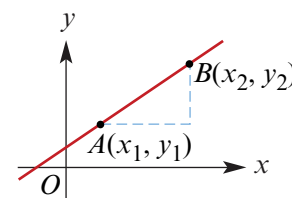
- 7 The points with coordinates (1, -1) and $(2, \frac{3}{4})$ lie on a curve which has a rule of the form $y = \frac{a}{x^3} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .

- 8 The points with coordinates (-1, 4) and (1, -8) lie on a curve which has a rule of the form $y = a\sqrt[3]{x} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .

Chapter summary

Coordinate geometry

- For two points $A(x_1, y_1)$ and $B(x_2, y_2)$:
 - The **distance** between points A and B is given by $AB = \sqrt{(x_2 - x_1)^2 + (y_2 - y_1)^2}$.
 - The **midpoint** of the line segment AB is the point with coordinates $\left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$.
 - The **gradient** of the line AB is given by $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$.



- Different forms for the equation of a straight line:

$$y = mx + c \quad \text{where } m \text{ is the gradient and } c \text{ is the } y\text{-axis intercept}$$

$$y - y_1 = m(x - x_1) \quad \text{where } m \text{ is the gradient and } (x_1, y_1) \text{ is a point on the line}$$

$$\frac{x}{a} + \frac{y}{b} = 1 \quad \text{where } (a, 0) \text{ and } (0, b) \text{ are the axis intercepts}$$

- The **angle of slope** of a straight line is found using $m = \tan \theta$, where m is the gradient and θ is the angle that the line makes with the positive direction of the x -axis.
- Two straight lines are **perpendicular** to each other if and only if the product of their gradients is -1 , i.e. $m_1 m_2 = -1$. (Unless one line is vertical and the other horizontal.)

Transformations of the graphs of functions

Mapping	Rule	Image of $y = f(x)$
Reflection in the x -axis	$x' = x, y' = -y$	$y = -f(x)$
Reflection in the y -axis	$x' = -x, y' = y$	$y = f(-x)$
Dilation of factor a from the y -axis	$x' = ax, y' = y$	$y = f\left(\frac{x}{a}\right)$
Dilation of factor b from the x -axis	$x' = x, y' = by$	$y = bf(x)$
Translation	$x' = x + h, y' = y + k$	$y - k = f(x - h)$

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



B1

- 1 I can determine the distance between two points, the midpoint of a line segment, the gradient of a straight line, the equation of a line given a point on the line and the gradient.. ☐

See Example 1 and Question 1

72 Appendix B: Coordinate geometry and transformations

- B1** **2** I can apply linear equations to practical problems. ☐
See Example 2 and Question 8
- B2** **3** I can determine the equation for the image of a curve under a translation. ☐
See Example 3 and Question 2
- B3** **4** I can determine the equation for the image of a curve under dilations and reflections in an axis. ☐
See Example 4 Example 5 and Questions 1 and 8
- B4** **5** I can determine the equation for the image of a curve under a combination of transformations. ☐
See Example 6 Example 7. Example 8 and Questions 1, 2 and 6
- B5** **6** I can use transformations to sketch graphs. ☐
See Example 9 Example 10 Example 11 and Questions 1 and 2
- B6** **7** I can use transformations to sketch the graphs of transformations the graphs of power functions. ☐
See Example 12 Example 13 Example 14 and Questions 1, 2 and 4
- B7** **8** I can determine the rule of a function given sufficient information. ☐
See Example 15 and Questions 1 and 3

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

- 1** Sketch the graphs of the relations:
a $3y + 2x = 5$ **b** $x - y = 6$ **c** $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{y}{3} = 1$
- 2** Determine the distance between the points with coordinates $(-1, 6)$ and $(2, 4)$.
- 3** Determine the midpoint of the line segment AB joining the points $A(4, 6)$ and $B(-2, 8)$.
- 4** **a** Determine the equation of the straight line which passes through $(1, 3)$ and has gradient -2 .
b Determine the equation of the straight line which passes through $(1, 4)$ and $(3, 8)$.
c Determine the equation of the straight line which is perpendicular to the line with equation $y = -2x + 6$ and which passes through the point $(1, 1)$.
d Determine the equation of the straight line which is parallel to the line with equation $y = 6 - 2x$ and which passes through the point $(1, 1)$.
- 5** If M is the midpoint of XY , determine the coordinates of Y when X and M have the following coordinates:
a $X(-6, 2)$, $M(8, 3)$ **b** $X(-1, -4)$, $M(2, -8)$

- 6** The length of the line segment joining $A(5, 12)$ and $B(10, y)$ is 13 units. determine y .
- 7** Sketch the graph of each of the following. Label any asymptotes and axis intercepts. State the range of each function.
- a** $f(x) = \frac{1}{x} - 3, x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$ **b** $f(x) = \frac{1}{x-2}, x \in (2, \infty)$
- c** $f(x) = \frac{2}{x-1} - 3, x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$ **d** $f(x) = \frac{-3}{2-x} + 4, x \in (2, \infty)$
- e** $f(x) = 1 - \frac{1}{x-1}, x \in \mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$
- 8** Sketch the graph of each of the following:
- a** $f(x) = 2\sqrt{x-3} + 1$ **b** $g(x) = \frac{3}{(x-2)^2} - 1$ **c** $h(x) = \frac{-3}{(x-2)^2} - 1$
- 9** Sketch the graph of each of the following. State the coordinates of the point of zero gradient and the axis intercepts.
- a** $f(x) = -2(x+1)^3$ **b** $g(x) = -2(x-1)^5 + 8$
- c** $h(x) = 2(x-2)^5 + 1$ **d** $f(x) = 4(x-1)^3 - 4$
- 10** The points with coordinates $(1, 6)$ and $(16, 12)$ lie on a curve which has a rule of the form $y = a\sqrt{x} + b$. Determine a and b .
- 11** The points with coordinates $(1, 3)$ and $(3, 7)$ lie on a curve with equation of the form $y = \frac{a}{x} + b$. Determine the values of a and b .
- 12 a** Determine the rule for the image of the graph of $y = -x^2$ under the following sequence of transformations:
- reflection in the y -axis
 - dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis
 - translation 4 units in the positive direction of the x -axis and 6 units in the positive direction of the y -axis.
- b** Determine a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = x^4$ to the graph of $y = 6 - 4(x+1)^4$.
- 13** Identify a sequence of transformations that maps the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x^2}$ onto the graph of $y = \frac{3}{(x-5)^2} + 3$. Use this to sketch the graph of $y = \frac{3}{(x-5)^2} + 3$, stating the equations of asymptotes and the coordinates of axis intercepts.
- 14** Determine a sequence of transformations that takes the graph of $y = 2x^2 - 3$ to the graph of $y = x^2$.
- 15** Determine a sequence of transformations that takes the graph of $y = 2(x-3)^3 + 4$ to the graph of $y = x^3$.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 16** A firm manufacturing jackets is capable of producing 100 jackets per day, but it can only sell all of these if the charge to wholesalers is no more than \$50 per jacket. On the other hand, at the current price of \$75 per jacket, only 50 can be sold per day. Assume that the graph of price, P , against number sold per day, N , is a straight line.

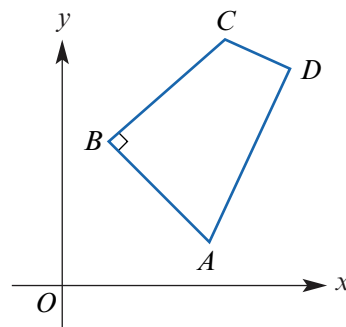
- Sketch the graph of P against N .
- Determine the equation of the straight line.
- Use the equation to determine:
 - the price at which 88 jackets per day could be sold
 - the number of jackets that should be manufactured to sell at \$60 each.

- 17** A new town was built 10 years ago to house the workers of a woollen mill established in a remote country area. Three years after the town was built, it had a population of 12 000 people. Business in the wool trade steadily grew, and eight years after the town was built the population had swelled to 19 240.

- Assuming the population growth can be modelled by a linear relationship, determine a suitable relation for the population, p , in terms of t , the number of years since the town was built.
- Sketch the graph of p against t , and interpret the p -axis intercept.
- Determine the current population of the town.
- Calculate the average rate of growth of the town.

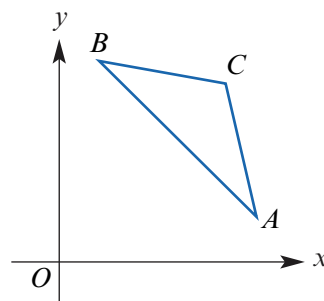
- 18** $ABCD$ is a quadrilateral with angle ABC a right angle. The point D lies on the perpendicular bisector of AB . The coordinates of A and B are $(7, 2)$ and $(2, 5)$ respectively. The equation of line AD is $y = 4x - 26$.

- Determine the equation of the perpendicular bisector of line segment AB .
- Determine the coordinates of point D .
- Determine the gradient of line BC .
- Determine the value of the second coordinate c of the point $C(8, c)$.
- Determine the area of quadrilateral $ABCD$.

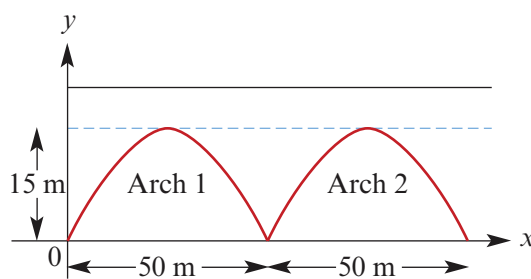


- 19** Triangle ABC is isosceles with $BC = AC$. The coordinates of the vertices are $A(6, 1)$ and $B(2, 8)$.

- Determine the equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB .
- The x -coordinate of C is 3.5. Determine the y -coordinate.
- Determine the length of AB .
- Determine the area of triangle ABC .



- 20** If $A = (-4, 6)$ and $B = (6, -7)$, determine:
- a** the coordinates of the midpoint of AB
 - b** the length of AB
 - c** the distance between A and B
 - d** the equation of AB
 - e** the equation of the perpendicular bisector of AB
 - f** the coordinates of the point P on the line segment AB such that $AP : PB = 3 : 1$
 - g** the coordinates of the point P on the line AB such that $AP : AB = 3 : 1$ and P is closer to point B than to point A .
- 21 a i** Determine the dilation from the x -axis which takes $y = x^2$ to the parabola with its vertex at the origin that passes through the point $(25, 15)$.
- ii** State the rule which reflects this dilated parabola in the x -axis.
- iii** State the rule which takes the reflected parabola of part **ii** to a parabola with x -axis intercepts $(0, 0)$ and $(50, 0)$ and vertex $(25, 15)$.
- iv** State the rule which takes the curve $y = x^2$ to the parabola defined in part **iii**.
- b** The plans for the entrance of a new building involve twin parabolic arches as shown in the diagram.
- i** From the results of part **a**, give the equation for the curve of arch 1.
 - ii** Determine the translation which maps the curve of arch 1 to the curve of arch 2.
 - iii** Determine the equation of the curve of arch 2.
- c** The architect wishes to have flexibility in her planning and so wants to develop an algorithm for determining the equations of the curves when each arch has width m metres and height n metres.
- i** Determine the rule for the transformation which takes the graph of $y = x^2$ to the current arch 1 with these new dimensions.
 - ii** Determine the equation for the curve of arch 1.
 - iii** Determine the equation for the curve of arch 2.



Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- 1 A straight line has gradient $-\frac{1}{2}$ and passes through $(1, 4)$. The equation of the line is

A $y = 2x + 2$

B $y = 2x + 4$

C $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{9}{2}$

D $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 4$

- 2 The line $y = -2x + 4$ passes through a point $(a, 3)$. The value of a is

A $\frac{1}{2}$

B 2

C $-\frac{7}{2}$

D -2

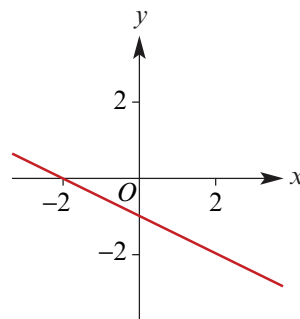
- 3 The gradient of a line that is perpendicular to the line shown could be

A 1

B $\frac{1}{2}$

C $-\frac{1}{2}$

D 2



- 4 The coordinates of the midpoint of AB , where A has coordinates $(1, 7)$ and B has coordinates $(-3, 30)$, are

A $(-2, 3)$

B $(-1, 8)$

C $(-1, 18.5)$

D $(-1, 3)$

- 5 The gradient of the line passing through $(3, -2)$ and $(-1, 10)$ is

A -3

B -2

C $-\frac{1}{3}$

D 4

- 6 If two lines $-2x + y - 3 = 0$ and $ax - 3y + 4 = 0$ are parallel, then a equals

A 6

B 2

C $\frac{1}{3}$

D $\frac{2}{3}$

- 7 A straight line passes through $(-1, -2)$ and $(3, 10)$. The equation of the line is

A $y = 3x - 1$

B $y = 3x - 4$

C $y = 3x + 1$

D $y = \frac{1}{3}x + 9$

- 8 The length of the line segment connecting $(1, 4)$ and $(5, -2)$ is

A 10

B $2\sqrt{13}$

C 12

D 50

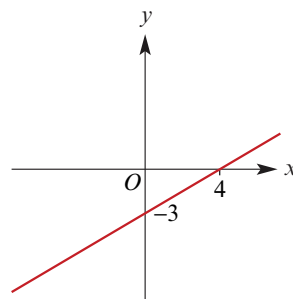
- 9 The function with graph as shown has the rule

A $f(x) = 3x - 3$

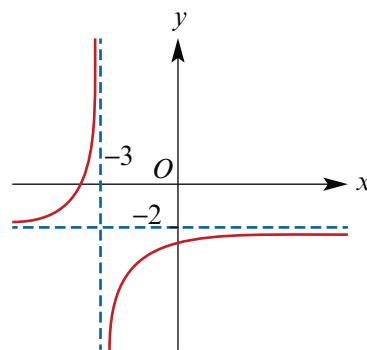
B $f(x) = -\frac{3}{4}x - 3$

C $f(x) = \frac{3}{4}x - 3$

D $f(x) = \frac{4}{3}x - 3$

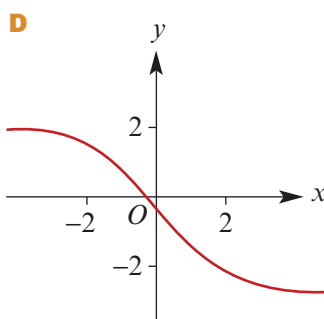
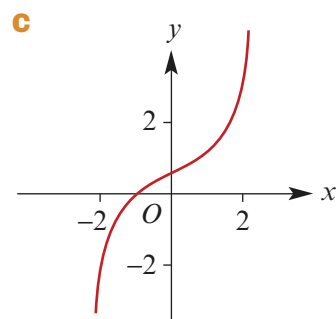
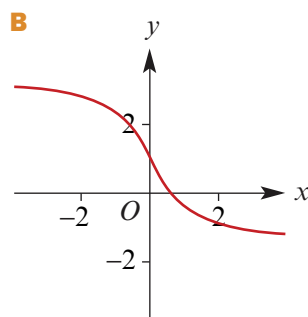
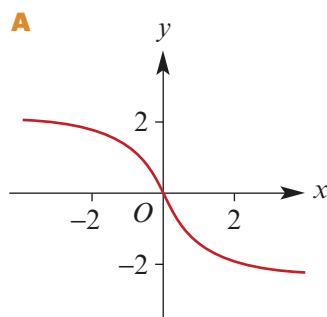
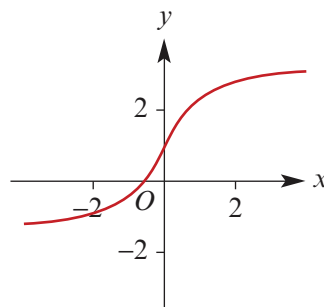


- 10** The midpoint of the line segment joining $(0, -6)$ and $(4, d)$ is
A $\left(-2, \frac{d+6}{2}\right)$ **B** $\left(2, \frac{d+6}{2}\right)$ **C** $\left(\frac{d+6}{2}, 2\right)$ **D** $\left(2, \frac{d-6}{2}\right)$
- 11** The gradient of a line perpendicular to the line through $(3, 0)$ and $(0, -6)$ is
A $\frac{1}{2}$ **B** -2 **C** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **D** 2
- 12** The point $P(3, -4)$ lies on the graph of a function f . The graph of f is translated 3 units up (parallel to the y -axis) and reflected in the x -axis. The coordinates of the final image of P are
A $(6, 4)$ **B** $(3, 1)$ **C** $(3, -1)$ **D** $(-3, 1)$
- 13** The graph of $y = x^3 + 4$ is translated 3 units 'down' and 2 units 'to the right'. The resulting graph has equation
A $y = (x - 2)^3 + 2$ **B** $y = (x - 2)^3 + 1$
C $y = (x - 2)^3 + 5$ **D** $y = (x + 2)^3 + 1$
- 14** The graph of the function with rule $y = x^2$ is reflected in the x -axis and then translated 4 units in the negative direction of the x -axis and 3 units in the negative direction of the y -axis. The rule for the new function is
A $y = -(x - 4)^2 + 3$ **B** $y = -(x - 3)^2 + 4$
C $y = (-x - 4)^2 + 3$ **D** $y = -(x + 4)^2 - 3$
- 15** The graph of $y = \frac{a}{x+b} + c$ is shown on the right.
 Possible values for a , b and c are
A $a = 1, b = 2, c = -3$
B $a = -1, b = -3, c = -2$
C $a = -1, b = 3, c = -2$
D $a = 1, b = 2, c = -3$



- 16** The graph of $y = f(x)$ is shown on the right.

Which one of the following could be the graph of $y = f(-x)$?



- 17** Let $f(x) = 3x - 2$ and $g(x) = x^2 - 4x + 2$. A sequence of transformations that takes the graph of $y = g(x)$ to the graph of $y = g(f(x))$ is
- A** a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis followed by a translation $\frac{2}{3}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis
 - B** a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis followed by a translation 2 units in the negative direction of the x -axis
 - C** a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis followed by a translation $\frac{1}{2}$ unit in the positive direction of the x -axis
 - D** a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis followed by a translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis
 - E** a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis followed by a translation 2 units in the positive direction of the x -axis

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 18** Let $f(x) = x^2 - 4$. The equation $f(x - h) = 5$ has solutions $x = -9$ or $x = -3$ for h equal to
A -12 **B** 0 **C** -6 **D** 8
- 19** The midpoint of the line segment joining the points (m, n) to $(-3, 8.5)$ is $(0, 6)$. the values of m and n are
A $m = 3, n = -2.5$ **B** $m = 4, n = 6$ **C** $m = -3, n = 6.5$ **D** $m = 3, n = 3.5$
- 20** A function f has a rule of the form $f(x) = \frac{a}{x} + k$. The curve of the function passes through the points with coordinates $(3, 11)$ and $(-2, -9)$. The values of a and b are
A $a = 36, k = -9$ **B** $a = 24, k = 3$ **C** $a = 48, k = 11$ **D** $a = 24, k = -9$
- 21** A transformations is defined by the following sequence of transformations
 ■ a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
 ■ a translation of h units in the positive direction of the x -axis
 ■ a translation of k units in the positive direction of the y -axis
 Where h and k are positive integers. The point $(1, 2)$ is mapped to $(7, 7)$ under this transformation. The values of h and k are
A $h = 1, k = 5$ **B** $h = 6, k = 3$
C $h = 4, k = 5$ **D** $h = 3, k = 2$
- 22** The points $(5, 9)$, $(8, 12)$ and $(13, 15)$ lie on a curve with equation $y = a\sqrt{x-h} + k$. The values of a, h and k are
A $a = 1, h = 5, k = 7$ **B** $a = 1, h = 6, k = 4$
C $a = 3, h = 4, k = 6$ **D** $a = 2, h = 1, k = 4$
- 23** The points $A(1, 3)$ and $C(5, 1)$ are the opposite vertices of a rectangle $ABCD$. The other two vertices lie on the line $y = 2x + c$. The value of c is
A 2 **B** -4 **C** 3 **D** $-\frac{1}{4}$
- 24** The points $A(4, a)$, $B(5, 1)$ and $C(-1, 5)$ with $a > 0$ are such the line AC is perpendicular to the line AB . The value of a is
A 1 **B** -4 **C** -5 **D** 6

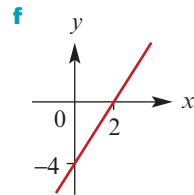
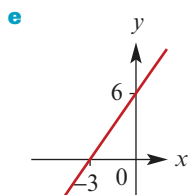
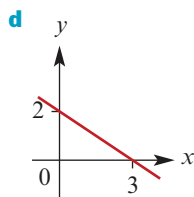
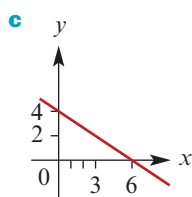
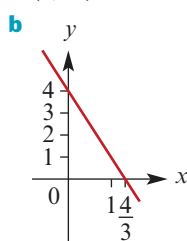
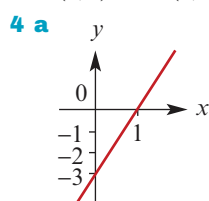
Answers

Exercise B1

1 **a** $\sqrt{205}$ **b** $(1, -\frac{1}{2})$ **c** $-\frac{13}{6}$
d $13x + 6y = 10$ **e** $13x + 6y = 43$
f $13y - 6x = -\frac{25}{2}$

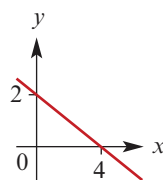
2 **a** $(3, 7\frac{1}{2})$ **b** $(-\frac{5}{2}, -2)$ **c** $(\frac{3}{2}, \frac{1}{2})$

3 **a** $(4, 7)$ **b** $(5, -2)$ **c** $(2, 19)$

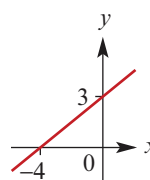


5 **a** $y = 2x - 6$ **b** $y = -3x - 5$
c $3y - 4x = 5$ **d** $y = 2x + 1$
6 **a** $\frac{y}{2} - \frac{x}{3} = 1$ **b** $\frac{x}{4} + \frac{y}{6} = 1$ **c** $\frac{x}{6} - \frac{y}{2} = 1$

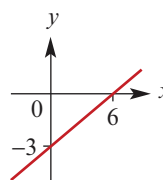
7 **a** $\frac{x}{4} + \frac{y}{2} = 1$



b $\frac{y}{3} - \frac{x}{4} = 1$



c $\frac{x}{6} - \frac{y}{3} = 1$



8 $C = \frac{11}{200}n + 2$, \$57

9 **a** $C = 5n + 175$ **b** Yes **c** \$175

10 **a** $\sqrt{5} \approx 2.236$ **b** $\sqrt{20} \approx 4.472$ **c** 5

11 **a** **i** $y = 2x + 4$ **ii** $2y + x = 13$
b **i** $y = -2x + 7$ **ii** $2y - x = 4$

12 $y = 2x - 3$

13 $y = -5$ or $y = 3$

14 **a** 32.01° **b** 153.43° **c** 56.31° **d** 120.96°

15 45°

16 $a = -12$ or $a = 8$

17 **a** $y = 3x - 6$ **b** $(2, 0)$

18 $k = 5$ and $h = 4$, or $k = -2$ and $h = -3$

19 **a** $a + 2$ **b** $\frac{4}{5}$

20 **a** $m = \frac{1}{2}$ **b** $(5, 7)$ **c** $AB = \sqrt{13}$, $AC = 2\sqrt{13}$

21 **a** $(2, 3)$
b $y + 5x = 13$
c **i** $2y = 3x - 13$ **ii** $(3, -2)$ **iii** $(1, 8)$

Exercise B2

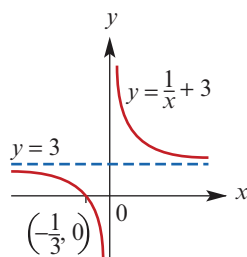
1 a $(-1, 3)$ b $(-5, 10)$ c $(-5, 7)$ d $(-3, 6)$

2 a $y = \frac{1}{x-2} - 3$ b $y = \frac{1}{x+2} + 3$

c $y = \frac{1}{x - \frac{1}{2}} + 4 = \frac{2}{2x-1} + 4$

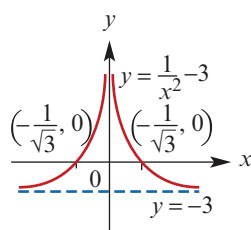
3 a Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$



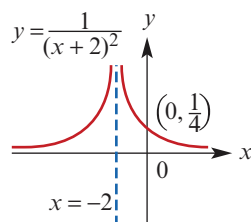
b Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

Range = $(-3, \infty)$



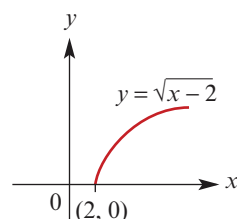
c Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-2\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$



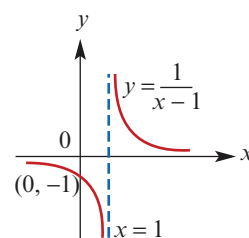
d Domain = $[2, \infty)$

Range = $[0, \infty)$



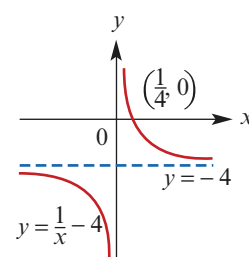
e Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$



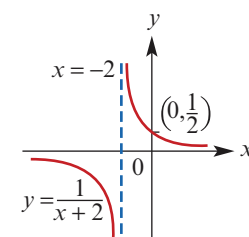
f Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-4\}$



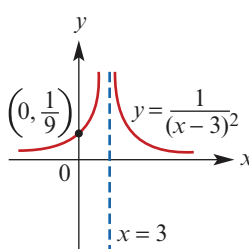
g Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-2\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$



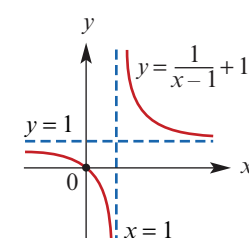
h Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$

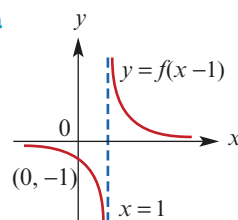


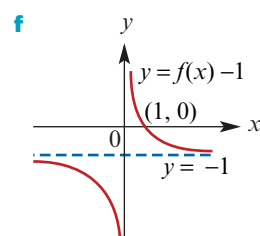
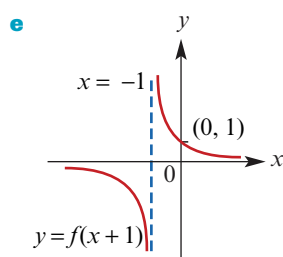
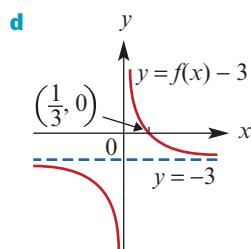
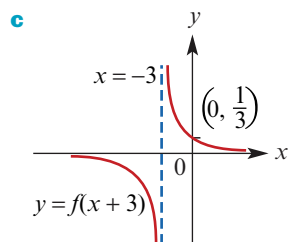
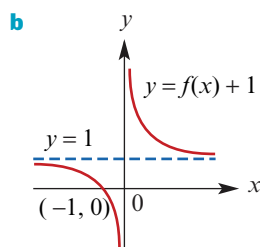
i Domain = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$

Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{1\}$



4 a





- 5 a** Translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 5, y)$
b Translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, y + 2)$
c Translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, y + 4)$
d Translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, y + 3)$
e Translation $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 3, y)$
- 6 a i** $y = (x - 7)^{\frac{1}{4}} + 1$ **ii** $y = (x + 2)^{\frac{1}{4}} - 6$
iii $y = (x - 2)^{\frac{1}{4}} - 3$ **iv** $y = (x + 1)^{\frac{1}{4}} + 4$
b i $y = \sqrt[3]{x - 7} + 1$ **ii** $y = \sqrt[3]{x + 2} - 6$
iii $y = \sqrt[3]{x - 2} - 3$ **iv** $y = \sqrt[3]{x + 1} + 4$

c i $y = \frac{1}{(x - 7)^3} + 1$ **ii** $y = \frac{1}{(x + 2)^3} - 6$

iii $y = \frac{1}{(x - 2)^3} - 3$ **iv** $y = \frac{1}{(x + 1)^3} + 4$

d i $y = \frac{1}{(x - 7)^4} + 1$ **ii** $y = \frac{1}{(x + 2)^4} - 6$

iii $y = \frac{1}{(x - 2)^4} - 3$ **iv** $y = \frac{1}{(x + 1)^4} + 4$

7 a $y = (x + 1)^2 + 5$ **b** $y = 2x^2$

c $y = \frac{1}{(x - 6)^2} + 1$

8 a $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 2, y + 3)$

b $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 2, y - 3)$

c $(x, y) \rightarrow (x - 4, y + 2)$

Exercise B3

1 a $y = \frac{3}{x}$

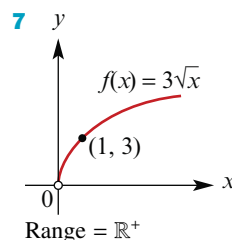
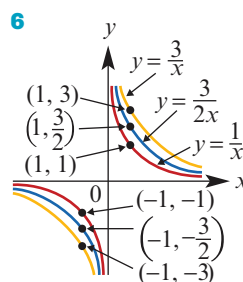
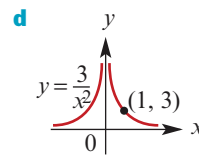
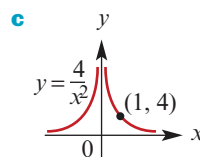
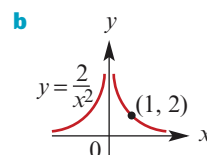
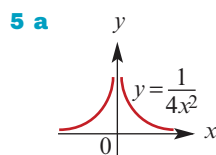
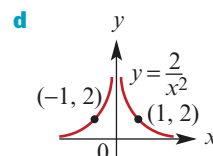
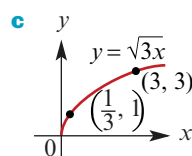
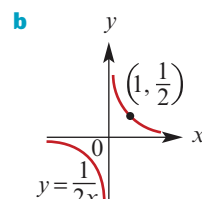
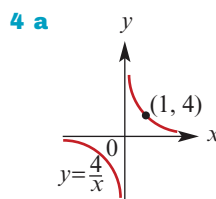
b $y = \frac{3}{x}$

2 a $y = 2\sqrt{x}$

b $y = \sqrt{\frac{x}{2}}$

3 a $y = 2x^3$

b $y = \frac{x^3}{8}$

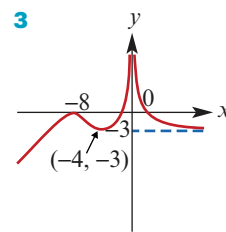
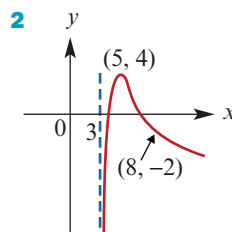


- 8 a** $\frac{1}{5}$ **b** $\sqrt{5}$
9 a Dilation of factor 5 from the x -axis
b Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the y -axis
c Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis
d Dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis

- 10 a i** $y = 4x^2$ **ii** $y = \frac{2}{3}x^2$
iii $y = 4x^2$ **iv** $y = \frac{1}{25}x^2$
b i $y = \frac{4}{x^2}$ **ii** $y = \frac{2}{3x^2}$
iii $y = \frac{1}{4x^2}$ **iv** $y = \frac{25}{x^2}$
c i $y = 4\sqrt[3]{x}$ **ii** $y = \frac{2}{3} \times \sqrt[3]{x}$
iii $y = \sqrt[3]{2x}$ **iv** $y = \sqrt[3]{\frac{x}{5}}$
d i $y = \frac{4}{x^4}$ **ii** $y = \frac{2}{3x^4}$
iii $y = \frac{1}{16x^4}$ **iv** $y = \frac{625}{x^4}$
e i $y = 4x^{\frac{1}{5}}$ **ii** $y = \frac{2}{3}x^{\frac{1}{5}}$
iii $y = (2x)^{\frac{1}{5}}$ **iv** $y = \left(\frac{x}{5}\right)^{\frac{1}{5}}$
11 a $y = -(x-1)^2$ **b** $y = (x+1)^2$
12 Reflection in the y -axis
13 a i $y = -x^3$ **ii** $y = -x^3$
b i $y = -\sqrt[3]{x}$ **ii** $y = -\sqrt[3]{x}$
c i $y = \frac{-1}{x^3}$ **ii** $y = \frac{-1}{x^3}$
d i $y = \frac{-1}{x^4}$ **ii** $y = \frac{1}{x^4}$
e i $y = -x^{\frac{1}{4}}$ **ii** $y = (-x)^{\frac{1}{4}}$

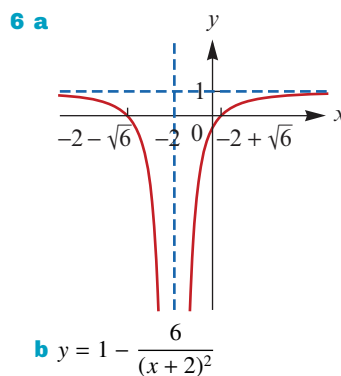
Exercise B4

- 1 a i** $y = 2(x-2)^2 - 3$ **ii** $y = \left(\frac{x+2}{3}\right)^2 - 4$
iii $y = 2x^2$
b i $y = 2\sqrt[3]{x-2} - 3$ **ii** $y = \sqrt[3]{\frac{x+2}{3}} - 4$
iii $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x}$
c i $y = \frac{2}{(x-2)^2} - 3$ **ii** $y = \frac{9}{(x+2)^2} - 4$
iii $y = \frac{2}{x^2}$



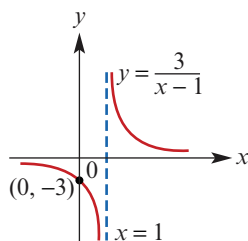
- 4 a i** $y = -2(x-3)^2 - 4$ **ii** $y = -2(x-3)^2 + 4$
iii $y = -2(x-3)^2 - 4$ **iv** $y = -2(x-3)^2 - 8$
v $y = -2(x-3)^2 + 8$ **vi** $y = -2(x-3)^2 + 8$
b i $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} - 4$ **ii** $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} + 4$
iii $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} - 4$ **iv** $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} - 8$
v $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} + 8$ **vi** $y = -2\sqrt[3]{x-3} + 8$
c i $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} - 4$ **ii** $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} + 4$
iii $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} - 4$ **iv** $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} - 8$
v $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} + 8$ **vi** $y = \frac{-2}{x-3} + 8$
d i $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} - 4$ **ii** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} + 4$
iii $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} - 4$ **iv** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} - 8$
v $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} + 8$ **vi** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^3} + 8$
e i $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} - 4$ **ii** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} + 4$
iii $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} - 4$ **iv** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} - 8$
v $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} + 8$ **vi** $y = \frac{-2}{(x-3)^2} + 8$

5 $y = -\sqrt{\frac{x+12}{3}}$



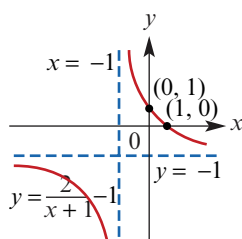
Exercise B5

1 a



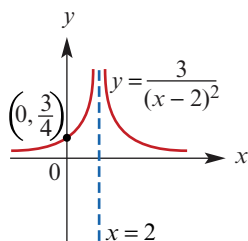
Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

b



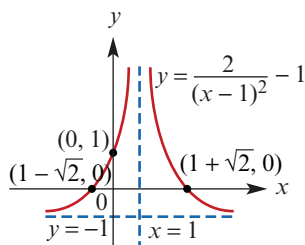
Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{-1\}$

c



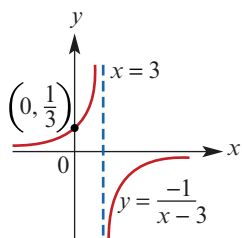
Range = $\mathbb{R}^+$

d



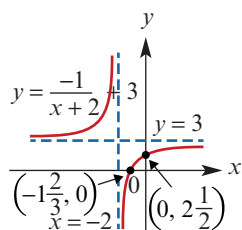
Range = $(-1, \infty)$

e



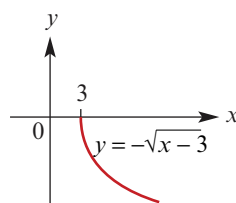
Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

f



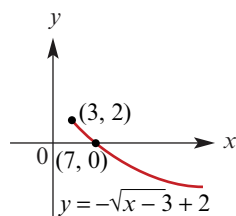
Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{3\}$

2 a



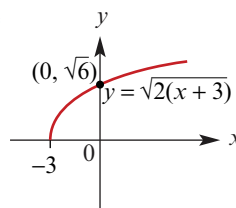
Range = $(-\infty, 0]$

b



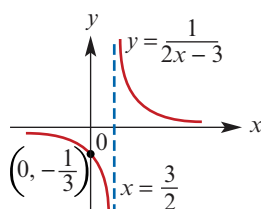
Range = $(-\infty, 2]$

c



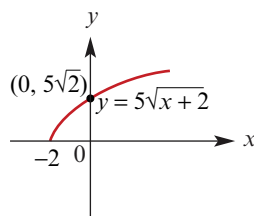
Range = $[0, \infty)$

d



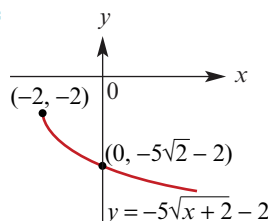
Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$

e



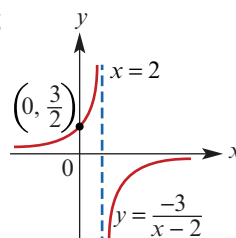
Range = $[0, \infty)$

f

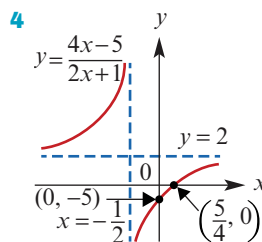
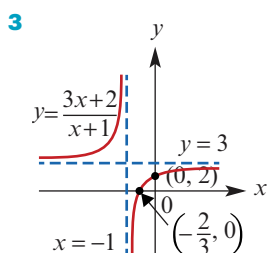
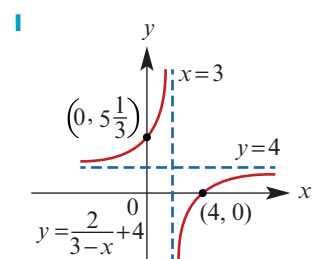
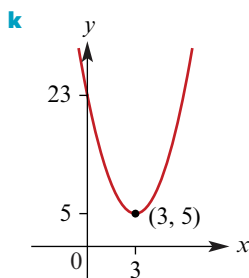
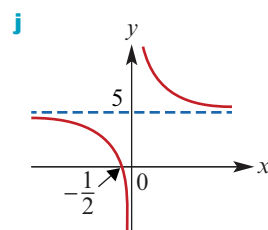
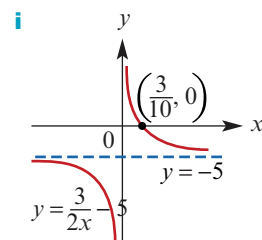
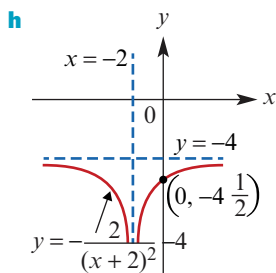


Range = $(-\infty, -2]$

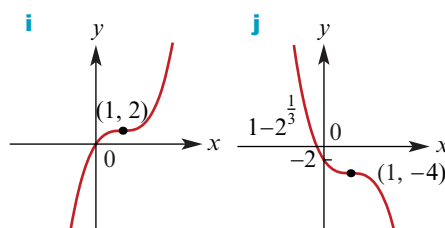
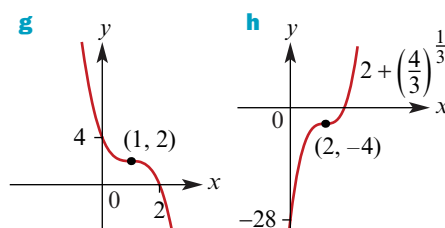
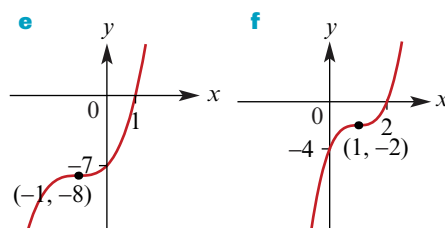
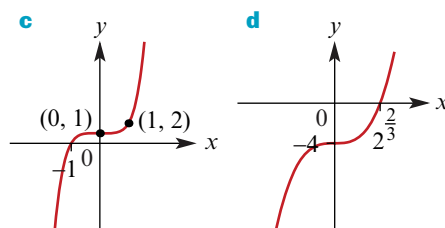
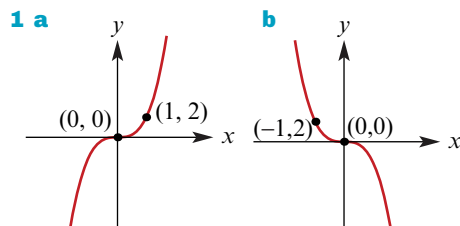
g

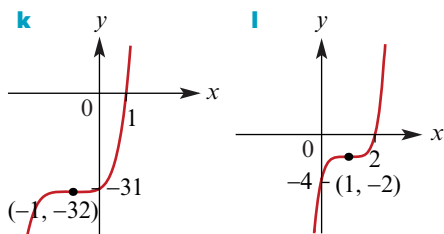


Range = $\mathbb{R} \setminus \{0\}$



Exercise B6





2 $a = -3$, $h = 0$, $k = 4$

3 a $y = 3x^3$ b $y = (x+1)^3 + 1$
 c $y = -(x-2)^3 - 3$ d $y = 2(x+1)^3 - 2$

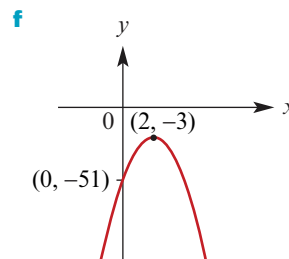
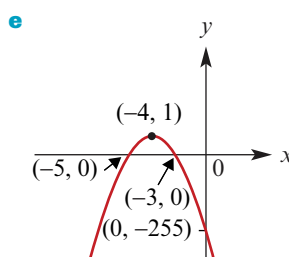
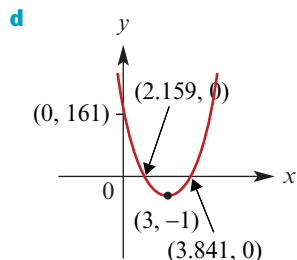
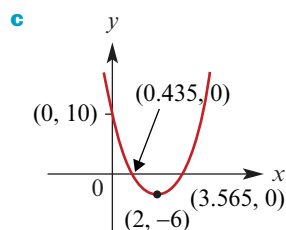
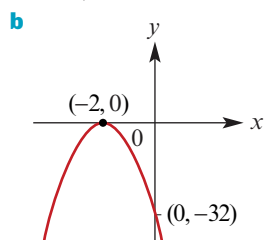
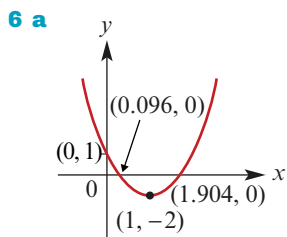
e $y = \frac{x^3}{27}$

4 a $y = \frac{(3-x)^3}{27} + 1$

b Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, reflection in the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the left and 4 units up

5 a $y = \frac{(x+2)^4}{16} - 1$

b Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, reflection in the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the left and 5 units up



7 $a = -\frac{9}{16}$, $h = -2$, $k = 3$

8 $a = 16$, $h = 1$, $k = 7$

Exercise B7

1 a $\frac{9}{2}$, $b = -\frac{1}{2}$

2 $A = 1$, $b = -1$, $B = 2$

3 a $\frac{5}{2}$, $b = -\frac{3}{2}$

4 $A = 2$, $B = 3$

5 $A = 2$, $B = -1$

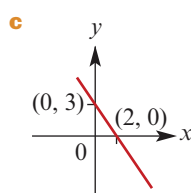
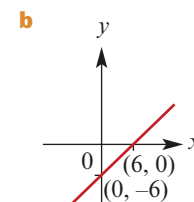
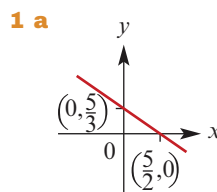
6 $A = 8$, $b = 2$, $B = -3$

7 $a = -2$, $b = 1$

8 $a = -6$, $b = -2$

Appendix B review

Short-response questions



2 $\sqrt{13}$

3 (1, 7)

4 a $y = -2x + 5$

b $y = 2x + 2$

c $y = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{1}{2}$

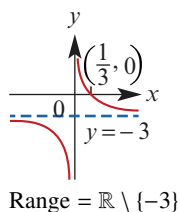
d $y = -2x + 3$

5 a (22, 4)

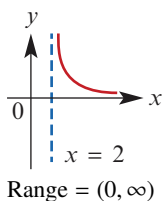
b (5, -12)

6 $y = 24$ or $y = 0$

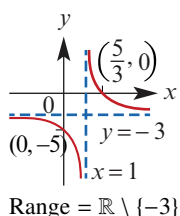
7 a



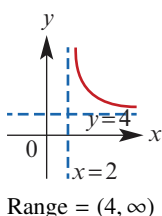
b



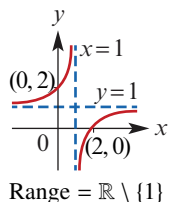
c



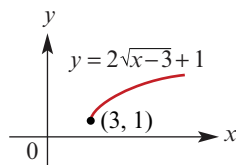
d



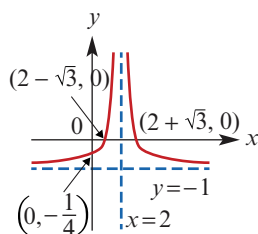
e



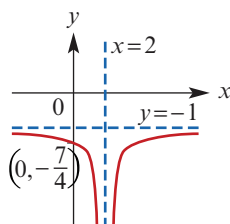
8 a



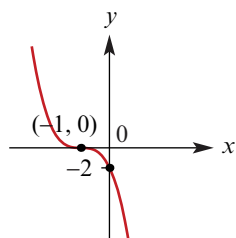
b



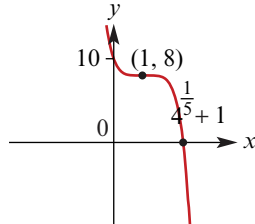
c



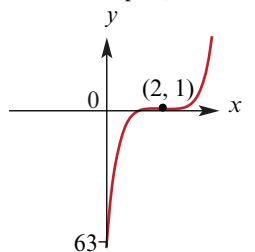
9 a



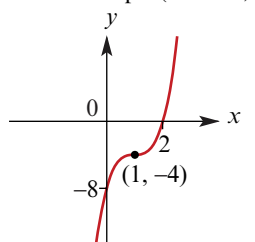
b



c



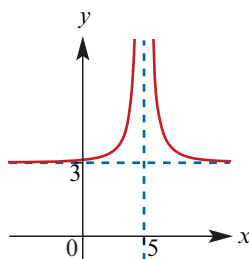
d


 10 $a = 2$, $b = 4$

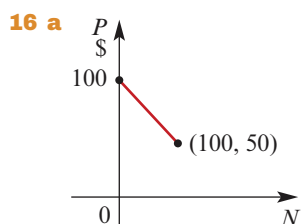
 11 $a = -6$, $b = 9$

 12 a $y = 6 - \frac{(x-4)^2}{4}$

 b Reflection in the x -axis, dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis, then translation 1 unit to the right and 6 units up

 13 Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, then translation 5 units to the right and 3 units up

 14 Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis, then translation $\frac{3}{2}$ units up

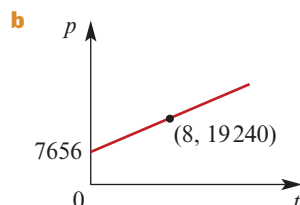
 15 Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis, then translation 3 units to the left and 2 units down



b $P = -\frac{1}{2}N + 100$

c i \$56 **ii** $N = 80$

17 a $p = 1448t + 7656$



c 22 136 **d** 1448 people per year

18 a $y = \frac{5}{3}x - 4$ **b** $\left(\frac{66}{7}, \frac{82}{7}\right)$

c $\frac{5}{3}$ **d** 15 **e** $\frac{629}{14}$ square units

19 a $y = \frac{4}{7}x + \frac{31}{14}$ **b** $\frac{59}{14}$ **c** $\sqrt{65}$

d $\frac{65}{28}$ square units

20 a $(1, -\frac{1}{2})$ **b** $\sqrt{269}$ **c** $\sqrt{269}$

d $y = -\frac{13}{10}x + \frac{4}{5}$ **e** $y = \frac{10}{13}x - \frac{33}{26}$

f $\left(\frac{7}{2}, -\frac{15}{4}\right)$ **g** $(26, -33)$

21 a i $\frac{3}{125}$ **ii** $(x, y) \rightarrow (x, -y)$

iii $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 25, y + 15)$

iv $(x, y) \rightarrow \left(x + 25, \frac{-3}{125}y + 15\right)$

b i $y = \frac{-3}{125}(x - 25)^2 + 15$

ii $(x, y) \rightarrow (x + 50, y)$

iii $y = \frac{-3}{125}(x - 75)^2 + 15$

c i $(x, y) \rightarrow \left(x + \frac{m}{2}, -\frac{4n}{m^2}y + n\right)$

ii $y = -\frac{4n}{m^2}\left(x - \frac{m}{2}\right)^2 + n$

iii $y = -\frac{4n}{m^2}\left(x - \frac{3m}{2}\right)^2 + n$

Multiple-choice questions

- 1** C **2** A **3** D **4** C **5** A **6** A **7** C
8 B **9** C **10** D **11** C **12** B **13** B **14** D
15 D **16** B **17** A **18** C **19** D **20** B **21** B
22 C **23** B **24** D

Trigonometric functions

Chapter contents

- ▶ **C1** Measuring angles in degrees and radians
- ▶ **C2** Defining sine, cosine and tangent
- ▶ **C3** Further symmetry properties and the Pythagorean identity
- ▶ **C4** Graphs of sine and cosine
- ▶ **C5** Solution of trigonometric equations
- ▶ **C6** Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h)$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h)$
- ▶ **C7** Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm k$
- ▶ **C8** Determining rules for graphs of trigonometric functions
- ▶ **C9** The tangent function
- ▶ **C10** Applications of trigonometric functions

Following on from our study of polynomial functions, we meet a further three important functions in this chapter. Again we use the notation developed in Chapter 1 for describing functions and their properties.

In this chapter we revise and extend our consideration of the functions sine, cosine and tangent. The first two of these functions have the real numbers as their domain, and the third the real numbers without the odd multiples of $\frac{\pi}{2}$.

An important property of these three functions is that they are periodic. That is, they each repeat their values in regular intervals or periods. In general, a function f is **periodic** if there is a positive constant a such that $f(x + a) = f(x)$. The sine and cosine functions each have period 2π , while the tangent function has period π .

The sine and cosine functions are used to model wave motion, and are therefore central to the application of mathematics to any problem in which periodic motion is involved – from the motion of the tides and ocean waves to sound waves and modern telecommunications.

C1 Measuring angles in degrees and radians

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to use radians and degrees for the measurement of angles.
- ▶ To be able to convert radians to degrees, and vice versa.

The diagram shows a **unit circle**, i.e. a circle of radius 1 unit.

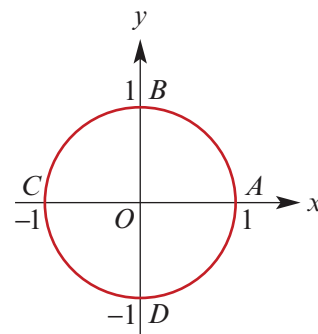
$$\begin{aligned}\text{The circumference of the unit circle} &= 2\pi \times 1 \\ &= 2\pi \text{ units}\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the distance in an anticlockwise direction around the circle from

$$A \text{ to } B = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ units}$$

$$A \text{ to } C = \pi \text{ units}$$

$$A \text{ to } D = \frac{3\pi}{2} \text{ units}$$

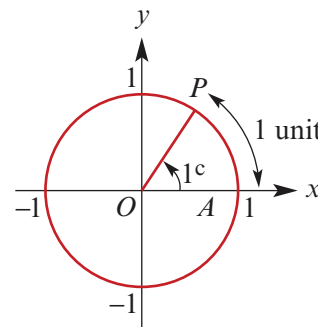


Definition of a radian

In moving around the circle a distance of 1 unit from A to P , the angle POA is defined. The measure of this angle is 1 radian.

One **radian** (written 1^c) is the angle subtended at the centre of the unit circle by an arc of length 1 unit.

Note: Angles formed by moving **anticlockwise** around the unit circle are defined as **positive**; those formed by moving **clockwise** are defined as **negative**.



Degrees and radians

The angle, in radians, swept out in one revolution of a circle is $2\pi^c$.

$$2\pi^c = 360^\circ$$

$$\therefore \pi^c = 180^\circ$$

$$\therefore 1^c = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \quad \text{or} \quad 1^\circ = \frac{\pi^c}{180}$$



Example 1

Convert 30° to radians.

Solution

$$1^\circ = \frac{\pi^c}{180}$$

$$\therefore 30^\circ = \frac{30 \times \pi}{180} = \frac{\pi^c}{6}$$

Explanation

Multiply by $\frac{\pi}{180}$ and simplify by cancelling.

**Example 2**

Convert $\frac{\pi^c}{4}$ to degrees.

Solution

$$1^c = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi}$$

$$\therefore \frac{\pi^c}{4} = \frac{\pi \times 180}{4 \times \pi} = 45^\circ$$

Explanation

Multiply by $\frac{180}{\pi}$ and simplify by cancelling.

Note: Often the symbol for radians, ^{c} , is omitted.

For example, the angle 45° is written as $\frac{\pi}{4}$ rather than $\frac{\pi^c}{4}$.

Summary C1

- One **radian** (written 1^c) is the angle subtended at the centre of the unit circle by an arc of length 1 unit.
- To convert:
 - degrees to radians, multiply by $\frac{\pi}{180}$
 - radians to degrees, multiply by $\frac{180}{\pi}$.

Exercise C1**Example 1**

1 Express the following angles in radian measure in terms of π :

a 50°	b 136°	c 250°
d 340°	e 420°	f 490°

Example 2

2 Express, in degrees, the angles with the following radian measures:

a $\frac{\pi}{3}$	b $\frac{5\pi}{6}$	c $\frac{4\pi}{3}$
d $\frac{7\pi}{9}$	e 3.5π	f $\frac{7\pi}{5}$

3 Use a calculator to convert each of the following angles from radians to degrees:

a 0.8	b 1.64	c 2.5
d 3.96	e 4.18	f 5.95

4 Use a calculator to express each of the following in radian measure. (Give your answer correct to two decimal places.)

a 37°	b 74°	c 115°
d 122.25°	e 340°	f 132.5°

C2 Defining sine, cosine and tangent

Learning intentions

- ▶ To be able to work with the definitions of the trigonometric functions sine and cosine.
- ▶ To be able to work with the symmetry properties of the trigonometric functions.
- ▶ To be able to work with exact values of the trigonometric functions.

The point P on the unit circle corresponding to an angle θ is written $P(\theta)$. The x -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ is determined by the angle θ . Similarly, the y -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ is determined by the angle θ . So we can define two functions, called sine and cosine, as follows:

The x -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ is given by

$$x = \cos \theta, \quad \text{for } \theta \in \mathbb{R}$$

The y -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ is given by

$$y = \sin \theta, \quad \text{for } \theta \in \mathbb{R}$$

These functions are usually written in an abbreviated form as follows:

$$x = \cos \theta \quad y = \sin \theta$$

Hence the coordinates of $P(\theta)$ are $(\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$.

Note: Adding 2π to the angle results in a return to the same point on the unit circle. Thus $\cos(2\pi + \theta) = \cos \theta$ and $\sin(2\pi + \theta) = \sin \theta$.

Again consider the unit circle.

If we draw a tangent to the unit circle at A , then the y -coordinate of C , the point of intersection of the line OP and the tangent, is called **tangent** θ (abbreviated to $\tan \theta$).

By considering the similar triangles OPD and OCA :

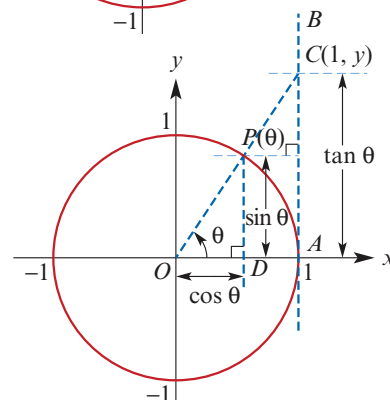
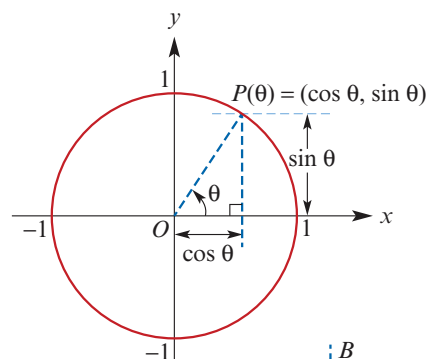
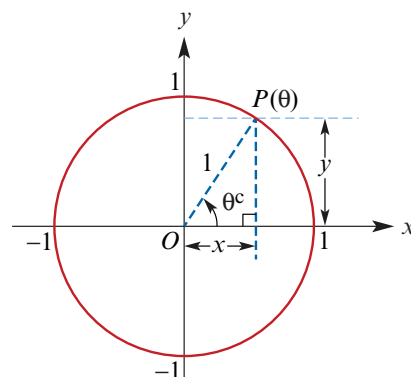
$$\frac{\tan \theta}{1} = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

$$\therefore \tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$$

Note that $\tan \theta$ is undefined when $\cos \theta = 0$. Hence $\tan \theta$ is undefined when

$$\theta = \pm \frac{\pi}{2}, \pm \frac{3\pi}{2}, \pm \frac{5\pi}{2}, \dots$$

Note: Adding π to the angle does not change the line OP . Thus $\tan(\pi + \theta) = \tan \theta$.



From the periodicity of the trigonometric functions:

- $\sin(2k\pi + \theta) = \sin \theta$, for all integers k
- $\cos(2k\pi + \theta) = \cos \theta$, for all integers k
- $\tan(k\pi + \theta) = \tan \theta$, for all integers k .



Example 3

Evaluate each of the following:

a $\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$

b $\sin\left(-\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$

c $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right)$

d $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

e $\cos\left(\frac{23\pi}{2}\right)$

f $\sin\left(\frac{55\pi}{2}\right)$

g $\tan(55\pi)$

h $\tan\left(\frac{15\pi}{2}\right)$

Solution

a $\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -1$

b $\sin\left(-\frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 1$

c $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{2}\right) = \cos\left(2\pi + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$

d $\cos\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right) = 0$

e $\cos\left(\frac{23\pi}{2}\right) = \cos\left(10\pi + \frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = 0$

f $\sin\left(\frac{55\pi}{2}\right) = \sin\left(26\pi + \frac{3\pi}{2}\right) = -1$

g $\tan(55\pi) = 0$

h $\tan\left(\frac{15\pi}{2}\right)$ is undefined

Explanation

since $P\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, -1)$.

since $P\left(-\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, 1)$.

since $P\left(\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, 1)$.

since $P\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, -1)$.

since $P\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, -1)$.

since $P\left(\frac{3\pi}{2}\right)$ has coordinates $(0, -1)$.

since $\tan(k\pi) = 0$, for any integer k .

since $\tan\left(\frac{k\pi}{2}\right)$ is undefined for any odd integer k .



Example 4

Evaluate using a calculator. (Give answers to two decimal places.)

a $\tan 1.3$

b $\sin 1.8$

c $\cos(-2.6)$

d $\sin 3.8$

e $\tan(-2.8)$

f $\tan 59^\circ$

g $\tan 138^\circ$

Solution

a $\tan 1.3 = 3.60$

b $\sin 1.8 = 0.97$

c $\cos(-2.6) = -0.86$

d $\sin 3.8 = -0.61$

e $\tan(-2.8) = 0.36$

f $\tan 59^\circ = 1.66$

g $\tan 138^\circ = -0.90$

Explanation

Your calculator should be in radian mode for **a–e** and in degree mode for **f** and **g**.

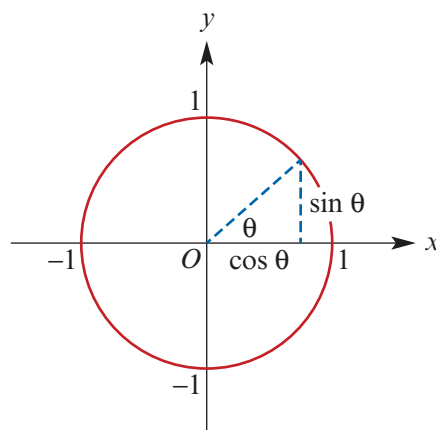
Exact values of trigonometric functions

A calculator can be used to determine the values of the trigonometric functions for different values of θ . For many values of θ the calculator gives an approximation. We consider some values of θ such that $\sin$, $\cos$ and $\tan$ can be calculated exactly.

Exact values for 0 (0°) and $\frac{\pi}{2}$ (90°)

From the unit circle:

$$\begin{array}{ll} \sin 0^\circ = 0 & \sin 90^\circ = 1 \\ \cos 0^\circ = 1 & \cos 90^\circ = 0 \\ \tan 0^\circ = 0 & \tan 90^\circ \text{ is undefined} \end{array}$$

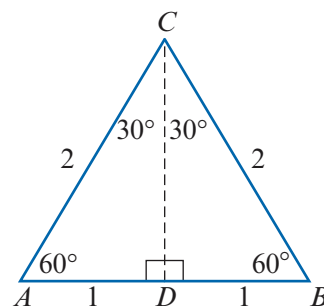


Exact values for $\frac{\pi}{6}$ (30°) and $\frac{\pi}{3}$ (60°)

Consider an equilateral triangle ABC of side length 2 units.

In $\triangle ACD$, by Pythagoras' theorem, $CD = \sqrt{AC^2 - AD^2} = \sqrt{3}$.

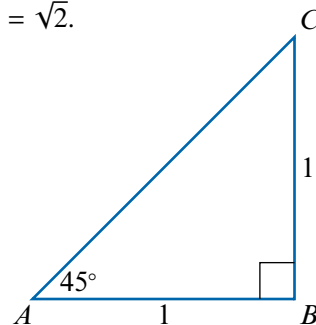
$$\begin{array}{ll} \sin 30^\circ = \frac{AD}{AC} = \frac{1}{2} & \sin 60^\circ = \frac{CD}{AC} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \\ \cos 30^\circ = \frac{CD}{AC} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} & \cos 60^\circ = \frac{AD}{AC} = \frac{1}{2} \\ \tan 30^\circ = \frac{AD}{CD} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} & \tan 60^\circ = \frac{CD}{AD} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{1} = \sqrt{3} \end{array}$$



Exact values for $\frac{\pi}{4}$ (45°)

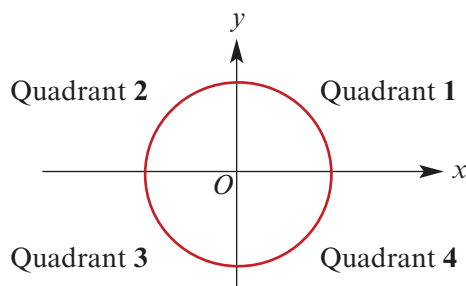
For the triangle ABC shown on the right, we have $AC = \sqrt{1^2 + 1^2} = \sqrt{2}$.

$$\begin{array}{l} \sin 45^\circ = \frac{BC}{AC} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \cos 45^\circ = \frac{AB}{AC} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \\ \tan 45^\circ = \frac{BC}{AB} = 1 \end{array}$$



Symmetry properties of trigonometric functions

The coordinate axes divide the unit circle into four quadrants. The quadrants can be numbered, anticlockwise from the positive direction of the x -axis, as shown.



Using symmetry, we can determine relationships between the trigonometric functions for angles in different quadrants:

Quadrant 2

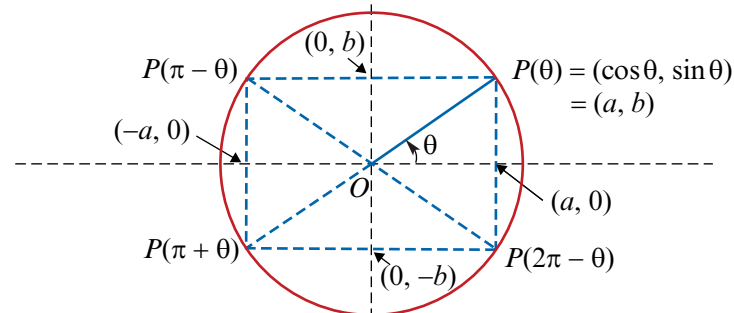
By symmetry:

$$\sin(\pi - \theta) = b = \sin \theta$$

$$\cos(\pi - \theta) = -a = -\cos \theta$$

$$\tan(\pi - \theta) = \frac{b}{-a} = -\tan \theta$$

Quadrant 1



Quadrant 3

$$\sin(\pi + \theta) = -b = -\sin \theta$$

$$\cos(\pi + \theta) = -a = -\cos \theta$$

$$\tan(\pi + \theta) = \frac{-b}{-a} = \tan \theta$$

Quadrant 4

$$\sin(2\pi - \theta) = -b = -\sin \theta$$

$$\cos(2\pi - \theta) = a = \cos \theta$$

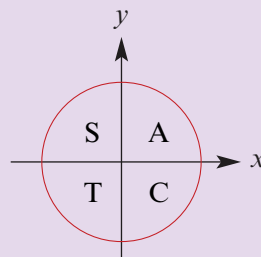
$$\tan(2\pi - \theta) = \frac{-b}{a} = -\tan \theta$$

Note: These relationships are true for all values of θ .

Signs of trigonometric functions

Using the symmetry properties, the signs of $\sin$, $\cos$ and $\tan$ for the four quadrants can be summarised as follows:

1st quadrant	all are positive	(A)
2nd quadrant	$\sin$ is positive	(S)
3rd quadrant	$\tan$ is positive	(T)
4th quadrant	$\cos$ is positive	(C)



Negative of angles

By symmetry:

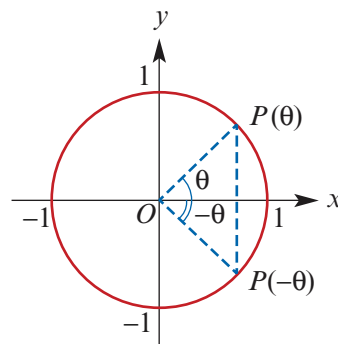
$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin \theta$$

$$\cos(-\theta) = \cos \theta$$

$$\tan(-\theta) = \frac{-\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = -\tan \theta$$

Therefore:

- sin is an odd function
- cos is an even function
- tan is an odd function.



Example 5

Evaluate:

a $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$

b $\sin\left(\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$

c $\cos\left(\frac{200\pi}{3}\right)$

d $\tan\left(\frac{52\pi}{6}\right)$

Solution

a $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$

$$= \cos\left(\pi + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$= -\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

b $\sin\left(\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$

$$= \sin\left(2\pi - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$$

$$= -\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}$$

c $\cos\left(\frac{200\pi}{3}\right)$

$$= \cos\left(66\pi + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= \cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= \cos\left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= -\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2}$$

d $\tan\left(\frac{52\pi}{6}\right)$

$$= \tan\left(8\pi + \frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= \tan\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= \tan\left(\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= -\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$= -\sqrt{3}$$



Example 6

If $\sin x = 0.6$, determine the value of:

a $\sin(\pi - x)$

b $\sin(\pi + x)$

c $\sin(2\pi - x)$

d $\sin(-x)$

Solution

a $\sin(\pi - x)$

$$= \sin x$$

$$= 0.6$$

b $\sin(\pi + x)$

$$= -\sin x$$

$$= -0.6$$

c $\sin(2\pi - x)$

$$= -\sin x$$

$$= -0.6$$

d $\sin(-x)$

$$= -\sin x$$

$$= -0.6$$

**Example 7**

If $\cos x^\circ = 0.8$, determine the value of:

a $\cos(180 - x)^\circ$ **b** $\cos(180 + x)^\circ$ **c** $\cos(360 - x)^\circ$ **d** $\cos(-x)^\circ$

Solution

a $\cos(180 - x)^\circ$	b $\cos(180 + x)^\circ$	c $\cos(360 - x)^\circ$	d $\cos(-x)^\circ$
$= -\cos x^\circ$	$= -\cos x^\circ$	$= \cos x^\circ$	$= \cos x^\circ$
$= -0.8$	$= -0.8$	$= 0.8$	$= 0.8$

Summary C2

■ $P(\theta) = (\cos \theta, \sin \theta)$

■ $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$ for $\cos \theta \neq 0$

■ The trigonometric functions are periodic:

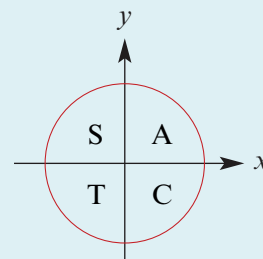
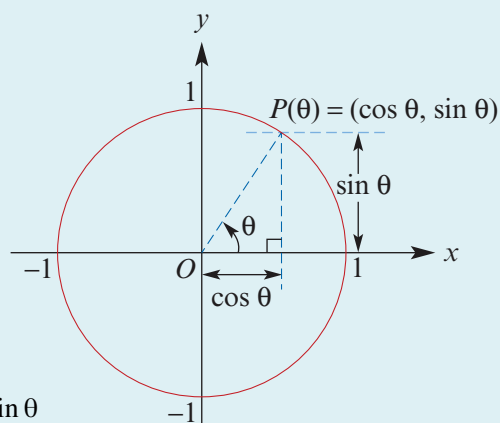
- $\sin(2\pi + \theta) = \sin \theta$
- $\cos(2\pi + \theta) = \cos \theta$
- $\tan(\pi + \theta) = \tan \theta$

■ Negative of angles:

- $\sin$ is an odd function, i.e. $\sin(-\theta) = -\sin \theta$
- $\cos$ is an even function, i.e. $\cos(-\theta) = \cos \theta$
- $\tan$ is an odd function, i.e. $\tan(-\theta) = -\tan \theta$

■ Memory aids:

θ	$\sin \theta$	$\cos \theta$	$\tan \theta$
0	0	1	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$ (30°)	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$ (45°)	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	1
$\frac{\pi}{3}$ (60°)	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$ (90°)	1	0	undefined



Exercise C2

Example 3

1 Evaluate each of the following:

a $\sin(3\pi)$	b $\cos\left(-\frac{5\pi}{2}\right)$	c $\sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{2}\right)$	d $\cos(3\pi)$
e $\sin(-4\pi)$	f $\tan(-\pi)$	g $\tan(2\pi)$	h $\tan(-2\pi)$
i $\cos(23\pi)$	j $\cos\left(\frac{49\pi}{2}\right)$	k $\cos(35\pi)$	l $\cos\left(\frac{-45\pi}{2}\right)$
m $\tan(24\pi)$	n $\cos(20\pi)$		

Example 4

2 Evaluate each of the following using a calculator. (Give answers correct to two decimal places.)

a $\sin 1.7$	b $\sin 2.6$	c $\sin 4.2$	d $\cos 0.4$
e $\cos 2.3$	f $\cos(-1.8)$	g $\sin(-1.7)$	h $\sin(-3.6)$
i $\tan 1.6$	j $\tan(-1.2)$	k $\tan 3.9$	l $\tan(-2.5)$

Example 5

3 Write down the exact values of:

a $\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{4}\right)$	b $\cos\left(\frac{2\pi}{3}\right)$	c $\cos\left(\frac{7\pi}{6}\right)$	d $\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{6}\right)$
e $\cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$	f $\sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{4}\right)$	g $\sin\left(\frac{7\pi}{4}\right)$	h $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{3}\right)$
i $\cos\left(\frac{11\pi}{3}\right)$	j $\sin\left(\frac{200\pi}{3}\right)$	k $\cos\left(-\frac{11\pi}{3}\right)$	l $\sin\left(\frac{25\pi}{3}\right)$
m $\sin\left(-\frac{13\pi}{4}\right)$	n $\cos\left(-\frac{20\pi}{3}\right)$	o $\sin\left(\frac{67\pi}{4}\right)$	p $\cos\left(\frac{68\pi}{3}\right)$
q $\tan\left(\frac{11\pi}{3}\right)$	r $\tan\left(\frac{200\pi}{3}\right)$	s $\tan\left(-\frac{11\pi}{6}\right)$	t $\tan\left(\frac{25\pi}{3}\right)$
u $\tan\left(-\frac{13\pi}{4}\right)$	v $\tan\left(-\frac{25\pi}{6}\right)$		

Example 6

4 If $\sin \theta = 0.52$, $\cos x = 0.68$ and $\tan \alpha = 0.4$, determine the value of:

a $\sin(\pi - \theta)$	b $\cos(\pi + x)$	c $\sin(2\pi + \theta)$	d $\tan(\pi + \alpha)$
e $\sin(\pi + \theta)$	f $\cos(2\pi - x)$	g $\tan(2\pi - \alpha)$	h $\cos(\pi - x)$
i $\sin(-\theta)$	j $\cos(-x)$	k $\tan(-\alpha)$	

5 If $\sin \theta = 0.4$, $\cos x = 0.7$ and $\tan \alpha = 1.2$, determine the value of:

a $\sin(\pi - \theta)$	b $\cos(\pi + x)$	c $\sin(2\pi + \theta)$	d $\tan(\pi + \alpha)$
e $\sin(\pi + \theta)$	f $\cos(2\pi - x)$	g $\tan(2\pi - \alpha)$	h $\cos(\pi - x)$
i $\sin(-\theta)$	j $\cos(-x)$	k $\tan(-\alpha)$	

Example 7

6 Without using a calculator, evaluate the sin, cos and tan of each of the following:

a 150°	b 225°	c 405°	d -120°
e -315°	f -30°		

C3 Further symmetry properties and the Pythagorean identity

Learning intentions

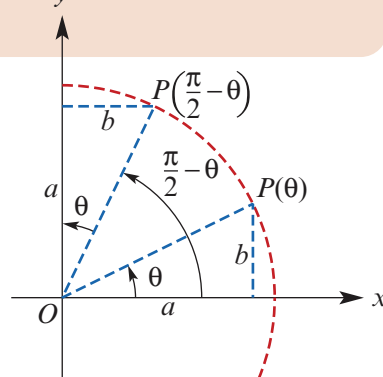
- ▶ To be able to use the complementary relationships and the Pythagorean identity for the trigonometric functions.

Complementary relationships

From the diagram to the right:

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = a = \cos \theta$$

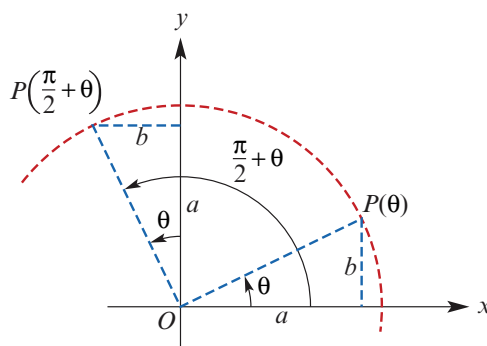
$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = b = \sin \theta$$



From the diagram to the right:

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = a = \cos \theta$$

$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = -b = -\sin \theta$$



Example 8

If $\sin \theta = 0.3$ and $\cos \psi = 0.8$, determine the value of:

a $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \psi\right)$

b $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right)$

Solution

a $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \psi\right) = \cos \psi = 0.8$

b $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = -\sin \theta = -0.3$

The Pythagorean identity

Consider a point, $P(\theta)$, on the unit circle.

By Pythagoras' theorem,

$$OP^2 = OM^2 + MP^2$$

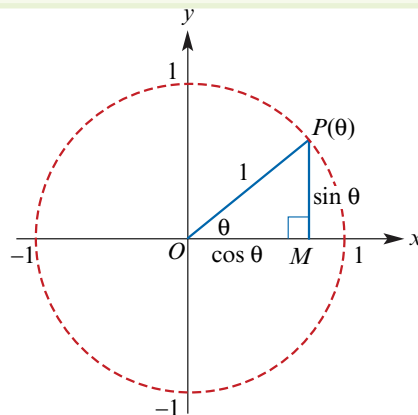
$$\therefore 1 = (\cos \theta)^2 + (\sin \theta)^2$$

Now $(\cos \theta)^2$ and $(\sin \theta)^2$ may be written as $\cos^2 \theta$ and $\sin^2 \theta$. Thus we obtain:

$$\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1$$

This holds for all values of θ , and is called the

Pythagorean identity.



**Example 9**

Given that $\sin x = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \pi$, determine:

a $\cos x$

b $\tan x$

Solution

a Substitute $\sin x = \frac{3}{5}$ into the Pythagorean identity:

$$\cos^2 x + \sin^2 x = 1$$

$$\cos^2 x + \frac{9}{25} = 1$$

$$\cos^2 x = 1 - \frac{9}{25}$$

$$= \frac{16}{25}$$

Therefore $\cos x = \pm \frac{4}{5}$. But x is in the

2nd quadrant, and so $\cos x = -\frac{4}{5}$.

b Using part **a**, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \tan x &= \frac{\sin x}{\cos x} \\ &= \frac{3}{5} \div \left(-\frac{4}{5}\right) \\ &= \frac{3}{5} \times \left(-\frac{5}{4}\right) \\ &= -\frac{3}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Summary C3**■ Complementary relationships**

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \cos \theta \qquad \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \sin \theta$$

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = \cos \theta \qquad \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = -\sin \theta$$

■ Pythagorean identity

$$\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1$$

Exercise C3**Example 8**

1 If $\sin x = 0.3$, $\cos \alpha = 0.6$ and $\tan \theta = 0.7$, determine the value of:

a $\cos(-\alpha)$

b $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \alpha\right)$

c $\tan(-\theta)$

d $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - x\right)$

e $\sin(-x)$

f $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$

g $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + x\right)$

h $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \alpha\right)$

i $\sin\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} + \alpha\right)$

j $\cos\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} - x\right)$

k $\tan\left(\frac{3\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$

l $\cos\left(\frac{5\pi}{2} - x\right)$

- Example 9** 2 a Given that $\cos x = \frac{3}{5}$ and $\frac{3\pi}{2} < x < 2\pi$, determine $\sin x$ and $\tan x$.
- b Given that $\sin x = \frac{5}{13}$ and $\frac{\pi}{2} < x < \pi$, determine $\cos x$ and $\tan x$.
- c Given that $\cos x = \frac{1}{5}$ and $\frac{3\pi}{2} < x < 2\pi$, determine $\sin x$ and $\tan x$.
- d Given that $\sin x = -\frac{12}{13}$ and $\pi < x < \frac{3\pi}{2}$, determine $\cos x$ and $\tan x$.
- e Given that $\cos x = \frac{4}{5}$ and $\frac{3\pi}{2} < x < 2\pi$, determine $\sin x$ and $\tan x$.
- f Given that $\sin x = -\frac{5}{13}$ and $\pi < x < \frac{3\pi}{2}$, determine $\cos x$ and $\tan x$.
- g Given that $\cos x = \frac{8}{10}$ and $\frac{3\pi}{2} < x < 2\pi$, determine $\sin x$ and $\tan x$.

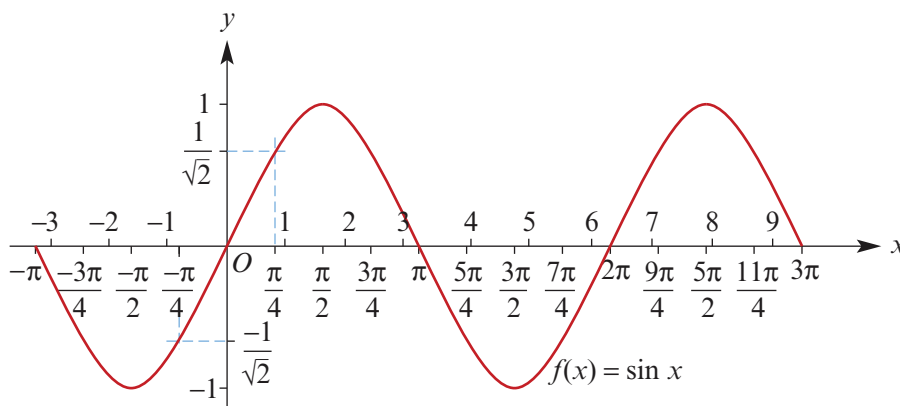
C4 Graphs of sine and cosine

Learning intentions

- To be able to sketch the graphs of the trigonometric functions.

Graph of the sine function

A calculator can be used to plot the graph of $f(x) = \sin x$ for $-\pi \leq x \leq 3\pi$. Note that radian mode must be selected.

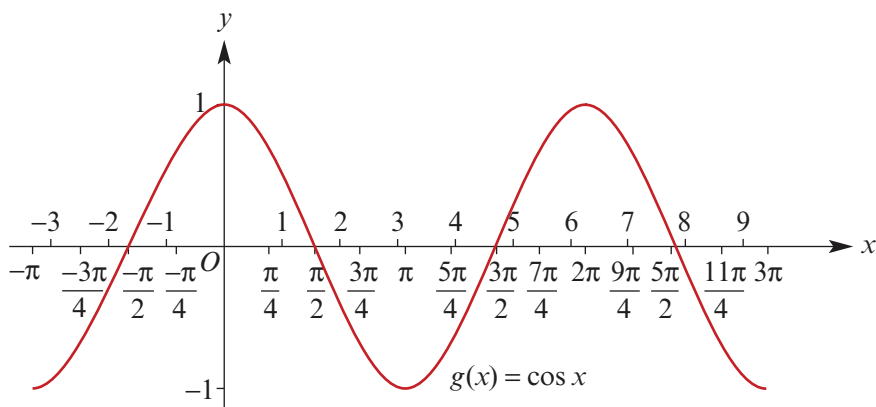


Observations from the graph of $y = \sin x$

- The graph repeats itself after an interval of 2π units.
A function which repeats itself regularly is called a **periodic** function, and the interval between the repetitions is called the **period** of the function (also called the wavelength). Thus $y = \sin x$ has a period of 2π units.
- The maximum and minimum values of $\sin x$ are 1 and -1 respectively.
The distance between the mean position and the maximum position is called the **amplitude**. The graph of $y = \sin x$ has an amplitude of 1.

Graph of the cosine function

The graph of $g(x) = \cos x$ is shown below for $-\pi \leq x \leq 3\pi$.



Observations from the graph of $y = \cos x$

- The period is 2π .
- The amplitude is 1.
- The graph of $y = \cos x$ is the graph of $y = \sin x$ translated $\frac{\pi}{2}$ units in the negative direction of the x -axis.

Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin(bt)$ and $y = a \cos(bt)$

The graphs of functions of the forms $y = a \sin(bt)$ and $y = a \cos(bt)$ are transformations of the graphs of $y = \sin t$ and $y = \cos t$ respectively. We first consider the case where a and n are positive numbers.

Transformations: dilations

Graph of $y = 3 \sin(2t)$ The image of the graph of $y = \sin t$ under a dilation of factor 3 from the t -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis is $y = 3 \sin(2t)$.

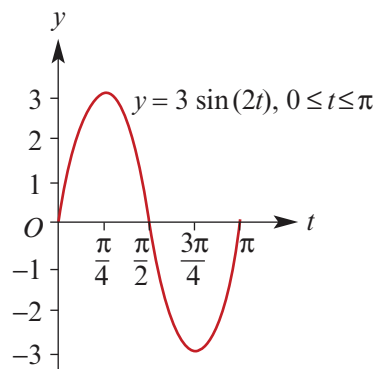
Note: Let $f(t) = \sin t$. Then the graph of $y = f(t)$ is transformed to the graph of $y = 3f(2t)$.

The point with coordinates (t, y) is mapped to the point with coordinates $(\frac{t}{2}, 3y)$.

t	0	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	π
$y = 3 \sin(2t)$	0	3	0	-3	0

We make the following observations about the graph of $y = 3 \sin(2t)$:

- amplitude is 3
- period is π

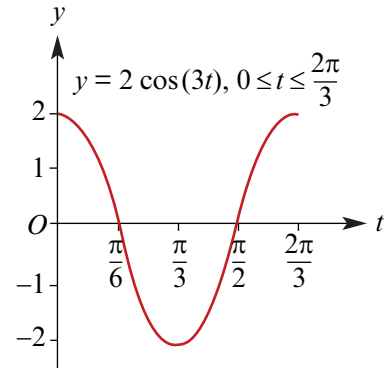


Graph of $y = 2 \cos(3t)$ The image of the graph of $y = \cos t$ under a dilation of factor 2 from the t -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis is $y = 2 \cos(3t)$.

t	0	$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{2\pi}{3}$
$y = 2 \cos(3t)$	2	0	-2	0	2

We make the following observations about the graph of $y = 2 \cos(3t)$:

- amplitude is 2
- period is $\frac{2\pi}{3}$



Amplitude and period Comparing these results with those for $y = \sin t$ and $y = \cos t$, the following general rules can be stated for a and n positive:

Function	Amplitude	Period
$y = a \sin(bt)$	a	$\frac{2\pi}{b}$
$y = a \cos(bt)$	a	$\frac{2\pi}{b}$



Example 10

For each of the following functions with domain $\mathbb{R}$, state the amplitude and period:

a $f(t) = 2 \sin(3t)$

b $f(t) = -\frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$

c $f(t) = 4 \cos(3\pi t)$

Solution

a Amplitude is 2
Period is $\frac{2\pi}{3}$

b Amplitude is $\frac{1}{2}$
Period is $2\pi \div \frac{1}{2} = 4\pi$

c Amplitude is 4
Period is $\frac{2\pi}{3\pi} = \frac{2}{3}$

Graphs of $y = a \sin(bt)$ and $y = a \cos(bt)$

For a and n positive numbers, the graphs of $y = a \sin(bt)$ and $y = a \cos(bt)$ are obtained from the graphs of $y = \sin t$ and $y = \cos t$, respectively, by a dilation of factor a from the t -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{b}$ from the y -axis.

The point with coordinates (t, y) is mapped to the point with coordinates $\left(\frac{t}{b}, ay\right)$.

The following are important properties of both of the functions $f(t) = a \sin(nt)$ and $g(t) = a \cos(bt)$:

- The period is $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.
- The amplitude is a .
- The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$.
- The range is $[-a, a]$.

**Example 11**

For each of the following, give a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = \sin x$ to the graph of $y = g(x)$, and state the amplitude and period of $g(x)$:

a $g(x) = 3 \sin(2x)$ **b** $g(x) = 4 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

Solution

a The graph of $y = 3 \sin(2x)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \sin x$ by a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis.

The function $g(x) = 3 \sin(2x)$ has amplitude 3 and period $\frac{2\pi}{2} = \pi$.

b The graph of $y = 4 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \sin x$ by a dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis and a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis.

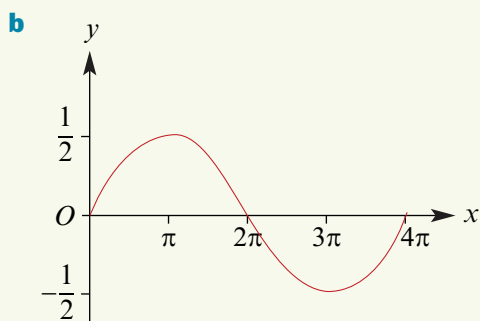
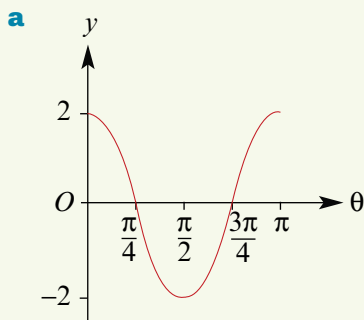
The function $g(x) = 4 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ has amplitude 4 and period $2\pi \div \frac{1}{2} = 4\pi$.

**Example 12**

Sketch the graph of each of the following functions:

a $y = 2 \cos(2\theta)$ **b** $y = \frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

In each case, show one complete cycle.

Solution**Explanation**

The amplitude is 2.

The period is $\frac{2\pi}{2} = \pi$.

The graph of $y = 2 \cos(2\theta)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \cos \theta$ by a dilation of factor 2 from the θ -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis.

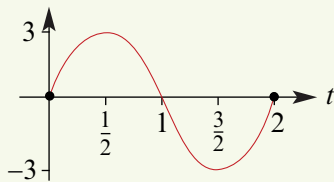
The amplitude is $\frac{1}{2}$.

The period is $2\pi \div \frac{1}{2} = 4\pi$.

The graph of $y = \frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \sin x$ by a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis and a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis.

**Example 13**

Sketch the graph of the function with rule $f(t) = 3 \sin(\pi t)$, where $t \in [0, 2]$.

Solution**Explanation**

The amplitude is 3.

The period is $2\pi \div \pi = 2$.

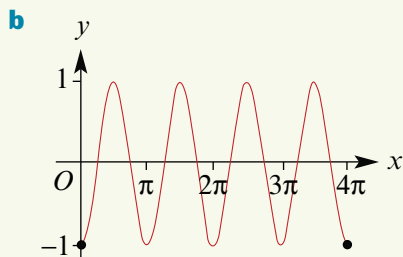
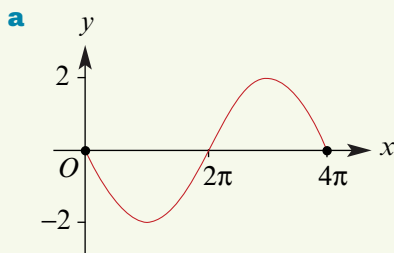
The graph of $f(t) = 3 \sin(\pi t)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \sin t$ by a dilation of factor 3 from the t -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{\pi}$ from the y -axis.

Transformations: reflections**Example 14**

Sketch the following graphs for $x \in [0, 4\pi]$:

a $f(x) = -2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

b $y = -\cos(2x)$

Solution**Explanation**

The graph of $f(x) = -2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ by a reflection in the x -axis.

The amplitude is 2 and the period is 4π .

The graph of $y = -\cos(2x)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \cos(2x)$ by a reflection in the x -axis.

The amplitude is 1 and the period is π .

Note: Recall that $\sin$ is an odd function and $\cos$ is an even function (i.e. $\sin(-x) = -\sin x$ and $\cos(-x) = \cos x$). When reflected in the y -axis, the graph of $y = \sin x$ transforms onto the graph of $y = -\sin x$, and the graph of $y = \cos x$ transforms onto itself.

Summary C4

For positive numbers a and b , the graphs of $y = a \sin(bt)$, $y = -a \sin(bt)$, $y = a \cos(bt)$ and $y = -a \cos(bt)$ all have the following properties:

- The period is $\frac{2\pi}{b}$.
- The amplitude is a .
- The maximal domain is $\mathbb{R}$.
- The range is $[-a, a]$.

Exercise C4

Example 10

1 Write down the period and the amplitude of each of the following:

- a** $3 \sin \theta$ **b** $5 \sin(3\theta)$ **c** $\frac{1}{2} \cos(2\theta)$ **d** $2 \sin\left(\frac{1}{3}\theta\right)$
e $3 \cos(4\theta)$ **f** $\frac{1}{2} \sin \theta$ **g** $3 \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}\theta\right)$ **h** $2 \sin\left(\frac{2\theta}{3}\right)$

Example 11

2 For each of the following, give a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = \sin x$ to the graph of $y = g(x)$, and state the amplitude and period of $g(x)$:

- a** $g(x) = 4 \sin(3x)$ **b** $g(x) = 5 \sin\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$
c $g(x) = 6 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ **d** $g(x) = 4 \sin(5x)$

3 For each of the following, give a sequence of transformations which takes the graph of $y = \cos x$ to the graph of $y = g(x)$, and state the amplitude and period of $g(x)$:

- a** $g(x) = 2 \cos(3x)$ **b** $g(x) = 3 \cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$
c $g(x) = 6 \cos\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)$ **d** $g(x) = 3 \cos(7x)$

Example 12

4 Sketch the graph of each of the following, showing one complete cycle. State the amplitude and period.

- a** $y = 2 \sin(3\theta)$ **b** $y = 2 \cos(2\theta)$ **c** $y = 3 \sin\left(\frac{1}{3}\theta\right)$
d $y = \frac{1}{3} \cos(2\theta)$ **e** $y = 3 \sin(4\theta)$ **f** $y = 4 \cos\left(\frac{1}{4}\theta\right)$

Example 13

5 Sketch the graph of $f(t) = 3 \sin(2\pi t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 1$.

6 Sketch the graph of $f(t) = 3 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{2}\right)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 1$.

7 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 5 \cos(3x)$ for $0 \leq x \leq \pi$.

8 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = \frac{1}{2} \sin(2x)$ for $-\pi \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

9 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = 2 \cos\left(\frac{3x}{2}\right)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

Example 14

10 Sketch the graph of $f(x) = -3 \cos\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 4\pi$.

11 Determine the equation of the image of the graph of $y = \sin x$ under a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis.

12 Determine the equation of the image of the graph of $y = \cos x$ under a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis.

13 Determine the equation of the image of the graph of $y = \sin x$ under a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis followed by a dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis.

C5 Solution of trigonometric equations

Learning intentions

- To be able to solve trigonometric equations of the form $a \sin(bt) = d$ and $a \cos(bt) = d$.

Solving equations of the form $\sin t = d$ and $\cos t = d$

First we look at the techniques for solving equations of the form $\sin t = d$ and $\cos t = d$. These same techniques will be applied to solve more complicated trigonometric equations later in this section.



Example 15

Determine all solutions of the equation $\sin \theta = \frac{1}{2}$ for $\theta \in [0, 4\pi]$.

Solution

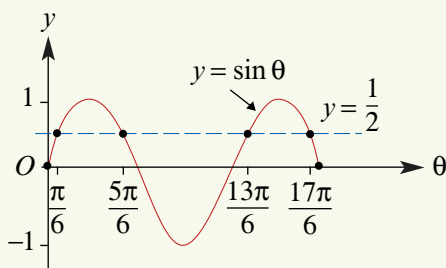
The solution for $\theta \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$ is $\theta = \frac{\pi}{6}$.

The second solution is $\theta = \pi - \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{5\pi}{6}$.

The third solution is $\theta = 2\pi + \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{13\pi}{6}$.

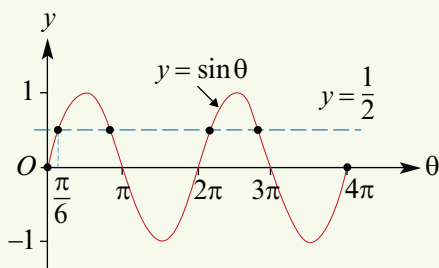
The fourth solution is $\theta = 2\pi + \frac{5\pi}{6} = \frac{17\pi}{6}$.

These four solutions are shown on the graph below.



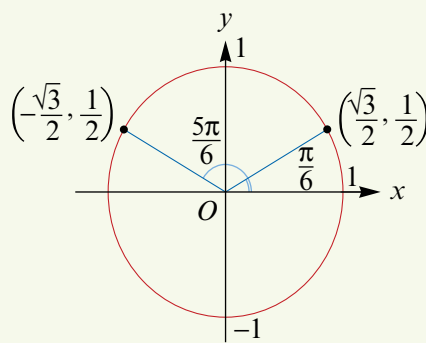
Explanation

By sketching a graph, we can see that there are four solutions in the interval $[0, 4\pi]$.



The first solution can be obtained from a knowledge of exact values or by using $\sin^{-1}$ on your calculator.

The second solution is obtained using symmetry. The sine function is positive in the 2nd quadrant and $\sin(\pi - \theta) = \sin \theta$.



Further solutions are found by adding 2π , since $\sin \theta = \sin(2\pi + \theta)$.

**Example 16**Determine two values of x :

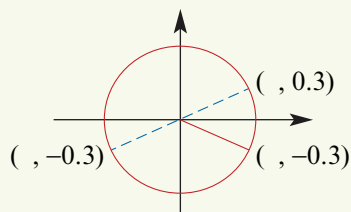
a $\sin x = -0.3$ with $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$

b $\cos x^\circ = -0.7$ with $0^\circ \leq x^\circ \leq 360^\circ$

Solution**a** First solve the equation $\sin \alpha = 0.3$ for $\alpha \in [0, \frac{\pi}{2}]$. Use your calculator to determine the solution $\alpha = 0.30469 \dots$ Now the value of $\sin x$ is negative for $P(x)$ in the 3rd and 4th quadrants. From the symmetry relationships (or from the graph of $y = \sin x$):

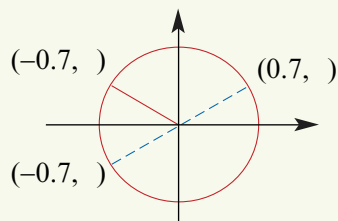
3rd quadrant: $x = \pi + 0.30469 \dots$
 $= 3.446$ (to 3 d.p.)

4th quadrant: $x = 2\pi - 0.30469 \dots$
 $= 5.978$ (to 3 d.p.)

 $\therefore$ If $\sin x = -0.3$, then $x = 3.446$ or $x = 5.978$.**b** First solve the equation $\cos \alpha^\circ = 0.7$ for $\alpha^\circ \in [0^\circ, 90^\circ]$. Use your calculator to determine the solution $\alpha^\circ = 45.57^\circ$.Now the value of $\cos x^\circ$ is negative for $P(x^\circ)$ in the 2nd and 3rd quadrants.

2nd quadrant: $x^\circ = 180^\circ - 45.57^\circ$
 $= 134.43^\circ$

3rd quadrant: $x^\circ = 180^\circ + 45.57^\circ$
 $= 225.57^\circ$

 $\therefore$ If $\cos x^\circ = -0.7$, then $x^\circ = 134.43^\circ$ or $x^\circ = 225.57^\circ$.**Example 17**Determine all the values of θ° between 0° and 360° for which:

a $\cos \theta^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

b $\sin \theta^\circ = -\frac{1}{2}$

c $\cos \theta^\circ - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 0$

Solution

a $\cos \theta^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

$\theta^\circ = 30^\circ$ or $\theta^\circ = 360^\circ - 30^\circ$

$\theta^\circ = 30^\circ$ or $\theta^\circ = 330^\circ$

b $\sin \theta^\circ = -\frac{1}{2}$

$\theta^\circ = 180^\circ + 30^\circ$ or $\theta^\circ = 360^\circ - 30^\circ$

$\theta^\circ = 210^\circ$ or $\theta^\circ = 330^\circ$

Explanation $\cos \theta^\circ$ is positive, and so $P(\theta^\circ)$ lies in the 1st or 4th quadrant.

$\cos(360^\circ - \theta^\circ) = \cos \theta^\circ$

 $\sin \theta^\circ$ is negative, and so $P(\theta^\circ)$ lies in the 3rd or 4th quadrant.

$\sin(180^\circ + \theta^\circ) = -\sin \theta^\circ$

$\sin(360^\circ - \theta^\circ) = -\sin \theta^\circ$

$$\text{c } \cos \theta^\circ - \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} = 0$$

$$\therefore \cos \theta^\circ = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\theta^\circ = 45^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad \theta^\circ = 360^\circ - 45^\circ$$

$$\theta^\circ = 45^\circ \quad \text{or} \quad \theta^\circ = 315^\circ$$

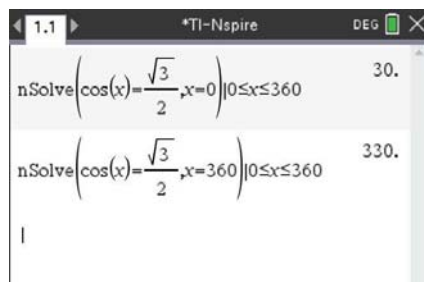
$\cos \theta^\circ$ is positive, and so $P(\theta^\circ)$ lies in the 1st or 4th quadrant.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

For Example 17a, make sure the calculator is in degree mode and use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Numerical Solve** as shown.

Note: Two different guess values are used to determine the two solutions. It is advisable to plot the graph over the given domain to determine the number of solutions.

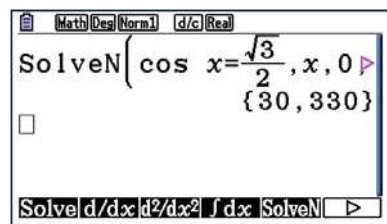


Using the Casio

For Example 17a:

- In **Run-Matrix** mode, ensure that the angle setting is Degrees (**SHIFT** **MENU**).
- Go to the numerical solver **SolveN** (**OPTN** **F4** **F5**).
- Complete the equation and domain by entering:

$$\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, x, 0, 360)$$



Solving equations of the form $a \sin(nt) = b$ and $a \cos(nt) = b$

The techniques introduced above can be applied in a more general situation. This is achieved by a simple substitution, as shown in the following example.



Example 18

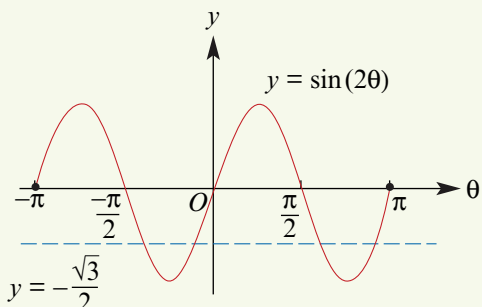
Solve the equation $\sin(2\theta) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ for $\theta \in [-\pi, \pi]$.

Solution

It is clear from the graph that there are four solutions.

To solve the equation, let $x = 2\theta$.

Note: If $\theta \in [-\pi, \pi]$, then we have $x = 2\theta \in [-2\pi, 2\pi]$.



Now consider the equation

$$\sin x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \quad \text{for } x \in [-2\pi, 2\pi]$$

The 1st quadrant solution to the equation

$$\sin \alpha = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \text{ is } \alpha = \frac{\pi}{3}.$$

Using symmetry, the solutions to

$$\sin x = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \text{ for } x \in [0, 2\pi] \text{ are}$$

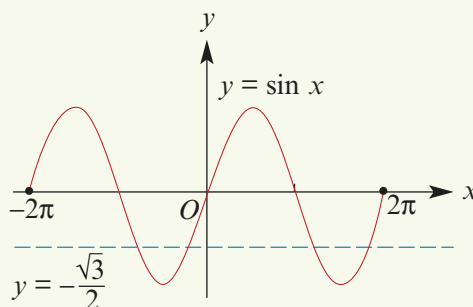
$$x = \pi + \frac{\pi}{3} \text{ and } x = 2\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$\text{i.e. } x = \frac{4\pi}{3} \text{ and } x = \frac{5\pi}{3}$$

The other two solutions (obtained by subtracting 2π) are $x = \frac{4\pi}{3} - 2\pi$ and $x = \frac{5\pi}{3} - 2\pi$.

$\therefore$ The required solutions for x are $-\frac{2\pi}{3}$, $-\frac{\pi}{3}$, $\frac{4\pi}{3}$ and $\frac{5\pi}{3}$.

$\therefore$ The required solutions for θ are $-\frac{\pi}{3}$, $-\frac{\pi}{6}$, $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ and $\frac{5\pi}{6}$.



Using the TI-Nspire CX non-CAS

■ Ensure that the calculator is in radian mode.

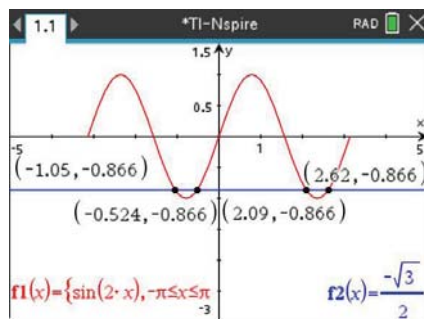
■ In a **Graphs** application, plot the graphs of:

- $f_1(x) = \sin(2x) \mid -\pi \leq x \leq \pi$

- $f_2(x) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

■ Use **menu** > **Geometry** > **Points & Lines** > **Intersection Point(s)**.

■ The solutions are -1.05 , -0.524 , 2.09 and 2.62 , correct to three significant figures.



Note: You can also use **menu** > **Algebra** > **Numerical Solve**, but you will need to try several guess values to obtain all four solutions.

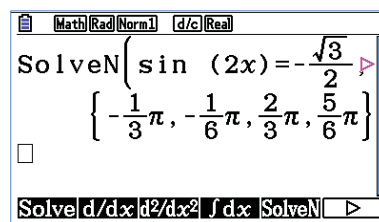
Using the Casio

■ In **Run-Matrix** mode, ensure that the angle setting is Radians (**SHIFT** **MENU**).

■ Go to the numerical solver **SolveN** (**OPTN** **F4** **F5**).

■ Complete the equation and domain by entering:

$$\sin(2x) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, x, -\pi, \pi)$$



Summary C5

- For solving equations of the form $\sin t = d$ and $\cos t = d$:
 - First determine the solutions in the interval $[0, 2\pi]$. This can be done using your knowledge of exact values and symmetry properties, or with the aid of a calculator.
 - Further solutions can be found by adding and subtracting multiples of 2π .
- For solving equations of the form $a \sin(bt) = d$ and $a \cos(bt) = d$:
 - First substitute $x = bt$. Work out the interval in which solutions for x are required. Then proceed as in the case above to solve for x .
 - Once the solutions for x are found, the solutions for t can be found.

For example: To solve $\sin(3t) = \frac{1}{2}$ for $t \in [0, 2\pi]$, first let $x = 3t$. The equation becomes $\sin x = \frac{1}{2}$ and the required solutions for x are in the interval $[0, 6\pi]$.



Exercise C5

Example 15

- 1 Solve each of the following for $x \in [0, 4\pi]$:

a $\sin x = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **b** $\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **c** $\sin x = \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **d** $\cos x = -1$

- 2 Solve each of the following for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$:

a $\sin x = -\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\cos x = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **c** $\cos x = \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **d** $\sin x = 1$

- 3 Solve each of the following for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$:

a $\sqrt{2} \sin x - 1 = 0$ **b** $\sqrt{2} \cos x + 1 = 0$ **c** $2 \cos x + \sqrt{3} = 0$
d $2 \sin x + 1 = 0$ **e** $1 - \sqrt{2} \cos x = 0$ **f** $4 \cos x + 2 = 0$

Example 16

- 4 Determine all values of x between 0 and 2π for which:

a $\sin x = 0.6$ **b** $\cos x = 0.8$ **c** $\sin x = -0.45$ **d** $\cos x = -0.2$

- 5 Determine all values of θ° between 0° and 360° for which:

a $\sin \theta^\circ = 0.3$ **b** $\cos \theta^\circ = 0.4$ **c** $\sin \theta^\circ = -0.8$ **d** $\cos \theta^\circ = -0.5$

Example 17

- 6 Without using a calculator, determine all the values of θ between 0 and 360 for each of the following:

a $\cos \theta^\circ = \frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\sin \theta^\circ = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **c** $\sin \theta^\circ = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$
d $2 \cos \theta^\circ + 1 = 0$ **e** $2 \sin \theta^\circ = \sqrt{3}$ **f** $2 \cos \theta^\circ = -\sqrt{3}$

Example 18

- 7 Solve the following equations for $\theta \in [0, 2\pi]$:

a $\sin(2\theta) = -\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\cos(2\theta) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **c** $\sin(2\theta) = \frac{1}{2}$
d $\sin(3\theta) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ **e** $\cos(2\theta) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **f** $\sin(2\theta) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$

- 8** Without using a calculator, determine all the values of x between 0 and 2π for each of the following:

a $2 \cos(3x) + \sqrt{3} = 0$

b $4 \sin(2x) - 2 = 0$

c $\sqrt{2} \cos(3x) - 1 = 0$

d $10 \sin(3x) - 5 = 0$

e $2 \sin(2x) = \sqrt{2}$

f $4 \cos(3x) = -2\sqrt{3}$

g $-2 \sin(3x) = \sqrt{2}$

h $4 \cos(2x) = -2$

i $-2 \cos(2x) = \sqrt{2}$

- 9** Solve the following equations for $\theta \in [0, 2\pi]$:

a $\sin(2\theta) = -0.8$

b $\sin(2\theta) = -0.6$

c $\cos(2\theta) = 0.4$

d $\cos(3\theta) = 0.6$

C6 Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h)$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h)$

Learning intentions

- To be able to sketch translations of the graphs of the form $f(t) = a \sin(bt)$ and $g(t) = a \cos(bt)$ in the direction of the t -axis.



Example 19

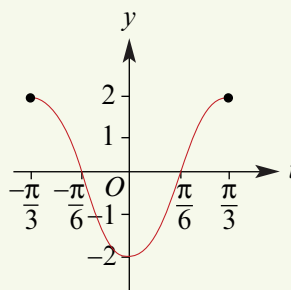
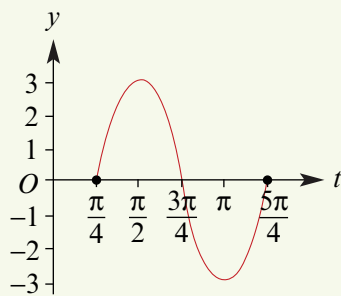
On separate axes, draw the graphs of the following functions. Use a calculator to help establish the shape. Set the window appropriately by noting the range and period.

a $y = 3 \sin 2\left(t - \frac{\pi}{4}\right), \quad \frac{\pi}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{5\pi}{4}$

b $y = 2 \cos 3\left(t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right), \quad -\frac{\pi}{3} \leq t \leq \frac{\pi}{3}$

Solution

- a** The range is $[-3, 3]$ and the period is π . **b** The range is $[-2, 2]$ and the period is $\frac{2\pi}{3}$.



Observations from the example

- a** The graph of $y = 3 \sin 2\left(t - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ is the same shape as $y = 3 \sin(2t)$, but is translated $\frac{\pi}{4}$ units in the positive direction of the t -axis.
- b** The graph of $y = 2 \cos 3\left(t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is the same shape as $y = 2 \cos(3t)$, but is translated $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units in the negative direction of the t -axis.

The effect of $\pm \epsilon$ is to translate the graph parallel to the t -axis. (Here $\pm \epsilon$ is called the phase.)

Note: The techniques of Section ?? can be used to determine the sequence of transformations.

**Example 20**

Define the function $f(x) = \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.

a Determine $f(0)$ and $f(2\pi)$.

b Sketch the graph of f .

Solution

a $f(0) = \sin\left(-\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ and $f(2\pi) = \sin\left(2\pi - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

b The graph of $y = \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ is the graph of $y = \sin x$ translated $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units to the right.

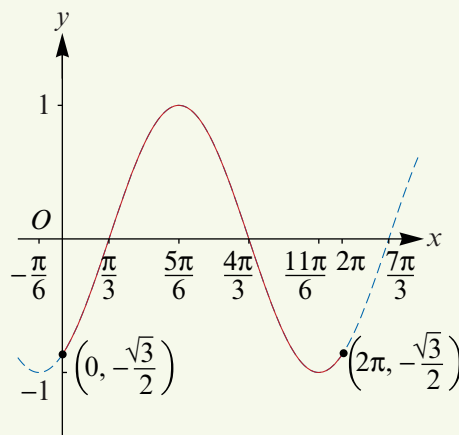
The period of f is 2π and the amplitude is 1.

The endpoints are $\left(0, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$ and $\left(2\pi, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}\right)$.

There are many ways to proceed from here.

Method 1

- Start at $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$ and start to draw one cycle stopping at $x = 2\pi$.
- Each 'loop' of the graph is of length π and each 'half loop' is of length $\frac{\pi}{2}$.
- The 'half loop' going back from $x = \frac{\pi}{3}$ would end at $\frac{\pi}{3} - \frac{\pi}{2} = -\frac{\pi}{6}$.

**Method 2**

Determine the x -axis intercepts by solving the equation $\sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 0$. Use symmetry to determine the coordinates of the maximum and minimum points.

Summary C6

The graphs of $y = a \sin n(t \pm h)$ and $y = a \cos n(t \pm h)$ are translations of the graphs of $y = a \sin(nt)$ and $y = a \cos(nt)$ respectively.

The graphs are translated $\mp h$ units parallel to the t -axis, where $\pm h$ is called the phase.

Exercise C6**Example 19**

1 Sketch the graph of each of the following, showing one complete cycle. State the period and amplitude, and the greatest and least values of y .

a $y = 3 \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

b $y = \sin 2(\theta + \pi)$

c $y = 2 \sin 3\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

d $y = \sqrt{3} \sin 2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

e $y = 3 \sin(2x - \pi)$

f $y = 2 \cos 3\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

g $y = \sqrt{2} \sin 2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

h $y = -3 \sin\left(2x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

i $y = -3 \cos 2\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

Example 20

- 2** Define the function $f(x) = \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.
- a** Determine $f(0)$ and $f(2\pi)$. **b** Sketch the graph of f .
- 3** Define the function $f(x) = \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$.
- a** Determine $f(0)$ and $f(2\pi)$. **b** Sketch the graph of f .
- 4** Define the function $f(x) = \sin 3\left(x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$.
- a** Determine $f(-\pi)$ and $f(\pi)$. **b** Sketch the graph of f .
- 5** Determine the equation of the image of $y = \sin x$ for each of the following transformations:
- a** dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis followed by dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
- b** dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis followed by dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
- c** dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis followed by dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
- d** dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis followed by translation of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis
- e** dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis followed by translation of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units in the negative direction of the x -axis.

SE

C7

C7 Sketch graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm k$

Learning intentions

- To be able to sketch translations of the graphs considered in the previous section in the direction of the y -axis.

In general, the effect of $\pm k$ is to translate the graph $\pm k$ units parallel to the y -axis.

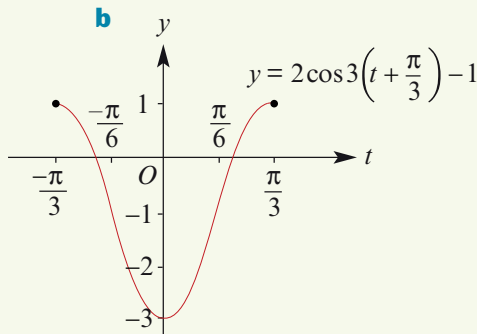
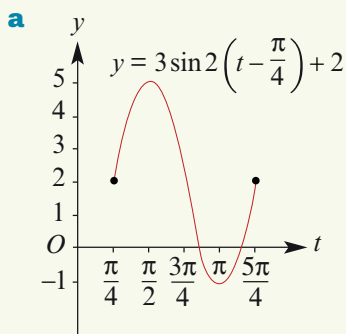


Example 21

Sketch each of the following graphs. Use a calculator to help establish the shape.

a $y = 3 \sin 2\left(t - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 2$, $\frac{\pi}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{5\pi}{4}$ **b** $y = 2 \cos 3\left(t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - 1$, $-\frac{\pi}{3} \leq t \leq \frac{\pi}{3}$

Solution



Determining axis intercepts



Example 22

Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$. Clearly indicate axis intercepts.

a $y = \sqrt{2} \sin(x) + 1$

b $y = 2 \cos(2x) - 1$

c $y = 2 \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - \sqrt{3}$

Solution

a To determine the x -axis intercepts, solve the equation $\sqrt{2} \sin(x) + 1 = 0$.

$$\sqrt{2} \sin(x) + 1 = 0$$

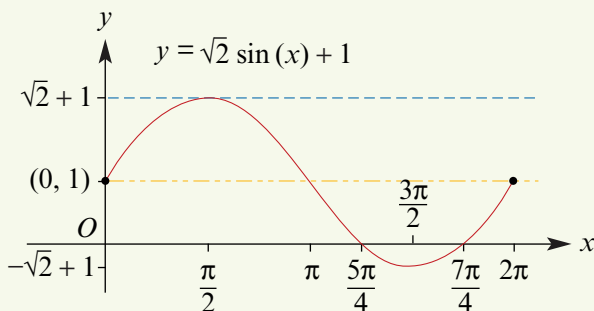
$$\therefore \sin x = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$\therefore x = \pi + \frac{\pi}{4} \text{ or } 2\pi - \frac{\pi}{4}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{5\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{4}$$

The x -axis intercepts are

$$\frac{5\pi}{4} \text{ and } \frac{7\pi}{4}.$$



b $2 \cos(2x) - 1 = 0$

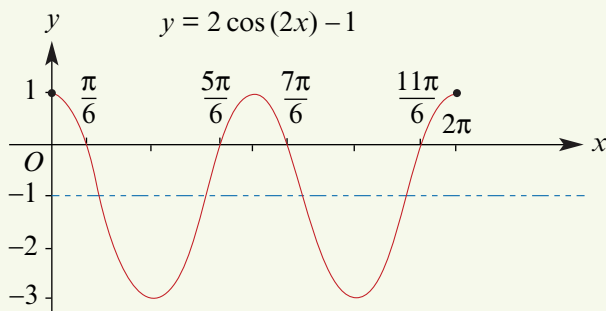
$$\therefore \cos(2x) = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore 2x = \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}, \frac{7\pi}{3} \text{ or } \frac{11\pi}{3}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{11\pi}{6}$$

The x -axis intercepts are

$$\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6} \text{ and } \frac{11\pi}{6}.$$



c $\sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$

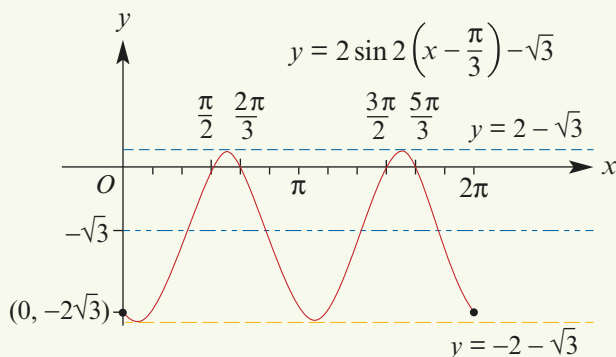
$$\therefore 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{7\pi}{3} \text{ or } \frac{8\pi}{3}$$

$$\therefore x - \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{7\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{4\pi}{3}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{3}$$

The x -axis intercepts are

$$\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{3\pi}{2} \text{ and } \frac{5\pi}{3}.$$



Summary C7

The graphs of $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm b$ are translations of the graphs of $y = a \sin(bt)$ and $y = a \cos(bt)$ respectively.

The graphs are translated $\mp h$ units parallel to the t -axis, where $\pm h$ is called the phase. They are also translated $\pm k$ units parallel to the y -axis.

**Exercise C7****Example 21**

- 1 Sketch each of the following graphs. Use a calculator to help establish the shape. Label the endpoints with their coordinates.

a $y = 2 \sin 2\left(t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 2, \quad \frac{\pi}{3} \leq t \leq \frac{4\pi}{3}$ **b** $y = 2 \cos 3\left(t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 1, \quad -\frac{\pi}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{5\pi}{12}$

Example 22

- 2 Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$. List the x -axis intercepts of each graph for this interval.

a $y = 2 \sin(x) + 1$ **b** $y = 2 \sin(2x) - \sqrt{3}$ **c** $y = \sqrt{2} \cos(x) + 1$

d $y = 2 \sin(2x) - 2$ **e** $y = \sqrt{2} \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 1$

- 3 Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [-\pi, 2\pi]$:

a $y = 2 \sin(3x) - 2$ **b** $y = 2 \cos 3\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **c** $y = 2 \sin(2x) - 3$

d $y = 2 \cos(2x) + 1$ **e** $y = 2 \cos 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - 1$ **f** $y = 2 \sin 2\left(x + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + 1$

- 4 Sketch the graph of each of the following, showing one complete cycle. State the period, amplitude and range in each case.

a $y = 2 \sin\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ **b** $y = \sin 2(\theta - \pi)$ **c** $y = 3 \sin 2\left(\theta + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

d $y = \sqrt{3} \sin 3\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$ **e** $y = 2 \sin(3x) + 1$ **f** $y = 3 \cos 2\left(x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) - 1$

g $y = \sqrt{2} \sin 2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + 2$ **h** $y = 3 - 4 \sin(2x)$ **i** $y = 2 - 3 \cos 2\left(\theta - \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

- 5 Determine the equation of the image of the graph of $y = \cos x$ under:

- a** a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the x -axis, followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis, followed by a translation of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis
b a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis
c a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the x -axis, followed by a reflection in the x -axis, then followed by a translation of $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis.

6 Give a sequence of transformations that takes the graph of $y = \sin x$ to the graph of:

a $y = -3 \sin(2x)$

b $y = -3 \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

c $y = 3 \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 2$

d $y = 5 - 2 \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

7 Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$. List the x -axis intercepts of each graph for this interval.

a $y = 2 \cos x + 1$

b $y = 2 \cos(2x) - \sqrt{3}$

c $y = \sqrt{2} \cos x - 1$

d $y = 2 \cos x - 2$

e $y = \sqrt{2} \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 1$

8 Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$:

a $y = 2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + 1$

b $y = 1 - 2 \sin x$

c $y = 2 \cos 3\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

d $y = 2 \cos\left(3x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

e $y = 1 - \cos(2x)$

f $y = -1 - \sin x$

C8 Determining rules for graphs of trigonometric functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to determine the rule for a trigonometric function given sufficient information

In the previous chapter, we introduced procedures for determining the rule for a graph known to come from a polynomial function. In this section, we determine rules for graphs of functions known to be of the form $f(t) = A \sin(bt + h) + k$.



Example 23

A function has rule $f(t) = A \sin(bt)$. The amplitude is 6; the period is 10.

Determine A and b and sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 10$.

Solution

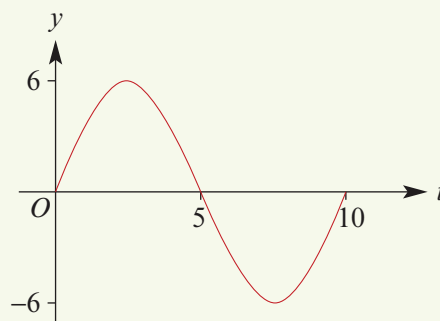
$$\text{Period} = \frac{2\pi}{n} = 10$$

$$\therefore n = \frac{\pi}{5}$$

The amplitude is 6 and therefore $A = 6$.

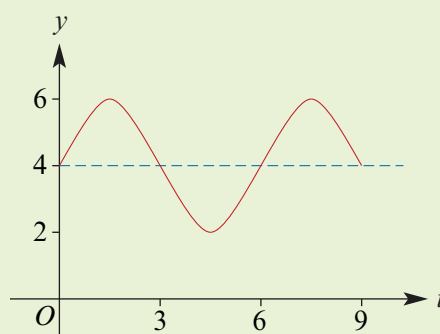
The function has rule

$$f(t) = 6 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{5}\right)$$



**Example 24**

- a** The graph shown on the right has a rule of the form $y = A \sin(nt) + b$. Determine the values of A , n and b .
- b** A function with rule $y = A \sin(nt) + b$ has range $[-2, 4]$ and period 3. Determine the values of A , n and b .

**Solution**

- a** The amplitude $A = 2$.

The period is 6. Therefore $\frac{2\pi}{n} = 6$
and so $n = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

The 'centreline' has equation $y = 4$
and so $b = 4$.

Hence the rule is $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{3}\right) + 4$.

- b** The amplitude $A = \frac{1}{2}(4 - (-2)) = 3$.

The period is 3. Therefore $\frac{2\pi}{n} = 3$
and so $n = \frac{2\pi}{3}$.

The 'centreline' has equation $y = 1$
and so $b = 1$.

Hence the rule is $y = 3 \sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{3}\right) + 1$.

**Example 25**

A function with rule $y = A \sin(nt + \epsilon)$ has the following properties:

- range = $[-2, 2]$ ■ period = 6 ■ when $t = 4$, $y = 0$.

Determine values for A , n and ϵ .

Solution

Since the range is $[-2, 2]$, the amplitude $A = 2$.

Since the period is 6, we have $\frac{2\pi}{n} = 6$, which implies $n = \frac{\pi}{3}$.

Hence $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}t + \epsilon\right)$. When $t = 4$, $y = 0$ and so

$$2 \sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{3} + \epsilon\right) = 0$$

$$\sin\left(\frac{4\pi}{3} + \epsilon\right) = 0$$

Therefore $\frac{4\pi}{3} + \epsilon = 0$ or $\pm\pi$ or $\pm 2\pi$ or ...

We choose the simplest solution, which is $\epsilon = -\frac{4\pi}{3}$.

The rule $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}t - \frac{4\pi}{3}\right)$ satisfies the three properties.

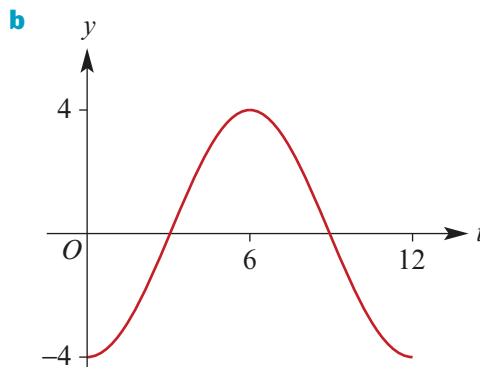
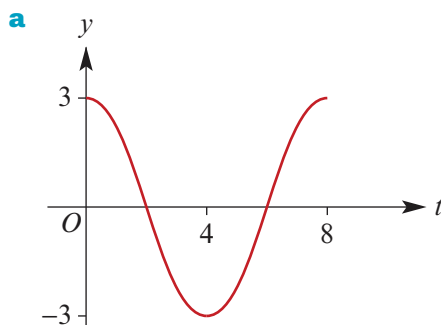
Exercise C8

Example 23

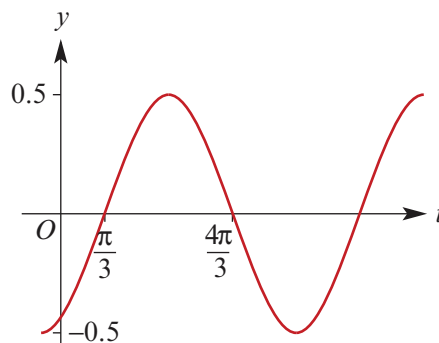
- 1 **a** A function has rule $f(t) = A \sin(bt)$. The amplitude is 4; the period is 6. Determine A and b and sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 6$. Assume $A > 0, b > 0$.
- b** A function has rule $f(t) = A \sin(bt)$. The amplitude is 2; the period is 7. Determine A and b and sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 7$. Assume $A > 0, b > 0$.
- c** A function has rule $f(t) = A \cos(bt)$. The amplitude is 3; the period is 5. Determine A and b and sketch the graph of $y = f(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 5$. Assume $A > 0, b > 0$.

Example 24a

- 2 For each of the following graphs, the function has a rule of the form $y = A \cos(bt)$. Determine the values of A and b .



- 3 The graph shown has a rule of the form $y = A \sin(t + h)$. Determine possible values for A and h .



Example 24b

- 4 A function with rule $y = A \sin(bt) + k$ has range $[2, 8]$ and period $\frac{2\pi}{3}$. Determine A, b and k .

Example 25

- 5 A function with rule $y = A \sin(bt + h)$ has the following three properties:
 ■ range = $[-4, 4]$ ■ period = 8 ■ when $t = 2, y = 0$.
 Determine values for A, b and h .
- 6 A function with rule $y = A \sin(bt + h)$ has range $[-2, 2]$ and period 6, and when $t = 1, y = 1$. Determine possible values for A, b and h .
- 7 A function with rule $y = A \sin(bt + h) + k$ has range $[-2, 6]$ and period 8, and when $t = 2, y = 2$. Determine possible values for A, b, h and k .
- 8 A function with rule $y = A \sin(bt + h) + k$ has range $[0, 4]$ and period 6, and when $t = 1, y = 3$. Determine possible values for A, b, h and k .

C9 The tangent function

Learning intentions

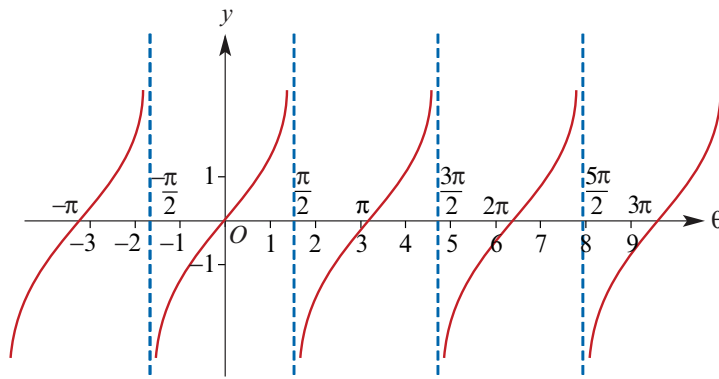
- To be able to sketch graphs and solve equations involving the tangent function.

The tangent function is given by

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} \quad \text{for } \cos \theta \neq 0$$

A table of values for $y = \tan \theta$ is given below:

θ	$-\pi$	$-\frac{3\pi}{4}$	$-\frac{\pi}{2}$	$-\frac{\pi}{4}$	0	$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{\pi}{2}$	$\frac{3\pi}{4}$	π	$\frac{5\pi}{4}$	$\frac{3\pi}{2}$	$\frac{7\pi}{4}$	2π	$\frac{9\pi}{4}$	$\frac{5\pi}{2}$	$\frac{11\pi}{4}$	3π
y	0	1	ud	-1	0	1	ud	-1	0	1	ud	-1	0	1	ud	-1	0



Note: There are vertical asymptotes at $\theta = -\frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{\pi}{2}, \frac{3\pi}{2}$ and $\frac{5\pi}{2}$.

Observations from the graph of $y = \tan \theta$

- The graph repeats itself every π units, i.e. the period of $\tan$ is π .
- The range of $\tan$ is $\mathbb{R}$.
- The vertical asymptotes have equations $\theta = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2}$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- The axis intercepts are at $\theta = n\pi$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

Graph of $y = a \tan(bt)$

For a and b positive numbers, the graph of $y = a \tan(bt)$ is obtained from the graph of $y = \tan t$ by a dilation of factor a from the t -axis and a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{b}$ from the y -axis.

The following are important properties of $f(t) = a \tan(bt)$:

- The period is $\frac{\pi}{b}$.
- The range is $\mathbb{R}$.
- The vertical asymptotes have equations $t = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2b}$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- The axis intercepts are at $t = \frac{n\pi}{b}$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.

**Example 26**

Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$:

a $y = 3 \tan(2x)$

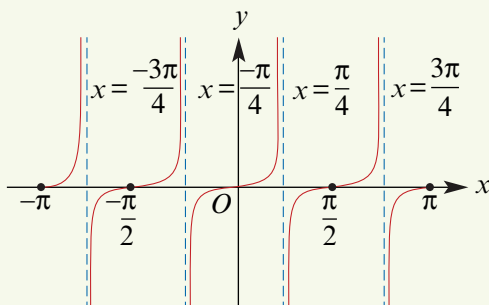
b $y = -2 \tan(3x)$

Solution

a Period $= \frac{\pi}{b} = \frac{\pi}{2}$

Asymptotes: $x = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{4}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

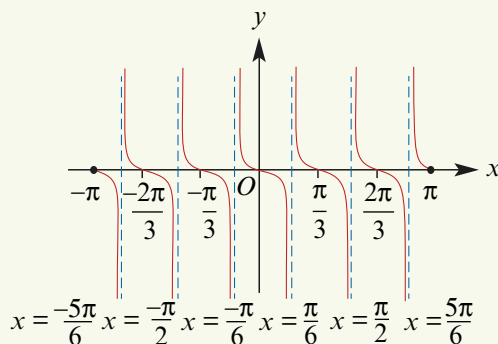
Axis intercepts: $x = \frac{n\pi}{2}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$



b Period $= \frac{\pi}{b} = \frac{\pi}{3}$

Asymptotes: $x = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{6}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

Axis intercepts: $x = \frac{n\pi}{3}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

**Example 27**

Sketch the graph of $y = 3 \tan\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$ for $\frac{\pi}{6} \leq x \leq \frac{13\pi}{6}$.

Solution

Consider $y = 3 \tan 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right)$.

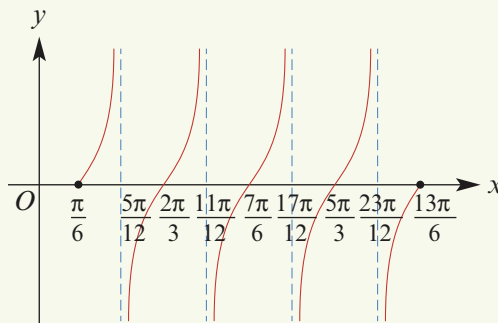
The graph is the image of $y = \tan x$ under:

- a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
- a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
- a translation of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis.

Period $= \frac{\pi}{2}$

Asymptotes: $x = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{4} + \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{(6n+5)\pi}{12}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$

Axis intercepts: $x = \frac{n\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{6} = \frac{(3n+1)\pi}{6}, n \in \mathbb{Z}$



Solution of equations involving the tangent function

We now consider the solution of equations involving the tangent function. We will then apply this to determining the x -axis intercepts for graphs of the tangent function which have been translated parallel to the y -axis.

We recall the following exact values:

$$\tan 0 = 0, \quad \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{6}\right) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}, \quad \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{4}\right) = 1, \quad \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \sqrt{3}$$

and the symmetry properties:

- $\tan(\pi + \theta) = \tan \theta$
- $\tan(-\theta) = -\tan \theta$



Example 28

Solve the equation $3 \tan(2x) = \sqrt{3}$ for $x \in (0, 2\pi)$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} 3 \tan(2x) &= \sqrt{3} \\ \tan(2x) &= \frac{\sqrt{3}}{3} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}} \\ \therefore 2x &= \frac{\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{13\pi}{6} \text{ or } \frac{19\pi}{6} \\ x &= \frac{\pi}{12} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{12} \text{ or } \frac{13\pi}{12} \text{ or } \frac{19\pi}{12} \end{aligned}$$

Explanation

Since we want solutions for x in $(0, 2\pi)$, we determine solutions for $2x$ in $(0, 4\pi)$.

Once we have found one solution for $2x$, we can obtain all other solutions by adding and subtracting multiples of π .



Example 29

Solve the equation $\tan\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right) = -1$ for $x \in [-2\pi, 2\pi]$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned} \tan\left(\frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right) &= -1 \\ \text{implies} \\ \frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) &= \frac{-\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{3\pi}{4} \\ x - \frac{\pi}{4} &= \frac{-\pi}{2} \text{ or } \frac{3\pi}{2} \\ \therefore x &= \frac{-\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{7\pi}{4} \end{aligned}$$

Explanation

Note that

$$\begin{aligned} x \in [-2\pi, 2\pi] &\Leftrightarrow x - \frac{\pi}{4} \in \left[-\frac{9\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}\right] \\ &\Leftrightarrow \frac{1}{2}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) \in \left[-\frac{9\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}\right] \end{aligned}$$

**Example 30**

Sketch the graph of $y = 3 \tan\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \sqrt{3}$ for $\frac{\pi}{6} \leq x \leq \frac{13\pi}{6}$.

Solution

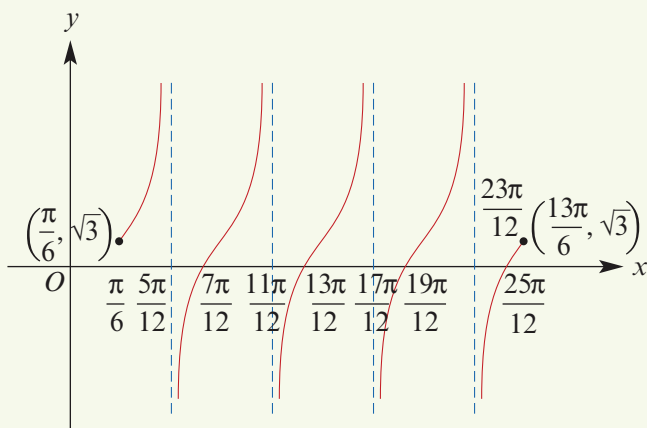
First write the equation as

$$y = 3 \tan 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + \sqrt{3}$$

The graph is the image of $y = \tan x$ under:

- a dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
- a dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
- a translation of $\frac{\pi}{6}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis
- a translation of $\sqrt{3}$ units in the positive direction of the y -axis.

The graph can be obtained from the graph in Example 27 by a translation $\sqrt{3}$ units in the positive direction of the y -axis.



To determine the x -axis intercepts, solve the equation $3 \tan\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \sqrt{3} = 0$ for $\frac{\pi}{6} \leq x \leq \frac{13\pi}{6}$.

The x -axis intercepts are $\frac{7\pi}{12}$, $\frac{13\pi}{12}$, $\frac{19\pi}{12}$ and $\frac{25\pi}{12}$.

Solution of equations of the form $\sin(nx) = k \cos(nx)$

We can determine the coordinates of the points of intersection of certain sine and cosine graphs by using the following observation:

If $\sin(bx) = d \cos(bx)$, then $\tan(bx) = d$.

This is obtained by dividing both sides of the equation $\sin(bx) = d \cos(bx)$ by $\cos(bx)$, for $\cos(bx) \neq 0$.

**Example 31**

On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = \sin x$ and $y = \cos x$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$ and determine the coordinates of the points of intersection.

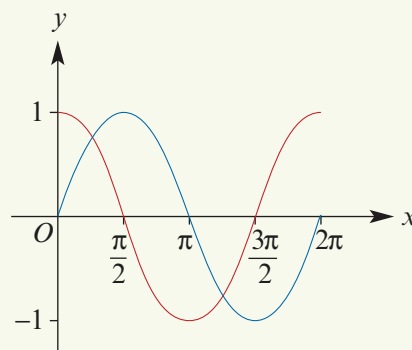
Solution

$$\sin x = \cos x \quad \text{implies} \quad \tan x = 1$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{4}$$

The coordinates of the points of intersection are

$$\left(\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad \left(\frac{5\pi}{4}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}\right)$$

**Example 32**

Solve the equation $\sin(2x) = \cos(2x)$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.

Solution

$$\sin(2x) = \cos(2x) \quad \text{implies} \quad \tan(2x) = 1$$

$$\therefore 2x = \frac{\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{9\pi}{4} \text{ or } \frac{13\pi}{4}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{\pi}{8} \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{8} \text{ or } \frac{9\pi}{8} \text{ or } \frac{13\pi}{8}$$

Summary C9

- The tangent function is given by $\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta}$ for $\cos \theta \neq 0$.
 - The period is π .
 - The vertical asymptotes have equations $\theta = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2}$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.
 - The axis intercepts are at $\theta = n\pi$ where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$.
- Useful symmetry properties:
 - $\tan(\pi + \theta) = \tan \theta$
 - $\tan(-\theta) = -\tan \theta$

Exercise C9

1 State the period for each of the following:

a $\tan(3\theta)$
 b $\tan\left(\frac{\theta}{2}\right)$
 c $\tan\left(\frac{3\theta}{2}\right)$
 d $\tan(\pi\theta)$
 e $\tan\left(\frac{\pi\theta}{2}\right)$

2 Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in (0, 2\pi)$:

a $y = \tan(2x)$
 b $y = 2 \tan(3x)$
 c $y = -2 \tan(2x)$

Example 26

Example 27**3** Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in (0, 2\pi)$:

a $y = 2 \tan\left(x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

b $y = 2 \tan 3\left(x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

c $y = 3 \tan 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

Example 28**4** Solve:

a $\tan(2x) = 1$ for $x \in (0, 2\pi)$

b $\tan(2x) = -1$ for $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$

c $\tan(2x) = -\sqrt{3}$ for $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$

d $\tan(2x) = \sqrt{3}$ for $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$

e $\tan(2x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ for $x \in (-\pi, \pi)$

Example 29**5** Solve the equation $\tan 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = 1$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.**6** Solve the equation $\tan\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt{3}$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.**Example 30****7** Sketch the graph of each of the following for $x \in (0, 2\pi)$:

a $y = 3 \tan x + 1$

b $y = 2 \tan\left(x + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 1$

c $y = 3 \tan 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) - 2$

8 Sketch the graph of $y = -2 \tan(\pi\theta)$ for $-2 \leq \theta \leq 2$.**9** Sketch the graph of $y = \tan(-2\theta)$ for $\frac{-\pi}{2} \leq \theta \leq \frac{\pi}{2}$.**Example 31****10 a** On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = \cos(2x)$ and $y = -\sin(2x)$ for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$.**b** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection.**Example 32****11** Solve each of the following equations for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$:

a $\sqrt{3} \sin x = \cos x$

b $\sin(4x) = \cos(4x)$

c $\sqrt{3} \sin(2x) = \cos(2x)$

d $-\sqrt{3} \sin(2x) = \cos(2x)$

e $\sin(3x) = -\cos(3x)$

f $\sin x = 0.5 \cos x$

g $\sin x = 2 \cos x$

h $\sin(2x) = -\cos(2x)$

i $\cos(3x) = \sqrt{3} \sin(3x)$

j $\sin(3x) = \sqrt{3} \cos(3x)$

12 a On the same set of axes, sketch the graphs of $y = \cos x$ and $y = \sqrt{3} \sin x$ for $x \in [0, 2\pi]$.**b** Determine the coordinates of the points of intersection.**13** Solve each of the following equations for $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$:

a $\tan\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \sqrt{3}$

b $3 \tan(2x) = -\sqrt{3}$

c $\tan\left(3x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) = -1$

14 A function with rule $y = A \tan(nt)$ has the following properties:

- the asymptotes have equations $t = \frac{(2k+1)\pi}{6}$ where $k \in \mathbb{Z}$
- when $t = \frac{\pi}{12}$, $y = 5$.

Determine values for A and n .**15** A function with rule $y = A \tan(nt)$ has period 2 and, when $t = \frac{1}{2}$, $y = 6$. Determine values for A and n .

C10 Applications of trigonometric functions

Learning intentions

- To be able to use trigonometric functions to model.

A **sinusoidal function** has a rule of the form $y = a \sin(bt + h) + k$ or, equivalently, of the form $y = a \cos(bt + h) + k$. Such functions can be used to model periodic motion.



Example 33

A wheel is mounted on a wall and rotates such that the distance, d cm, of a particular point P on the wheel from the ground is given by the rule

$$d = 100 - 60 \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right)$$

where t is the time in seconds.

- How far is the point P above the ground when $t = 0$?
- How long does it take for the wheel to rotate once?
- Determine the maximum and minimum distances of the point P above the ground.
- Sketch the graph of d against t .
- In the first rotation, determine the intervals of time when the point P is less than 70 cm above the ground.

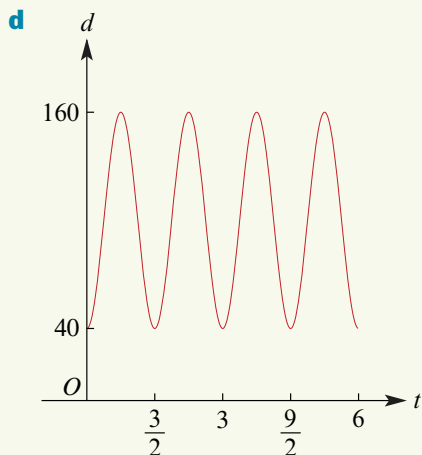
Solution

a When $t = 0$, $d = 100 - 60 \times 1 = 40$. The point is 40 cm above the ground.

b The period is $2\pi \div \frac{4\pi}{3} = \frac{3}{2}$. The wheel takes $\frac{3}{2}$ seconds to rotate once.

c The minimum occurs when $\cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right) = 1$, which gives $d = 100 - 60 = 40$. Hence the minimum distance is 40 cm.

The maximum occurs when $\cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right) = -1$, which gives $d = 100 + 60 = 160$. Hence the maximum distance is 160 cm.



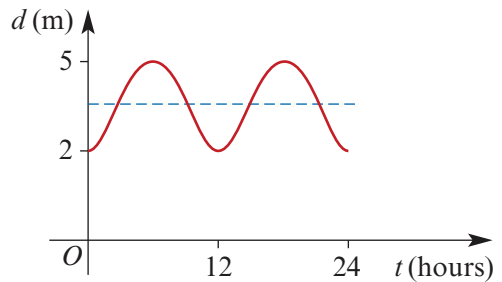
$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{e } 100 - 60 \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right) &= 70 \\
 -60 \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right) &= -30 \\
 \cos\left(\frac{4\pi}{3}t\right) &= \frac{1}{2} \\
 \therefore \frac{4\pi}{3}t &= \frac{\pi}{3} \text{ or } \frac{5\pi}{3} \\
 t &= \frac{1}{4} \text{ or } \frac{5}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

From the graph, the distance is less than 70 cm for $0 \leq t < \frac{1}{4}$ and for $\frac{5}{4} < t \leq \frac{3}{2}$.

Exercise C10

Example 33

- 1** The graph shows the distance, $d(t)$, of the tip of the hour hand of a large clock from the ceiling at time t hours.



- a** The function d is sinusoidal.

Determine:

- i** the amplitude
 - ii** the period
 - iii** the rule for $d(t)$
 - iv** the length of the hour hand.
- b** At what times is the distance less than 3.5 metres from the ceiling?

- 2** In a tidal river, the time between high tides is 12 hours. The average depth of water at a point in the river is 5 m; at high tide the depth is 8 m. Assume that the depth of water, $h(t)$ m, at this point is given by

$$h(t) = A \sin(nt + \varepsilon) + b$$

where t is the number of hours after noon. At noon there is a high tide.

- a** Determine the values of A , n , b and ε .
 - b** At what times is the depth of the water 6 m?
 - c** Sketch the graph of $y = h(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
- 3** Passengers on a ferris wheel access their seats from a platform 5 m above the ground. As each seat is filled, the ferris wheel moves around so that the next seat can be filled. Once all seats are filled, the ride begins and lasts for 6 minutes. The height, h m, of Isobel's seat above the ground t seconds after the ride has begun is given by $h = 15 \sin(10t - 45)^\circ + 16.5$.

- a** Use a calculator to sketch the graph of h against t for the first 2 minutes of the ride.
- b** How far above the ground is Isobel's seat at the commencement of the ride?
- c** After how many seconds does Isobel's seat pass the access platform?
- d** How many times will her seat pass the access platform in the first 2 minutes?
- e** How many times will her seat pass the access platform during the entire ride?

Due to a malfunction, the ferris wheel stops abruptly 1 minute 40 seconds into the ride.

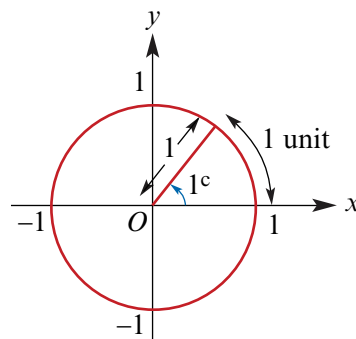
- f** How far above the ground is Isobel stranded?
- g** If Isobel's brother Hamish had a seat 1.5 m above the ground at the commencement of the ride, how far above the ground is Hamish stranded?

Chapter summary

■ Definition of a radian

One radian (written 1^c) is the angle formed at the centre of the unit circle by an arc of length 1 unit.

$$1^c = \frac{180^\circ}{\pi} \quad 1^\circ = \frac{\pi^c}{180}$$



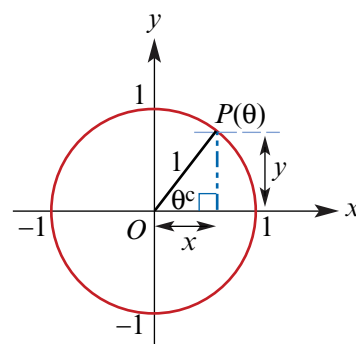
■ Sine and cosine functions

x -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ on unit circle:

$$x = \cos \theta, \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}$$

y -coordinate of $P(\theta)$ on unit circle:

$$y = \sin \theta, \quad \theta \in \mathbb{R}$$



■ Tangent function

$$\tan \theta = \frac{\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} \quad \text{for } \cos \theta \neq 0$$

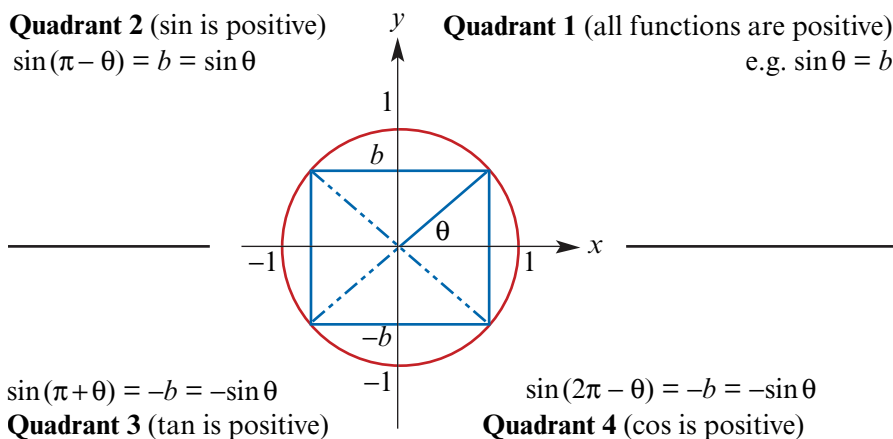
■ Symmetry properties of trigonometric functions

Quadrant 2 (sin is positive)

$$\sin(\pi - \theta) = b = \sin \theta$$

Quadrant 1 (all functions are positive)

$$\text{e.g. } \sin \theta = b$$



$$\sin(\pi + \theta) = -b = -\sin \theta$$

Quadrant 3 (tan is positive)

$$\sin(2\pi - \theta) = -b = -\sin \theta$$

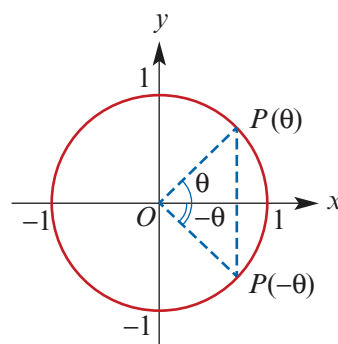
Quadrant 4 (cos is positive)

Negative angles:

$$\sin(-\theta) = -\sin \theta$$

$$\cos(-\theta) = \cos \theta$$

$$\tan(-\theta) = \frac{-\sin \theta}{\cos \theta} = -\tan \theta$$



Complementary angles:

$$\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \cos \theta, \quad \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = \cos \theta$$

$$\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right) = \sin \theta, \quad \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + \theta\right) = -\sin \theta$$

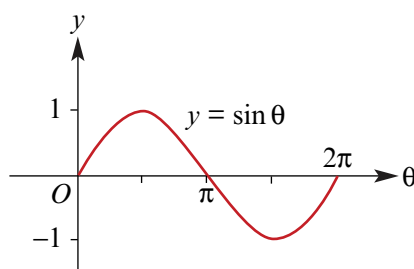
■ **Pythagorean identity**

$$\cos^2 \theta + \sin^2 \theta = 1$$

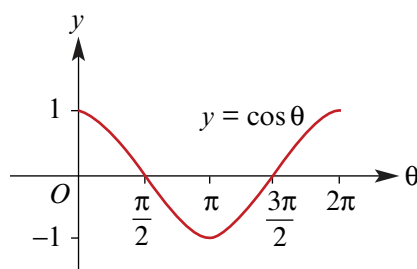
■ **Exact values of trigonometric functions**

θ	$\sin \theta$	$\cos \theta$	$\tan \theta$
0	0	1	0
$\frac{\pi}{6}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
$\frac{\pi}{4}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$	1
$\frac{\pi}{3}$	$\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	$\sqrt{3}$
$\frac{\pi}{2}$	1	0	undefined

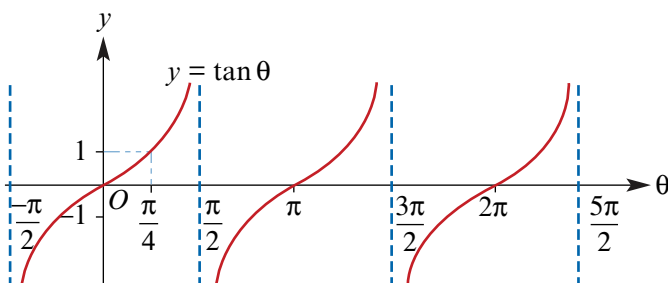
■ **Graphs of trigonometric functions**



Amplitude = 1
Period = 2π



Amplitude = 1
Period = 2π

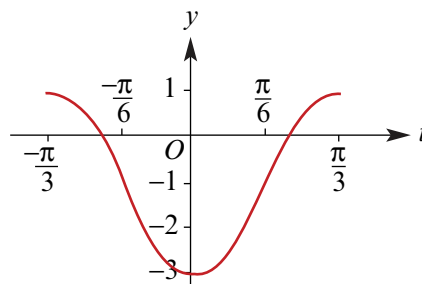


Amplitude is undefined
Period = π

- Transformations of sine and cosine graphs:
 $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm k$

e.g. $y = 2 \cos 3\left(t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - 1$

- Amplitude, $a = 2$
- Period $= \frac{2\pi}{b} = \frac{2\pi}{3}$



- The graph is the same shape as $y = 2 \cos(3t)$ but is translated $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units in the negative direction of the t -axis and 1 unit in the negative direction of the y -axis.
- Transformations of the graph of $y = \tan t$
e.g. $y = a \tan b(t + h) + k$, where $n > 0$
- Period $= \frac{\pi}{b}$
- Asymptotes: $t = \frac{(2n+1)\pi}{2b} - h$, where $n \in \mathbb{Z}$

■ Solution of trigonometric equations

e.g. Solve $\cos x^\circ = -0.7$ for $x \in [0, 360]$.

First look at the 1st quadrant: If $\cos \alpha^\circ = 0.7$, then $\alpha = 45.6$.

Since $\cos x^\circ$ is negative for $P(x^\circ)$ in the 2nd and 3rd quadrants, the solutions are

$$x = 180 - 45.6 = 134.4 \quad \text{and} \quad x = 180 + 45.6 = 225.6$$

Skills checklist



Download this checklist from the Interactive Textbook, then print it and fill it out to check your skills.



4A

1 I can convert degrees to radians and vice versa.



See Example 1 Example 2 and Questions 1 and 2

4B

2 I can evaluate trigonometric functions using exact values.



See Example 3 Example 5 and Questions 1 and 3

4B

3 I can evaluate trigonometric functions using symmetry properties.



See Example 4 Example 6 Example 7 and Questions 2, 4 and 6

4C

4 I can evaluate trigonometric functions using the complementary symmetry properties.



See Example 8 and Question 1

4C

5 I can use the Pythagorean identity to evaluate functions.



See Example 9 and Question 2

4D

6 I can identify the amplitude and period of a trigonometric function.



See Example 10 and Question 1

- 4D** **7** I can identify a sequence of transformation to help sketch the graph of a trigonometric function. ☐

See Example 11 and Question 2

- 4D** **8** I can sketch graphs of trigonometric functions with rule $y = a \sin bt$ and $y = a \cos bt$. ☐

See Example 12 Example 13 Example 14 and Questions 4, 5 and 10

- 4E** **9** I can solve equations of the form $\sin t = d$ and $\cos t = d$. ☐

See Example 15 Example 16 Example 17 and Questions 1, 4 and 6

- 4F** **10** I can sketch graphs of trigonometric functions with rule $y = a \sin b(t \pm h)$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h)$. ☐

See Example 19 Example 20 and Questions 1 and 2

- 4G** **11** I can sketch graphs of trigonometric functions with rule $y = a \sin b(t \pm h) \pm k$ and $y = a \cos b(t \pm h) \pm k$. ☐

See Example 21 Example 22 and Questions 1 and 2

- 4H** **12** I can determine rules for the graphs of trigonometric functions given sufficient information. ☐

See Example 23 Example 24 Example 25 and Questions 1, 2, 4 and 5

- 4I** **13** I can sketch the graph of the tangent functions and simple transformations of this function. ☐

See Example 26 Example 27 and Questions 2 and 3

- 4I** **14** I can solve equations involving the tangent function. ☐

See Example 28 Example 29 Example 30 Example 31 Example 32 and Questions 4, 5 10 and 11

- 4J** **15** I can use the trigonometric functions to solve problems. ☐

See Example 33 and Question 1

Short-response questions

Technology-free short-response questions

1 Determine:

a $\sin(2\pi - \theta)$ if $\sin \theta = 0.4$

c $\tan(\pi + \theta)$ if $\tan \theta = 2$

e $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2} - \theta\right)$ if $\cos \theta = \frac{1}{5}$

b $\cos(-\theta)$ if $\cos \theta = -0.6$

d $\sin(\pi + \theta)$ if $\sin \theta = 0.7$

f $\cos \theta$ if $\sin \theta = \frac{4}{5}$ and $0 < \theta < \frac{\pi}{2}$

2 Solve each of the following equations for $x \in [-\pi, 2\pi]$:

a $\sin x = \frac{1}{2}$

b $2 \cos x = -1$

c $2 \cos x = \sqrt{3}$

d $\sqrt{2} \sin x + 1 = 0$

e $4 \sin x + 2 = 0$

f $\sin(2x) + 1 = 0$

g $\cos(2x) = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}}$

h $2 \sin(3x) - 1 = 0$

3 Sketch the graph of each of the following, showing one cycle. Clearly label axis intercepts.

a $f(x) = \sin(3x)$

b $f(x) = 2 \sin(2x) - 1$

c $g(x) = 2 \sin(2x) + 1$

d $f(x) = 2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

e $f(x) = 2 \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{3}\right)$

f $h(x) = 2 \cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{4}\right)$

4 Solve each of the following equations for $x \in [0, 360]$:

a $\sin x^\circ = 0.5$

b $\cos(2x)^\circ = 0$

c $2 \sin x^\circ = -\sqrt{3}$

d $\sin(2x + 60)^\circ = \frac{-\sqrt{3}}{2}$

e $2 \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x\right)^\circ = \sqrt{3}$

5 Sketch the graph of each of the following, showing one cycle. Clearly label axis intercepts.

a $y = 2 \sin\left(x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 2$

b $y = -2 \sin\left(x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 1$

c $y = 2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right) + \sqrt{3}$

d $y = -3 \sin x$

e $y = \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + 3$

f $y = 2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 1$

6 Sketch, on the same set of axes, the curves $y = \cos x$ and $y = \sin(2x)$ for the interval $0 \leq x \leq 2\pi$, labelling each curve carefully. State the number of solutions in this interval for each of the following equations:

a $\sin(2x) = 0.6$

b $\sin(2x) = \cos x$

c $\sin(2x) - \cos x = 1$

7 Sketch on separate axes for $0^\circ \leq x^\circ \leq 360^\circ$:

a $y = 3 \cos x^\circ$

b $y = \cos(2x)^\circ$

c $y = \cos(x - 30)^\circ$

8 Solve each of the following for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$:

a $\tan x = \sqrt{3}$

b $\tan x = -1$

c $\tan(2x) = -1$

d $\tan(2x) + \sqrt{3} = 0$

9 Solve the equation $\sin x = \sqrt{3} \cos x$ for $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$.

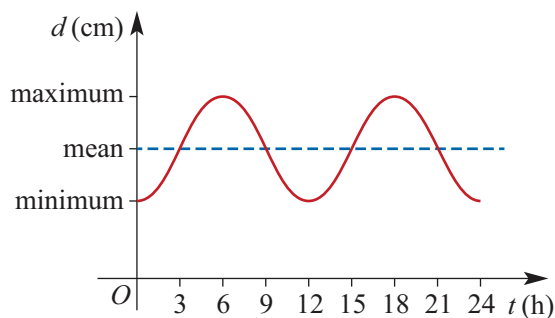
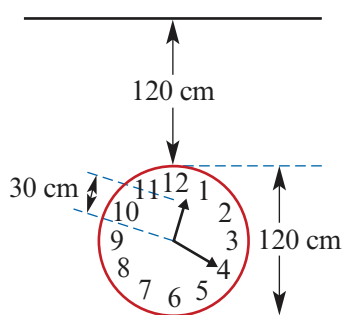
10 The graphs of $y = a \cos x$ and $y = \sin x$, where a is a real constant, have a point of intersection at $x = \frac{\pi}{6}$.

a Determine the value of a .

b If $x \in [-\pi, \pi]$, determine the x -coordinate(s) of the other point(s) of intersection of the two graphs.

Technology-active short-response questions

- 11** In a tidal river, the time between high tide and low tide is 6 hours. The average depth of water at a point in the river is 4 metres; at high tide the depth is 5 metres.
- Sketch the graph of the depth of water at the point for the time interval from 0 to 24 hours if the relationship between time and depth is sinusoidal and there is high tide at noon.
 - If a boat requires a depth of 4 metres of water in order to sail, at what time before noon can it enter the point in the river and by what time must it leave if it is not to be stranded?
 - If a boat requires a depth of 3.5 metres of water in order to sail, at what time before noon can it enter the point in the river and by what time must it leave if it is not to be stranded?
- 12** A clock hangs 120 cm below a ceiling. The diameter of the clock is 120 cm, and the length of the hour hand is 30 cm. The graph shows the distance from the ceiling to the tip of the hour hand over a 24-hour period.



- What are the values for the maximum, minimum and mean distance?
- An equation that determines this curve is of the form

$$y = A \sin(nt + \epsilon) + b$$

Determine suitable values of A , n , ϵ and b .

- Determine the distance from the ceiling to the tip of the hour hand at:
 - 2 a.m.
 - 11 p.m.
- Determine the times in the morning at which the tip of the hour hand is 200 cm below the ceiling.

13

A weight is suspended from a spring as shown. The weight is pulled down 3 cm from O and released. The vertical displacement from O at time t is described by a function of the form

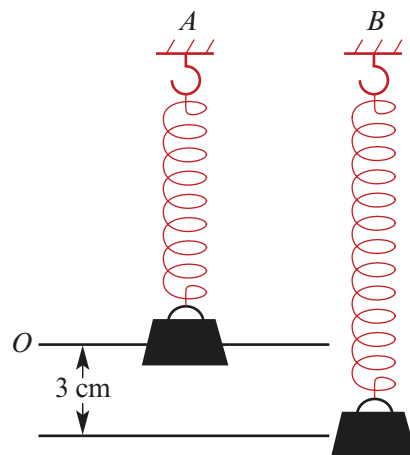
$$y = a \cos(nt)$$

where y cm is the vertical displacement at time t seconds. The following data were recorded.

t	0	0.5	1
y	-3	3	-3

It was also noted that the centre of the weight went no further than 3 cm from the centre O .

- Determine the values of a and n .
- Sketch the graph of y against t .
- Determine when the centre of the weight is first:
 - 1.5 cm above O
 - 1.5 cm below O .
- When does the weight first reach a point 1 cm below O ?



- 14 The manager of a reservoir and its catchment area has noted that the inflow of water into the reservoir is very predictable and in fact models the inflow using a function with rule of the form

$$y = a \sin(nt + \epsilon) + b$$

The following observations were made:

- The average inflow is $100\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$.
 - The minimum daily inflow is $80\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$.
 - The maximum daily inflow is $120\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$, and this occurs on 1 May ($t = 121$) each year.
- Determine the values of a , b and n and the smallest possible positive value for ϵ .
 - Sketch the graph of y against t .
 - Determine the times of year when the inflow per day is:
 - $90\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$
 - $110\,000 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$
 - Determine the inflow rate on 1 June.

- 15 The number of hours of daylight at a point on the Antarctic Circle is given approximately by $d = 12 + 12 \cos\left(\frac{1}{6}\pi\left(t + \frac{1}{3}\right)\right)$, where t is the number of months that have elapsed since 1 January.

- Determine d on 21 June ($t \approx 5.7$).
 - Determine d on 21 March ($t \approx 2.7$).
- When will there be 5 hours of daylight?

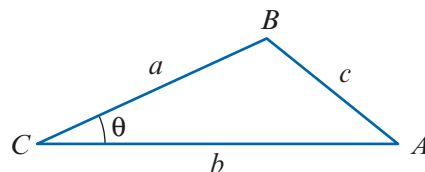
- 16** The depth, $D(t)$ m, of water at the entrance to a harbour at t hours after midnight on a particular day is given by $D(t) = 10 + 3 \sin\left(\frac{\pi t}{6}\right)$, $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
- a** Sketch the graph of $y = D(t)$ for $0 \leq t \leq 24$.
 - b** Determine the values of t for which $D(t) \geq 8.5$.
 - c** Boats that need a depth of w m are permitted to enter the harbour only if the depth of the water at the entrance is at least w m for a continuous period of 1 hour. Determine, correct to one decimal place, the largest value of w that satisfies this condition.

- 17** The area of a triangle is given by

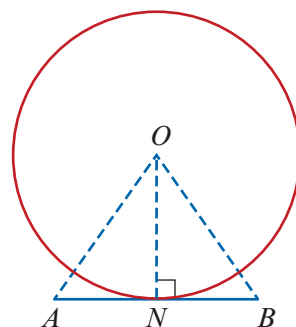
$$A = \frac{1}{2}ab \sin \theta$$

and the perimeter is given by

$$P = a + b + \sqrt{a^2 + b^2 - 2ab \cos \theta}$$



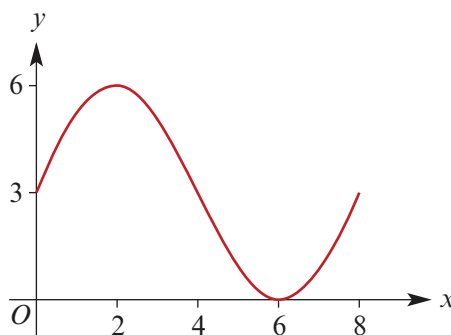
- a** For $a = b = 10$ and $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$, determine:
 - i** the area of the triangle
 - ii** the perimeter of the triangle.
 - b** For $a = b = 10$, determine the value(s) of θ for which $A = P$. (Give value(s) correct to two decimal places.)
 - c** Show graphically that, if $a = b = 6$, then $P > A$ for all θ .
 - d** Assume $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$. If $a = 6$, determine the value of b such that $A = P$.
 - e** For $a = 10$ and $b = 6$, determine the value(s) of θ for which $A = P$.
 - f** If $a = b$ and $\theta = \frac{\pi}{3}$, determine the value of a such that $A = P$.
- 18** AB is one side of a regular n -sided polygon that circumscribes a circle (i.e. each edge of the polygon is tangent to the circle). The circle has radius 1.
- a** Show that the area of triangle OAB is $\tan\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)$.
 - b** Show that the area, A , of the polygon is given by $A = n \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)$.
 - c** Use a calculator to help sketch the graph of $A(x) = x \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{x}\right)$ for $x \geq 3$. Label the horizontal asymptote.
 - d** What is the difference in area of the polygon and the circle when:
 - i** $n = 3$ **ii** $n = 4$ **iii** $n = 12$ **iv** $n = 50$?
 - e** State the area of an n -sided polygon that circumscribes a circle of radius r cm.
 - f** **i** Determine a formula for the area of an n -sided regular polygon that can be inscribed in a circle of radius 1.
 - ii** Sketch the graph of this function for $x \geq 3$.



Multiple-choice questions

Technology-free multiple-choice questions

- The period of the graph of $y = 3 \sin\left(\frac{1}{2}x - \pi\right) + 4$ is
A π **B** 3 **C** 4π **D** $\pi + 4$
- The range of the graph of $y = f(x)$, where $f(x) = 5 \cos\left(2x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - 7$, is
A $[-12, -2]$ **B** $[-7, 7]$ **C** $(-2, 5)$ **D** $[-2, 5]$
- Let $f(x) = a \sin(bx) + k$ for all $x \in \mathbb{R}$, where a , b and k are positive constants. The function f has period
A a **B** b **C** $\frac{2\pi}{a}$ **D** $\frac{2\pi}{b}$
- Define the function f by $f(x) = \cos(3x) - 1$ for $x \in \left[0, \frac{2\pi}{9}\right]$. The range of f is
A $(-1, 0)$ **B** $(-2, 0]$ **C** $\left(-\frac{3}{2}, 0\right]$ **D** $\left[-\frac{3}{2}, 0\right]$
- The vertical distance of a point on a wheel from the ground as it rotates is given by $D(t) = 3 - 3 \sin(6\pi t)$, where t is the time in seconds. The time in seconds for a full rotation of the wheel is
A $\frac{1}{6\pi}$ **B** $\frac{1}{3}$ **C** 6π **D** $\frac{1}{3\pi}$
- The equation of the image of $y = \cos x$ under a transformation of a dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, followed by a translation of $\frac{\pi}{4}$ units in the positive direction of the x -axis is
A $y = \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **B** $y = \cos\left(\frac{1}{2}x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
C $y = 2 \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ **D** $y = 2 \sin\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$
- Which of the following is likely to be the rule for the graph of the trigonometric function shown?
A $y = 3 + 3 \cos\left(\frac{\pi x}{4}\right)$
B $y = 3 + 3 \sin\left(\frac{\pi x}{4}\right)$
C $y = 3 + 3 \sin(4\pi x)$
D $y = 3 + 3 \cos\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)$



- 8** Consider the function $f(x) = \cos(3x) - 2$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$. If the graph of f is transformed by a reflection in the x -axis followed by a dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis, then the resulting graph is defined by
- A** $g(x) = 6 - 3 \cos(3x)$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$ **B** $g(x) = 3 \cos x - 6$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$
C $g(x) = 2 - \cos x$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{3\pi}{2}\right]$ **D** $g(x) = \cos(-x) - 2$, $x \in \left[0, \frac{\pi}{2}\right]$
- 9** The equation $3 \sin x - 1 = d$, where d is a positive real number, has one solution in the interval $(0, 2\pi)$. The value of d is
- A** 2 **B** 0.2 **C** 3 **D** 5
- 10** Let $f(x) = p \cos(5x) + q$, where $p > 0$. Then $f(x) \leq 0$ for all values of x if
- A** $q \geq 0$ **B** $-p \leq q \leq p$ **C** $p \leq -q$ **D** $p \geq q$

Technology-active multiple-choice questions

- 11** The period of the function with rule $f(x) = \frac{3}{4} \cos\left(\frac{8\pi x}{7}\right)$ is
- A** $\frac{7}{4}$ **B** $\frac{2}{3}$ **C** $\frac{3\pi}{2}$ **D** $\frac{16\pi}{7}$
- 12** The function f has rule $f(x) = \frac{7}{8} \cos\left(\frac{3\pi x}{2}\right)$ and $0.1 \leq x \leq 1$. The maximum value of f correct to two decimal places is
- A** 0.88 **B** 0.86 **C** 0.80 **D** 0.78
- 13** The solution to the equation $3 \cos(2x - 4) = -2$ in the interval $0.5 < x < 1$ correct to two decimal places is
- A** 0.85 **B** 0.86 **C** 0.90 **D** 0.01

Answers

Appendix C

Exercise C1

- 1 a $\frac{5\pi}{18}$ b $\frac{34\pi}{45}$ c $\frac{25\pi}{18}$
d $\frac{17\pi}{9}$ e $\frac{7\pi}{3}$ f $\frac{49\pi}{18}$
2 a 60° b 150° c 240°
d 140° e 630° f 252°
3 a 45.84° b 93.97° c 143.24°
d 226.89° e 239.50° f 340.91°
4 a 0.65 b 1.29 c 2.01
d 2.13 e 5.93 f 2.31

Exercise C2

- 1 a 0 b 0 c -1 d -1 e 0 f 0
g 0 h 0 i -1 j 0 k -1 l 0
m 0 n 1
2 a 0.99 b 0.52 c -0.87 d 0.92
e -0.67 f -0.23 g -0.99 h 0.44
i -34.23 j -2.57 k 0.95 l 0.75
3 a $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ b $-\frac{1}{2}$ c $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ d $\frac{1}{2}$
e $-\frac{1}{2}$ f $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ g $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ h $\frac{1}{2}$
i $\frac{1}{2}$ j $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ k $\frac{1}{2}$ l $\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$
m $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ n $-\frac{1}{2}$ o $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$ p $-\frac{1}{2}$
q $-\sqrt{3}$ r $-\sqrt{3}$ s $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ t $\sqrt{3}$
u -1 v $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$
4 a 0.52 b -0.68 c 0.52 d 0.4
e -0.52 f 0.68 g -0.4 h -0.68
i -0.52 j 0.68 k -0.4
5 a 0.4 b -0.7 c 0.4 d 1.2

- e -0.4 f 0.7 g -1.2 h -0.7
i -0.4 j 0.7 k -1.2
6 a $\frac{1}{2}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$ b $-\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1$
c $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1$ d $-\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{2}, \sqrt{3}$
e $\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}, 1$ f $-\frac{1}{2}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}, -\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

Exercise C3

- 1 a 0.6 b 0.6 c -0.7 d 0.3
e -0.3 f $\frac{10}{7}$ g -0.3 h 0.6
i -0.6 j -0.3 k $\frac{10}{7}$ l 0.3
2 a $-\frac{4}{5}, -\frac{4}{3}$ b $-\frac{12}{13}, -\frac{5}{12}$
c $-\frac{2\sqrt{6}}{5}, -2\sqrt{6}$ d $-\frac{5}{13}, \frac{12}{5}$
e $-\frac{3}{5}, -\frac{3}{4}$ f $-\frac{12}{13}, \frac{5}{12}$ g $-\frac{3}{5}, -\frac{3}{4}$

Exercise C4

- 1 a $2\pi, 3$ b $\frac{2\pi}{3}, 5$ c $\pi, \frac{1}{2}$ d $6\pi, 2$
e $\frac{\pi}{2}, 3$ f $2\pi, \frac{1}{2}$ g $4\pi, 3$ h $3\pi, 2$
2 a Dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis, dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis;
Amplitude = 4; Period = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$
b Dilation of factor 5 from the x -axis, dilation of factor 3 from the y -axis;
Amplitude = 5; Period = 6π
c Dilation of factor 6 from the x -axis, dilation of factor 2 from the y -axis;
Amplitude = 6; Period = 4π
d Dilation of factor 4 from the x -axis, dilation of

factor $\frac{1}{5}$ from the y -axis;

Amplitude = 4; Period = $\frac{2\pi}{5}$

- 3 a** Dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis, dilation of factor $\frac{1}{3}$ from the y -axis;

Amplitude = 2; Period = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$

- b** Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, dilation of factor 4 from the y -axis;

Amplitude = 3; Period = 8π

- c** Dilation of factor 6 from the x -axis, dilation of factor 5 from the y -axis;

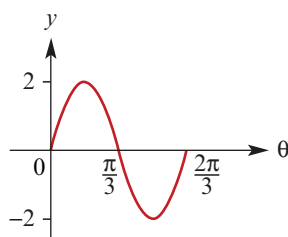
Amplitude = 6; Period = 10π

- d** Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis, dilation of factor $\frac{1}{7}$ from the y -axis;

Amplitude = 3; Period = $\frac{2\pi}{7}$

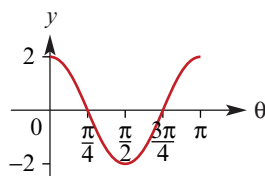
- 4 a** Amplitude = 2

Period = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$



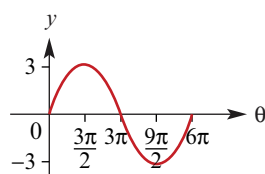
- b** Amplitude = 2

Period = π



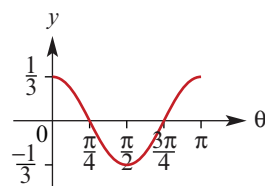
- c** Amplitude = 3

Period = 6π



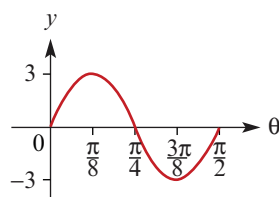
- d** Amplitude = $\frac{1}{3}$

Period = π



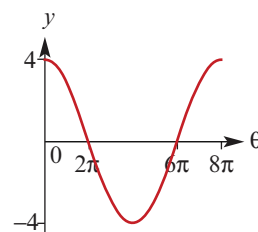
- e** Amplitude = 3

Period = $\frac{\pi}{2}$

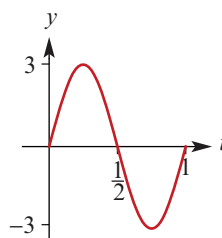


- f** Amplitude = 4

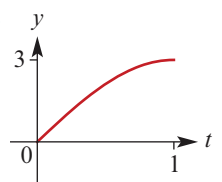
Period = 8π



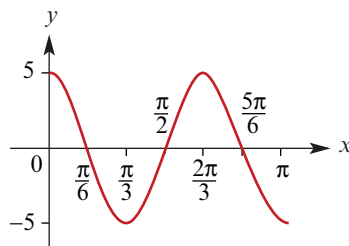
5



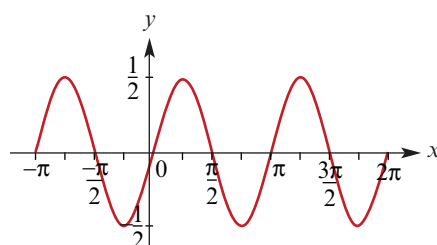
6



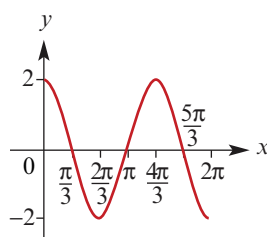
7

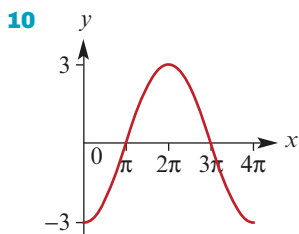


8



9





11 $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$

12 $y = \frac{1}{2} \cos\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$

13 $y = \frac{1}{2} \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

Exercise C5

1 a $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$ **b** $\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}, \frac{13\pi}{6}, \frac{23\pi}{6}$

c $\frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}, \frac{10\pi}{3}, \frac{11\pi}{3}$ **d** $\pi, 3\pi$

2 a $-\frac{5\pi}{6}, -\frac{\pi}{6}$ **b** $-\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{6}$ **c** $-\frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$

d $\frac{\pi}{2}$

3 a $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}$ **b** $\frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}$ **c** $\frac{5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}$

d $\frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$ **e** $\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$ **f** $\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}$

4 a 0.643501, 2.49809 **b** 0.643501, 5.63968
c 3.60836, 5.81642 **d** 1.77215, 4.51103

5 a $17.46^\circ, 162.54^\circ$ **b** $66.42^\circ, 293.58^\circ$
c $233.13^\circ, 306.87^\circ$ **d** $120^\circ, 240^\circ$

6 a $60^\circ, 300^\circ$ **b** $60^\circ, 120^\circ$ **c** $225^\circ, 315^\circ$
d $120^\circ, 240^\circ$ **e** $60^\circ, 120^\circ$ **f** $150^\circ, 210^\circ$

7 a $\frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{11\pi}{12}, \frac{19\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$

b $\frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{11\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$

c $\frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{17\pi}{12}$

d $\frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$

e $\frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{17\pi}{12}, \frac{19\pi}{12}$

f $\frac{5\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}, \frac{13\pi}{8}, \frac{15\pi}{8}$

8 a $\frac{5\pi}{18}, \frac{7\pi}{18}, \frac{17\pi}{18}, \frac{19\pi}{18}, \frac{29\pi}{18}, \frac{31\pi}{18}$

b $\frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{17\pi}{12}$

c $\frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{17\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$

d $\frac{\pi}{18}, \frac{5\pi}{18}, \frac{13\pi}{18}, \frac{17\pi}{18}, \frac{25\pi}{18}, \frac{29\pi}{18}$

e $\frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{9\pi}{8}, \frac{11\pi}{8}$

f $\frac{5\pi}{18}, \frac{7\pi}{18}, \frac{17\pi}{18}, \frac{19\pi}{18}, \frac{29\pi}{18}, \frac{31\pi}{18}$

g $\frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$

h $\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{3}$

i $\frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{5\pi}{8}, \frac{11\pi}{8}, \frac{13\pi}{8}$

9 a 2.03444, 2.67795, 5.17604, 5.81954

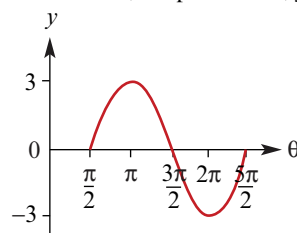
b 1.89255, 2.81984, 5.03414, 5.96143

c 0.57964, 2.56195, 3.72123, 5.70355

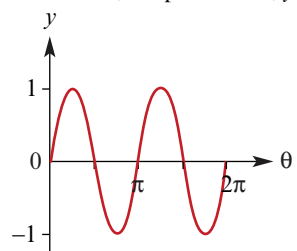
d 0.309098, 1.7853, 2.40349, 3.87969, 4.49789, 5.97409

Exercise C6

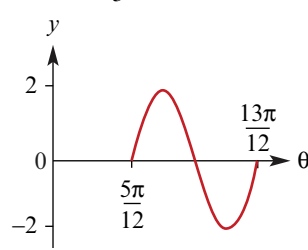
1 a Period = 2π ; Amplitude = 3; $y = \pm 3$



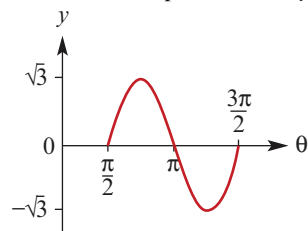
b Period = π ; Amplitude = 1; $y = \pm 1$



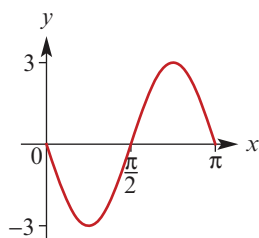
c Period = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$; Amplitude = 2; $y = \pm 2$



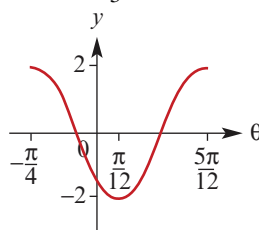
d Period = π ; Amplitude = $\sqrt{3}$; $y = \pm \sqrt{3}$



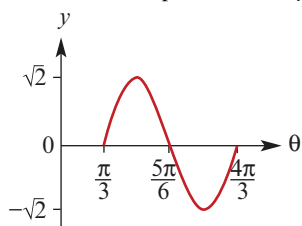
e Period = π ; Amplitude = 3; $y = \pm 3$



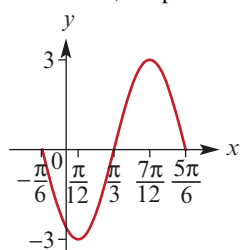
f Period = $\frac{2\pi}{3}$; Amplitude = 2; $y = \pm 2$



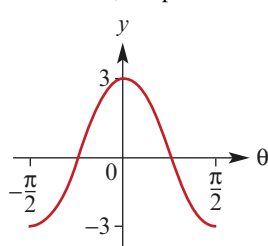
g Period = π ; Amplitude = $\sqrt{2}$; $y = \pm\sqrt{2}$



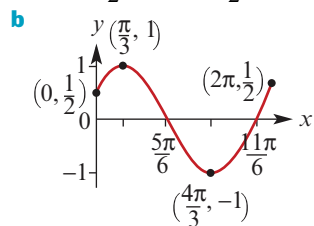
h Period = π ; Amplitude = 3; $y = \pm 3$



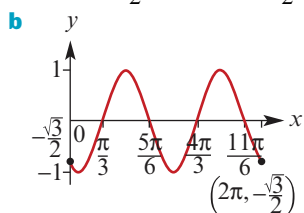
i Period = π ; Amplitude = 3; $y = \pm 3$



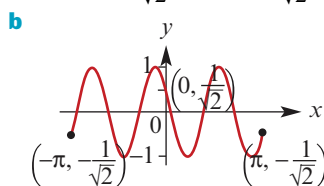
2 a $f(0) = \frac{1}{2}$, $f(2\pi) = \frac{1}{2}$



3 a $f(0) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$, $f(2\pi) = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$



4 a $f(-\pi) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$, $f(\pi) = -\frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$



5 a $y = 3 \sin\left(\frac{x}{2}\right)$

b $y = 3 \sin(2x)$

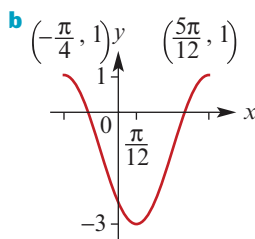
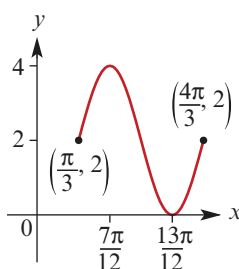
c $y = 2 \sin\left(\frac{x}{3}\right)$

d $y = \sin 2\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

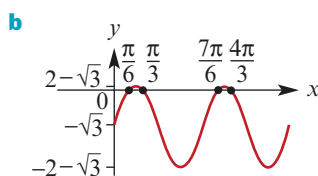
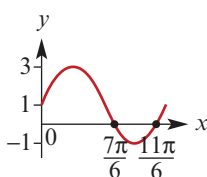
e $y = \sin \frac{1}{2}\left(x + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

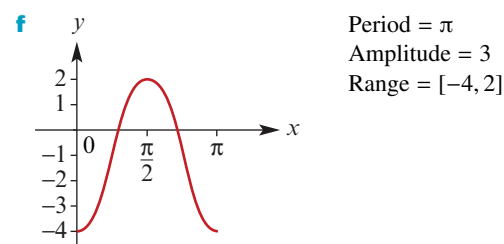
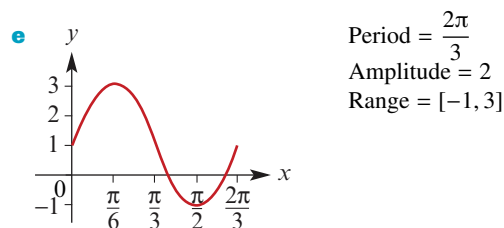
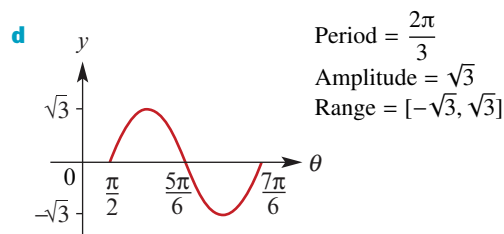
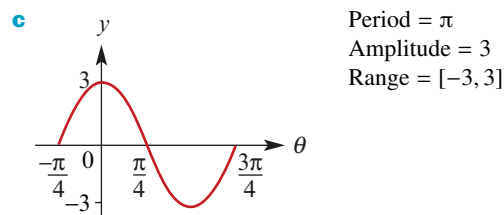
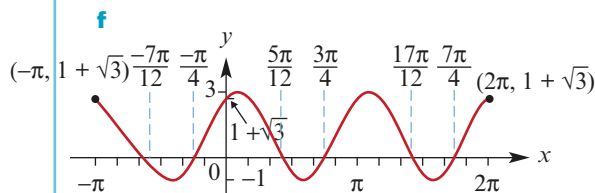
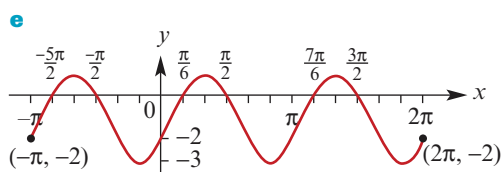
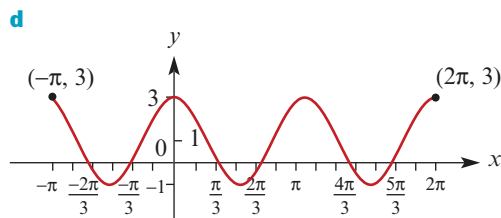
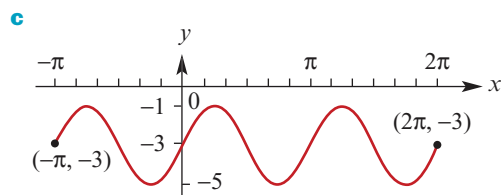
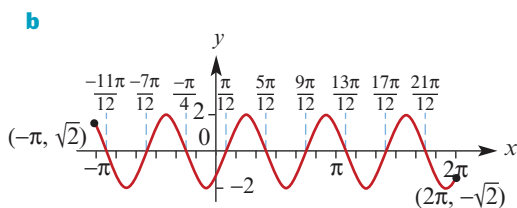
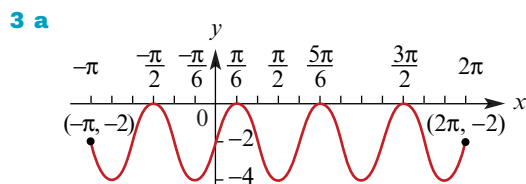
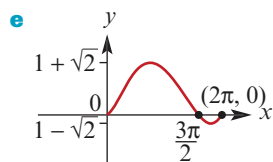
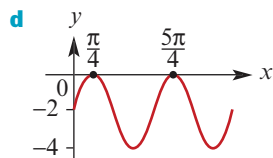
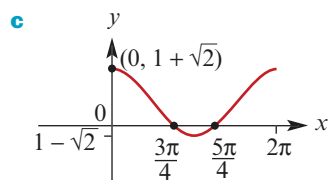
Exercise C7

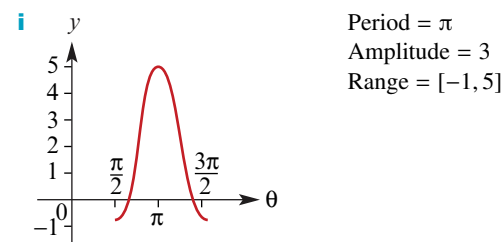
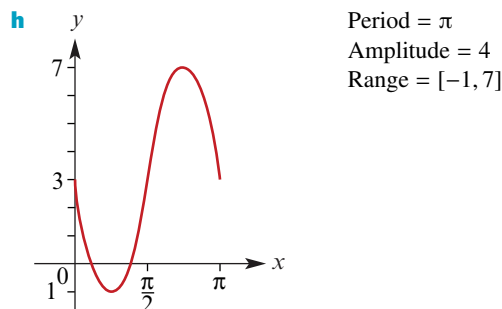
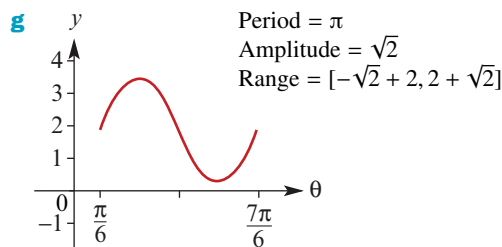
1 a



2 a







5 a $y = \frac{1}{2} \cos\left(\frac{1}{3}\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)\right)$

b $y = 2 \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

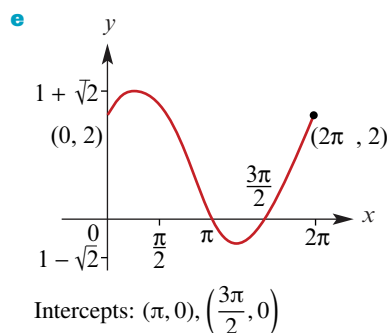
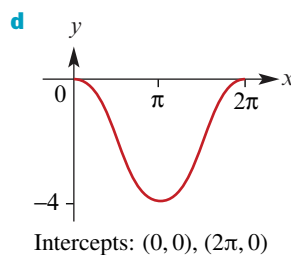
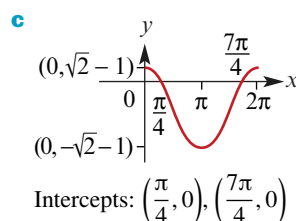
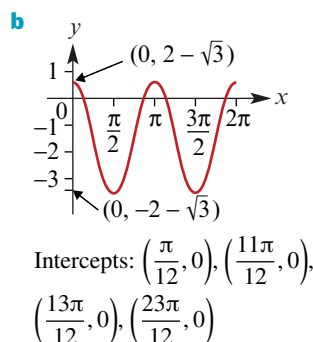
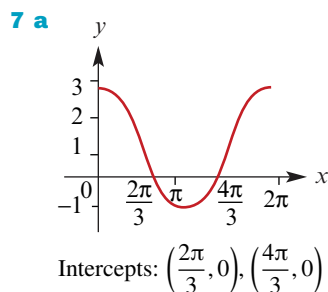
c $y = -\frac{1}{3} \cos\left(x - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

- 6 a** ■ Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
■ Reflection in the x -axis

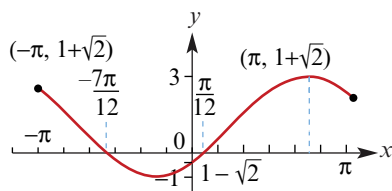
- b** ■ Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
■ Reflection in the x -axis
■ Translation $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units to the right

- c** ■ Dilation of factor 3 from the x -axis
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
■ Translation $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units to the right and 2 units up

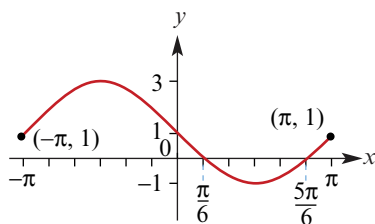
- d** ■ Dilation of factor 2 from the x -axis
■ Dilation of factor $\frac{1}{2}$ from the y -axis
■ Reflection in the x -axis
■ Translation $\frac{\pi}{3}$ units to the right and 5 units up



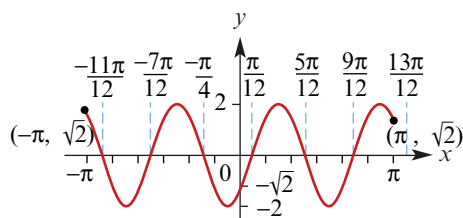
8 a



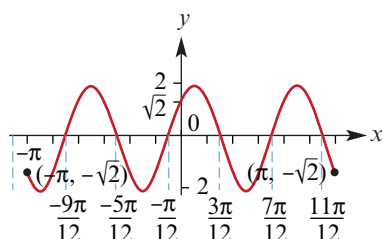
b



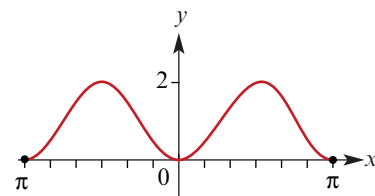
c



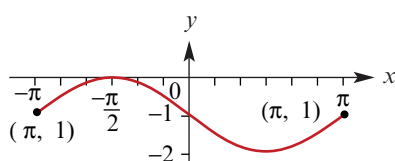
d



e

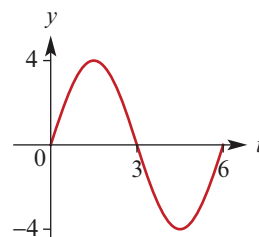


f

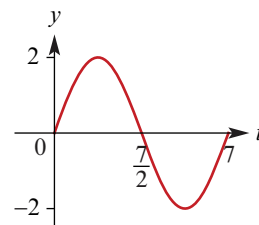


Exercise C8

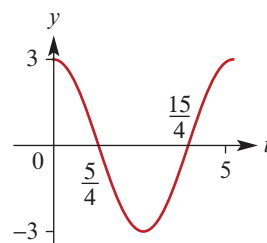
1 a $n = \frac{\pi}{3}$
 $A = 4$



b $n = \frac{2\pi}{7}$
 $A = 2$



c $n = \frac{2\pi}{5}$
 $A = 3$



2 a $A = 3, n = \frac{\pi}{4}$

3 $A = 0.5, \epsilon = \frac{-\pi}{3}$

4 $A = 3, n = 3, b = 5$

5 $A = 4, n = \frac{\pi}{4}, \epsilon = \frac{-\pi}{2}$

 (Note: ϵ can take infinitely many values)

6 $A = 2, n = \frac{\pi}{3}, \epsilon = \frac{-\pi}{6}$

 (Note: ϵ can take infinitely many values)

7 $A = 4, n = \frac{\pi}{4}, d = 2, \epsilon = \frac{-\pi}{2}$

 (Note: ϵ can take infinitely many values)

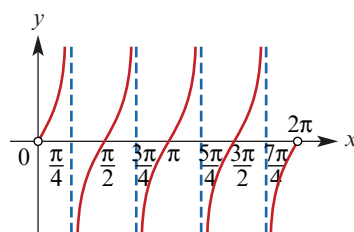
8 $A = 2, n = \frac{\pi}{3}, d = 2, \epsilon = \frac{-\pi}{6}$

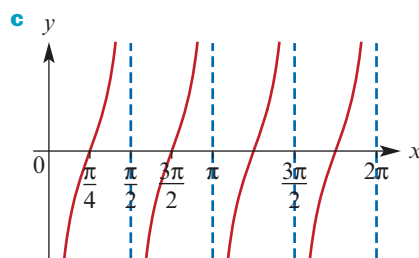
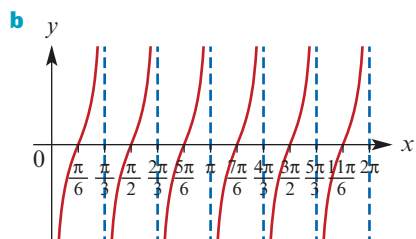
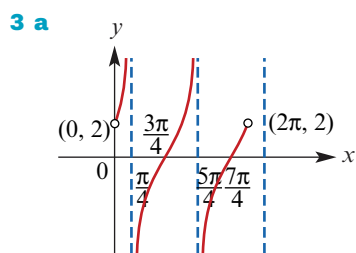
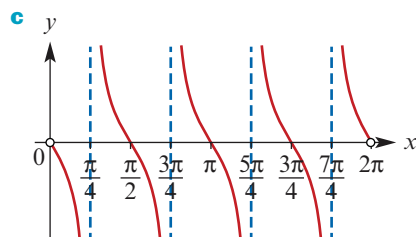
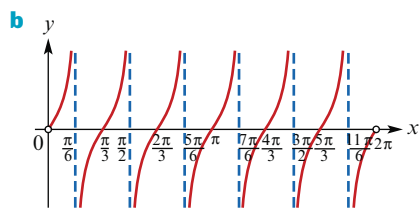
 (Note: ϵ can take infinitely many values)

Exercise C9

1 a $\frac{\pi}{3}$ b 2π c $\frac{2\pi}{3}$ d 1 e 2

2 a





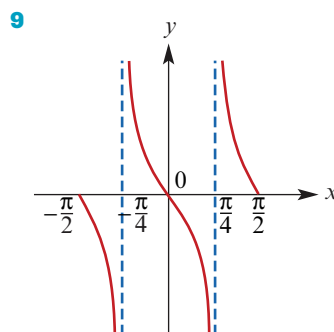
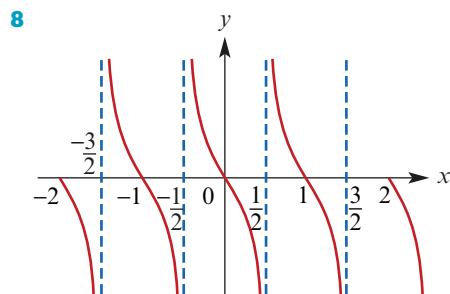
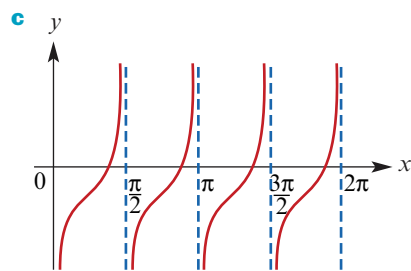
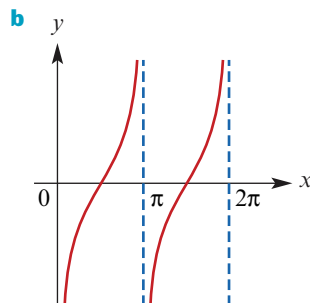
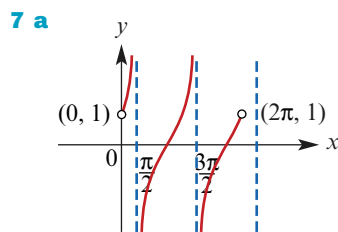
4 a $\frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{5\pi}{8}, \frac{9\pi}{8}, \frac{13\pi}{8}$ **b** $-\frac{5\pi}{8}, -\frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}$

c $-\frac{2\pi}{3}, -\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$ **d** $-\frac{5\pi}{6}, -\frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{2\pi}{3}$

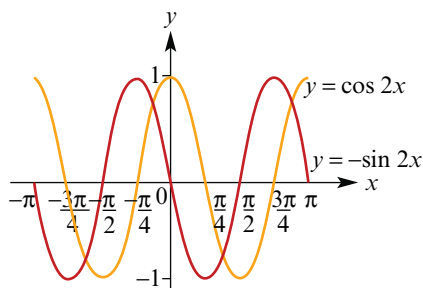
e $-\frac{11\pi}{12}, -\frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}$

5 $\frac{11\pi}{24}, \frac{23\pi}{24}, \frac{35\pi}{24}, \frac{47\pi}{24}$

6 $\frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{19\pi}{12}$



10 a



$$\mathbf{b} \left(\frac{-5\pi}{8}, \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} \right), \left(\frac{-\pi}{8}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right), \left(\frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{-1}{\sqrt{2}} \right), \left(\frac{7\pi}{8}, \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \right)$$

11 a

$$\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}$$

$$\mathbf{b} \frac{\pi}{16}, \frac{5\pi}{16}, \frac{9\pi}{16}, \frac{13\pi}{16}, \frac{17\pi}{16}, \frac{21\pi}{16}, \frac{25\pi}{16}, \frac{29\pi}{16}$$

$$\mathbf{c} \frac{\pi}{12}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{13\pi}{12}, \frac{19\pi}{12}$$

$$\mathbf{d} \frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{11\pi}{12}, \frac{17\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$$

$$\mathbf{e} \frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{12}, \frac{11\pi}{12}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{19\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$$

$$\mathbf{f} 0.4636, 3.6052$$

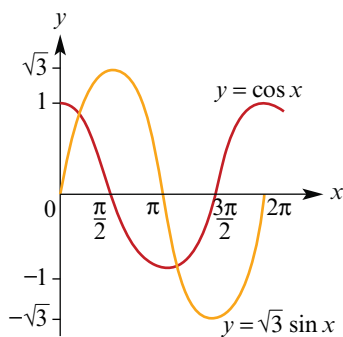
$$\mathbf{g} 1.1071, 4.2487$$

$$\mathbf{h} \frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}, \frac{11\pi}{8}, \frac{15\pi}{8}$$

$$\mathbf{i} \frac{\pi}{18}, \frac{7\pi}{18}, \frac{13\pi}{18}, \frac{19\pi}{18}, \frac{25\pi}{18}, \frac{31\pi}{18}$$

$$\mathbf{j} \frac{\pi}{9}, \frac{4\pi}{9}, \frac{7\pi}{9}, \frac{10\pi}{9}, \frac{13\pi}{9}, \frac{16\pi}{9}$$

12 a



$$\mathbf{b} \left(\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right), \left(\frac{7\pi}{6}, -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \right)$$

13 a

$$\frac{7\pi}{24}, \frac{19\pi}{24}, \frac{31\pi}{24}, \frac{43\pi}{24}$$

$$\mathbf{b} \frac{5\pi}{12}, \frac{11\pi}{12}, \frac{17\pi}{12}, \frac{23\pi}{12}$$

$$\mathbf{c} \frac{11\pi}{36}, \frac{23\pi}{36}, \frac{35\pi}{36}, \frac{47\pi}{36}, \frac{59\pi}{36}, \frac{71\pi}{36}$$

 14 $A = 5, n = 3$

 15 $A = 6, n = \frac{\pi}{2}$

Exercise C10

 1 a i Amplitude = $1\frac{1}{2}$

ii Period = 12

$$\text{iii } d(t) = 3.5 - 1.5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{6}t\right)$$

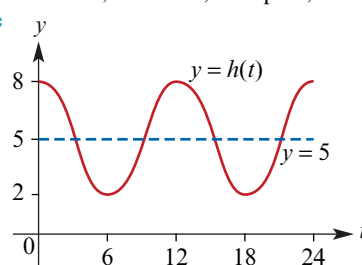
iv 1.5 m

$$\mathbf{b} t \in [0, 3) \cup (9, 15) \cup (21, 24]$$

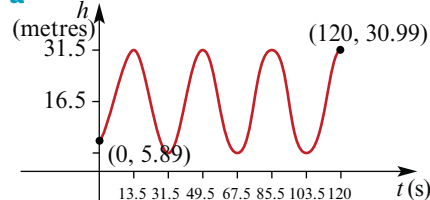
 2 a $A = 3, n = \frac{\pi}{6}, b = 5, \varepsilon = \frac{\pi}{2}$

b 2:21 a.m., 9:39 a.m., 2:21 p.m., 9:39 p.m.

c



3 a



b 5.89 m

c 27.51 s

d 6 times

e 20 times

f 4.21 m

g 13.9 m

Appendix C review

Short-response questions

 1 a -0.4 b -0.6 c 2 d -0.7 e $\frac{1}{5}$ f $\frac{3}{5}$

 2 a $\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$ b $\frac{-2\pi}{3}, \frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{4\pi}{3}$

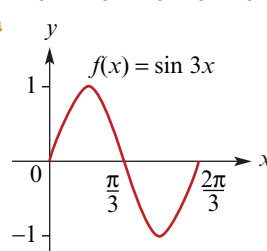
 c $\frac{-\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$ d $\frac{-3\pi}{4}, \frac{-\pi}{4}, \frac{5\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$

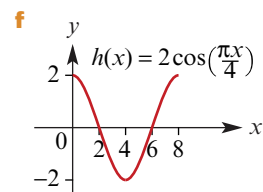
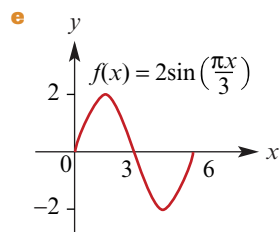
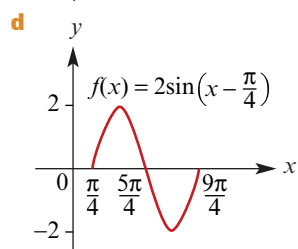
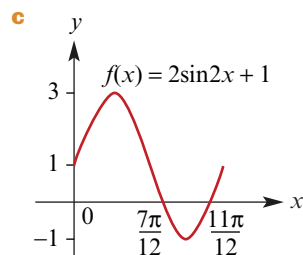
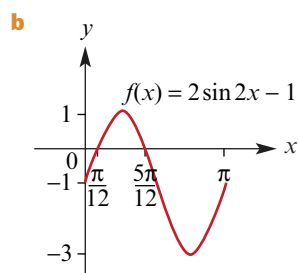
 e $\frac{-\pi}{6}, \frac{-5\pi}{6}, \frac{7\pi}{6}, \frac{11\pi}{6}$ f $\frac{-\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}, \frac{7\pi}{4}$

 g $\frac{-3\pi}{8}, \frac{-5\pi}{8}, \frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{5\pi}{8}, \frac{11\pi}{8}, \frac{13\pi}{8}$

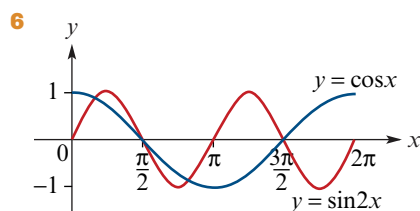
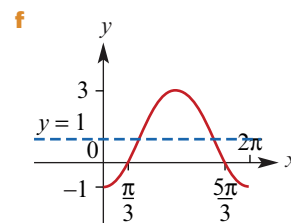
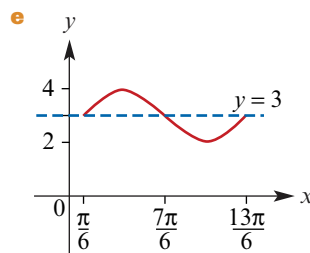
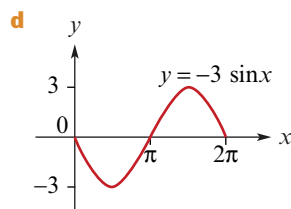
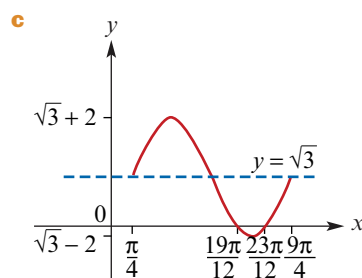
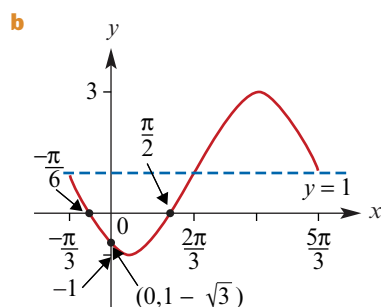
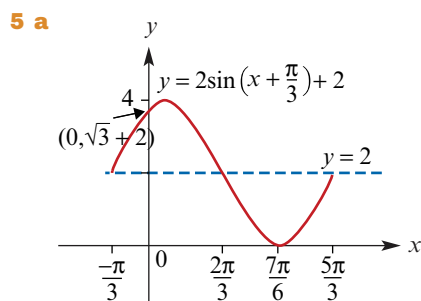
 h $\frac{-7\pi}{18}, \frac{-11\pi}{18}, \frac{\pi}{18}, \frac{5\pi}{18}, \frac{13\pi}{18}, \frac{17\pi}{18}, \frac{25\pi}{18}, \frac{29\pi}{18}$

3 a



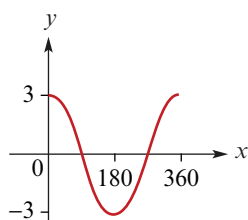


- 4 a** 30, 150 **b** 45, 135, 225, 315
c 240, 300 **d** 90, 120, 270, 300
e 120, 240

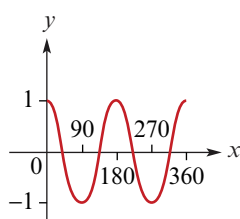


- a** 4 solutions **b** 4 solutions **c** 2 solutions

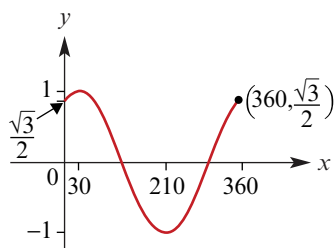
7 a



b



c



8 a

$$-\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{3}$$

$$-\frac{\pi}{4}, \frac{3\pi}{4}$$

c

$$-\frac{5\pi}{8}, -\frac{\pi}{8}, \frac{3\pi}{8}, \frac{7\pi}{8}$$

$$-\frac{2\pi}{3}, -\frac{\pi}{6}, \frac{\pi}{3}, \frac{5\pi}{6}$$

9

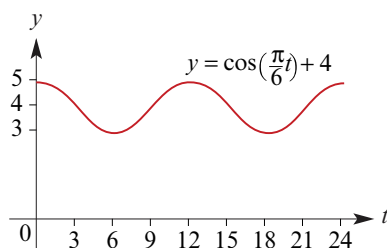
$$-\frac{2\pi}{3}, \frac{\pi}{3}$$

10 a

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$-\frac{5\pi}{6}$$

11 a



b 9:00, 15:00

c 8:00, 16:00

12 a Maximum = 210 cm; Minimum = 150 cm; Mean = 180 cm

$$b \ A = 30, n = \frac{\pi}{6}, \epsilon = -\frac{\pi}{2}, b = 180$$

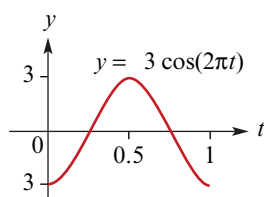
c i 165 cm

$$ii \ 180 - 15\sqrt{3} \approx 154 \text{ cm}$$

 d $\approx 4:24, \approx 7:36$

 13 a $a = -3, n = 2\pi$

b

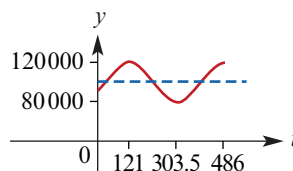


$$c \ i \ t = \frac{1}{3} \text{ second} \quad ii \ t = \frac{1}{6} \text{ second}$$

$$d \ t = 0.196 \text{ seconds}$$

$$14 \ a \ a = 20\ 000, b = 100\ 000, n = \frac{2\pi}{365}, \epsilon \approx 5.77$$

b



$$c \ i \ t = 242.7, t = 364.3$$

$$ii \ t = 60.2, t = 181.8$$

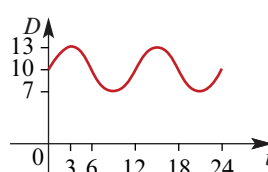
$$d \ \approx 117\ 219 \text{ m}^3/\text{day}$$

$$15 \ a \ i \ 1.83 \times 10^{-3} \text{ hours}$$

$$ii \ 11.79 \text{ hours}$$

$$b \ 25 \text{ April } (t = 3.856), 14 \text{ August } (t = 7.477)$$

16 a



$$b \ t \in [0, 7] \cup [11, 19] \cup [23, 24]$$

$$c \ 12.9 \text{ m}$$

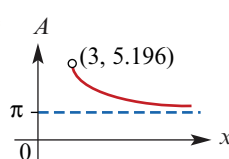
$$17 \ a \ i \ 25\sqrt{3} \quad ii \ 30$$

$$b \ 2.27, 0.53$$

$$d \ b = 8$$

$$e \ \theta = 0.927 \text{ or } 1.837 \quad f \ a = 4\sqrt{3}$$

18 c



$$d \ i \ 2.055$$

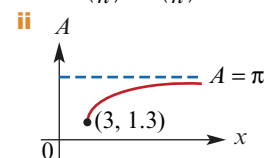
$$ii \ 0.858$$

$$iii \ 0.0738$$

$$iv \ 0.0041$$

$$e \ nr \tan\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)$$

$$f \ i \ n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{n}\right)$$



Multiple-choice questions

1 C

2 A

3 D

4 C

5 B

6 C

7 B

8 C

9 A

10 C

11 A

12 D

13 A

Appendix D

Counting methods and the binomial theorem

D1 Counting methods

The addition rule

In general, to choose between alternatives simply add up the number of choices available for each alternative.



Example 1

At the library Alan is having trouble deciding which book to borrow. He has a choice of three mystery novels, three biographies or two science fiction books. How many choices of book does he have?

Solution

As he is choosing between alternatives (mystery novels *or* biographies *or* science fiction), he has a total of $3 + 3 + 2 = 8$ choices.

The multiplication rule

When sequential choices are involved, the total number of possibilities is found by multiplying the number of options at each successive stage.



Example 2

Sandi has six choices of windcheaters or jackets, and seven choices of jeans or skirts. How many choices does she have for a complete outfit?

Solution

As Sandi will wear either a windcheater or a jacket *and* jeans or a skirt, we cannot consider these to be alternative choices. We could draw a tree diagram to list the possibilities, but this would be arduous. Using the multiplication rule, however, we can quickly determine the number of choices to be $6 \times 7 = 42$.

Permutations or arrangements

The number of arrangements of n objects in groups of size r is denoted ${}^nP_r$ and given by

$$\begin{aligned} {}^nP_r &= \frac{n!}{(n-r)!} \\ &= n \times (n-1) \times (n-2) \times \cdots \times (n-r+1) \end{aligned}$$



Example 3

How many different four-digit numbers can be formed from the digits 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9 if each digit may be used only once?

Solution

The number of arrangements of 9 digits in groups of size 4 is

$${}^9P_4 = \frac{9!}{5!} = 9 \times 8 \times 7 \times 6 = 3024$$

Combinations or selections

The number of combinations of n objects in groups of size r is

$${}^nC_r = \frac{{}^nP_r}{r!} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$$

A commonly used alternative notation for ${}^nC_r$ is $\binom{n}{r}$.



Example 4

Four flavours of ice-cream – vanilla, chocolate, strawberry and caramel – are available at the school canteen. How many different double-scoop selections are possible if two different flavours must be used?

Solution

The number of combinations of 4 flavours in groups of size 2 is

$${}^4C_2 = \frac{4!}{2!2!} = \frac{4 \times 3 \times 2 \times 1}{2 \times 1 \times 2 \times 1} = 6$$



Example 5

A team of three boys and three girls is to be chosen from a group of eight boys and five girls. How many different teams are possible?

Solution

We can choose three boys from eight in ${}^8C_3$ ways *and* three girls from five in ${}^5C_3$ ways. Thus the total number of possible teams is

$${}^8C_3 \times {}^5C_3 = 56 \times 10 = 560$$

Exercise D1

- 1** A student needs to select a two-unit study for her course: one unit in each semester. In Semester 1 she has a choice of two mathematics units, three language units and four science units. In Semester 2 she has a choice of two history units, three geography units and two art units. How many choices does she have for her two-unit study?
- 2** In order to travel from Melbourne to Brisbane, Dominic is given the following choices. He can fly directly from Melbourne to Brisbane on one of three airlines, or he can fly from Melbourne to Sydney on one of four airlines and then travel from Sydney to Brisbane with one of five bus lines, or he can go on one of three bus lines directly from Melbourne to Brisbane. In how many ways could he travel from Melbourne to Brisbane?
- 3** If there are eight swimmers in the final of the 1500 m freestyle event, in how many ways can the first three places be filled?
- 4** In how many ways can the letters of the word TROUBLE be arranged:
 - a** if they are all used
 - b** in groups of three?
- 5** In how many ways can the letters of the word PANIC be arranged:
 - a** if they are all used
 - b** in groups of four?
- 6** A student has the choice of three mathematics subjects and four science subjects. In how many ways can she choose to study one mathematics and two science subjects?
- 7** A survey is to be conducted, and eight people are to be chosen from a group of 30.
 - a** How many different groups of eight people could be chosen?
 - b** If the group contains 10 men and 20 women, how many groups of eight people containing exactly two men are possible?
- 8** From a standard 52-card deck, how many seven-card hands have exactly five spades and two hearts?
- 9** In how many ways can a committee of five be selected from eight women and four men:
 - a** without restriction
 - b** if there must be exactly three women on the committee?
- 10** Six females and five males are interviewed for five positions. If all are found to be acceptable for any position, in how many ways could the following combinations be selected?
 - a** three females and two males
 - b** four females and one male
 - c** five females
 - d** five people regardless of sex
 - e** at least four females

D2 Summation notation

Suppose that m and n are integers with $m < n$. Then

$$\sum_{i=m}^n a_i = a_m + a_{m+1} + a_{m+2} + \cdots + a_n$$

This notation, which is called **summation notation** or **sigma notation**, is very convenient for concisely representing sums. These sums will arise throughout the course. The notation uses the symbol Σ , which is the uppercase Greek letter *sigma*.

The notation

$$\sum_{i=m}^n a_i$$

is read ‘the sum of the numbers a_i from i equals m to i equals n ’.

The expression $a_m + a_{m+1} + a_{m+2} + \cdots + a_n$ is called the **expanded form** of $\sum_{i=m}^n a_i$.



Example 6

Write $\sum_{i=1}^5 2^i$ in expanded form and evaluate.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{i=1}^5 2^i &= 2^1 + 2^2 + 2^3 + 2^4 + 2^5 \\ &= 2 + 4 + 8 + 16 + 32 \\ &= 62\end{aligned}$$



Example 7

Write $1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + 30^2$ using summation notation.

Solution

$$1^2 + 2^2 + 3^2 + \cdots + 30^2 = \sum_{k=1}^{30} k^2$$



Example 8

Write $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{10}$ using summation notation.

Solution

$$x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{10} = \sum_{i=1}^{10} x_i$$

Exercise D2

1 Write each of the following in expanded form and evaluate:

a $\sum_{i=1}^4 i^3$

b $\sum_{k=1}^5 k^3$

c $\sum_{i=1}^5 (-1)^i i$

d $\frac{1}{5} \sum_{i=1}^5 i$

e $\sum_{i=1}^6 i$

f $\sum_{k=1}^4 (k-1)^2$

g $\frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^4 (i-2)^2$

h $\sum_{i=1}^6 i^2$

2 Write each of the following using summation notation:

a $1 + 2 + 3 + \cdots + n$

b $x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{11}$

c $\frac{x_1 + x_2 + x_3 + \cdots + x_{10}}{10}$

d $1^4 + 2^4 + 3^4 + \cdots + n^4 + (n+1)^4$

e $1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{5}$

3 Write each of the following in expanded form:

a $\sum_{i=1}^n x^i$

b $\sum_{i=0}^5 x^i \cdot 2^{5-i}$

c $\sum_{i=0}^6 (2x)^i \cdot 3^{6-i}$

d $\sum_{i=0}^4 (x - x_i)^i$

4 Write each of the following using summation notation:

a $x^5 + 3x^4 + 9x^3 + 27x^2 + 81x + 243$

b $x^5 - 3x^4 + 9x^3 - 27x^2 + 81x - 243$

c $4x^2 + 2x + 1$

d $8x^3 + 12x^2 + 18x + 27$

D3 The binomial theorem

Consider the expansions of binomial powers shown below:

$$(x + b)^0 = 1$$

$$(x + b)^1 = 1x + 1b$$

$$(x + b)^2 = 1x^2 + 2xb + 1b^2$$

$$(x + b)^3 = 1x^3 + 3x^2b + 3xb^2 + 1b^3$$

$$(x + b)^4 = 1x^4 + 4x^3b + 6x^2b^2 + 4xb^3 + 1b^4$$

$$(x + b)^5 = 1x^5 + 5x^4b + 10x^3b^2 + 10x^2b^3 + 5xb^4 + 1b^5$$

The coefficients can be arranged in a triangle:

$$\begin{array}{ccccccc}
 & & & & 1 & & & & \\
 & & & & 1 & & 1 & & \\
 & & & 1 & & 2 & & 1 & \\
 & & 1 & & 3 & & 3 & & 1 \\
 & 1 & & 4 & & 6 & & 4 & & 1 \\
 1 & & 5 & & 10 & & 10 & & 5 & & 1
 \end{array}$$

This array is known as **Pascal's triangle**, and can also be constructed from combinations:

$$\begin{array}{l}
 \text{Row 0:} \qquad \qquad \qquad \binom{0}{0} \\
 \text{Row 1:} \qquad \qquad \binom{1}{0} \qquad \binom{1}{1} \\
 \text{Row 2:} \qquad \binom{2}{0} \qquad \binom{2}{1} \qquad \binom{2}{2} \\
 \text{Row 3:} \quad \binom{3}{0} \qquad \binom{3}{1} \qquad \binom{3}{2} \qquad \binom{3}{3} \\
 \text{Row 4:} \quad \binom{4}{0} \qquad \binom{4}{1} \qquad \binom{4}{2} \qquad \binom{4}{3} \qquad \binom{4}{4} \\
 \text{Row 5:} \quad \binom{5}{0} \qquad \binom{5}{1} \qquad \binom{5}{2} \qquad \binom{5}{3} \qquad \binom{5}{4} \qquad \binom{5}{5}
 \end{array}$$

Remember that $\binom{n}{r} = \frac{n!}{r!(n-r)!}$.

The expansion of $(x+b)^6$ can be written by using this observation:

$$(x+b)^6 = \binom{6}{0}x^6 + \binom{6}{1}x^5b + \binom{6}{2}x^4b^2 + \binom{6}{3}x^3b^3 + \binom{6}{4}x^2b^4 + \binom{6}{5}xb^5 + \binom{6}{6}b^6$$

In summation notation:

$$(x+b)^6 = \sum_{k=0}^6 \binom{6}{k} x^{6-k} b^k$$

In general:

$$(x+b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} x^{n-k} b^k \quad \text{and} \quad (ax+b)^n = \sum_{k=0}^n \binom{n}{k} (ax)^{n-k} b^k$$

The first term of the expansion of $(ax+b)^n$ is $\binom{n}{0}(ax)^n$ and the second term is $\binom{n}{1}(ax)^{n-1}b$.

In general, the $(r+1)$ st term is $\binom{n}{r}(ax)^{n-r}b^r$.

By convention, the expansion of $(ax+b)^n$ is written with decreasing powers of x .



Example 9

Expand $(2x+3)^5$.

Solution

$$\begin{aligned}
 (2x+3)^5 &= \sum_{k=0}^5 \binom{5}{k} (2x)^{5-k} 3^k \\
 &= (2x)^5 + \binom{5}{1}(2x)^4 \cdot 3 + \binom{5}{2}(2x)^3 \cdot 3^2 + \binom{5}{3}(2x)^2 \cdot 3^3 + \binom{5}{4}(2x) \cdot 3^4 + 3^5 \\
 &= 32x^5 + 240x^4 + 720x^3 + 1080x^2 + 810x + 243
 \end{aligned}$$

**Example 10**

Find the eighth term in the expansion of $(2x - 4)^{10}$.

Solution

The $(r + 1)$ st term is $\binom{10}{r}(2x)^{10-r}(-4)^r$.

Therefore the 8th term is

$$\binom{10}{7}(2x)^3(-4)^7 = -15\,728\,640x^3$$

**Example 11**

Find the coefficient of x^{20} in the expansion of $(x + 2)^{30}$.

Solution

The $(r + 1)$ st term is $\binom{30}{r}x^{30-r}2^r$.

When $30 - r = 20$, $r = 10$. Therefore the term with x^{20} is $\binom{30}{10}2^{10}x^{20}$.

Hence the coefficient of x^{20} is $\binom{30}{10}2^{10}$.

Exercise D3

1 Expand each of the following using the binomial theorem:

a $(x + 6)^6$

b $(2x + 1)^5$

c $(2x - 1)^5$

d $(2x + 3)^6$

e $(2x - 6)^6$

f $(2x - 3)^4$

g $(x - 2)^6$

h $(x + 1)^{10}$

2 Find the eighth term of each expansion (where descending powers of x are assumed):

a $(2x - 1)^{10}$

b $(2x + 1)^{10}$

c $(1 - 2x)^{10}$

d $(3x + 1)^{12}$

e $(x + 3)^{12}$

f $(2x - b)^{12}$

3 Find the third term in the expansion of $\left(2 - \frac{1}{3}x\right)^9$, assuming descending powers of x .

4 Find the sixth term in the expansion of $(3x - 1)^{11}$, assuming descending powers of x .

5 Expand $(1 - x)^{11}$.

6 Find the coefficient of x^3 in the expansion of each of the following:

a $(x + 2)^5$

b $(2x - 1)^6$

c $(1 - 2x)^5$

d $(4x - 3)^7$

e $(3x + 4)^4$

f $(3x - 2)^5$

7 Find the coefficient of x^{10} in the expansion of $(2x - 3)^{14}$.

8 Find the coefficient of x^5 in the expansion of $(4 - 2x)^6$.

Answers

Appendix D

Exercise D1

1 63 **2** 26 **3** 336

4a 5040 **b** 210

5a 120 **b** 120

6 18

7a 5 852 925 **b** 1 744 200

8 100 386

9a 792 **b** 336

10a 200 **b** 75 **c** 6 **d** 462

e 81

Exercise D2

1a $\sum_{i=1}^4 i^3 = 1 + 8 + 27 + 64 = 100$

b $\sum_{k=1}^5 k^3 = 1 + 8 + 27 + 64 + 125 = 225$

c $\sum_{i=1}^5 (-1)^i i = -1 + 2 - 3 + 4 - 5 = -3$

d $\frac{1}{5} \sum_{i=1}^5 i = \frac{1}{5} (1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5) = 3$

e $\sum_{i=1}^6 i = 1 + 2 + 3 + 4 + 5 + 6 = 21$

f $\sum_{k=1}^4 (k-1)^2 = 0 + 1 + 4 + 9 = 14$

g $\frac{1}{3} \sum_{i=1}^4 (i-2)^2 = \frac{1}{3} (1 + 0 + 1 + 4) = 2$

h $\sum_{i=1}^6 i^2 = 1 + 4 + 9 + 16 + 25 + 36 = 91$

2a $\sum_{i=1}^n i$ **b** $\sum_{i=1}^{11} x_i$ **c** $\frac{1}{10} \sum_{i=1}^{10} x_i$

d $\sum_{i=1}^{n+1} i^4$ **e** $\sum_{i=1}^5 \frac{1}{i}$

3a $x + x^2 + x^3 + \cdots + x^n$

b $32 + 16x + 8x^2 + 4x^3 + 2x^4 + x^5$

c $3^6 + (2x) \cdot 3^5 + (2x)^2 \cdot 3^4 + (2x)^3 \cdot 3^3 + (2x)^4 \cdot 3^2 + (2x)^5 \cdot 3 + (2x)^6$

d $1 + (x - x_1) + (x - x_2)^2 + (x - x_3)^3 + (x - x_4)^4$

4a $\sum_{i=0}^5 x^{5-i} \cdot 3^i$ **b** $\sum_{i=0}^5 x^{5-i} \cdot (-3)^i$

c $\sum_{i=0}^2 x^{2-i} \cdot 2^{2-i}$ **d** $\sum_{i=0}^3 (2x)^{3-i} \cdot 3^i$

Exercise D3

1a $x^6 + 36x^5 + 540x^4 + 4320x^3 + 19\,440x^2 + 46\,656x + 46\,656$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad 32x^5 + 80x^4 + 80x^3 + 40x^2 + 10x + 1$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad 32x^5 - 80x^4 + 80x^3 - 40x^2 + 10x - 1$$

$$\mathbf{d} \quad 64x^6 + 576x^5 + 2160x^4 + 4320x^3 + 4860x^2 + 2916x + 729$$

$$\mathbf{e} \quad 64x^6 - 1152x^5 + 8640x^4 - 34\,560x^3 + 77\,760x^2 - 93\,312x + 46\,656$$

$$\mathbf{f} \quad 16x^4 - 96x^3 + 216x^2 - 216x + 81$$

$$\mathbf{g} \quad x^6 - 12x^5 + 60x^4 - 160x^3 + 240x^2 - 192x + 64$$

$$\mathbf{h} \quad x^{10} + 10x^9 + 45x^8 + 120x^7 + 210x^6 + 252x^5 + 210x^4 + 120x^3 + 45x^2 + 10x + 1$$

$$\mathbf{2a} \quad -960x^3$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad 960x^3$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad -960x^3$$

$$\mathbf{d} \quad 192\,456x^5$$

$$\mathbf{e} \quad 1732\,104x^5$$

$$\mathbf{f} \quad -25\,344b^7x^5$$

$$\mathbf{3} \quad -\frac{16}{243}x^7$$

$$\mathbf{4} \quad -336\,798x^6$$

$$\mathbf{5} \quad (-x + 1)^{11} = -x^{11} + 11x^{10} - 55x^9 + 165x^8 - 330x^7 + 462x^6 - 462x^5 + 330x^4 - 165x^3 + 55x^2 - 11x + 1$$

$$\mathbf{6a} \quad 40$$

$$\mathbf{b} \quad -160$$

$$\mathbf{c} \quad -80$$

$$\mathbf{d} \quad 181\,440$$

$$\mathbf{e} \quad 432$$

$$\mathbf{f} \quad 1080$$

$$\mathbf{7} \quad 83\,026\,944$$

$$\mathbf{8} \quad -768$$